
amebaDocs

Release 0.0.1

Ameba IoT

Jul 15, 2021

OPEN SOURCE SDKS:

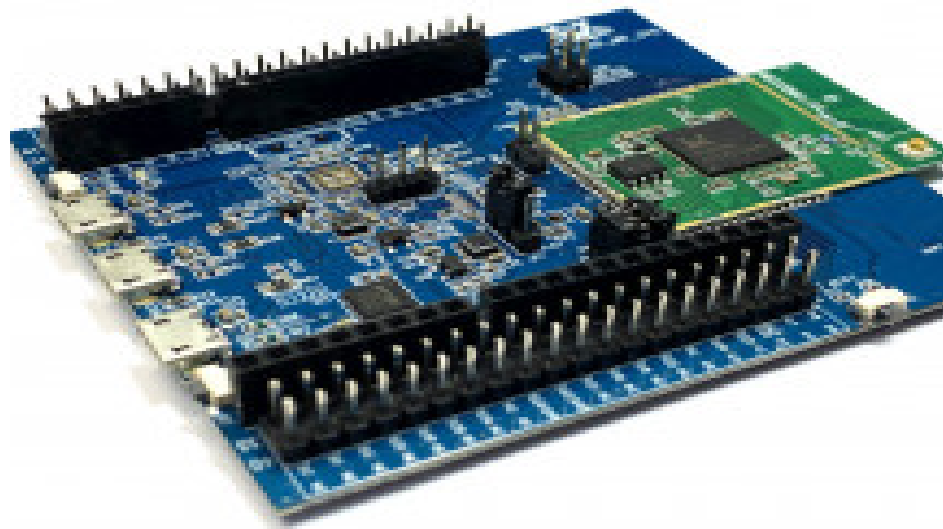
1	Arduino SDK	3
2	Micropython SDK	739
3	Standard SDK	775
4	Search	787

We have supported 3 unique developing platforms, Realtek Standard SDK, Arduino SDK and MicroPython SDK. All getting-started guides, examples, tutorials, API reference and datasheet can be found under the respective link below



ARDUINO SDK

1.1 RTL8722DM



This is the Ameba Arduino online documentation

1.1.1 Ameba ARDUINO: Getting Started with RTL8722DM

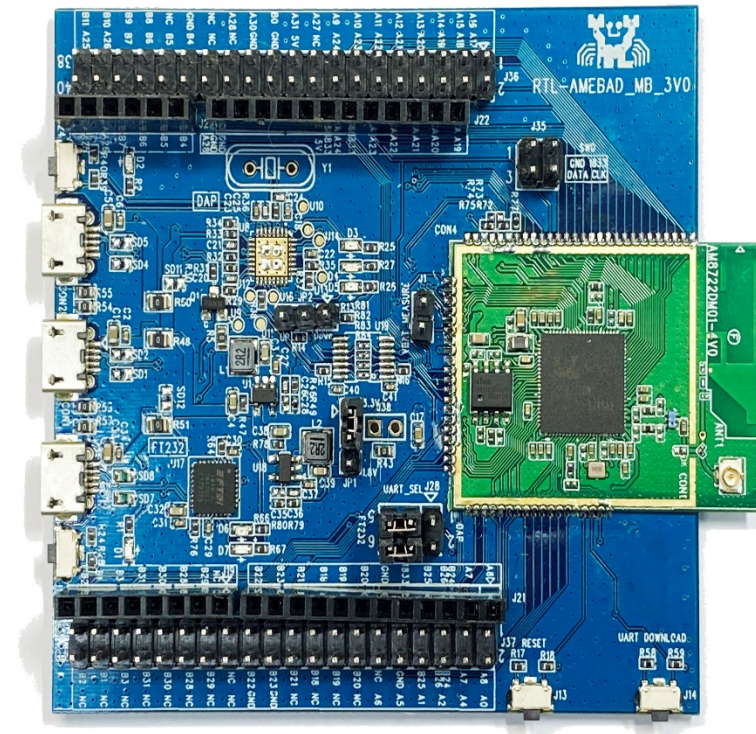
Required Environment

AmebaD RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM currently supports Windows XP/7/8/10 32-bits and 64-bits, Linux and Mac operating systems. In this documentation, please use Arduino IDE with version 1.8.12 or later.

Introduction to AmebaD RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM

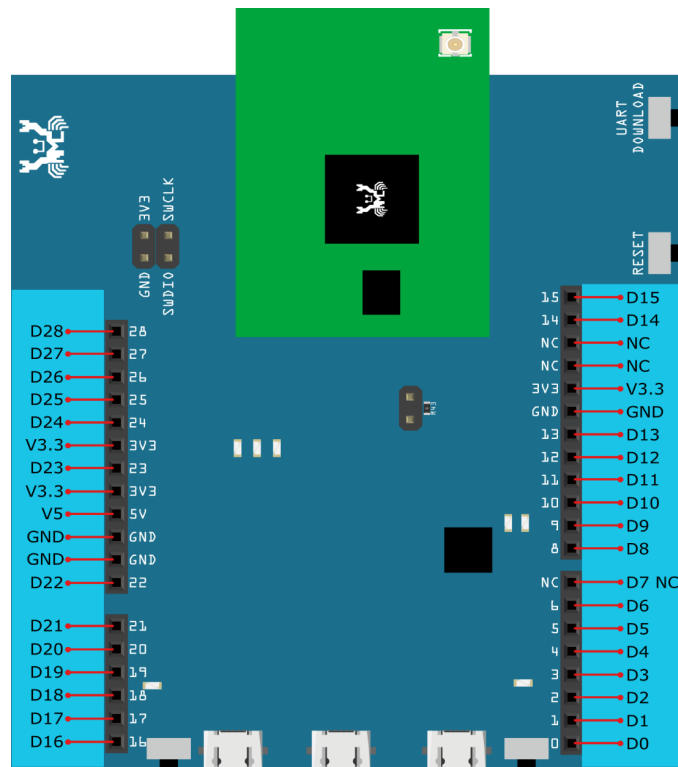
Ameba is an easy-to-program platform for developing all kind of IoT applications. AmebaD is equipped with various peripheral interfaces, including WiFi, GPIO INT, I2C, UART, SPI, PWM, ADC. Through these interfaces, AmebaD can connect with electronic components such as LED, switches, manometer, hygrometer, PM2.5 dust sensors, ...etc.

The collected data can be uploaded via WiFi and be utilized by applications on smart devices to realize IoT implementation.

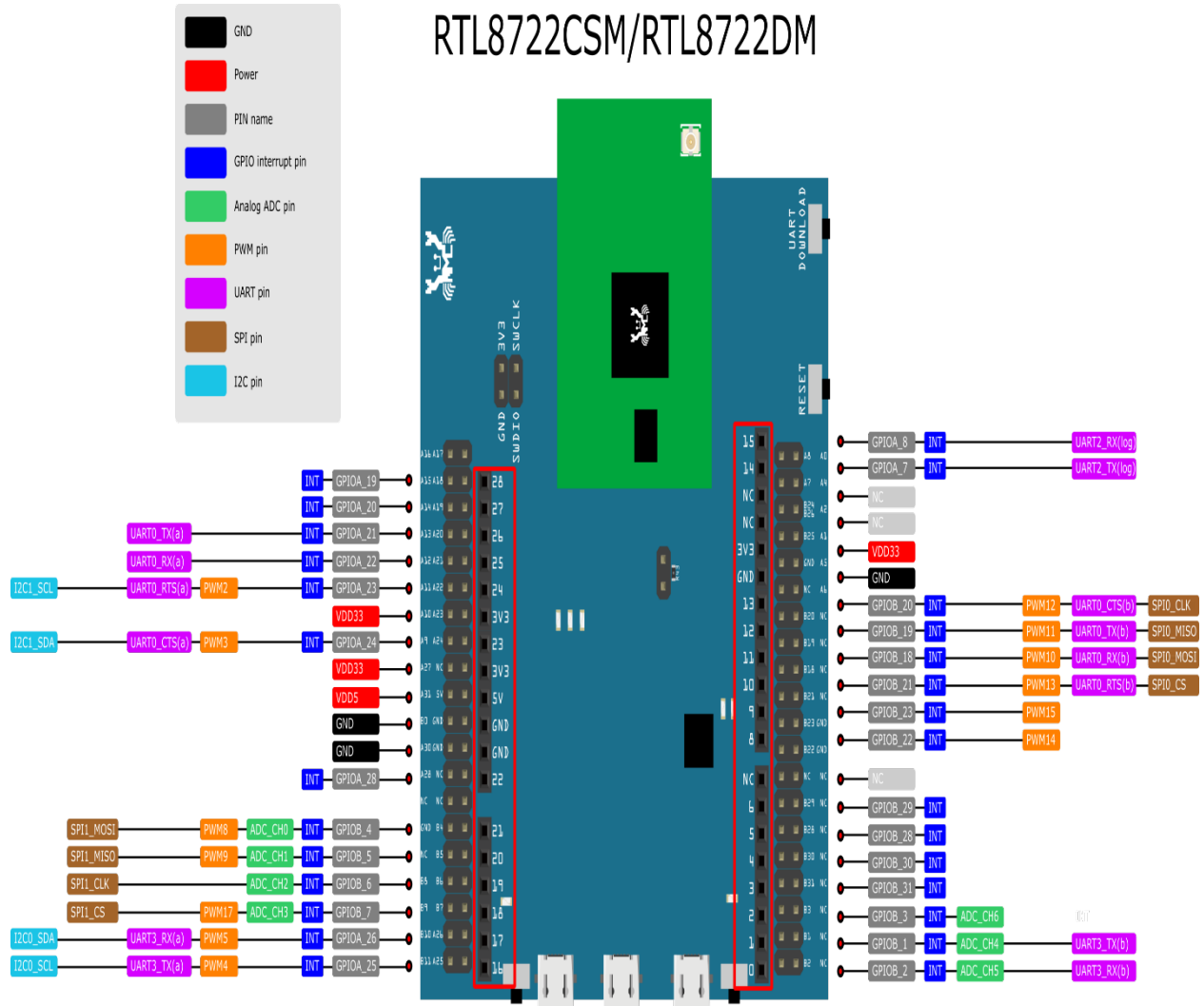


AmebaD and Arduino Uno have similar size, as shown in the above figure, and the pins on AmebaD are compatible with Arduino Uno. AmebaD uses Micro USB to supply power, which is common in many smart devices.

Please refer to the following figure and table for the pin diagram and function of AmebaD.



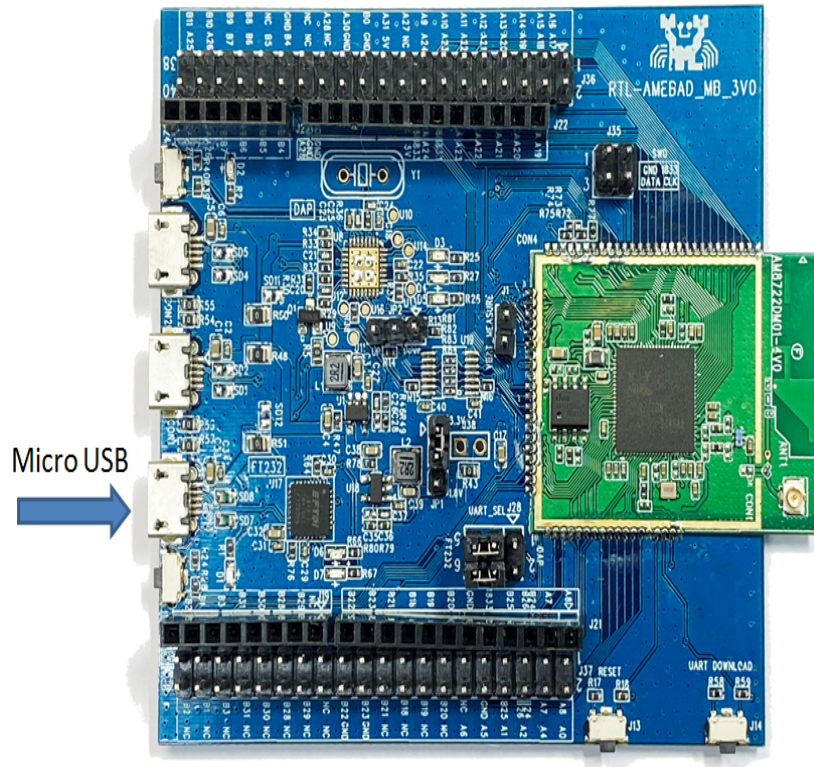
INDEX	PIN name	GPIO INT	ADC	PWM	UART	SPI	I2C
D00	GPIOB_2	✓	ADC5		UART3_RX(b)		
D01	GPIOB_1	✓	ADC4		UART3_TX(b)		
D02	GPIOB_3	✓	ADC6				
D03	GPIOB_31	✓					
D04	GPIOB_30	✓					
D05	GPIOB_28	✓					
D06	GPIOB_29	✓					
D07	NC						
D08	GPIOB_22	✓		PWM14			
D09	GPIOB_23	✓		PWM15			
D10	GPIOB_21	✓		PWM13	UART0_RTS(b)	SPI0_CS	
D11	GPIOB_18	✓		PWM10	UART0_RX(b)	SPI0_MOSI	
D12	GPIOB_19	✓		PWM11	UART0_TX(b)	SPI0_MISO	
D13	GPIOB_20	✓		PWM12	UART0_CTS(b)	SPI0_CLK	
D14	GPIOA_7	✓			UART2_TX(log)		
D15	GPIOA_8	✓			UART2_RX(log)		
D16	GPIOA_25	✓		PWM4	UART3_RX(a)		I2C0_SCL
D17	GPIOA_26	✓		PWM5	UART3_TX(a)		I2C0_SDA
D18	GPIOB_7	✓	ADC3	PWM17		SPI1_CS	
D19	GPIOB_6	✓	ADC2			SPI1_CLK	
D20	GPIOB_5	✓	ADC1	PWM9		SPI1_MISO	
D21	GPIOB_4	✓	ADC0	PWM8		SPI1_MOSI	
D22	GPIOA_28	✓					
D23	GPIOA_24	✓		PWM3	UART0_CTS(a)		I2C1_SDA
D24	GPIOA_23	✓		PWM2	UART0_RTS(a)		I2C1_SCL
D25	GPIOA_22	✓			UART0_RX(a)		
D26	GPIOA_21	✓			UART0_TX(a)		
D27	GPIOA_20	✓					
D28	GPIOA_19	✓					



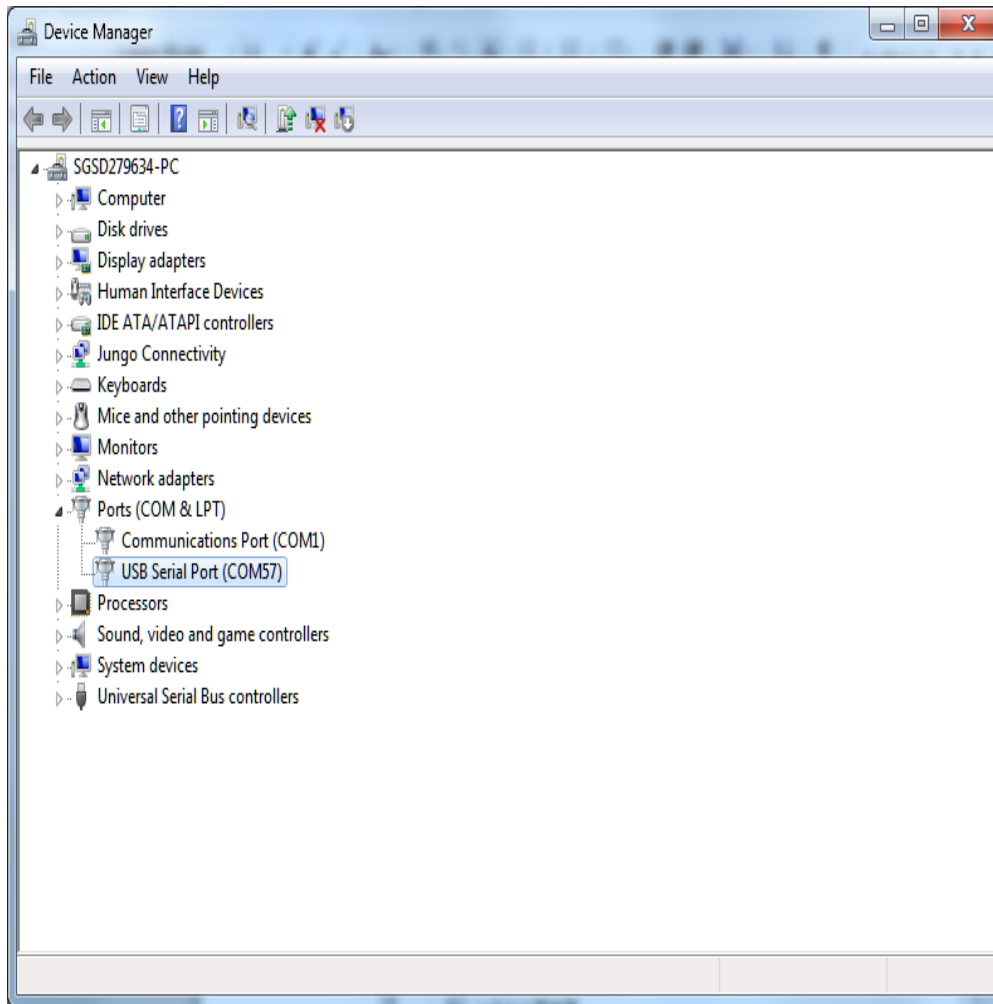
Setting up Development Environment

Step 1. Installing the Driver

First, connect AmebaD to the computer via Micro USB:



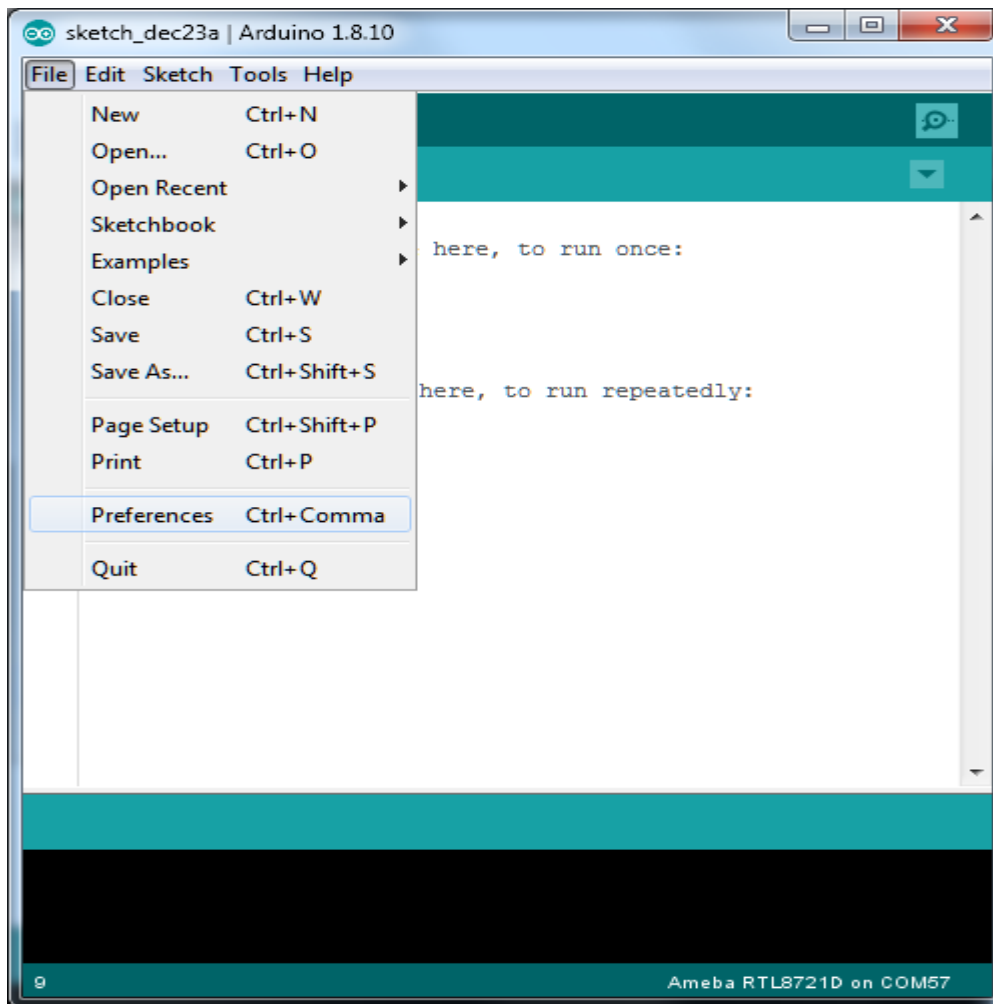
If this is the first time you connect AmebaD to your computer, the USB driver for AmebaD will be automatic installed. You can check the COM port number in Device Manager of your computer:



Step 2. Set up Arduino IDE

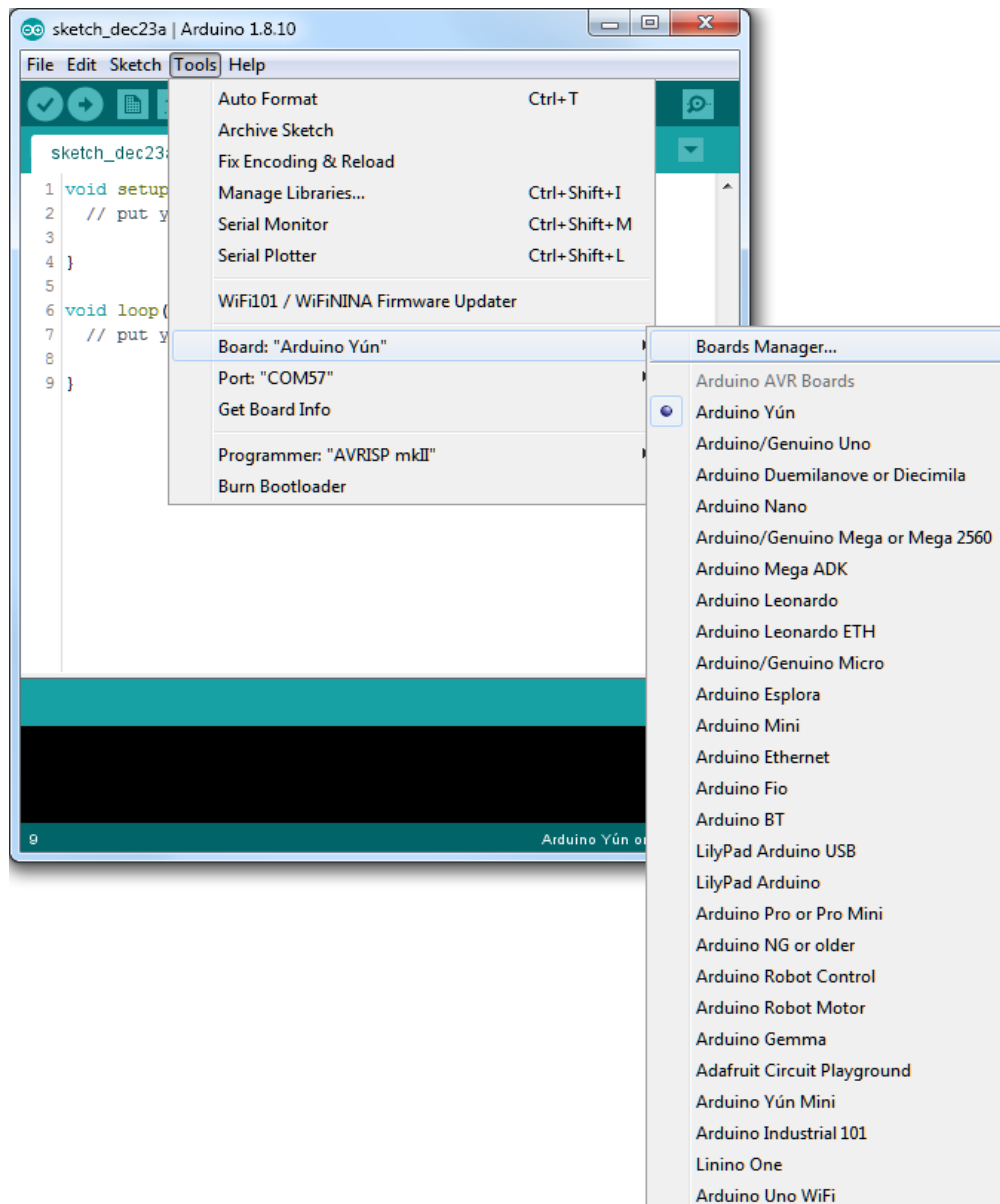
From version 1.6.5, Arduino IDE supports third-party hardware. Therefore, we can use Arduino IDE to develop applications on AmebaD, and the examples of Arduino can run on AmebaD too. Arduino IDE can be downloaded in the [Arduino website](#).

When the installation is finished, open Arduino IDE. To set up AmebaD correctly in Arduino IDE, go to "File" -> "Preferences"

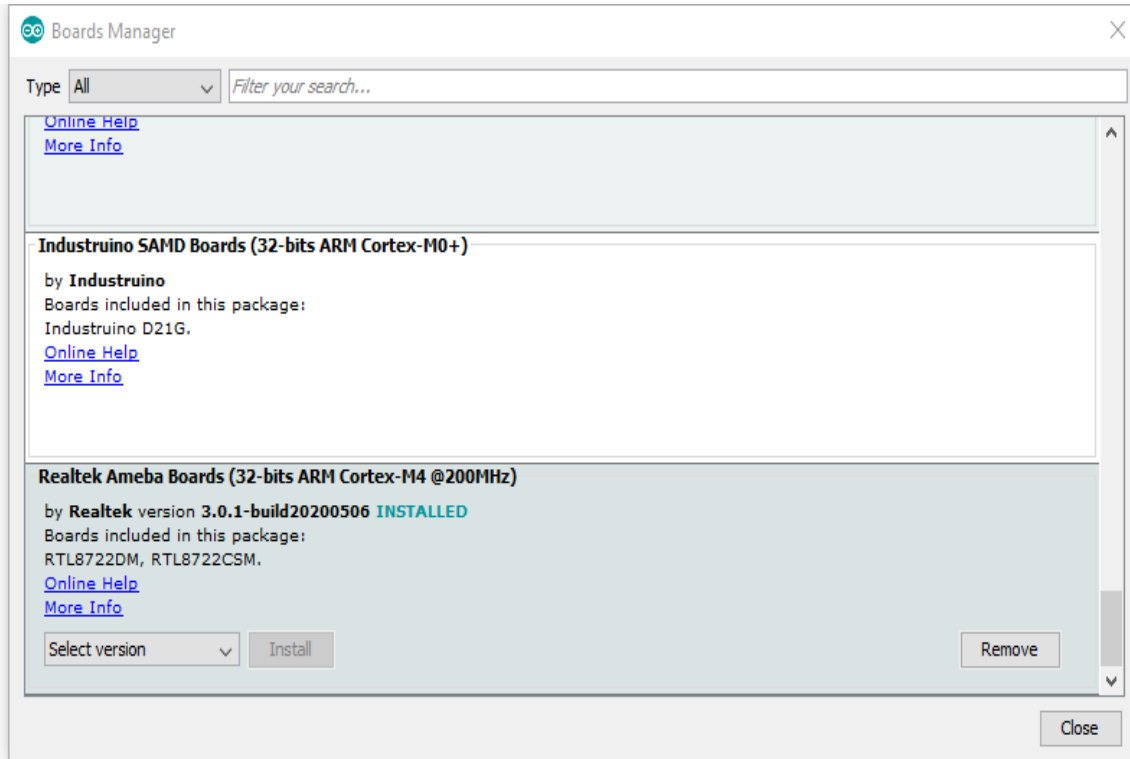


And paste the following URL into "Additional Boards Manager URLs" field: https://github.com/ambiot/ambd_arduino/raw/master/Arduino_package/package_realtek.com_amebad_index.json

Next, go to "Tools" -> "Board" -> "Boards Manager":



The "Boards Manager" requires about 10~20 seconds to refresh all hardware files (if the network is in bad condition, it may take longer). Every time the new hardware is connected, we need to reopen the Board Manager. So, we close the Boards Manager, and then open it again. Find "Realtek AmebaD Boards" in the list, click "Install", then the Arduino IDE starts to download required files for AmebaD.



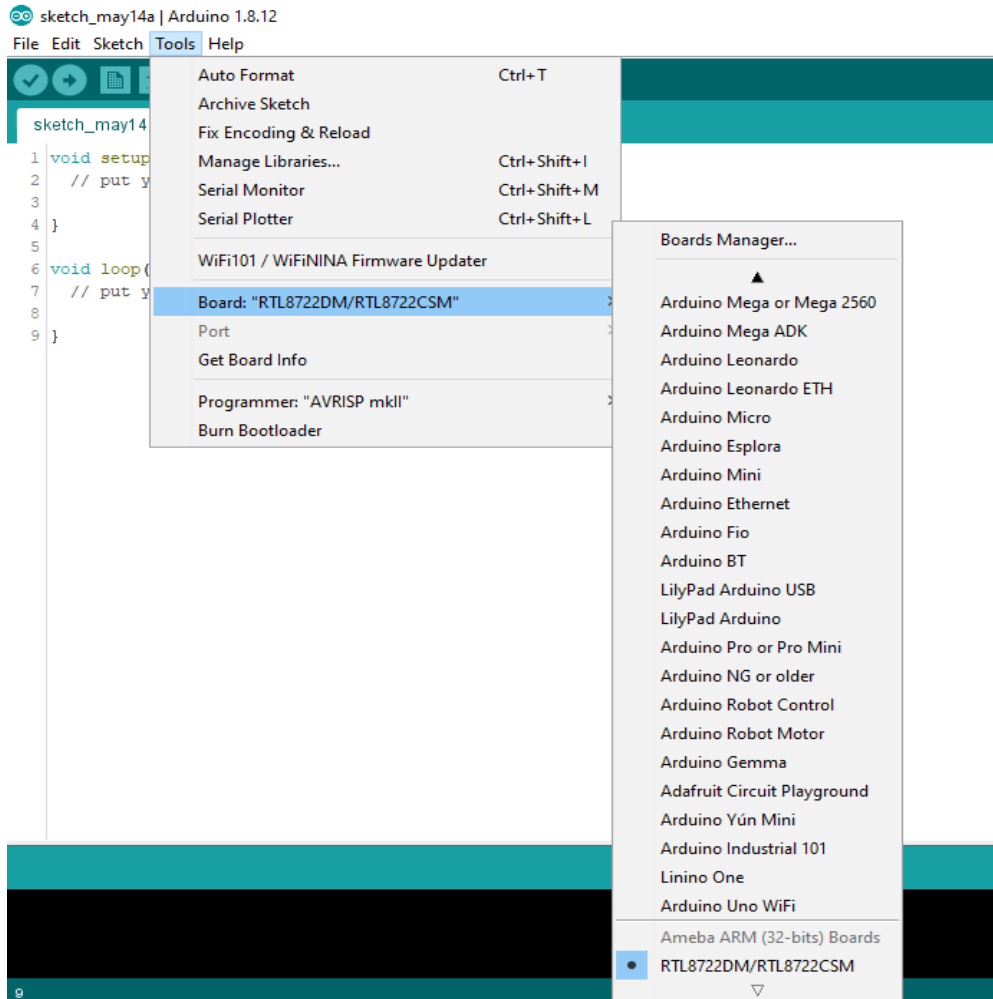
If you are facing GitHub downloading issue, please refer to the following link at [Download/Software Development Kit](#). There are 3 sections:

1. “AmebaD_Arduino_patch1_SDK”, please select at least 1 of the SDKs. There are 5 latest released SDK options.
2. “AmebaD_Arduino_patch2_Tools”, please select according to your operation system. There are Windows, Linux and MacOS.
3. “AmebaD_Arduino_Source_Code”, this section is optional download only wants to refer the latest source code.

Download the files selected, then unzip (patch1 and patch2 are compulsory). There are “Install.doc”/”Install.pdf” for you to refer installation steps. According to your system, please run the installation tool in the “Offline_SDK_installation_tool” folder.

After the installation tool running successfully, you may open Arduino IDE and proceed to "Tools" -> "Board" -> "Boards Manager". Try to find Realtek AmebaD Boards (32-bits ARM Cortex-M4 @200MHz) in the list, click Install, then the Arduino IDE starts to download required files for AmebaD.

Finally, we select AmebaD as current connected board in "Tools" -> "Board: "RTL8722DM/RTL8722CSM":

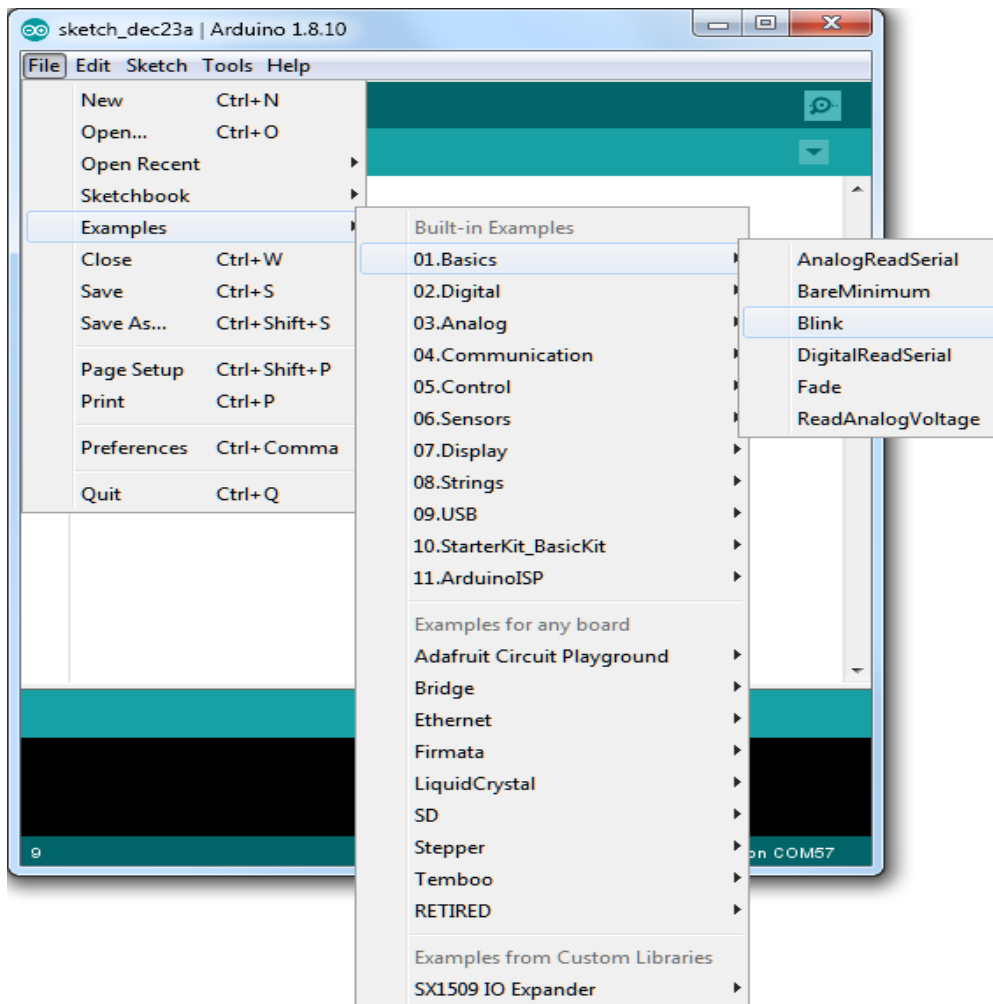


Try the First Example

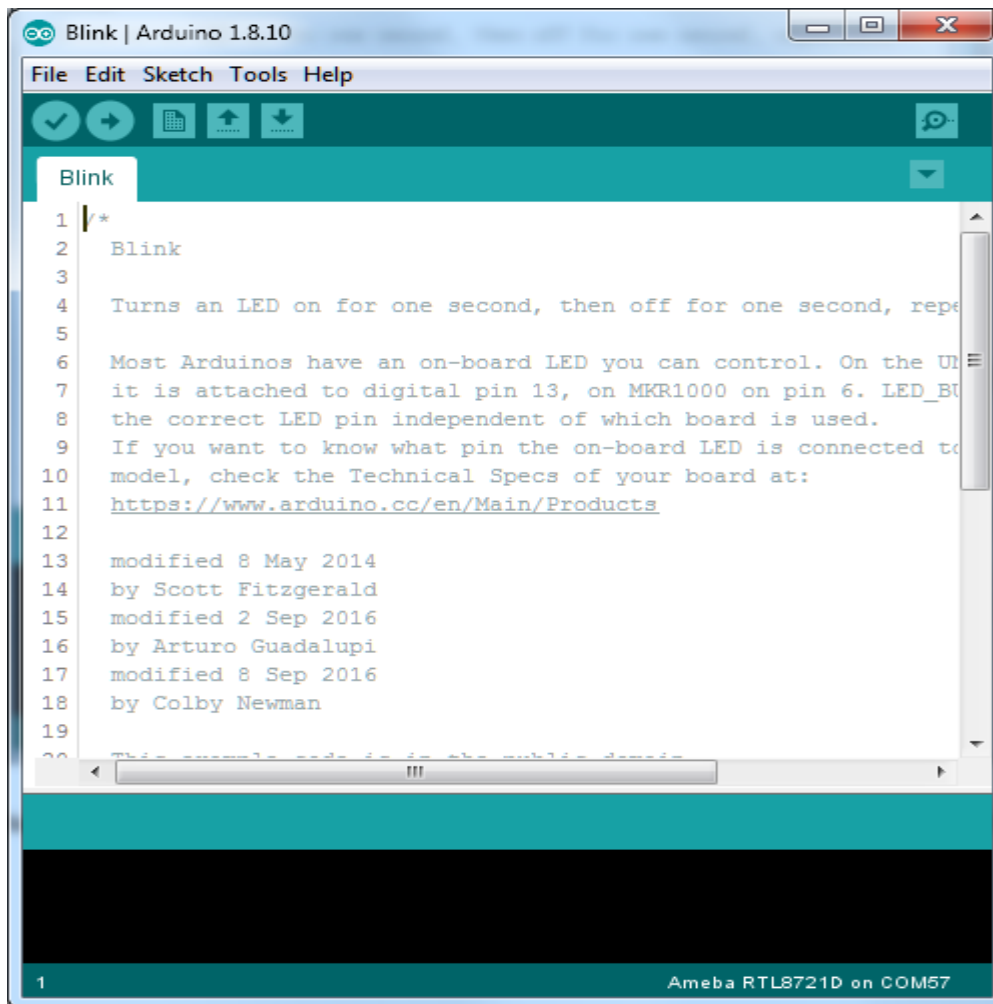
Step 1. Compile & Upload

Arduino IDE provides many built-in examples, which can be compiled, uploaded and run directly on the boards. Here, we take the “Blink” example as the first try.

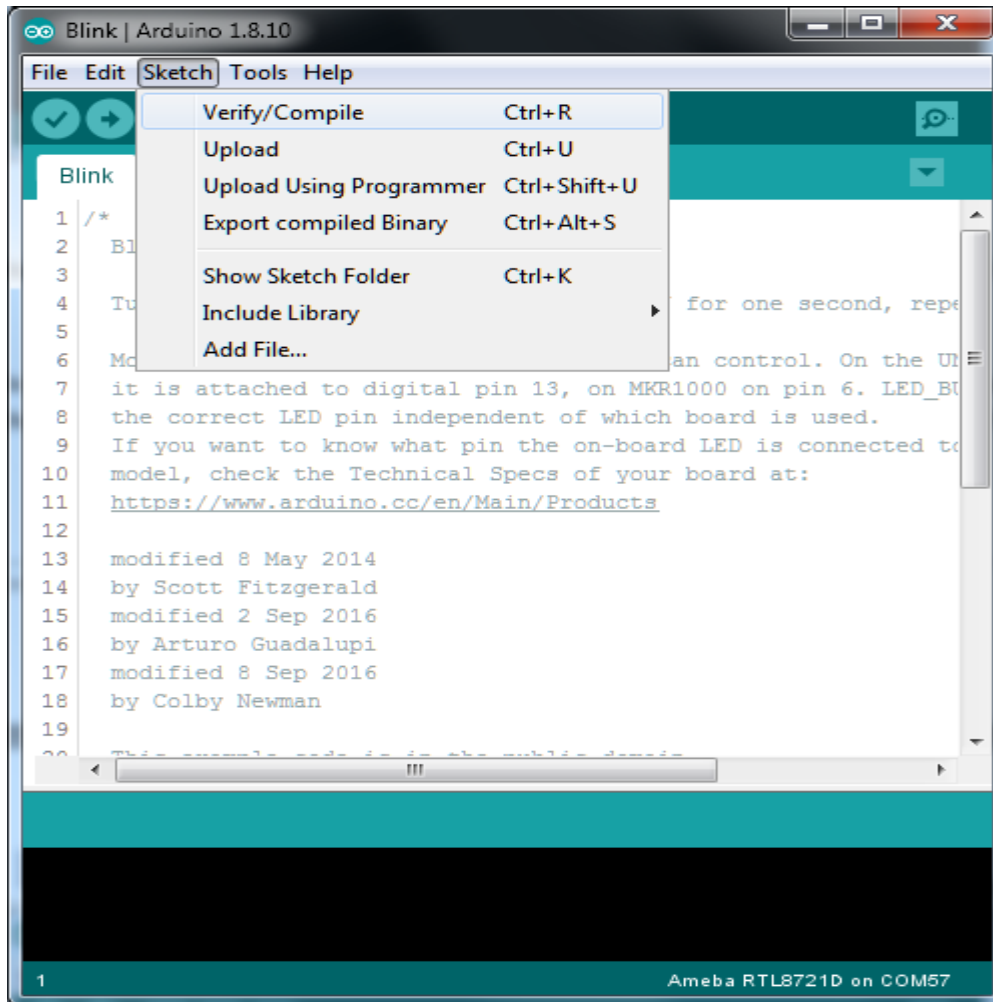
Open “File” -> “Examples” -> “01.Basics” -> “Blink”:



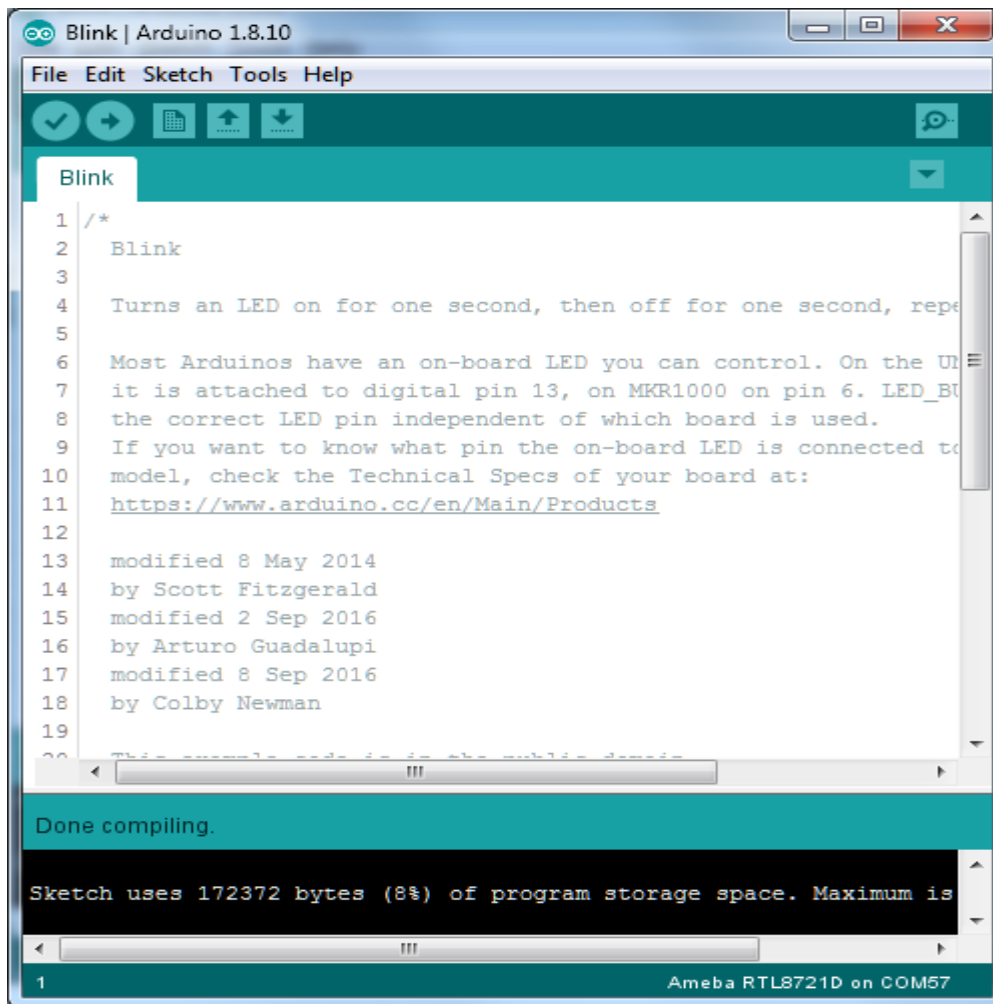
Arduino IDE opens a new window with the complete sample code.



Next, we compile the sample code directly; click “Sketch” -> “Verify/Compile”



Arduino IDE prints the compiling messages in the bottom area of the IDE window. When the compilation is finished, you will get the message similar to the following figure:



Afterwards, we will upload the compiled code to AmebaD.

Please make sure AmebaD is connected to your computer, then click "Sketch" -> "Upload".

The Arduino IDE will compile first then upload. During the uploading process, users are required to enter the upload mode of the board. Arduino IDE will wait 5s for DEV board to enter the upload mode.

Uploading...

Sketch uses 172372 bytes (8%) of program storage space. Maximum is 2097152 bytes.

1 file(s) copied.

Please enter the upload mode (wait 5s)

05

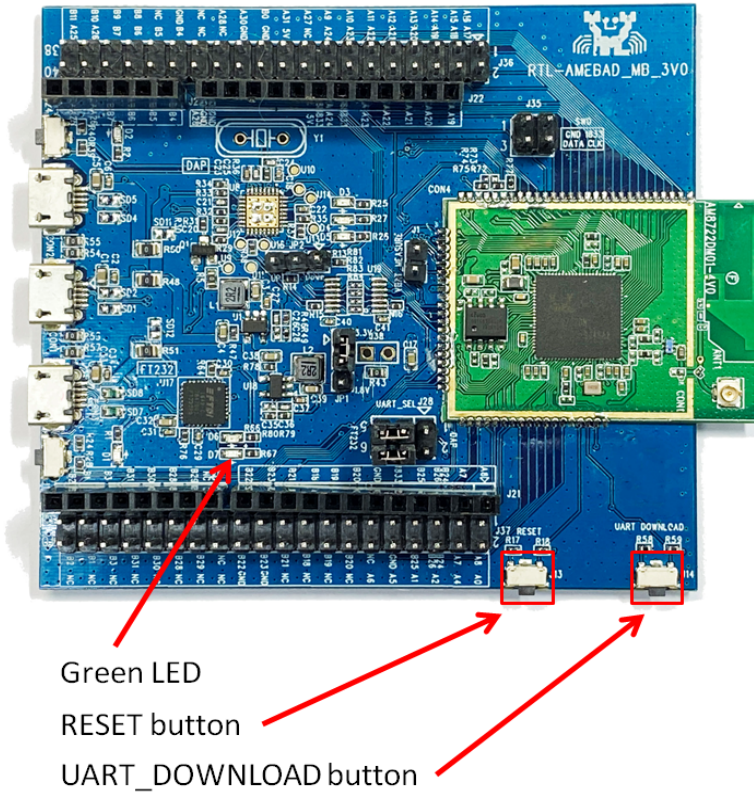
04

03

02

01

To enter the upload mode, first press and hold the UART_DOWNLOAD button, then press the RESET button. If success, you should see a green LED flashing on the DEV board.



Again, during the uploading procedure the IDE prints messages. Uploading procedure takes considerably longer time (about 30 seconds to 1 minute). When upload completed, the “Done uploading” message is printed.

Done uploading.

Sketch uses 172372 bytes (8%) of program storage space. Maximum is 2097152 bytes.

1 file(s) copied.

Please enter the upload mode (wait 5s)

05

04

03

02

01

1 COM57 SUCCESS

Upload km0_boot_all done.

1 COM57 SUCCESS

Upload km4_boot_all done.

1 COM57 SUCCESS

Upload km0_km4_image2 done.

Step 2.Run the Blink example

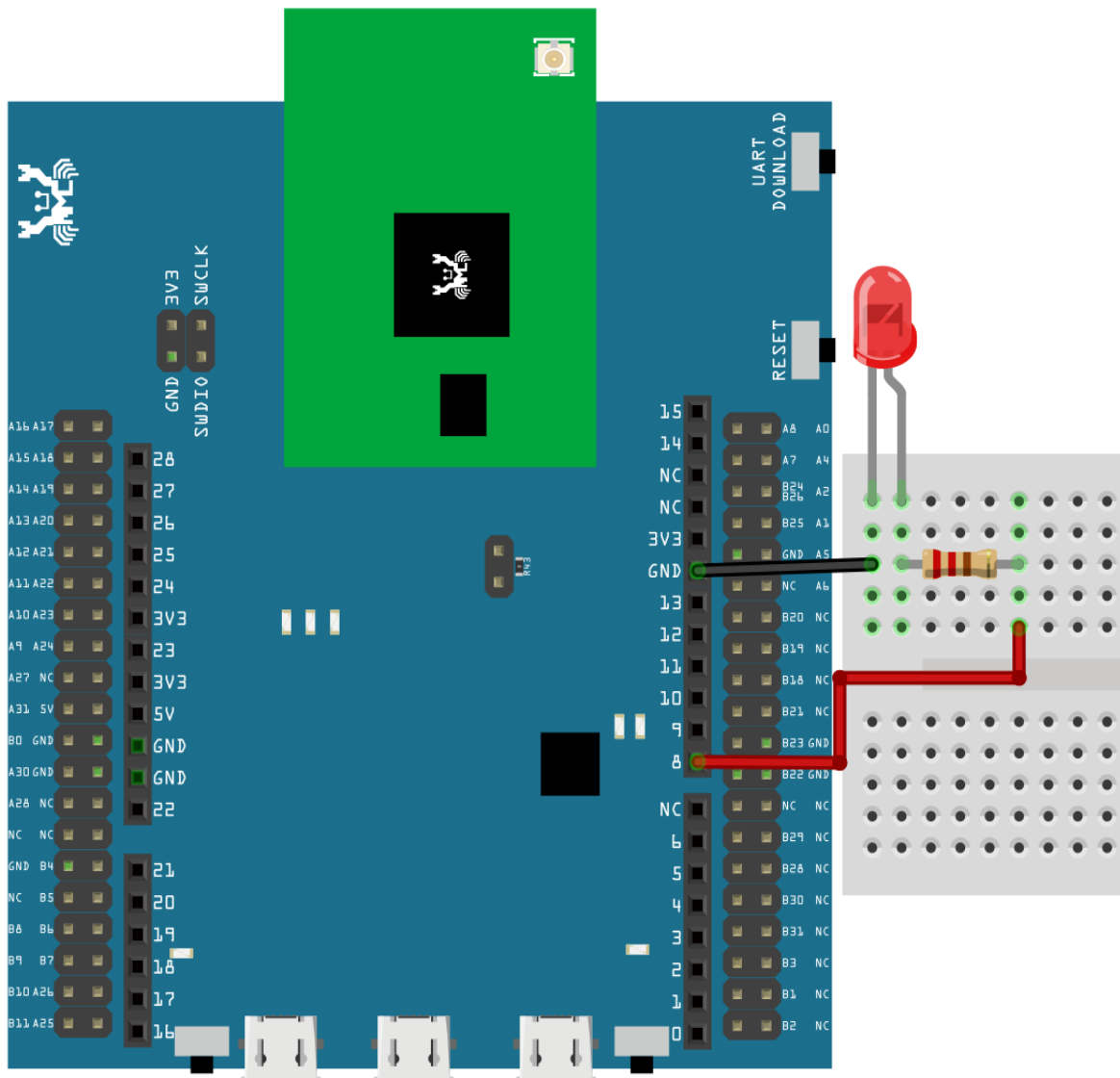
In each example, Arduino not only provides sample code, but also detailed documentation, including wiring diagram, sample code explanation, technical details, ...etc. These examples can be directly used on AmebaD.

So, we find the detailed information of the Blink example:

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Tutorial/Blink>

In short, this example makes LED blinks, and it uses GPIO pin 08 (refer to the pin diagram D08). Then we connect the LED and resistance as the following figure:

(NOTE: In an LED, the longer pin is the positive pole, and shorter pin is the negative pole. So we connect the longer pin to D08, and connect the shorter pin to GND. In addition, please use a resistor with suitable resistance in series between LED and GND to protect LED)



Finally, press the RESET button, and you can see the LED blinking.

(End)

Note: If you face any issue, please refer to the FAQ and troubleshooting page.

1.1.2 Download

Release History

- **Version 3.0.8 – 2021/05/06**
- Feature:
 - – Add RTL8722DM_mini board
 - – Add AudioCodec
 - – Add TensorFlow lite support with examples
 - – Add zip libraries for TensorFlow lite support
 - – Update SDK for supporting Arduino IDE 2.0
 - – Update wlan lib
- API Updates:
 - – Update zip libraries of Eink
 - – ADC updates, Change calculation method to use EFUSE calibration parameters and SDK formula to improve accuracy
 - – writing_analog updates, minor bug fix and support for mini board
 - – SPI updates, minor bug fix and support for mini board
 - – I2S updates, minor bug fix and support for mini board
 - – IRDevice updates, minor bug fix
- **Version 3.0.7 – 2020/11/19**
- Feature:
 - – Add AmebaIRDevice example IRSendSONY
 - – Update Ameba Arduino IRDevice API
 - – Update Ameba Arduino SSL related API
 - – Update Ameba Arduino Wlan API to support static IP function
- **Version 3.0.6– 2020/10/28**
- Feature:
 - – Add Ameba RTC support
 - – Add AmebaRTC example RTC and RTCAlarm
 - – Add Ameba Watchdog support
 - – Add AmebaWatchdog example WatchdogTimer
 - – Update Ameba BLE support
 - – Add AmebaBLE example BLEUartService, DHT_over_BLEUart
 - – Update Ameba Wlan library
 - – Update Ameba Wlan SDK structure, add AP mode hidden SSID support
- **Version 3.0.5– 2020/09/09**
- Feature:

- – Build in tool updates V1.0.4
- – Add zip lib AmebaEink
- – **Add AmebaEink example EinkDisplayImage, EinkDisplayQR, and EinkDisplayText**
- – Add google cloud examples
- – Update Amazon AWS related examples
- – Add power save support
- – **Add AmebaPowerSave example TicklessMode, DeepSleepMode, DeepSleep_DHT_LCD_Example, and DeepSleep_DHT_Eink_Example**
- **Version 3.0.4 – 2020/07/27**
- Feature:
 - – Update BLE library. Add example BLEBatteryClient and BLEWifiConfig
 - – Update from polarssl to mbedtls 2.4.0
- **Version 3.0.3– 2020/07/03**
- Feature:
 - – Build in Image tool updates V1.0.3
 - – Upload log clean up
- **Version 3.0.2 – 2020/06/30**
- Feature:
 - – Windows, Linux and macOS X support
 - – Build in Image tool updates
- **Version 3.0.1 – 2020/05/15**
- Feature:
 - – Official release of AmebaD Arduino SDK
 - – warning cleaning
 - – I2C lib updates
- **Version 3.0.0 – 2020/05/01**
- Feature:
 - – Support Boards Manager and Arduino IDE development
 - – WiFi scan AP, connect to AP, TCP Server/Client, including 5G
 - – Bluetooth, BLE
 - – GPIO digital in/out and interrupt
 - – ADC analog in/out (0 ~ 3.3V)
 - – PWM getting analog results with digital means
 - – SPI master and slave mode
 - – UART 1 for log, 2 for customize usage
 - – I2C master mode

1.1.3 Peripherals & Examples

Basic Examples

There are many built-in examples in Arduino. In the table below, we list all examples that are compatible with Ameba.

Category	Name	Comment
1. Basics	AnalogReadSerial	Connect potentiometer to 3.3V
	BareMinimum	
	Blink	Connect LED to pin 8
	DigitalReadSerial	
	Fade	
2. Digital	ReadAnalogVoltage	ADC can read a maximum of 3.3V.
	BlinkWithoutDelay	Connect LED to pin 8
	Button	Connect LED to pin 13
	Debounce	Connect LED to pin 13
	DigitalInputPullup	Connect LED to pin 13
	StateChangeDetection	Connect LED to pin 13
	toneKeyboard	
	toneMelody	
	toneMultiple	
	tonePitchFollower	
3. Analog	AnalogInOutSerial	
	AnalogInput	Connect LED to pin 13
	Analog Write Mega	
	Calibration	Connect another LED to pin 13
	Fading	
	Smoothing	
4. Communication	ASCIITable	
	Dimmer	Use serial baud rate 115200
	Graph	Use serial baud rate 115200, Connect potentiometer to 3.3V
	Midi	Please use Serial1 and pin 26, or use Serial2 and pin 17
	MultiSerial	
	PhysicalPixel	Use serial baud rate 115200
	ReadASCIIString	
	SerialCallResponse	Use serial baud rate 115200
	SerialCallResponseASCII	Use serial baud rate 115200
	SerialEvent	
	SerialPassthrough	
	VirtualColorMixer	Use serial baud rate 115200

continues on next page

Table 1 – continued from previous page

Category	Name	Comment
5. Control	Arrays	Use pins 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6
	ForLoopIteration	Use pins 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6
	I fStatementConditional	
	switchCase	
	switchCase2	
6. Display	Whil eStatementConditional	Connect another LED to pin 13
	barGraph	Use another pin to replace pin 7
7. Strings	RowColumnScanning	
	CharacterAnalysis	
	S tringAdditionOperator	
	StringAppendOperator	
	StringCaseChanges	
	StringCharacters	
	Stri ngComparisonOperators	
	StringIndexOf	
	StringLength	
	StringLengthTrim	
	StringReplace	
	Str ingStartsWithEndsWith	
	StringSubstring	
	StringToInt	

Network Examples

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Scan available WiFi hotspots in the surroundings

Materials

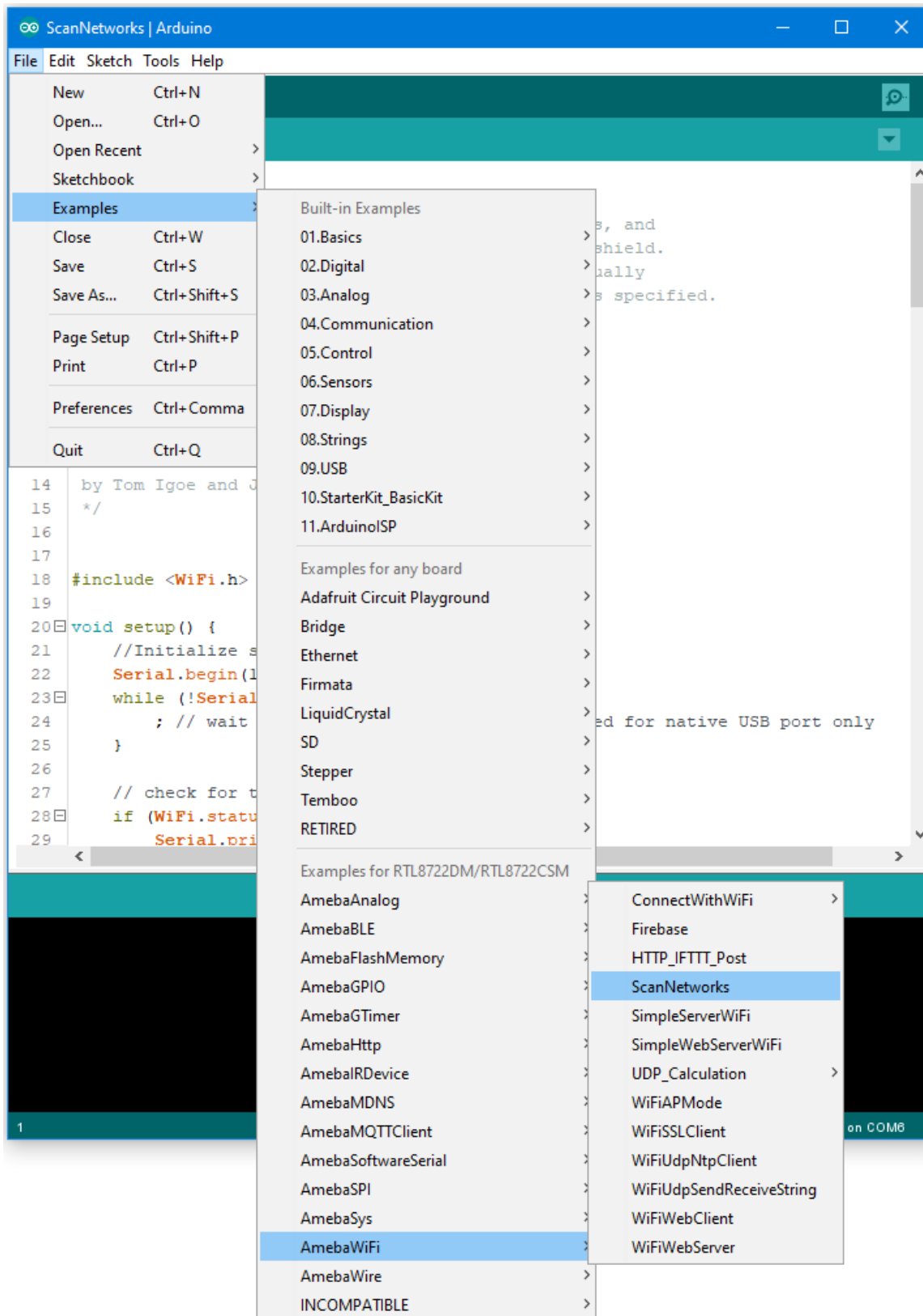
- Ameba x 1
- Antenna x 1

Example

In this example, we use Ameba to scan available WiFi hotspots in the surroundings, and prints the SSID, encryption type, signal strength information of each detected hotspot.

First, make sure the correct Ameba development board is selected in Arduino IDE: “Tools” -> “Board” ->

Open the “ScanNetworks” example in “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaWiFi” -> “ScanNetworks”:



Then upload the sample code and press the reset button on Ameba. Afterwards, you can see “Scan Networks” message appears, with the detected WiFi hotspots and the information of each hotspot.



```

** Scan Networks **
number of available networks:20
0)      Signal: -76 dBm EncryptionRaw: WPA2 AES Encryption: WPA2
1) Askey5100-ADF9      Signal: -80 dBm EncryptionRaw: WPA2 AES Encryption: WPA2
2) TP-LINK_52F5 Signal: -88 dBm EncryptionRaw: WPA/WPA2 AES      Encryption: WPA2
3) SINGTEL-88RW Signal: -90 dBm EncryptionRaw: WPA2 AES Encryption: WPA2
4) Askey5100-DC9A      Signal: -92 dBm EncryptionRaw: WPA2 AES Encryption: WPA2
5) littleBIGfamily_Study      Signal: -92 dBm EncryptionRaw: WPA/WPA2 AES      Encry
6) DUCATI_84      Signal: -94 dBm EncryptionRaw: WPA2 AES Encryption: WPA2
7) Askey5100-ADF9      Signal: -96 dBm EncryptionRaw: WPA2 AES Encryption: WPA2
8) SINGTEL-DDDE(2.4G)      Signal: -96 dBm EncryptionRaw: WPA2 AES Encryption: WPA2
9) elijah24      Signal: -96 dBm EncryptionRaw: WPA2 AES Encryption: WPA2
10) Linksys23699      Signal: -98 dBm EncryptionRaw: WPA2 AES Encryption: WPA2
11) sweetchild-AP      Signal: -102 dBm      EncryptionRaw: WPA2 AES Encryption: W
12) elijah      Signal: -107 dBm      EncryptionRaw: WPA2 AES Encryption: WPA2
13) SINGTEL-B6B4      Signal: -108 dBm      EncryptionRaw: WPA2 AES Encryption: W
14) Yowie Network      Signal: -108 dBm      EncryptionRaw: WPA/WPA2 AES      Encry
15) SINGTEL-A01F      Signal: -109 dBm      EncryptionRaw: WPA/WPA2 AES      Encry
16) ASUS      Signal: -109 dBm      EncryptionRaw: WPA2 AES Encryption: WPA2
17) TP-LINK_5385      Signal: -109 dBm      EncryptionRaw: WPA/WPA2 AES      Encry
18)      Signal: -109 dBm      EncryptionRaw: WPA2 AES Encryption: WPA2
19) ORBI33      Signal: -109 dBm      EncryptionRaw: WPA2 AES Encryption: WPA2

```

☒ Autoscroll
 ☐ Show timestamp
 Newline
 115200 baud
 Clear output

Code Reference

First we use `WiFi.macAddress(mac)` to get the MAC address of Ameba:

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiMACAddress>

Then we use `WiFi.scanNetworks()` to detect WiFi hotspots:

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiScanNetworks>

To get information of detected WiFi hotspot:

We use `WiFi.SSID(thisNet)` to retrieve SSID of a network:

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiSSID>

We use `WiFi.RSSI(thisNet)` to get the signal strength of the connection to the router:

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiRSSI>

We use `WiFi.encryptionType(thisNet)` to get the encryption type of the network:

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiEncryptionType>

Comparison with Arduino

In the Arduino platform, we need to add an extra WiFi shield to be the WiFi module to realize the WiFi connection. And we must `#include` to use SPI to communicate with WiFi module.

However, Ameba is already equipped with WiFi module. Therefore, `#include` is not needed.

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Connect to WiFi

Materials

- Ameba x 1

Procedure

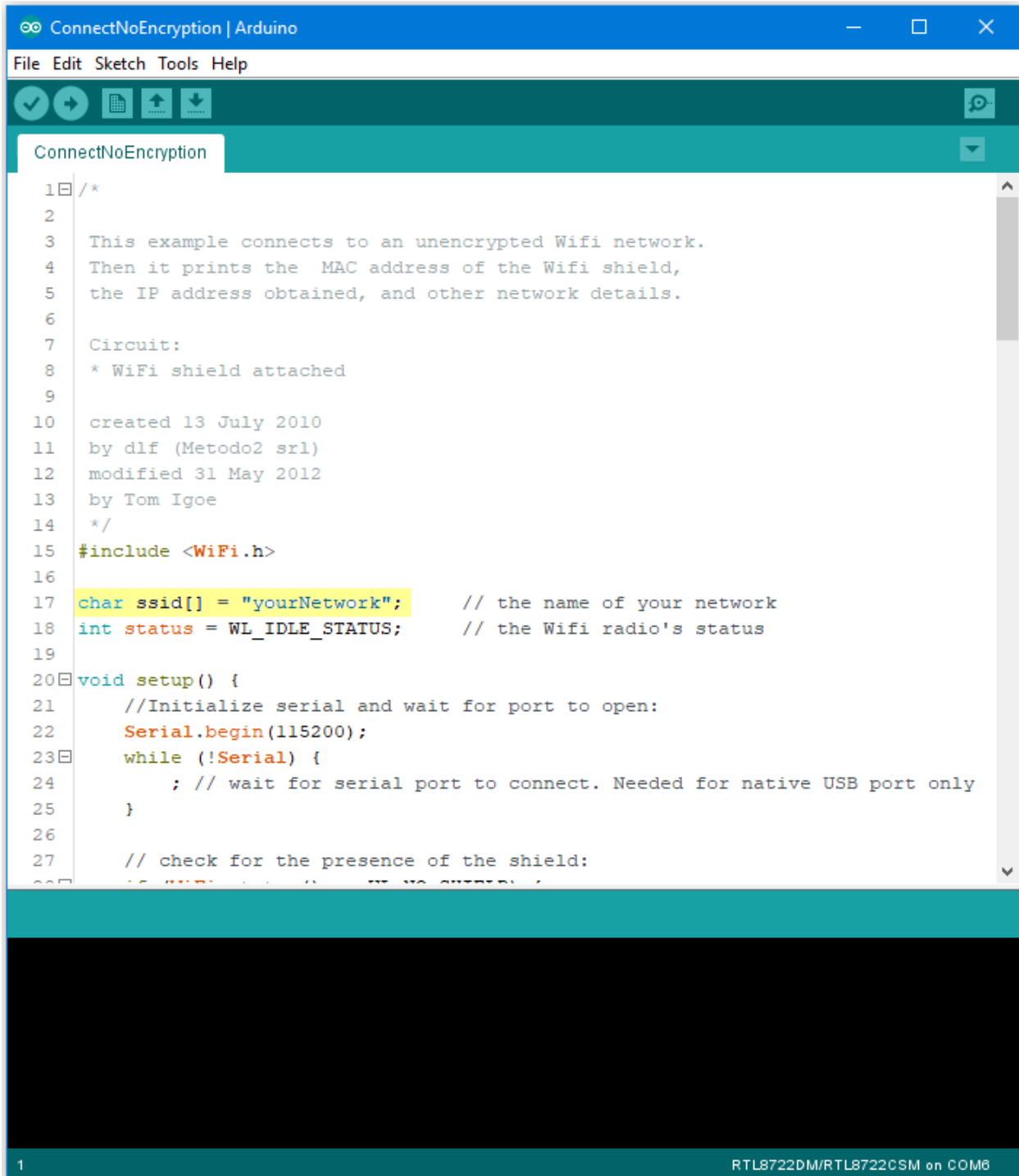
There three common encryption type in WiFi connection. The first one is “OPEN”, which means there is no password needed to connect to this network. The second type of encryption is WPA, which requires the correct password to access. The third type is WEP, which requires a hexadecimal password and a keyindex.

In the following, we will give a brief introduction on how to establish WiFi connection with these three types of encryption on Ameba.

First, make sure the correct Ameba development board is selected in “Tools” -> “Board”.

- Open (WiFi connection without password)

Open the “ConnectNoEncryption” example in “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaWiFi” -> “ConnectWithWiFi” -> “ConnectNoEncryption”



```

1  /*
2
3   This example connects to an unencrypted Wifi network.
4   Then it prints the  MAC address of the Wifi shield,
5   the IP address obtained, and other network details.
6
7   Circuit:
8   * Wifi shield attached
9
10  created 13 July 2010
11  by dlf (Metodo2 srl)
12  modified 31 May 2012
13  by Tom Igoe
14  */
15  #include <WiFi.h>
16
17  char ssid[] = "yourNetwork";    // the name of your network
18  int status = WL_IDLE_STATUS;    // the Wifi radio's status
19
20  void setup() {
21    //Initialize serial and wait for port to open:
22    Serial.begin(115200);
23    while (!Serial) {
24      ; // wait for serial port to connect. Needed for native USB port only
25    }
26
27    // check for the presence of the shield:
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99
100

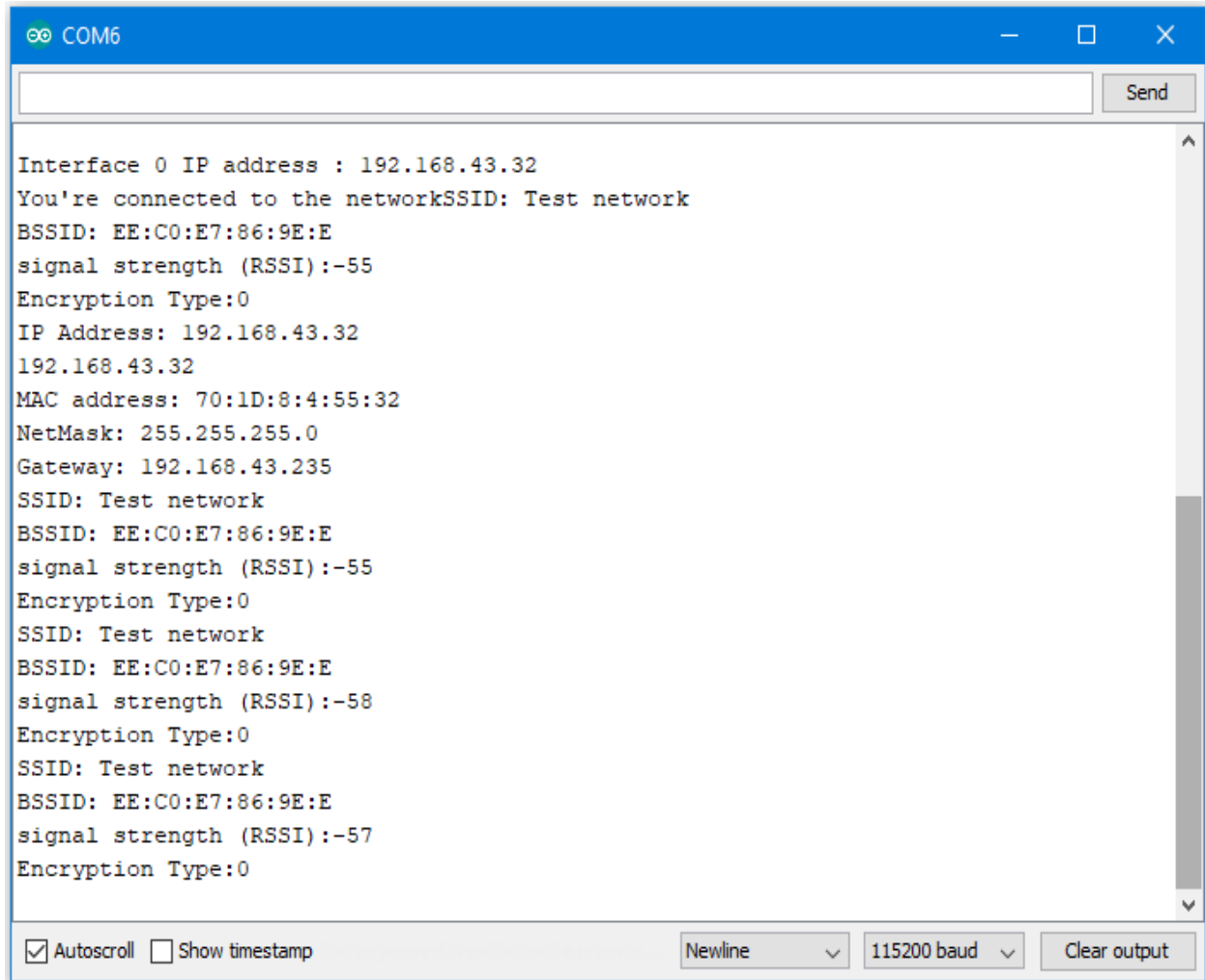
```

1

RTL8722DM/RTL8722CSM on COM6

In the sample code, modify “ssid” to be the same as the WiFi SSID to be connected to.

Next, upload the sample code, and press the reset button on Ameba. Then you will see a message “You’re connected to the networkSSID: XXXXX”, and the information of this WiFi connection is printed in the serial monitor every 10 seconds.



- WiFi connection with WPA encryption

Open the "ConnectWithWPA" example in "File" -> "Examples" -> "AmebaWiFi" -> "ConnectWithWiFi" -> "ConnectWithWPA"

```

1  /*
2
3   This example connects to an unencrypted Wifi network.
4   Then it prints the  MAC address of the Wifi shield,
5   the IP address obtained, and other network details.
6
7   Circuit:
8   * Wifi shield attached
9
10  created 13 July 2010
11  by dlf (Metodo2 srl)
12  modified 31 May 2012
13  by Tom Igoe
14  */
15  #include <WiFi.h>
16
17  char ssid[] = "yourNetwork"; // your network SSID (name)
18  char pass[] = "secretPassword"; // your network password
19  int status = WL_IDLE_STATUS; // the Wifi radio's status
20
21  void setup() {
22    //Initialize serial and wait for port to open:
23    Serial.begin(115200);
24    while (!Serial) {
25      ; // wait for serial port to connect. Needed for native USB port only
26    }
27
28    // ...

```

1

RTL8722DM/RTL8722C5M on COM8

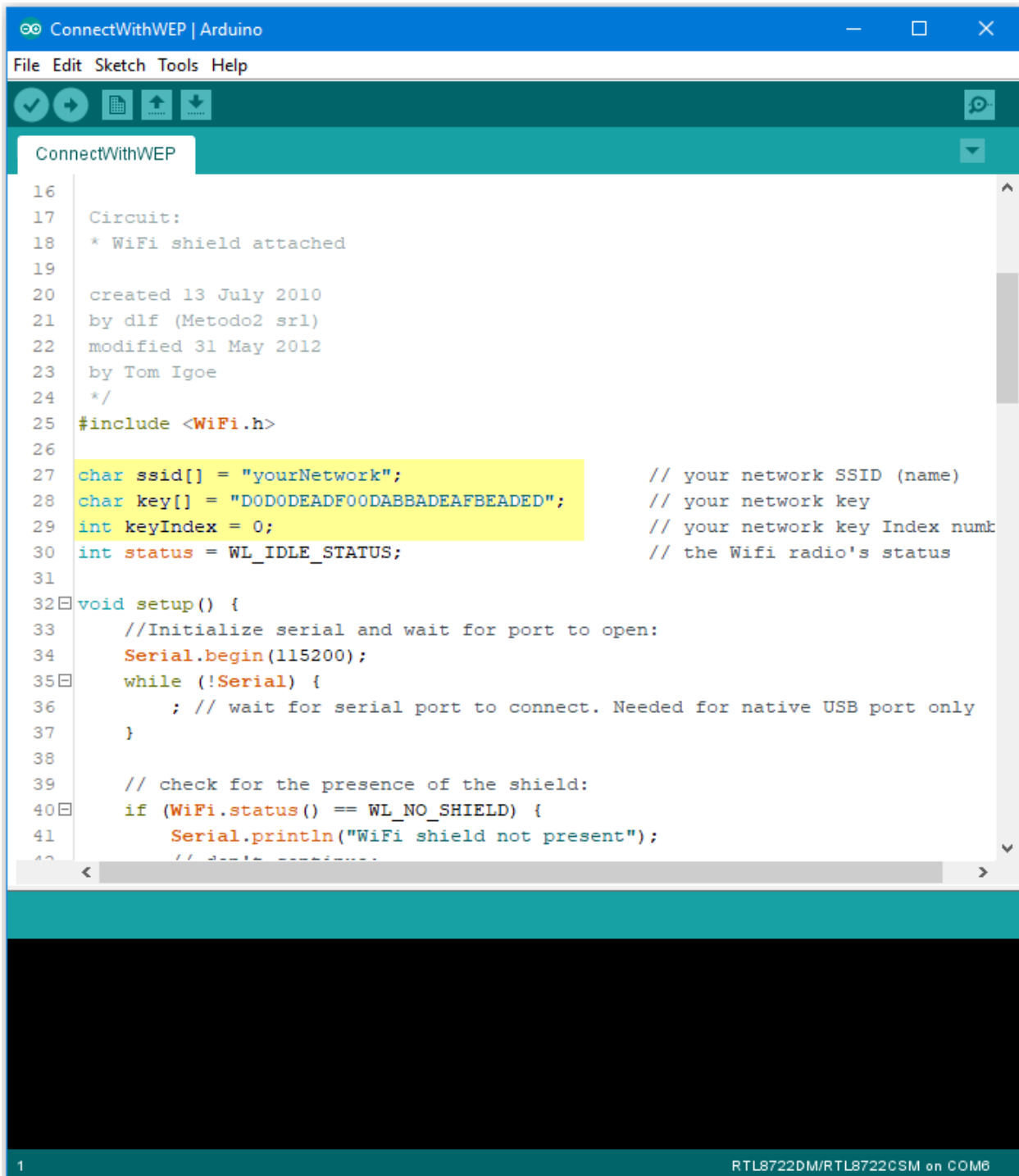
In the sample code, modify “ssid” to the WiFi SSID to be connected to and “pass” to the network password.

Next, upload the sample code, and press the reset button on Ameba. Then you will see a message “You’re connected to the networkSSID: XXXXX”, and the information of this WiFi connection is printed in the serial monitor every 10 seconds.

- WiFi connection with WEP encryption

Open the “ConnectWithWEP” example in “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaWiFi” -> “ConnectWithWiFi” -> “Con-

nectWithWEP”



```

16
17  Circuit:
18  * WiFi shield attached
19
20  created 13 July 2010
21  by dlf (Metodo2 srl)
22  modified 31 May 2012
23  by Tom Igoe
24  */
25  #include <WiFi.h>
26
27  char ssid[] = "yourNetwork";           // your network SSID (name)
28  char key[] = "D0D0DEADF00DABBADEAFBEADED"; // your network key
29  int keyIndex = 0;                       // your network key Index numb
30  int status = WL_IDLE_STATUS;           // the Wifi radio's status
31
32  void setup() {
33    //Initialize serial and wait for port to open:
34    Serial.begin(115200);
35    while (!Serial) {
36      ; // wait for serial port to connect. Needed for native USB port only
37    }
38
39    // check for the presence of the shield:
40    if (WiFi.status() == WL_NO_SHIELD) {
41      Serial.println("WiFi shield not present");
42      // don't continue

```

In the sample code, modify “ssid” to the SSID to be connected, “key” to the hexadecimal password, “keyIndex” to your key index number.

Next, upload the sample code, and press the reset button on Ameba. Then you will see a message “You’re connected to the networkSSID: XXXXX”, and the information of this WiFi connection is printed in the IDE every 10 seconds.

Code Reference

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiBegin>

To get the information of a WiFi connection:

Use `WiFi.SSID()` to get SSID of the current connected network.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiSSID>

Use `WiFi.RSSI()` to get the signal strength of the connection.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiRSSI>

Use `WiFi.encryptionType()` to get the encryption type of the WiFi connection.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiEncryptionType>

Use `WiFi.BSSID()` to get the MAC address of the router you are connected to.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiBSSID>

To get the information of Ameba:

Use `WiFi.macAddress()` to get the MAC address of Ameba.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiMACAddress>

Use `WiFi.localIP()` to get the IP address of Ameba.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiLocalIP>

Use `WiFi.subnetMask()` to get the subnet mask.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiSubnetMask>

Use `WiFi.gatewayIP()` to get the WiFi shield's gateway IP address.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiGatewayIP>

Comparison with Arduino

In the Arduino platform, we need to add an extra WiFi shield to be the WiFi module to realize the WiFi connection.

And we must `#include` to use SPI to communicate with WiFi module.

However, Ameba is already equipped with WiFi module. Therefore, `#include` is not needed.

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Use Ameba as Server to communicate with Client

Materials

- Ameba x 1
- **Laptop**(Make sure it is connected to the same network domain as Ameba, and tcp tools are installed.)

Example

In this example, we first connect Ameba to WiFi, then we use Ameba as server to communicate with client.

First, we make sure the correct Ameba development board is set in “Tools” -> “Board”

Then, open the Simple WiFi Server example in “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaWiFi” -> “SimpleServerWiFi”

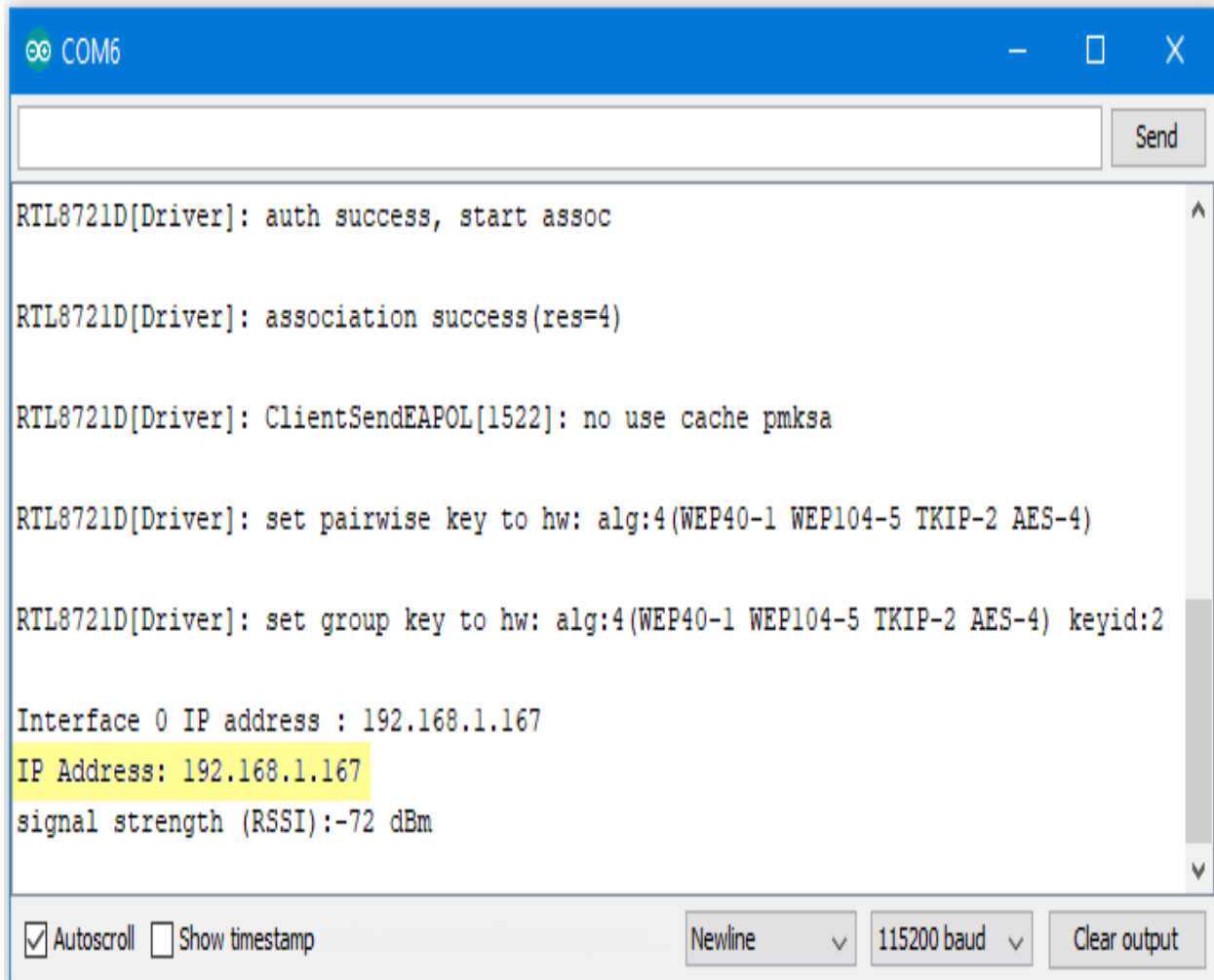
```

1  #include <WiFi.h>
2
3  char ssid[] = "yourNetwork";    // your network SSID (name)
4  char pass[] = "secretPassword"; // your network password
5  int keyIndex = 0;               // your network key Index number (needed only for WEP)
6
7  int status = WL_IDLE_STATUS;
8  WiFiServer server(5000);
9
10 void setup() {
11     Serial.begin(115200);        // initialize serial communication
12     pinMode(9, OUTPUT);         // set the LED pin mode
13
14     // check for the presence of the shield:
15     if (WiFi.status() == WL_NO_SHIELD) {
16         Serial.println("WiFi shield not present");
17         while (true);           // don't continue
18     }
19
20     String fv = WiFi.firmwareVersion();
21     if ( fv != "1.0.0" ) {
22         Serial.println("Please upgrade the firmware");
23     }
24     // attempt to connect to Wifi network:
25     while ( status != WL_CONNECTED) {
26         Serial.print("Attempting to connect to Network named: ");
27         Serial.println(ssid);    // print the network name (SSID);
28
29         // Connect to WPA/WPA2 network. Change this line if using open or WEP network

```

In the sample code, modify the highlighted parameters and enter the ssid and password for your WiFi connection.

Next, upload the code, then press the reset button on Ameba. At this moment, you will see the connection information is displayed in the console.



```
COM6

RTL8721D[Driver]: auth success, start assoc

RTL8721D[Driver]: association success(res=4)

RTL8721D[Driver]: ClientSendEAPOL[1522]: no use cache pmksa

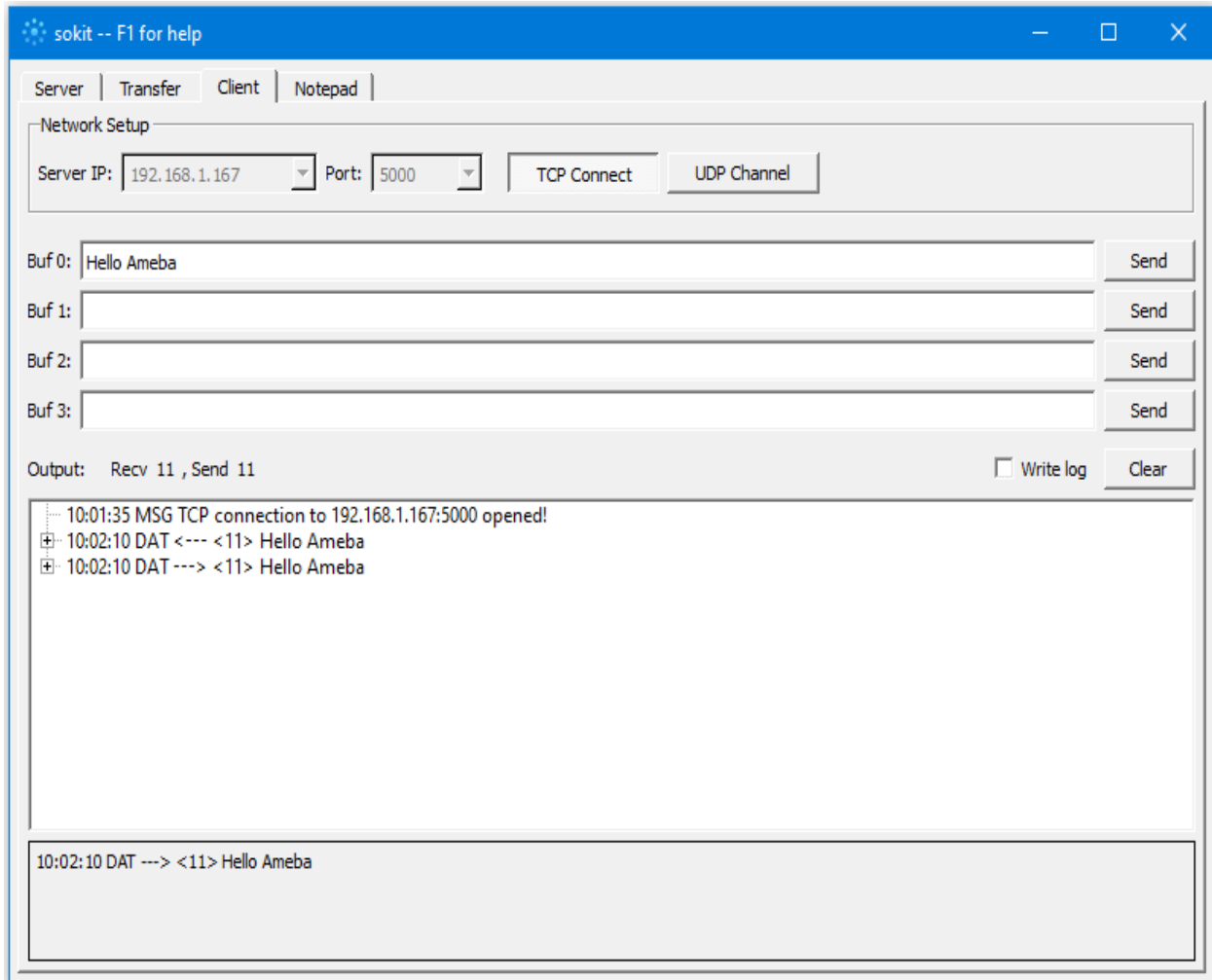
RTL8721D[Driver]: set pairwise key to hw: alg:4(WEP40-1 WEP104-5 TKIP-2 AES-4)

RTL8721D[Driver]: set group key to hw: alg:4(WEP40-1 WEP104-5 TKIP-2 AES-4) keyid:2

Interface 0 IP address : 192.168.1.167
IP Address: 192.168.1.167
signal strength (RSSI):-72 dBm

☒ Autoscroll ☐ Show timestamp
Newline ▼ 115200 baud ▼ Clear output
```

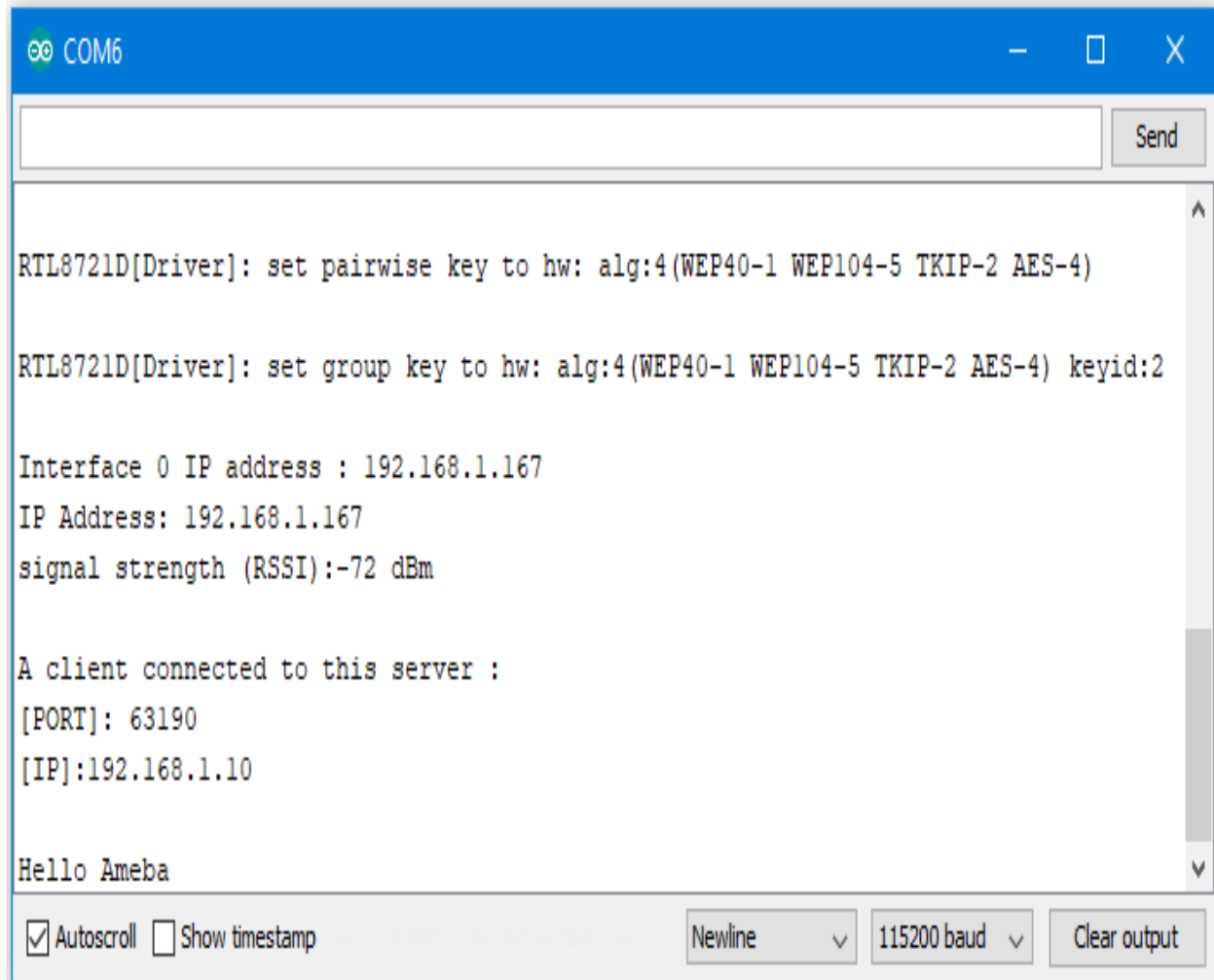
Next, we use the socket tool in the laptop to be the client and connect to the IP address of the Ameba board shown in the connection information at port 5000. (Note: The socket tool we used in this example is “sokit”)



Click on the “Client” tab to choose the client mode, specify the IP and port of the server, then click “TCP Connect”.

If the connection is established successfully, the server shows a message: “A client connected to this Server”, and the IP and port of the connected client.

In this example, when the client and server are connected and the client sends a string to Ameba server, the Ameba server returns the identical string back to the client.



The string sent to server is returned and showed at the client side.

Code reference

Use `WiFi.begin()` to establish WiFi connection;

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiBegin>

To get the information of a WiFi connection:

Use `WiFi.SSID()` to get SSID of the current connected network.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiSSID>

Use `WiFi.RSSI()` to get the signal strength of the connection.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiRSSI>

Use `WiFi.localIP()` to get the Ameba WiFi shield's IP address.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiLocalIP>

Create server and transmitting data:

Use `Server(port)` to create a server that listens on the specified port.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiServer>

Use `server.begin()` to tell the server to begin listening for incoming connections.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiServerBegin>

Use `server.available()` to get a client that is connected to the server and has data available for reading.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiServerAvailable>

Use `client.read()` to read the next byte received from the server.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiClientRead>

Use `client.write()` to write data to the server.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiClientWrite>

Use `client.stop()` to disconnect from the server.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiClientStop>

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Use Ameba to retrieve HTTP websites from the internet

Materials

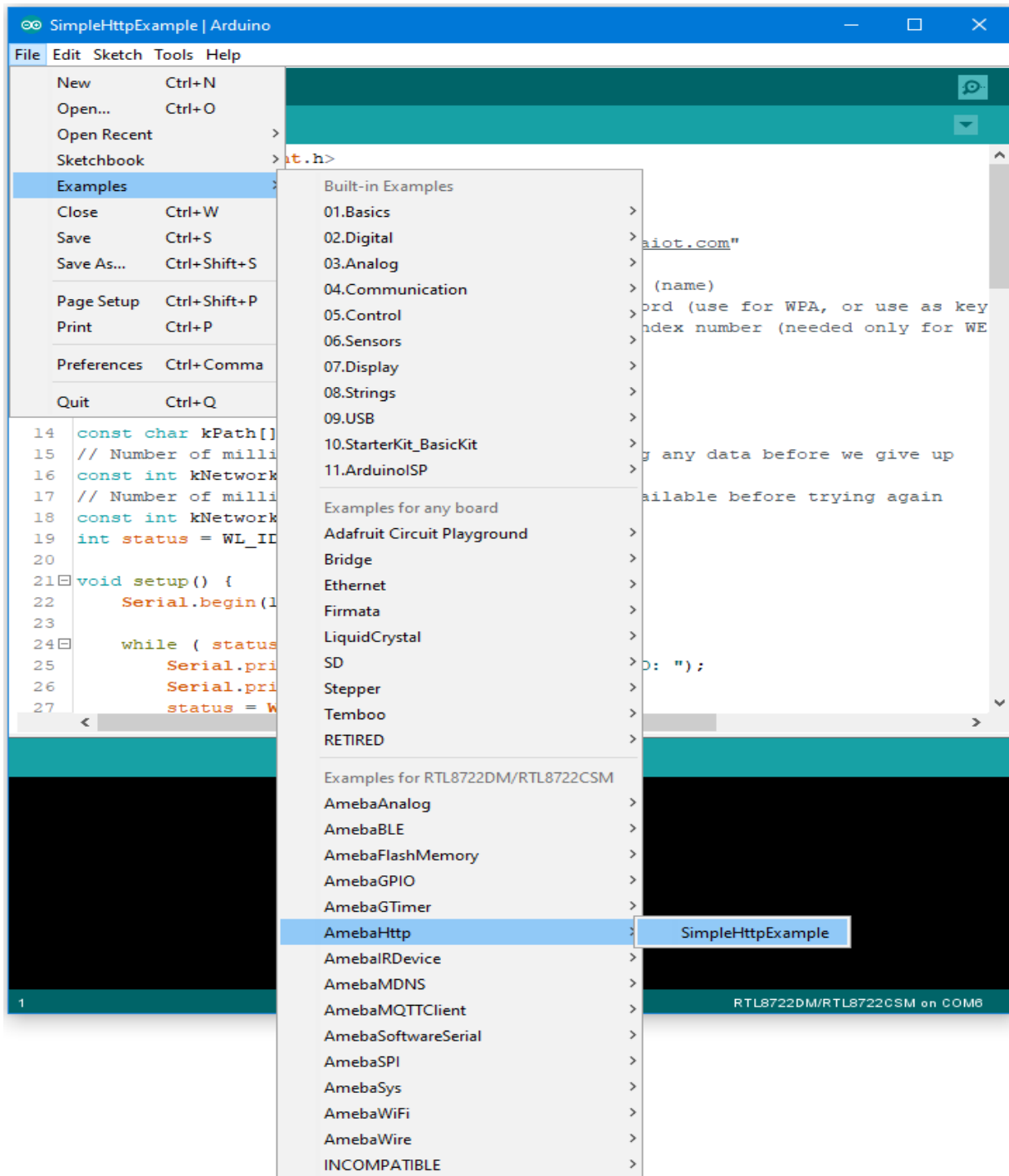
- Ameba x 1

Example

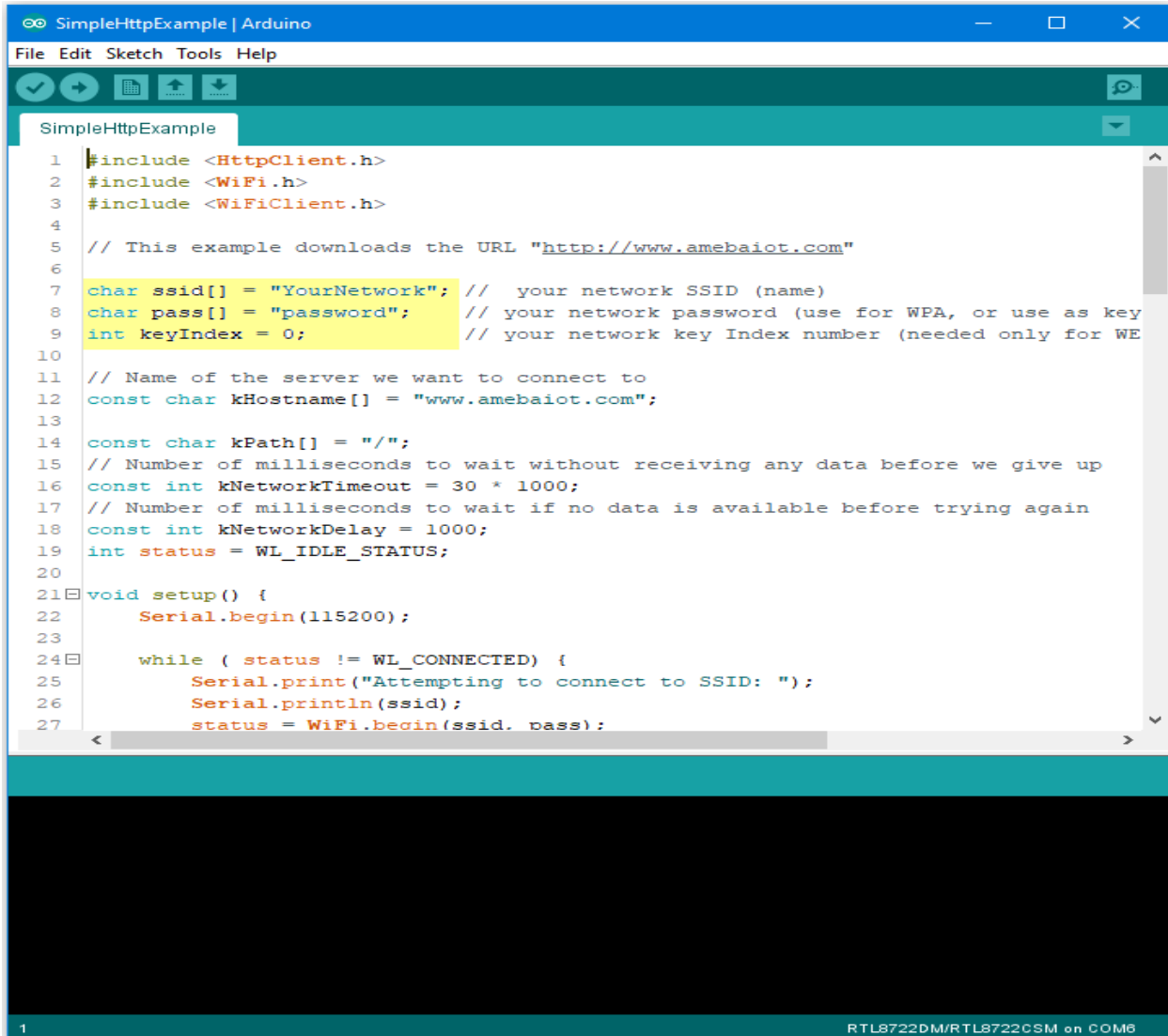
In this example, the `HttpClient` library is used to retrieve a webpage using the HTTP protocol.

First, make sure that the correct Ameba development board is selected in “Tools” -> “Board”

Then open “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaHttp” -> “SimpleHttpExample”



In the sample code, modify the highlighted section to enter the information required (ssid, password, key index) to connect to your WiFi network.



```

SimpleHttpExample | Arduino
File Edit Sketch Tools Help

SimpleHttpExample

1 #include <HttpClient.h>
2 #include <WiFi.h>
3 #include <WiFiClient.h>
4
5 // This example downloads the URL "http://www.amebaiot.com"
6
7 char ssid[] = "YourNetwork"; // your network SSID (name)
8 char pass[] = "password"; // your network password (use for WPA, or use as key
9 int keyIndex = 0; // your network key Index number (needed only for WE
10
11 // Name of the server we want to connect to
12 const char kHostname[] = "www.amebaiot.com";
13
14 const char kPath[] = "/";
15 // Number of milliseconds to wait without receiving any data before we give up
16 const int kNetworkTimeout = 30 * 1000;
17 // Number of milliseconds to wait if no data is available before trying again
18 const int kNetworkDelay = 1000;
19 int status = WL_IDLE_STATUS;
20
21 void setup() {
22     Serial.begin(115200);
23
24     while ( status != WL_CONNECTED) {
25         Serial.print("Attempting to connect to SSID: ");
26         Serial.println(ssid);
27         status = WiFi.begin(ssid, pass);

```

1 RTL8722DM/RTL8722CSM on COM8

Upload the code and press the reset button on Ameba once the upload is finished. Open the serial monitor in the Arduino IDE and you can see the information retrieved from the website.

```

COM4

Interface 0 IP address : 172.25.24.188Connected to wifi
SSID: RealEZ
IP Address: 172.25.24.188
signal strength (RSSI):-56 dBm

Connect to Server successful!
startedRequest ok
Got status code: 200
Content length is: 0

Body returned follows:
<!doctype html><html itemscope="" itemtype="http://schema.org/WebPage" lang="en-SG"><head><meta content=
document.documentElement.addEventListener("submit",function(b){var a;if(a=b.target){var c=a.getAttribute
var a=window.location,b=a.href.indexOf("#");if(0<=b){var c=a.href.substring(b+1);//(^|&)q=/.test(c)&&-l==
</style><style>body,td,a,p,.h{font-family:arial,sans-serif}body{margin:0;overflow-y:scroll}#gog{padding:
if (!iesg){document.f&&document.f.q.focus();document.gbqf&&document.gbqf.q.focus();}
}
})();</script><div id="mngb"> <div id=gbar><noabr><b class=gbl>Search</b> <a class=gbl href="http://www.g
else top.location='/doodles/';});})();</script><input value="AAP1E1EAAAAAXjAd2Cy4lLwKhgibG7of5MoLQmLDRW2G
setTimeout(function(){var b=document;var a="SCRIPT";"application/xhtml+xml"===b.contentType&&(a=a.toLowe
function _F_installCss(c){}
(function(){google.spjs=false;google.snet=true;google.em=[];google.emw=false;})();(function(){var pmc='
<

```

Autoscroll ☒ Show timestamp ☐ No line ending

Code Reference

Use `WiFi.begin()` to establish WiFi connection:

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiBegin>

To get the information of a WiFi connection:

Use `WiFi.SSID()` to get SSID of the current connected network.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiSSID>

Use `WiFi.RSSI()` to get the signal strength of the connection.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiRSSI>

Use `WiFi.localIP()` to get the IP address of Ameba.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiLocalIP>

Use `WiFiClient` to create a client to handle the WiFi connection.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiClient>

Use `HTTPClient` to create a client to handle the HTTP connection.

Use `http.get()` to send a GET request to the website.

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Use Ameba to retrieve information from the Internet

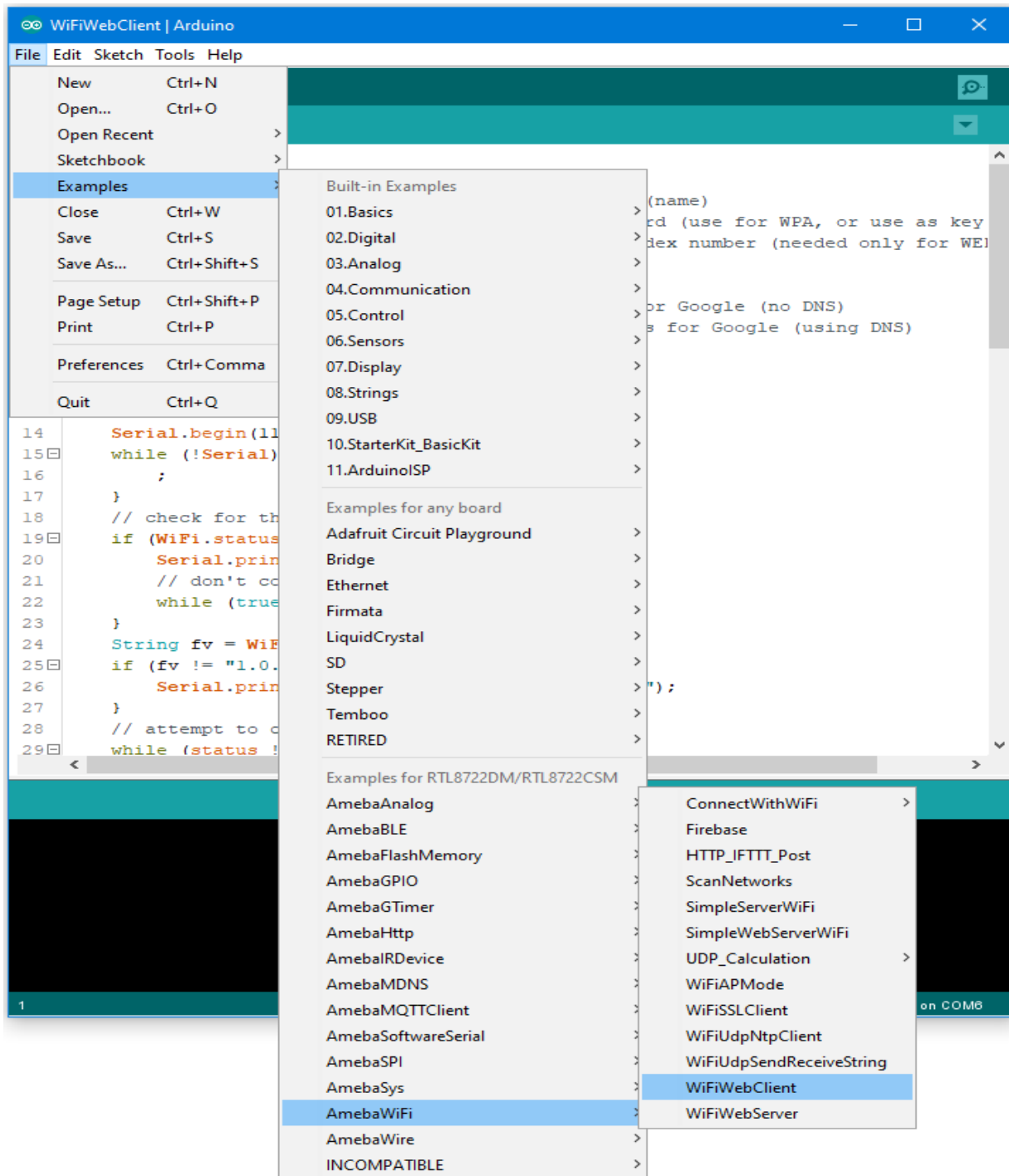
Materials

- Ameba x 1

Example

In this example, we use Ameba to be a web client to retrieve information from the Internet.
First, make sure the correct Ameba development board is selected in “Tools” -> “Board”

Then open “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaWiFi” -> “WiFiWebClient”



In the sample code, modify the highlighted snippet and enter the required information (ssid, password, key index) required to connect to your WiFi network.

```

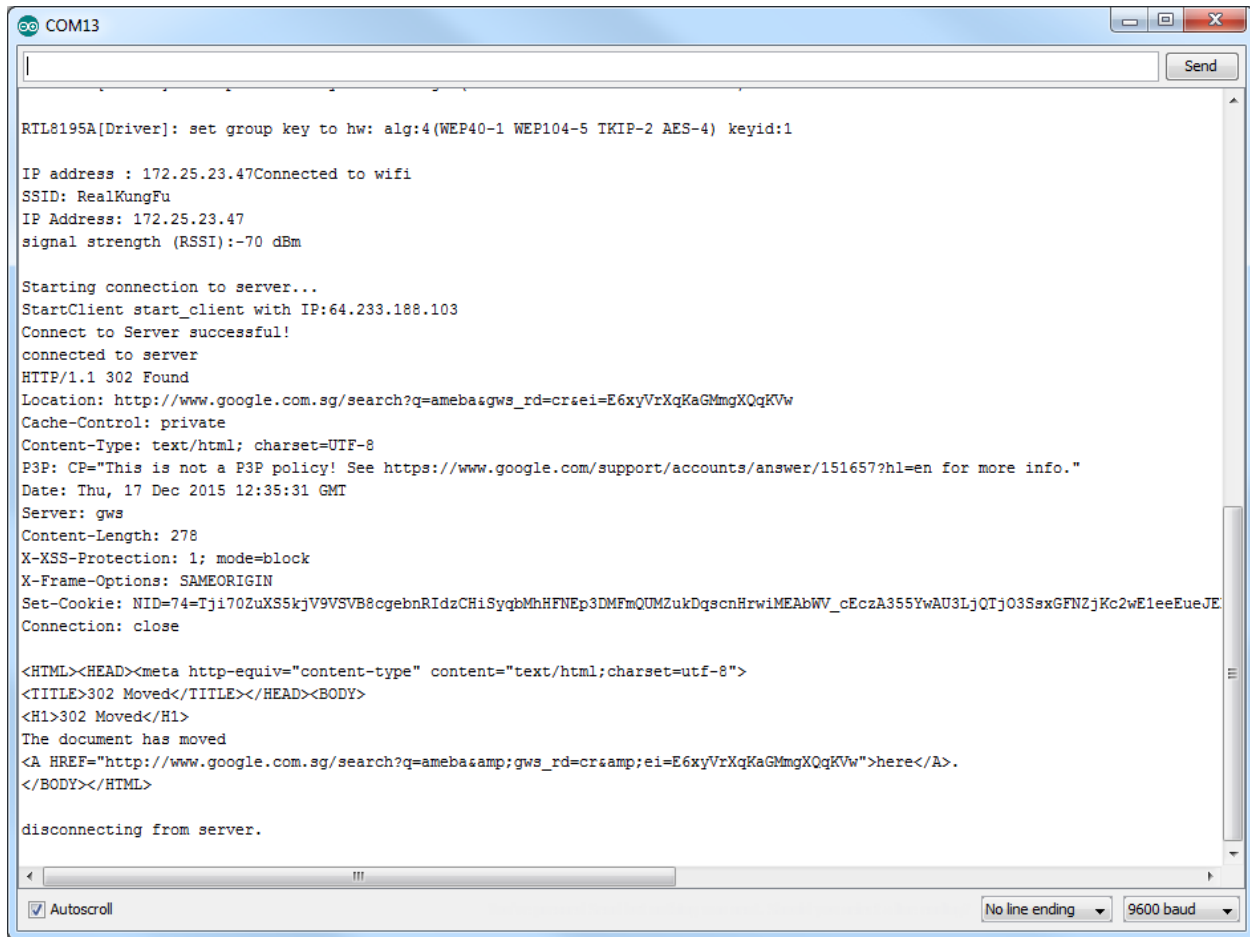
WiFiWebClient | Arduino
File Edit Sketch Tools Help

WiFiWebClient
1 #include <WiFi.h>
2
3 char ssid[] = "yourNetwork"; // your network SSID (name)
4 char pass[] = "password";    // your network password (use for WPA, or use as key
5 int keyIndex = 0;            // your network key Index number (needed only for WE
6
7 int status = WL_IDLE_STATUS;
8 //IPAddress server(64,233,189,94); // numeric IP for Google (no DNS)
9 char server[] = "www.google.com"; // name address for Google (using DNS)
10
11 WiFiClient client;
12 void setup() {
13     //Initialize serial and wait for port to open:
14     Serial.begin(115200);
15     while (!Serial) {
16         ;
17     }
18     // check for the presence of the shield:
19     if (WiFi.status() == WL_NO_SHIELD) {
20         Serial.println("WiFi shield not present");
21         // don't continue:
22         while (true);
23     }
24     String fv = WiFi.firmwareVersion();
25     if (fv != "1.0.0") {
26         Serial.println("Please upgrade the firmware");
27     }
28     // attempt to connect to Wifi network:
29     while (status != WL_CONNECTED) {

```

1 RTL8722DM/RTL8722CSM on COM8

Upload the code and press the reset button on Ameba. Then you can see the information retrieved from Google is shown in the Arduino serial monitor.



```

COM13

RTL8195A[Driver]: set group key to hw: alg:4(WEP40-1 WEP104-5 TKIP-2 AES-4) keyid:1

IP address : 172.25.23.47Connected to wifi
SSID: RealKungFu
IP Address: 172.25.23.47
signal strength (RSSI):-70 dBm

Starting connection to server...
StartClient start_client with IP:64.233.188.103
Connect to Server successful!
connected to server
HTTP/1.1 302 Found
Location: http://www.google.com.sg/search?q=ameba&gws_rd=cr&ei=E6xyVrXqKaGMmgXQqKVw
Cache-Control: private
Content-Type: text/html; charset=UTF-8
P3P: CP="This is not a P3P policy! See https://www.google.com/support/accounts/answer/151657?hl=en for more info."
Date: Thu, 17 Dec 2015 12:35:31 GMT
Server: gws
Content-Length: 278
X-XSS-Protection: 1; mode=block
X-Frame-Options: SAMEORIGIN
Set-Cookie: NID=74=Tji70ZuXS5kjV9VSVB8cgebnRIdzCHiSyqbMhHFNEp3DMFmQUMZukDqscnHrwiMEAbWV_cEcZA355YwAU3LjQTj03SsxGFNZjKc2wE1eeEueJF
Connection: close

<HTML><HEAD><meta http-equiv="content-type" content="text/html; charset=utf-8">
<TITLE>302 Moved</TITLE></HEAD><BODY>
<H1>302 Moved</H1>
The document has moved
<A HREF="http://www.google.com.sg/search?q=ameba&gws_rd=cr&ei=E6xyVrXqKaGMmgXQqKVw">here</A>.
</BODY></HTML>

disconnecting from server.

```

Code Reference

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiBegin>

To get the information of a WiFi connection: Use `WiFi.SSID()` to get SSID of the current connected network.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiSSID>

Use `WiFi.RSSI()` to get the signal strength of the connection.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiRSSI>

Use `WiFi.localIP()` to get the IP address of Ameba.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiLocalIP>

Use `WiFiClient()` to create a client.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiClient>

Use `client.connect()` to connect to the IP address and port specified.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiClientConnect>

Use `client.println()` to print data followed by a carriage return and newline.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiClientPrintln>

Use `client.available()` to return the number of bytes available for reading.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiClientAvailable>

Use `client.read()` to read the next byte received from the server the client is connected to.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiClientRead>

Use `client.stop()` to disconnect from the server the client is connected to.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiClientStop>

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Use Ameba as Server to control LED

Materials

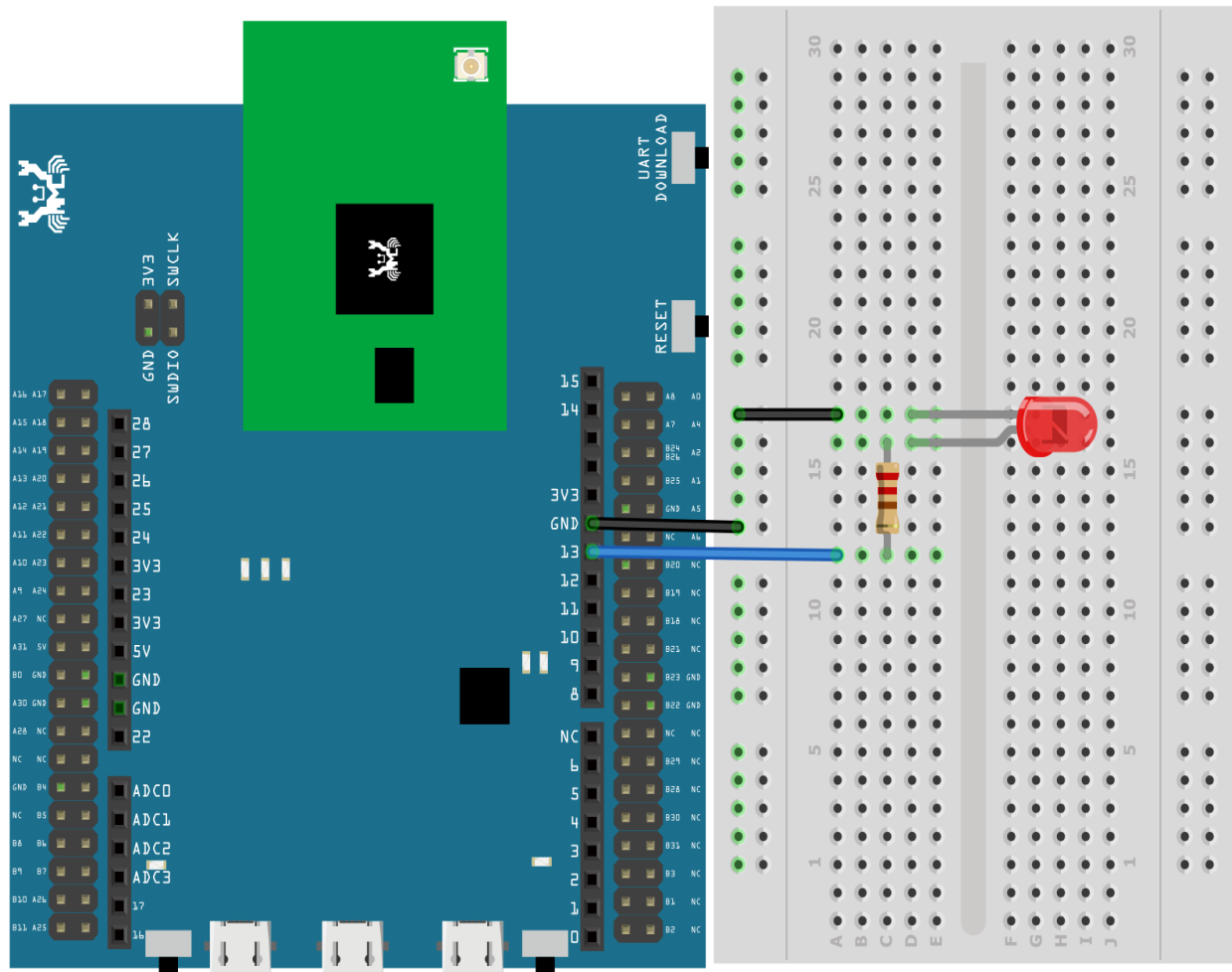
- Ameba x 1
- Breadboard x 1
- LED x 1
- 1K ohm Resistor x 1

Procedure

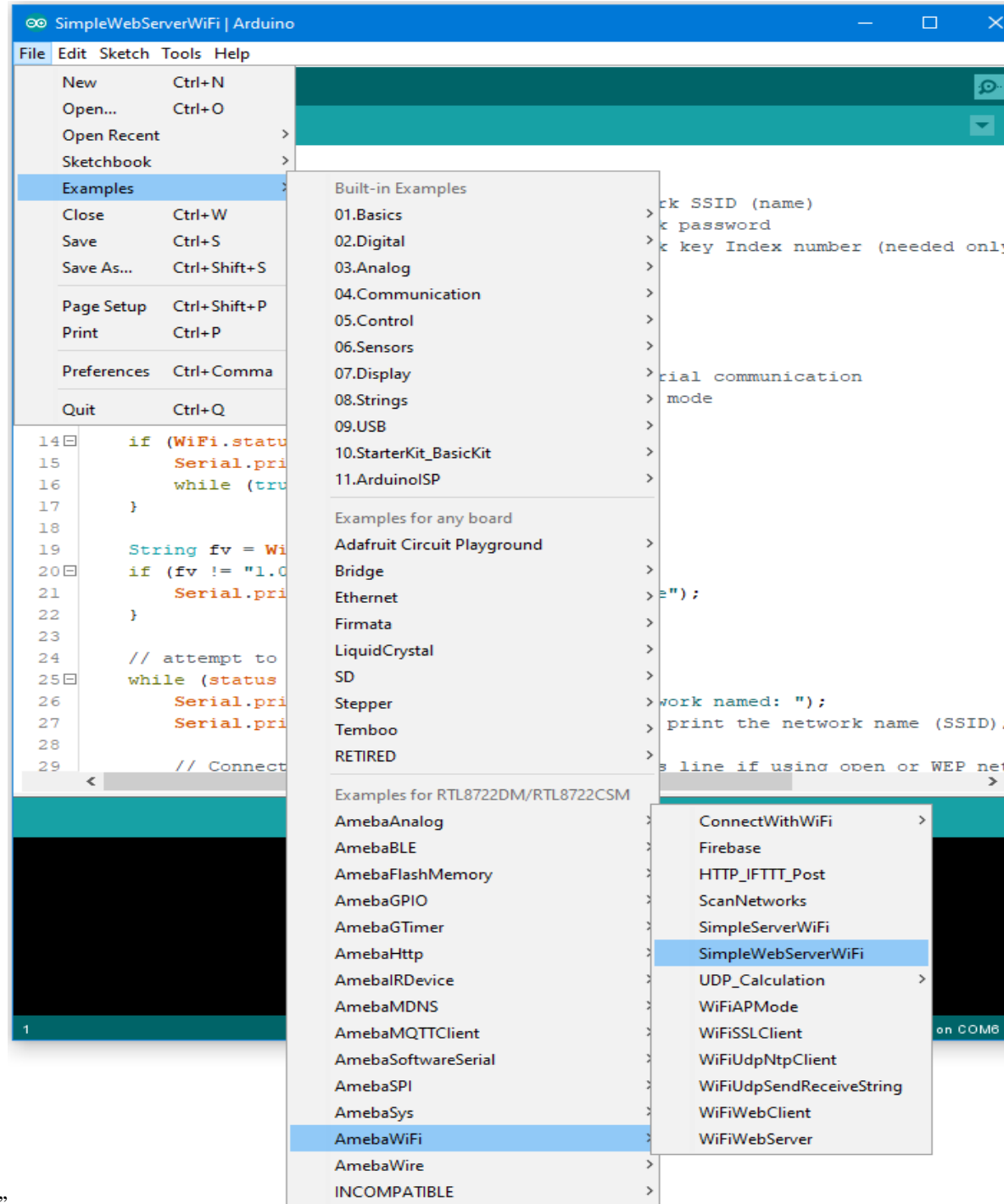
In this example, we connect Ameba to WiFi and use Ameba as server, the user can control the LED on/off through a webpage.

First, connect Ameba with the LED.

In a LED, the longer pin is the positive pole, and the shorter pin is the negative pole. So, we connect the shorter pin to GND and connect the longer pin to D13. Additionally, to avoid the electric current exceeds the tolerance of the LED and causes damage, we connect a resistance on the positive pole.

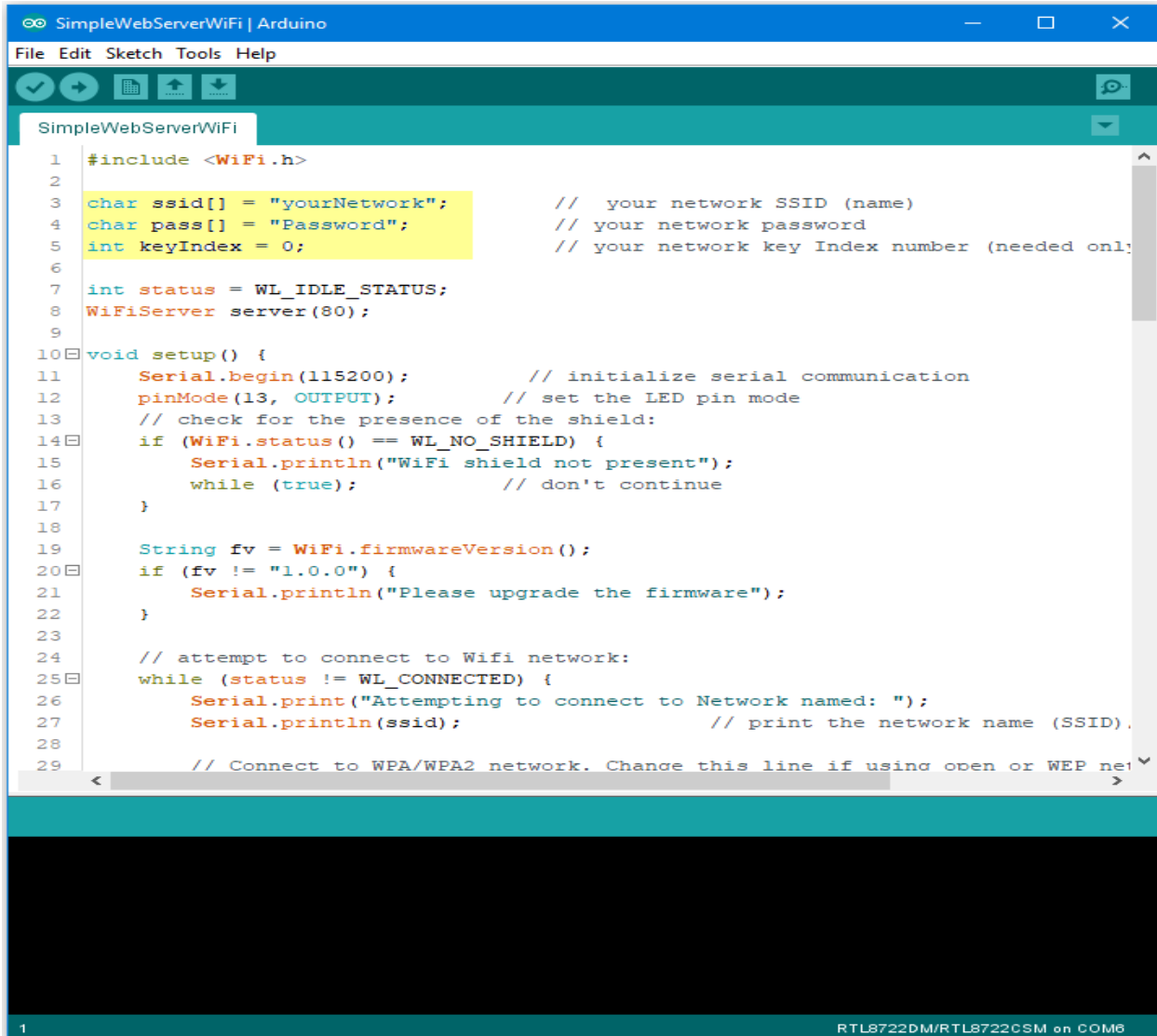


Then open “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaWiFi” ->



“SimpleWebServerWiFi”

In the sample code, modify the highlighted snippet to corresponding information.

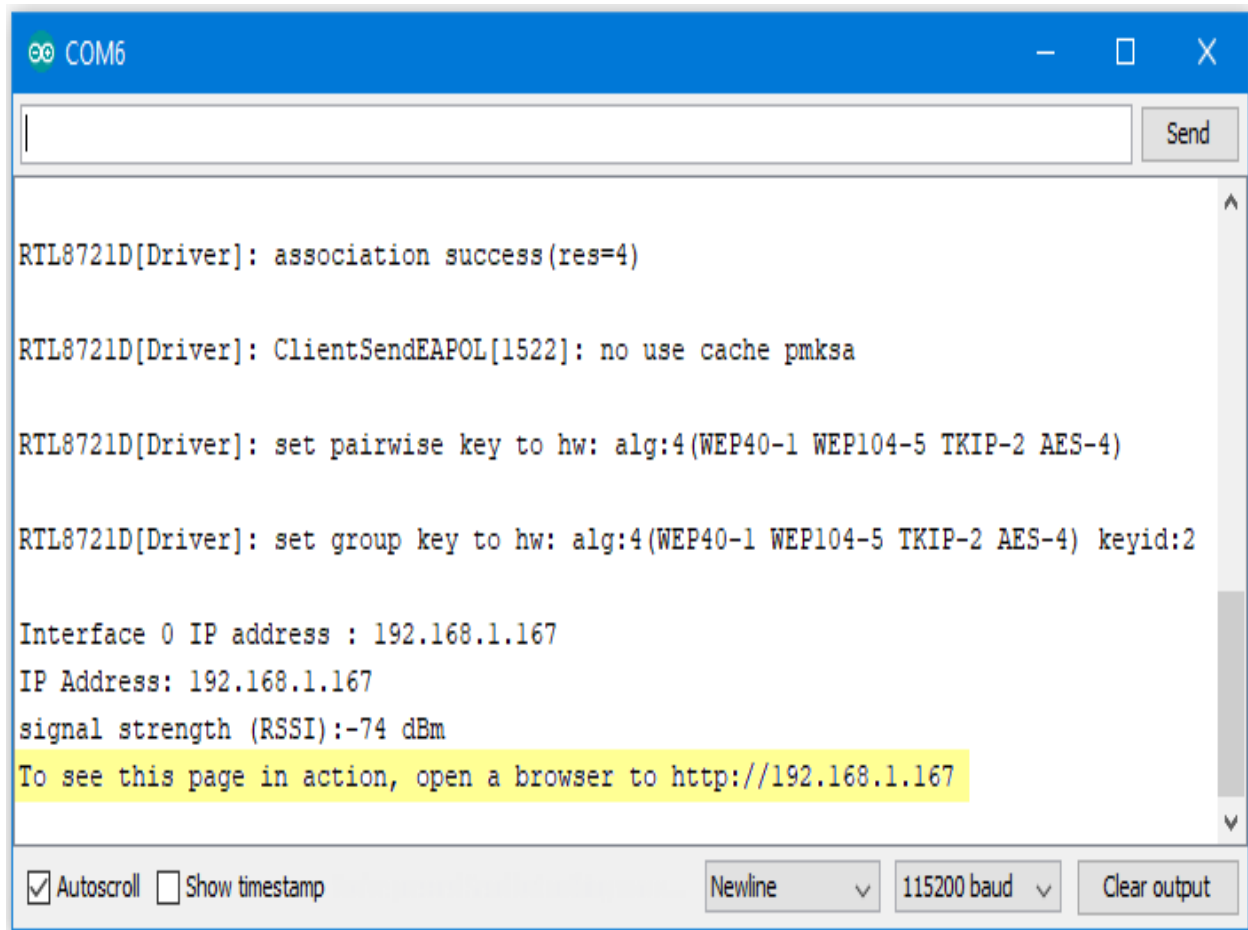


```

1  #include <WiFi.h>
2
3  char ssid[] = "yourNetwork"; // your network SSID (name)
4  char pass[] = "Password"; // your network password
5  int keyIndex = 0; // your network key Index number (needed only)
6
7  int status = WL_IDLE_STATUS;
8  WiFiServer server(80);
9
10 void setup() {
11     Serial.begin(115200); // initialize serial communication
12     pinMode(13, OUTPUT); // set the LED pin mode
13     // check for the presence of the shield:
14     if (WiFi.status() == WL_NO_SHIELD) {
15         Serial.println("WiFi shield not present");
16         while (true); // don't continue
17     }
18
19     String fv = WiFi.firmwareVersion();
20     if (fv != "1.0.0") {
21         Serial.println("Please upgrade the firmware");
22     }
23
24     // attempt to connect to Wifi network:
25     while (status != WL_CONNECTED) {
26         Serial.print("Attempting to connect to Network named: ");
27         Serial.println(ssid); // print the network name (SSID).
28
29         // Connect to WPA/WPA2 network. Change this line if using open or WEP network

```

Upload the code and press the reset button on Ameba. When the connection is established, you will see the message “To see this page in action, open a browser to <http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx>” in the Arduino IDE, as shown in the figure:



```
COM6

RTL8721D[Driver]: association success(res=4)

RTL8721D[Driver]: ClientSendEAPOL[1522]: no use cache pmksa

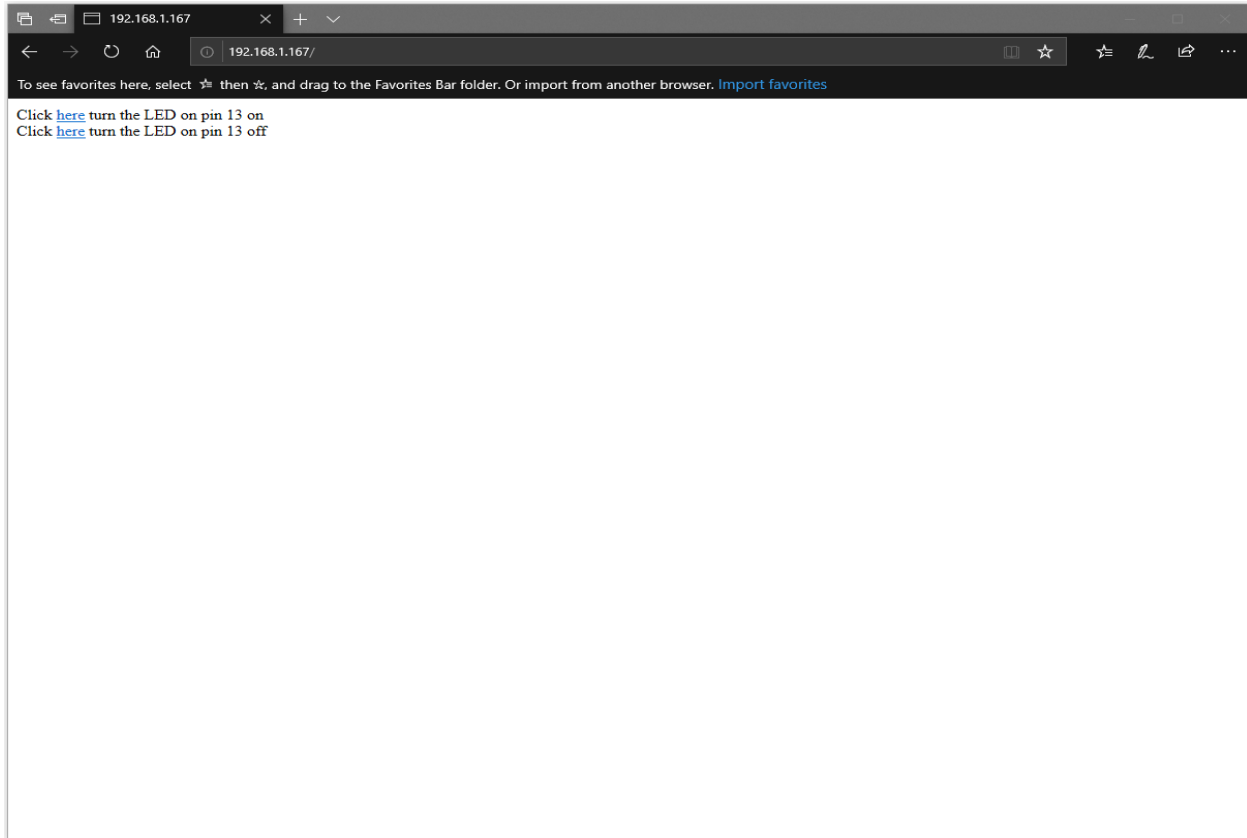
RTL8721D[Driver]: set pairwise key to hw: alg:4(WEP40-1 WEP104-5 TKIP-2 AES-4)

RTL8721D[Driver]: set group key to hw: alg:4(WEP40-1 WEP104-5 TKIP-2 AES-4) keyid:2

Interface 0 IP address : 192.168.1.167
IP Address: 192.168.1.167
signal strength (RSSI):-74 dBm
To see this page in action, open a browser to http://192.168.1.167

☒ Autoscroll ☐ Show timestamp
Newline ▼ 115200 baud ▼ Clear output
```

Next, open the browser of a computer or a cell phone under the same WiFi domain, enter the address in the message.



In the webpage, you can turn on/off the LED.

Code Reference

Use `WiFi.begin()` to establish WiFi connection.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiBegin>

To get the information of a WiFi connection:

Use `WiFi.SSID()` to get SSID of the current connected network.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiSSID>

Use `WiFi.RSSI()` to get the signal strength of the connection.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiRSSI>

Use `WiFi.localIP()` to get the IP address of Ameba.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiLocalIP>

Use `WiFiServer server()` to create a server that listens on the specified port.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiServer>

Use `server.begin()` to tell the server to begin listening for incoming connections.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiServerBegin>

Use `server.available()` to get a client that is connected to the server and has data available for reading.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiServerAvailable>

Use `client.connected` to get whether or not the client is connected.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiClientConnected>

Use `client.println()` to print data followed by a carriage return and newline.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiClientPrintln>

Use `client.print()` to print data to the server that a client is connected to.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiClientPrint>

Use `client.available()` to return the number of bytes available for reading.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiClientAvailable>

Use `client.read()` to read the next byte received from the server the client is connected to.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiClientRead>

Use `client.stop()` to disconnect from the server the client is connected to.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiClientStop>

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Use Ameba as server to send Ameba status

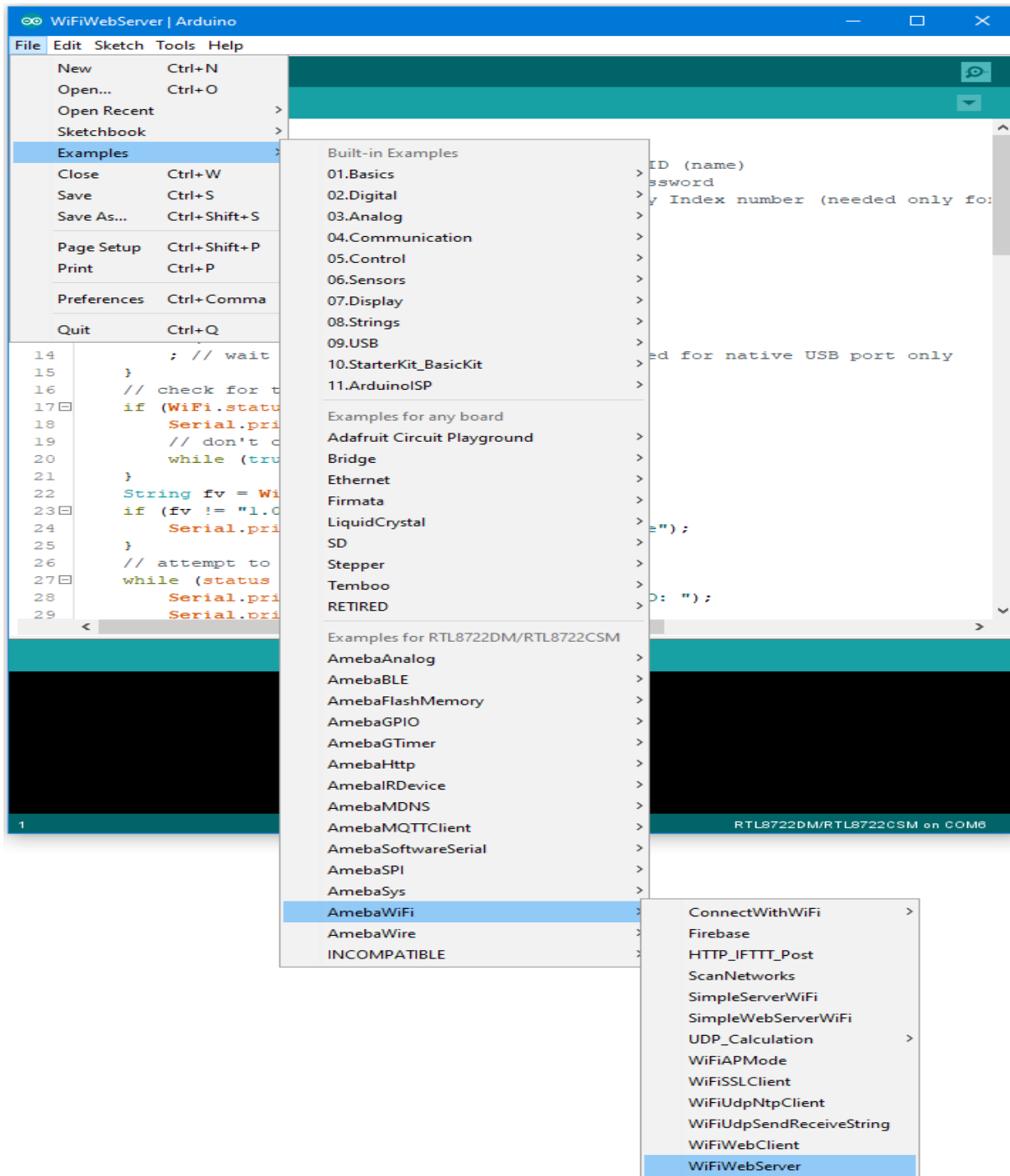
Materials

- Ameba x 1

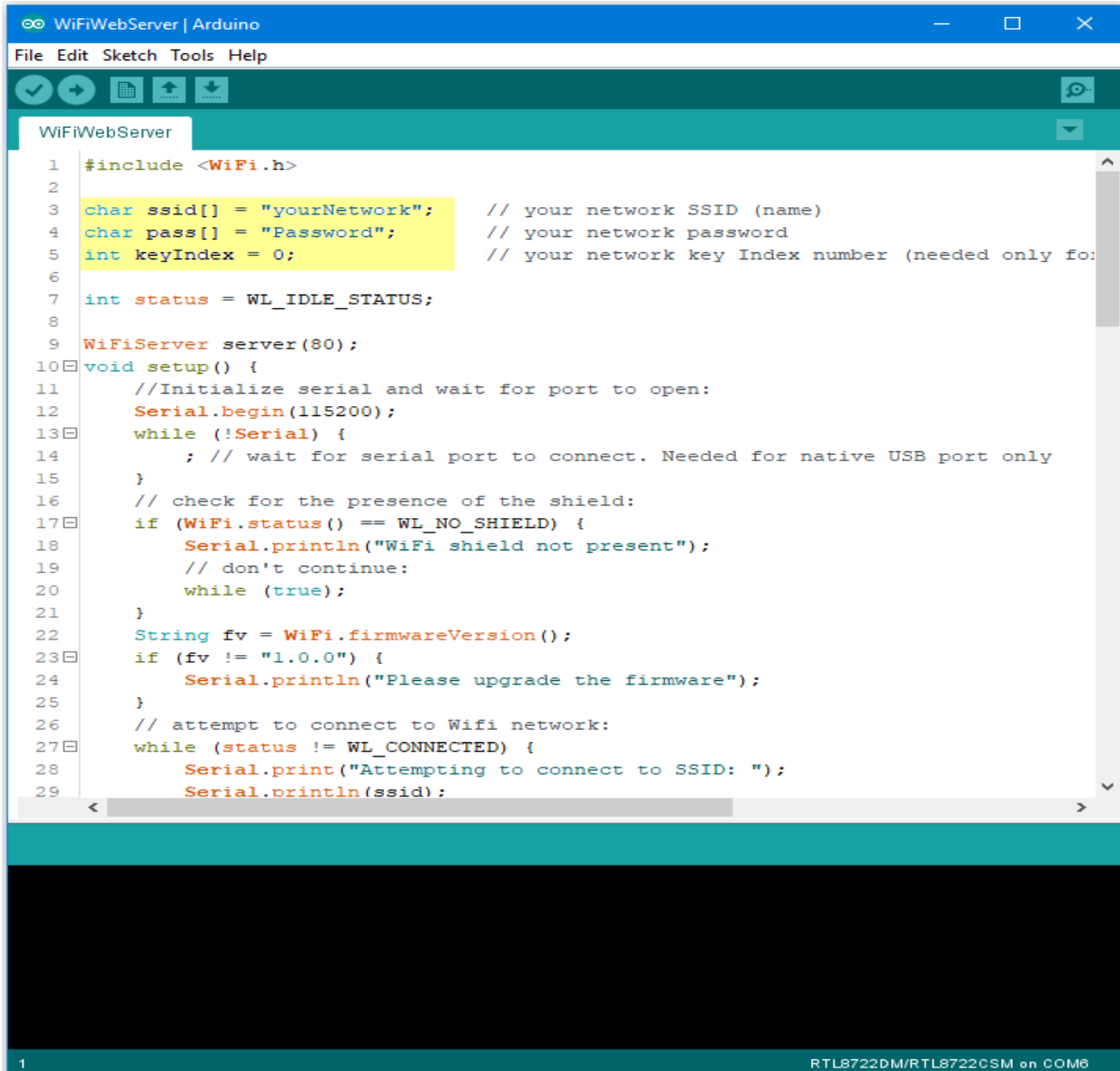
Example

In this example, we connect Ameba to WiFi and use Ameba as server to send message to connected client.

First, open “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaWiFi” -> “WiFiWebServer”



In the sample code, modify the highlighted snippet and enter the required information (ssid, password, key index) required to connect to your WiFi network.



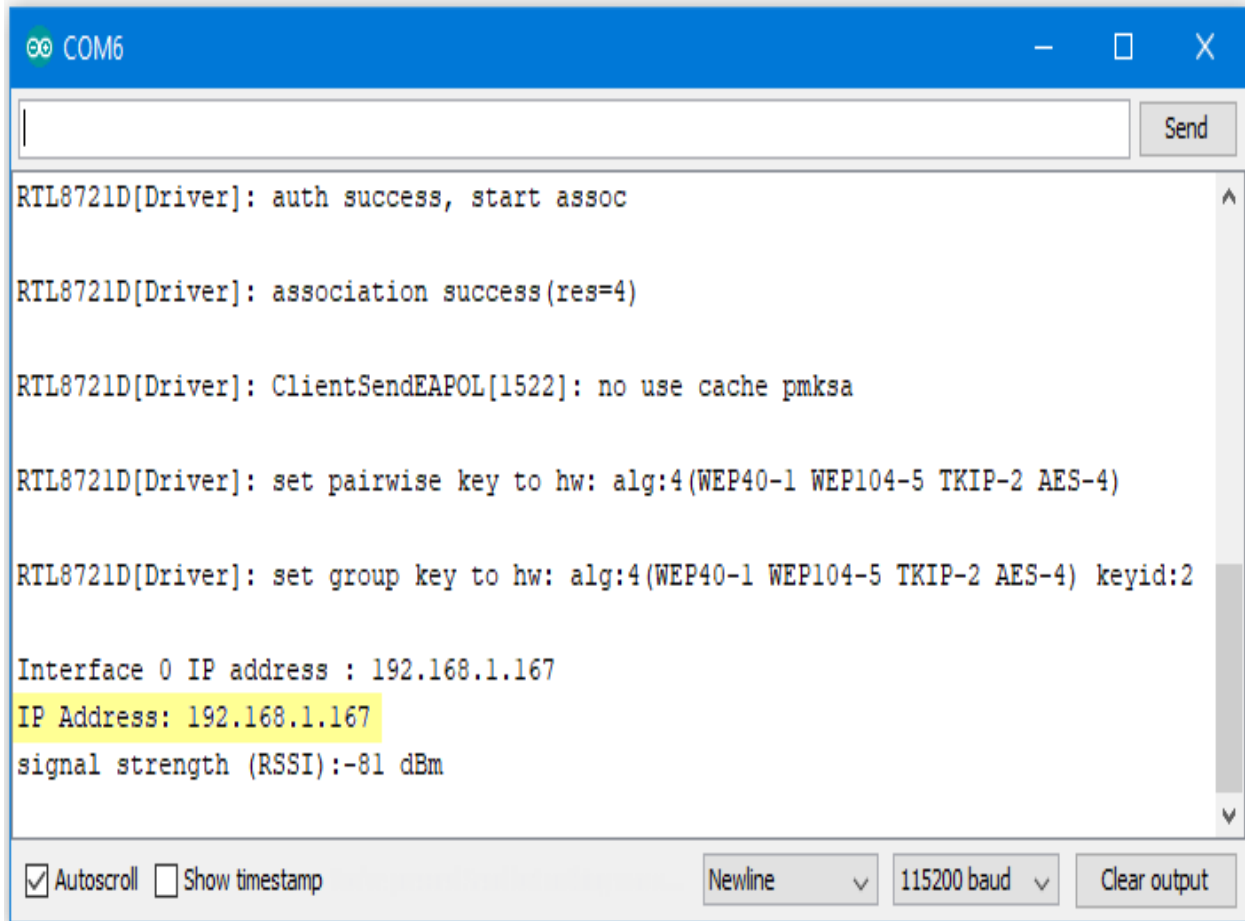
```
WiFiWebServer | Arduino
File Edit Sketch Tools Help

WiFiWebServer

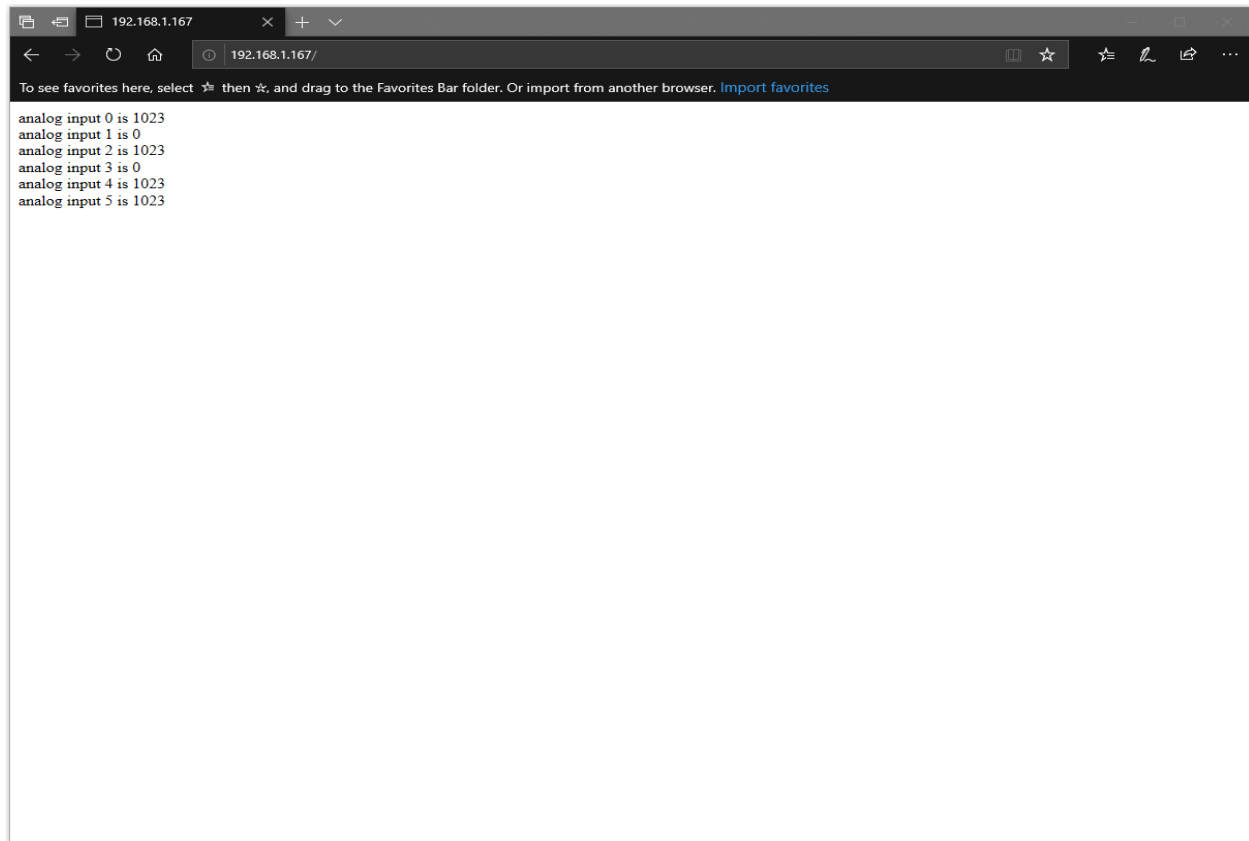
1 #include <WiFi.h>
2
3 char ssid[] = "yourNetwork"; // your network SSID (name)
4 char pass[] = "Password";    // your network password
5 int keyIndex = 0;            // your network key Index number (needed only for
6
7 int status = WL_IDLE_STATUS;
8
9 WiFiServer server(80);
10 void setup() {
11     //Initialize serial and wait for port to open:
12     Serial.begin(115200);
13     while (!Serial) {
14         ; // wait for serial port to connect. Needed for native USB port only
15     }
16     // check for the presence of the shield:
17     if (WiFi.status() == WL_NO_SHIELD) {
18         Serial.println("WiFi shield not present");
19         // don't continue:
20         while (true);
21     }
22     String fv = WiFi.firmwareVersion();
23     if (fv != "1.0.0") {
24         Serial.println("Please upgrade the firmware");
25     }
26     // attempt to connect to Wifi network:
27     while (status != WL_CONNECTED) {
28         Serial.print("Attempting to connect to SSID: ");
29         Serial.println(ssid);
```

1 RTL8722DM/RTL8722CSM on COM8

Upload the code and press the reset button on Ameba. After connecting to WiFi, Ameba starts to run as server. The IP of the server is shown in the serial monitor, and port is 80.



We connect to the server in a browser, and we can see the data sent from the server.



Code Reference

Use `WiFi.begin()` to establish WiFi connection.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiBegin>

To get the information of a WiFi connection:

Use `WiFi.SSID()` to get SSID of the current connected network.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiSSID>

Use `WiFi.RSSI()` to get the signal strength of the connection.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiRSSI>

Use `WiFi.localIP()` to get the IP address of Ameba.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiLocalIP>

Use `WiFiServer server()` to create a server that listens on the specified port.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiServer>

Use `server.begin()` to tell the server to begin listening for incoming connections.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiServerBegin>

Use `server.available()` to get a client that is connected to the server and has data available for reading.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiServerAvailable>

Use `client.connected` to check whether or not the client is connected.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiClientConnected>

Use `client.println()` to print data followed by a carriage return and newline.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiClientPrintln>

Use `client.print()` to print data to the server that a client is connected to.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiClientPrint>

Use `client.available()` to return the number of bytes available for reading.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiClientAvailable>

Use `client.read()` to read the next byte received from the server the client is connected to.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiClientRead>

Use `client.stop()` to disconnect from the server the client is connected to.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiClientStop>

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Use Ameba as UDP server

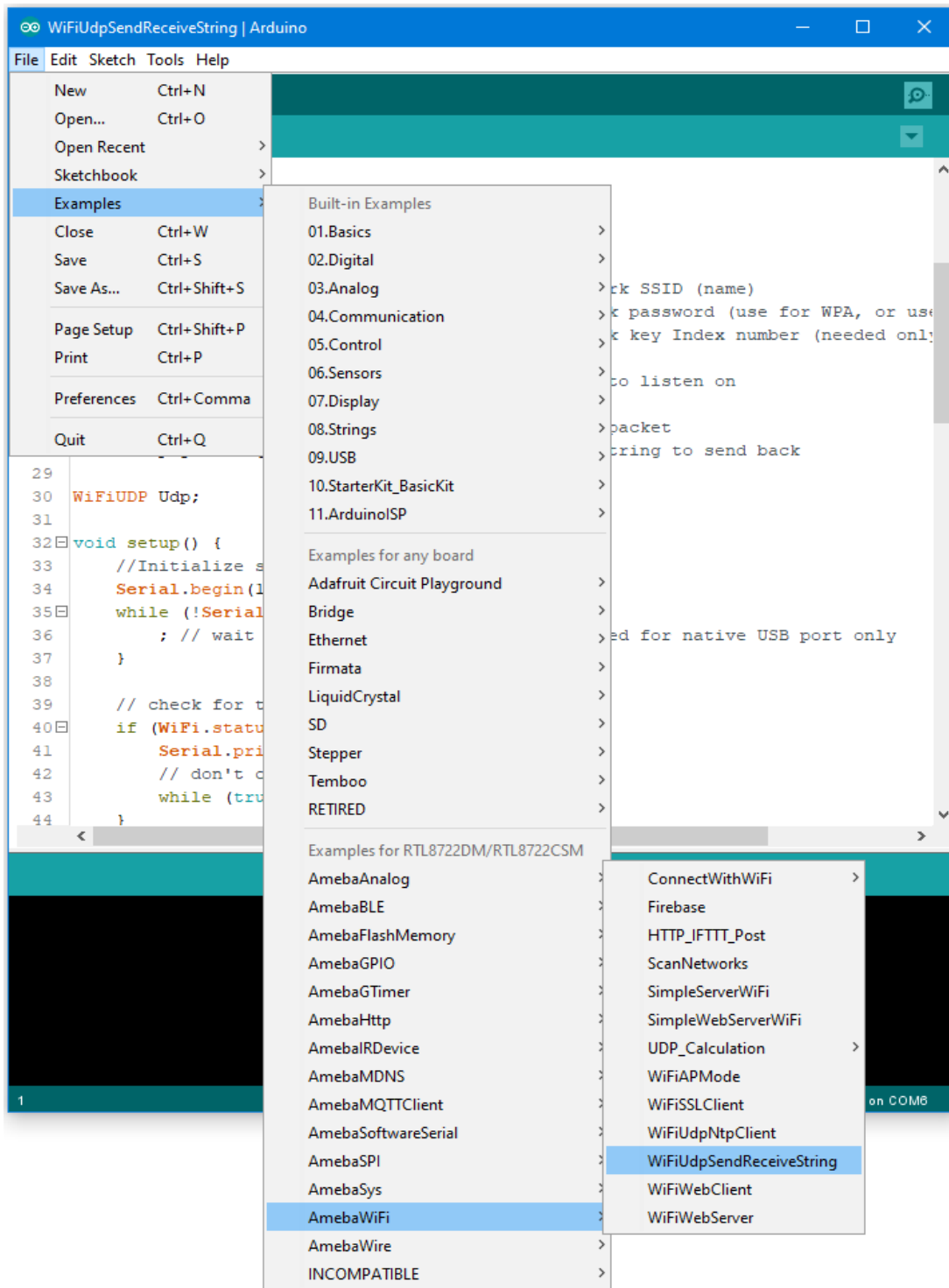
Preparation

- Ameba x 1

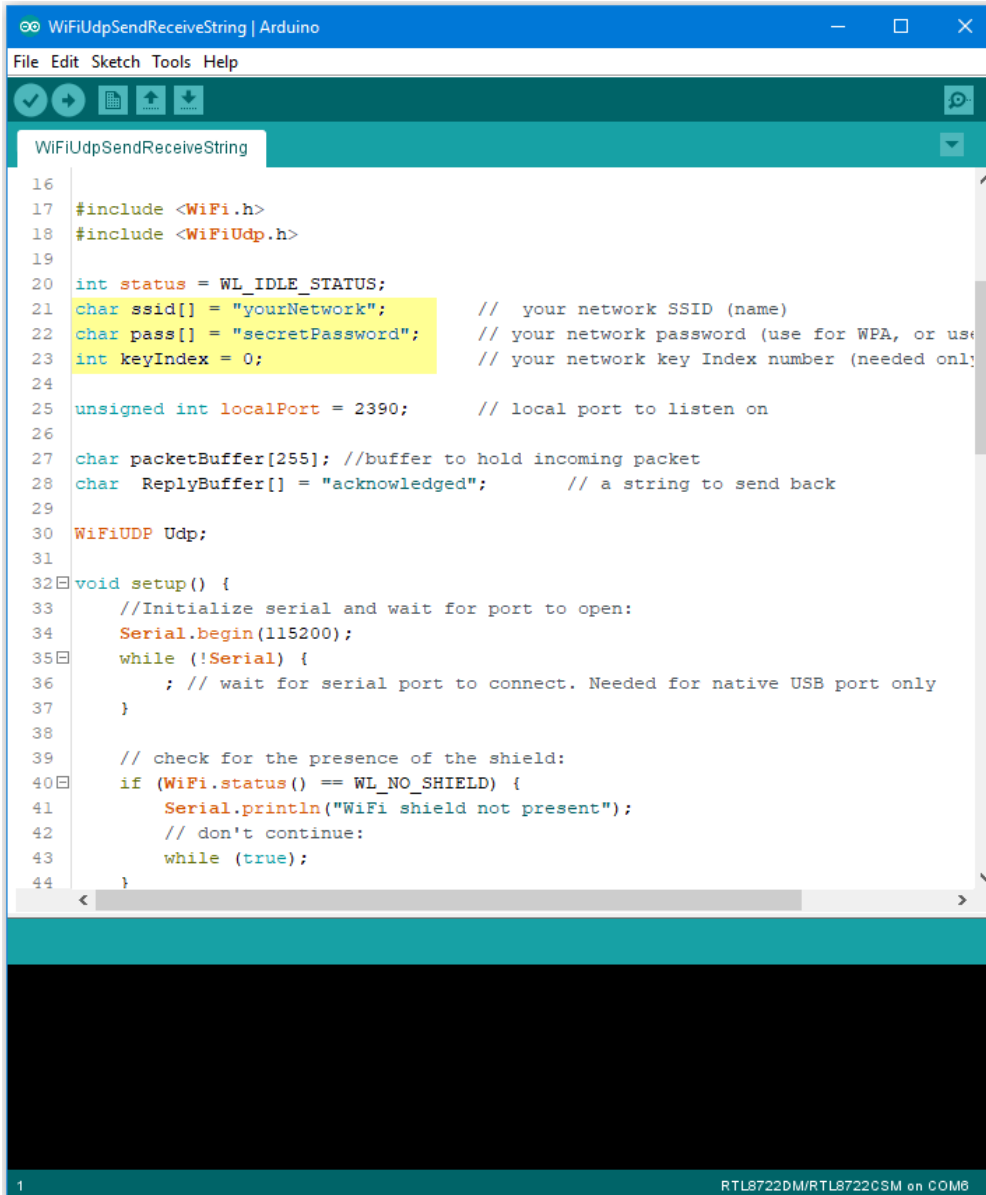
Example

In this example, we connect Ameba to WiFi and use Ameba to be an UDP server. When Ameba receives a message from UDP client, it replies “acknowledged” message to client.

Open the WiFi Web Server example. “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaWiFi” -> “WiFiUdpSendReceiveString”



Modify the highlighted code section (ssid, password, keyindex) to connect to your WiFi network.



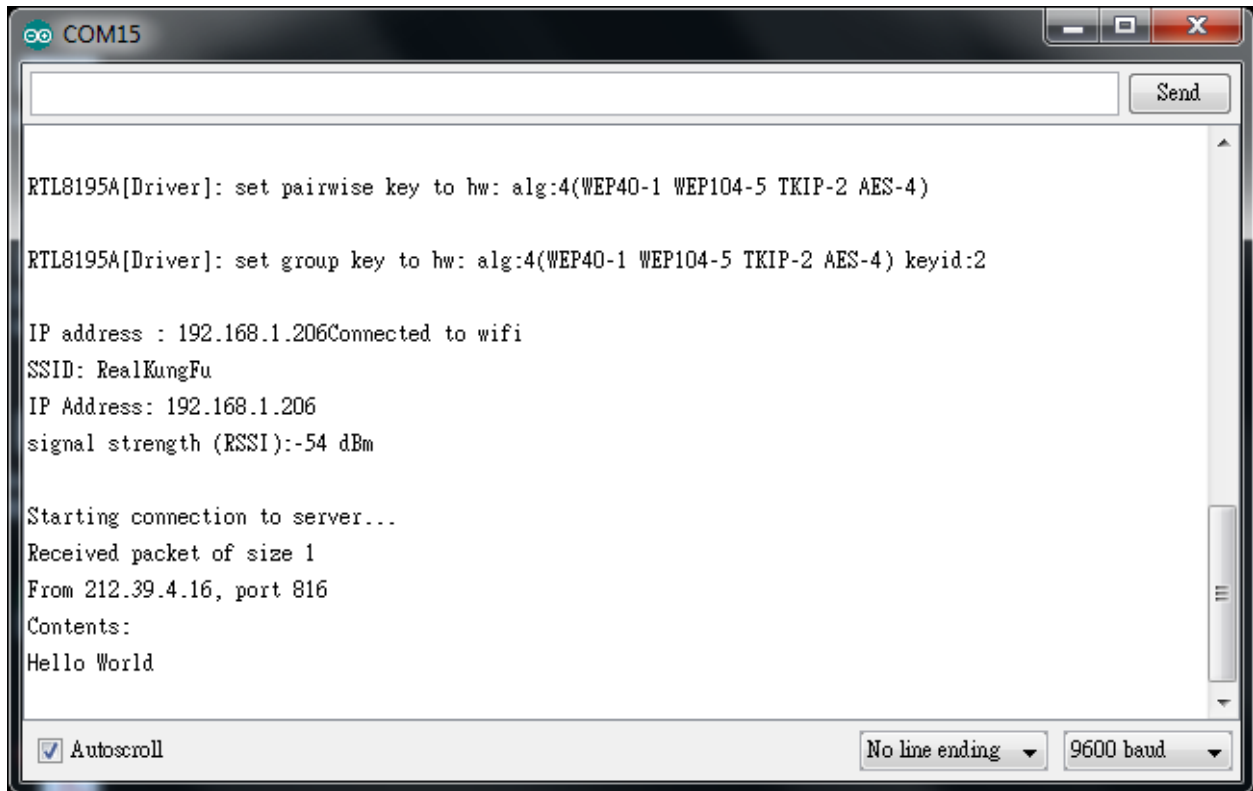
```

16
17 #include <WiFi.h>
18 #include <WiFiUdp.h>
19
20 int status = WL_IDLE_STATUS;
21 char ssid[] = "yourNetwork"; // your network SSID (name)
22 char pass[] = "secretPassword"; // your network password (use for WPA, or use
23 int keyIndex = 0; // your network key Index number (needed only
24
25 unsigned int localPort = 2390; // local port to listen on
26
27 char packetBuffer[255]; //buffer to hold incoming packet
28 char ReplyBuffer[] = "acknowledged"; // a string to send back
29
30 WiFiUDP Udp;
31
32 void setup() {
33     //Initialize serial and wait for port to open:
34     Serial.begin(115200);
35     while (!Serial) {
36         ; // wait for serial port to connect. Needed for native USB port only
37     }
38
39     // check for the presence of the shield:
40     if (WiFi.status() == WL_NO_SHIELD) {
41         Serial.println("WiFi shield not present");
42         // don't continue:
43         while (true);
44     }

```

1 RTL8722DM/RTL8722CSM on COM6

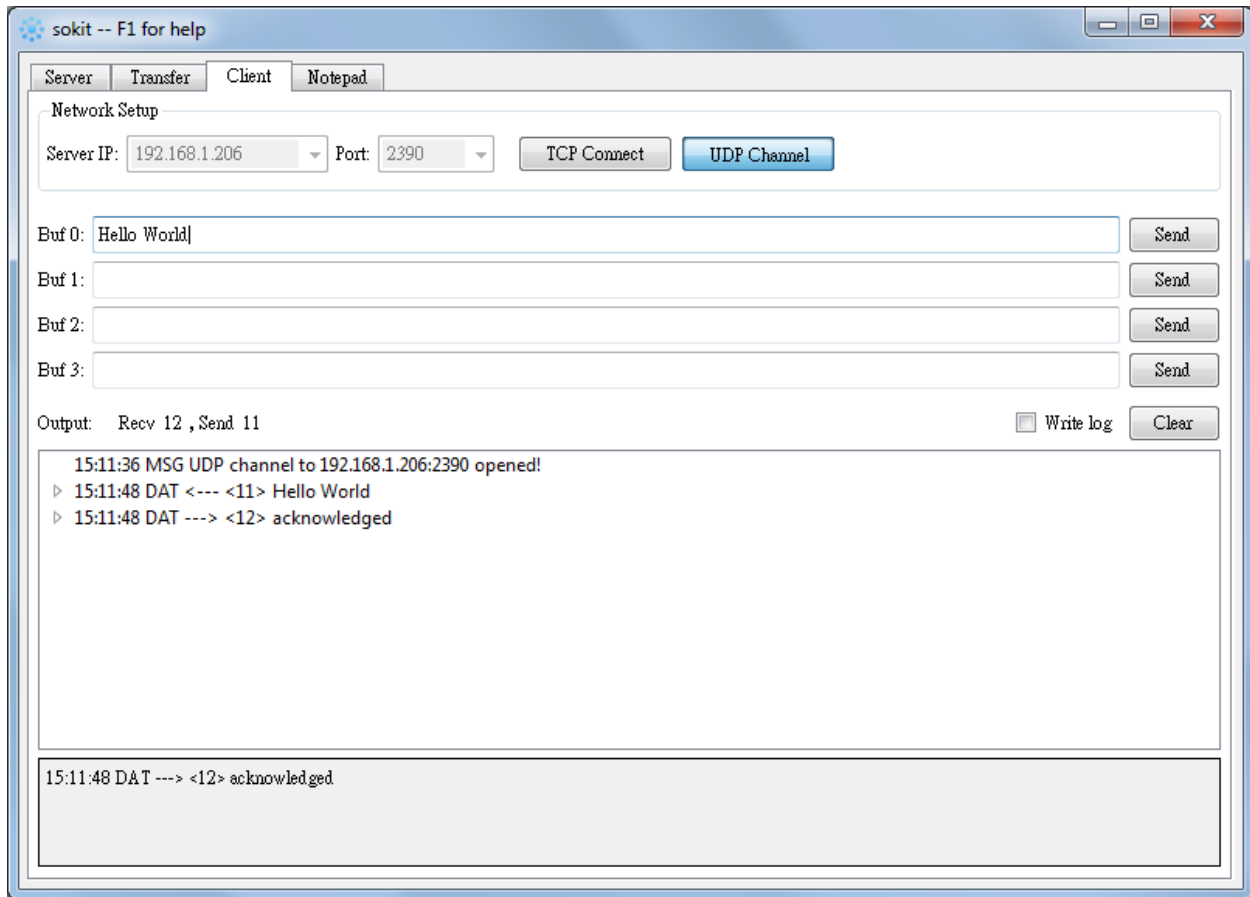
Compile the code and upload it to Ameba. After pressing the Reset button, Ameba connects to WiFi and starts the UDP server with port 2390. After the UDP server starts service, Ameba prints the “Starting connection to server” message and waits for client connection.



As to the UDP client, we use “sokit” program in the computer to connect to UDP server.

Choose client mode and fill in the IP of UDP server (which is the IP of Ameba) and port 2390, then click “UDP Connect”.

After the connection is established, fill in “Hello World” in the Buf 0 field in sokit and click “Send”. Then you can see the Ameba UDP server replies “acknowledged”.



Code Reference

Refer to the Arduino tutorial for detailed information about this example.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Tutorial/WiFiSendReceiveUDPString>

First, use `begin()` to open an UDP port on Ameba.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiUDPBgin>

Use `parsePacket()` to wait for data from client.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiUDPParsePacket>

When a connection is established, use `remoteIP()` and `remotePort()` to get the IP and port of the client.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiUDPRemoteIP>

Then use `read()` to read the data sent by client.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiUDPRead>

To send reply, use `beginPacket()`, `write()`, `end()`.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiUDPBeginPacket>

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiUDPWrite>

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFiUDPEndPacket>

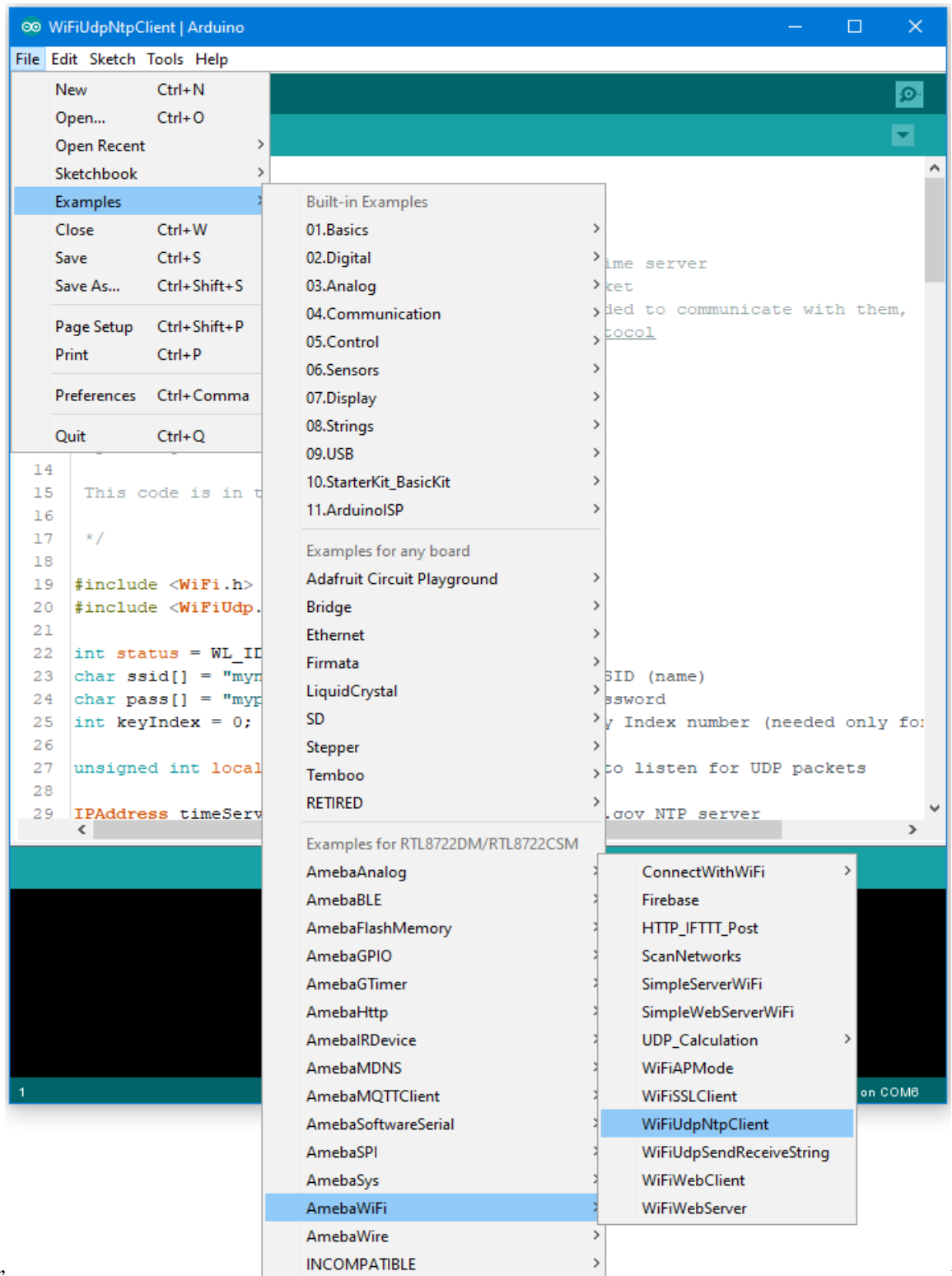
[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Retrieve Universal Time (UTC) By Ameba

Preparation

- Ameba x 1

Example

In this example, we connect Ameba to WiFi. Then send NTP (Network Time Protocol, RFC 1305) request to NTP server using UDP. After receiving the NTP request, the NTP server replies current UTC (Coordinated Universal Time) packet. We will parse the UTC packet to show current UTC time in the serial monitor. Open the example. “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaWiFi” ->



“WiFiUdpNtpClient”
the highlighted code section (ssid, password, keyindex) to connect to your WiFi

Modifi

```

WiFiUdpNtpClient
11 by Michael Margolis
12 modified 9 Apr 2012
13 by Tom Igoe
14
15 This code is in the public domain.
16
17 */
18
19 #include <WiFi.h>
20 #include <WiFiUdp.h>
21
22 int status = WL_IDLE_STATUS;
23 char ssid[] = "mynetwork"; // your network SSID (name)
24 char pass[] = "mypassword"; // your network password
25 int keyIndex = 0; // your network key Index number (needed only for
26
27 unsigned int localPort = 2390; // local port to listen for UDP packets
28
29 IPAddress timeServer(129, 6, 15, 28); // time.nist.gov NTP server
30
31 const int NTP_PACKET_SIZE = 48; // NTP time stamp is in the first 48 bytes of the
32
33 byte packetBuffer[ NTP_PACKET_SIZE]; //buffer to hold incoming and outgoing packets
34
35 // A UDP instance to let us send and receive packets over UDP
36 WiFiUDP Udp;
37
38 void setup() {
39 // Open serial communications and wait for port to open:

```

network.

the code and upload it to Ameba. After pressing the Reset button, Ameba connects to WiFi and sends NTP request packet to NTP server “129.6.15.28”. We parse the replied packet and show UTC time in serial

Compile

```

Interface 0 IP address : 192.168.1.167Connected to wifi

IP Address: 192.168.1.167
signal strength (RSSI):-80 dBm

Starting connection to server...
1
packet received
Seconds since Jan 1 1900 = 3798154620
Unix time = 1589165820
The UTC time is 2:57:00
1
packet received
Seconds since Jan 1 1900 = 3798154631
Unix time = 1589165831
The UTC time is 2:57:11
1

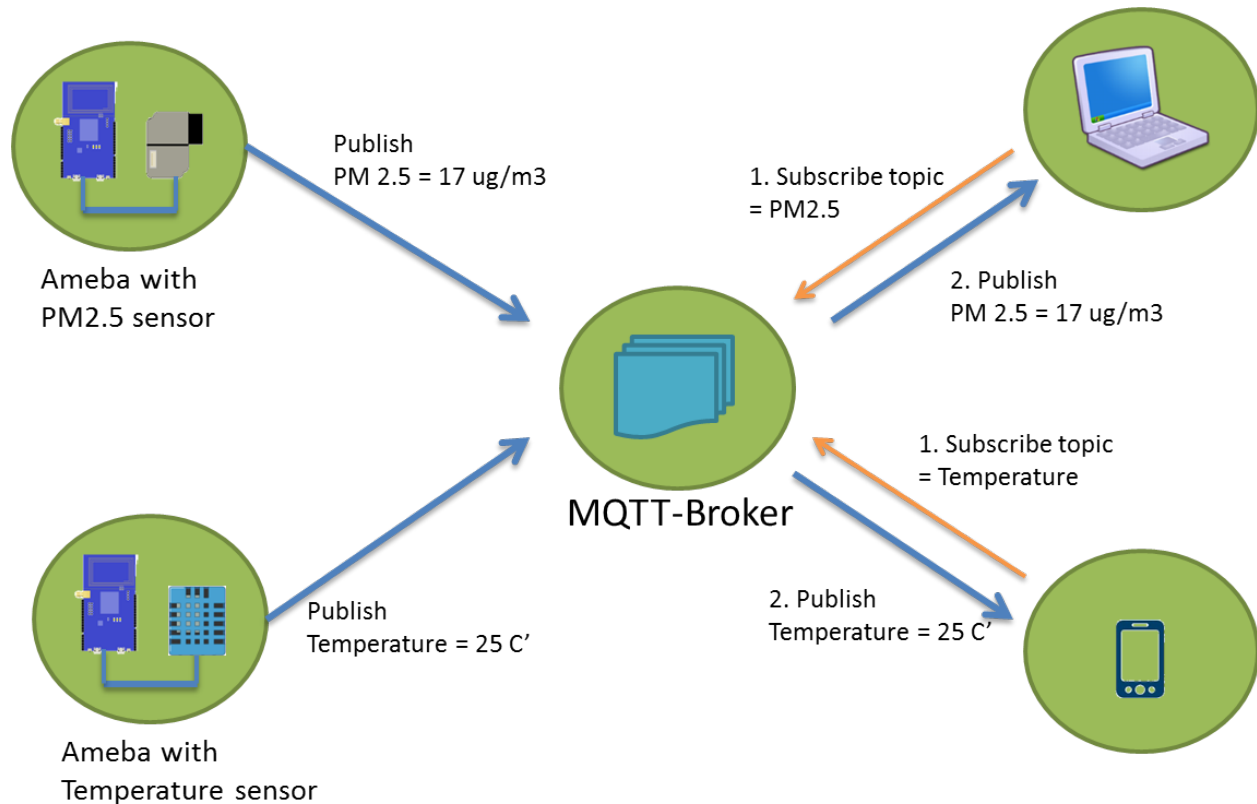
```

monitor:

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Use MQTT To Upload And Listen To Data

Intro to MQTT

MQTT (Message Queuing Telemetry Transport) is a protocol proposed by IBM and Eurotech. The introduction in [MQTT Official Website](#): MQTT is a machine-to-machine (M2M)/"Internet of Things" connectivity protocol. It was designed as an extremely lightweight publish/subscribe messaging transport. We can say MQTT is a protocol designed for IoT. MQTT is based on TCP/IP and transmits/receives data via publish/subscribe. Please refer to the figure below:



In the operation of MQTT, there are several roles:

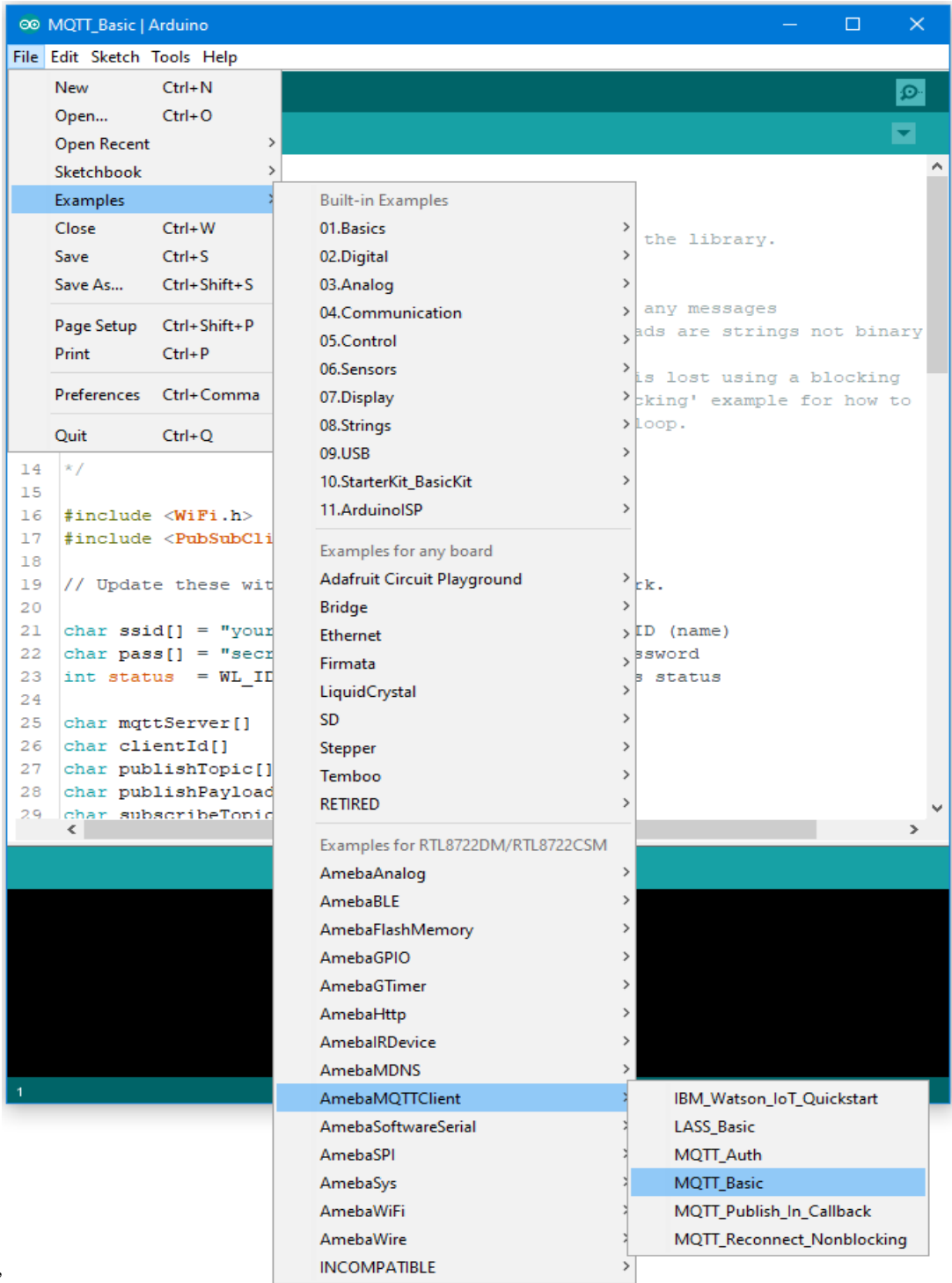
- **Publisher:** Usually publishers are the devices equipped with sensors (ex. Ameba). Publishers uploads the data of the sensors to MQTT-Broker, which serves as a database with MQTT service.
- **Subscriber:** Subscribers are referred to the devices which receive and observe messages, such as a laptop or a mobile phone.
- **Topic:** Topic is used to categorized the messages, for example the topic of a message can be "PM2.5" or "Temperature". Subscribers can choose messages of which topics they want to receive.

Preparation

- Ameba x 1

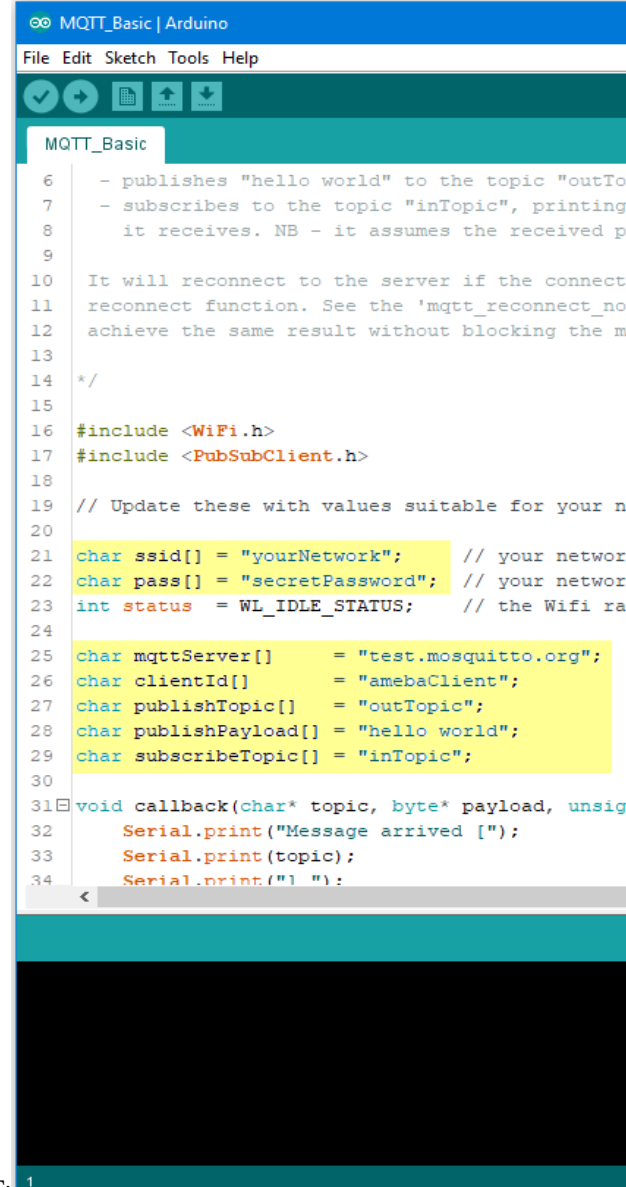
Example

In this example, we connect Ameba to MQTT-Broker. Then send messages as publisher and receive messages from MQTT-Broker as subscriber. Open the MQTT example "File" -> "Examples" -> "AmebaMQTTClient" ->



“MQTT_Basic”

Please



```

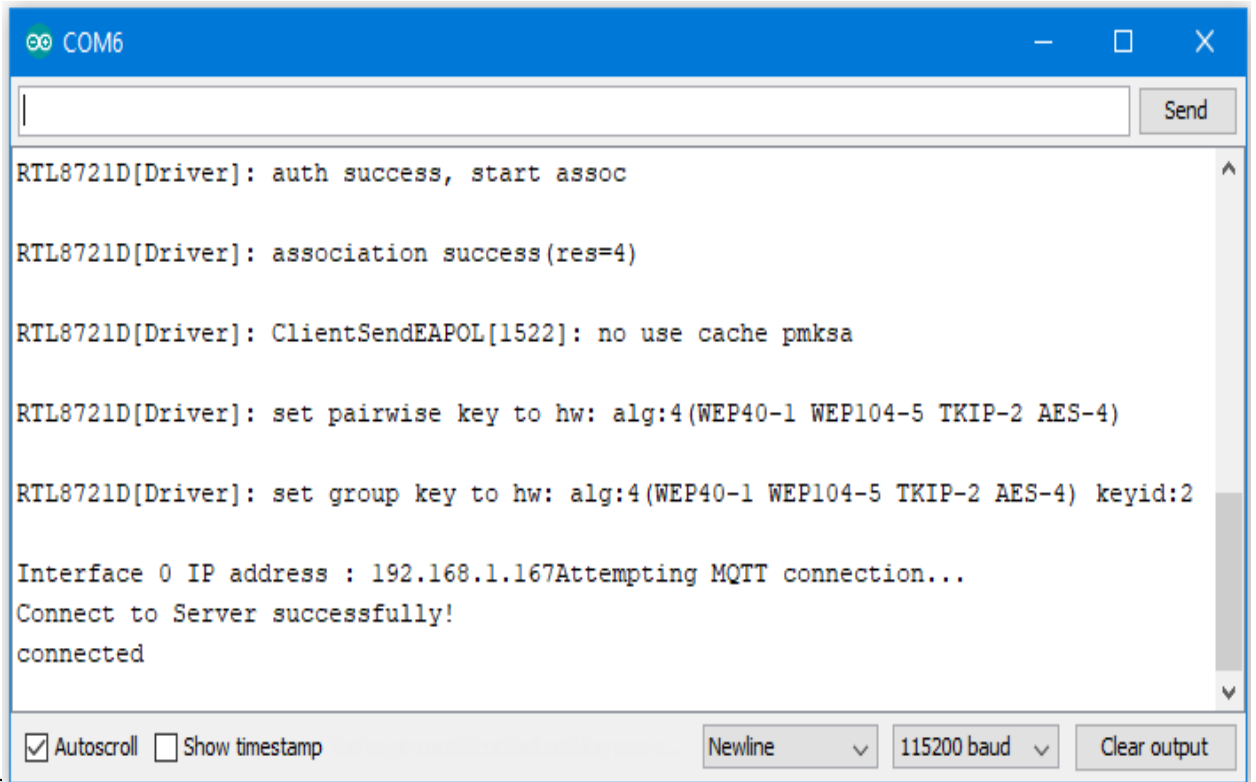
MQTT_Basic | Arduino
File Edit Sketch Tools Help

MQTT_Basic
6   - publishes "hello world" to the topic "outTopic"
7   - subscribes to the topic "inTopic", printing
8     it receives. NB - it assumes the received payload is utf-8
9
10  It will reconnect to the server if the connection drops, using the
11  reconnect function. See the 'mqtt_reconnect_nonblocking' example to
12  achieve the same result without blocking the main loop.
13
14  */
15
16  #include <WiFi.h>
17  #include <PubSubClient.h>
18
19  // Update these with values suitable for your network
20
21  char ssid[] = "yourNetwork"; // your network SSID (name)
22  char pass[] = "secretPassword"; // your network password (up to 63 characters)
23  int status = WL_IDLE_STATUS; // the Wifi radio's status
24
25  char mqttServer[] = "test.mosquitto.org";
26  char clientId[] = "amebaClient";
27  char publishTopic[] = "outTopic";
28  char publishPayload[] = "hello world";
29  char subscribeTopic[] = "inTopic";
30
31  void callback(char* topic, byte* payload, unsigned int length) {
32    Serial.print("Message arrived [");
33    Serial.print(topic);
34    Serial.print("]: ");

```

modify some WiFi-related parameters. And some information related to MQTT:

“mqttServer” refers to the MQTT-Broker, we use the free MQTT sandbox “test.mosquitto.org” for testing. “clientId” is an identifier for MQTT-Broker to identify the connected device. “publishTopic” is the topic of the published message, we use “outTopic” in the example. The devices subscribe to “outTopic” will receive the message. “publishPayload” is the content to be published. “subscribeTopic” is to tell MQTT-broker which topic we want to subscribe to. Next, compile the code and upload it to Ameba. Press the reset button, then open the serial



```
COM6

RTL8721D[Driver]: auth success, start assoc

RTL8721D[Driver]: association success(res=4)

RTL8721D[Driver]: ClientSendEAPOL[1522]: no use cache pmksa

RTL8721D[Driver]: set pairwise key to hw: alg:4(WEP40-1 WEP104-5 TKIP-2 AES-4)

RTL8721D[Driver]: set group key to hw: alg:4(WEP40-1 WEP104-5 TKIP-2 AES-4) keyid:2

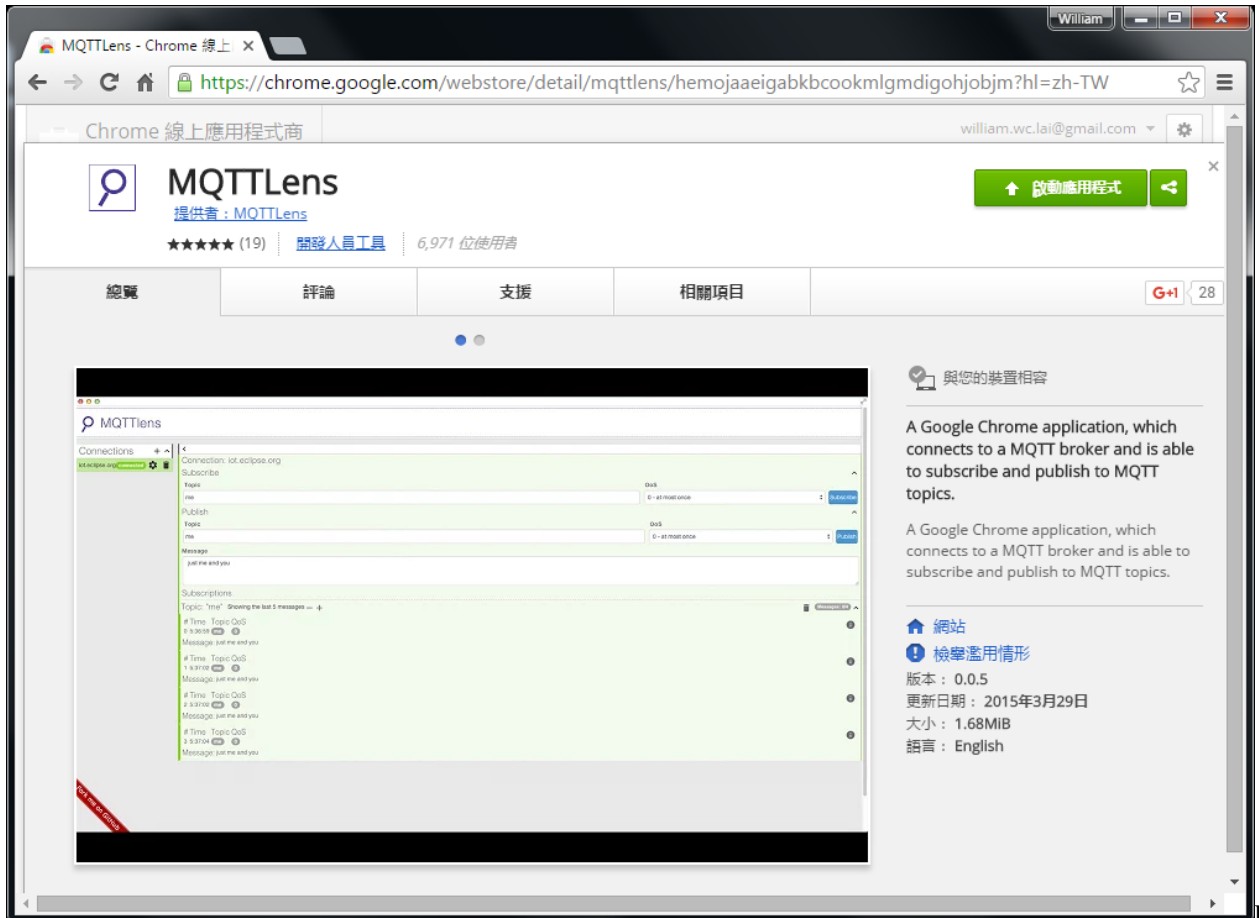
Interface 0 IP address : 192.168.1.167Attempting MQTT connection...
Connect to Server successfully!
connected

☒ Autoscroll ☐ Show timestamp Newline 115200 baud Clear output
```

monitor

After Ameba is connected to MQTT server, it sends the message “hello world” to “outTopic”. To see the message, we need another MQTT client. Here we use a chrome plugin “MQTTLens” to be the MQTT client. You can find it in google

Af-



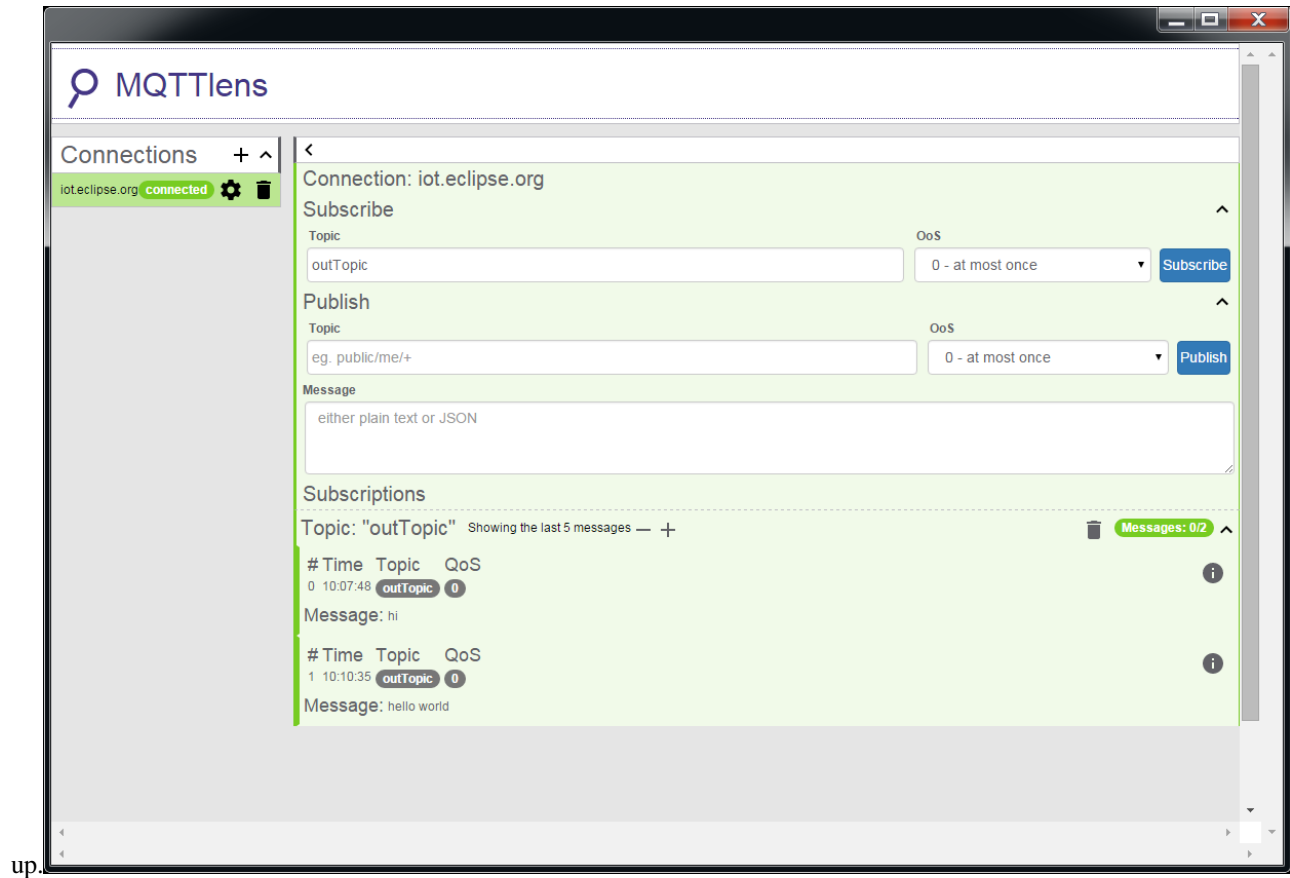
webstore. and open the MQTTLens, click “+” next to “Connection” on the left, and fill in the required information

- **Connection Name:** Used to identify the connection, you can choose a name you like.
- **Hostname:** The MQTT-Broker server, here we use “iot.eclipse.org”
- **Client ID:** We use the default randomly generated ID.

The screenshot shows the MQTTlens web interface with a modal dialog titled "Add a new Connection". The dialog is divided into several sections:

- Connection Details**
 - Connection name:** A text input field containing "test mqtt".
 - Connection color scheme:** A color selection bar showing a green gradient.
 - Hostname:** A dropdown menu set to "tcp://" and a text input field containing "test.mosquitto.org".
 - Port:** A text input field containing "1883".
 - Client ID:** A text input field containing "lens_WTrmfoD39BaUle6n17eD8pknf0a". A button labeled "Generate a random ID" is next to it.
 - Session:** A checkbox labeled "Clean Session" which is checked.
 - Automatic Connection:** A checkbox labeled "Automatic Connection" which is checked.
 - Keep Alive:** A text input field containing "120" and a unit selector set to "seconds".
- Credentials**
 - Username:** A text input field with placeholder text "Enter username".
 - Password:** A text input field with placeholder text "Enter password".
- Last-Will:** A section with a dropdown arrow.

Then click "CREATE CONNECTION". we have not registered the topic we want to listen to, we would not receive any messages now. Fill in "outTopic" in the "Topic" field and click "Subscribe". Wait for Ameba to send next message (or you can press the reset button). Then you can see the "hello world" message show



up.

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Use Amazon AWS IoT Shadow Service

Preparation

- Ameba x 1

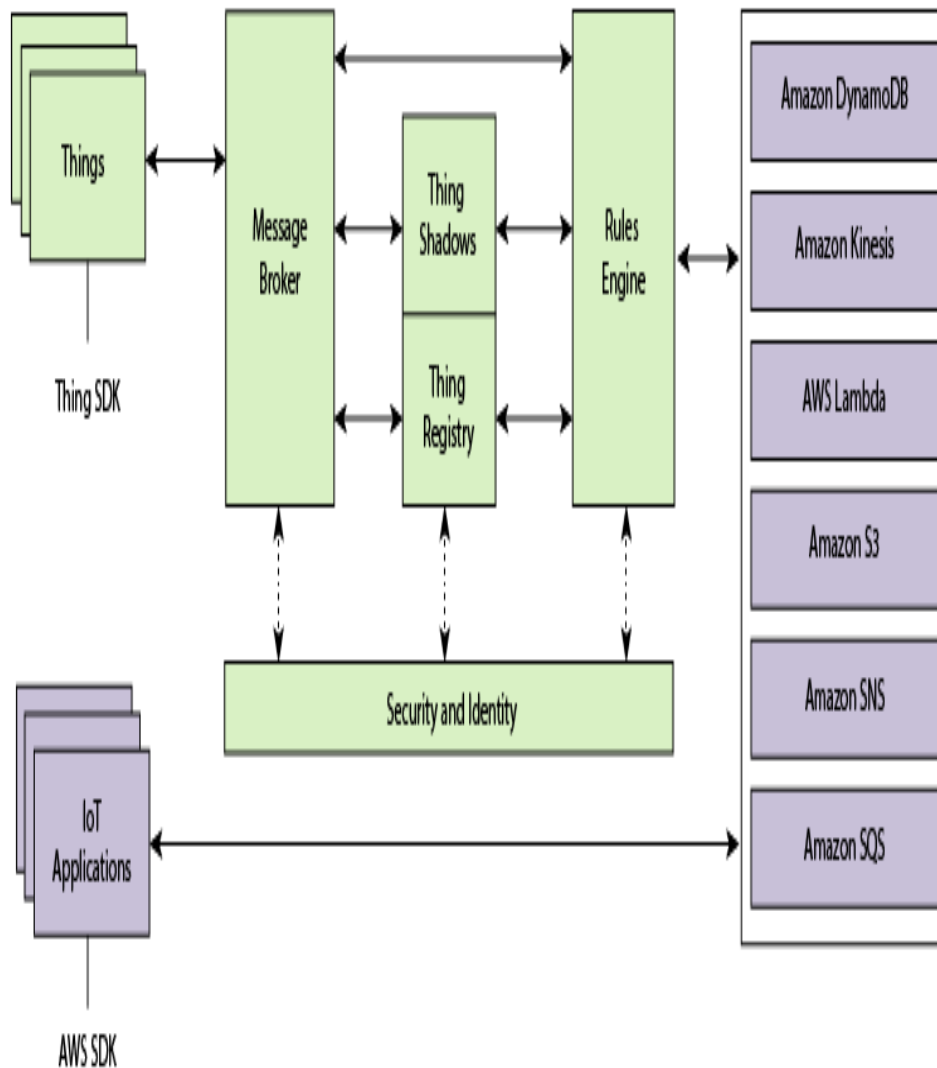
Example

Introduction

Amazon AWS IoT is a cloud IoT service platform:

AWS IoT is a platform that enables you to connect devices to AWS Services and other devices, secure data and interactions, process and act upon device data, and enable applications to interact with devices even when they are offline. (<https://aws.amazon.com/iot/how-it-works/>)

The service architecture of AWS IoT:



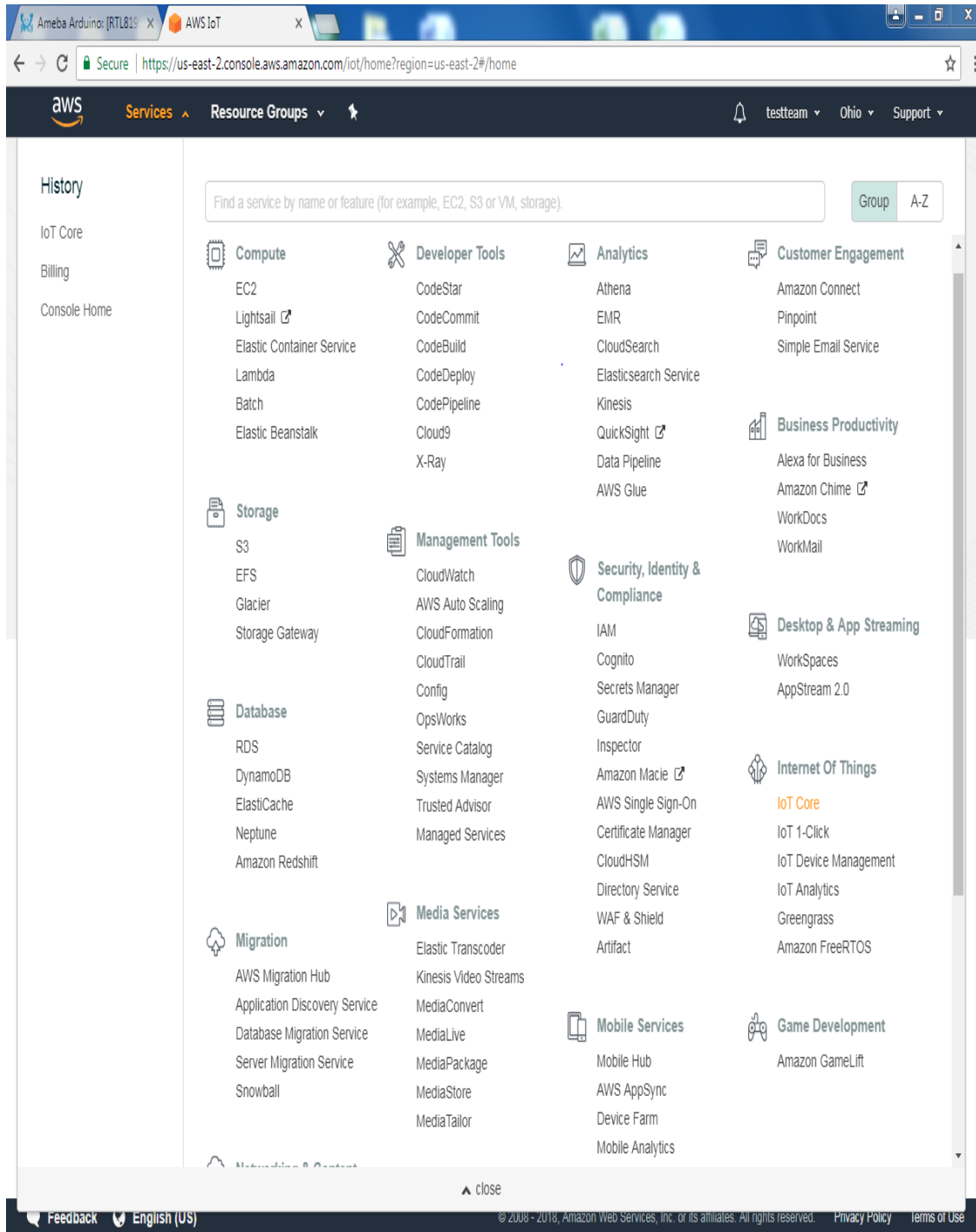
(Picture from <http://docs.aws.amazon.com/iot/latest/developerguide/aws-iot-how-it-works.html>)

In the architecture, Ameba belongs to the upper-left “Things” block. A TLS secure channel will be established between “Things” and the MQTT Message Broker. Afterwards, “Things” and “Message Broker” communicate using MQTT Protocol via this secure channel. Behind the “Message Broker”, the “Thing Shadows” keeps messages temporarily when Ameba is offline, and sends the control message to Ameba next time it is connected. The “Rules Engine” allows you to place restrictions to the behavior of Things or to connect Things to other services of Amazon.

AWS Management Console

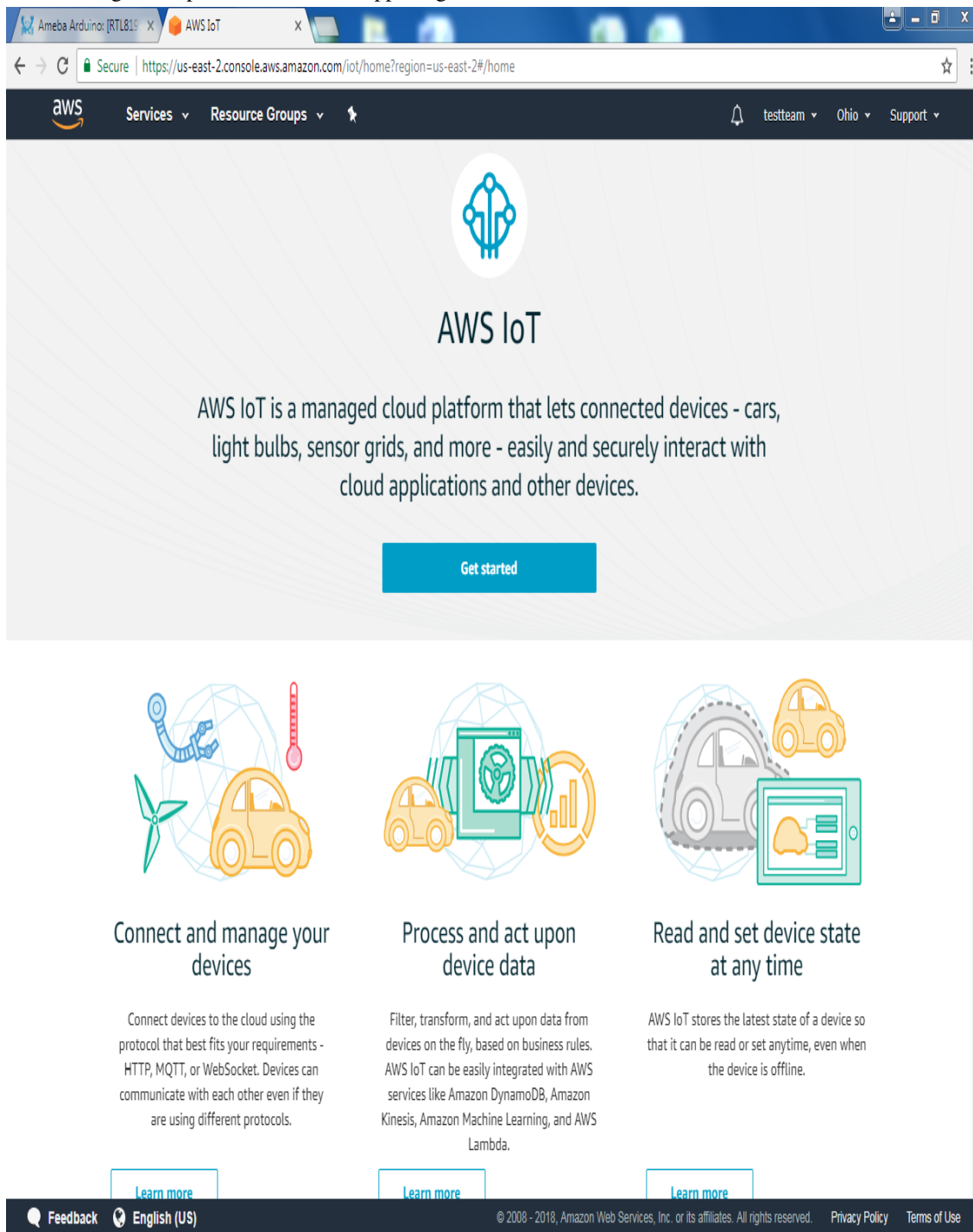
First, create an account and sign up for AWS IoT [service:https://aws.amazon.com/](https://aws.amazon.com/)

Afterwards, log in to the Amazon Management Console and click “IoT Core”.



Then you will enter the home page of AWS IoT. To offer the best service quality, Amazon offers servers in different regions for users to choose from.

Click the region dropdown menu at the upper-right:



Choose a nearby region.

Ambeba Arduino: [RTL819] x AWS IoT x

Secure | https://us-east-2.console.aws.amazon.com/iot/home?region=us-east-2#/home

aws Services Resource Groups testteam Ohio Support

AWS IoT

AWS IoT is a managed cloud platform that lets connected devices like light bulbs, sensor grids, and more - easily and securely interact with cloud applications and other devices.

[Get started](#)

US East (N. Virginia)
US East (Ohio)
 US West (N. California)
 US West (Oregon)
 Asia Pacific (Mumbai)
 Asia Pacific (Seoul)
Asia Pacific (Singapore)
 Asia Pacific (Sydney)
 Asia Pacific (Tokyo)
 Canada (Central)
 EU (Frankfurt)
 EU (Ireland)
 EU (London)
 EU (Paris)
 South America (São Paulo)

Connect and manage your devices

Connect devices to the cloud using the protocol that best fits your requirements - HTTP, MQTT, or WebSocket. Devices can communicate with each other even if they are using different protocols.

[Learn more](#)

Process and act upon device data

Filter, transform, and act upon data from devices on the fly, based on business rules. AWS IoT can be easily integrated with AWS services like Amazon DynamoDB, Amazon Kinesis, Amazon Machine Learning, and AWS Lambda.

[Learn more](#)

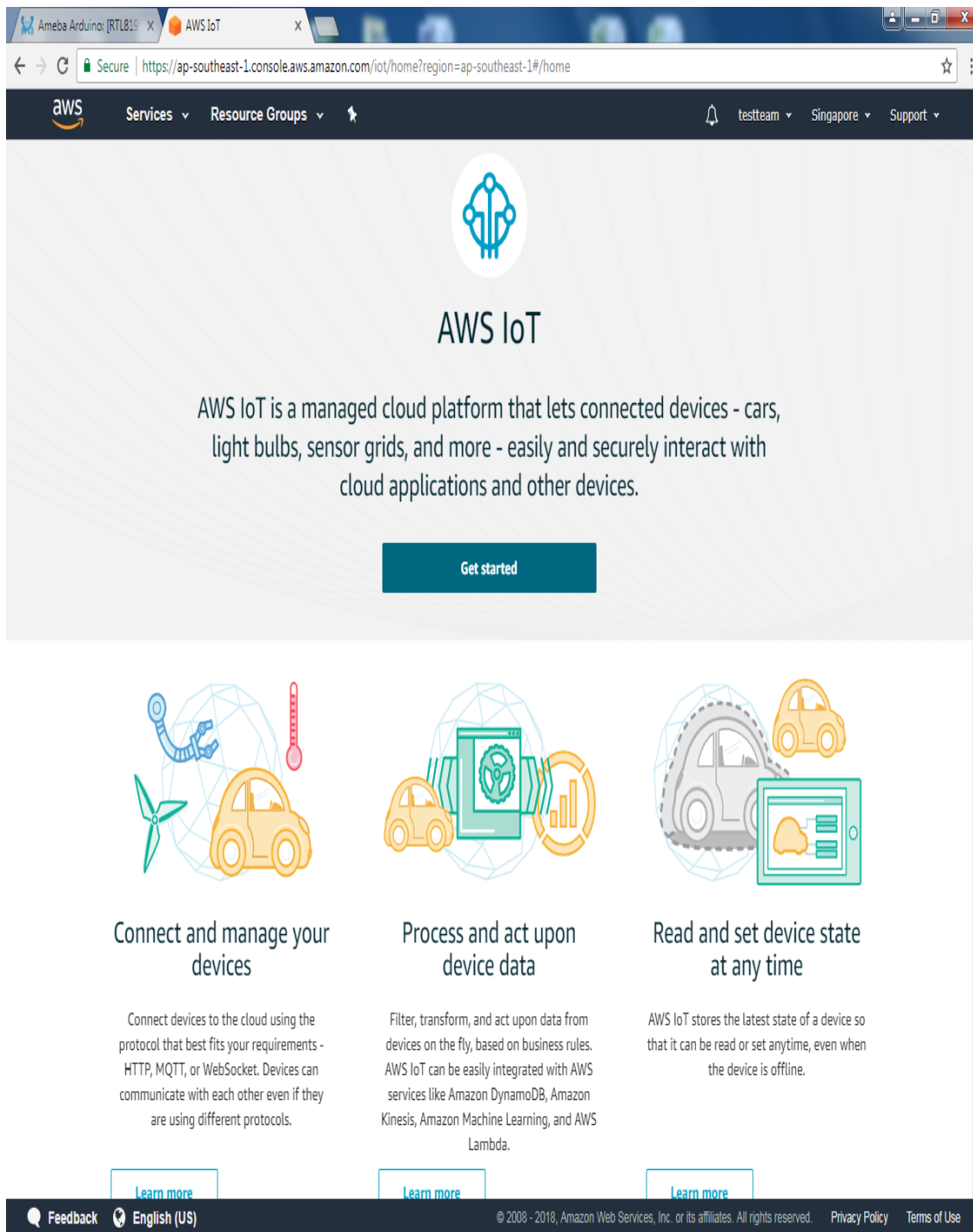
Read and set device state at any time

AWS IoT stores the latest state of a device so that it can be read or set anytime, even when the device is offline.

[Learn more](#)

Feedback English (US) © 2008 - 2018, Amazon Web Services, Inc. or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy Terms of Use

Then click “Get started”



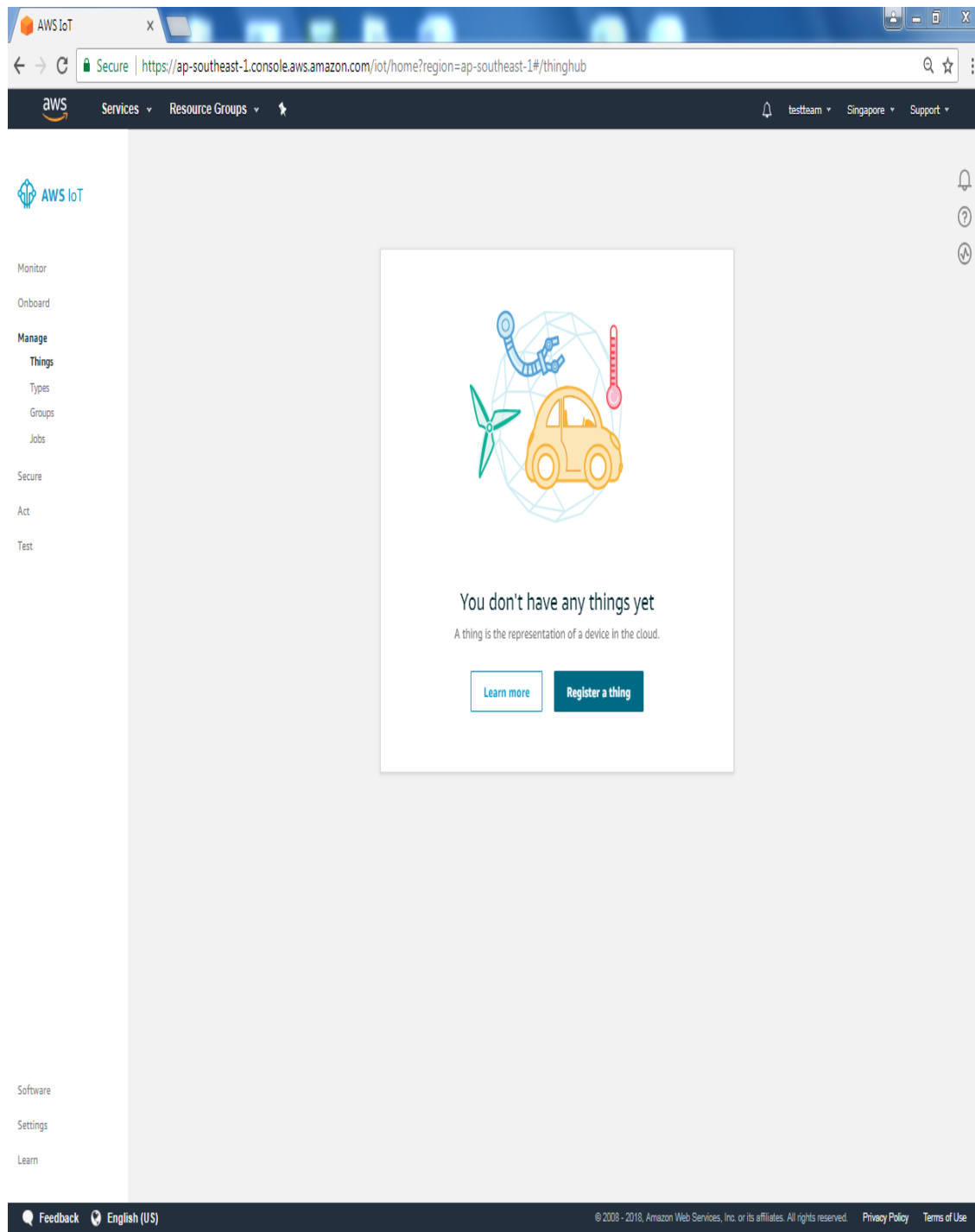
Enter the main page of AWS IoT

The screenshot shows the AWS IoT console interface. At the top, the browser address bar displays the URL `https://ap-southeast-1.console.aws.amazon.com/iot/home?region=ap-southeast-1#/connIntro`. The AWS logo and navigation menu are visible on the left. The main content area is titled "Connect to AWS IoT" and features three cards for getting started:

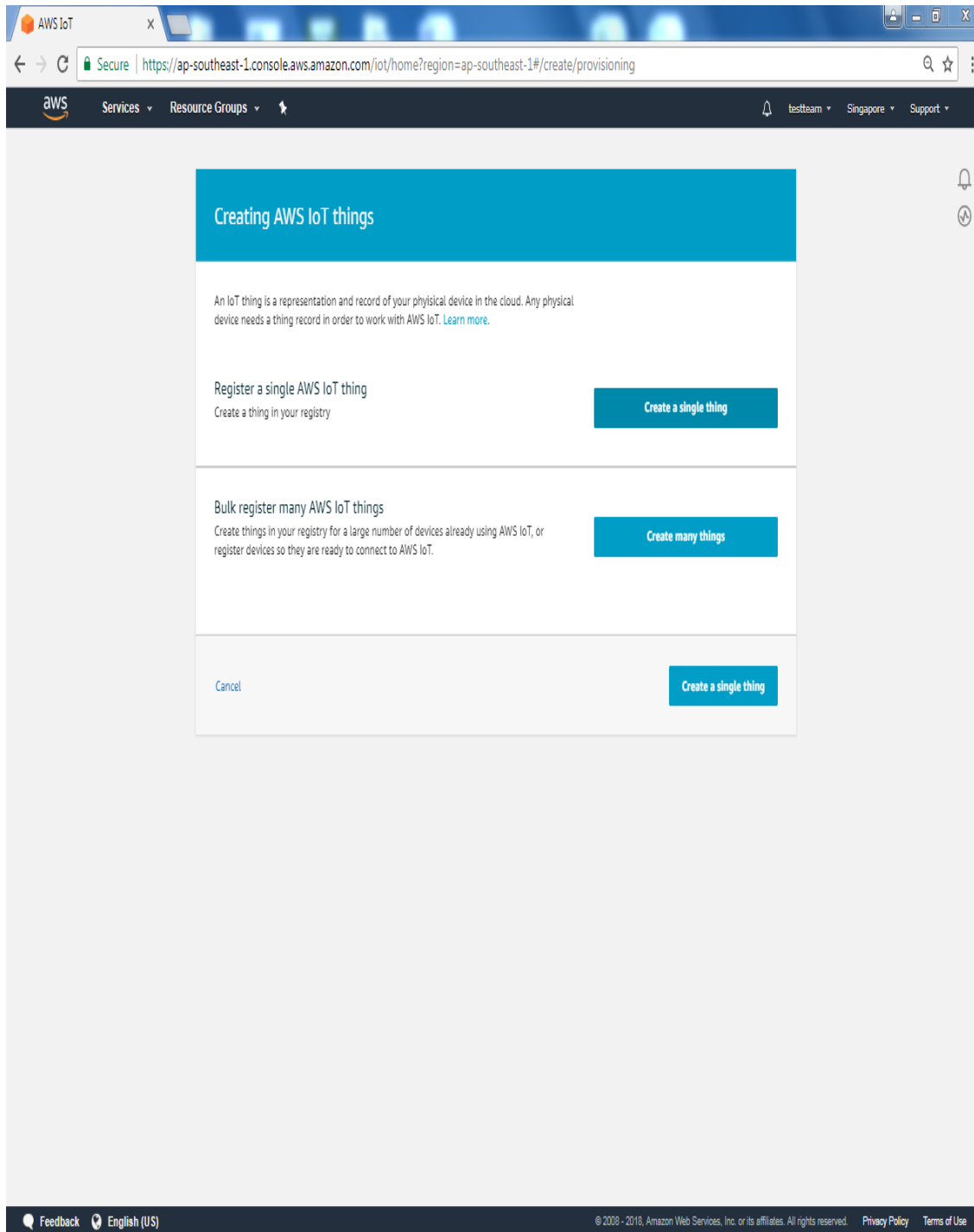
- Configuring a device**: Includes an icon of a car and a wind turbine. The text says: "Connect a device or your computer to AWS IoT using the connection wizard for AWS IoT Device SDKs." The button is labeled "Get started".
- AWS IoT Button**: Includes an icon of a button. The text says: "The AWS IoT Button is a single-purpose device that sends a message to AWS IoT with a press of a button." The button is labeled "Configure a button". Below it, a link says "Don't have a button? [Buy one](#)".
- AWS IoT Starter Kit**: Includes an icon of an open box. The text says: "Browse AWS IoT Starter Kits that were made for connecting to AWS IoT and getting started with the service." The button is labeled "Browse starter kits".

Below the cards, a message states: "Did you know you can use the AWS SDK to work with data coming from your devices? [View the AWS SDKs](#)".

The footer contains a "Feedback" link, the language "English (US)", and copyright information: "© 2008 - 2018, Amazon Web Services, Inc. or its affiliates. All rights reserved." along with links for "Privacy Policy" and "Terms of Use".



There is a item “Things” under the field “Manage” on the left. Choose it and click “Register a thing”



Enter next page and click “Create a single thing”

The screenshot shows the AWS IoT console interface for adding a device to the thing registry. The page is titled "CREATE A THING" and "Add your device to the thing registry" (STEP 1/3). It contains several sections for configuring the device:

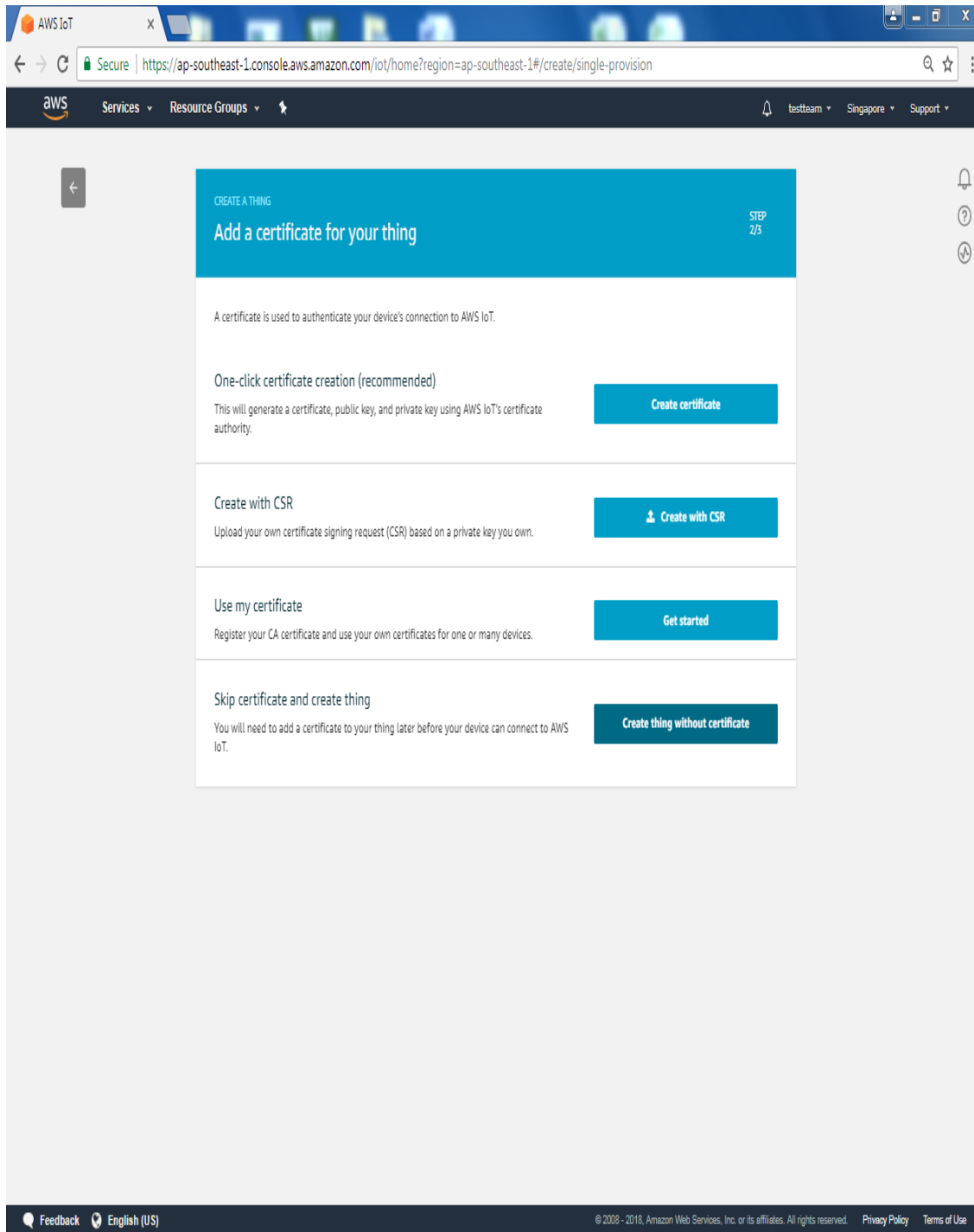
- Name:** A text input field containing "ameba".
- Apply a type to this thing:** A section explaining that using a thing type simplifies device management. It includes a "Thing Type" dropdown menu set to "No type selected" and a "Create a type" button.
- Add this thing to a group:** A section explaining that adding a thing to a group allows for remote management. It includes a "Thing Group" dropdown menu set to "Groups /" and buttons for "Create group" and "Change".
- Set searchable thing attributes (optional):** A section for adding attributes. It includes a table with two columns: "Attribute key" and "Value".

Attribute key	Value
led	0

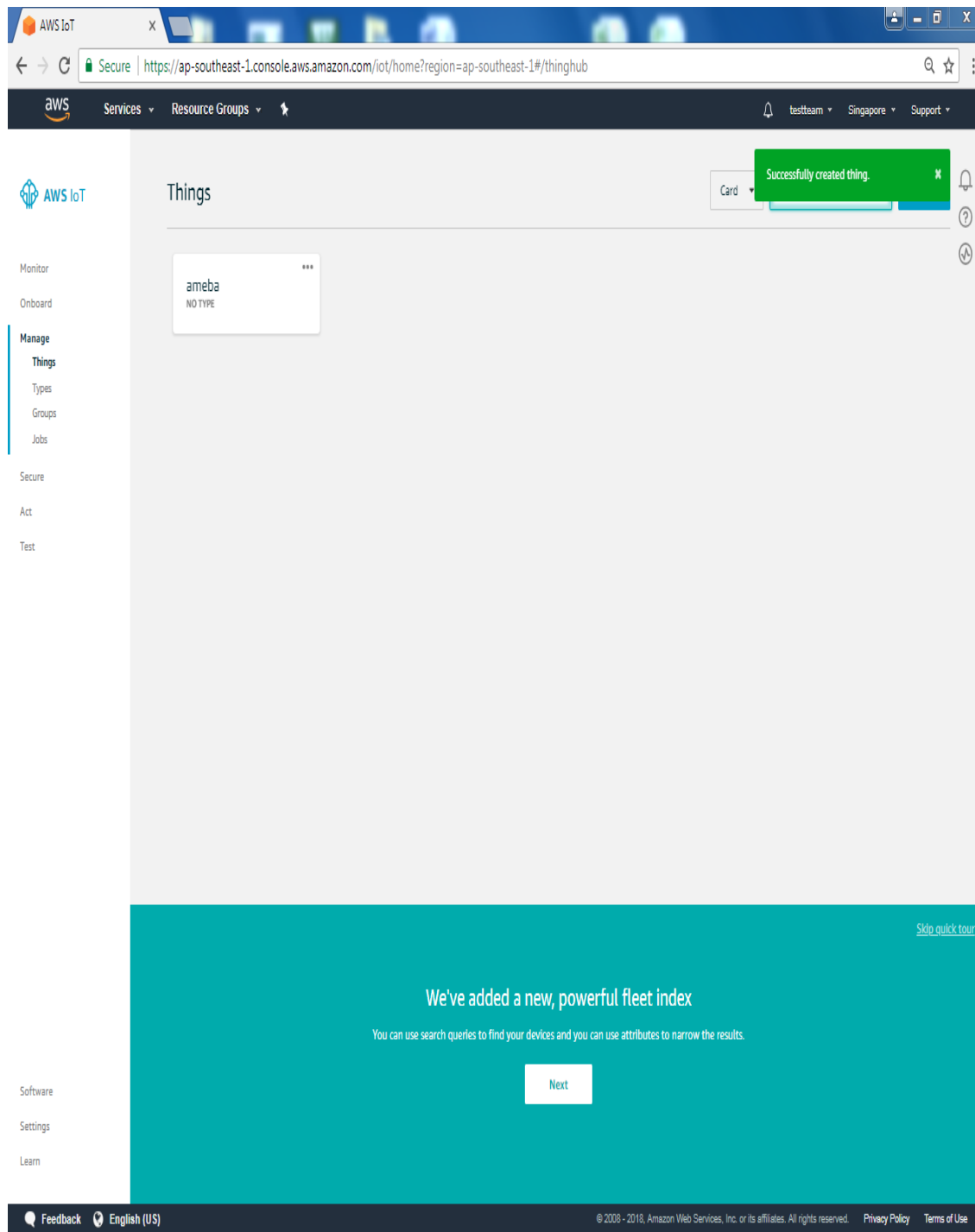
Below the table are buttons for "Add another" and "Clear".
- Show thing shadow:** A dropdown menu.
- Navigation:** "Cancel", "Back", and "Next" buttons at the bottom.

The footer of the console shows "Feedback", "English (US)", and copyright information: "© 2008 - 2018, Amazon Web Services, Inc. or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy Terms of Use".

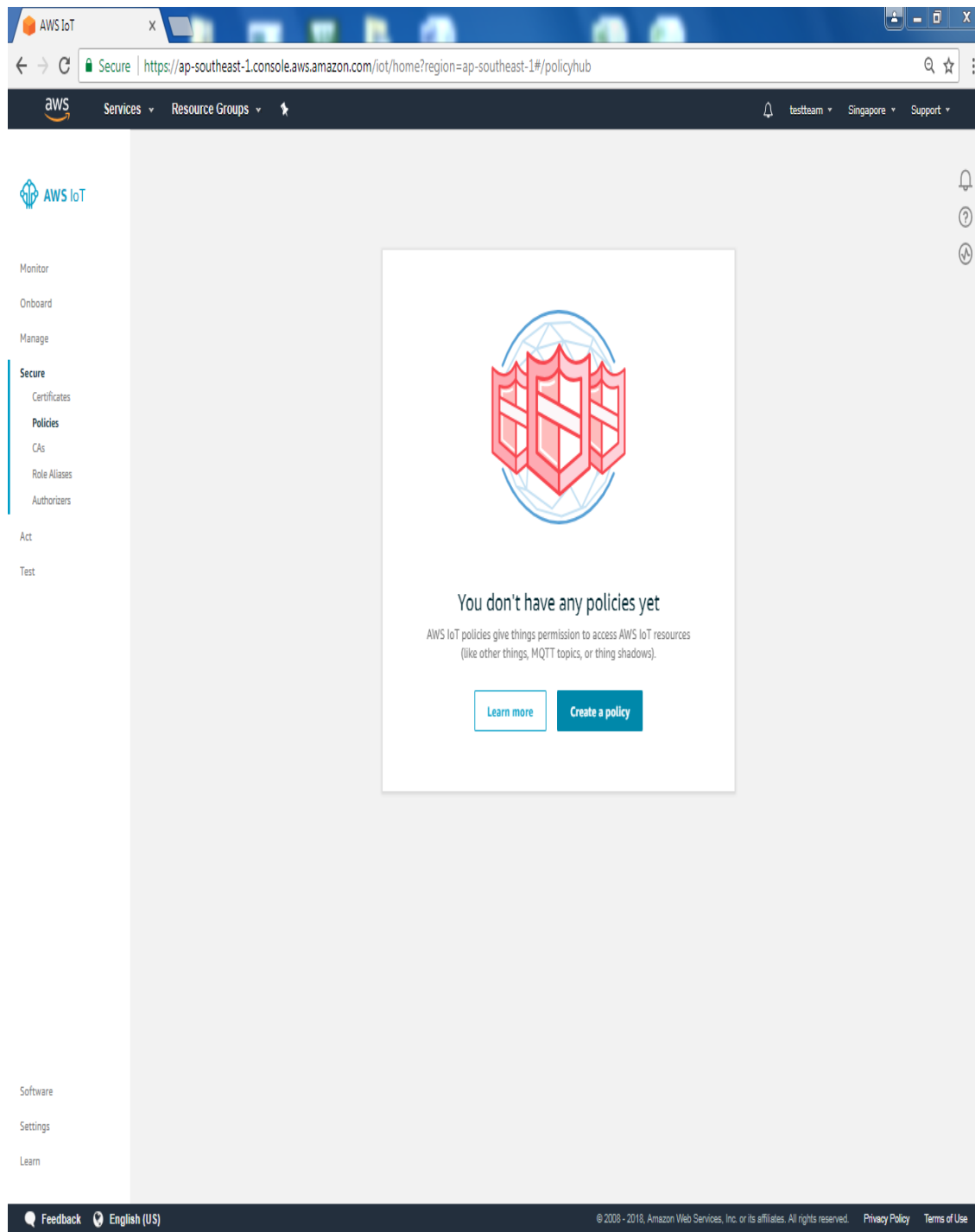
We fill in “ameba” on the Name field. Attributes represent the status of ameba. The value of the attributes can be updated directly by ameba or by the control side and control side can request ameba to set the attribute to desired value. Here we add a attribute named “led” with value “0”, and click “Next”.



Click “Create thing without certificate” and enter next page



Then we can see that a thing named ambea was successfully created.



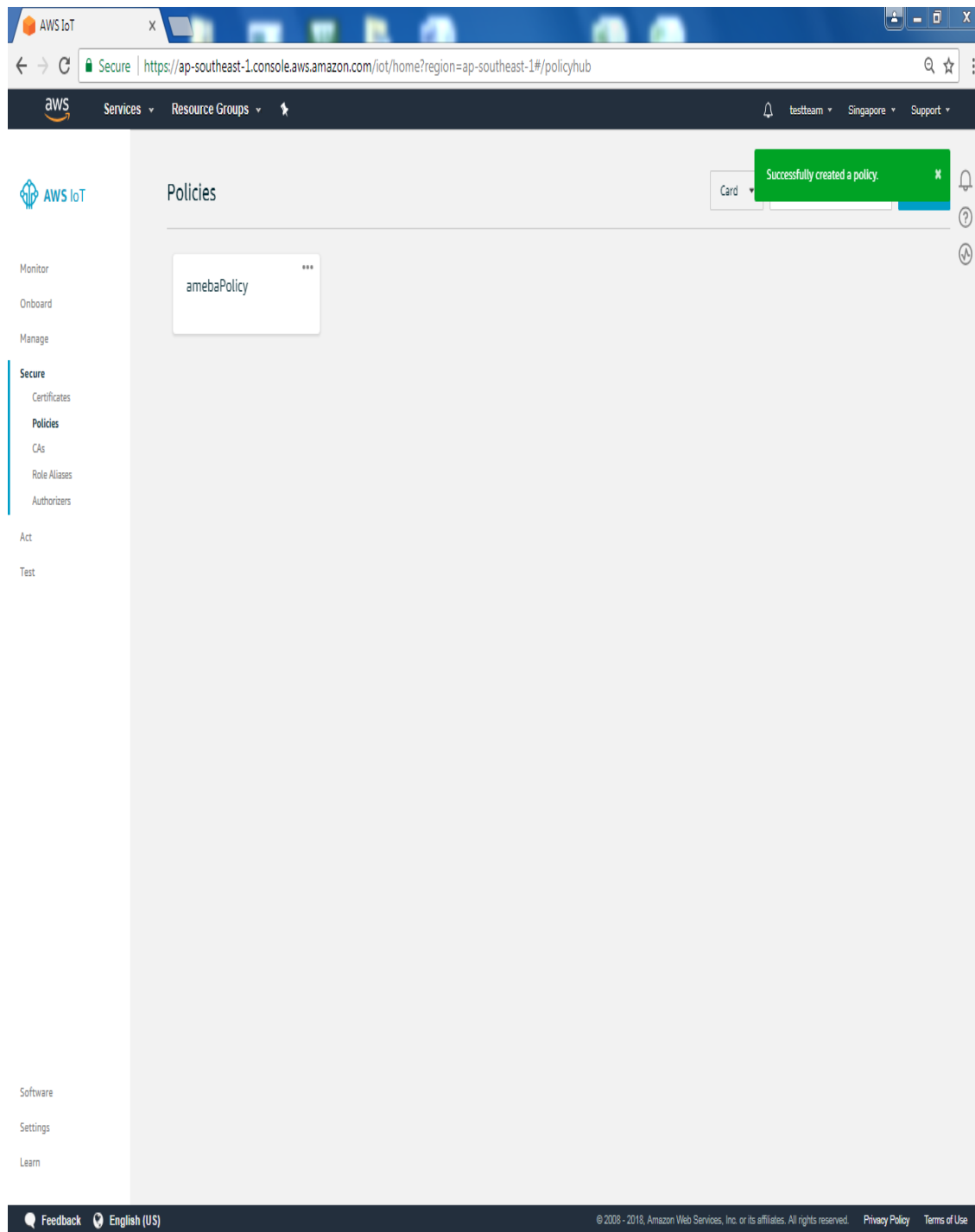
Click field Secure “Policies” on the left and click “Create a policy”

Policy is used to restrict the functions that a “thing” can do, it can limit the MQTT actions or specific topic that can be performed. Learn more about policy:

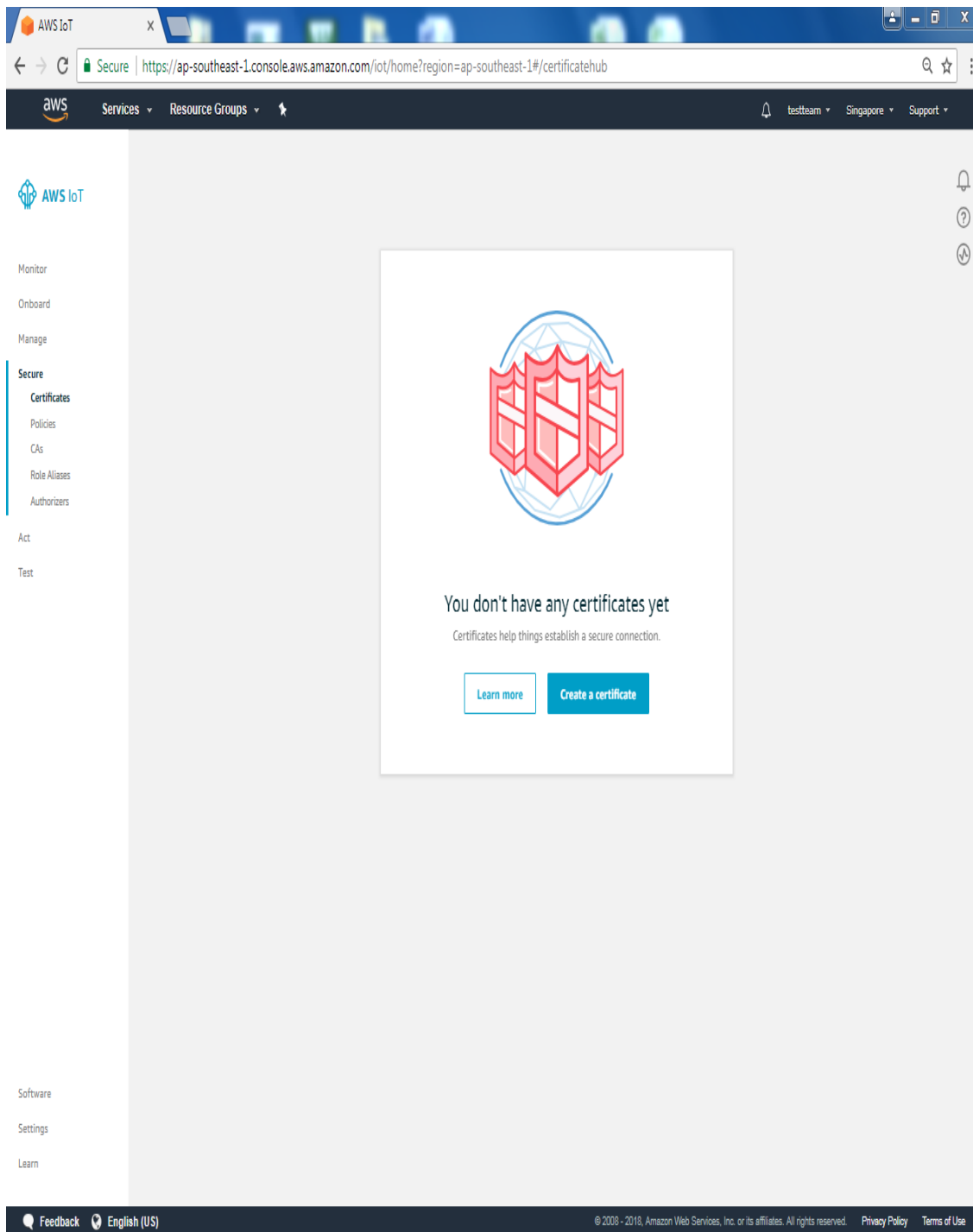
<http://docs.aws.amazon.com/iot/latest/developerguide/authorization.html>

The screenshot shows the AWS IoT console interface for creating a new policy. The browser address bar indicates the URL is `https://ap-southeast-1.console.aws.amazon.com/iot/home?region=ap-southeast-1#/create/policy`. The page title is "Create a policy". Below the title, there is a brief description: "Create a policy to define a set of authorized actions. You can authorize actions on one or more resources (things, topics, topic filters). To learn more about IoT policies go to the [AWS IoT Policies documentation page](#)." The "Name" field is filled with "amebaPolicy". The "Add statements" section is active, showing a single statement with "Action" set to "iot:*", "Resource ARN" set to "*", and "Effect" set to "Allow". There is an "Add statement" button and a "Remove" button for the existing statement. At the bottom right, there is a "Create" button. The footer includes "Feedback", "English (US)", and copyright information: "© 2008 - 2018, Amazon Web Services, Inc. or its affiliates. All rights reserved. Privacy Policy Terms of Use".

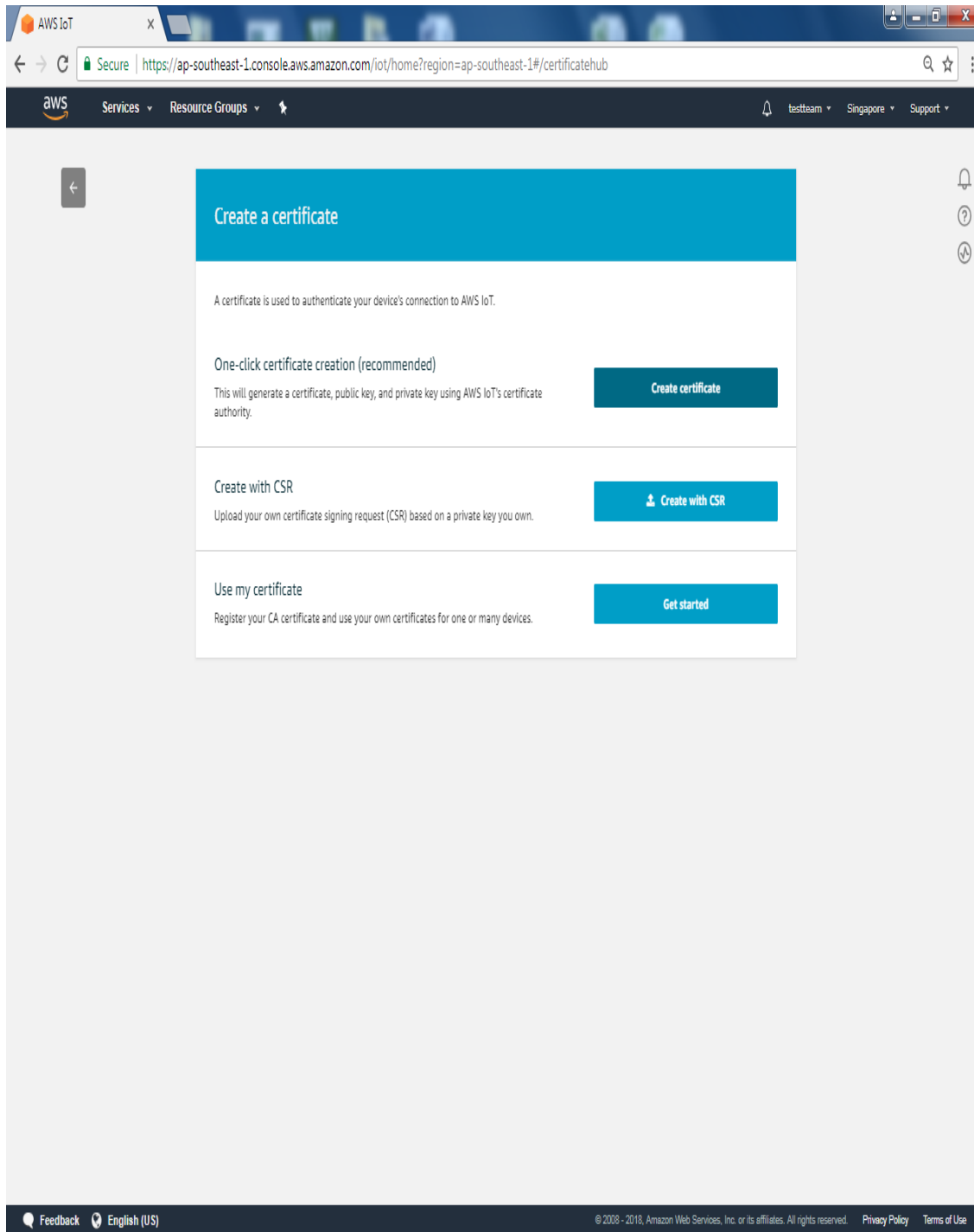
Here we do not place policy on ameba. Fill in “amebaPolicy” in the Name field, “iot:” in *Action field* and “*” in Resources field. Then check “Allow”. Finally, click “Create”.



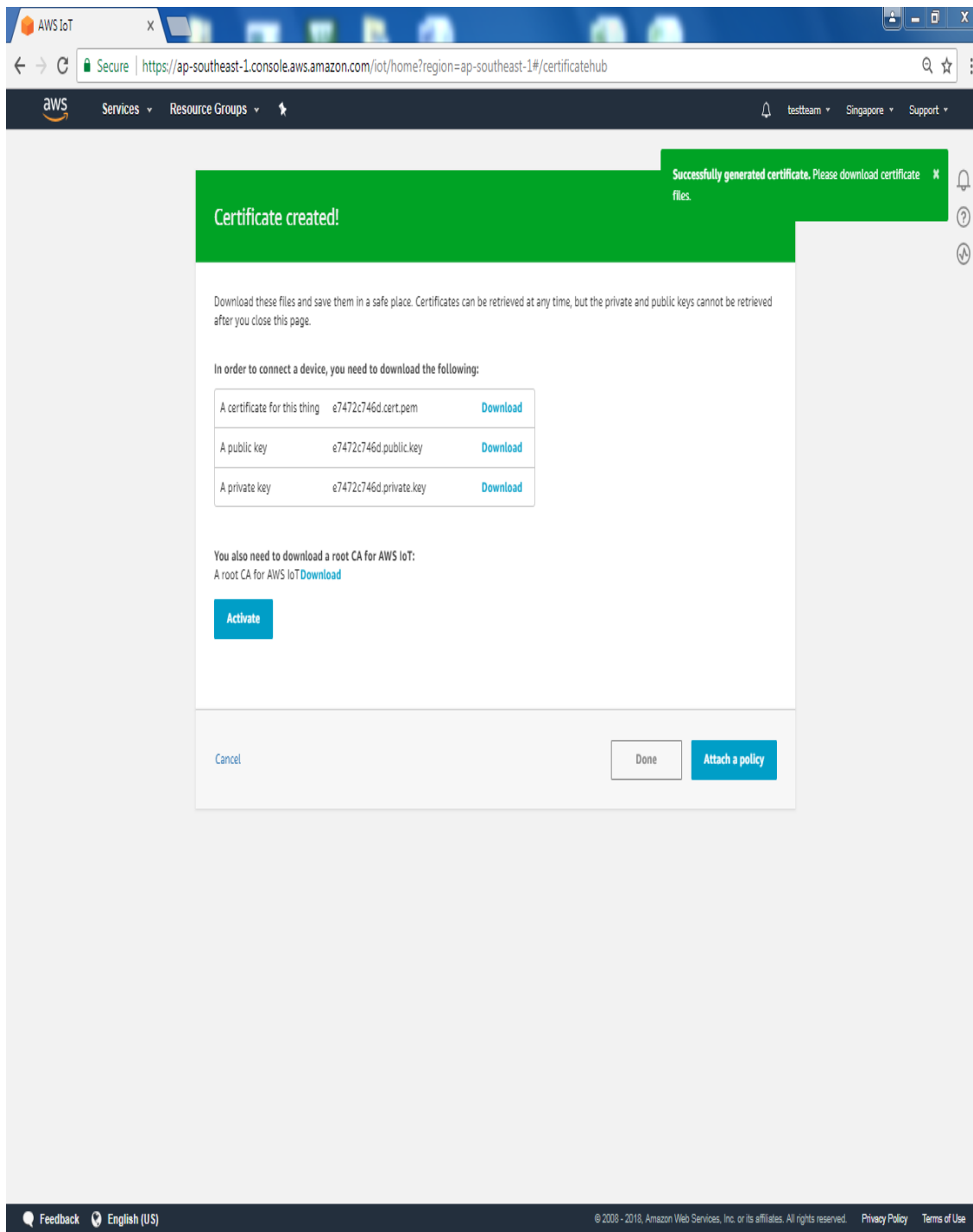
Finish the Policy setting:



Next, we have to set up the TLS certificate. Click “Create a certificate”. Click “Secure-> certificates” on the left and click “Create a certificate” on the right.

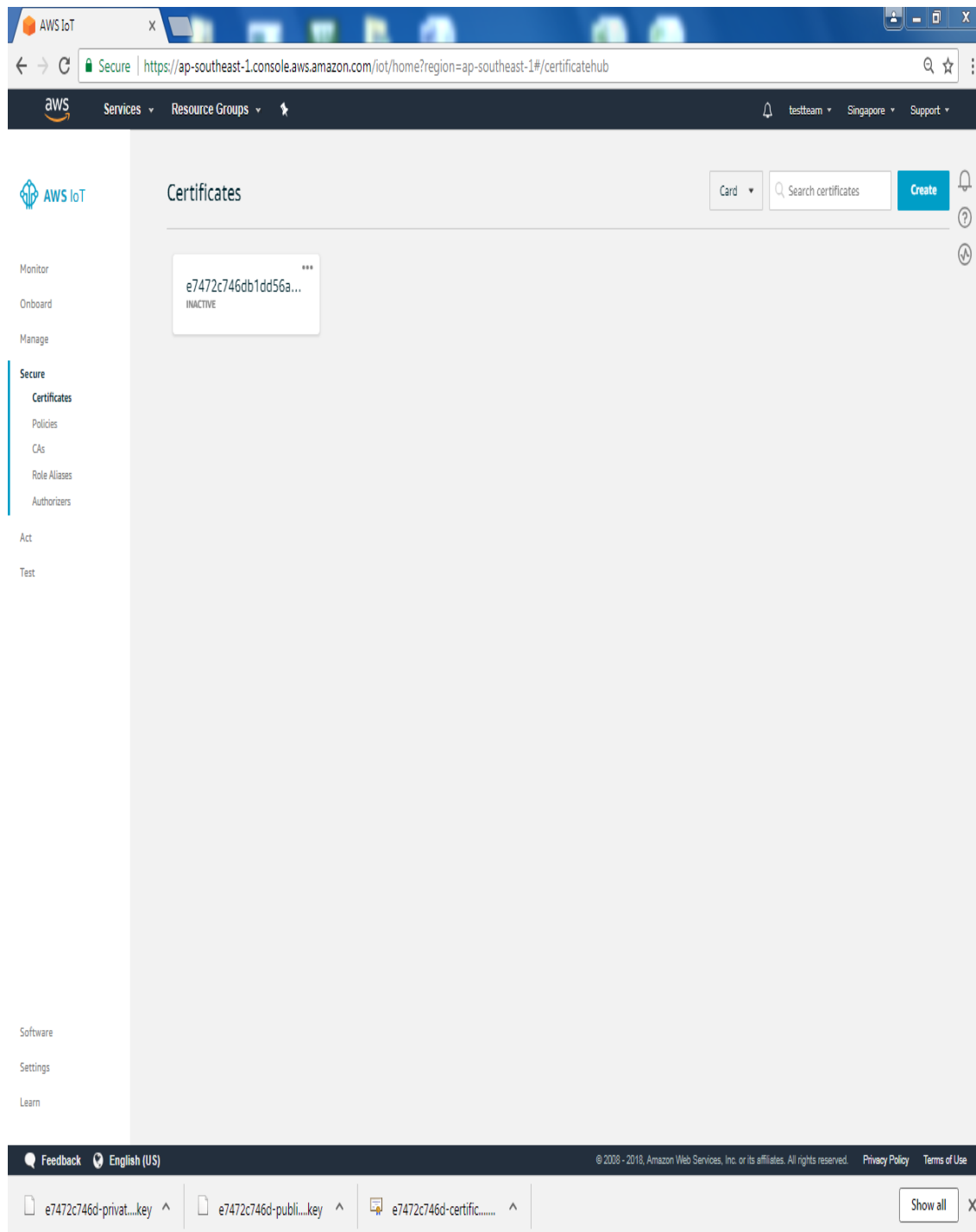


You can choose to use user-defined certificate or generate a certificate by AWS IoT. In this example we click “1-Click certificate create” to generate a TLS certificate.

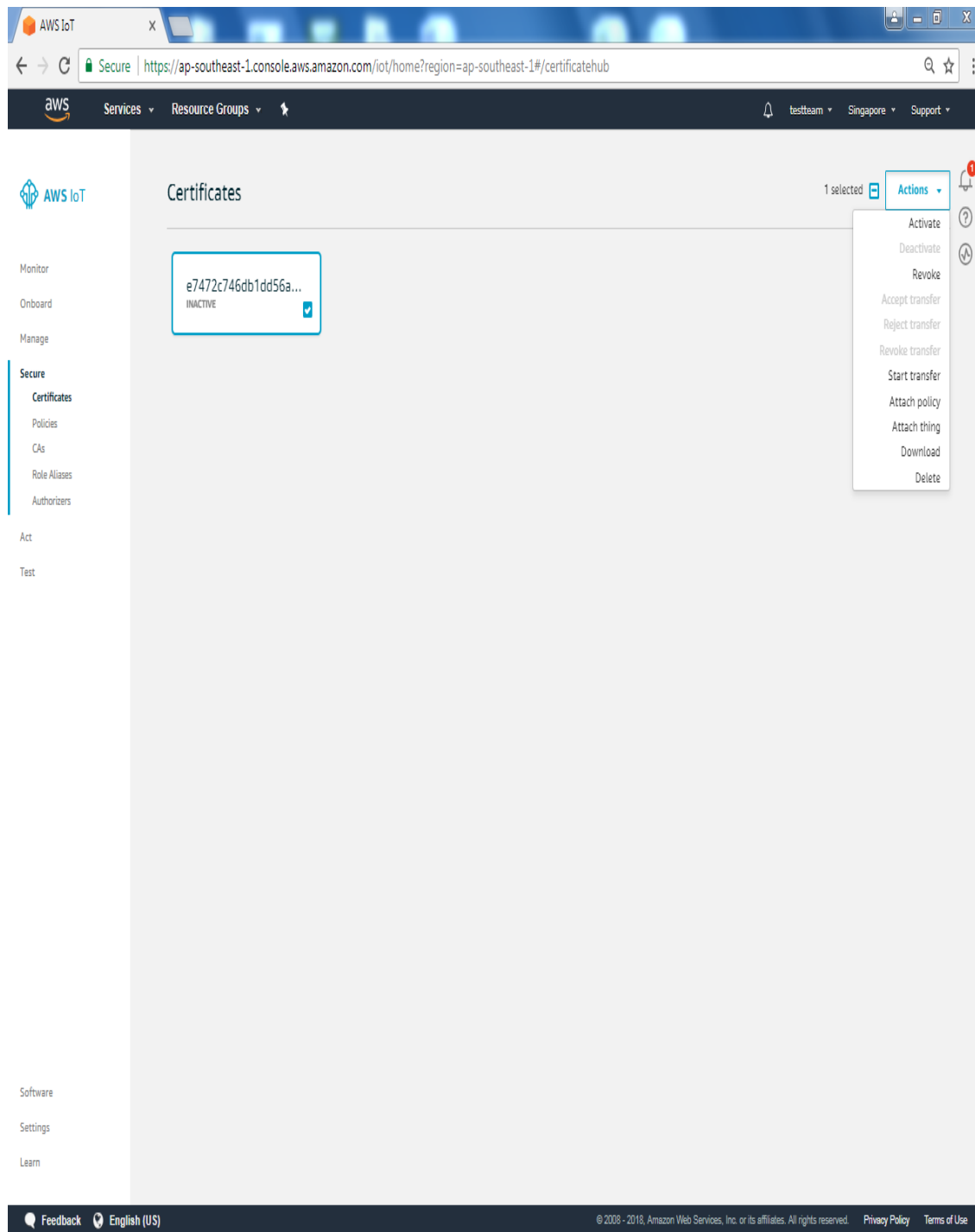


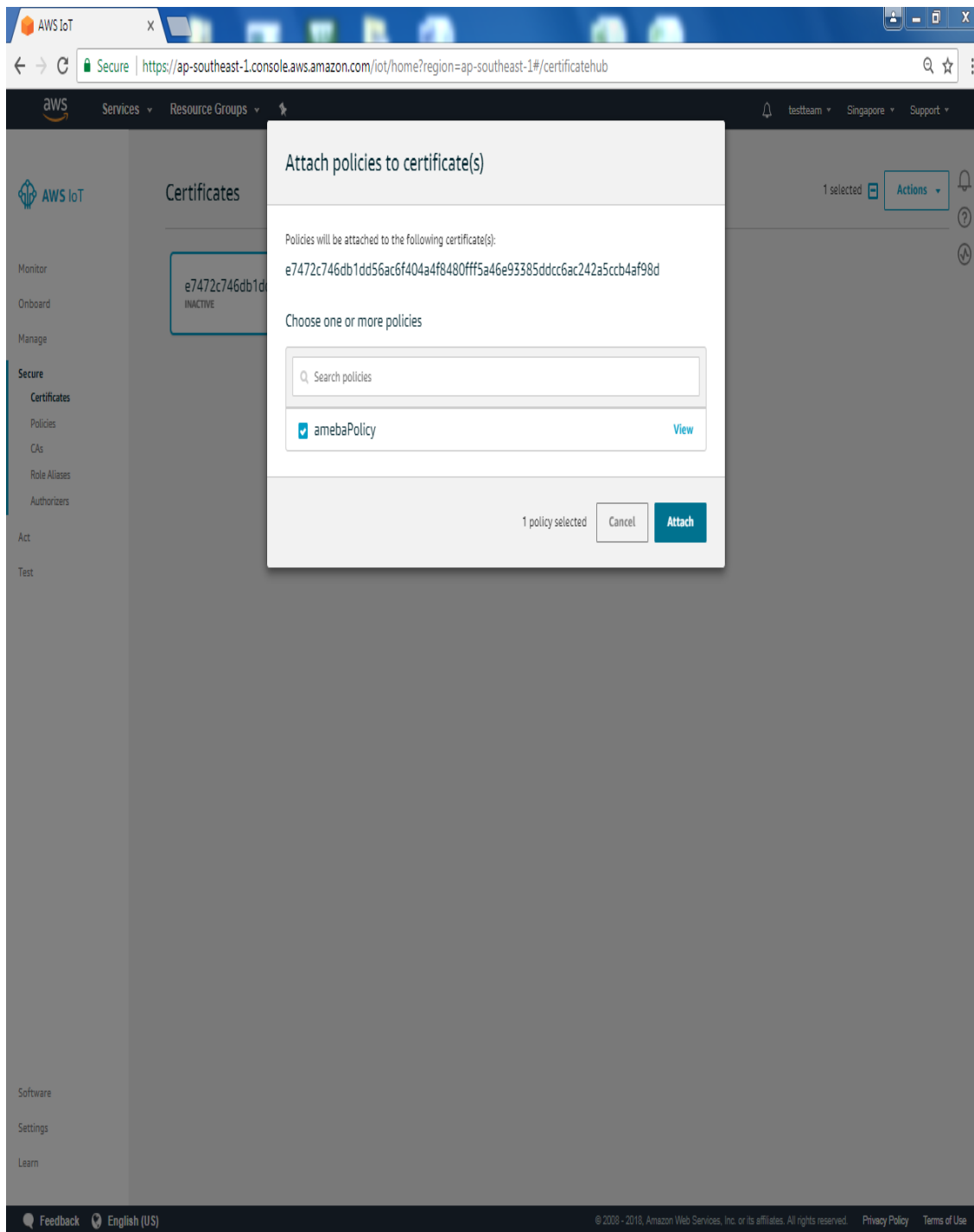
Then, you can see 4 links. Please click each of the 4 links to download “public key”, “private key”, “certificate” and “rootCA”.

After downloading the 4 files, click “Done” and go back to certificates main page.



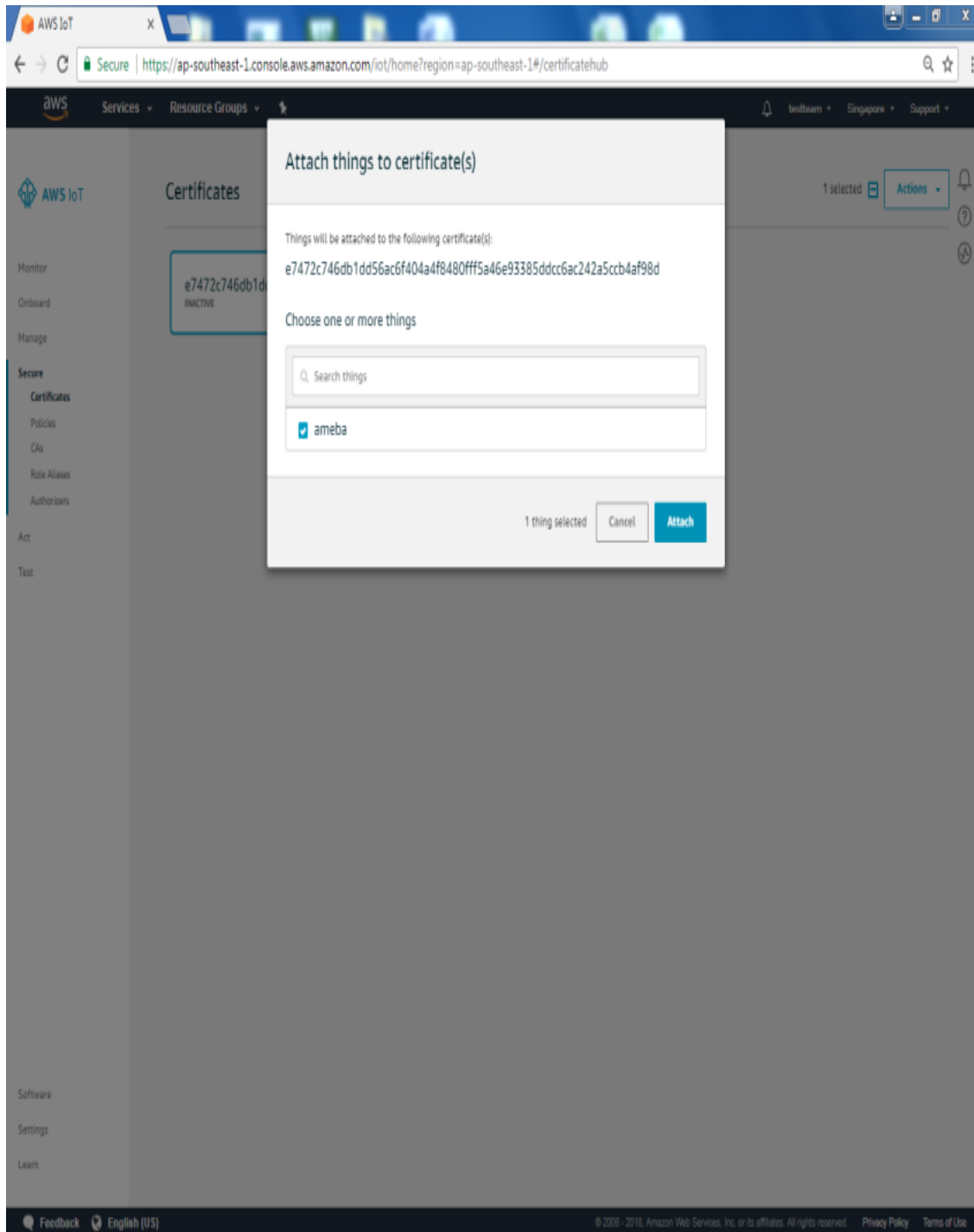
Click “Attach a policy” in the “Actions” dropdown menu.

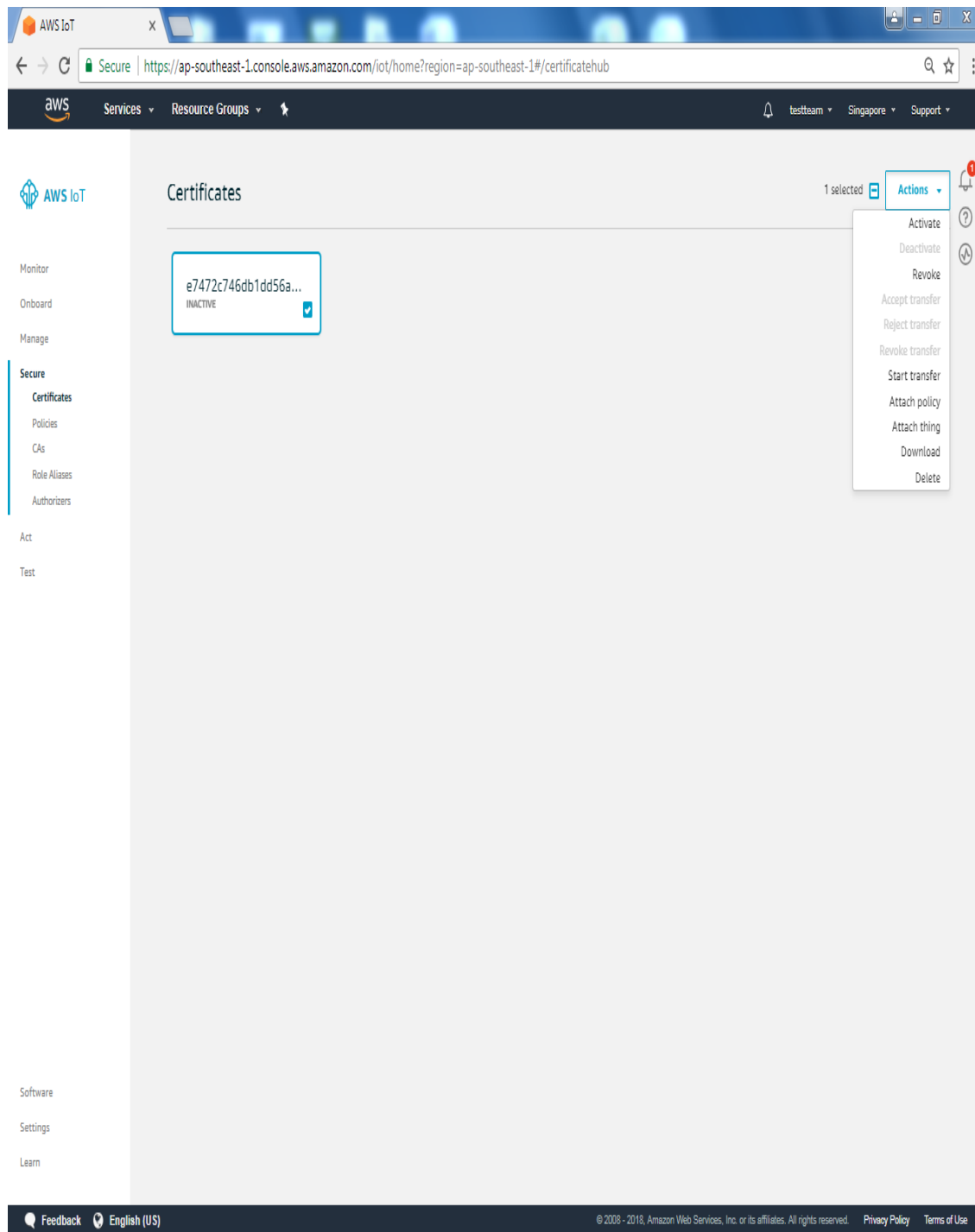




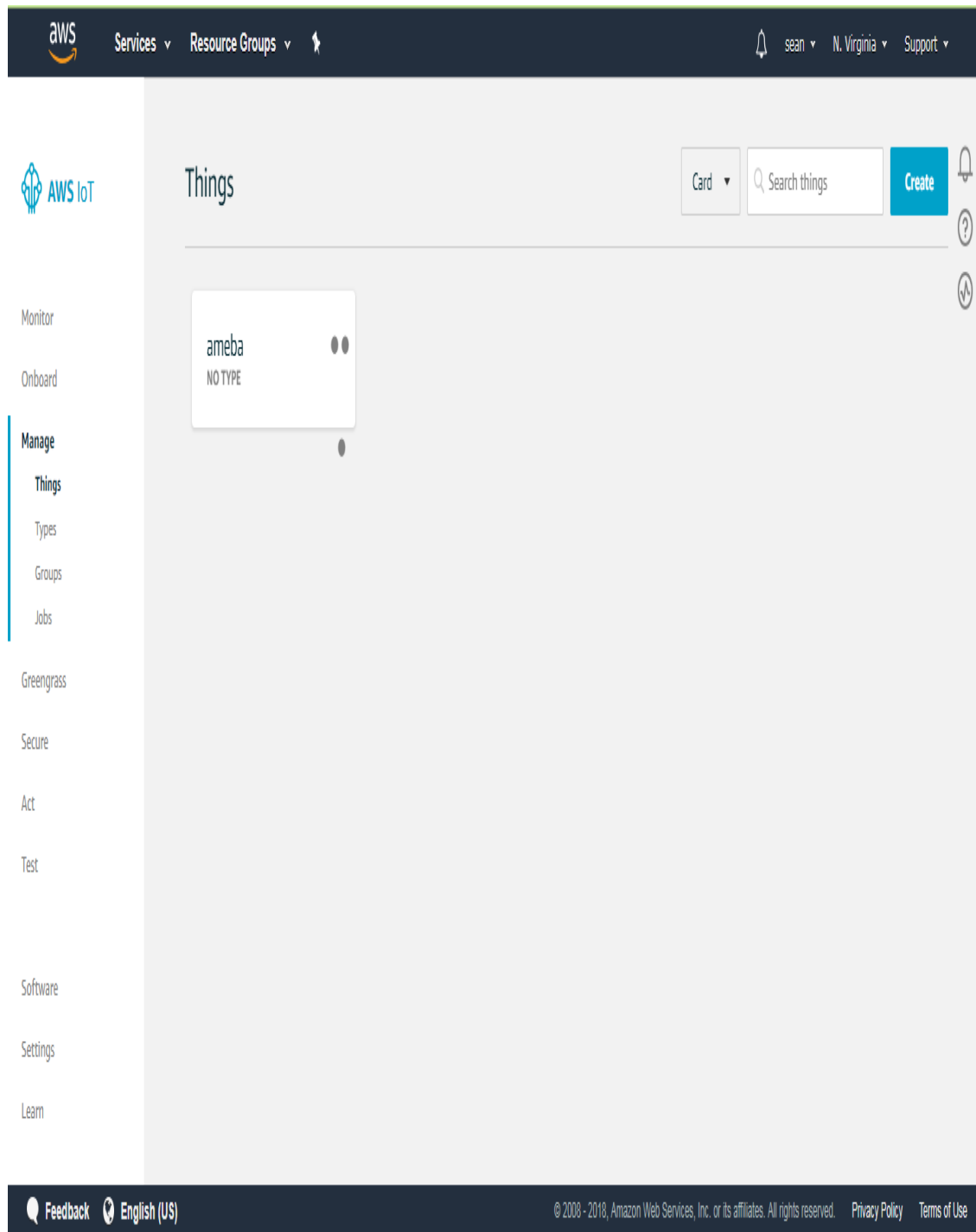
Choose "AmebaPolicy" and click "Attach"

Then go back to the "Actions" drop-down menu at the top right of the certificates homepage, click on "Attach thing", select the thing "ameba" you just created when the window below appears, then click on "Attach"

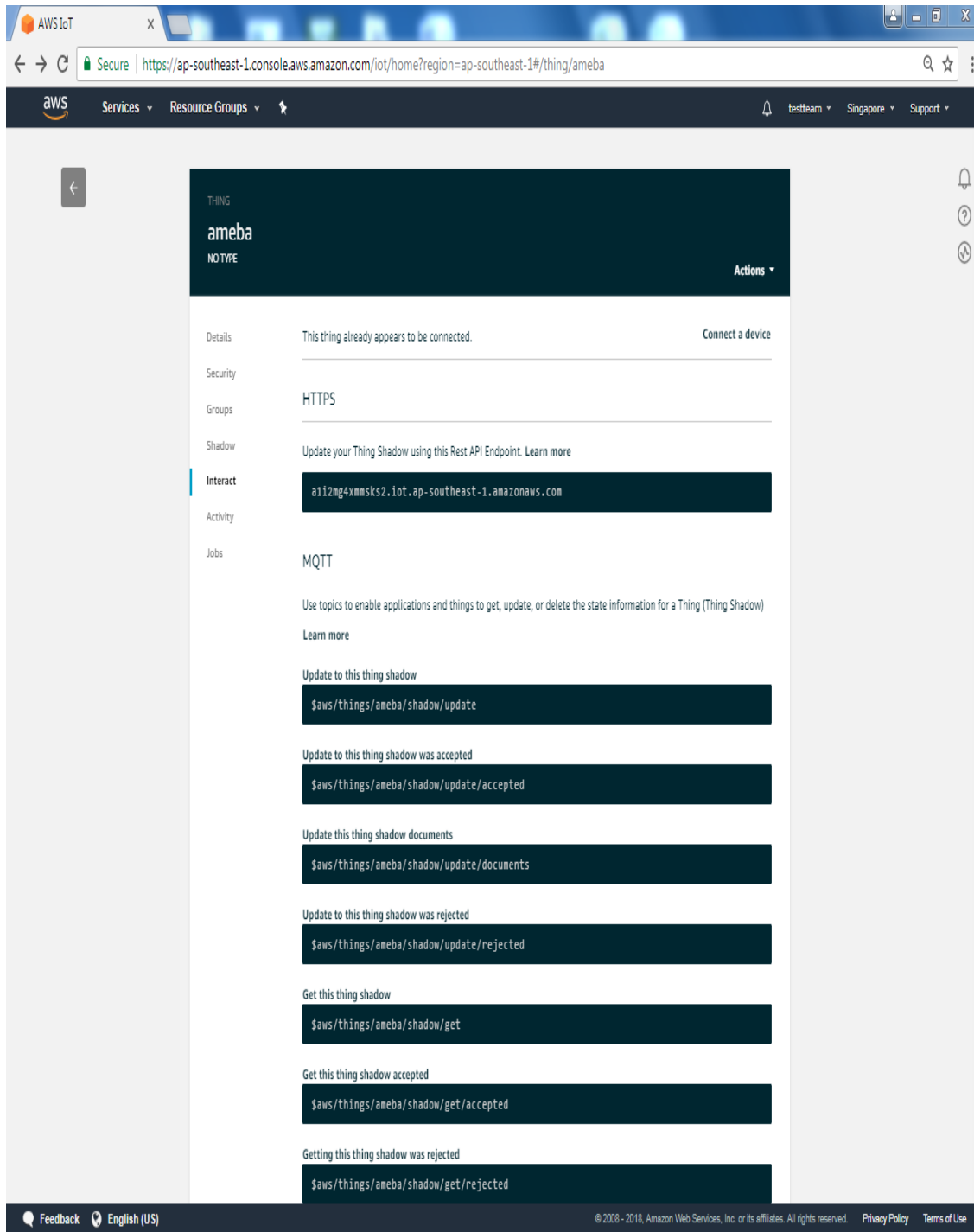




Then activate the certificate. Go back to certificates main page and click certificate, and click “Activate” in the “Actions” dropdown menu.



Go back to the file on the left, choose “Manage->Things” and click ameba thing we created.



Enter ameba thing page, choose “Interact” on the left. Find out the information of Rest API Endpoint to set Amazon Alexa:

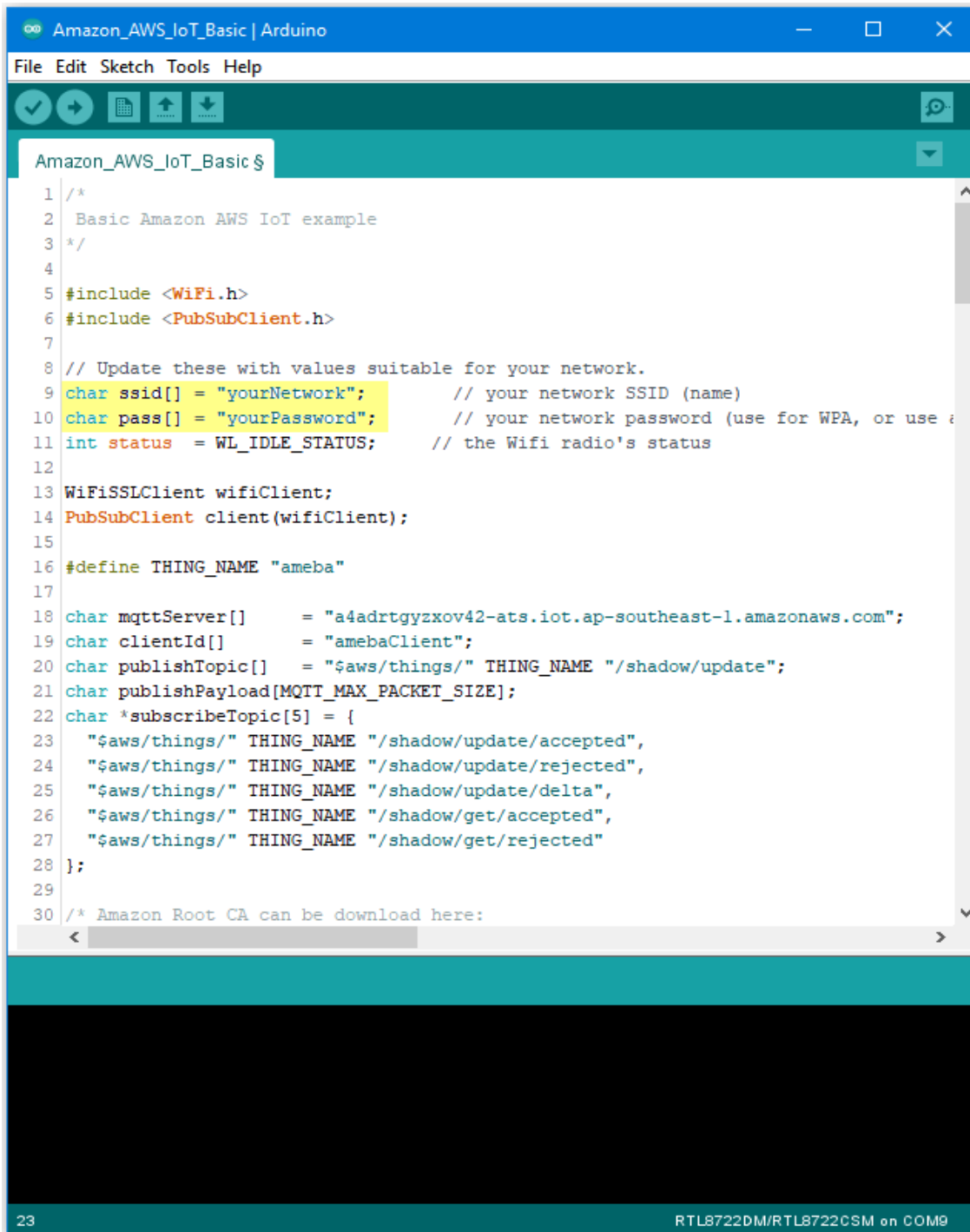
— REST API endpoint: In the value “`https://a1a7oo4baosggy.iot.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/things/ameba/shadow`”, the part “`a1a7oo4baosggy.iot.us-east-1.amazonaws.com`” is the MQTT Broker server address.

— MQTT topic: The value “`$aws/things/ameba/shadow/update`” represents the MQTT topic we will use in the AWS IoT Shadow service (if we use MQTT only, without AWS IoT Shadow service, then we can specify other topic name). It is recommended to use “`$aws/things/ameba/shadow/update`” here.

Ameba setting

Open “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaMQTTClient” -> “Amazon_AWS_IoT_Basic”

In the sample code, modify the highlighted snippet to reflect your WiFi network settings.

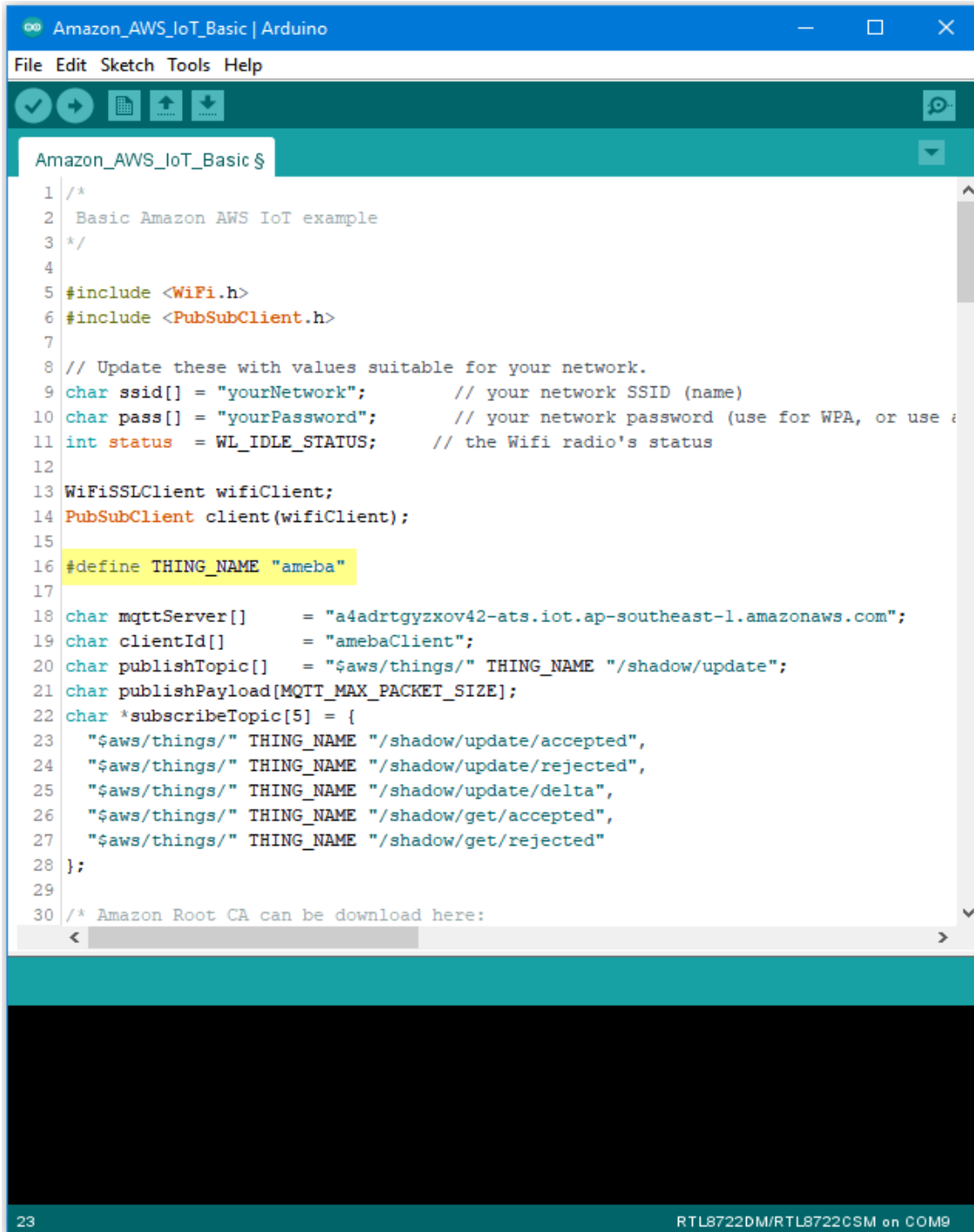


```

1  /*
2   Basic Amazon AWS IoT example
3  */
4
5  #include <WiFi.h>
6  #include <PubSubClient.h>
7
8  // Update these with values suitable for your network.
9  char ssid[] = "yourNetwork";      // your network SSID (name)
10 char pass[] = "yourPassword";     // your network password (use for WPA, or use a
11 int status = WL_IDLE_STATUS;      // the Wifi radio's status
12
13 WiFiSSLClient wifiClient;
14 PubSubClient client(wifiClient);
15
16 #define THING_NAME "ameba"
17
18 char mqttServer[] = "a4adrtgyzxov42-ats.iot.ap-southeast-1.amazonaws.com";
19 char clientId[] = "amebaClient";
20 char publishTopic[] = "$aws/things/" THING_NAME "/shadow/update";
21 char publishPayload[MQTT_MAX_PACKET_SIZE];
22 char *subscribeTopic[5] = {
23   "$aws/things/" THING_NAME "/shadow/update/accepted",
24   "$aws/things/" THING_NAME "/shadow/update/rejected",
25   "$aws/things/" THING_NAME "/shadow/update/delta",
26   "$aws/things/" THING_NAME "/shadow/get/accepted",
27   "$aws/things/" THING_NAME "/shadow/get/rejected"
28 };
29
30 /* Amazon Root CA can be download here:

```

Then fill in the “thing” name “ameba”.



```

Amazon_AWS_IoT_Basic | Arduino
File Edit Sketch Tools Help

Amazon_AWS_IoT_Basic $
1  /*
2   Basic Amazon AWS IoT example
3  */
4
5  #include <WiFi.h>
6  #include <PubSubClient.h>
7
8  // Update these with values suitable for your network.
9  char ssid[] = "yourNetwork";      // your network SSID (name)
10 char pass[] = "yourPassword";     // your network password (use for WPA, or use a
11 int status = WL_IDLE_STATUS;      // the Wifi radio's status
12
13 WiFiSSLClient wifiClient;
14 PubSubClient client(wifiClient);
15
16 #define THING_NAME "ameba"
17
18 char mqttServer[] = "a4adrtgyzxov42-ats.iot.ap-southeast-1.amazonaws.com";
19 char clientId[] = "amebaClient";
20 char publishTopic[] = "$aws/things/" THING_NAME "/shadow/update";
21 char publishPayload[MQTT_MAX_PACKET_SIZE];
22 char *subscribeTopic[5] = {
23   "$aws/things/" THING_NAME "/shadow/update/accepted",
24   "$aws/things/" THING_NAME "/shadow/update/rejected",
25   "$aws/things/" THING_NAME "/shadow/update/delta",
26   "$aws/things/" THING_NAME "/shadow/get/accepted",
27   "$aws/things/" THING_NAME "/shadow/get/rejected"
28 };
29
30 /* Amazon Root CA can be download here:

```

23

RTL8722DM/RTL8722CSM on COM9

And the MQTT Broker server address we found earlier in AWS IoT.

```

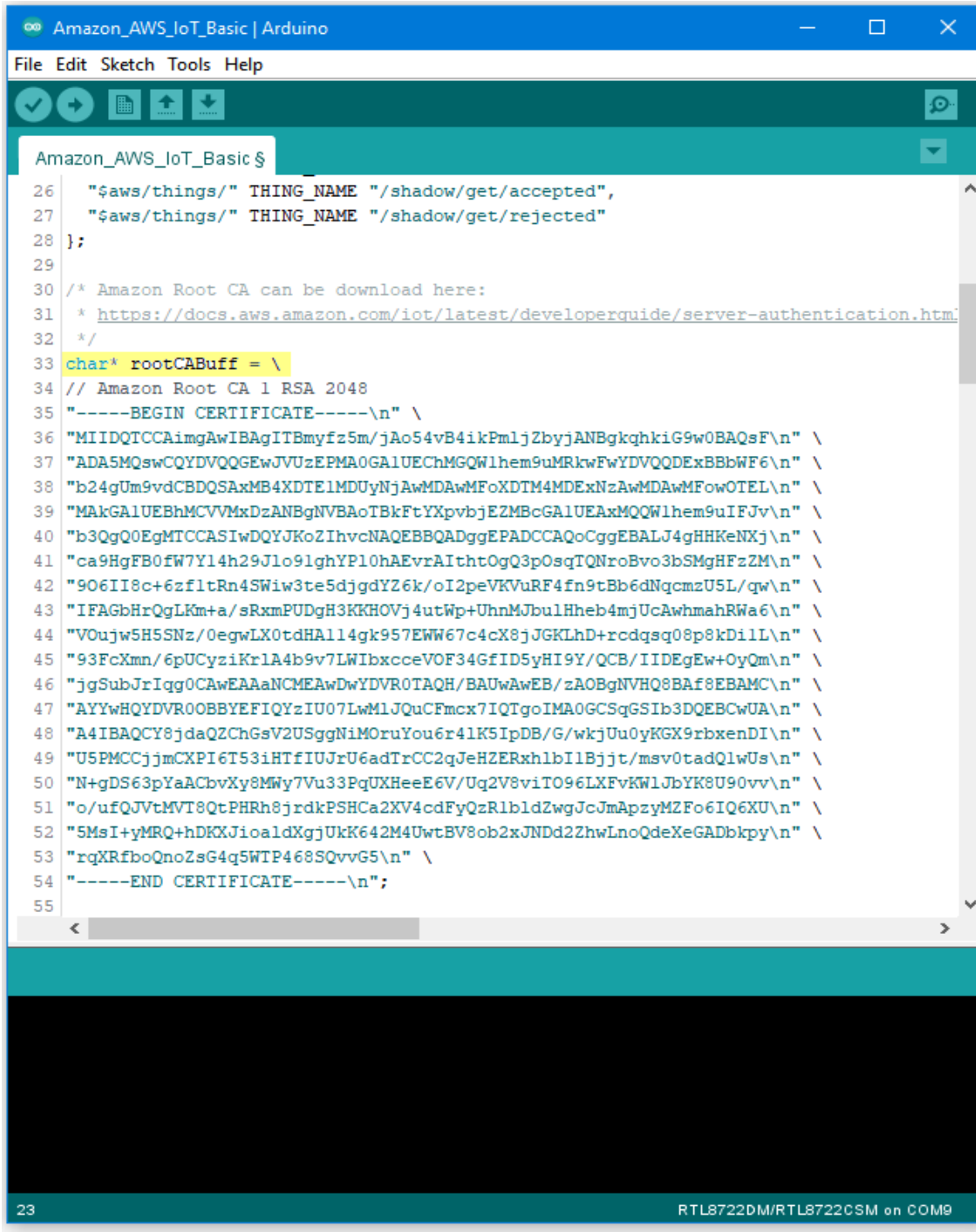
1  /*
2   Basic Amazon AWS IoT example
3  */
4
5  #include <WiFi.h>
6  #include <PubSubClient.h>
7
8  // Update these with values suitable for your network.
9  char ssid[] = "yourNetwork";      // your network SSID (name)
10 char pass[] = "yourPassword";     // your network password (use for WPA, or use a
11 int status = WL_IDLE_STATUS;      // the Wifi radio's status
12
13 WiFiSSLClient wifiClient;
14 PubSubClient client(wifiClient);
15
16 #define THING_NAME "ameba"
17
18 char mqttServer[] = "a4adrtgyzxov42-ats.iot.ap-southeast-1.amazonaws.com";
19 char clientId[] = "amebaClient";
20 char publishTopic[] = "$aws/things/" THING_NAME "/shadow/update";
21 char publishPayload[MQTT_MAX_PACKET_SIZE];
22 char *subscribeTopic[5] = {
23   "$aws/things/" THING_NAME "/shadow/update/accepted",
24   "$aws/things/" THING_NAME "/shadow/update/rejected",
25   "$aws/things/" THING_NAME "/shadow/update/delta",
26   "$aws/things/" THING_NAME "/shadow/get/accepted",
27   "$aws/things/" THING_NAME "/shadow/get/rejected"
28 };
29
30 /* Amazon Root CA can be download here:

```

23

RTL8722DM/RTL8722CSM on COM9

Next, fill in the root CA used in TLS. Download and make sure the downloaded root CA contents conforms to the root CA used in the sketch.



```

Amazon_AWS_IoT_Basic | Arduino
File Edit Sketch Tools Help

Amazon_AWS_IoT_Basic $
26 "$aws/things/" THING_NAME "/shadow/get/accepted",
27 "$aws/things/" THING_NAME "/shadow/get/rejected"
28 };
29
30 /* Amazon Root CA can be download here:
31 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/iot/latest/developerguide/server-authentication.htm
32 */
33 char* rootCABuff = \
34 // Amazon Root CA 1 RSA 2048
35 "-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----\n" \
36 "MIIDQTCCAimgAwIBAgITBmyfz5m/jAo54vB4ikPmljZbyjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQsF\n" \
37 "ADA5MQswCQYDVQQGEwJVUzEPMA0GA1UEChMGQWlhem9uMRkwFwYDVQQDExBbWF6\n" \
38 "b24gUm9vdCBDQSAxMB4XDTE1MDUyNjAwMDAwMFoXDTM4MDE4NzAwMDAwMFowOTEL\n" \
39 "MAkGA1UEBhMCVVMxMCZANBgNVBAoTBkFtYXpvcjEzMDE4MDE4MDE4MDE4MDE4\n" \
40 "b3QgQ0EgMTCCASIwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADggEPADCCAQoCggEBALJ4gHHKcX\n" \
41 "ca9HgFB0fW7Y14h29Jl09lghYPl0hAEvrAIthtOgQ3pOsQTNroBvo3bSMgHFzZM\n" \
42 "906II8c+6zfltRn4SWiw3te5djdYZ6k/oI2peVKVuRF4fn9tBb6dNqcmzU5L/qw\n" \
43 "IFAGbHrQgLKm+a/sRxmPUDgH3KKHOVj4utWp+UhnMJbulHheb4mjUcAwhmahRWa6\n" \
44 "VOujw5H5SNz/0egwLX0tdHA114gk957EWW67c4cX8jJGKLhD+rcdqsq08p8kDilL\n" \
45 "93FcXmn/6pUCyziKrlA4b9v7LWIbxcceVOF34GfID5yHI9Y/QCB/IIDEgEw+OyQm\n" \
46 "jgSubJrIqg0CAwEAAaNCMEAwDwYDVR0TAQH/BAUwAwEB/zAOBgNVHQ8BAf8EBAMC\n" \
47 "AYYwHQYDVR0OBBYEFIQYzIU07LwMlJQuCFmcx7IQTgoIMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBCwUA\n" \
48 "A4IBAQC8Y8jdaQ2ChGsV2USggNiMOruYou6r4lK5IpDB/G/wkjUu0yKGX9rbxenDI\n" \
49 "U5PMCCjjmCXPI6T53iHTfIUJrU6adTrCC2qJeHZERxhlbI1Bjtt/msv0tadQlwUs\n" \
50 "N+gDS63pYaAChvXy8MWy7Vu33PqUXHeeE6V/Uq2V8viT096LXFvKW1JbYK8U90vv\n" \
51 "o/ufQJVtMVT8QtPHRh8jrdkPSHca2XV4cdFyQzRlbdZwgJcJmApzyMZFo6IQ6XU\n" \
52 "5MsI+yMRQ+hDKXJioaldXgjUkK642M4UwtBV8ob2xJNDd2ZhwLnoQdeXeGADbkpy\n" \
53 "rqXRfboQnoZsG4q5WTP468SQvvG5\n" \
54 "-----END CERTIFICATE-----\n";
55
23
RTL8722DM/RTL8722DSM on COM9

```

Next, fill in the certificate we created in the AWS IoT Console (i.e., client certificate), usually its file name ends with “-certificate.pem.crt” (e.g., “efae24a533-certificate.pem.crt”). Open the certificate with a text editor, and adjust its format as follows to use in the sketch:

- Add the new line character “\n” at the end of each line.
- Add double-quote at the beginning and the end of each line.
- To concatenate each line as a string, add “\” at the end of each line.

– The last line ends with semicolon.

Adjust the format of the private key in the same way and add it to privateKeyBuff.

```

Amazon_AWS_IoT_Basic | Arduino
File Edit Sketch Tools Help

Amazon_AWS_IoT_Basic $
56 /* Fill in YOUR certificate.pem.crt with LINE ENDINGS */
57 char* certificateBuff = \
58 "-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----\n" \
59 "MIIDWjCCAkKgAwIBAgIVAPsRFvhpqcxvXwyMKczt/eeebcAMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBA\n" \
60 "CwUAME0xSzBzBgNVBAsMQkFtYXpvaXBXZWlqU2VydmljZXMGZz1BbWF6b24uY29t\n" \
61 "IEluYy4gTD1TZWF0dGx1IFNUPVdhc2hpbmd0b24gQz1VUzAeFw0yMDA3MDYwNjUy\n" \
62 "MzZaFw00OTYyMzEyMzU5NTlaMB4xHDAaBgNVBAMME0FXUyBjblQgQ2VydG1maWNh\n" \
63 "dGUwgGElMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBAQUAA4IBDwAwggEKAoIBAQDKcYAWmFZwzGadgTlP\n" \
64 "4LK4uCs9vx9iHisnXl8pClDeBXxKt0QB2InvTtXGahjmUSLqnOBthabAxNTu+mo3\n" \
65 "N96KpQlmdEdBlkFfJtMG+2bQaFzjOEge0k3qFNqQdaM8JQkg+dv2VkhFoXVxrnwH\n" \
66 "WKcwWcqWjexmb9hVFYKm8AlaNHyh+yHsv5J0xg9KP/2ThWqVG89kx/ssei+kwNhD\n" \
67 "9pK7ghGpldszKmvSlwdTHcQJj1b3UC+22soJj1CICBqmOxmVBbQT575KNKFi+UOK\n" \
68 "yneF3oIYgwnD0tX5xHq3Cw0cUteaqYmzYKITIUYBxXq5B2CR2JsrNG46FK492NV\n" \
69 "3TR/AgMBAAGjYDBeMB8GA1UdIwQYMBAAFFJEaISt+QJLn05x8h7kXmC5WaQpMB0G\n" \
70 "AlUdDgQWBBTQuDC06walAD36MRM0Cz9TtRCP1zAMBgNVHRMBAf8EAjAAMA4GA1Ud\n" \
71 "DwEB/wQEAwIHgDANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQsFAAOCAQEafIzoSivJZyzay6ltW0tMkqs4\n" \
72 "EXg3eXIhohXfkkxqKJNN4nUrp7hMYfII/HPf/6+JL9/ltvEth6QjvW9xfXfptivJ\n" \
73 "KvgIMyjqzILVp15hUxM9ewdQJFK0b+v1X/VtkXHvgXYAHTceDOVC39blz/W7mjXW\n" \
74 "wDKB69E8Hhp4/8YP0Bs+GOvAM8pnxJrVoNnCHpjerDFDSjmNoq33iaNtPws8FCbq\n" \
75 "Dd65aHrDlcyRSYp+1C2Ovg0w2v2ECWWLuZDZOPpuyRdcRabLiAJYLakjE9G/nBw\n" \
76 "NbQjhqs3h0r435WbU0zunJbJfpbWEBMDEB2gke2adCyD+1FauwTyQDb+nXrSHA==\n" \
77 "-----END CERTIFICATE-----\n";
78
79 /* Fill in YOUR private.pem.key with LINE ENDINGS */
80 char* privateKeyBuff = \
81 "-----BEGIN RSA PRIVATE KEY-----\n" \
82 "MIIEowIBAAKCAQEAYnGAFphWcMxmnyE9T+CyuLgrPb8fYh4rJl5fKQtQ3gV8SrdE\n" \
83 "AdiJ707VxmoY5lEi6pzbYwmmMTU7vpqNzfeiqUNZhHQ2XZBXybTBvtm0Ghc4zhK\n" \
84 "ntJN6hTakHWjPCUJIPnb9lZIRaFlca58BlinMFnKlo3sZm/YVRWCpvAJWjR8ofsh\n" \
85 "7L+SdMYPsJ/9k4VqlRvPZMf7LHovpMDYQ/aSu4IRqdXbMzJL0tcHUx3ECY9W91Av\n"
23 RTL8722DM/RTL8722CSM on COM9

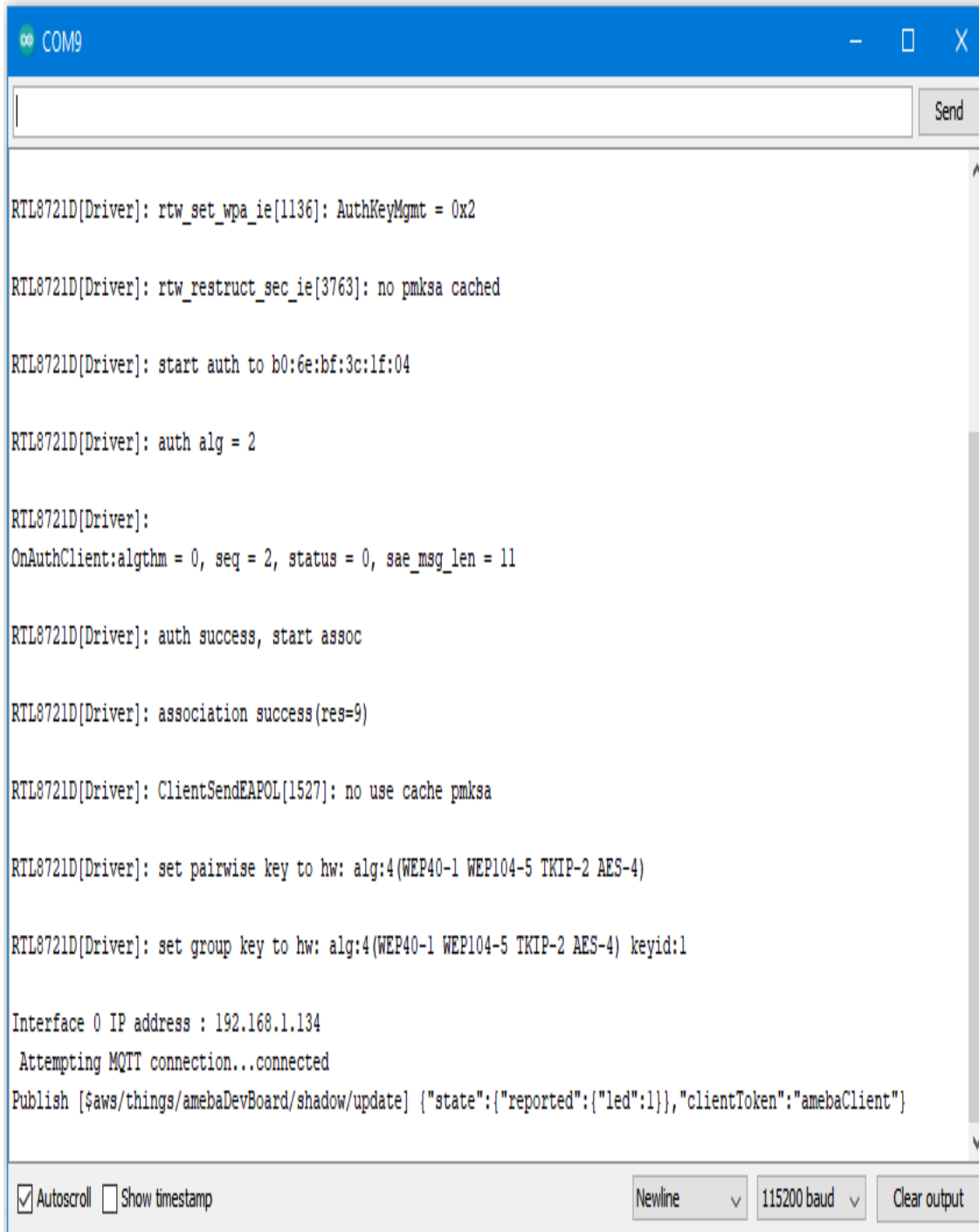
```

Compile and run

Upload the code and press the reset button on Ameba once the upload is finished.

Open the serial monitor in the Arduino IDE and observe as Ameba connects to the AWS IoT server and sends updates

on the LED state variable.



```

COM9

RTL8721D[Driver]: rtw_set_wpa_ie[1136]: AuthKeyMgmt = 0x2

RTL8721D[Driver]: rtw_restruct_sec_ie[3763]: no pmksa cached

RTL8721D[Driver]: start auth to b0:6e:bf:3c:1f:04

RTL8721D[Driver]: auth alg = 2

RTL8721D[Driver]:
OnAuthClient:alghth = 0, seq = 2, status = 0, sae_msg_len = 11

RTL8721D[Driver]: auth success, start assoc

RTL8721D[Driver]: association success(res=9)

RTL8721D[Driver]: ClientSendEAPOL[1527]: no use cache pmksa

RTL8721D[Driver]: set pairwise key to hw: alg:4(WEP40-1 WEP104-5 TKIP-2 AES-4)

RTL8721D[Driver]: set group key to hw: alg:4(WEP40-1 WEP104-5 TKIP-2 AES-4) keyid:1

Interface 0 IP address : 192.168.1.134
Attempting MQTT connection...connected
Publish [$aws/things/amebaDevBoard/shadow/update] {"state":{"reported":{"led":1}}, "clientToken":"amebaClient"}
  
```

☒ Autoscroll ☐ Show timestamp Newline 115200 baud Clear output

Alternatives

Ameba can also retrieve the current LED status variable from the AWS shadow. This is done by sending a message to the “shadow/get” topic. Refer to the [Amazon_AWS_IoT_with_ACK](#) example code for more information.

Code Reference

Change led state:

In this example, we use GPIO interface to control the led. We set led_pin to 10 and led_state to 1 by default in the sample code.

```
pinMode(led_pin, OUTPUT);  
digitalWrite(led_pin, led_state);
```

Set up certificate:

Note that we use the WiFiSSLClient type of wifiClient.

```
WiFiSSLClient wifiClient;
```

WiFiSSLClient inherits Client, so it can be passed as the parameter of PubSubClient constructor.
Next, set up TLS certificate required in connection.

```
wifiClient.setRootCA((unsigned char*)rootCABuff);  
wifiClient.setClientCertificate((unsigned char*)certificateBuff, (unsigned char*)privateKeyBuff);
```

Configure MQTT Broker server

Then MQTT PubClient set MQTT Broker server to connect

```
client.setServer(mqttServer, 8883);  
client.setCallback(callback);
```

Connect to MQTT Broker server:

In loop(), call reconnect() function and try to connect to MQTT Broker server and do the certificate verification.

```
while (!client.connected()) {
```

Subscribe & Publish

Next, subscribe to topics.

```
for (int i=0; i<5; i++) {  
  client.subscribe(subscribeTopic[i]);  
}
```

There are some common topics:

“\$aws/things/ameba/shadow/update/accepted”,

```
“$aws/things/ameba/shadow/update/rejected”,  
“$aws/things/ameba/shadow/update/delta”,  
“$aws/things/ameba/shadow/get/accepted”,  
“$aws/things/ameba/shadow/get/rejected”
```

Related documentation:

<http://docs.aws.amazon.com/iot/latest/developerguide/thing-shadow-data-flow.html>

Then publish current status:

```
sprintf(publishPayload, “{“state”:{“reported”:{“led”:%d}},“clientToken”:%s}””, led_state, clientId);  
client.publish(publishTopic, publishPayload);
```

Listen to topic and make response:

In the callback function, we listen to the 5 subscribed topics and check if there are messages of “/shadow/get/accepted”:

```
if (strstr(topic, “/shadow/get/accepted”) != NULL) {
```

If there is, the message is from the control side. If the attribute state in the message is different from current state, publish the new state.

```
updateLedState(desired_led_state);
```

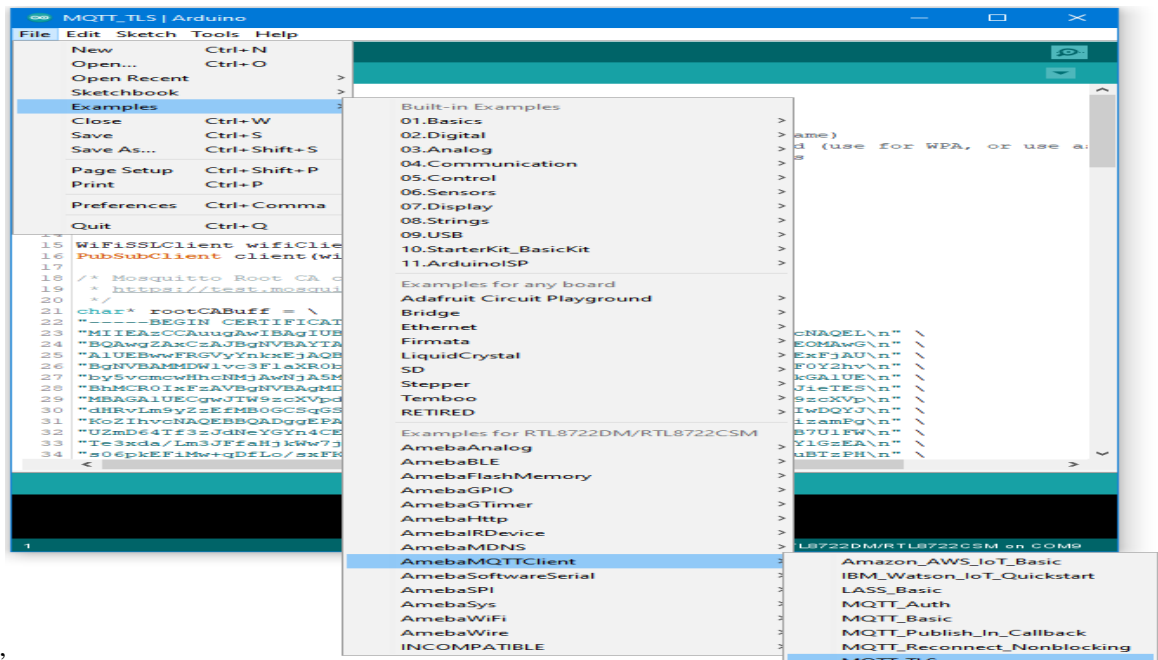
[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Use MQTT over TLS

Preparation

- Ameba x 1

Example

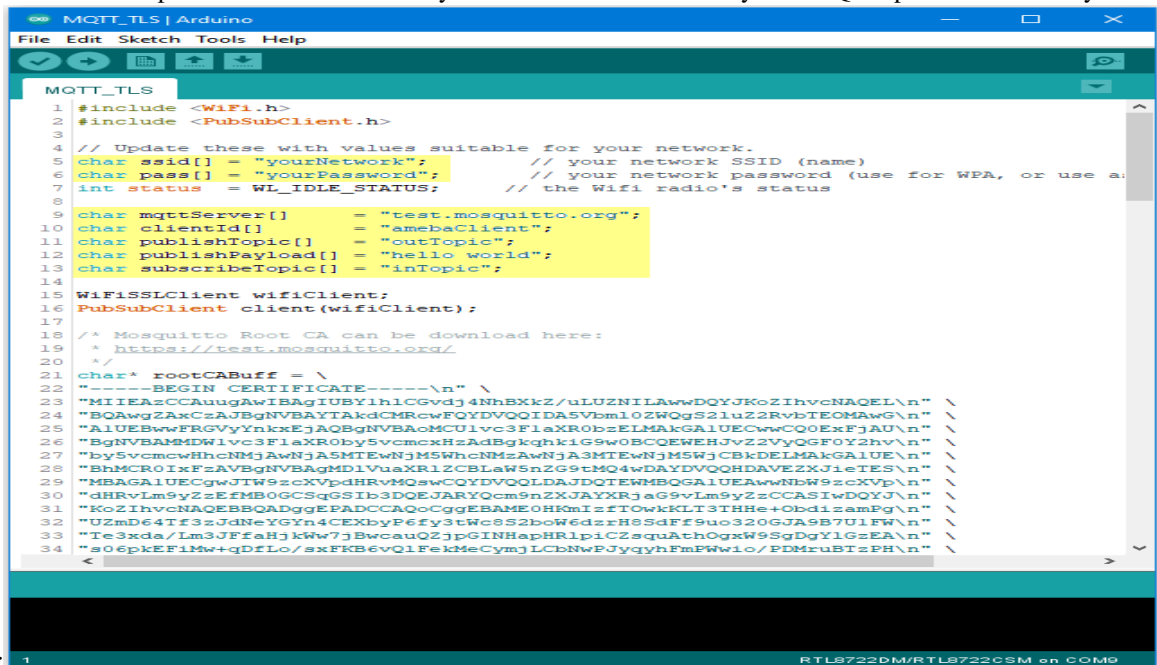
In this example, we connect Ameba to a MQTT broker using TLS authentication. Then send messages as a publisher and receive messages from as a subscriber. Open the MQTT example “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaMQTTClient” ->



“MQTT_TLS”

modify the WiFi-related parameters to connect to your WiFi network. Modify the MQTT parameters to fit your

Please



application:

“mqttServer” refers to the MQTT-Broker, we use the free MQTT sandbox “test.mosquitto.org” for testing. “clientId” is an identifier for MQTT-Broker to identify the connected device. “publishTopic” is the topic of the published message, we use “outTopic” in the example. The devices subscribe to “outTopic” will receive the message. “publishPayload” is the content to be published. “subscribeTopic” is to tell MQTT-broker which topic we want to subscribe to. Next, compile the code and upload it to Ameba. Press the reset button, then open the serial

The


```

COM9
Send

RTL8721D[Driver]: rtw_restruct_sec_ie[3763]: no pmksa cached

RTL8721D[Driver]: start auth to b0:6e:bf:3c:1f:04

RTL8721D[Driver]: auth alg = 2

RTL8721D[Driver]:
OnAuthClient:alghthm = 0, seq = 2, status = 0, sae_msg_len = 11

RTL8721D[Driver]: auth success, start assoc

RTL8721D[Driver]: association success(res=9)

RTL8721D[Driver]: ClientSendEAPOL[1527]: no use cache pmksa

RTL8721D[Driver]: set pairwise key to hw: alg:4(WEP40-1 WEP104-5 TKIP-2 AES-4)

RTL8721D[Driver]: set group key to hw: alg:4(WEP40-1 WEP104-5 TKIP-2 AES-4) keyid:1

Interface 0 IP address : 192.168.1.134Attempting MQTT connection...
connected

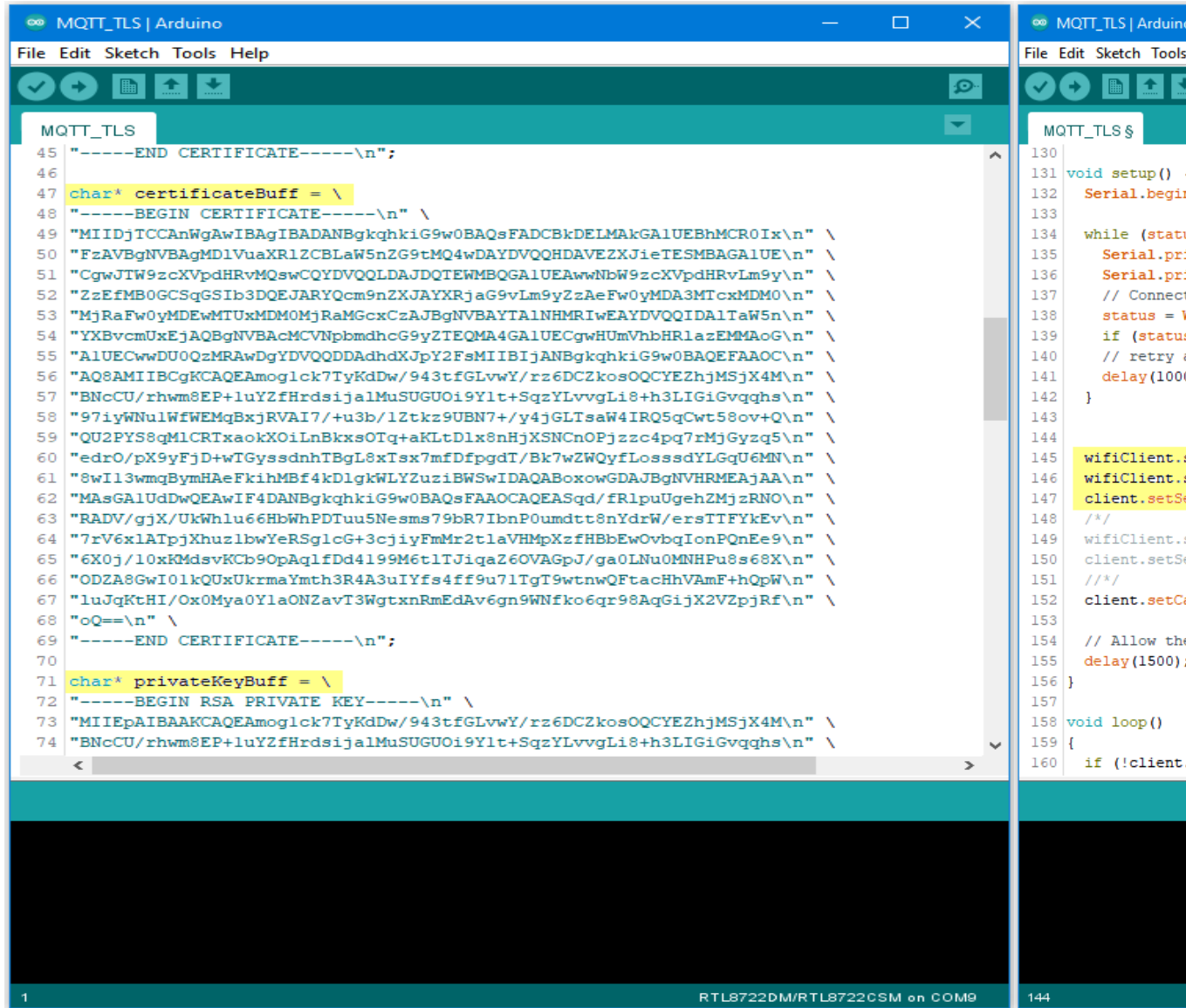
☒ Autoscroll ☐ Show timestamp
Newline 115200 baud Clear output

```

monitor

After

Ameba is connected to MQTT server, it sends the message “hello world” to “outTopic”. To see the message, use another MQTT client. Refer to the MQTT_Basic example guide on how to setup a PC-based MQTT client. If you wish to use TLS client authentication in addition to server authentication, you will need to generate an OpenSSL private key and obtain a signed certificate from the server. For testing purposes, signed certificates can be obtained from test.mosquitto.org by following the guide at <https://test.mosquitto.org/ssl/>. Replace the character strings “certificateBuff” and “privateKey-Buff” with your signed certificate and OpenSSL private key, ensuring that they are formatted the same way as the shown in the example code. Also uncomment the highlighted code to enable client authentication, and to change the MQTT port



number. 1

RTL8722DM/RTL8722CSM on COM9

144

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Upload PM2

Intro to LASS

The LASS stands for “Location Aware Sensor System”. It is an open project and was started only for the interest of public welfare. Find detailed introduction [here](#).

Practically, LASS is based on MQTT protocol to collect all kinds of uploaded data, and for those who need these data can subscribe top as well. Find more LASS information at their [official hackpad](#).

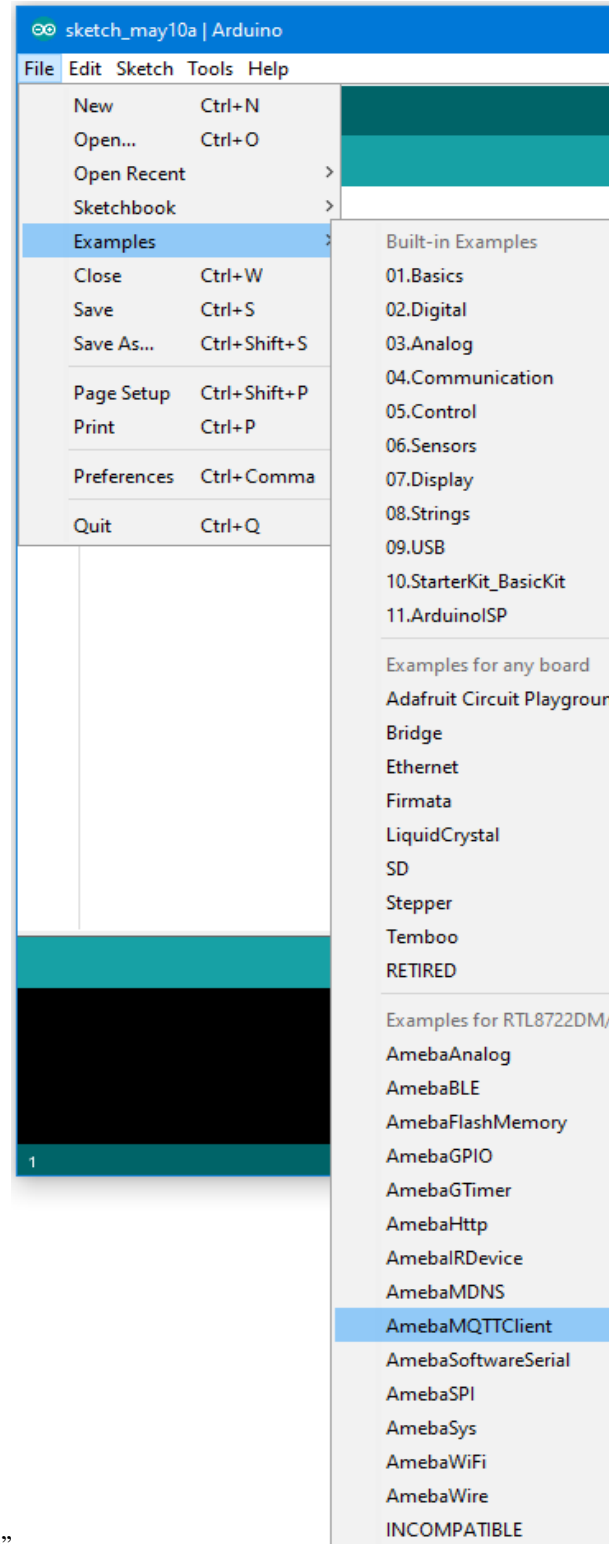
Preparation

- Ameba x 1
- PlanTower PMS3003 (or PMS5003) x 1

Example

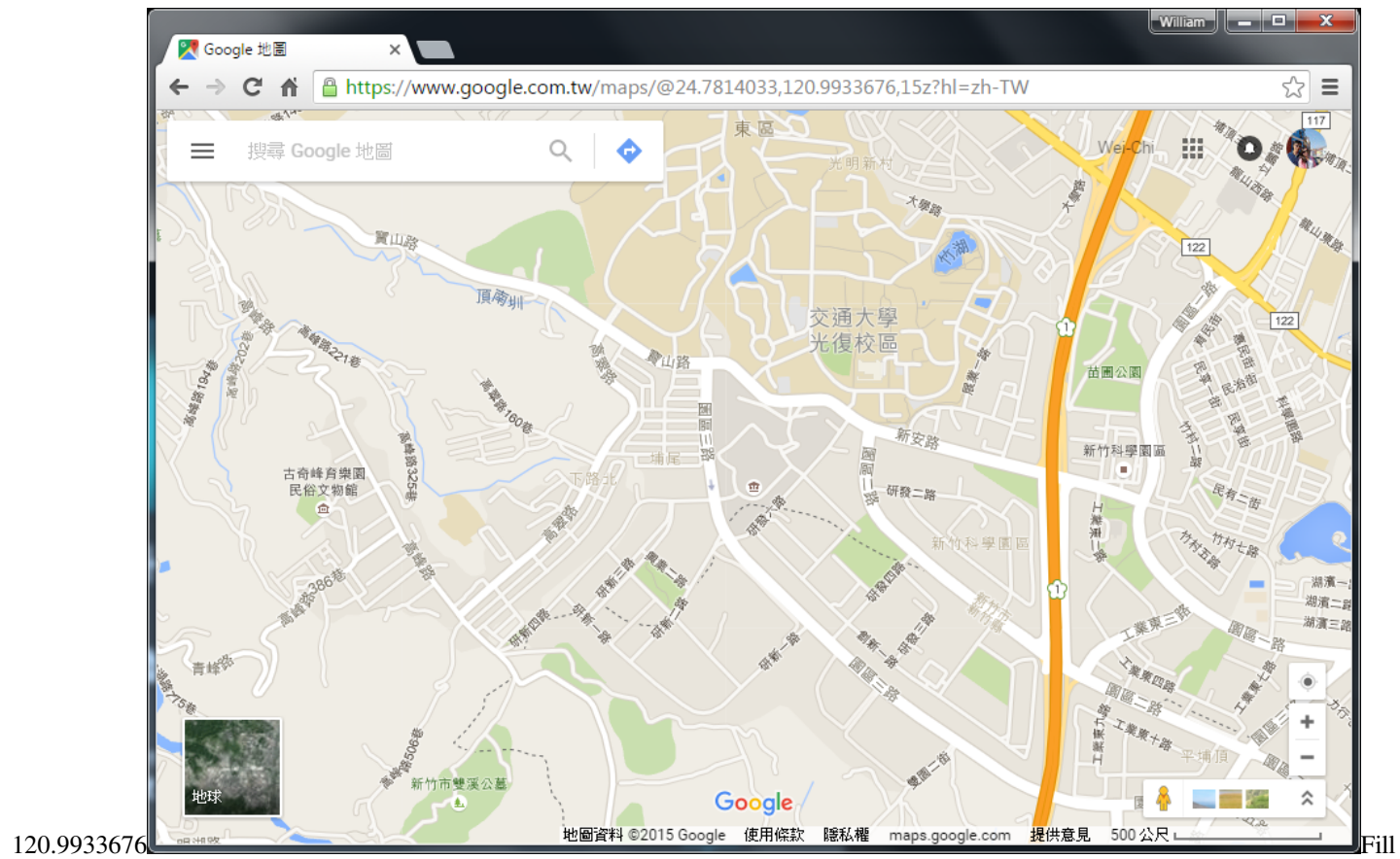
In this example, we use applications mentioned at our website, including:

- **MQTT:** a MQTT-Broker to connect to LASS. The Client is “FT1_0XXXX”, the XXXX are the four last digits of Ameba’s Wi-Fi MAC, and the outTopic is “LASS/Test/Pm25Ameba/**clientID**“, where clientID is the actual Ameba’s MQTT client ID.
- **NTP: uploaded** data must have time notation
- **PM2.5: uploaded** data includes PM2.5 information



Open the example. “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaMQTTClient” -> “lass_basic”

example requires internet connection, so make sure you fill in SSID and PASS into AP information that you wish to connect. Also, LASS requires GPS information. There is no GPS sensor included in this example, so you must manually provide GPS information. Use Google Map to find the coordinates you plan to place your Ameba. You can see in this example that the latitude is 24.7814033, and the longitude is



```

1  /*
2   * This example demonstrate how to upload sensor data to MQTT server of LASS.
3   * It include features:
4   *   (1) Connect to WiFi
5   *   (2) Retrieve NTP time with WiFiUDP
6   *   (3) Get PM 2.5 value from PMS3003 air condition sensor with UART
7   *   (4) Connect to MQTT server and try reconnect when disconnect
8   *
9   * You can find more information at this site:
10  *
11  * https://lass.hackpad.com/LASS-README-DtZ5T6DXLbu
12  *
13  */
14
15 #include <WiFi.h>
16 #include <PubSubClient.h>
17 #include <WiFiUdp.h>
18 #include <PMS3003.h>
19
20 char ssid[] = "yourNetwork"; // your network SSID (name)
21 char pass[] = "secretPassword"; // your network password
22 int keyIndex = 0; // your network key Index number (needed onl
23
24 char gps_lat[] = "24.7814033"; // device's gps latitude
25 char gps_lon[] = "120.9933676"; // device's gps longitude
26
27 char server[] = "gpssensor.ddns.net"; // the MQTT server of LASS
28 char clientId[17] = ""; // client id for MQTT
29 char outTopic[20] = "LASS/Test/PM25/live"; // MQTT publish topic
30

```

in GPS info at `gps_lat` and `gps_lon`. Then connect sensors according to UART-PlanTower PMS3003 wiring example. RTL8722 wiring

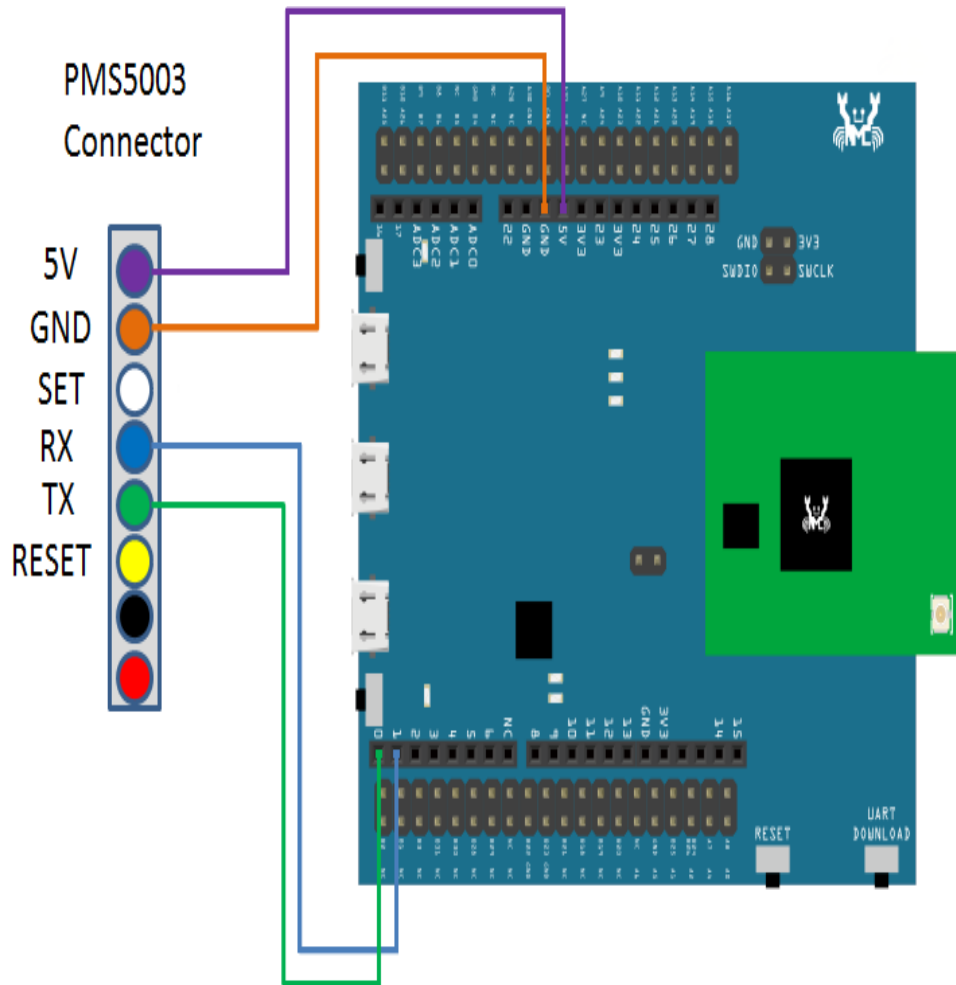


diagram:

the code and upload it to Ameba. After pressing the Reset button, Ameba will attempt to read PM2.5 data every minute and upload it to LASS MQTT-Broker. Open Serial Monitor to see the uploaded data, including client id, topic, and current PM2.5

Compile

```

COM6

RTL8195A[Driver]: set pairwise key to hw: alg:4(WEP40-1 WEP104-5 TKIP-2 AES-4)

RTL8195A[Driver]: set group key to hw: alg:4(WEP40-1 WEP104-5 TKIP-2 AES-4) keyid:1

Interface 0 IP address : 192.168.88.86Connected to wifi
Send NTP packet
NTP packet received
MQTT client id:FT_LIVE_OE4E750D
MQTT topic:LASS/Test/PM25/live
pm2.5: 14 ug/m3
Attempting MQTT connection

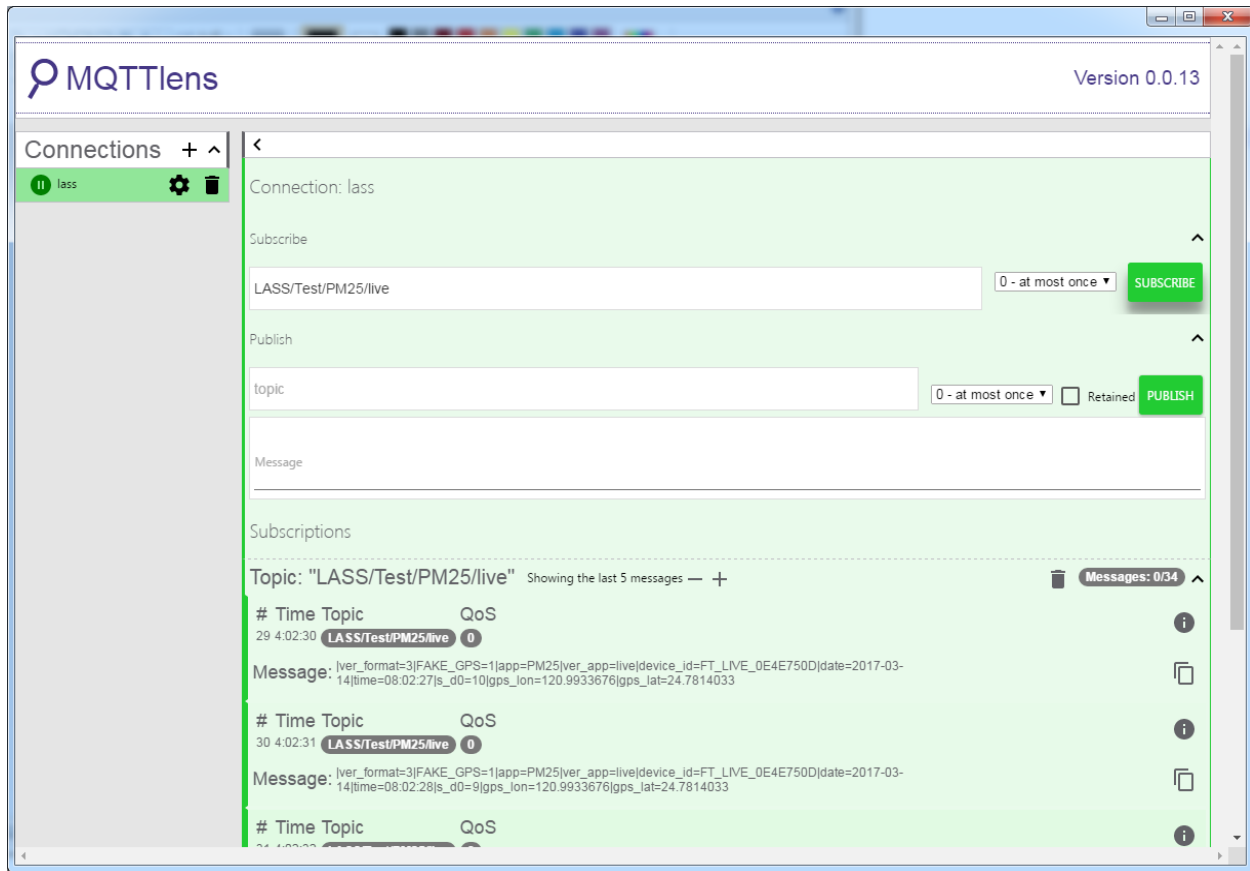
Connect to Server successful!
pm2.5: 12 ug/m3
pm2.5: 12 ug/m3
pm2.5: 12 ug/m3
pm2.5: 12 ug/m3
pm2.5: 15 ug/m3
pm2.5: 15 ug/m3

```

status.

can also use MQTTlens to verify if the data is properly uploaded. Enter “gpssensor.ddns.net” as the MQTT-Broker server and “LASS/Test/PM25/live” as the subscribe topic to receive data. The time uses UTC format, and the PM2.5 data stores in s_d0. In the figure, s_d0 = 9 represents that the PM2.5 is 9, meaning that the entire publish/ subscribe process is working successfully.

We



[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Ameba AP Mode

In AP mode, Ameba can accept at most 3 station connections, and can be set to open mode or WPA2 mode.

Preparation

- Ameba x 1

Example

In this example, we turn on the AP mode of Ameba and connect station to Ameba.

Open the WiFi AP example, “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaWiFi” -> “WiFiAPMode”

```

1 #include <WiFi.h>
2
3 char ssid[] = "yourNetwork"; //Set the AP's SSID
4 char pass[] = "Password";    //Set the AP's password
5 char channel[] = "1";        //Set the AP's channel
6 int status = WL_IDLE_STATUS; // the Wifi radio's status
7
8 void setup() {
9     //Initialize serial and wait for port to open:
10    Serial.begin(115200);
11    while (!Serial) {
12        ; // wait for serial port to connect. Needed for native USB port only
13    }
14
15    // check for the presence of the shield:
16    if (WiFi.status() == WL_NO_SHIELD) {
17        Serial.println("WiFi shield not present");
18        while (true);
19    }
20    String fv = WiFi.firmwareVersion();
21    if (fv != "1.0.0") {
22        Serial.println("Please upgrade the firmware");
23    }
24
25    // attempt to start AP:
26    while (status != WL_CONNECTED) {
27        Serial.print("Attempting to start AP with SSID: ");
28        Serial.println(ssid);
29        status = WiFi.apbegin(ssid, pass, channel);
30        delay(10000);

```

In the highlighted code snippet, fill in your SSID, PASSWORD and CHANNEL.

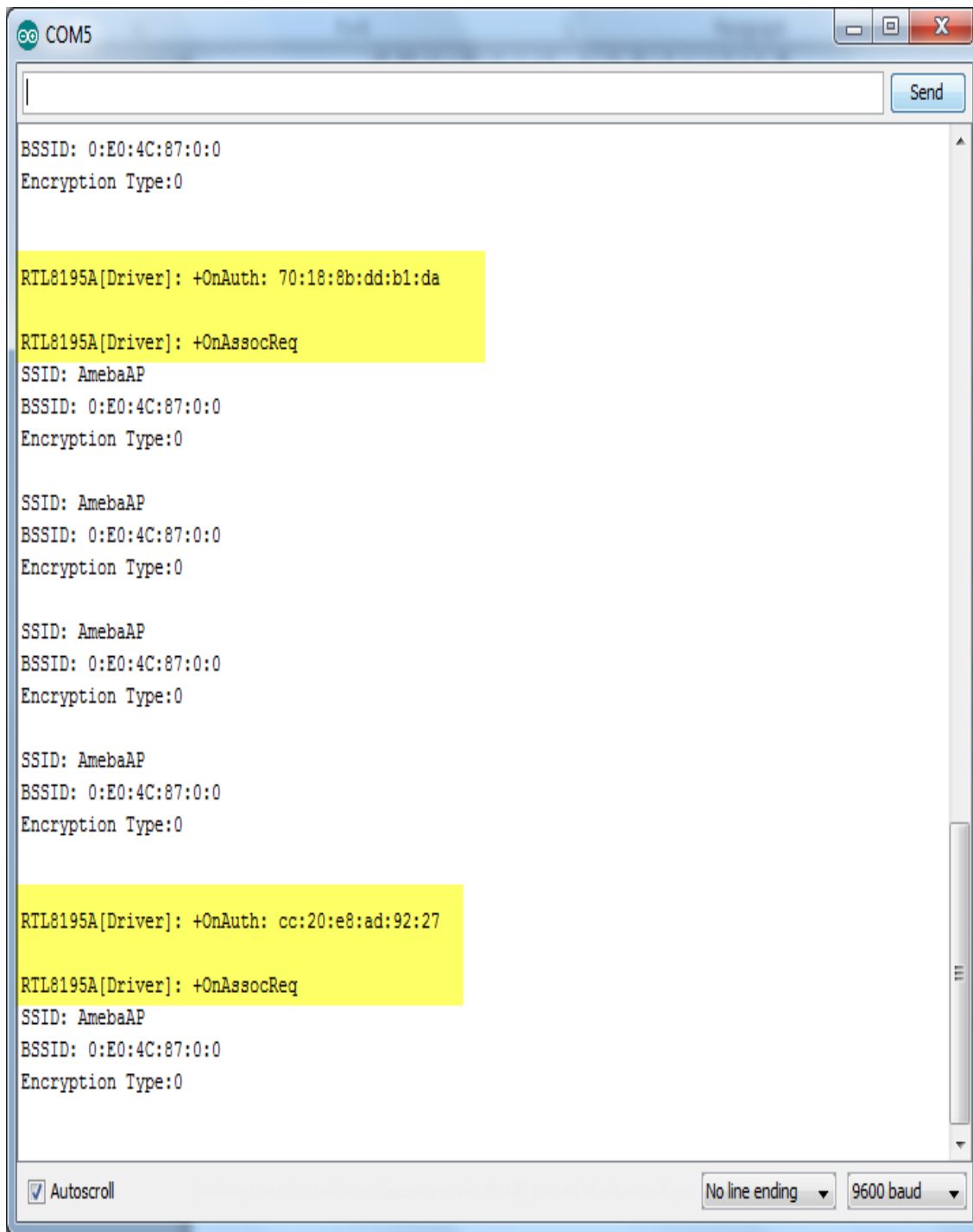
The code highlighted in green is the API we used to turn on the AP mode in security mode.

If you want to turn on the AP mode in open mode, please modify the code to `status = WiFi.apbegin(ssid, channel);`

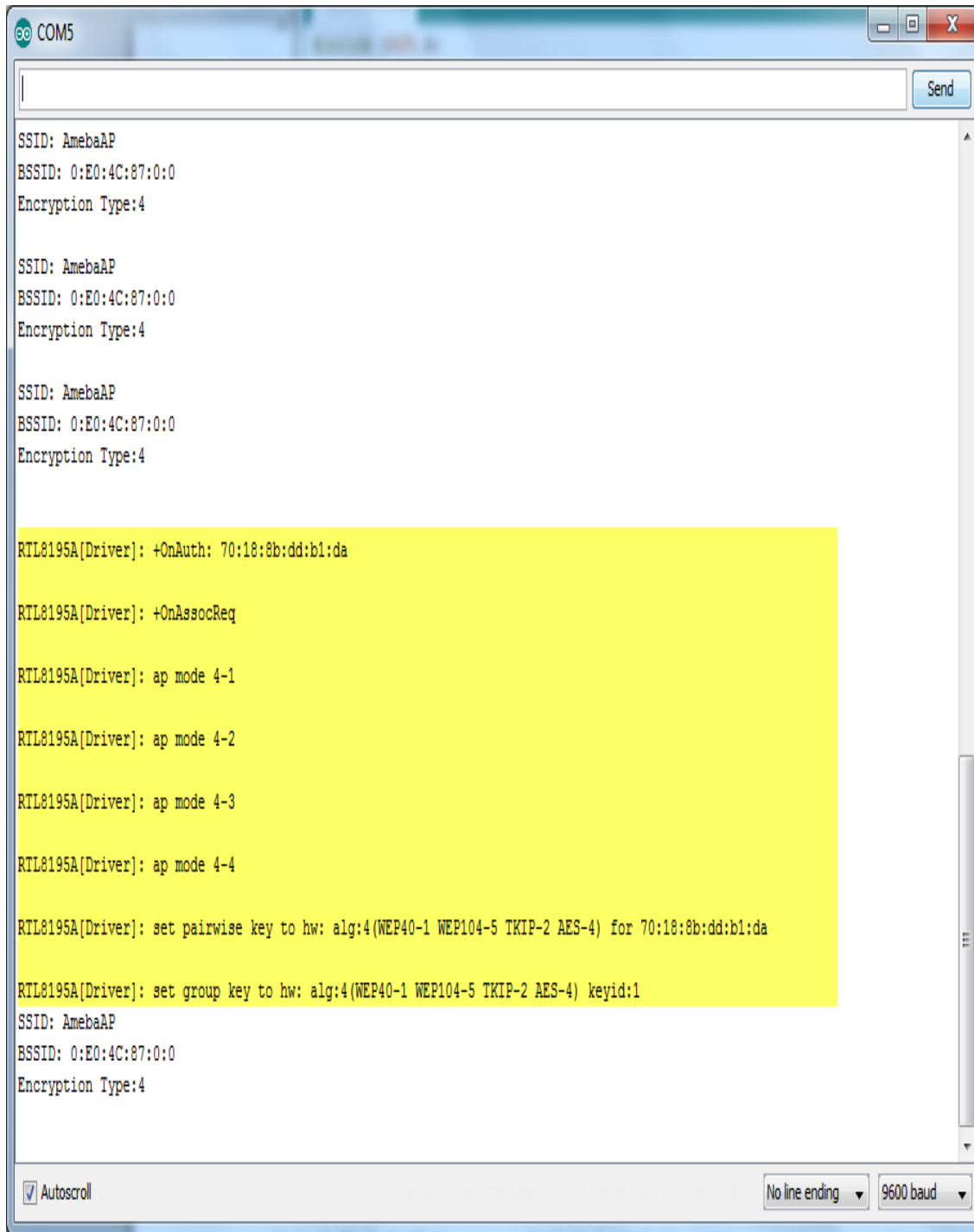
Then upload the sample code and press reset, and you can see related information shown in serial monitor.



In the figure below, we show the messages shown in serial monitor when two stations connect to Ameba AP in open mode:



In the figure below, we show the messages shown in serial monitor when a station connects to Ameba AP in security mode:



```
COM5
[Send]

SSID: AmebaAP
BSSID: 0:E0:4C:87:0:0
Encryption Type:4

SSID: AmebaAP
BSSID: 0:E0:4C:87:0:0
Encryption Type:4

SSID: AmebaAP
BSSID: 0:E0:4C:87:0:0
Encryption Type:4

RTL8195A[Driver]: +OnAuth: 70:18:8b:dd:b1:da
RTL8195A[Driver]: +OnAssocReq
RTL8195A[Driver]: ap mode 4-1
RTL8195A[Driver]: ap mode 4-2
RTL8195A[Driver]: ap mode 4-3
RTL8195A[Driver]: ap mode 4-4

RTL8195A[Driver]: set pairwise key to hw: alg:4(WEP40-1 WEP104-5 TKIP-2 AES-4) for 70:18:8b:dd:b1:da
RTL8195A[Driver]: set group key to hw: alg:4(WEP40-1 WEP104-5 TKIP-2 AES-4) keyid:1
SSID: AmebaAP
BSSID: 0:E0:4C:87:0:0
Encryption Type:4

[Autoscroll] [No line ending] [9600 baud]
```

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Use MDNS To Let Arduino IDE Find Ameba

Preparation

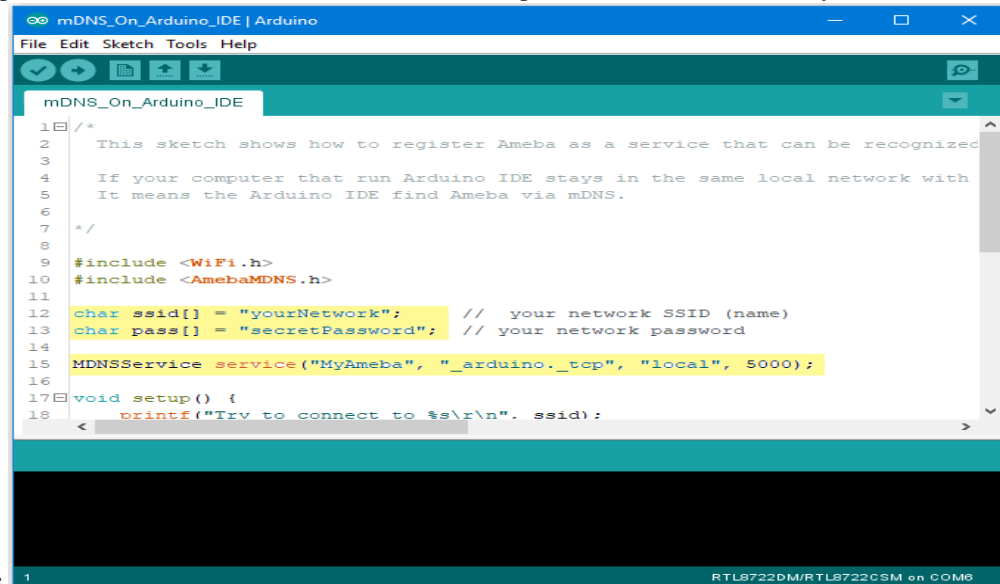
- Ameba x 1

Example

mDNS (Multicast DNS) is a protocol used in the local area network. It delivers the network information like IP address and provided services to others. mDNS is based on the UDP protocol, and it sends packets to 224.0.0.251 with port 5353 under IPv4 address. The naming style for the service follows the format: **{Instance Name}.{Protocol Name}.{Domain}**

- Instance Name: used to identify the name of the service
- **Protocol Name: Divided into two parts, the front end is in regard to** the name of the service, and it adds baseline as a prefix. The rear end is in regard to the transport protocol name it used, and it also adds baseline as a prefix
- Domain: Local area network in normal cases

For example, Arduino IDE adopts the naming for the mDNS service which is used in OTA as following: **MyAmeba._arduino._tcp.local** Among the naming example, “MyAmeba” can identify the Ameba device name and the name “MyAmeba” is changeable. “_arduino._tcp” is the protocol that Arduino IDE adopts, and the Domain is set as local in common. Open the example, “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaMDNS” -> “mdns_on_arduino_ide” You need to input ssid and password of the AP because the example will use WiFi connection. And you can find out the naming of the service at the place where it declares MDNS Service. The example uses the default name “MyAmeba” and the name

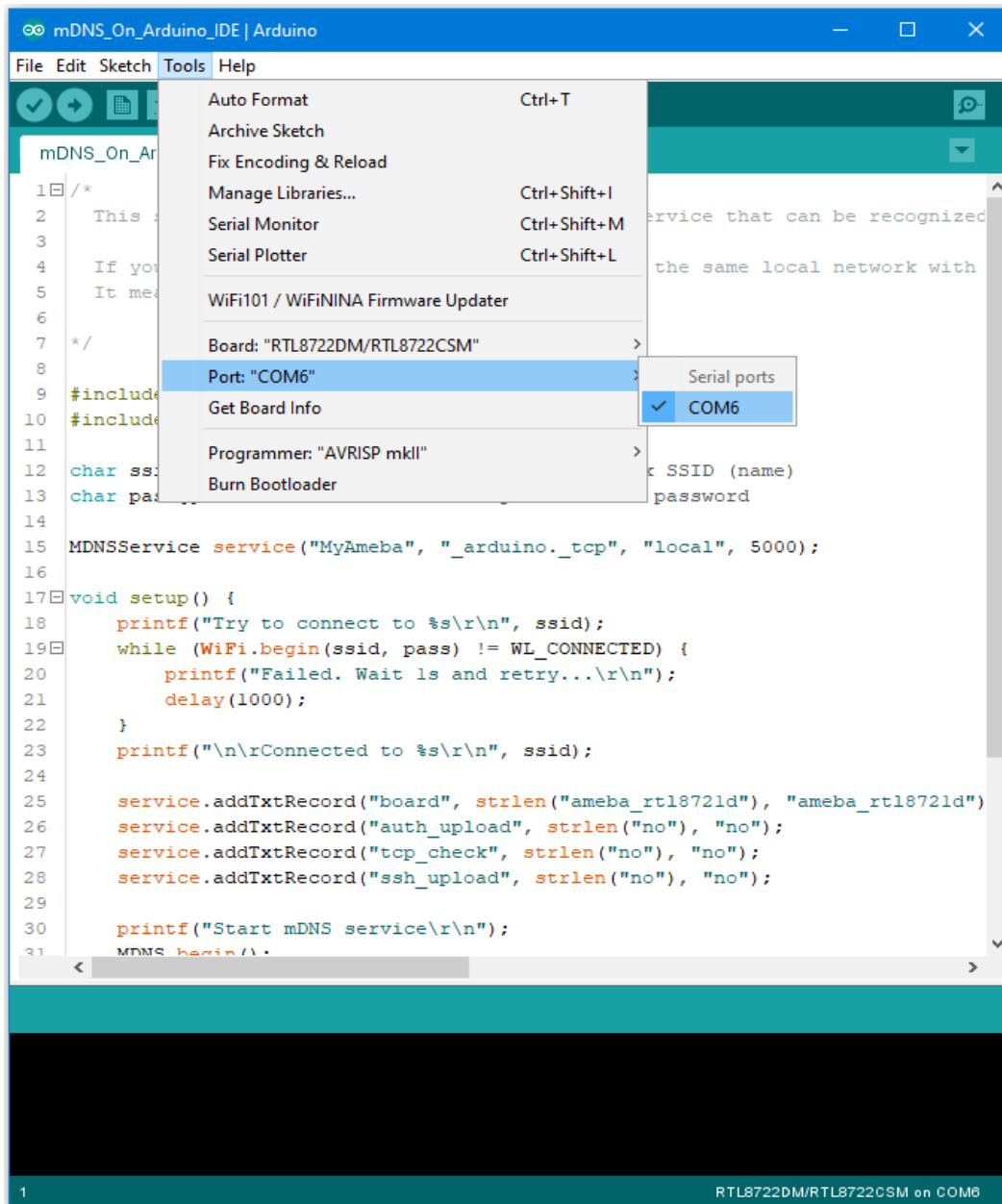


```

1  /*
2   * This sketch shows how to register Ameba as a service that can be recognized
3   *
4   * If your computer that run Arduino IDE stays in the same local network with
5   * It means the Arduino IDE find Ameba via mDNS.
6   */
7
8
9  #include <WiFi.h>
10 #include <AmebaMDNS.h>
11
12 char ssid[] = "yourNetwork"; // your network SSID (name)
13 char pass[] = "secretPassword"; // your network password
14
15 MDNSService service("MyAmeba", "_arduino._tcp", "local", 5000);
16
17 void setup() {
18   printf("Try to connect to %s\r\n", ssid);

```

is changeable. Next, go to (“Tools” -> “Port”), and you can find out at least one Serial Port. This port is simulated by Ameba board via USB. Choose this port and upload the compiled code to



After uploading the code, press the reset button on Ameba and waiting for Ameba to connect with AP and activate the mDNS service after a while. You can see the Log at the bottom of the Serial

```

COM6
RTL8721D[Driver]: association success(res=4)
RTL8721D[Driver]: ClientSendEAPOL[1522]: no use cache pmksa
RTL8721D[Driver]: set pairwise key to hw: alg:4(WEP40-1 WEP104-5 TKIP-2 AES-4)
RTL8721D[Driver]: set group key to hw: alg:4(WEP40-1 WEP104-5 TKIP-2 AES-4) keyid:2
Interface 0 IP address : 192.168.1.167
Connected to
Start mDNS service
register mDNS service
Autoscroll Show timestamp Newline 115200 baud Clear output

```

Monitor.

you can find out the added item “Network Ports” “MyAmeba at 192.168.1.167 (Ameba RTL8722DM/RTL8722CSM)”, “MyAmeba” is the device name we set up, and “IP” is the IP address that AP assigned to Ameba, the IP address should be the same with the IP shown in the Serial Monitor. Last, “Ameba RTL8722DM/RTL8722CSM” is the type name of the board, and it means that Ameba can let Arduino IDE identify the mDNS service successfully.(We still can not use the Internet to upload the code, and we will explain this part in the OTA

Then

```

mDNS_On_Arduino_IDE | Arduino
File Edit Sketch Tools Help
Auto Format Ctrl+T
Archive Sketch
Fix Encoding & Reload
Manage Libraries... Ctrl+Shift+I
Serial Monitor Ctrl+Shift+M
Serial Plotter Ctrl+Shift+L
WiFi101 / Wi-FiNINA Firmware Updater
Board: "RTL8722DM/RTL8722CSM"
Port: "COM6"
Get Board Info
Programmer: "AVRISP mkII"
Burn Bootloader
Serial ports
COM6
Network ports
MyAmeba at 192.168.1.167 (RTL8722DM/RTL8722CSM)

1 // This sketch demonstrates the mDNS service that can be recognized by Arduino
2 // If you have a local network with the same local network with Ameba, then
3 // It means you can find out the added item "Network Ports" "MyAmeba at 192.168.1.167 (Ameba
4 // RTL8722DM/RTL8722CSM)", "MyAmeba" is the device name we set up, and "IP" is the IP address that AP
5 // assigned to Ameba, the IP address should be the same with the IP shown in the Serial Monitor. Last, "Ameba
6 // RTL8722DM/RTL8722CSM" is the type name of the board, and it means that Ameba can let Arduino IDE identify the
7 // mDNS service successfully.(We still can not use the Internet to upload the code, and we will explain this part in the OTA
8 //
9 //
10 #include <Arduino.h>
11 #include <WiFi.h>
12 char ssid[] = "MyAmeba";
13 char pass[] = "12345678";
14
15 MDNSService service("MyAmeba", "_arduino._tcp", "local", 5000);
16
17 void setup() {
18   printf("Try to connect to %s\r\n", ssid);
19   while (WiFi.begin(ssid, pass) != WL_CONNECTED) {
20     printf("Failed. Wait 1s and retry...\r\n");
21     delay(1000);
22   }
23   printf("\n\rConnected to %s\r\n", ssid);
24
25   service.addTxtRecord("board", strlen("ameba_rtl8721d"), "ameba_rtl8721d");
26   service.addTxtRecord("auth_upload", strlen("no"), "no");
27   service.addTxtRecord("tcp_check", strlen("no"), "no");
28   service.addTxtRecord("ssh_upload", strlen("no"), "no");
29
30   printf("Start mDNS service\r\n");
31   MDNS.begin();
32 }
33
34 void loop() {
35   // Do nothing here
36 }
37
38 Done uploading.
39 1 COM6 SUCCESS
40   Upload km4_boot_all done.
41 1 COM6 SUCCESS
42   Upload km0_km4_image2 done.
43
44 13 RTL8722DM/RTL8722CSM on COM6

```

example.)

you cannot find the Network ports on your Arduino IDE, please check:

If

- Does your computer in the same local area network with the Ameba?
- Restart the Arduino IDE, and it will find the mDNS service again
- **Check the Log in Serial Monitor if the Ameba connects to the AP and** activate mDNS service successfully

Code Reference

The program set up the mDNS service in the beginning, the first parameter is Instance Name, and it is changeable in this example. The second parameter is the protocol that the service used, and it would be “_arduino._tcp” for Arduino IDE. The third parameter is Domain, and it would be “local” in common. The fourth parameter is the port number for the service, it is 5000 here and we doesn’t use it in the example.

```
MDNSService service(“MyAmeba”, “_arduino._tcp”, “local”, 5000);
```

After connected to the network, we set up some text fields for the service. For the following example, “board” is the name of the field, “ameba_rtl8721d” is the value of the field. “board” is used to let Arduino IDE check installed SDK to see if it exists known device or not. We will use the name of the device if there is known device, users can change “ameba_rtl8721d” to “yun” or other names to find out what’s the difference if interested.

```
service.addTxtRecord(“board”, strlen(“ameba_rtl8721d”), “ameba_rtl8721d”);
```

Then we add three text fields “auth_upload”, “tcp_check”, and “ssh_upload”, this example does not activate these services.

```
service.addTxtRecord(“auth_upload”, strlen(“no”), “no”);
```

```
service.addTxtRecord(“tcp_check”, strlen(“no”), “no”);
```

```
service.addTxtRecord(“ssh_upload”, strlen(“no”), “no”);
```

Next we activate MDNS

```
MDNS.begin();
```

and register to the mDNS service.

```
MDNS.registerService(service);
```

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Use Firebase To Push Messaging Services

Preparation

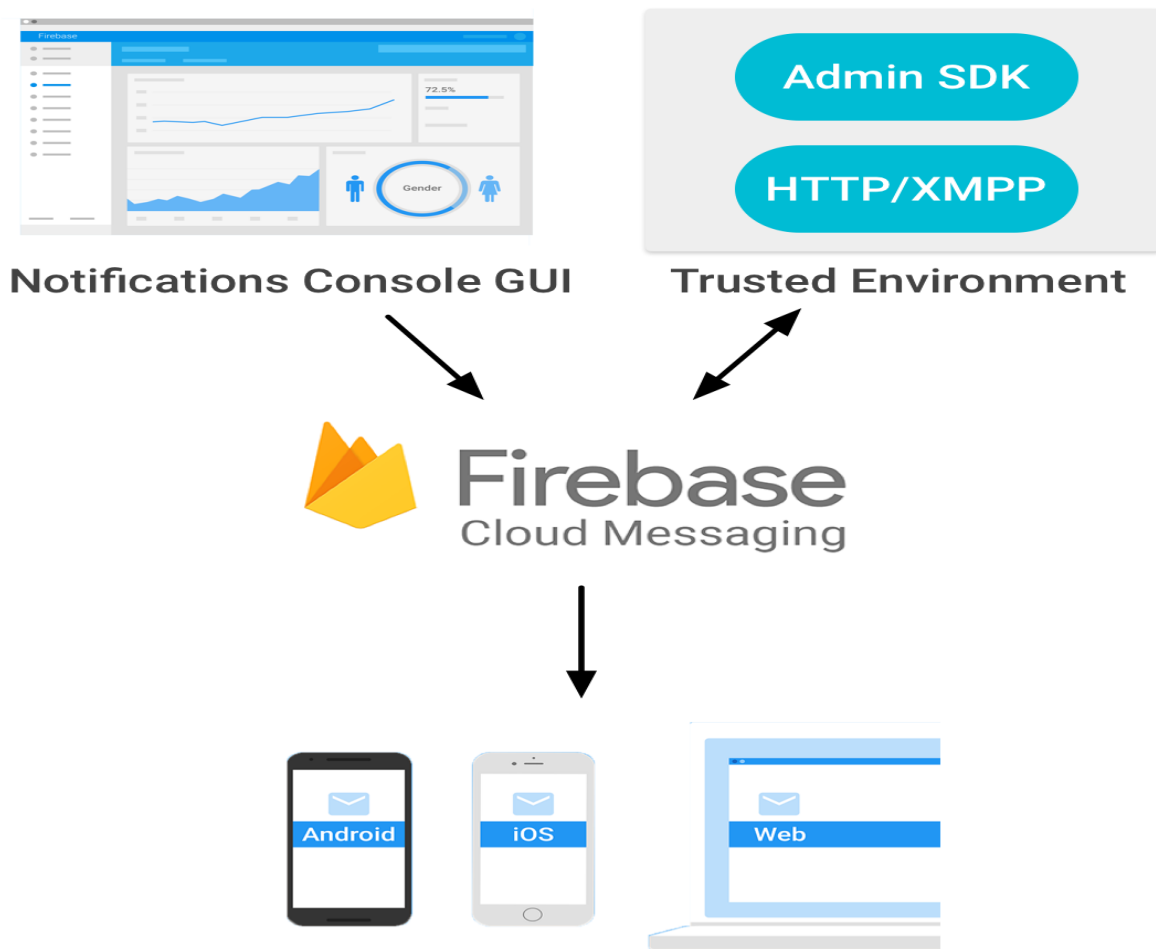
- Ameba x 1
- Android Studio
- Smart phone with Google Play Service x 1

Example

In the era of the popularity of smart phones, people often receive reminders from specific apps. In this example, we will teach how to use Google Firebase to send messages from the Ameba Client to mobile phones.

First, we use Firebase Cloud Messaging (FCM) as a cross-platform messaging solution that lets you deliver messages for free and reliably.

With FCM, you can notify your client application (App) to sync emails or other data. You can send a message to drive user engagement. For instant messaging content, a message can transfer up to 4KB of payload to the client application.



The FCM implementation includes two main parts for sending and receiving:

1. A trusted environment, such as Cloud Functions for Firebase or an application server for building, locating, and sending messages.
2. Receive iOS, Android or Web (JavaScript) client applications for messages.

You can use [Admin SDK](#) or [HTTP&XMPP API](#) to send messages. To test or send marketing or engagement messages with powerful built-in targeting and analytics, you can also use [Notifications composer](#)

We know that Ameba can send messages to specific apps as long as it implements the http client function.

First of all, we must first set up an environment for developing Android apps. Please download Android Studio first on Android official website.

<https://developer.android.com/studio/install>

Then we can use the Android example provided by Firebase to download Firebase Quickstart Samples.

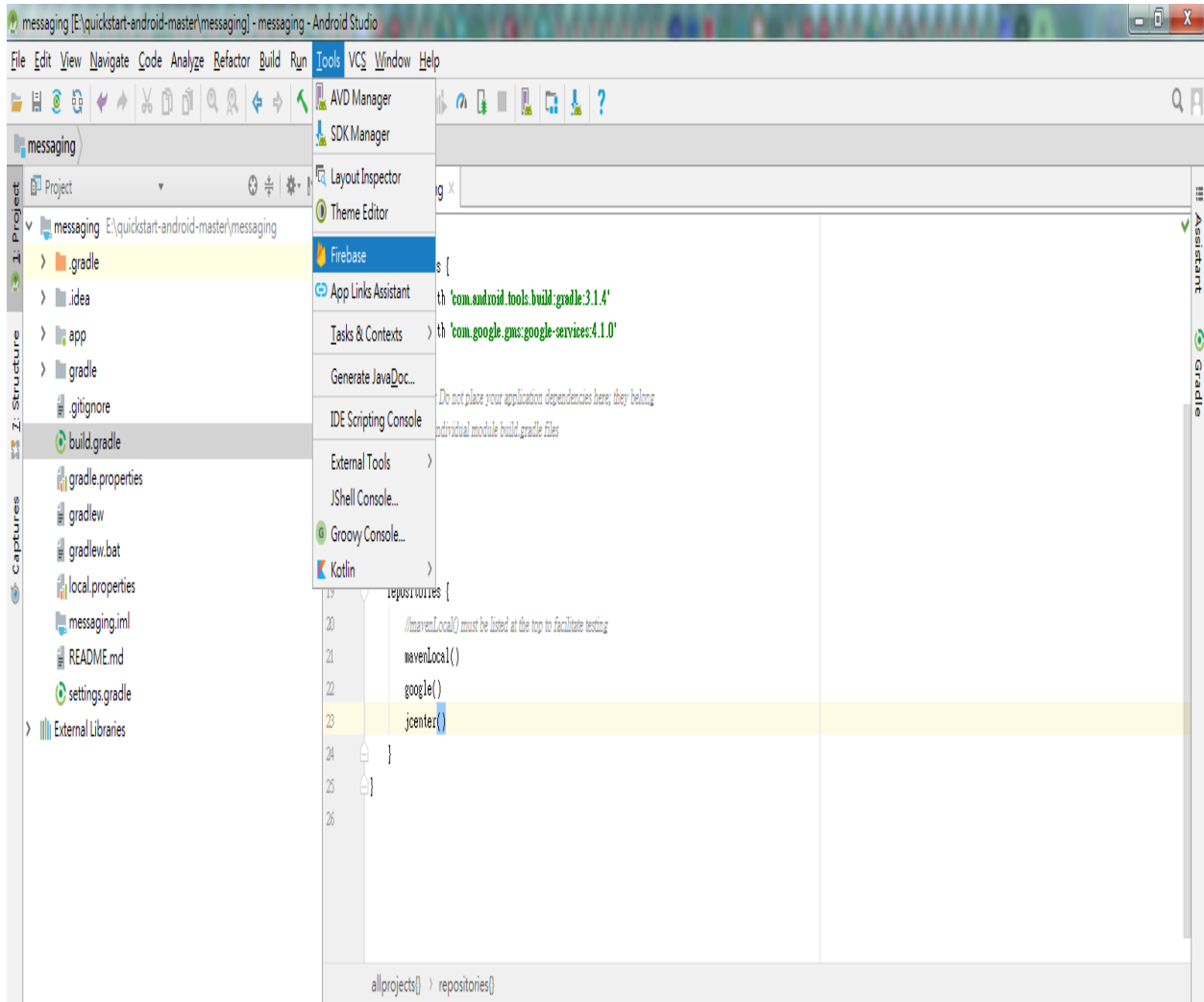
<https://github.com/firebase/quickstart-android>

Open Android Studio and click on Import Project, select the messaging project in Firebase Quickstart Samples. Since we won't use other functions, we can only choose the messaging project.

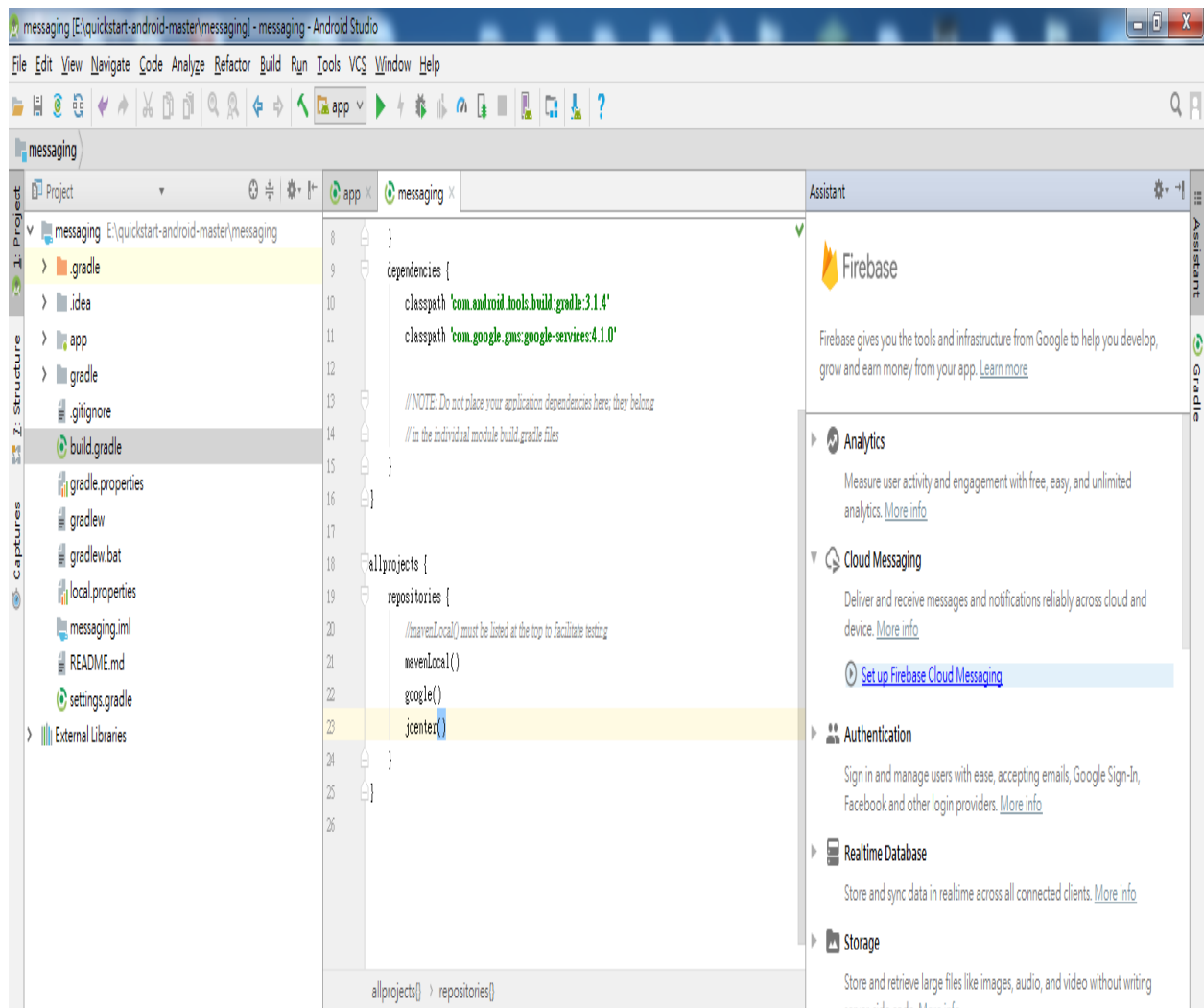
Android Studio will need to install the SDK and Google repository for the first time to start the messaging project. You can refer to the following page for update.

<https://developer.android.com/studio/intro/update>

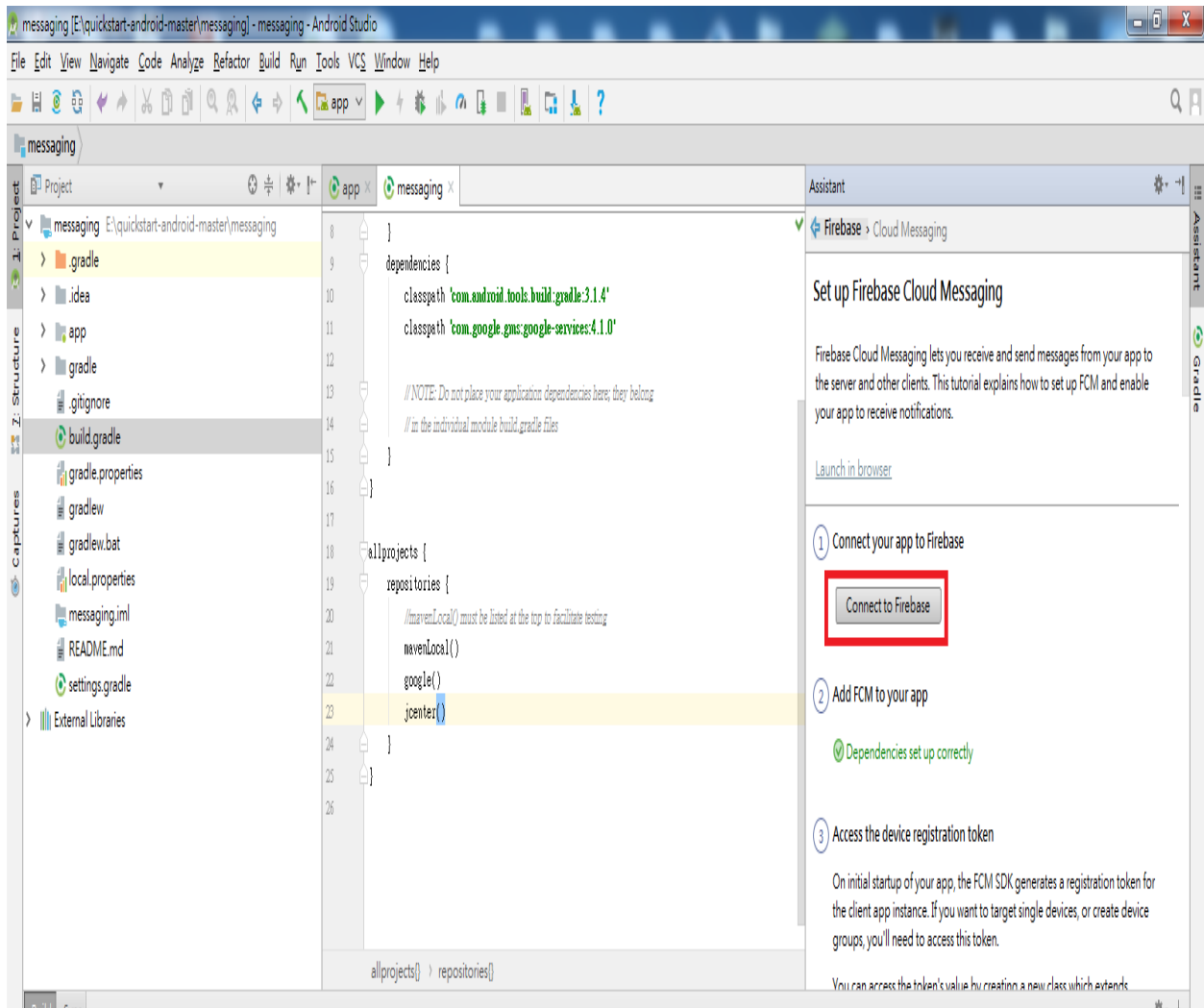
Wait until the required components for compiling the app are installed, you can open the messaging project, and Android Studio comes with the Firebase registration function.



As shown above, open the toolbar and click Tools->Select Firebase.



Open Firebase Assistant in the right pane, then see Cloud Messaging, select Set up Firebase Cloud Messaging to start the registration process.



Click Connect to Firebase

[Platform](#)[Android Studio](#)[Google Play](#)[Android Jetpack](#)[Docs](#)[Blog](#)

Save the date! [Android Dev Summit](#) is coming to Mountain View, CA on November 7-8, 2018.

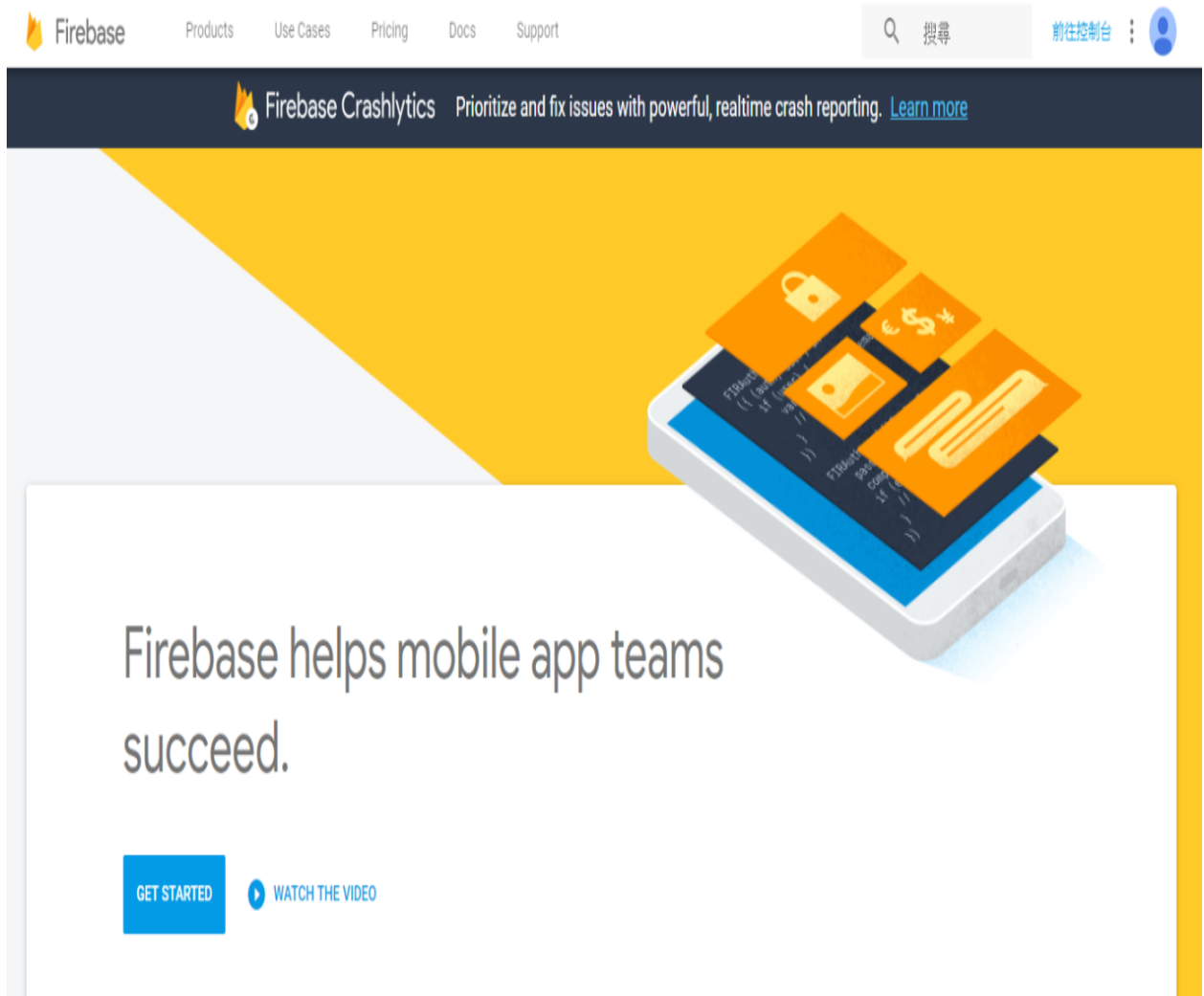


Login to Android Studio

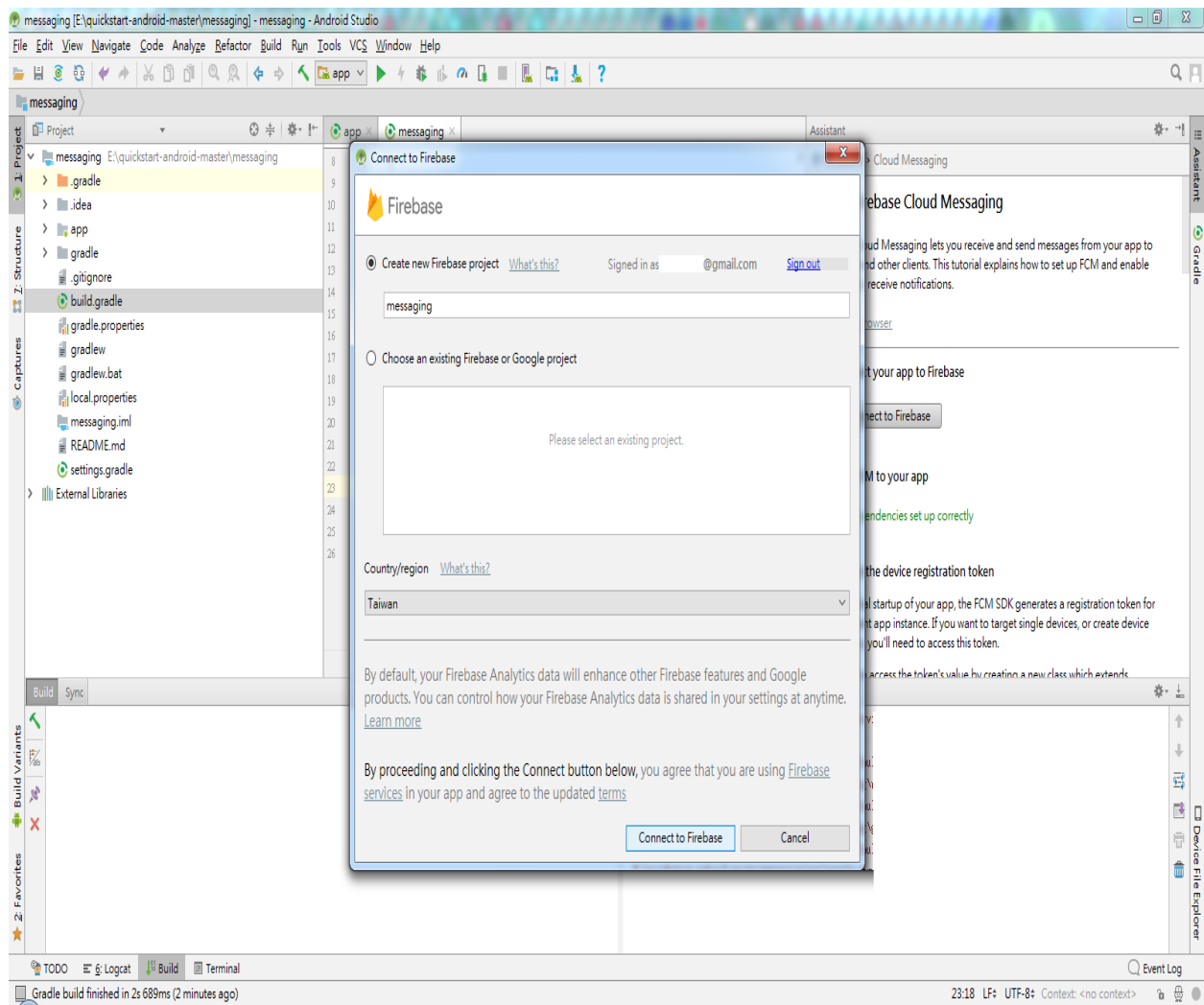
Use your Google Account to login to Android Studio and unlock the following services for your Android app:



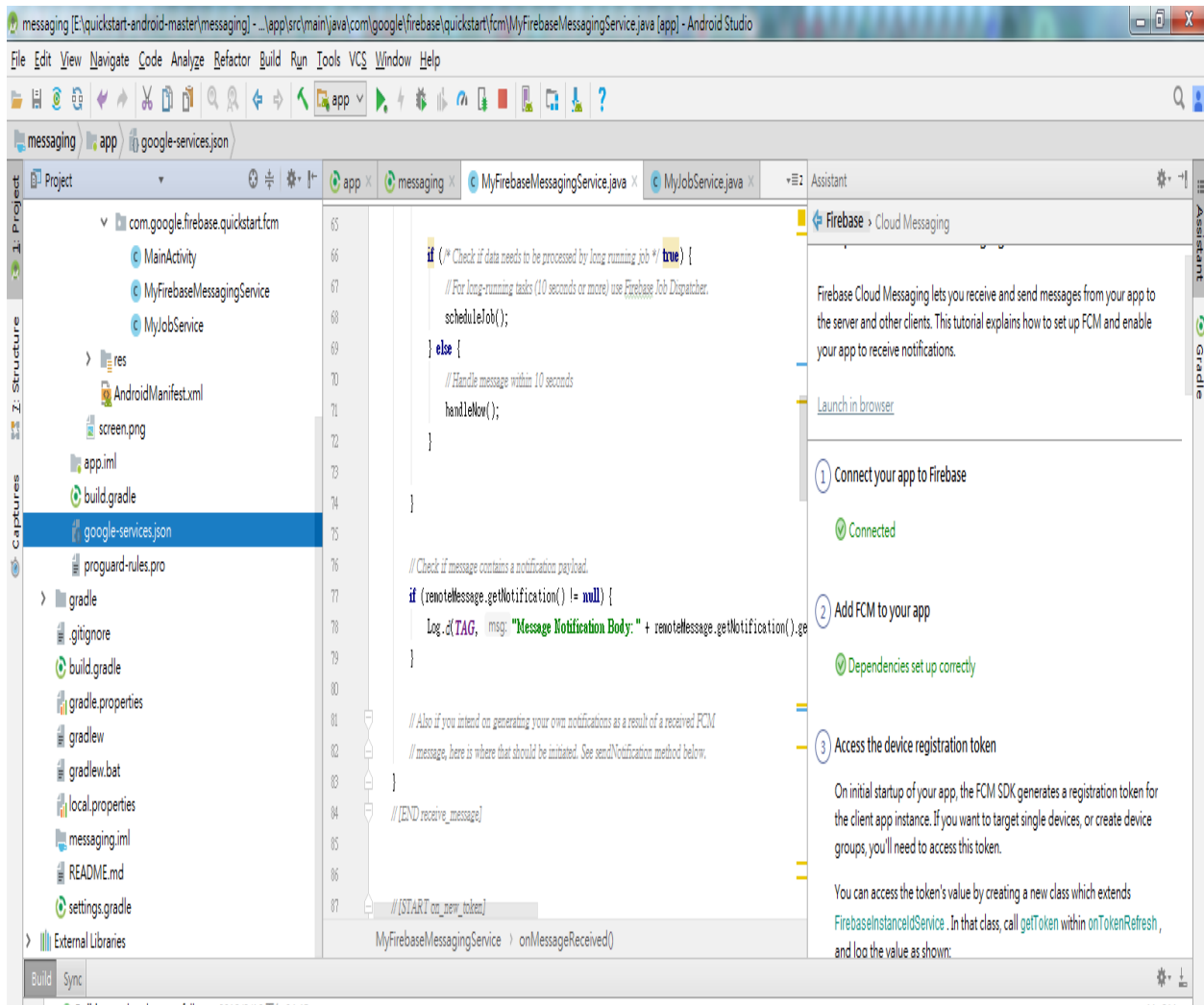
Then bring out the page, and click on Firebase on the left and log in to the Gmail account. Once you log in, you will be taken to the Firebase homepage.



Let's keep the homepage first, we need to go to the Firebase Console and go back to Android Studio.

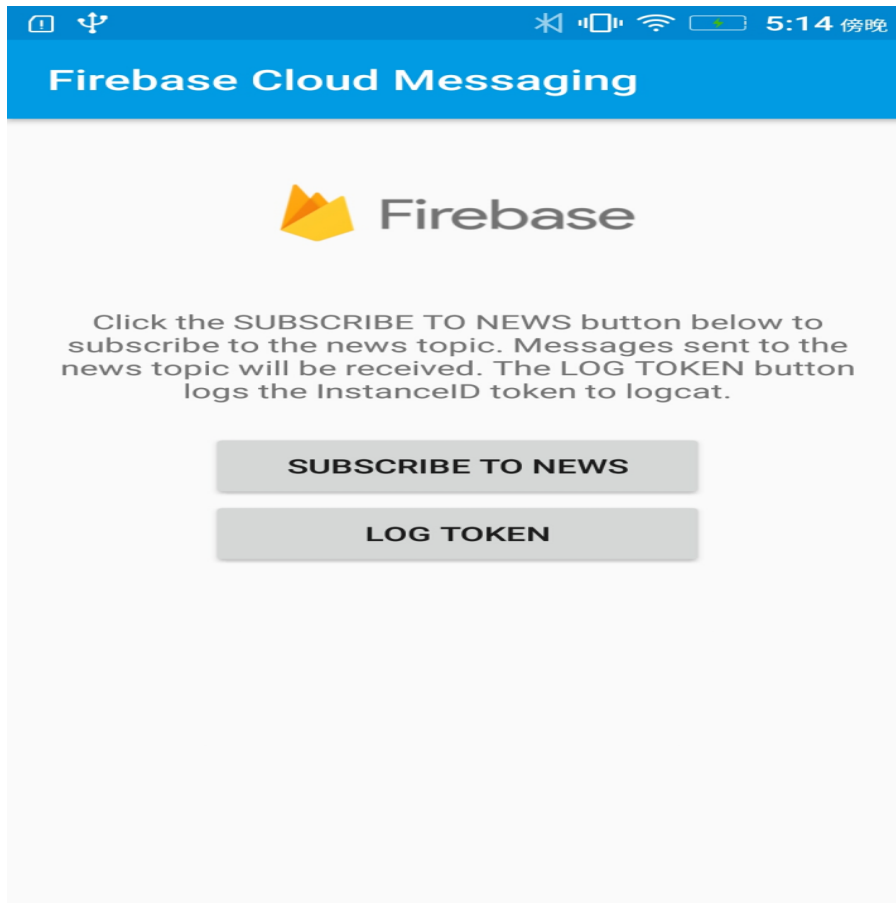


We can see that when the webpage is successfully logged in, Android Studio also brings up the login information dialog box, click connect to Firebase



You can see Dependencies set up correctly in the right pane and see a google-service.json file in the left pane, indicating that the app has been registered successfully.

At this point, you can connect your phone to your computer (press Shift+F10) or press the Runs App in the toolbar. Please note here that Firebase requires a mobile phone to provide Google play service (GPS) service. An example of not being able to use Firebase without installing Google Play.



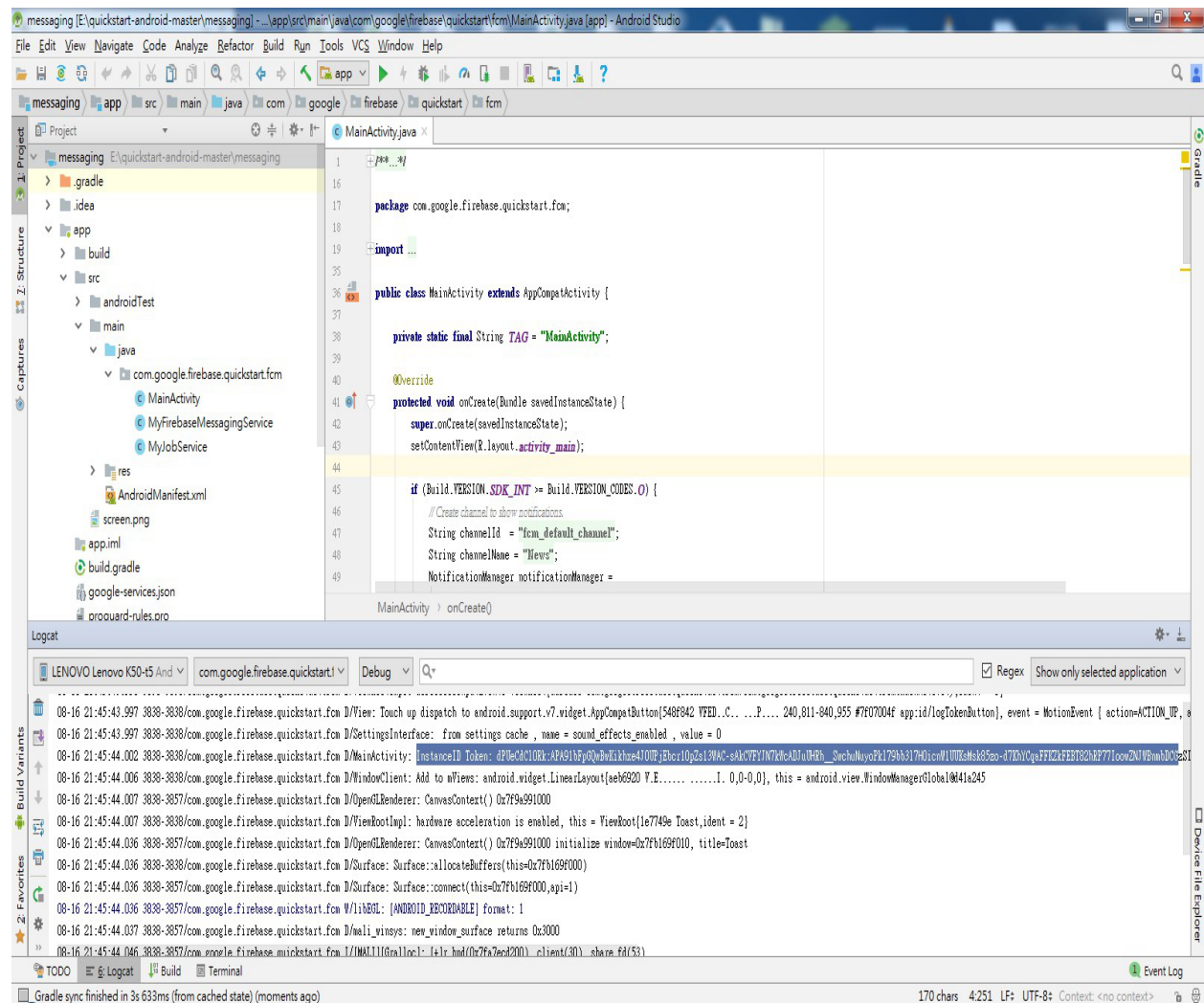
As shown above, the messaging app is installed and executed successfully on the phone. Click LOG TOKEN at this time.



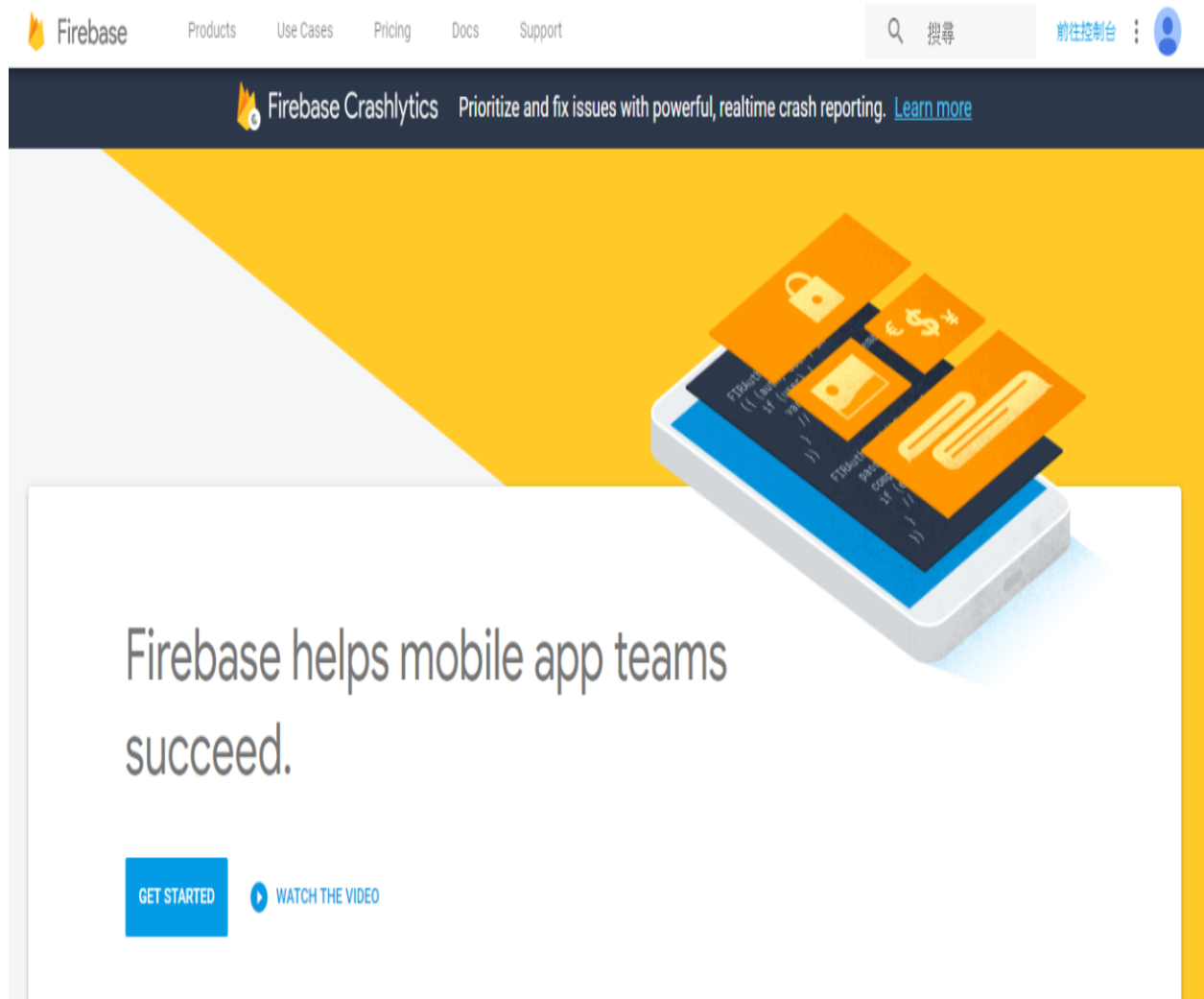
There will be a Token ID, which is the Access Token required to send the message, representing the ID of the FCM service APP installed on a particular phone. This ID is unique and will be reassigned when the app is removed and re-installed. It means that the message can be sent to a specific phone. The FCM service can also push messages to a NEWS (Topic). This section can be found in Firebase topic-messaging:

<https://firebase.google.com/docs/cloud-messaging/android/topic-messaging>

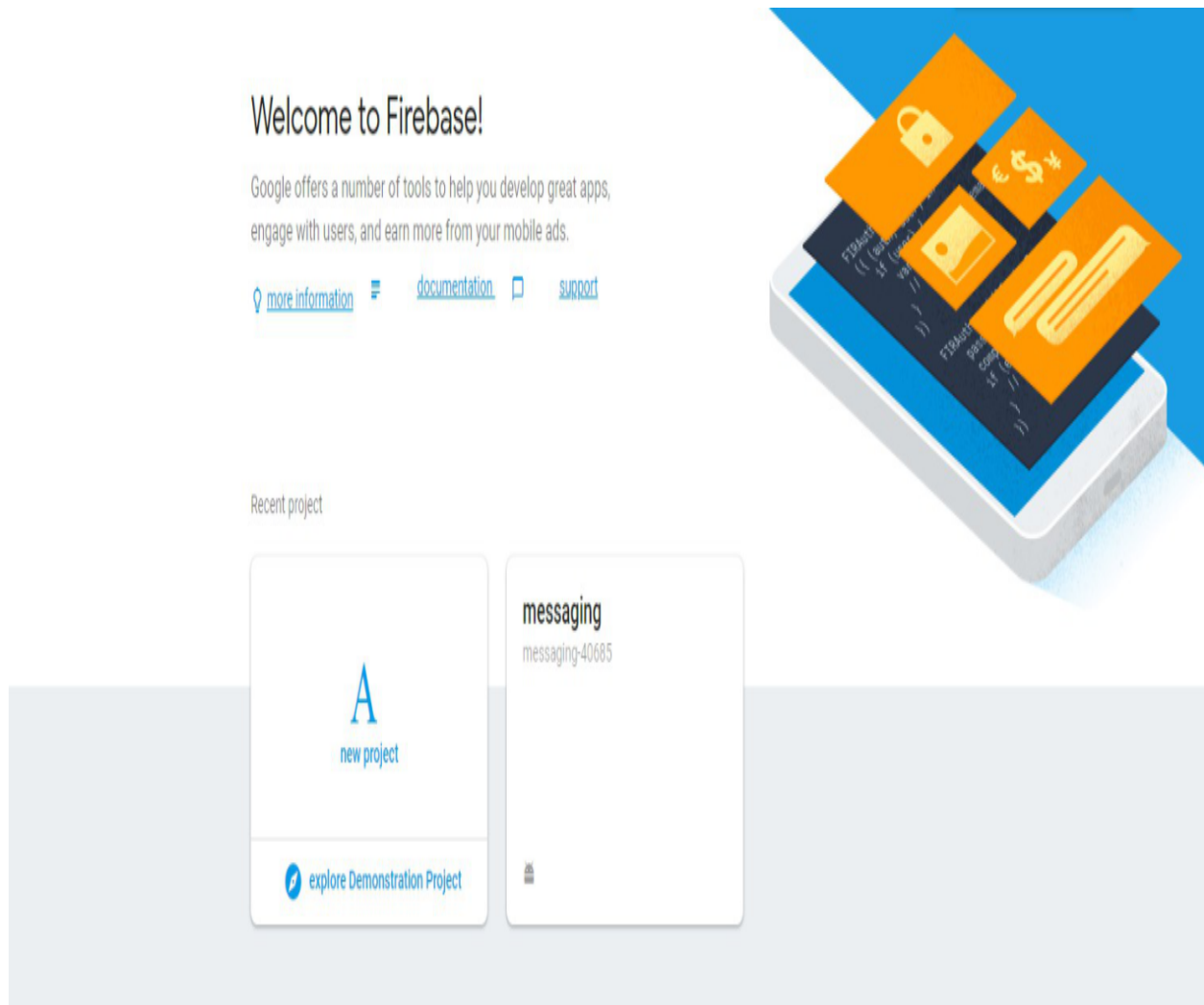
Therefore, we need to save this Access Token, return to Android Studio as shown below, select Debug at the log level of the Logcat. When you press the LOG TOKEN button on the App, Logcat will print out the Access Token ID. We will save the code after the InstanceID Token: in the Log message.



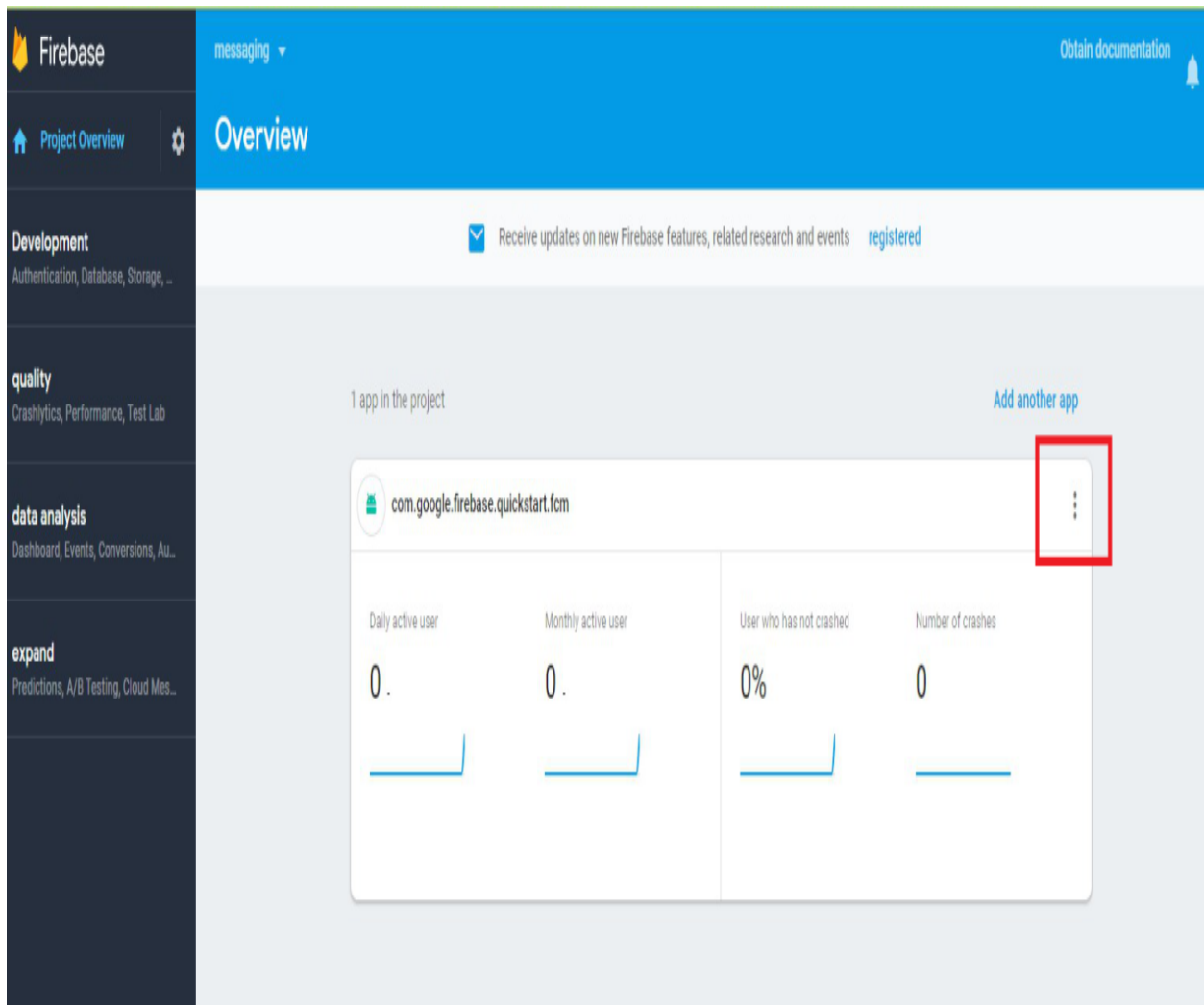
Then we have to go back to the page that was brought when we first logged into Firebase.



Click in the upper right corner to go to the console



At this point, You can see that Android Studio has just built the messaging project for us in the operation.



Click to enter the messaging project with settings page, as shown above.

The screenshot shows the Firebase console interface. On the left is a dark sidebar with navigation links: **Project Overview**, **Development** (Authentication, Database, Storage, ...), **quality** (Crashlytics, Performance, Test Lab), **data analysis** (Dashboard, Events, Conversions, Au...), and **expand** (Predictions, A/B Testing, Cloud Mes...). The main header is blue with 'messaging' and 'Overview' tabs, a 'Obtain documentation' link, and a user profile icon. Below the header, a notification bar says 'Receive updates on new Firebase features, related research and events registered'. The main content area shows '1 app in the project' with a link to 'Add another app'. A card for the app 'com.google.firebase.quickstart.fcm' displays four metrics: 'Daily active user' (0), 'Monthly active user' (0), 'User who has not crashed' (0%), and 'Number of crashes' (0). Each metric has a small line chart below the value. A 'set up' button is visible in the bottom right of the app card.

Daily active user	Monthly active user	User who has not crashed	Number of crashes
0	0	0%	0

Select Set up

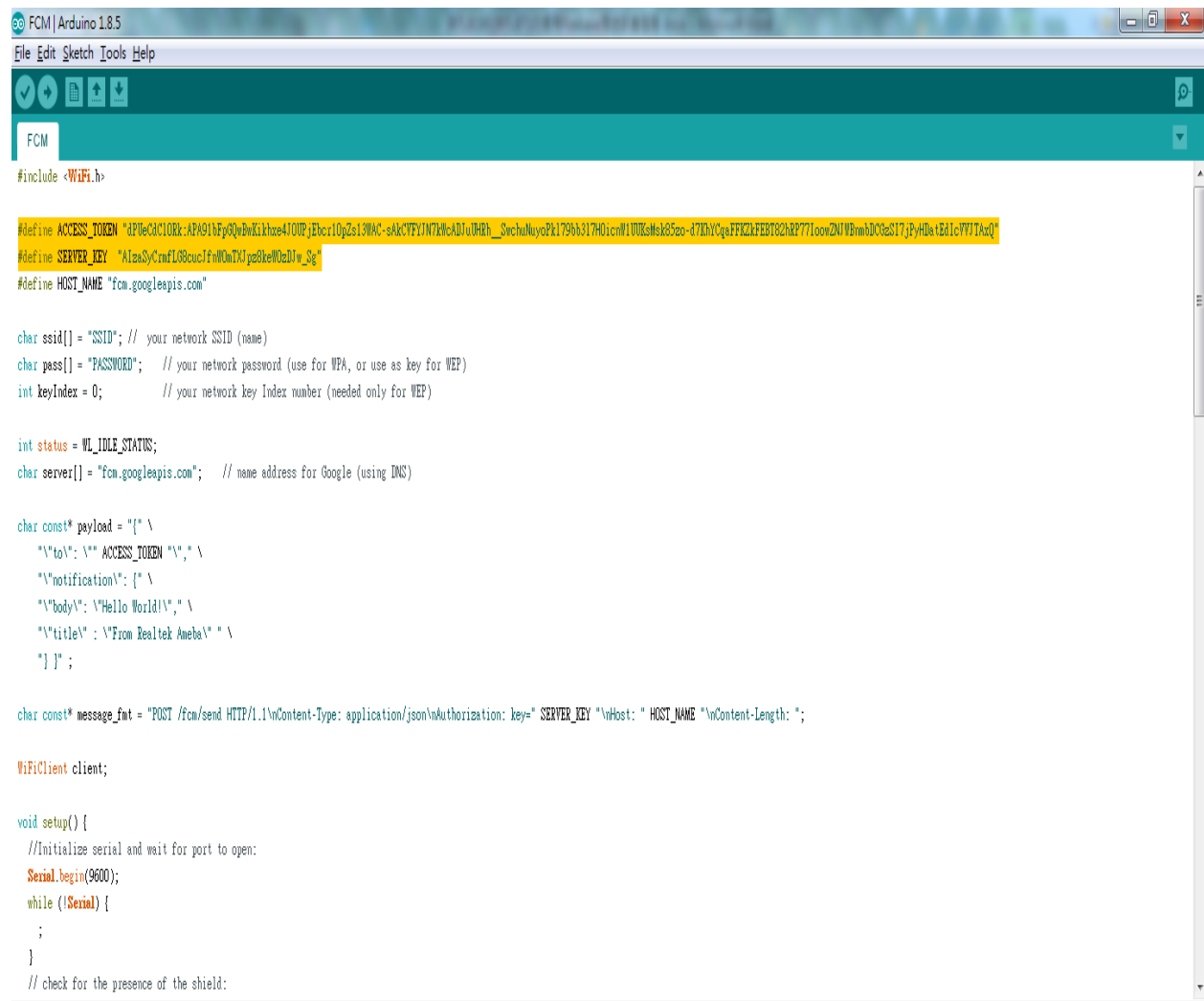
The screenshot shows the Firebase console's 'Cloud Messaging' setup page. The 'Cloud Messaging' tab is highlighted with a red box. The page displays the 'Project certificate' section, which includes a table of keys and a 'Sender ID' field.

key	certificate
Server key	AAAAAC5yzWE4APA91bGHq6kuxZhl3uysXymX-wGeyt1KuXP3XV0VTINif0xuzb2NLVlaWfVZ4f12wns0sVqxVmx0N0EY4dsIqSmHPayhOR18SU_69w517L80ipkNHdx9P9ISln13T4cZN6yQuNjXip7lv-7pcXbcNHgn4yE6xpgNQw
Legacy server key	AlzaSyCmflG8cucJfnW0mTXJpz8keW0zDjw_Sd
Sender ID	49764587598

Below the table, there is a section for 'iOS app settings' with a message: 'You don't have an iOS app'.

Go to the Settings page and select the Cloud Messaging page. We will see the Legacy server key. This Server key also needs to be used in the program. Let's save it and start editing the code.

Open the example "File" -> "Examples" -> "AmebaWiFi" -> "Firebase.ino"



```

FCM | Arduino 1.8.5
File Edit Sketch Tools Help

FCM

#include <WiFi.h>

#define ACCESS_TOKEN "d70e3c108k:APA91bFpQvBwAkhze4T0UfjEhorIdpZs13WAC-sAkYFYJN7KwADuURHh_SwchuNuyoPK179b6b17H0icnW1U0KsMsk85zo-d7EdV0qgFFK2KFEBT82hRP77IooW2NfVEmmBD0zeS17jFp4HnE8icYV1TAxQ"
#define SERVER_KEY "A1zsJyCrmfL08cucIfnW0n7Kjps8keW0zdJw_Sg"
#define HOST_NAME "fcm.googleapis.com"

char ssid[] = "SSID"; // your network SSID (name)
char pass[] = "PASSWORD"; // your network password (use for WPA, or use as key for WEP)
int keyIndex = 0; // your network key Index number (needed only for WEP)

int status = WL_IDLE_STATUS;
char server[] = "fcm.googleapis.com"; // name address for Google (using DNS)

char const* payload = "{" \
  "\"to\": \"" ACCESS_TOKEN "\",\" \
  "\"notification\": {\" \
  "\"body\": \"Hello World!\",\" \
  "\"title\": \"From Realtek Ameba\" \" \
  \"} }";

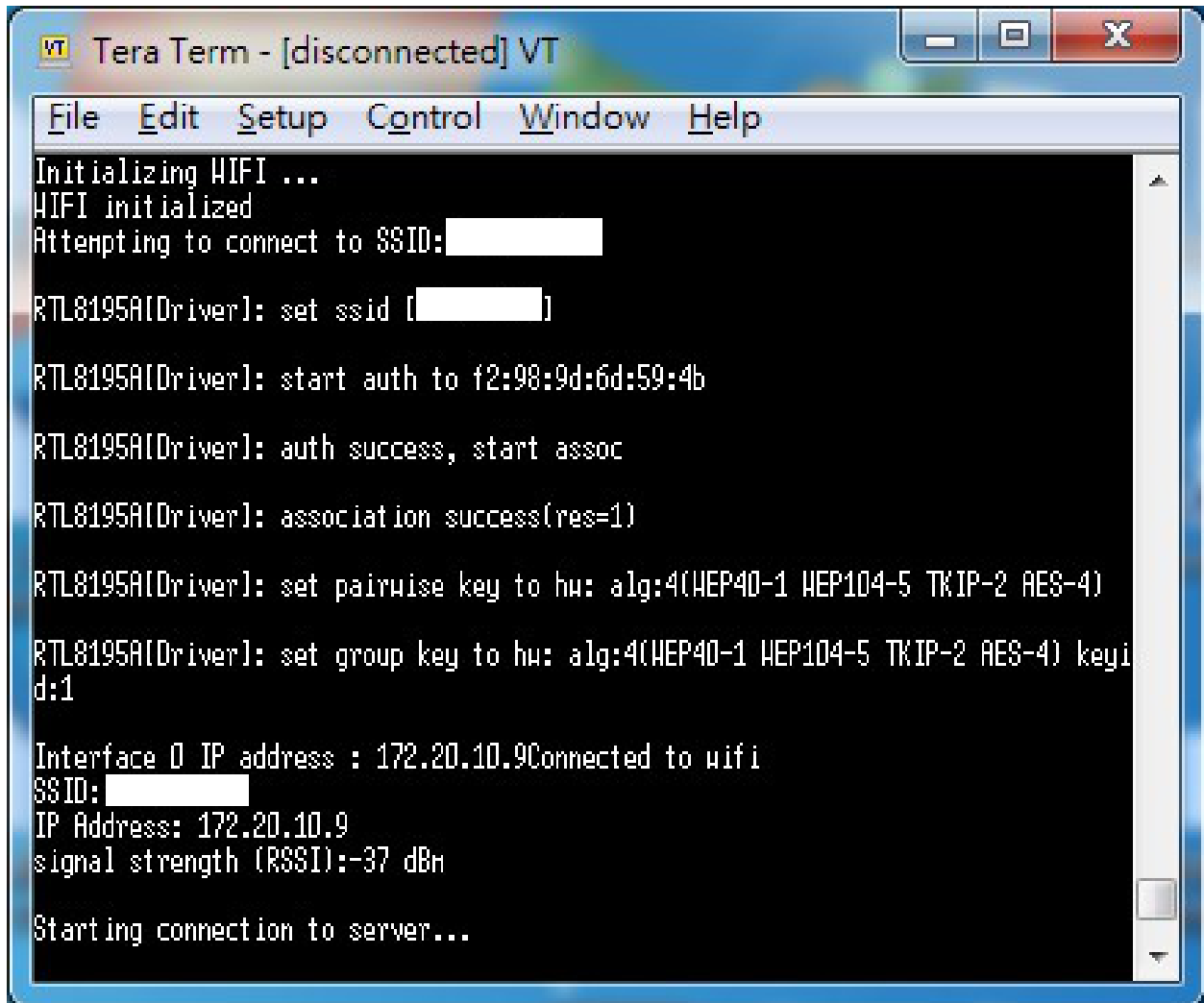
char const* message_fmt = "POST /fcm/send HTTP/1.1\nContent-Type: application/json\nAuthorization: key=\"" SERVER_KEY "\"\nHost: " HOST_NAME "\nContent-Length: ";

WiFiClient client;

void setup() {
  //Initialize serial and wait for port to open:
  Serial.begin(9600);
  while (!Serial) {
    ;
  }
  // check for the presence of the shield:

```

As shown above, ACCESS_TOKEN and SERVER_KEY are defined in the reverse white part, that is, the ACCESS token ID that we just saved from the APP and the Server Key saved in the Firebase console page. We fill in the two sets of IDs, compile and upload them to Ameba. Press the Reset button and open the terminal.



The screenshot shows a Tera Term window titled "Tera Term - [disconnected] VT". The menu bar includes File, Edit, Setup, Control, Window, and Help. The terminal output displays the following sequence of events:

```
Initializing WIFI ...  
WIFI initialized  
Attempting to connect to SSID: [REDACTED]  
RTL8195A(Driver): set ssid [REDACTED]  
RTL8195A(Driver): start auth to f2:98:9d:6d:59:4b  
RTL8195A(Driver): auth success, start assoc  
RTL8195A(Driver): association success(res=1)  
RTL8195A(Driver): set pairwise key to hw: alg:4(HEP40-1 HEP104-5 TKIP-2 AES-4)  
RTL8195A(Driver): set group key to hw: alg:4(HEP40-1 HEP104-5 TKIP-2 AES-4) keyid:1  
Interface 0 IP address : 172.20.10.9  
Connected to wifi  
SSID: [REDACTED]  
IP Address: 172.20.10.9  
signal strength (RSSI):-37 dBm  
Starting connection to server...
```

Connect to FCM Server after connecting to AP

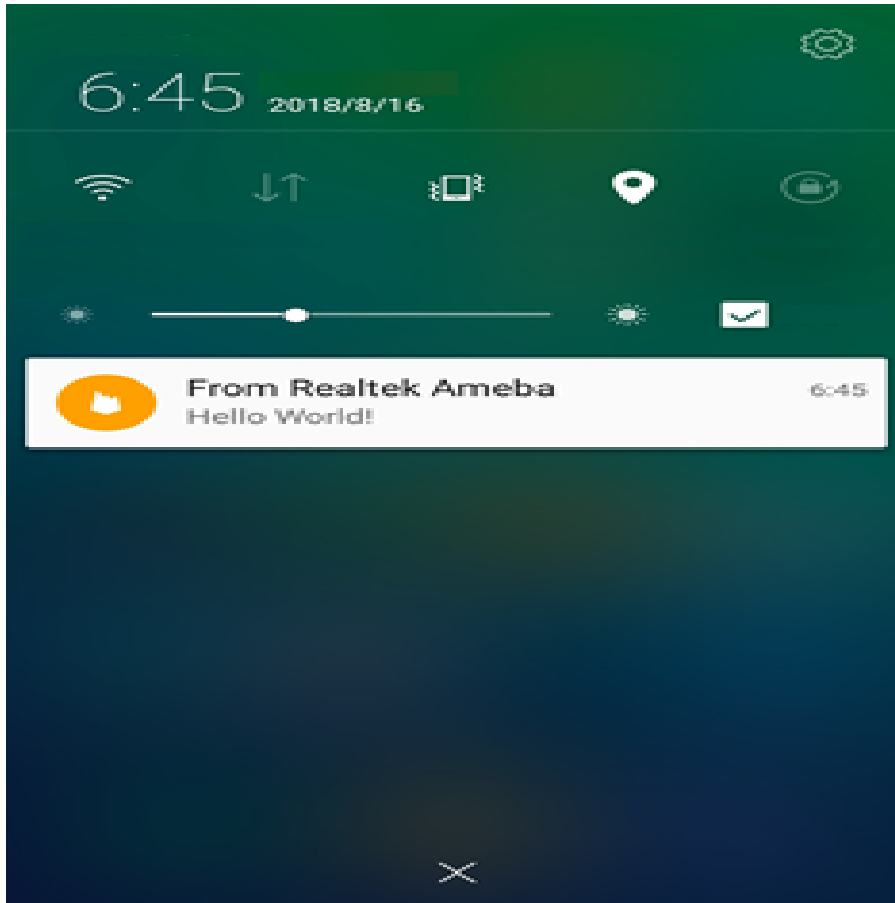
```
connected to server successfully

Request:
POST /fcm/send HTTP/1.1
Content-Type: application/json
Authorization: key=AIZA91bFpGQwBwKikhxe4JOUPjEbcr1
Host: fcm.googleapis.com
Content-Length: 258

{"to": "dPUeCdC1ORk:APA91bFpGQwBwKikhxe4JOUPjEbcr1
h_SuchuMuyoPk179bb317H0icnH1UUKsHsk85zo-d7KhYCqaF
zSI7jPyH0atEdIcVVJTAxQ", "notification": {"body": "
Realtek Ameba" } }

HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Content-Type: application/json; charset=UTF-8
Date: Thu, 16 Aug 2018 10:47:30 GMT
Expires: Thu, 16 Aug 2018 10:47:30 GMT
Cache-Control: private, max-age=0
X-Content-Type-Options: nosniff
X-Frame-Options: SAMEORIGIN
```

After showing Connect to Server successful, it means that the FCM connection is successful and the message will be sent. During the process, HTTP/1.1 200 OK will be received to indicate that the message is successfully pushed. At this time, the mobile phone screen is opened and the App receives the message from Ameba.



Code Reference

Firestore.ino

This example uses the HTTP protocol to push messages. Users can learn the payload format from the Firebase development website.

<https://firebase.google.com/docs/cloud-messaging/send-message>

The main payload format in the program is as follows. The user can freely change the Title and Body of the message. Body represents the content of the message.

```
char const* payload = "{" \
  "to": \"\" ACCESS_TOKEN \"\", \"\
  "notification": { \"\
  "body": \"Hello World!\", \"\
  "title": \"From Realtek Ameba\" \"\
  " } }";
setup()
if (client.connect(server, 80)) {
  Serial.println("connected to server");
```

// Make a HTTP request:

```
sprintf(message,"%s%s%s%s%s%s%d%s%s%s", "POST      /fcm/send    HTTP/1.1\nContent-Type:      appli-\ncation/json\nAuthorization:      key=", SERVER_KEY, "\nHost:      ", HOST_NAME, "\nContent-Length:\n", strlen(payload), "\n", payload, "\n");\nprintf("\nRequest:\n%s \n", message);\nclient.println(message);\nclient.println();\n}
```

The sprintf part puts the payload into the HTTP POST content and sends the message out after connecting to the FCM Server.

```
loop()\nwhile (client.available()) {\nchar c = client.read();\nSerial.write(c);\n}
```

Waiting for the response from Server and printing out the response

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Access IFTTT Via Ameba

Introduction to IFTTT

IFTTT, known as If This Then That, is a website and mobile app and free web-based service to create the applets, or the chains of simple conditional statements. The applet is triggered by changes that occur within other web services such as Gmail, Facebook, Telegram, Instagram, Pinterest etc.

Preparation

- Ameba x 1
- **An account from <https://ifttt.com/> , in order to access IFTTT service***

IFTTT

Sign in

Sign up

A world that works for you

IFTTT is the free way to get all your apps and devices talking to each other. Not everything on the internet plays nice, so we're on a mission to build a more connected world.

or



*Note: Upon log in, there are several cloud and online services that are integrated with IFTTT platforms.

Example

- Generate Applet from IFTTT

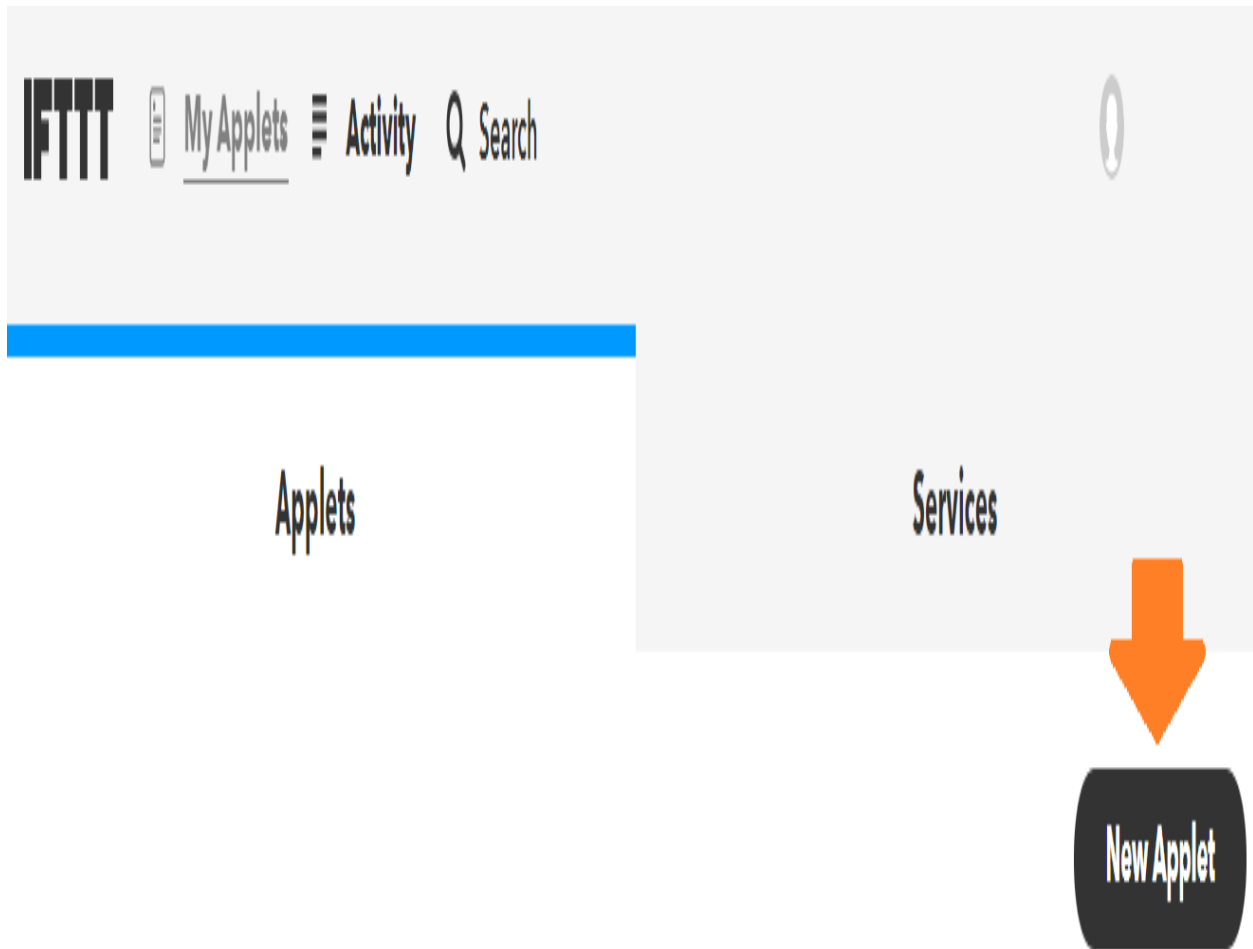
In next, we obtain an example of IFTTT Applet to send email to specified recipient.

To run the example, HTTP POST feature of the ameba is used to post a simple webhook service that is received by IFTTT Platform and in turn be used to trigger a response (sending an email).

After logging in <https://ifttt.com/>, click **My Applets** from Top



Click “New Applet” on the Applet page.



Click +this as indicated below to add the trigger

New Applet



if  this then that

Choose “Webhooks” service as shown below. Alternatively, search the service under **Choose a Service**

IFTTT



My Applets



Activity



Search

[< Back](#)


Choose a service

Step 1 of 6



Webhooks

Then, the available triggers will appear under service. So far, only one Trigger, Receive a web request, is under Webhooks.

 Back

Choose trigger

Step 2 of 6

Receive a web request

This trigger fires every time the Maker service receives a web request to notify it of an event. For information on triggering events, go to your Maker service settings and then the listed URL (web) or tap your username (mobile)

Once **Receive a web request** is selected, an **event name** is required to identify the trigger successfully. In this example, set Event name as “test_event”

Next, select **That** field to create the action service taken in response to the last trigger. In this example, choose **Email** as the action service



if & then + that

Receive a web request

This trigger fires every time the Maker service receives a web request to notify it of an event. For information on triggering events, go to your Maker service settings and then the listed URL (web) or tap your username (mobile)

Event Name

test_event

The name of the event, like "button_pressed" or "front_door_opened"

Create trigger

Choose action service

Step 3 of 6

🔍 Email



Email



Email Digest

A list of Actions can be available under Action Service. In this example, only Send me an Email is found. Click on Send me an Email



Choose action

Step 4 of 6

Send me an email

This Action will send you an HTML based email. Images and links are supported.

Under the template of **Send me an Email**, the contents of the email, such as subject and body, is editable. Click **Create Action** to complete action. Note that **Email** service is offered to the email ID registered under IFTTT account.



Complete action fields

Step 5 of 6

Send me an email

This Action will send you an HTML based email. Images and links are supported.

Subject

The event named "**EventName**"
occurred on the Maker
Webhooks service

Add ingredient

Body

What: **EventName**

When: **OccurredAt**

Extra Data: **Value1**, **Value2**,
Value3,

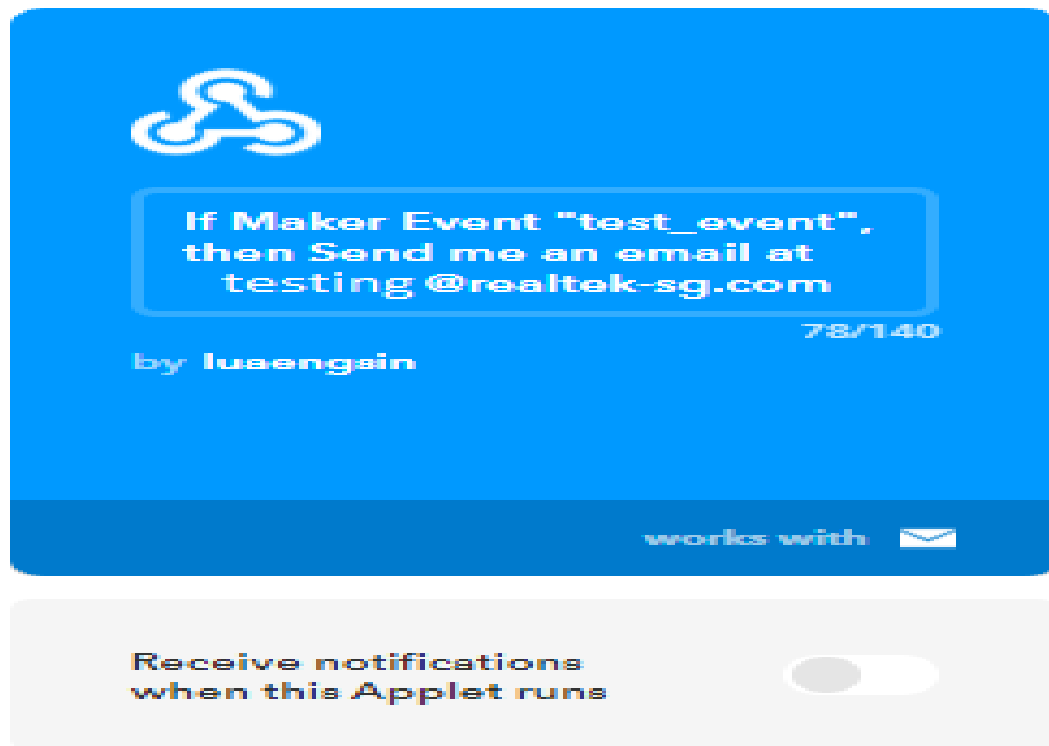
Add ingredient

Create action

After Review Click on **Finish** **to complete and create the Applet. The applet is then found under **My Applet in own IFTTT oage

Review and finish

Step 6 of 6



- Post the Trigger via Ameba

Once the Applet is ready in the IFTTT dashboard, the example program can be flashed onto Ameba board to post HTTP request.

1. The example program is under the folder “HTTP_IFTTT_POST”. Follow the steps below:

1) Open the example code in “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaWiFi” -> “HTTP_IFTTT_Post”

2) Once the example is opened, edit the following 3 items inside the code to make the program work.

Edit the wi-fi credentials to connect to the wi-fi hotspot or access point of desirable choice.

Edit the wi-fi credentials to connect to the wi-fi access point of choice.

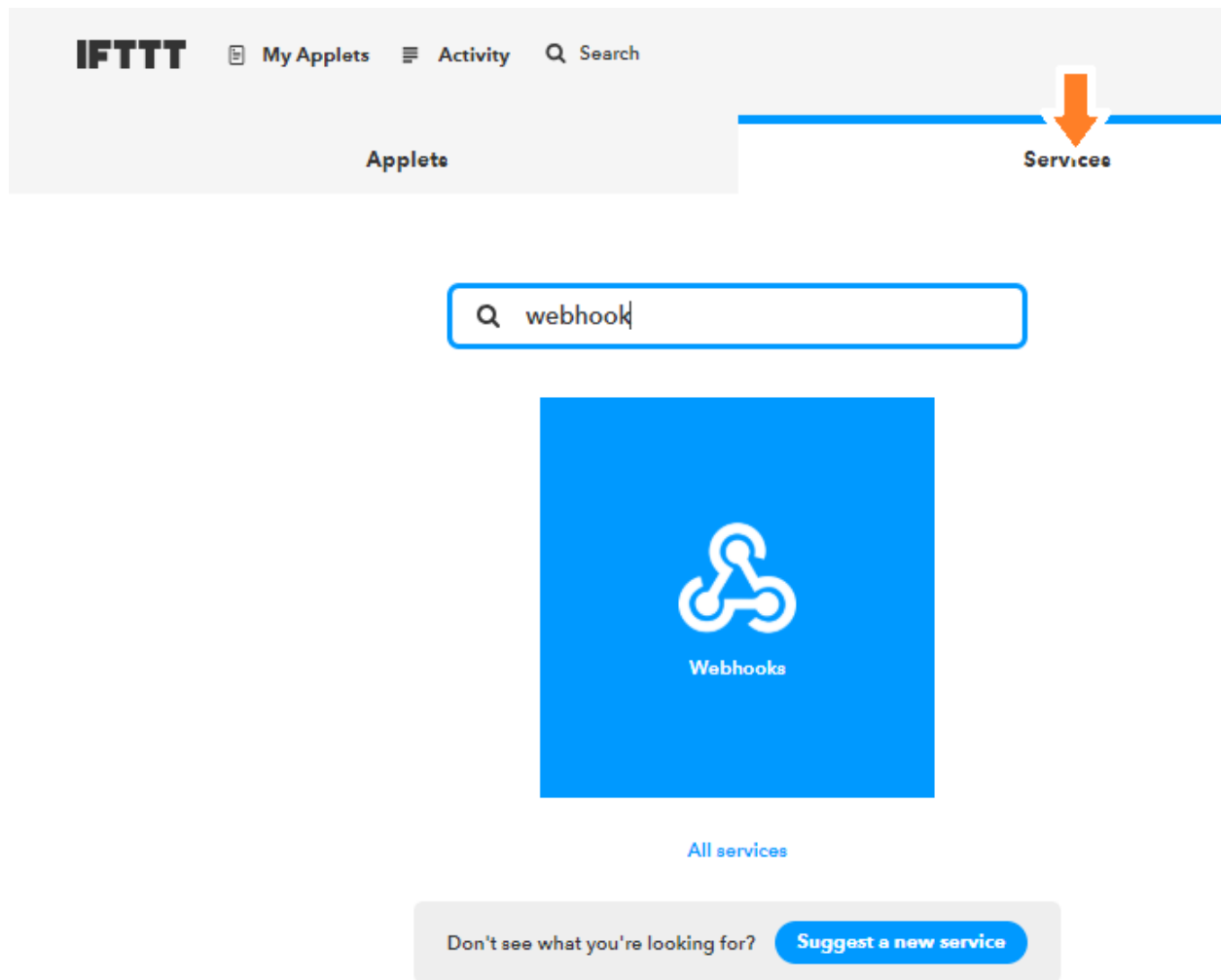
Under the host name field, enter the hostname of the IFTTT service “maker.ifttt.com”

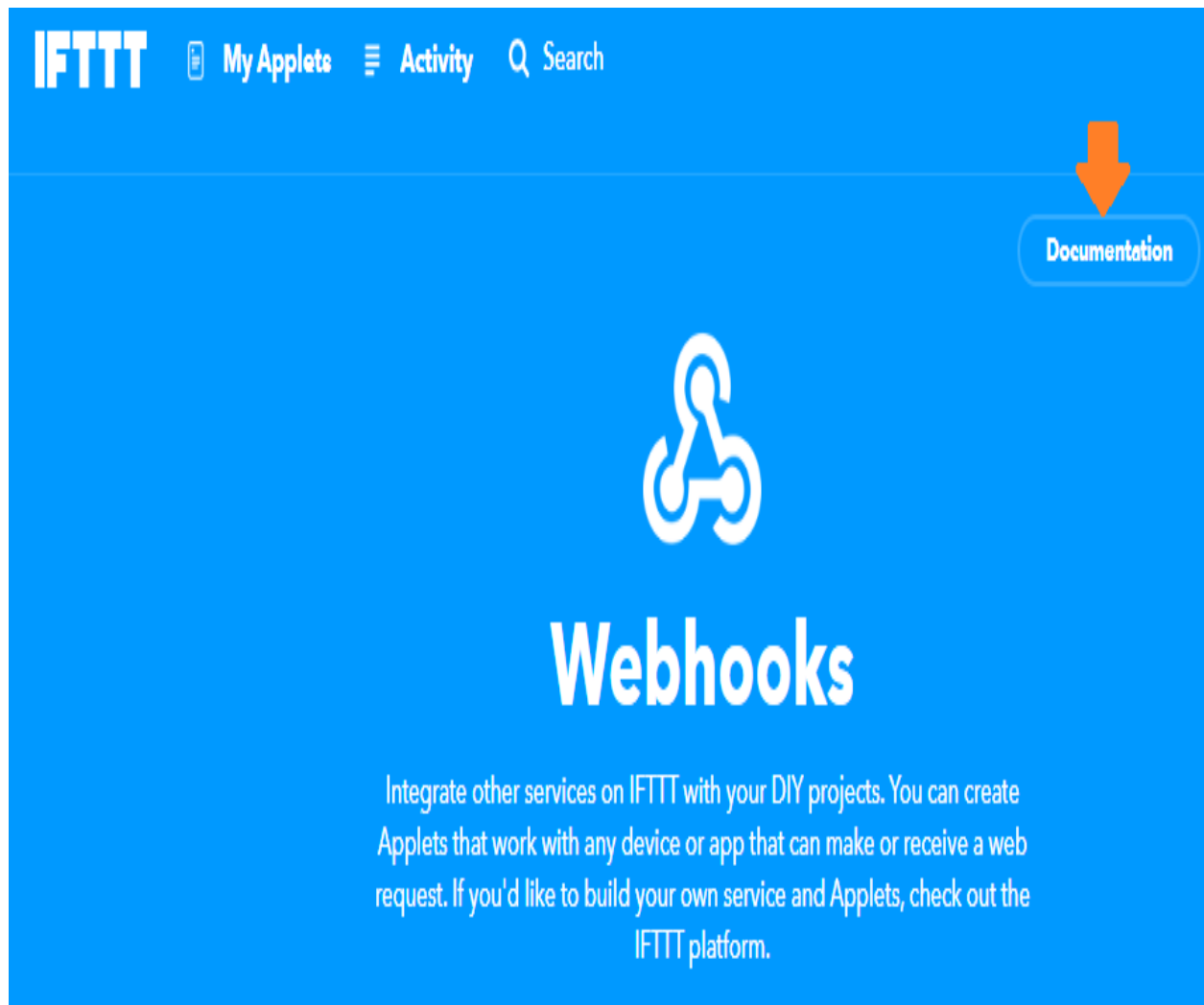
under the Path field, enter the EventName and key field “trigger//with/key”

- Event name: The event name should be same as the one specified in the IFTTT applet. In this example, the event name is “test_event”
- Key: available under Webhook service in individual IFTTT account. See next step to obtain.

3) How To obtain a key from documentation tab of the Webhooks?

find the Webhooks service in the Services tab.





On Webhooks service page, click on the Documentation tab on the top right corner.

The key can found in the documentation page. Also, how HTTP request can be used as shown



Your key is: <IFTTT Key>

◀ Back to service

To trigger an Event

Make a POST or GET web request to:

```
https://maker.ifttt.com/trigger/{event}/with/key/cqLuc3KKpvSTRm9mxZfu7p
```

With an optional JSON body of:

```
{ "value1" : " ", "value2" : " ", "value3" : " " }
```

The data is completely optional, and you can also pass `value1`, `value2`, and `value3` as query parameters or form variables. This content will be passed on to the Action in your Recipe.

You can also try it with `curl` from a command line.

```

1  #include <HttpClient.h>
2  #include <WiFi.h>
3  #include <WiFiClient.h>
4
5  // This example downloads the URL "http://www.amebaiot.com"
6
7  char ssid[] = "network SSID"; // your network SSID (name)
8  char pass[] = "password"; // your network password (use for WPA, or use as key for WEP)
9  int keyIndex = 0; // your network key Index number (needed only for WEP)
10
11 // Name of the server we want to connect to
12 const char kHostname[] = "maker.ifttt.com";
13
14 const char kPath[] = "/trigger/test_event/with/key/<IFTTT Key>";
15 // Number of milliseconds to wait without receiving any data before we give up
16 const int kNetworkTimeout = 30 * 1000;
17 // Number of milliseconds to wait if no data is available before trying again
18 const int kNetworkDelay = 1000;
19 int status = WL_IDLE_STATUS;
20
21 void setup()
22 {
23   Serial.begin(115200);
24   while (status != WL_CONNECTED) {
25     Serial.print("Attempting to connect to SSID: ");
26     Serial.println(ssid);
27     status = WiFi.begin(ssid, pass);
28     // wait 10 seconds for connection:
29     delay(10000);

```

Once the example is ready, connect to Ameba board via USB Cable.

Compile the code. Click on “Sketch” -> “Verify/Compile” on Arduino. Upon completion, “Done compiling” will be prompted at the bottom of Arduino.

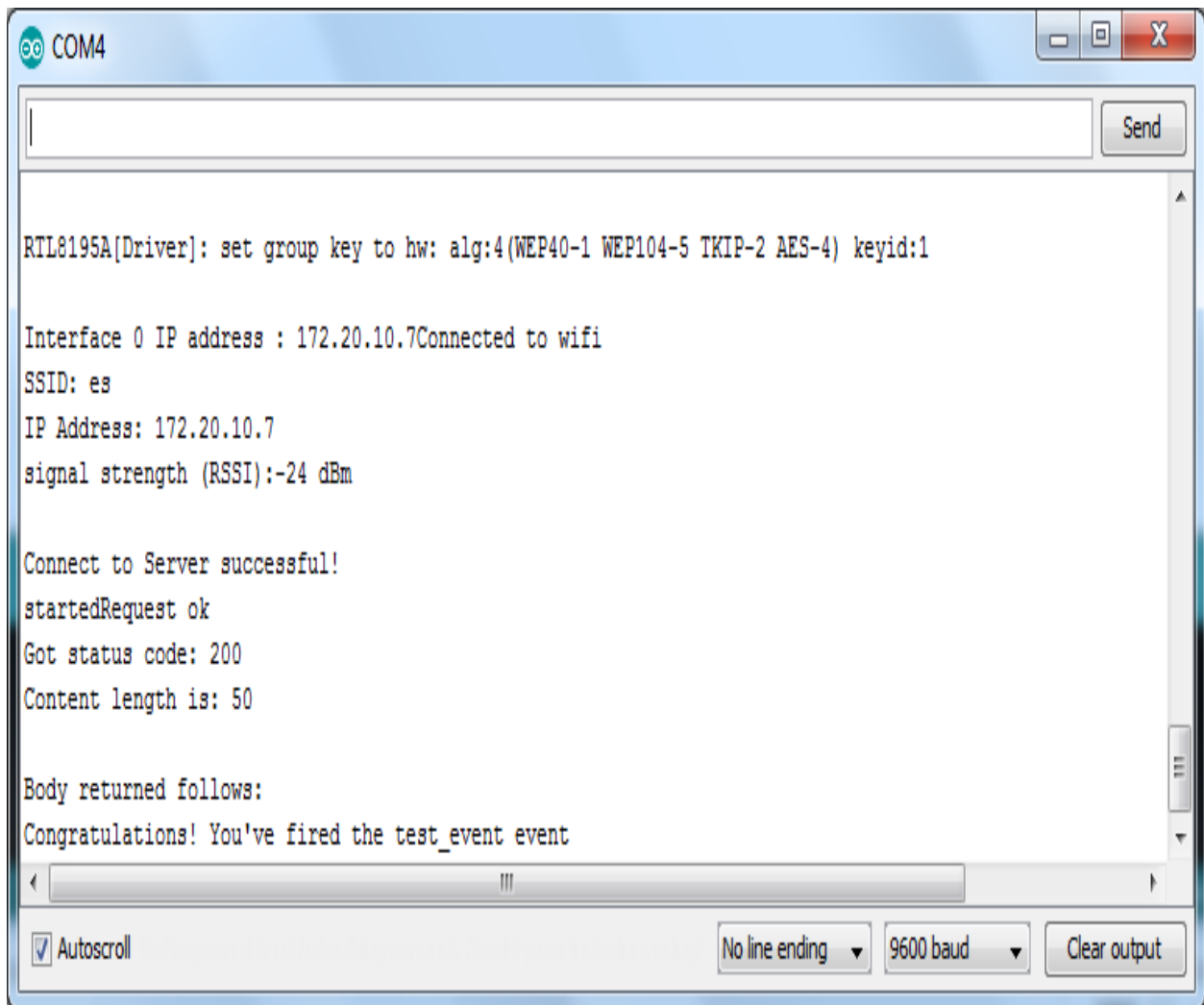
Upload the code onto Ameba by clicking on “Sketch” -> “Upload”.

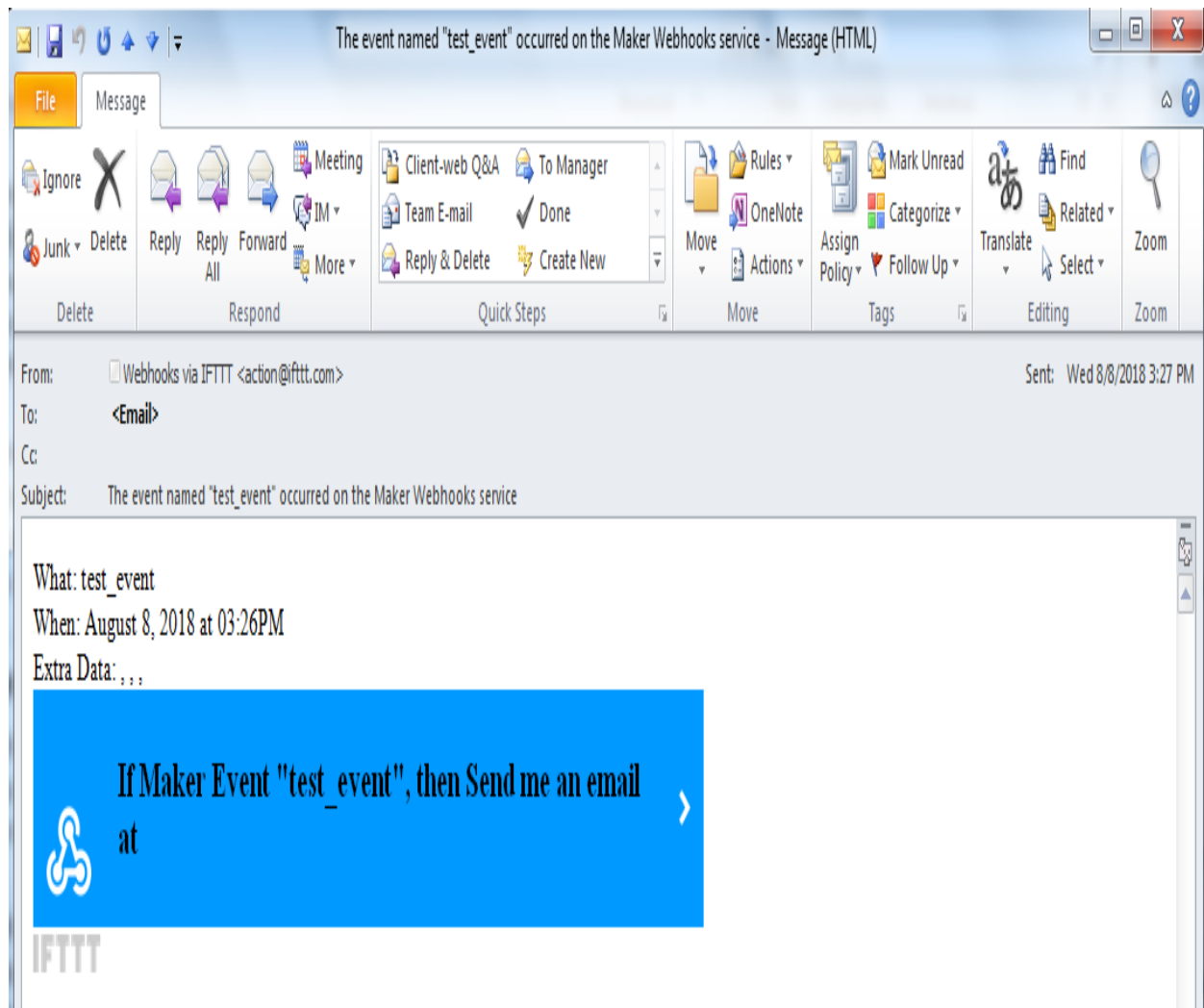
Once the upload is completed, “upload finish” will be reflected on the bottom of the Arduino IDE window

Open the serial monitor.

Press the “Reset” button to see the output logs.

After the event has been successfully fired, the line of “Congratulations! You have fired the test_event event” can be seen on the serial monitor and an email reminder for this event will be delivered.





Thereafter an email is sent to recipient email account registered at IFTTT Applet and email notification will be received.

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Use Ameba To Securely Retrieve Information From The Internet

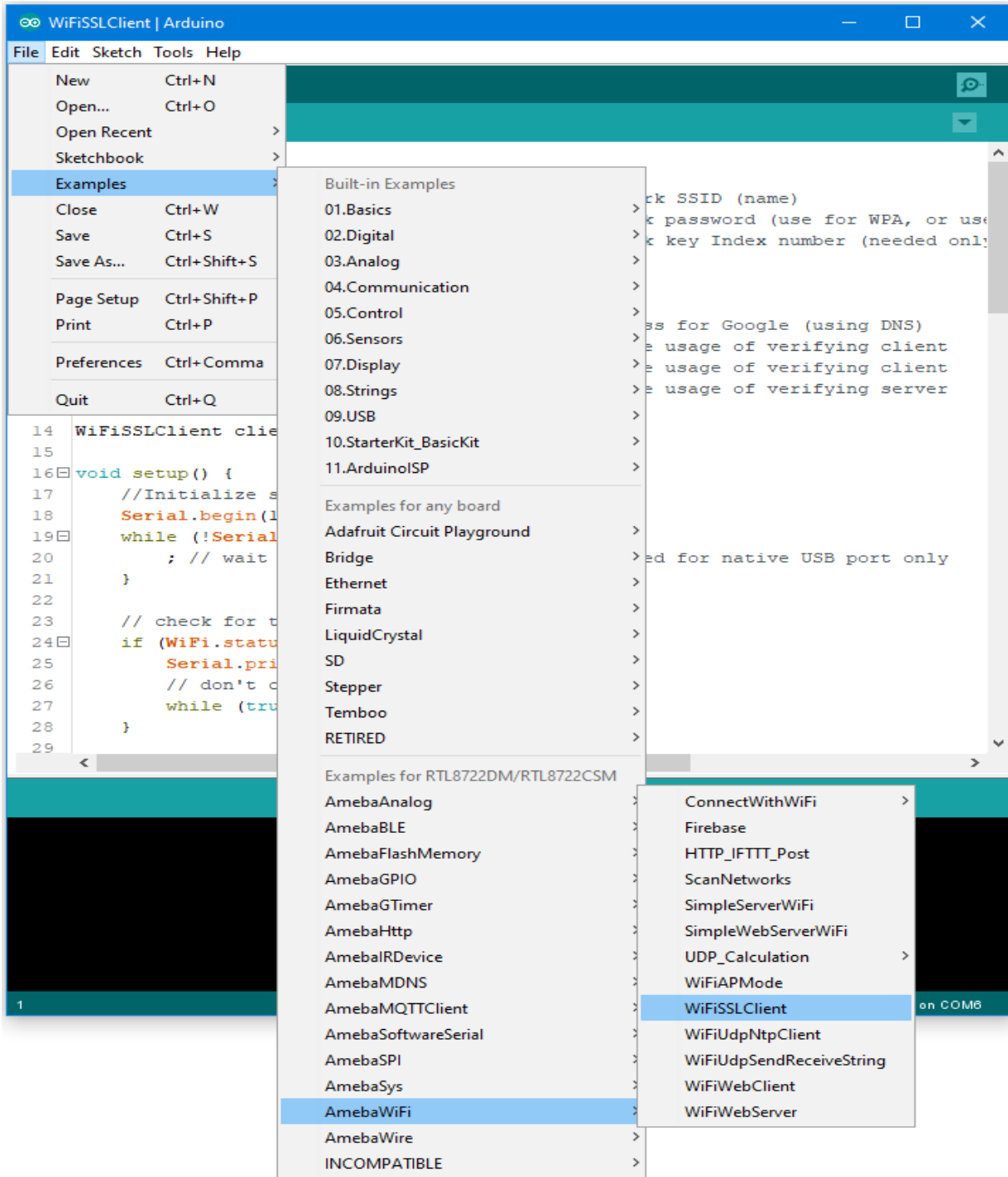
Materials

- Ameba x 1

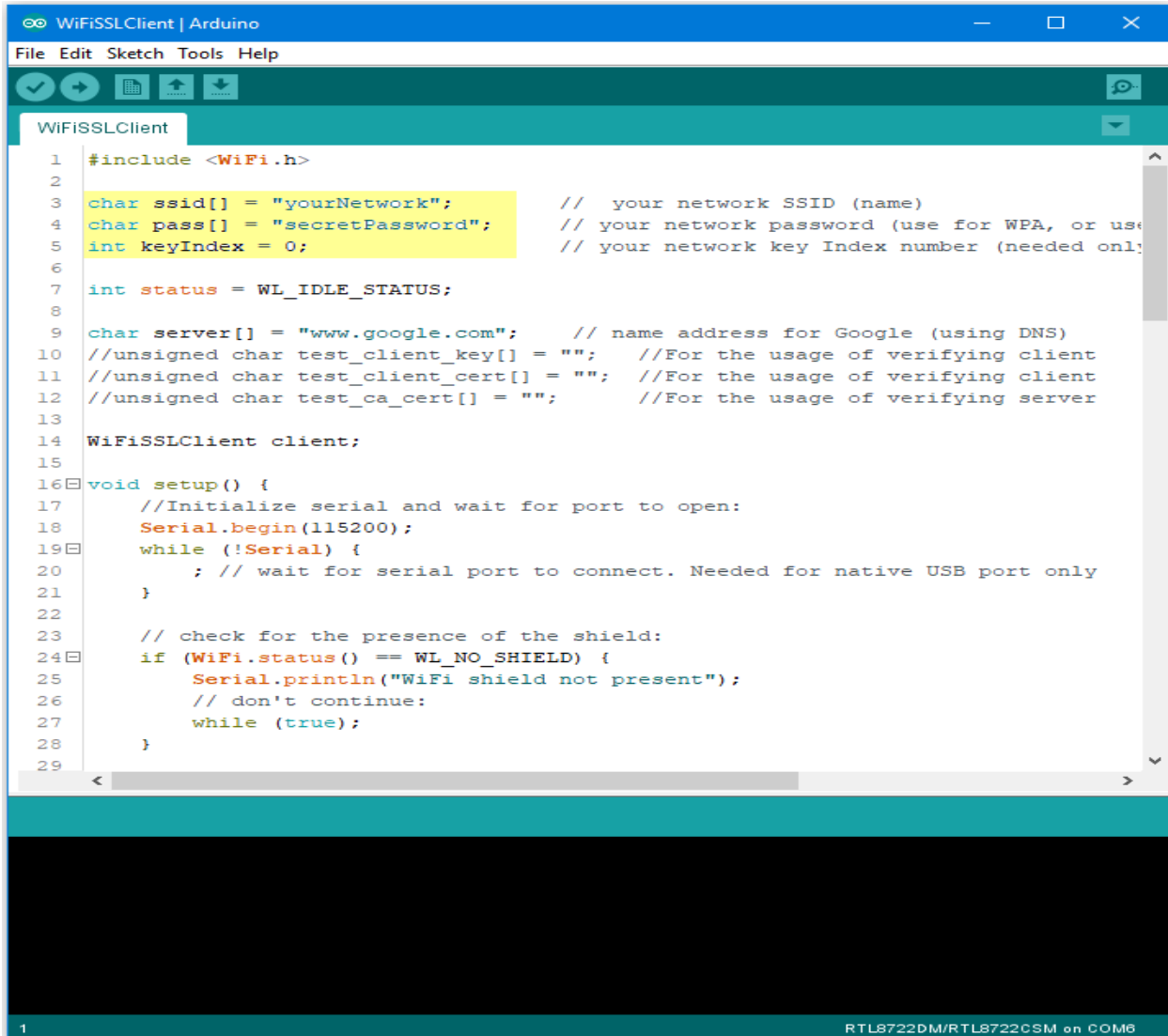
Example

This example uses Ameba to securely retrieve information from the internet using SSL. SSL is an acronym for Secure Sockets Layer. It is a cryptographic protocol designed to provide communications security over a computer network, by encrypting the messages passed between server and client.

Open the "WiFiSSLClient" example in "File" -> "Examples" -> "AmebaWiFi" -> "WiFiSSLClient".



In the sample code, modify the highlighted snippet to reflect your WiFi network settings.



```

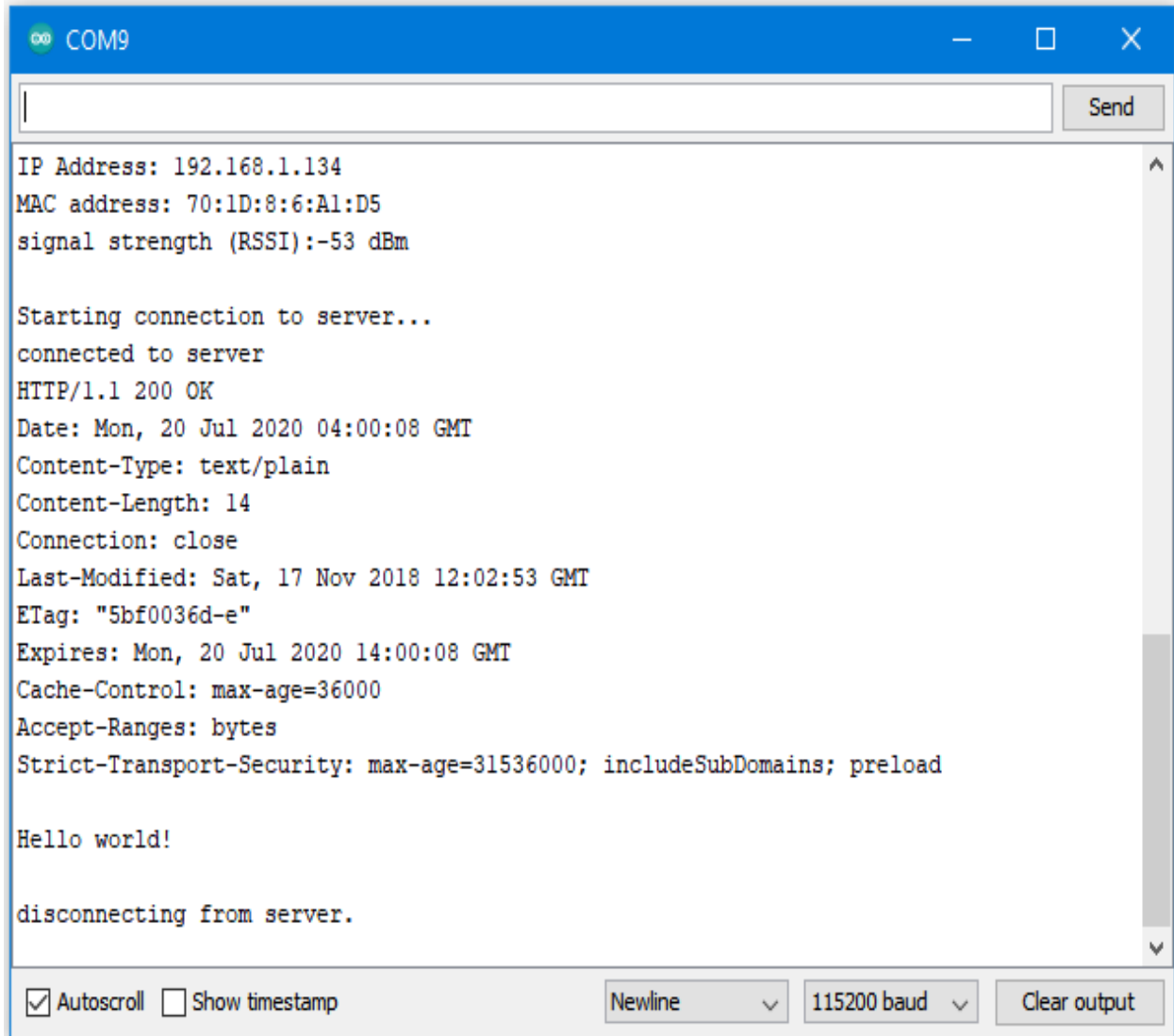
1  #include <WiFi.h>
2
3  char ssid[] = "yourNetwork";    // your network SSID (name)
4  char pass[] = "secretPassword"; // your network password (use for WPA, or use
5  int keyIndex = 0;               // your network key Index number (needed only)
6
7  int status = WL_IDLE_STATUS;
8
9  char server[] = "www.google.com"; // name address for Google (using DNS)
10 //unsigned char test_client_key[] = ""; //For the usage of verifying client
11 //unsigned char test_client_cert[] = ""; //For the usage of verifying client
12 //unsigned char test_ca_cert[] = ""; //For the usage of verifying server
13
14 WiFiSSLClient client;
15
16 void setup() {
17     //Initialize serial and wait for port to open:
18     Serial.begin(115200);
19     while (!Serial) {
20         ; // wait for serial port to connect. Needed for native USB port only
21     }
22
23     // check for the presence of the shield:
24     if (WiFi.status() == WL_NO_SHIELD) {
25         Serial.println("WiFi shield not present");
26         // don't continue:
27         while (true);
28     }
29

```

1 RTL8722DM/RTL8722CSM on COM8

Upload the code and press the reset button on Ameba once the upload is finished.

Open the serial monitor in the Arduino IDE and observe as Ameba retrieves a text file from os.mbed.com.



Code Reference

Use “WiFiSSLClient client;” to create a client that uses SSL. After creation, the client can be used in the same way as a regular client.

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] BLE – BLE Battery Service

Materials

- Ameba D [RTL8722 CSM/DM] x 1
- Android / iOS mobile phone

Example

Introduction

BLE connections use a server client model. The server contains the data of interest, while the client connects to the server to read the data. Commonly, a Bluetooth peripheral device acts as a server, while a Bluetooth central device acts as a

client. Servers can contain many services, with each service containing a some set of data. Clients can send requests to read or write some data and can also subscribe to notifications so that the server can send data updates to a client.

In this example, a basic battery service is set up on the Ameba Bluetooth stack. A mobile phone is used to connect to the Ameba peripheral device and read the battery data.

Procedure

Ensure that the following Bluetooth apps are installed on your mobile phone. These apps will show you the raw data sent by Ameba and allow you to interact with the data.

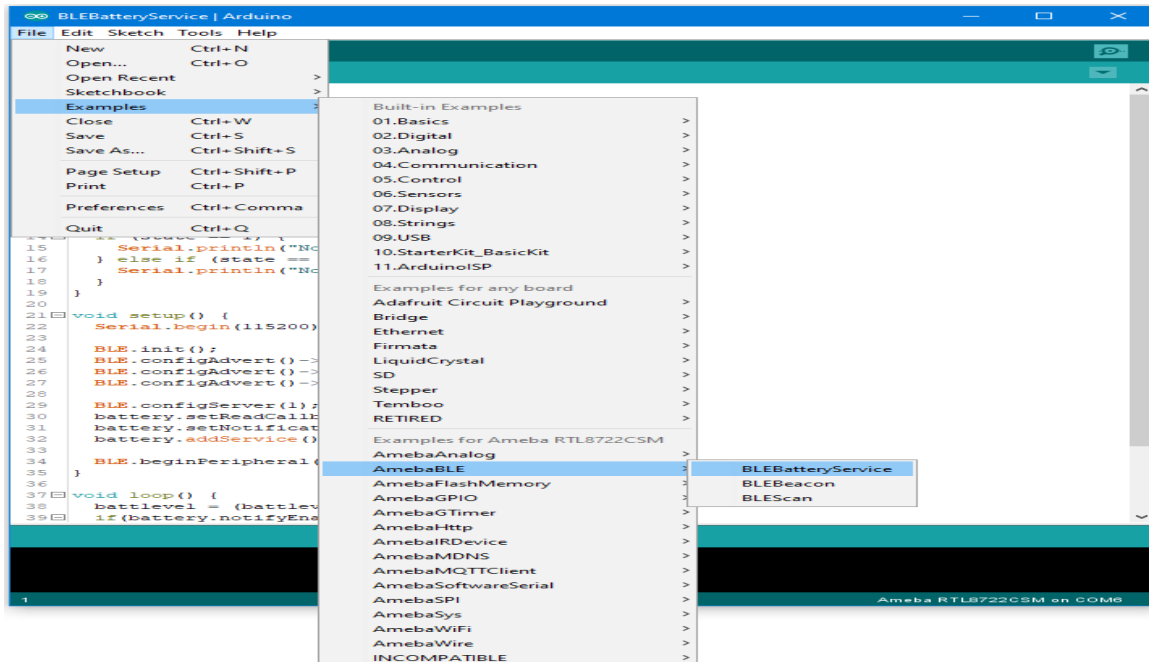
The recommended application is nRF connect, and is available at the links below:

- **Android** : <https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=no.nordicsemi.android.mcp>
- **iOS** : <https://apps.apple.com/us/app/nrf-connect/id1054362403>

LightBlue is an alternative application that can also be used, but has less features:

- **Android** : <https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.punchthrough.lightblueexplorer>
- **iOS** : <https://apps.apple.com/us/app/lightblue/id557428110>

Open the example, “Files” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaBLE” -> “BLEBatteryService”

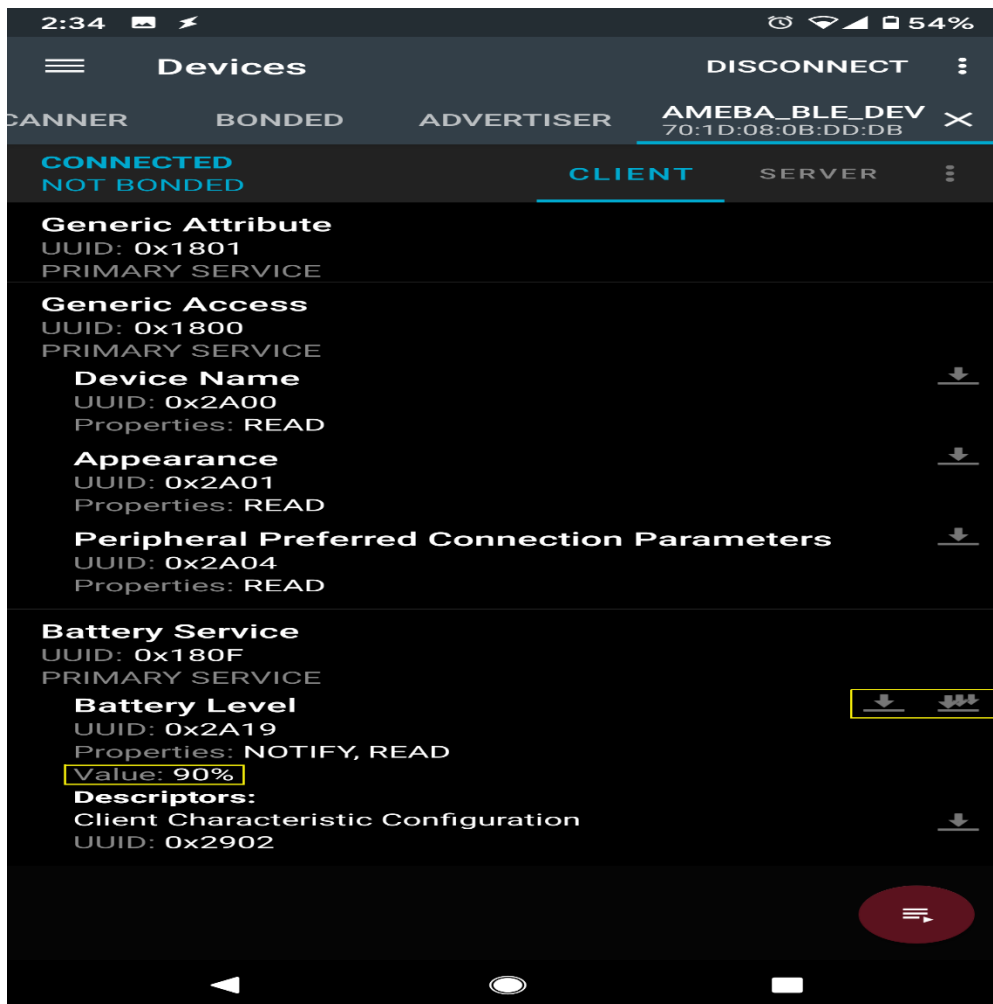


Upload the code and press the reset button on Ameba once the upload is finished.

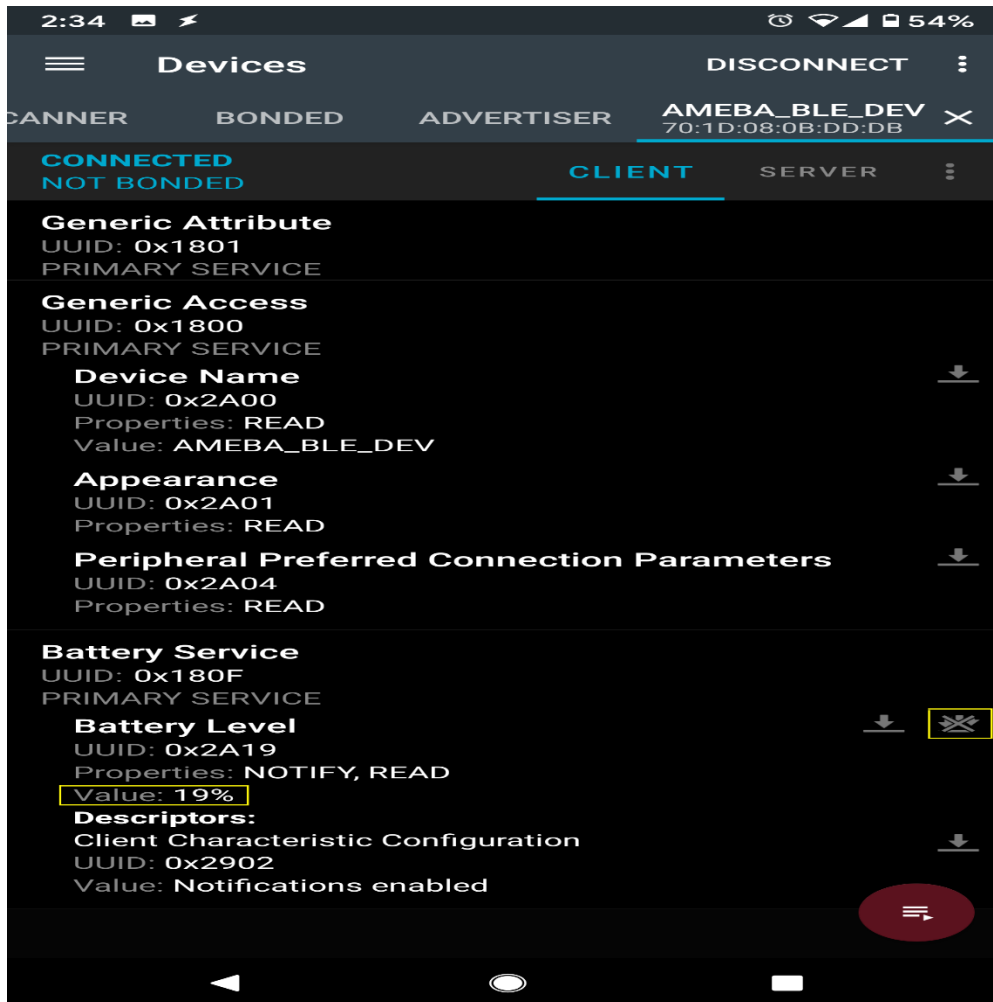
On your mobile phone, open the Bluetooth app and scan for the Bluetooth signal broadcast by Ameba, it should appear as a device named “AMEBA_BLE_DEV”.



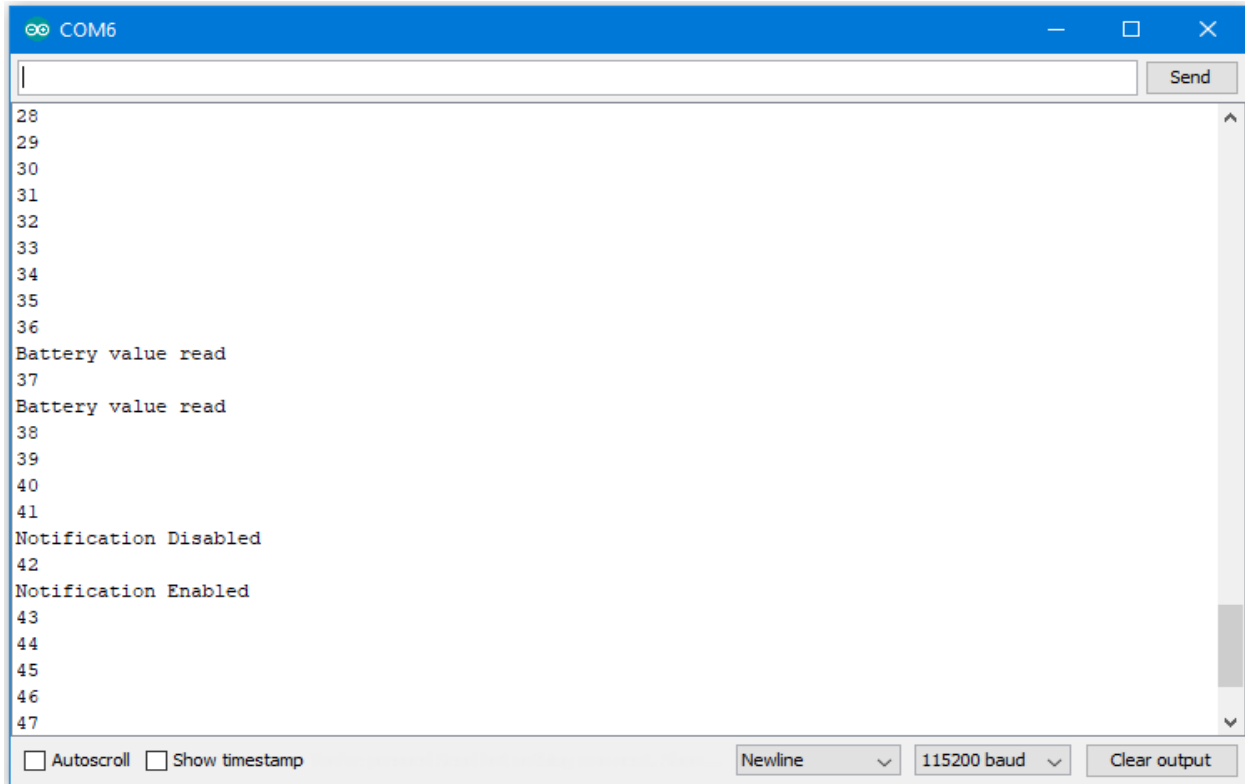
Connect to the Ameba Bluetooth device, and a list of available services should appear. Click on the battery service to expand it, and you can see the battery level data value. The arrows highlighted in the box on the right are used to read data and subscribe to notifications. Click on the single arrow to read the battery level value, and a 90% value will appear.



Click on the triple arrow to subscribe to updates on the battery level value, and the battery value will start updating by itself.



The serial monitor will show the sketch increasing the battery level every second. When you click on either of the arrows, the sketch running on the Ameba will be notified, and will print out the action taken.



Code Reference

BLEService and BLECharacteristic classes are used to create and define the battery service to run on the Bluetooth device.

BLE.configAdvert()->setAdvType(GAP_ADTYPE_ADV_IND) is used to set the advertisement type to a general undirected advertisement that allows for connections.

setReadCallback() and setCCCDCallback() is used to register functions that will be called when the battery level data is read, or notification is enabled by the user.

BLE.configServer(1) is used to tell the Bluetooth stack that there will be one service running.

addService() registers the battery service to the Bluetooth stack.

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] BLE – BLE Beacon

Materials

- Ameba D x 1
- Android / iOS mobile phone

Example

Introduction

A BLE beacon broadcasts its identity to nearby Bluetooth devices, to enable the other devices to determine their location relative to the beacon, and to perform actions based on information broadcasted by the beacon.

Example applications of beacons include indoor positioning system, location-based advertising and more.

From the definition of its purpose as a broadcast device, a BLE beacon thus cannot be connected to, and can only send information in its Bluetooth advertisement packets.

There are several BLE beacon protocols. The Ameba BLEBeacon library supports the iBeacon and AltBeacon protocols.

Procedure

First, you need to install some Bluetooth apps on your mobile phone. These apps will show you the raw data sent by Ameba and allow you to interact with the data.

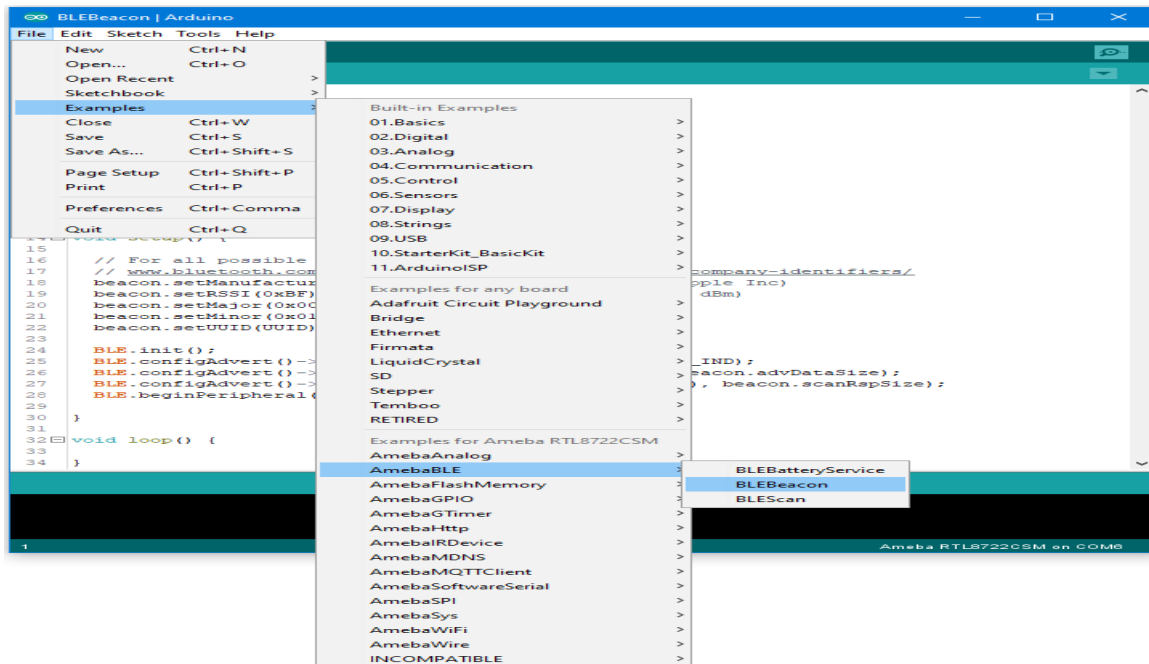
The recommended application is nRF connect, and is available at the links below:

- **Android** : <https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=no.nordicsemi.android.mcp>
- **iOS** : <https://apps.apple.com/us/app/nrf-connect/id1054362403>

LightBlue is an alternative application that can also be used, but has less features:

- **Android** : <https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.punchthrough.lightblueexplorer>
- **iOS** : <https://apps.apple.com/us/app/lightblue/id557428110>

Open the example, “Files” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaBLE” -> “BLEBeacon”



Upload the code and press the reset button on Ameba once the upload is finished.

On your mobile phone, open the Bluetooth app and scan for the beacon signal broadcast by Ameba.



If you happen to be in an environment with multiple BLE beacons, you can tap the entries to expand them, and verify that the beacon data is identical to the data in the sketch.

Code Reference

`setRssi()` is used to set the received signal strength indicator (rssi) data field for a beacon. The specification states that this should be the received signal strength from the beacon at a 1 meter distance. With no method to measure this, it is set to -65dBm as an estimate.

`setMajor()` and `setMinor()` are used to set the two data fields. The purpose of these data are left for the manufacturer of the beacon to define, and can be used in any way.

`setUUID()` is used to give the beacon a universally unique identifier (UUID). This is a 128-bit number usually expressed as a hexadecimal string. It is used to identify each unique beacon, and can be randomly generated for free online.

The `BLEBeacon` library includes both `iBeacon` and `AltBeacon` classes, replace line 6 `iBeacon` with `altBeacon` to create an `AltBeacon` instead. The data fields are mostly the same, with only minor changes, please look at the header files for more details.

`BLE.init()` is used to allocate memory and prepare Ameba for starting the Bluetooth stack.

`BLE.configAdvert()` is used to configure the Bluetooth advertisement settings, to which we pass the beacon data and set the device as non-connectable.

`BLE.beginPeripheral()` starts Ameba in Bluetooth peripheral mode, after which it will begin to advertise with the beacon data provided.

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] BLE – BLE Scan

Materials

- Ameba D x 1
- Android / iOS mobile phone

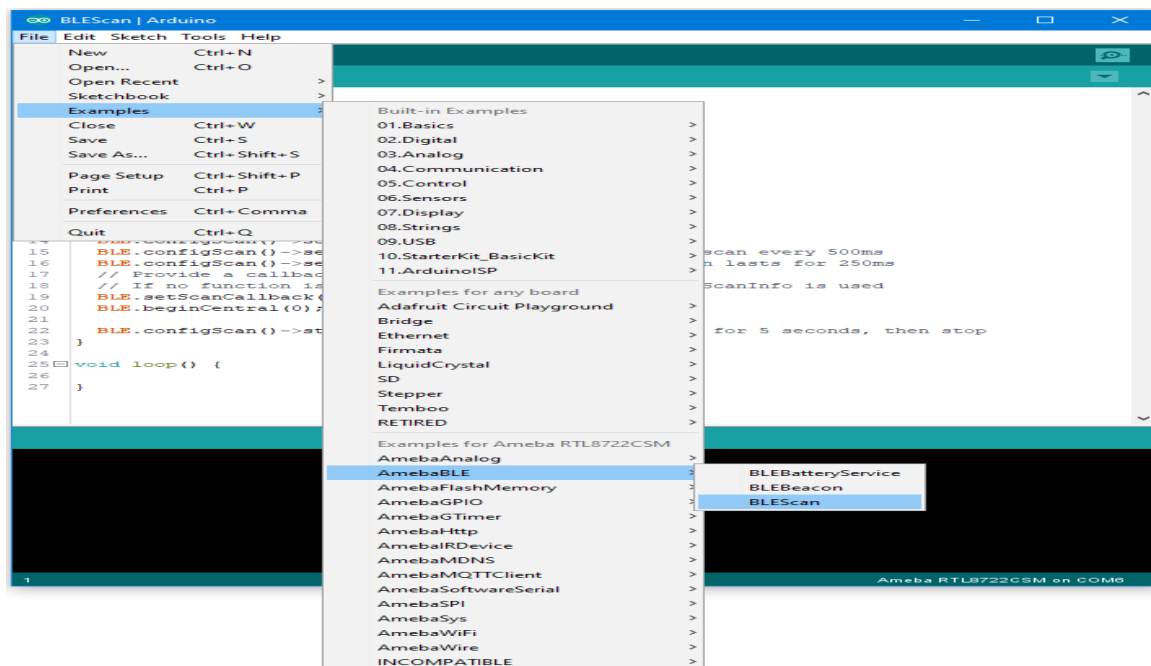
Example

Introduction

This example configures the Ameba as a Bluetooth central device, uses the scan functionality to scan for other Bluetooth devices, and prints out the results to the serial monitor.

Procedure

Open the example, “Files” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaBLE” -> “BLEScan”



Upload the code and press the reset button on Ameba once the upload is finished.

Open the Arduino serial monitor, and you should see the scan results of nearby Bluetooth devices formatted and printed out.

```

COM6
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]
interface 0 is initialized
interface 1 is initialized

Initializing WIFI ...
WIFI initialized
local bd addr: 0x70:1d:08:0b:dd:db
GAP scan start

Scan Data 1
ADVType          | AddrType      | BT_Addr        | rssi
NON_CONNECTABLE  | random        | 79:c1:1f:ed:21:75 | -94
GAP_ADTYPE_MANUFACTURER_SPECIFIC: company_id 0x6, len 27

Scan Data 2
ADVType          | AddrType      | BT_Addr        | rssi
NON_CONNECTABLE  | random        | 4c:19:13:18:f4:b5 | -98
GAP_ADTYPE_MANUFACTURER_SPECIFIC: company_id 0x6, len 27

Scan Data 3
ADVType          | AddrType      | BT_Addr        | rssi
NON_CONNECTABLE  | random        | 59:aa:dd:87:da:83 | -62
GAP_ADTYPE_MANUFACTURER_SPECIFIC: company_id 0x6, len 27

Scan Data 4
ADVType          | AddrType      | BT_Addr        | rssi
CON_UNDIRECT     | random        | c7:b9:7f:1e:fb:28 | -96
GAP_ADTYPE_FLAGS: 0x5
GAP_ADTYPE_SERVICE_DATA: UUID 0xffff, len 4

Scan Data 5
ADVType          | AddrType      | BT_Addr        | rssi
CON_UNDIRECT     | random        | 6b:37:ce:55:75:65 | -92
GAP_ADTYPE_FLAGS: 0x1a
GAP_ADTYPE_POWER_LEVEL: 0xc
GAP_ADTYPE_MANUFACTURER_SPECIFIC: company_id 0x4c, len 7

Scan Data 6
ADVType          | AddrType      | BT_Addr        | rssi
CON_UNDIRECT     | public        | 68:9e:19:cb:ef:a9 | -78
GAP_ADTYPE_FLAGS: 0x6
GAP_ADTYPE_128BIT_XXX: 0x1bc5ffa0020062abe411f254e005dbd4
GAP_ADTYPE_MANUFACTURER_SPECIFIC: company_id 0xc90, len 2

Scan Data 7
ADVType          | AddrType      | BT_Addr        | rssi
SCAN_RSP         | public        | 68:9e:19:cb:ef:a9 | -78
  
```

If you have the Bluetooth app nRF Connect installed, you can also use it to send out Bluetooth advertisements for the Ameba to pick up.

Code Reference

`setScanMode(GAP_SCAN_MODE_ACTIVE)` is used to set the scan mode. Active scanning will request for an additional scan response data packet from a device when it is found. Passive scanning will only look at the advertisement data, and not request for additional data.

`setScanInterval()` and `setScanWindow()` are used to set the frequency and duration of scans in milliseconds. A scan will start every interval duration, and each scan will last for the scan window duration. The scan window duration should be lesser or equal to the scan interval. Set a short interval to discover devices rapidly, set a long interval to conserve power.

`setScanCallback(scanFunction)` is used to register a function to be called when scan results are received. This can be used to set a user function for additional processing of scan data, such as looking for a specific device. If no function is registered, the scan results are formatted and printed to the serial monitor by default.

`beginCentral(0)` is used to start the Bluetooth stack in Central mode. The argument 0 is used to indicate that no clients will be operating in central mode.

`startScan(5000)` is used to start the scanning process for a specified duration of 5000 milliseconds. The scan will repeat according to the set scan interval and scan window values. After 5000 milliseconds, the scan process will stop, and will be ready to be started again.

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] BLE – Battery Client

Materials

- AmebaD [RTL8722 CSM/DM] x 2

Example

Introduction

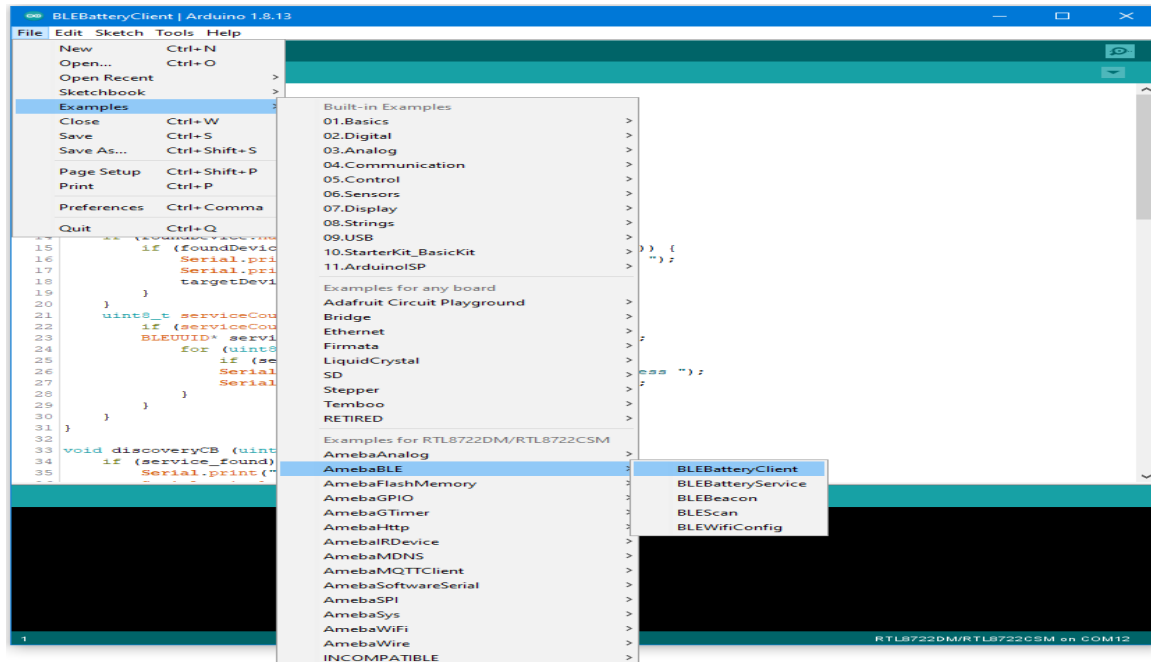
BLE connections use a server client model. The server contains the data of interest, while the client connects to the server to read the data. Commonly, a Bluetooth peripheral device acts as a server, while a Bluetooth central device acts as a client. Servers can contain many services, with each service containing a some set of data. Clients can send requests to read or write some data and can also subscribe to notifications so that the server can send data updates to a client.

In this example, a basic battery client is set up on the Ameba Bluetooth stack. The client connects to another Ameba board running the corresponding BLE battery service to read the battery level data.

Procedure

On the first Ameba board, upload the BLEBatteryService example code and let it run.

For the second Ameba board, open the example “Files” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaBLE” -> “BLEBatteryClient”.



Upload the code and press the reset button on Ameba once the upload is finished.

Open the serial monitor and observe the log messages as the Ameba board with the battery client scans, connects, and reads data from the Ameba board with the battery service.

```

COM9
LL#calibration_OK:[2:19:11]
interface 0 is initialized
interface 1 is initialized

Initializing WIFI ...
WIFI initialized
[BLE Device] Local BT addr: 70:1d:08:0b:fe:d2
[BLE Device] GAP scan start
Found Ameba BLE Device at address 70:1D:08:0B:DD:DB
Found Battery Service at address 70:1D:08:0B:DD:DB
[BLE Device] GAP scan stop
[BLE Device] Connected conn_id 0
BLE connected to device at 0
Battery service found on connection id: 0
Battery level read callback for connection id: 0 Battery level: 90
Notifications Enabled
Notification received for connection id: 0 Battery level: 9
Notification received for connection id: 0 Battery level: 10
Notification received for connection id: 0 Battery level: 11
Notification received for connection id: 0 Battery level: 12
Notification received for connection id: 0 Battery level: 13
Battery level read callback for connection id: 0 Battery level: 90
Notification received for connection id: 0 Battery level: 14
Notification received for connection id: 0 Battery level: 15
Notification received for connection id: 0 Battery level: 16
Notification received for connection id: 0 Battery level: 17
Notification received for connection id: 0 Battery level: 18
Notifications Disabled

```

☒ Autoscroll ☐ Show timestamp Newline 115200 baud Clear output

Highlighted in yellow, the Ameba board with the battery client first scans for advertising BLE devices with the advertised device name “AMEBA_BLE_DEV” and the advertised service UUID of 0x180F representing the battery service.

After finding the target device, the Ameba board with the battery client forms a BLE connection and searches for a battery service on the connected device, highlighted in blue.

With the client connected to the service, the battery client begins to read data using both regular data reads and notifications, highlighted in green.

Code Reference

BLEClient is used to create a client object to discover services and characteristics on the connected device.

setNotifyCallback() is used to register a function that will be called when a battery level notification is received.

BLE.configClient() is used to configure the Bluetooth stack for client operation.

addClient(connID) creates a new BLEClient object that corresponds to the connected device.

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] BLE – WiFi Configuration Service

Materials

- AmebaD [RTL8722 CSM/DM] x 1
- Android / iOS mobile phone

Example

Introduction

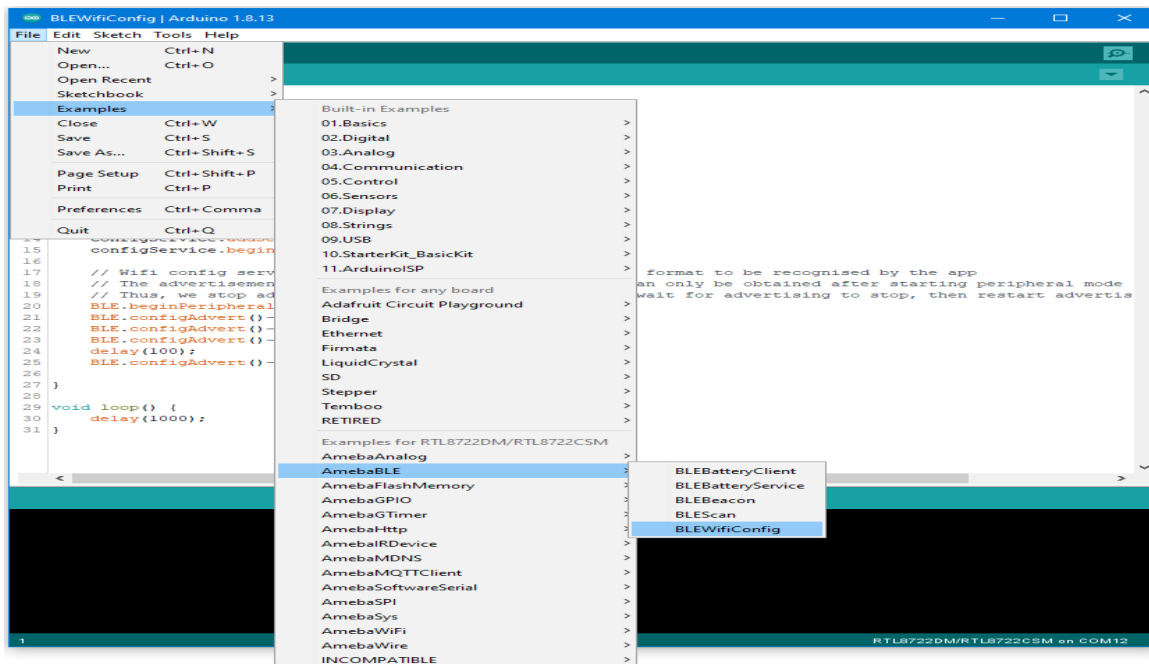
In this example, a WiFi configuration service is set up on the Ameba Bluetooth stack. A mobile phone with the configuration app connects to the Ameba device using BLE and configures the Ameba to connect to the correct WiFi access point.

Procedure

Ensure that the Realtek WiFi configuration app is installed on your mobile phone, it is available at:

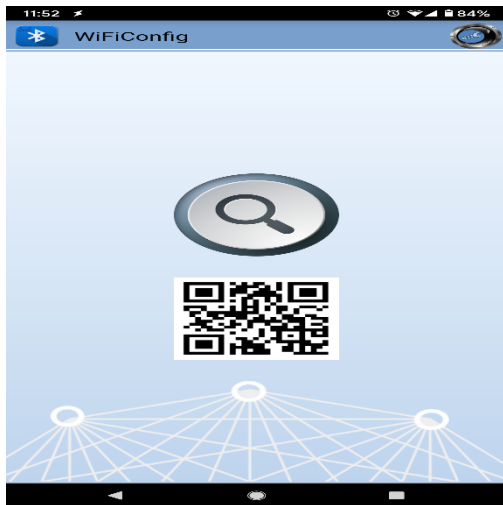
- Google Play Store: <https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.rtk.btconfig>
- Apple App Store: <https://apps.apple.com/sg/app/easy-wifi-config/id1194919510>

Open the example, “Files” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaBLE” -> “BLEWifiConfigService”.

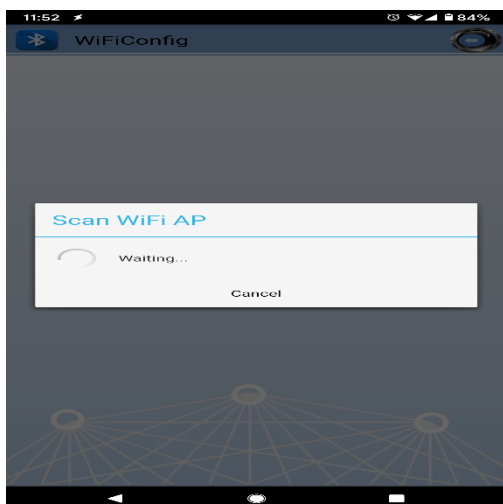
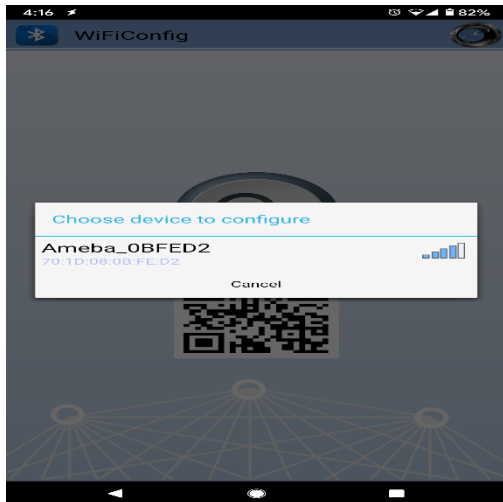


Upload the code and press the reset button on Ameba once the upload is finished.

On your mobile phone, open the Realtek WiFiConfig app and tap the round button to scan for Ameba boards.

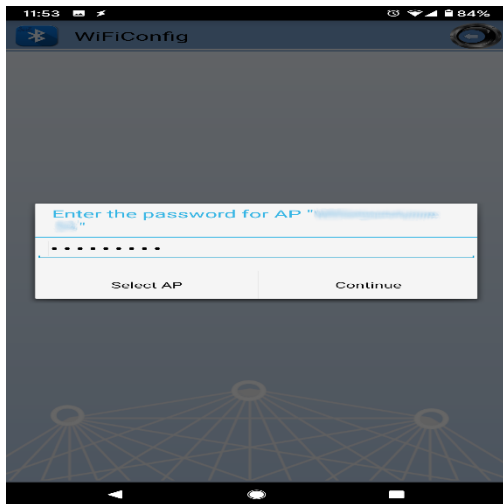


Select the correct Ameba board from the scan results. The app will connect to the Ameba board and ask the board to scan for WiFi networks and send the scan results back to the app using BLE.

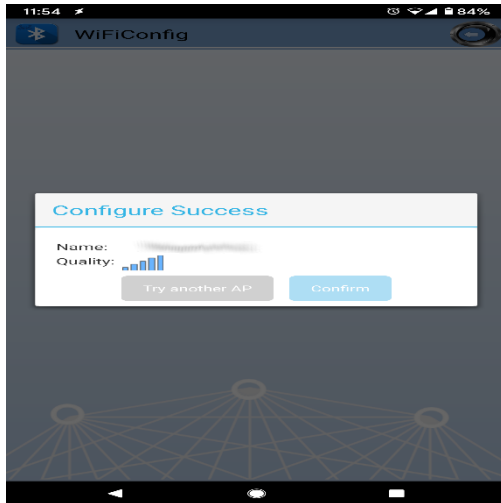




If your phone is currently connected to a WiFi network, the app will ask for the WiFi password to connect the Ameba board to the same WiFi network. Tap “Select AP” to choose another WiFi network, or enter the password and tap continue to connect Ameba to the selected WiFi network.



After the Ameba board connects to the WiFi network, the following message will be shown. Tap “Try another AP” to connect to another WiFi network or tap “Confirm” to keep the current WiFi network and disconnect BLE from the Ameba board.



Code Reference

BLEWifiConfigService is used to create an instance of the WiFi configuration service to run on the Bluetooth device.

BLE.configAdvert()->setAdvType(configService.advData()) is used to set the correct advertisement data necessary for the phone app to find the Ameba Bluetooth device.

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] BLE – BLE UART Client

Materials

- Ameba D [RTL8722 CSM/DM] x 1

Example

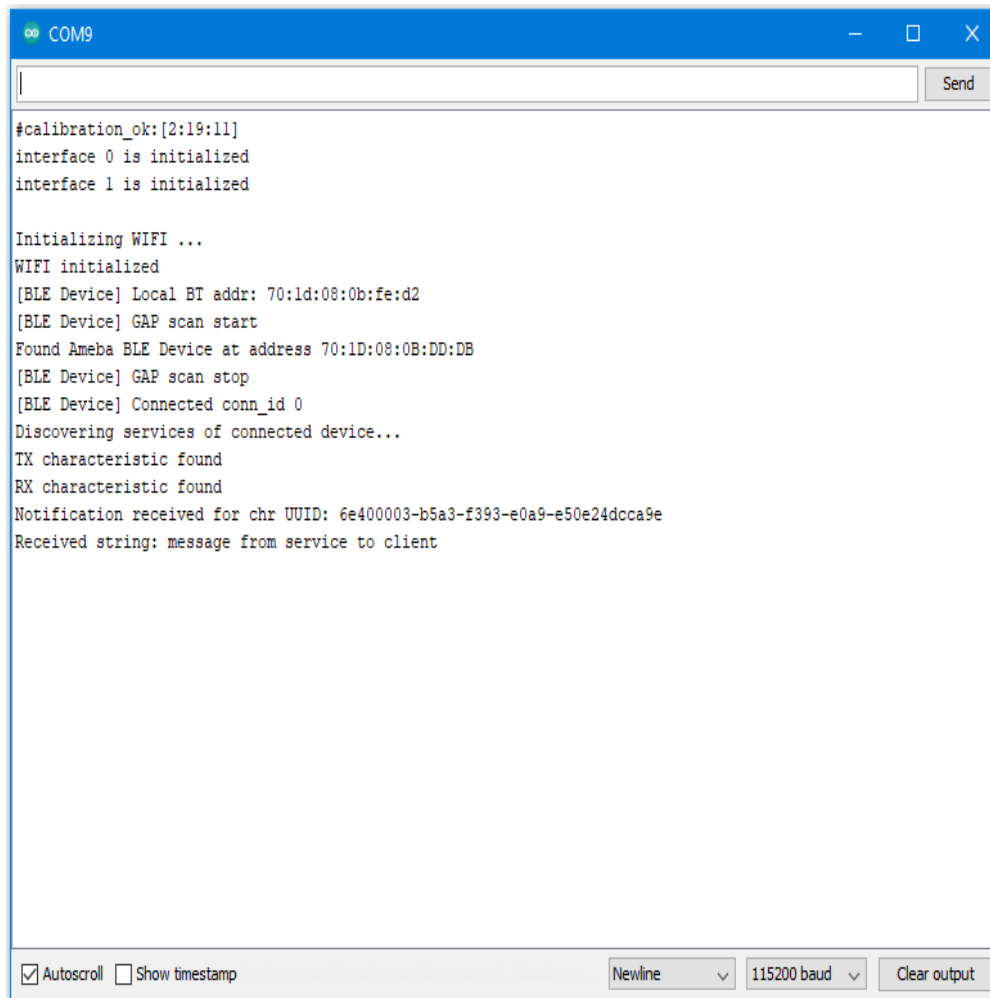
Introduction

In this example, two RTL8722 boards are connected using BLE. One board runs a BLE UART service, while the other connects to the service using a client and both boards are able to communicate with text messages over the UART service.

Procedure

On the first board, upload the BLE UART service example code. Refer to the example guide for detailed instructions.

For the second board, open the example, “Files” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaBLE” -> “BLEUartClient”.



```
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]
interface 0 is initialized
interface 1 is initialized

Initializing WIFI ...
WIFI initialized
[BLE Device] Local BT addr: 70:1d:08:0b:fe:d2
[BLE Device] GAP scan start
Found Ameba BLE Device at address 70:1D:08:0B:DD:DB
[BLE Device] GAP scan stop
[BLE Device] Connected conn_id 0
Discovering services of connected device...
TX characteristic found
RX characteristic found
Notification received for chr UUID: 6e400003-b5a3-f393-e0a9-e50e24dcca9e
Received string: message from service to client
```

Code Reference

The `BLEClient` class is used to discover the services that exist on a connected BLE device. The discovery process will create `BLERemoteService`, `BLERemoteCharacteristic` and `BLERemoteDescriptor` objects corresponding to the services, characteristics and descriptors that exist on the connected device. These objects can then be used to read and write data to the connected device.

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] BLE – BLE UART Service

Materials

- Ameba D [RTL8722 CSM/DM] x 1
- Android / iOS smartphone

Example

Introduction

With BLE, application data is sent and received using the GATT system. GATT uses services, characteristics, and attributes to organise data and control how the data can be read from and written to. The Bluetooth SIG specification for

BLE includes several predefined services for common applications, but users are free to implement custom services and characteristics to best fit their data structure and application needs

In this example, the `BLEService` and `BLECharacteristic` classes are used to implement a custom service for transmitting ASCII characters similar to regular UART. This custom service is the Nordic UART Service, which is supported in several smartphone apps.

Procedure

Ensure that a compatible BLE UART app is installed on your smartphone, it is available at:

– Google Play Store:

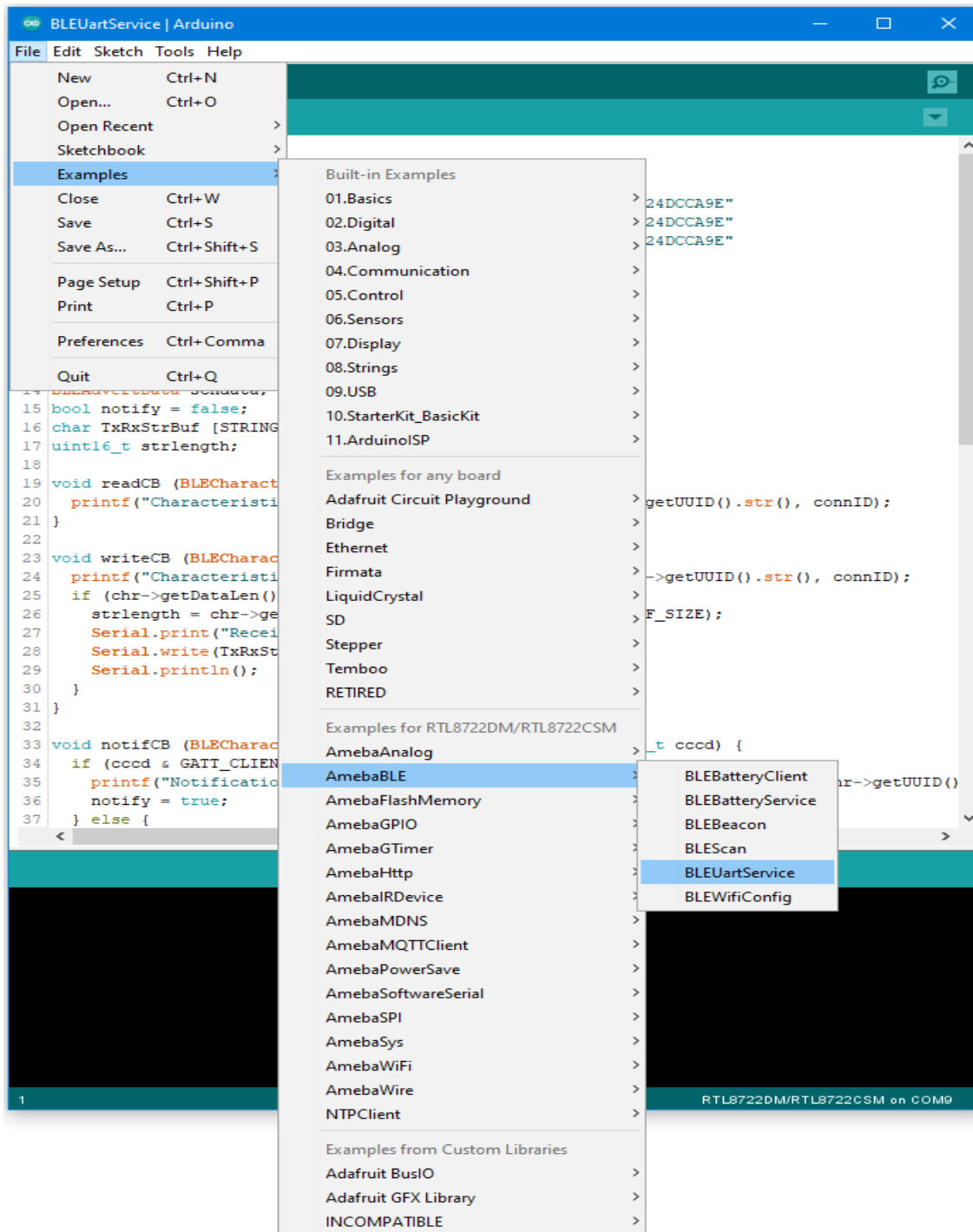
<https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.adafruit.bluefruit.le.connect>

https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=de.kai_morich.serial_bluetooth_terminal

– Apple App Store:

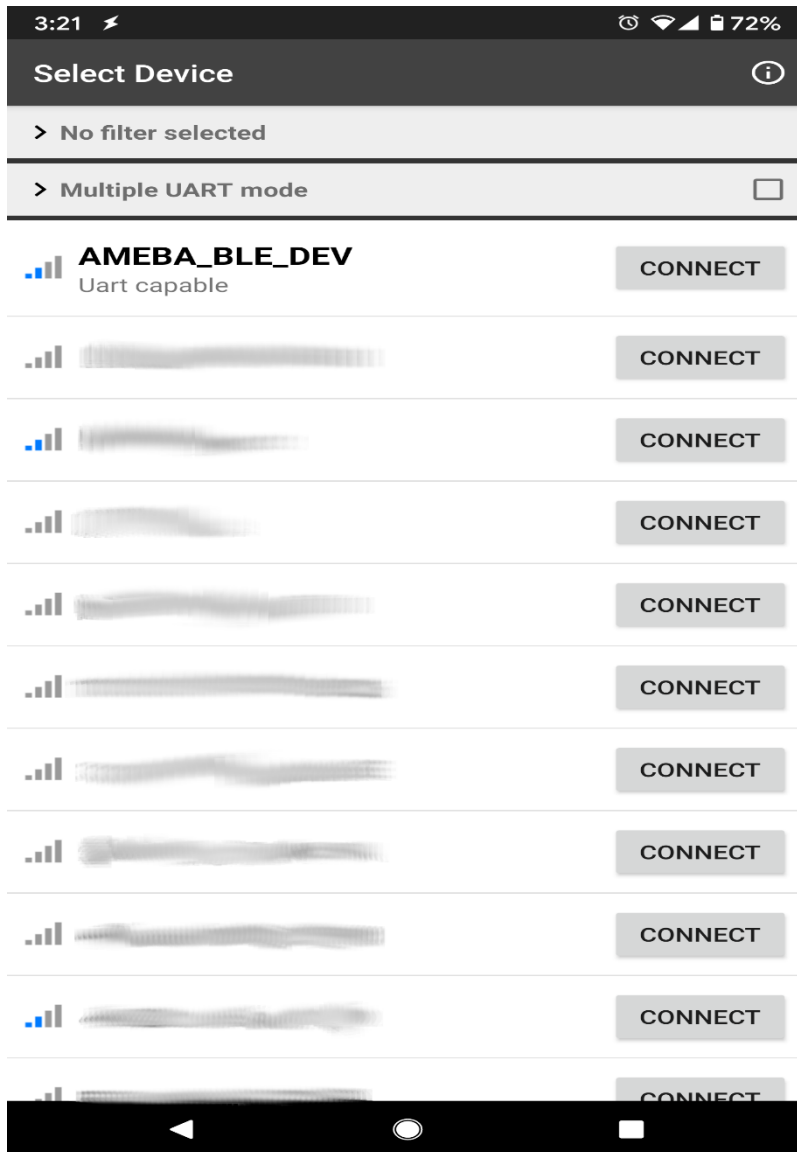
<https://apps.apple.com/us/app/bluefruit-connect/id830125974>

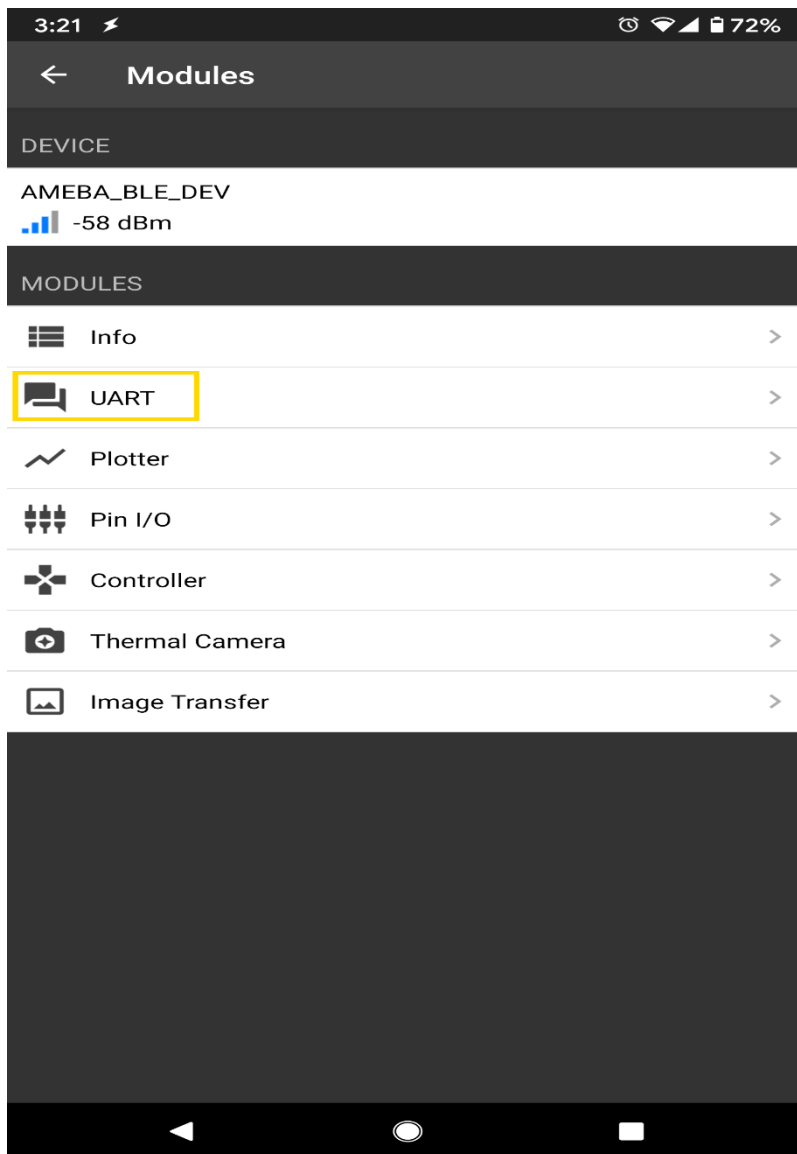
Open the example, “Files” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaBLE” -> “BLEUartService”.



Upload the code and press the reset button on Ameba once the upload is finished.

Open the app on your smartphone, scan and connect to the Ameba board shown as "AMEBA_BLE_DEV" and choose the UART function in the app. Note that the BLE UART service on the Ameba board will only work with the UART and Plotter functions in the Bluefruit Connect app, other functions (Pin I/O, Image Transfer) require other BLE services that are not included in this example.





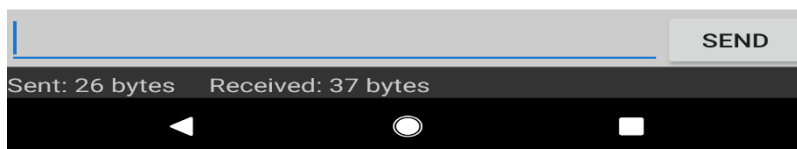
In the UART terminal section of the app, enter a message and click send. You should see the message appear in the Arduino serial monitor.

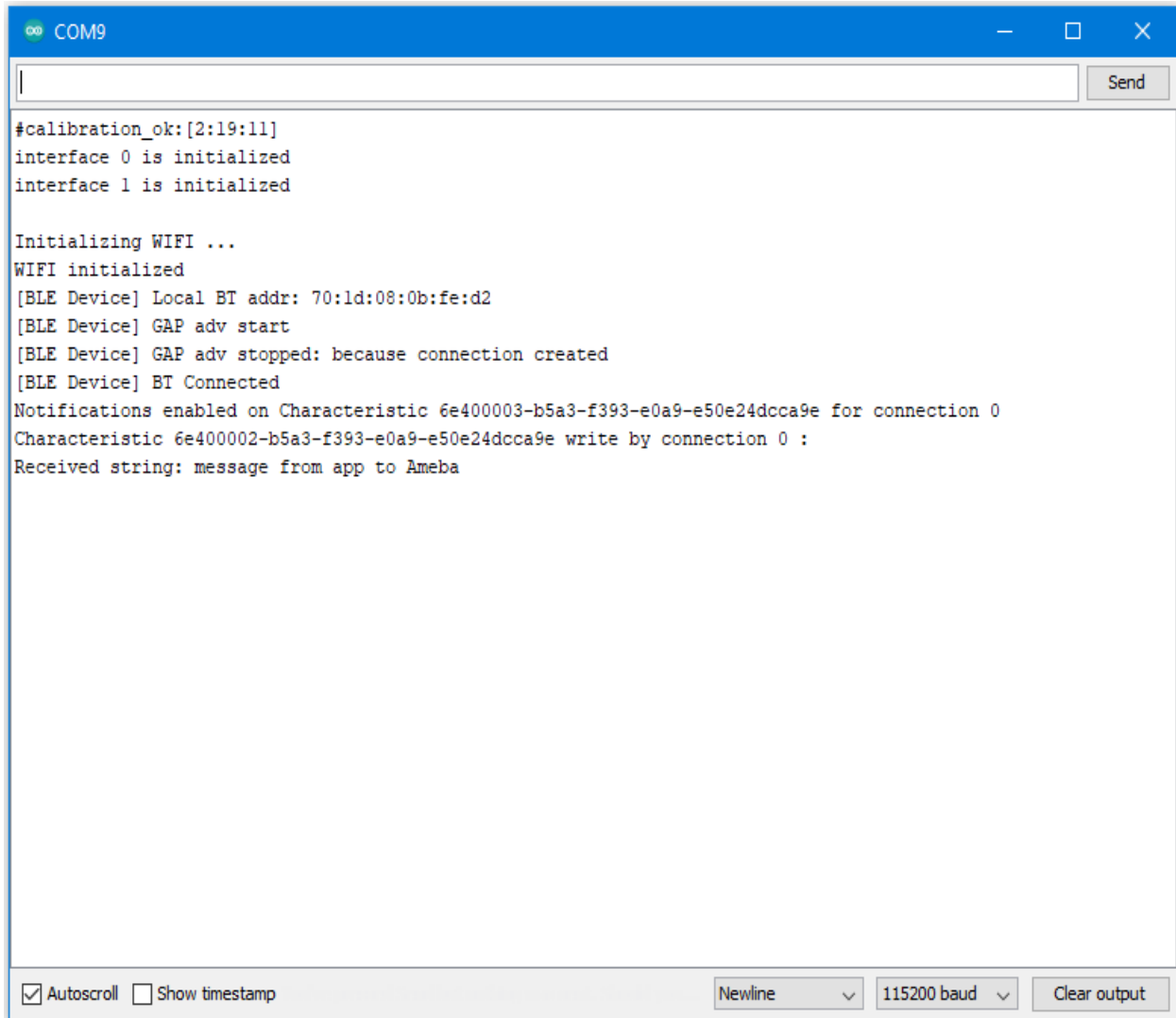
In the Arduino serial monitor, enter a message and click send. The message will appear in the smartphone app.



message from app to Ameba

message from Ameba to smartphone app





```
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]
interface 0 is initialized
interface 1 is initialized

Initializing WIFI ...
WIFI initialized
[BLE Device] Local BT addr: 70:1d:08:0b:fe:d2
[BLE Device] GAP adv start
[BLE Device] GAP adv stopped: because connection created
[BLE Device] BT Connected
Notifications enabled on Characteristic 6e400003-b5a3-f393-e0a9-e50e24dcca9e for connection 0
Characteristic 6e400002-b5a3-f393-e0a9-e50e24dcca9e write by connection 0 :
Received string: message from app to Ameba
```

Code Reference

The `BLECharacteristic` class is used to create two characteristics, one for receive (Rx) and one for transmit (Tx), and added to a service created with the `BLEService` class.

The required read/write/notify properties are set for each characteristic using the `set__Property()` methods, and callback functions are registered using the `set__Callback()` methods. The required buffer size is also set for each characteristic so that it has enough memory to store a complete string.

When data is written to the receive characteristic, the registered callback function is called, which prints out the received data as a string to the serial monitor.

When data is received on the serial port, it is copied into the transmit characteristic buffer, and the `notify()` method is used to inform the connected device of the new data.

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] BLE – DHT over BLE UART

Materials

- Ameba D [RTL8722 CSM/DM] x 1
- DHT11 or DHT22 or DHT21
- Android / iOS smartphone

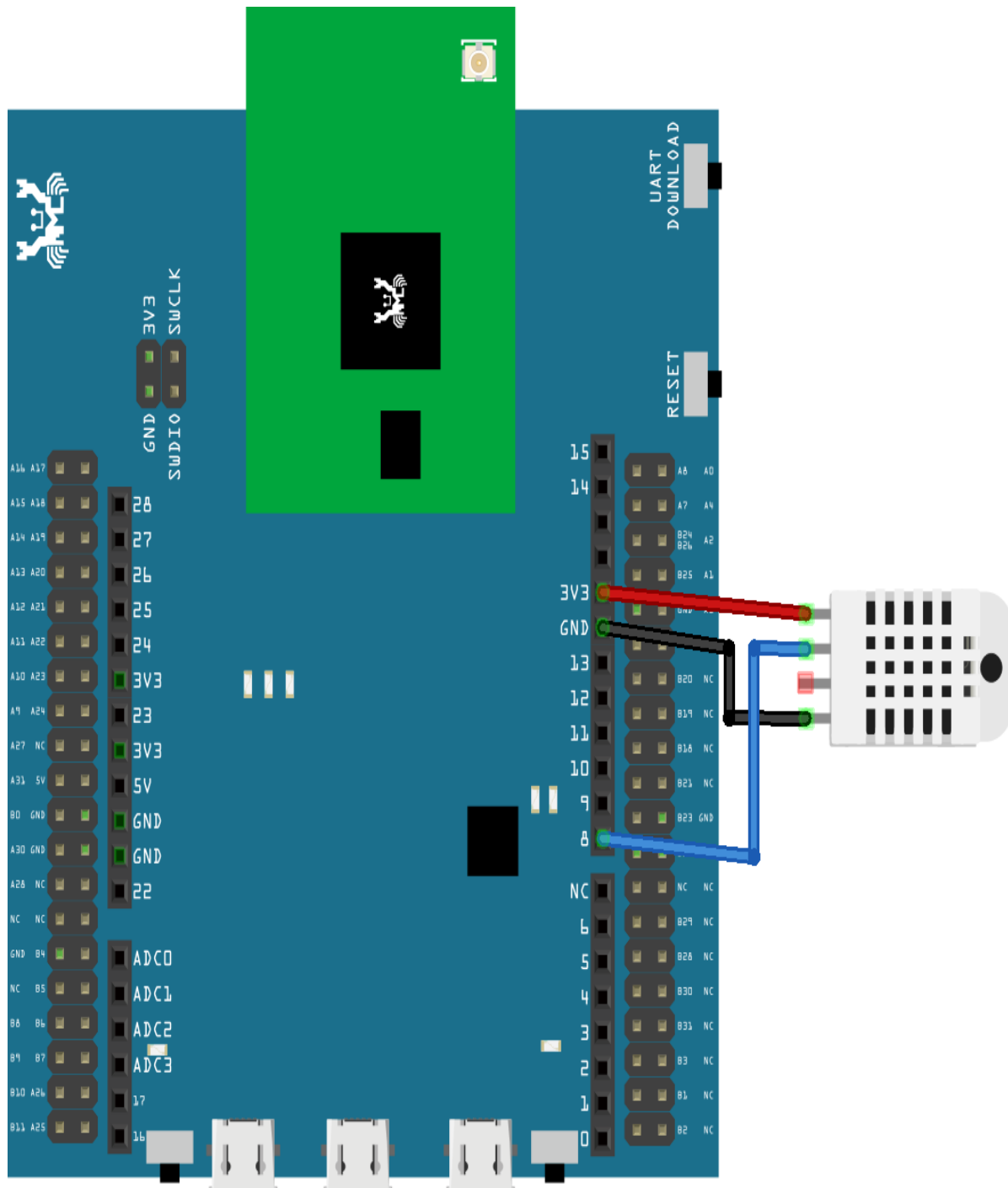
Example

Introduction

In this example, the data obtained from a DHT temperature and humidity sensor are transmitted over a BLE UART service to a smartphone. Refer to the other examples for detailed explanations of using the DHT sensor and the BLE UART service.

Procedure

Connect the DHT sensor to the Ameba board following the diagram.



Ensure that a compatible BLE UART app is installed on your smartphone, it is available at:

– Google Play Store:

<https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.adafruit.bluefruit.le.connecta>>https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=de.kai_morich.serial_bluetooth_terminal

– Apple App Store:

<https://apps.apple.com/us/app/bluefruit-connect/id830125974>

Open the example, “Files” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaBLE” -> “DHT_over_BLEUart”.

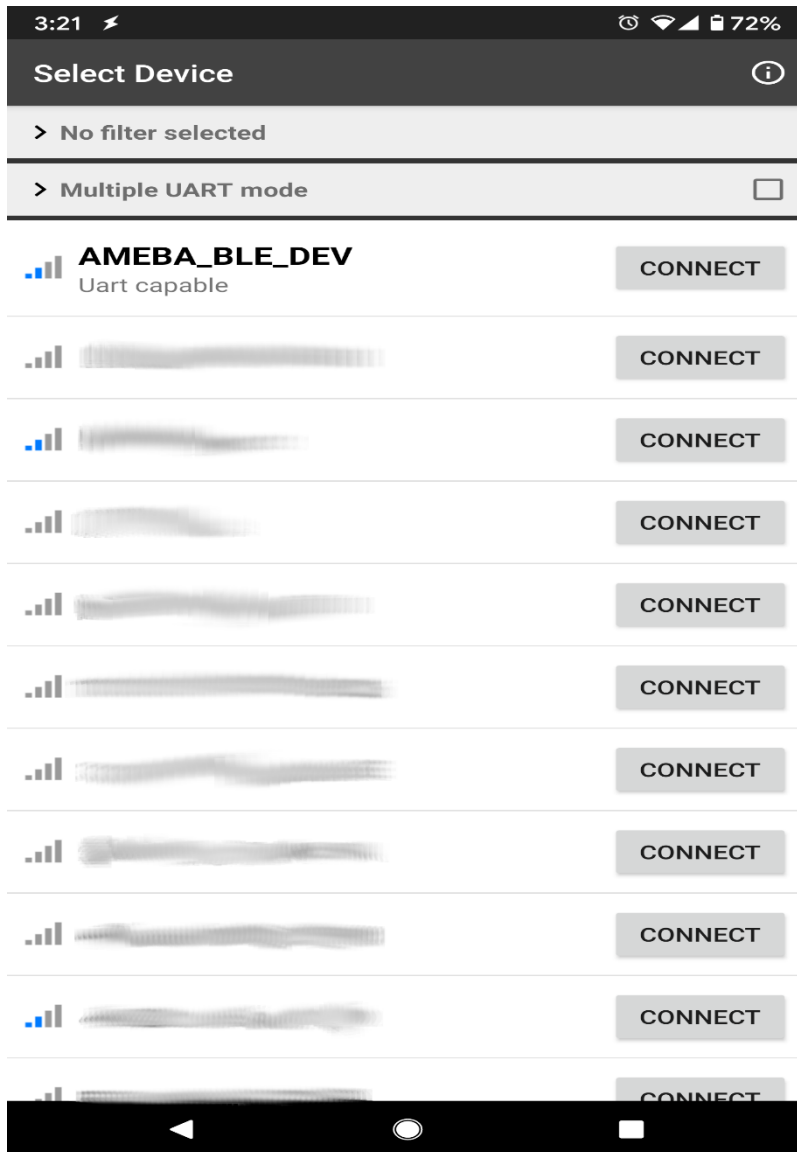
```

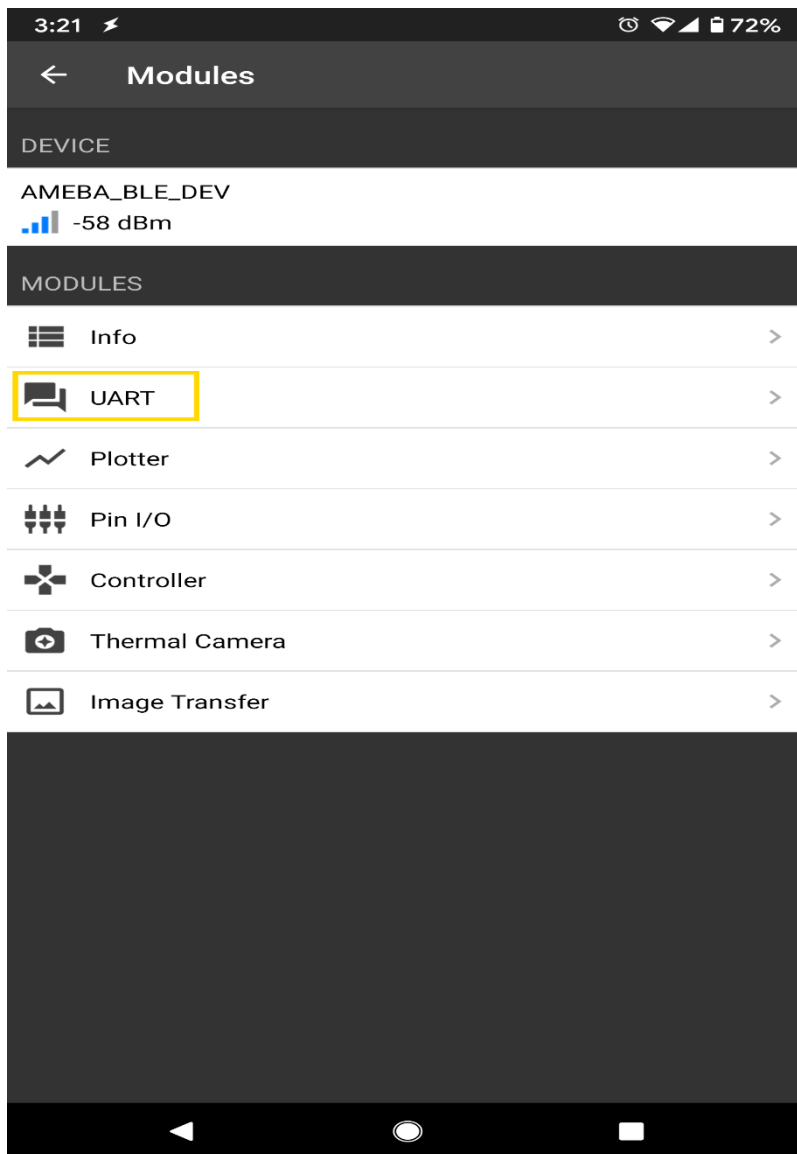
DHT_over_BLEUart
1 |
2 #include "BLEDevice.h"
3 #include "DHT.h"
4
5 #define UART_SERVICE_UUID "6E400001-B5A3-F393-E0A9-E50E24DCCA9E"
6 #define CHARACTERISTIC_UUID_RX "6E400002-B5A3-F393-E0A9-E50E24DCCA9E"
7 #define CHARACTERISTIC_UUID_TX "6E400003-B5A3-F393-E0A9-E50E24DCCA9E"
8
9 #define STRING_BUF_SIZE 100
10
11 // The digital pin we're connected to.
12 #define DHTPIN 8
13
14 // Uncomment whatever type you're using!
15 #define DHTTYPE DHT11 // DHT 11
16 // #define DHTTYPE DHT22 // DHT 22 (AM2302), AM2321
17 // #define DHTTYPE DHT21 // DHT 21 (AM2301)
18
19 DHT dht(DHTPIN, DHTTYPE);
20
21 BLEService uartService(UART_SERVICE_UUID);
22 BLECharacteristic Rx(CHARACTERISTIC_UUID_RX);
23 BLECharacteristic Tx(CHARACTERISTIC_UUID_TX);
24 BLEAdvertData advdata;
25 BLEAdvertData scndata;
26 bool notify = false;
27 char TxRxStrBuf [STRING_BUF_SIZE] = {0};
28 uint16_t strlength;
29
30 void writeCB (BLECharacteristic* chr, uint8_t connID) {
31     printf("Characteristic %s write by connection %d :\n", chr->getUUID().str(), connID);
32     if (chr->getDataLen() > 0) {
33         strlength = chr->getData((uint8_t*)TxRxStrBuf, STRING_BUF_SIZE);
34         Serial.print("Received string: ");
35         Serial.write(TxRxStrBuf, strlength);
36         Serial.println();
37     }
38 }
39
40 void notifCB (BLECharacteristic* chr, uint8_t connID, uint16_t cccd) {
41     if (cccd & GATT_CLIENT_CHAR_CONFIG_NOTIFY) {
42         printf("Notifications enabled on Characteristic %s for connection %d :\n", chr->getUUID().str(), connID);
43     }
44 }

```

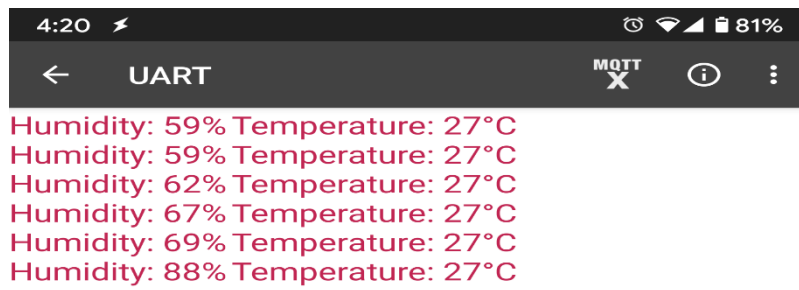
Upload the code and press the reset button on Ameba once the upload is finished.

Open the app on your smartphone, scan and connect to the Ameba board shown as “AMEBA_BLE_DEV” and choose the UART function in the app.





After starting the UART function, notifications should be received every 5 seconds containing the measured temperature and humidity.



[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] BLE – PWM over BLE UART

Materials

- Ameba D [RTL8722 CSM/DM] x 1
- RGB LED
- Android / iOS smartphone

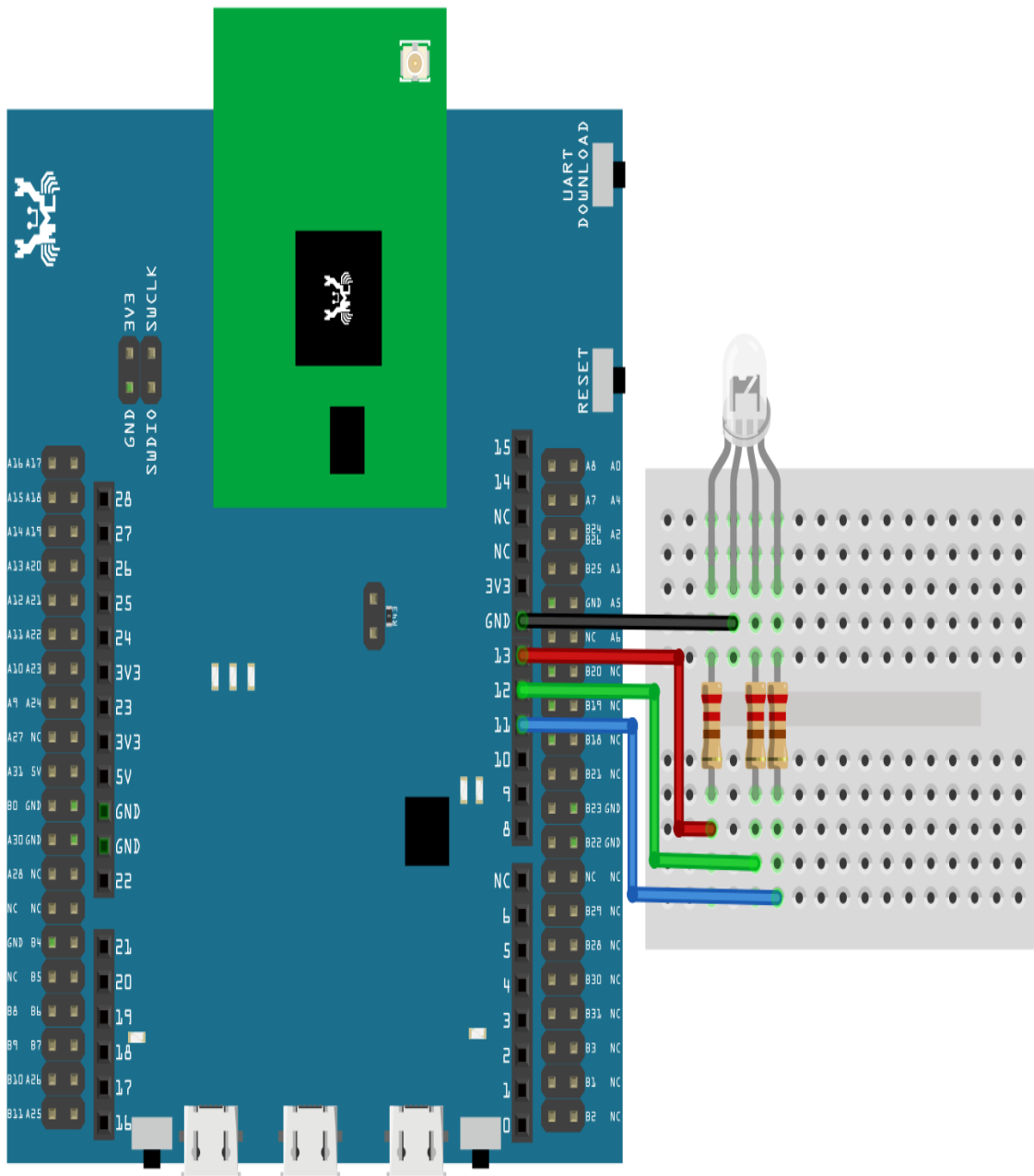
Example

Introduction

In this example, a smartphone app is used to transmit commands over BLE UART to control the PWM outputs and change the color of a RGB LED. Refer to the other example guides for detailed explanations of the BLE UART service.

Procedure

Connect the RGB LED to the RTL8722 board following the diagram, the common LED pin may need to connect to 3.3V or GND depending on the type of LED (common anode / common cathode).

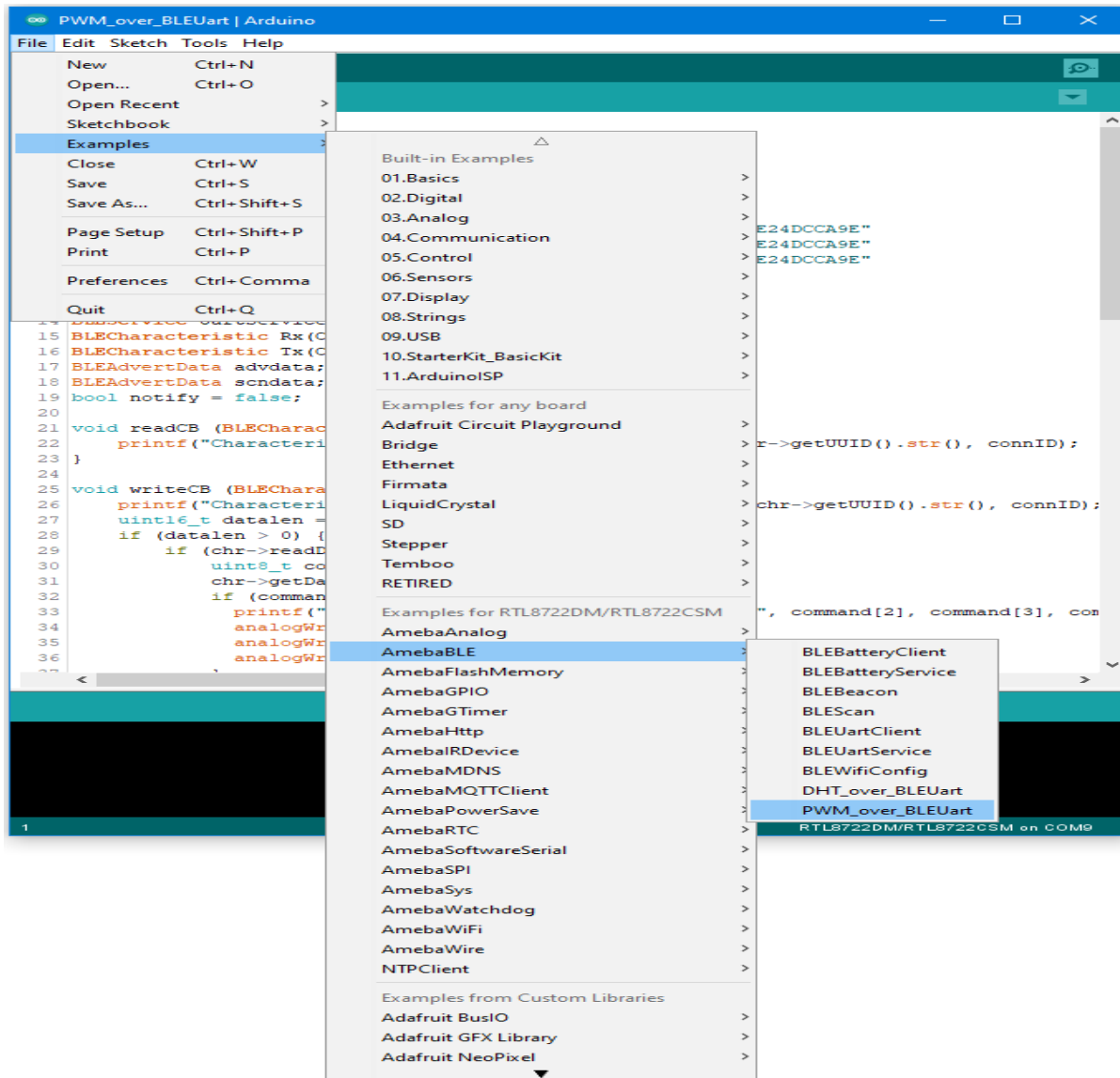


– Apple App Store:

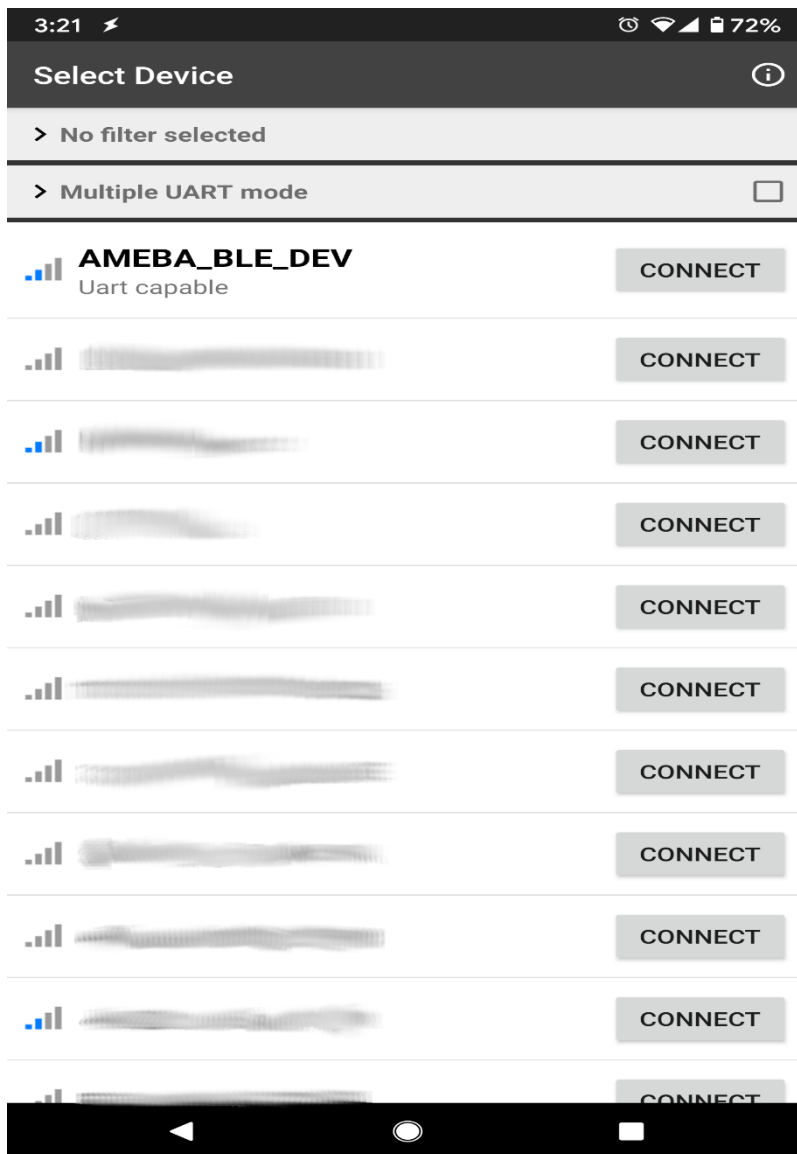
<https://apps.apple.com/us/app/bluefruit-connect/id830125974>

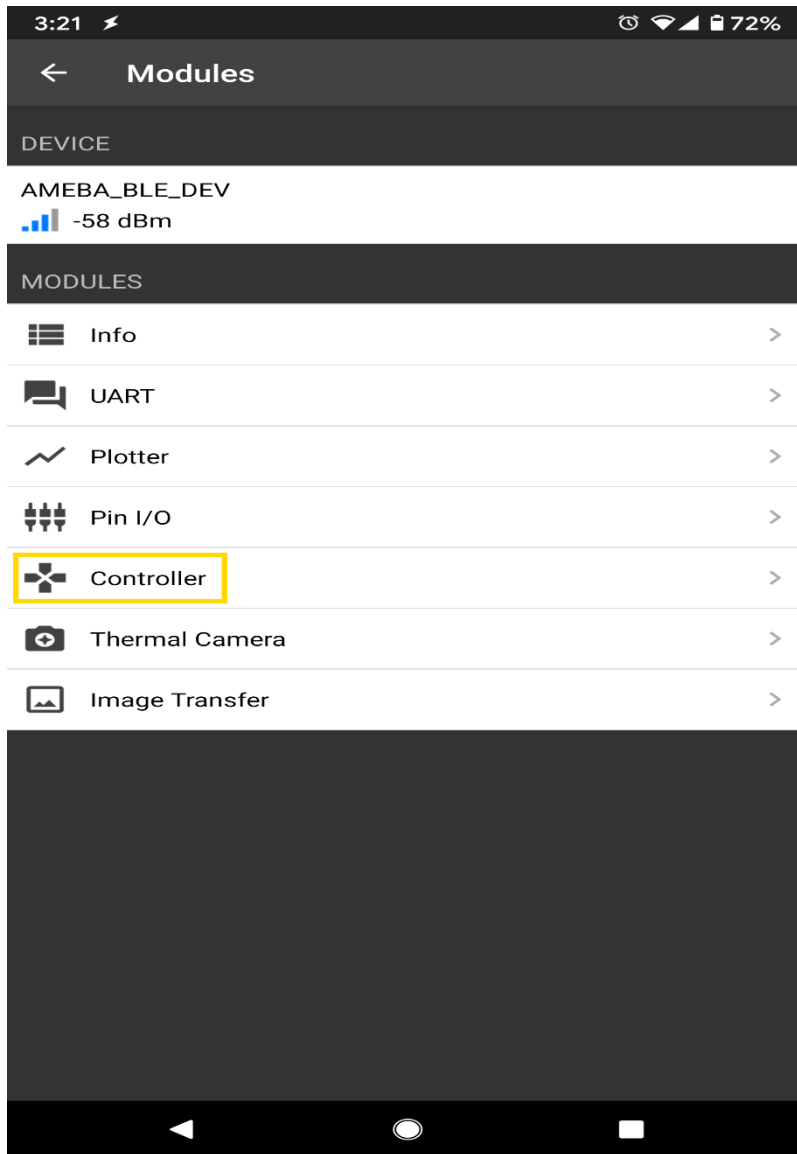
Open the example, “Files” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaBLE” -> “PWM_over_BLEUart”.

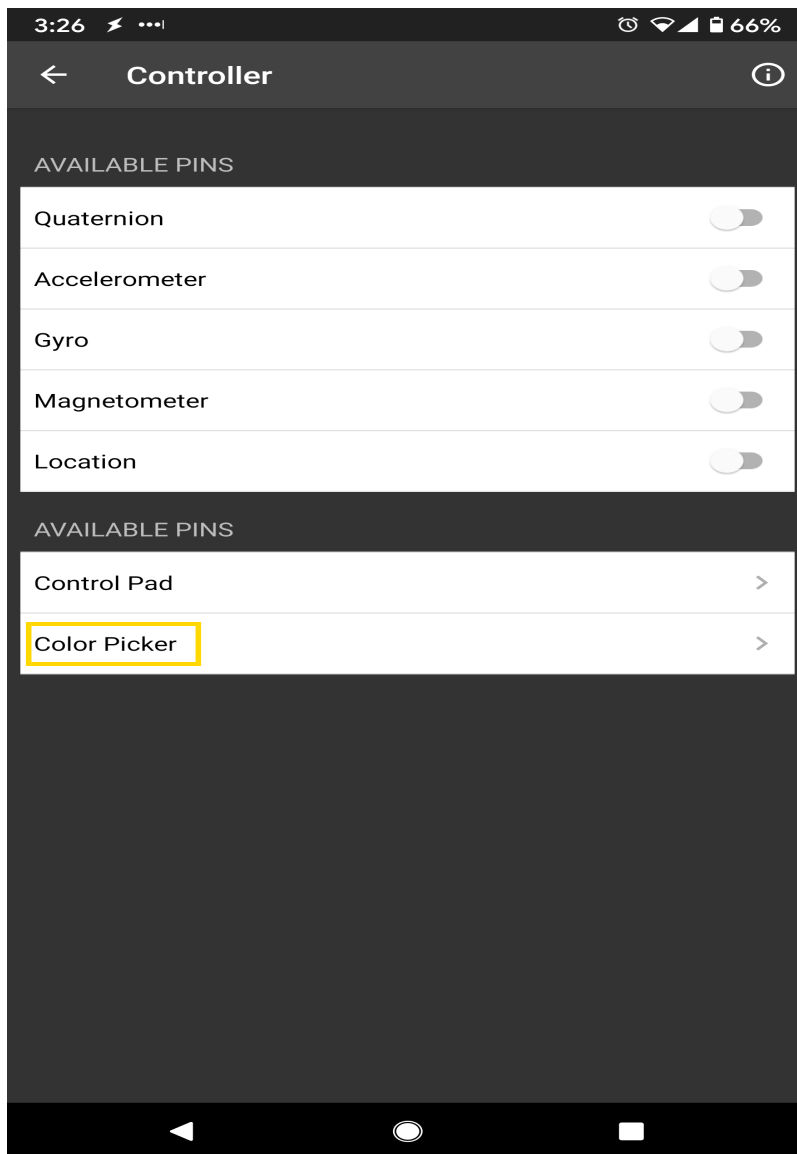
Upload the code and press the reset button on Ameba once the upload is finished.



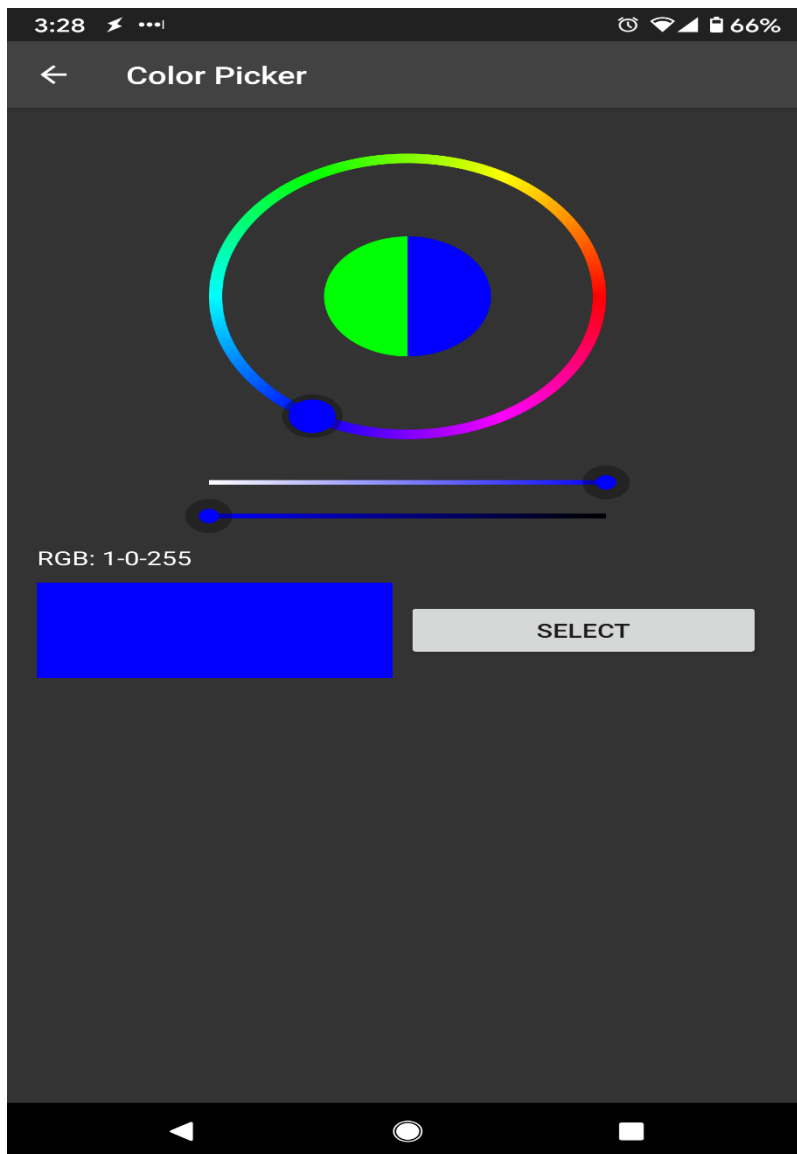
Open the app on your smartphone, scan and connect to the board shown as “AMEBA_BLE_DEV” and choose the controller -> color picker function in the app.







Using the color selection wheel, saturation, and brightness sliders, choose a desired color and click select to send the RGB values to the board. You should see the RGB LED change to the matching color.



Code Reference

The RGB values are sent as three consecutive bytes prefixed by “!C” characters. The “!” exclamation mark is used to indicate that the following data is a command, and the “C” character is used to indicate that the data is RGB values. The received UART message is checked in the callback function for “!C” first, otherwise it is treated as a regular message and printed to the serial terminal.

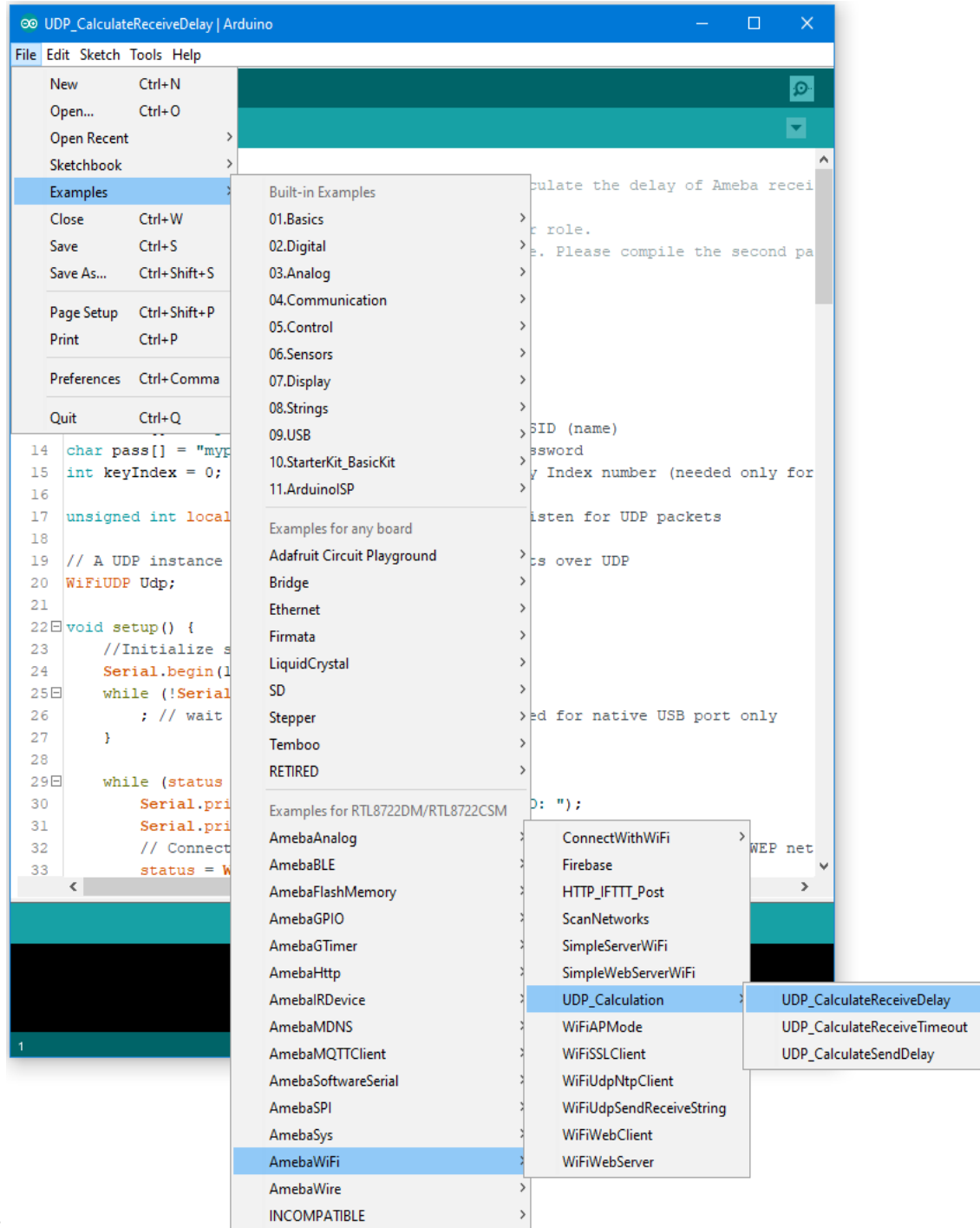
[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Approximate UDP Receive Delay

Materials

- Ameba x 1
- Windows computer connected to same network

Example

This example uses Ameba to receive UDP packets from a computer and calculates the UDP receive delay. **Ameba Preparation** Open the “CalculateUdpReceiveDelay” example in “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaWiFi” -> “UDP_Calculation” ->



“CalculateUdpReceiveDelay”.

the sample code, modify the highlighted section to enter the information required (ssid, password, key index) to connect to


```

1  /*
2   * This sketch provide a simple way to roughly calculate the delay of Ameba recei
3   * The source code is separate into two parts.
4   * The first part is Ameba code which play receiver role.
5   * The second part is PC code wich play sender role. Please compile the second pa
6   */
7
8  #include <WiFi.h>
9  #include <WiFiUdp.h>
10 #include <stdio.h>
11
12 int status = WL_IDLE_STATUS;
13 char ssid[] = "mynetwork"; // your network SSID (name)
14 char pass[] = "mypassword"; // your network password
15 int keyIndex = 0; // your network key Index number (needed only for
16
17 unsigned int localPort = 5001; // local port to listen for UDP packets
18
19 // A UDP instance to let us send and receive packets over UDP
20 WiFiUDP Udp;
21
22 void setup() {
23     //Initialize serial and wait for port to open:
24     Serial.begin(115200);
25     while (!Serial) {
26         ; // wait for serial port to connect. Needed for native USB port only
27     }
28
29     while (status != WL_CONNECTED) {
30         Serial.print("Attempting to connect to SSID: ");
31         Serial.println(ssid);
32         // Connect to WPA/WPA2 network. Change this line if using open or WEP net
33         status = WiFi.begin(ssid, pass);

```

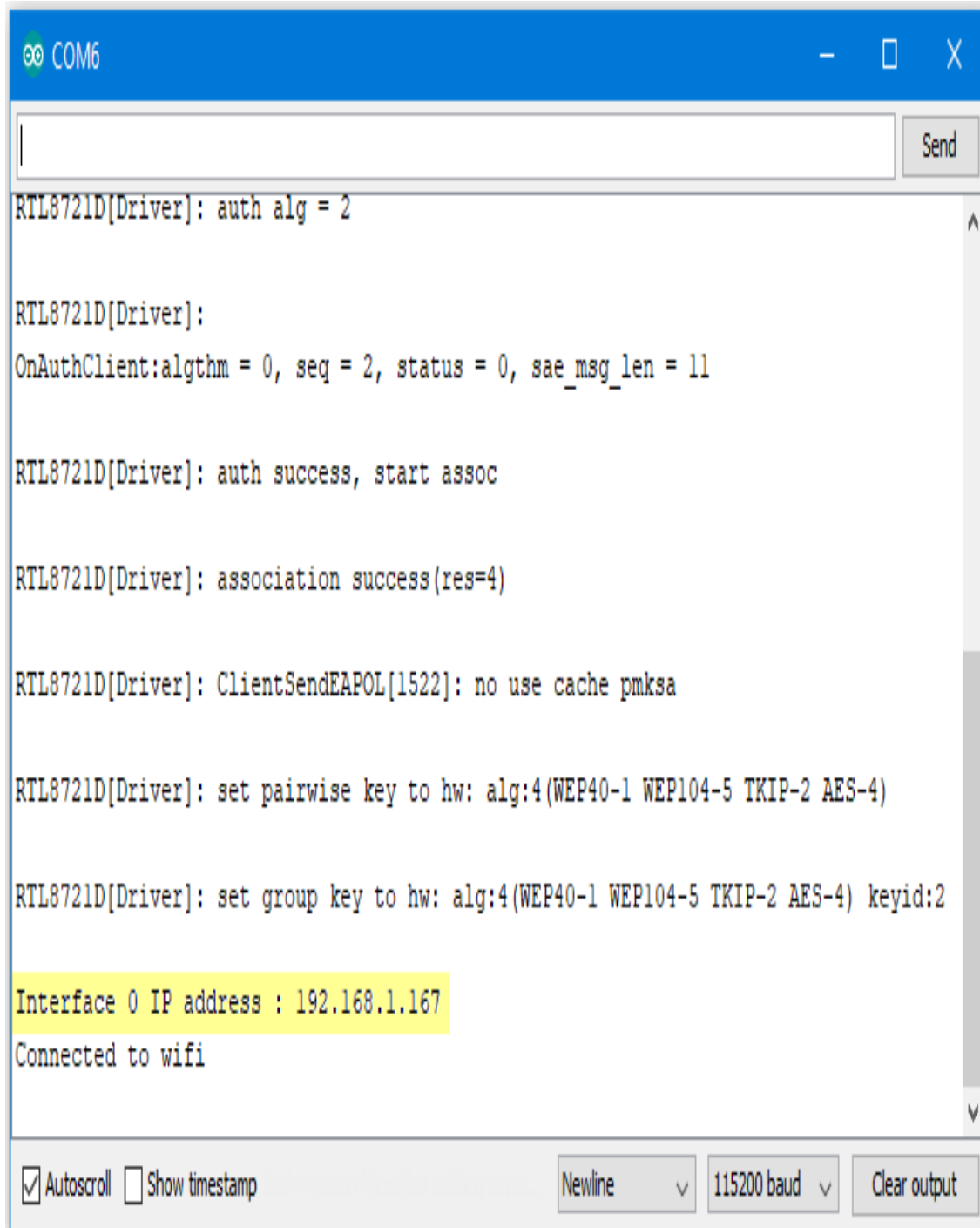
1

RTL8722DM/RTL8722CSM on COM6

your WiFi network.

the code and press the reset button on Ameba once the upload is finished. Open the serial monitor in Arduino IDE and take note of the IP address assigned to

Upload



```
COM6

RTL8721D[Driver]: auth alg = 2

RTL8721D[Driver]:
OnAuthClient:alghm = 0, seq = 2, status = 0, sae_msg_len = 11

RTL8721D[Driver]: auth success, start assoc

RTL8721D[Driver]: association success(res=4)

RTL8721D[Driver]: ClientSendEAPOL[1522]: no use cache pmksa

RTL8721D[Driver]: set pairwise key to hw: alg:4(WEP40-1 WEP104-5 TKIP-2 AES-4)

RTL8721D[Driver]: set group key to hw: alg:4(WEP40-1 WEP104-5 TKIP-2 AES-4) keyid:2

Interface 0 IP address : 192.168.1.167
Connected to wifi

☒ Autoscroll ☐ Show timestamp
Newline ▼ 115200 baud ▼ Clear output
```

Ameba.

Computer

Preparation On the computer, Cygwin will be required to compile the code to send the UDP packets. Cygwin can be downloaded from <https://www.cygwin.com/> Follow the instructions there to install it. Next, from the “CalculateUdpReceiveDelay” Arduino example, copy the code from the bottom between “#if 0” and “#endif”, into a new text file, change the hostname to the IP address assigned to Ameba, and rename the file to

```

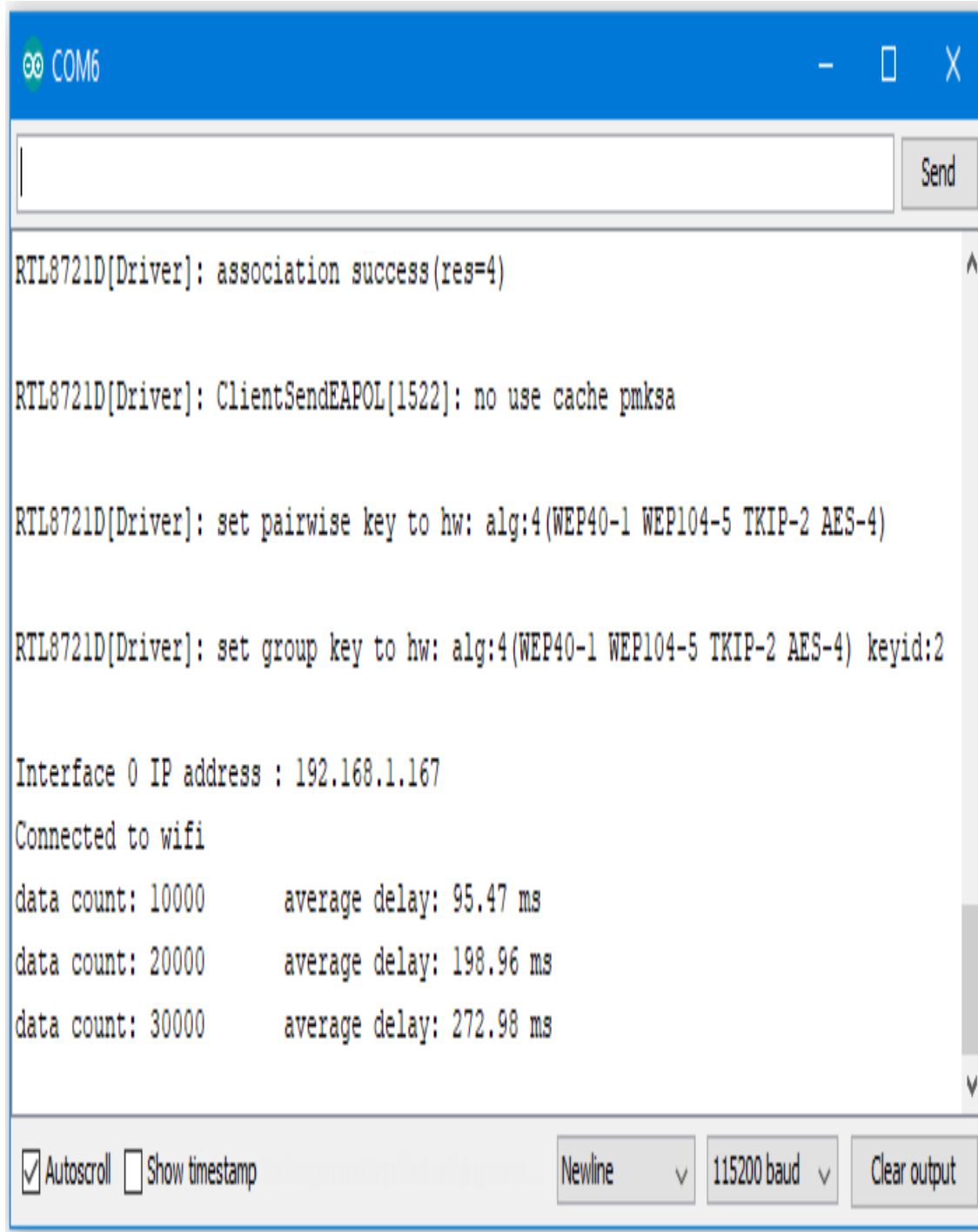
1  #include <stdio.h>
2  #include <stdlib.h>
3  #include <string.h>
4  #include <sys/socket.h>
5  #include <netinet/in.h>
6  #include <arpa/inet.h>
7  #include <sys/time.h>
8  #include <unistd.h>
9
10 #define BUFSIZE 1024
11
12 char *hostname = "172.25.24.243";
13 int portno = 5001;
14
15 long base_current_time = 0;
16 long get_current_time_with_ms (void)
17 {
18     struct timeval tv;
19
20     gettimeofday(&tv, NULL);
21
22     long millisecondsSinceEpoch =
23         (long) (tv.tv_sec) * 1000 +
24         (long) (tv.tv_usec) / 1000;
25
26     if (base_current_time == 0) {
27         base_current_time = millisecondsSinceEpoch;
28         return 0;
29     } else {
30         return millisecondsSinceEpoch - base_current_time;
31     }
32 }

```

length: 1,666 lines: 67 Ln: 12 Col: 1 Sel: 0|0 Windows (CR LF) UTF-8 INS

“UdpReceiveDelay.cpp”.

open a Cygwin terminal, change the working directory to the location of “UdpReceiveDelay.cpp”, and use the command “g++ UdpReceiveDelay.cpp -o UdpDelay” to compile the code. A file named “UdpDelay.exe” will be created in the same directory. **Running the Example** Reset the Ameba, wait for the WiFi to connect, and check that the IP address remains the same. On the computer, run the UdpDelay.exe file, and the computer will begin to send packets to Ameba. Once 10000 packets have been received, Ameba will calculate the average delay and print out the result to the serial monitor. It may take up to a few minutes for 10000 packets to be



sent.

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Approximate UDP Receive Timeout

Materials

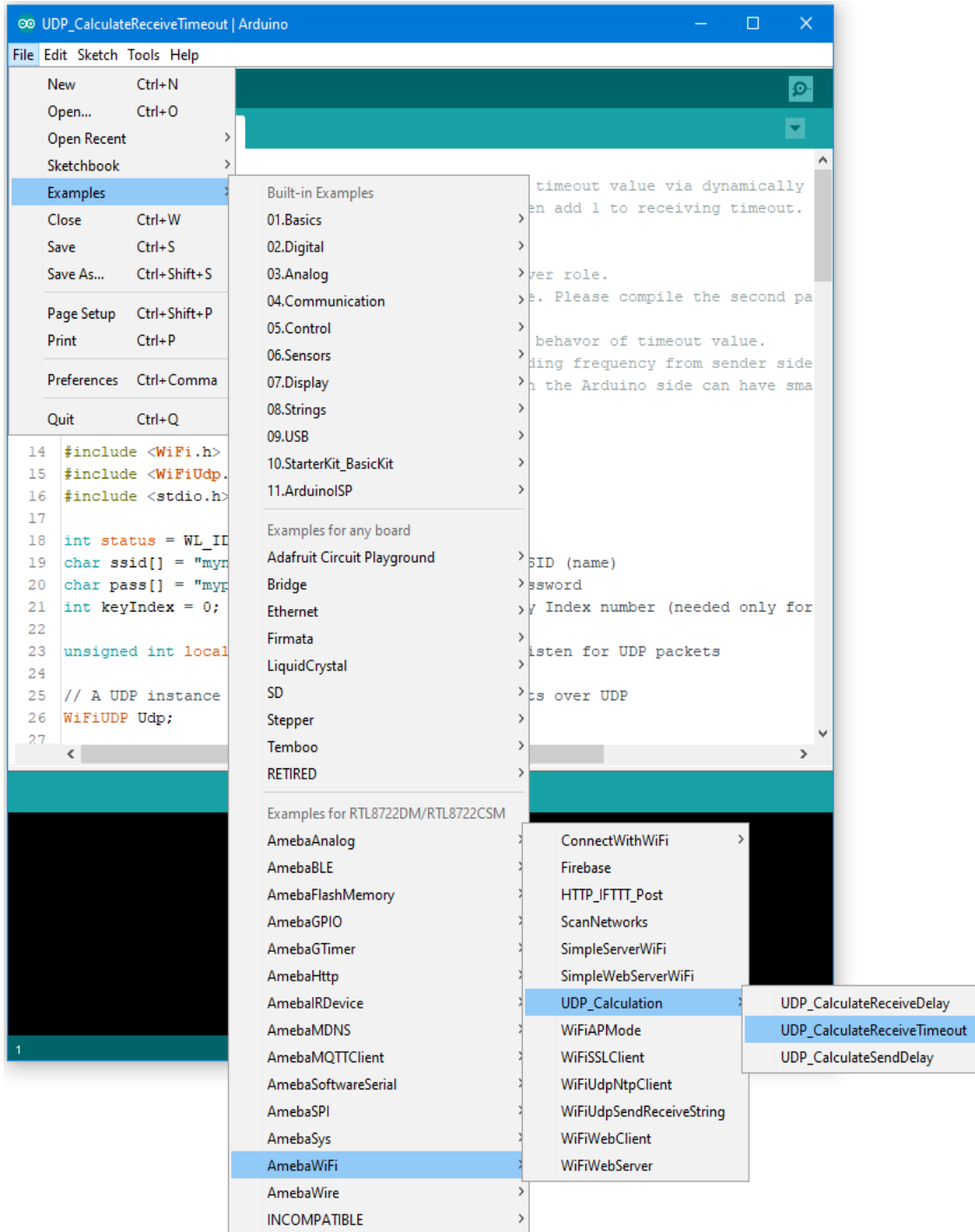
- Ameba x 1
- Windows computer connected to same network

Example

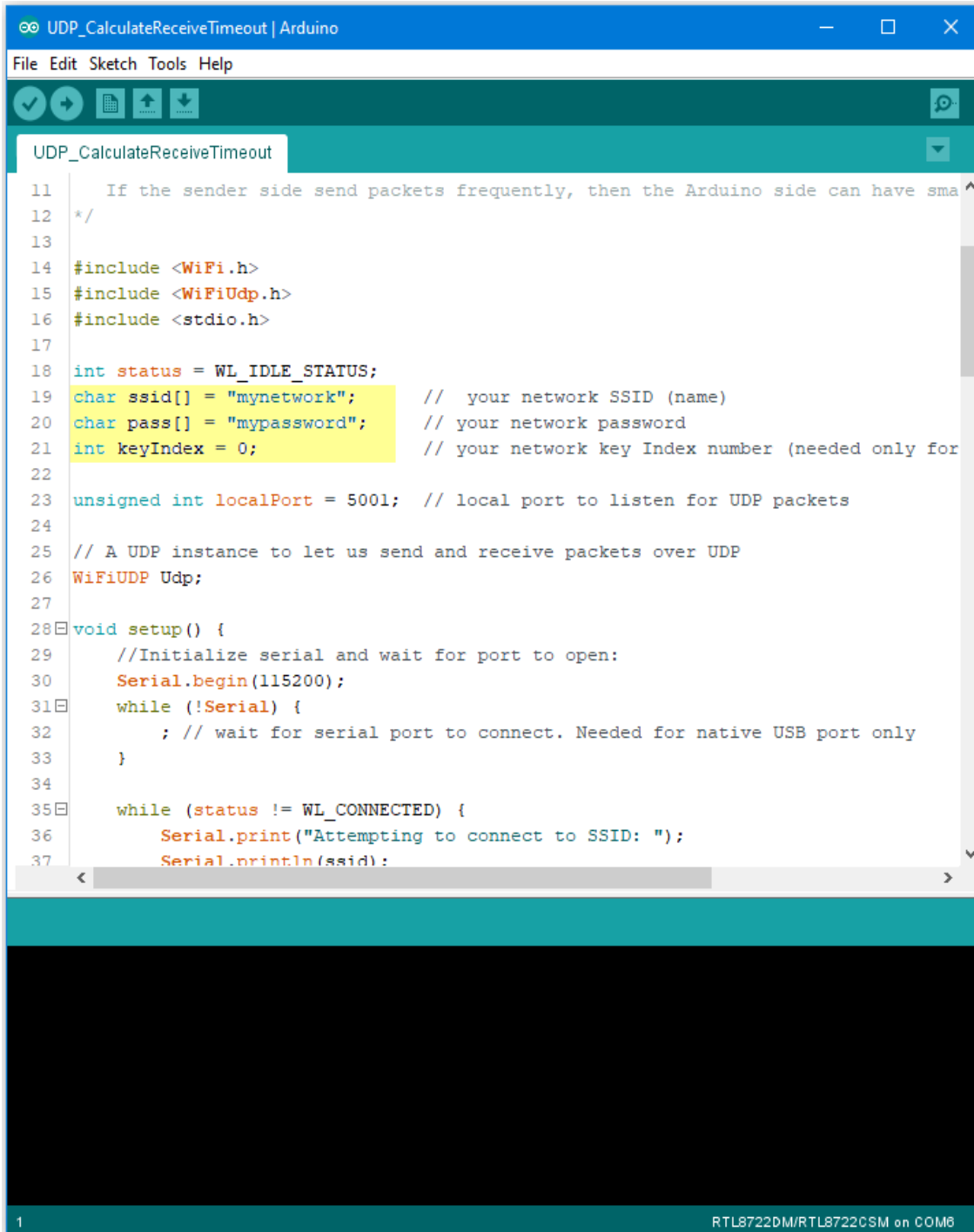
This example uses Ameba to receive UDP packets from a computer and calculates the allowed UDP receive timeout setting.

Ameba Preparation

Open the “CalculateUdpReceiveTimeout” example in “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaWiFi” -> ” UDP_Calculation ” -> “CalculateUdpReceiveTimeout”.



In the sample code, modify the highlighted section to enter the information required (ssid, password, key index) to connect to your WiFi network.



```

11  If the sender side send packets frequently, then the Arduino side can have sma
12  */
13
14  #include <WiFi.h>
15  #include <WiFiUdp.h>
16  #include <stdio.h>
17
18  int status = WL_IDLE_STATUS;
19  char ssid[] = "mynetwork"; // your network SSID (name)
20  char pass[] = "mypassword"; // your network password
21  int keyIndex = 0; // your network key Index number (needed only for
22
23  unsigned int localPort = 5001; // local port to listen for UDP packets
24
25  // A UDP instance to let us send and receive packets over UDP
26  WiFiUDP Udp;
27
28  void setup() {
29      //Initialize serial and wait for port to open:
30      Serial.begin(115200);
31      while (!Serial) {
32          ; // wait for serial port to connect. Needed for native USB port only
33      }
34
35      while (status != WL_CONNECTED) {
36          Serial.print("Attempting to connect to SSID: ");
37          Serial.println(ssid);

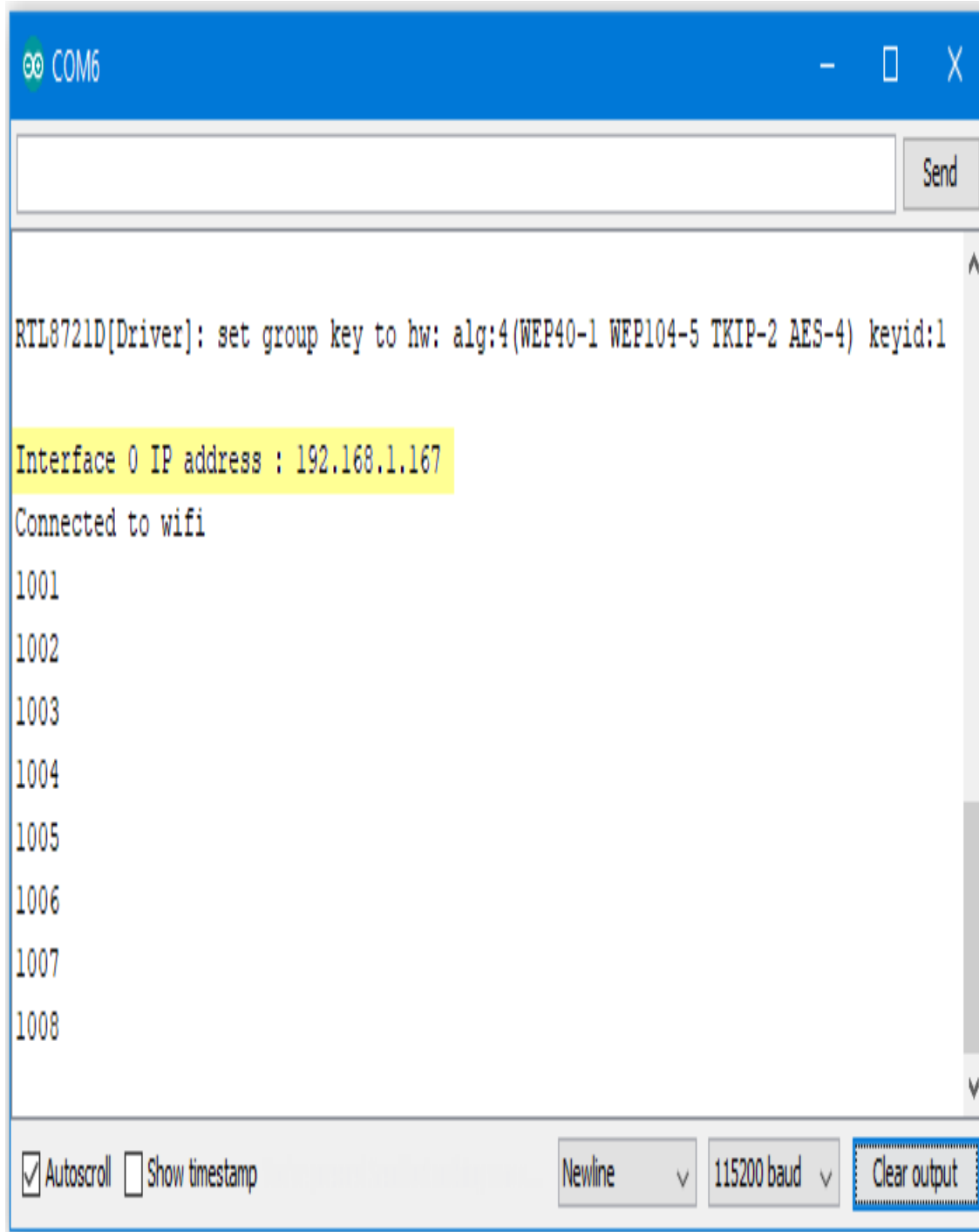
```

1

RTL8722DM/RTL8722CSM on COM8

Upload the code and press the reset button on Ameba once the upload is finished.

Open the serial monitor in Arduino IDE and take note of the IP address assigned to Ameba.



Computer Preparation

On the computer, Cygwin will be required to compile the code to send the UDP packets. Cygwin can be downloaded from <https://www.cygwin.com/>

Follow the instructions there to install it. Next, from the “CalculateUdpReceiveTimeout” Arduino example, copy the code from the bottom between “#if 0” and “#endif”, into a new text file, change the hostname to the IP address assigned to Ameba, and rename the file to “UdpReceiveTimeout.cpp”.


```

1  #include <stdio.h>
2  #include <stdlib.h>
3  #include <string.h>
4  #include <sys/socket.h>
5  #include <netinet/in.h>
6  #include <arpa/inet.h>
7  #include <unistd.h>
8
9  #define BUFSIZE 16
10
11 char *hostname = "192.168.1.213";
12 int portno = 5001;
13
14 int main(int argc, char **argv) {
15     int sockfd, n;
16     struct sockaddr_in serveraddr;
17     int serverlen = sizeof(serveraddr);
18     char buf[BUFSIZE];
19     int counter = 0;
20
21     /* socket: create the socket */
22     sockfd = socket(AF_INET, SOCK_DGRAM, 0);
23     if (sockfd < 0) {
24         printf("ERROR opening socket\r\n");
25         return -1;
26     }
27
28     /* build the server's Internet address */
29     memset(&serveraddr, 0, sizeof(serveraddr));
30     serveraddr.sin_family = AF_INET;
31     serveraddr.sin_addr.s_addr = inet_addr(hostname);
32     serveraddr.sin_port = htons(portno);

```

length: 1,246 lines: 49 Ln: 11 Col: 5 Sel: 0|0 Windows (CR LF) UTF-8 INS

Next, open a Cygwin terminal, change the working directory to the location of “UdpReceiveTimeout.cpp”, and use the command “g++ UdpReceiveTimeout.cpp -o UdpTimeout” to compile the code. A file named “UdpTimeout.exe” will be created in the same directory.

Running the Example

Reset the Ameba, wait for the WiFi to connect, and check that the IP address remains the same. On the computer, run the UdpTimeout.exe file, and the computer will begin to send packets continuously to Ameba.

The timeout value is set to 1000ms initially. For each packet received successfully, Ameba decreases the timeout value.

The next packet must be received within the timeout period, otherwise Ameba registers a failed packet and increases the timeout value. Open the serial monitor and observe the timeout value converge to a minimum value.

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Approximate UDP Sending Delay

Materials

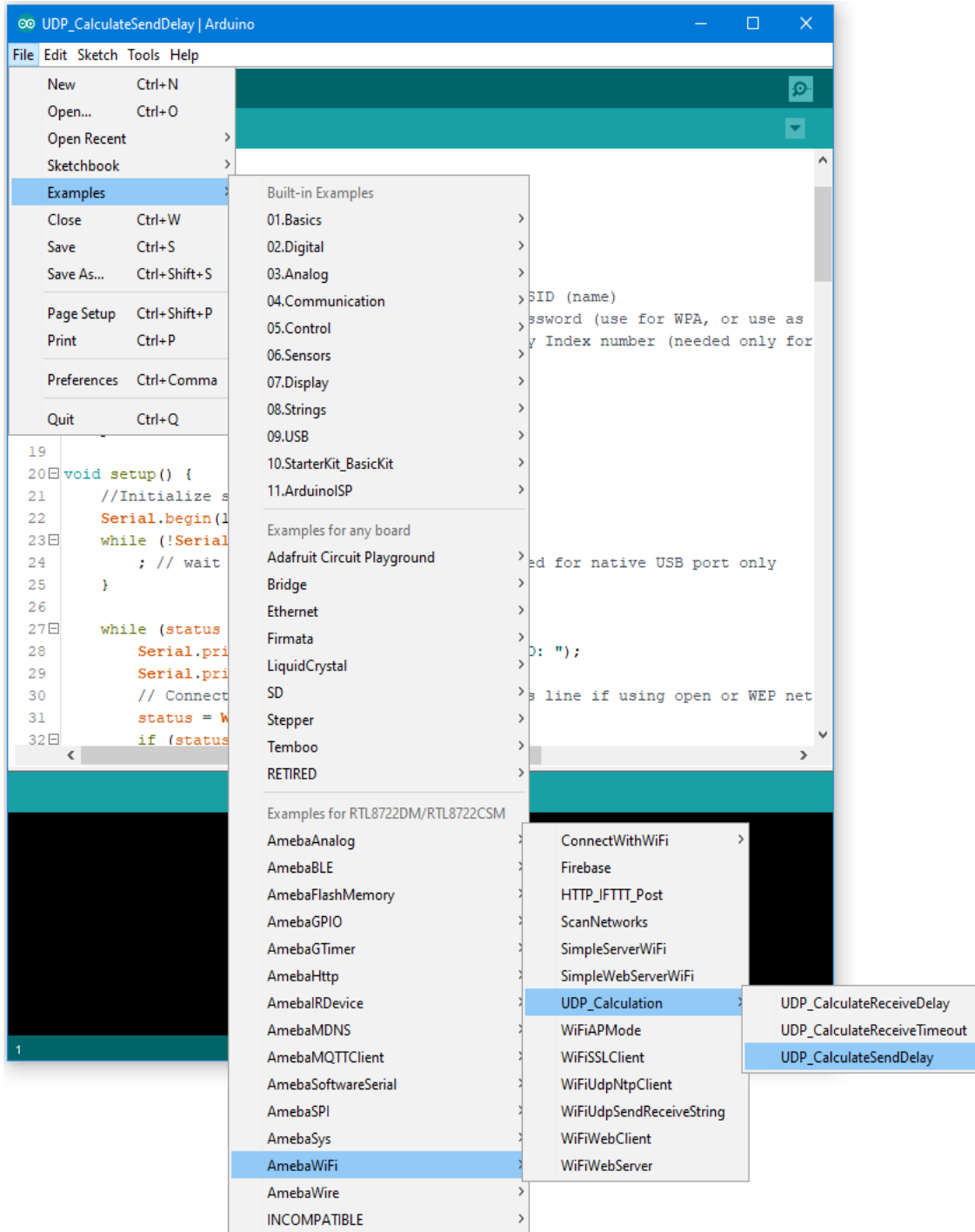
- Ameba x 1
- Windows computer connected to same network

Example

This example uses Ameba to send UDP packets to a computer and calculates the UDP sending delay.

Ameba Preparation

Open the “CalculateUdpSendDelay” example in “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaWiFi” -> ” UDP_Calculation ” -> “CalculateUdpSendDelay”.



In the sample code, modify the highlighted section to enter the information required (ssid, password, key index) to connect to your WiFi network.

The server variable also needs to be changed to match the IP address of your computer. You can find the IP address using the “ipconfig” command in a terminal window.

```

UDP_CalculateSendDelay | Arduino
File Edit Sketch Tools Help

UDP_CalculateSendDelay

6  */
7
8  #include <WiFi.h>
9  #include <WiFiUdp.h>
10
11 int status = WL_IDLE_STATUS;
12 char ssid[] = "mynetwork"; // your network SSID (name)
13 char pass[] = "mypassword"; // your network password (use for WPA, or use as
14 int keyIndex = 0; // your network key Index number (needed only for
15
16 WiFiUDP Udp;
17 char server[] = "192.168.1.65";
18 int port = 5001;
19
20 void setup() {
21     //Initialize serial and wait for port to open:
22     Serial.begin(115200);
23     while (!Serial) {
24         ; // wait for serial port to connect. Needed for native USB port only
25     }
26
27     while (status != WL_CONNECTED) {
28         Serial.print("Attempting to connect to SSID: ");
29         Serial.println(ssid);
30         // Connect to WPA/WPA2 network. Change this line if using open or WEP net
31         status = WiFi.begin(ssid, pass);
32         if (status == WL_CONNECTED) {

```

1 RTL8722DM/RTL8722CSM on COM8

Computer Preparation

On the computer, Cygwin will be required to compile the code to send the UDP packets. Cygwin can be downloaded from <https://www.cygwin.com/>

Follow the instructions there to install it. Next, from the “CalculateUdpSendDelay” Arduino example, copy the code from the bottom between “#if 0” and “#endif”, into a new text file and rename the file to “UdpSendDelay.cpp”.

```

1  #include <stdio.h>
2  #include <stdlib.h>
3  #include <string.h>
4  #include <sys/socket.h>
5  #include <arpa/inet.h>
6  #include <sys/time.h>
7
8  #define BUFSIZE 1024
9  #define PORT 5001
10
11 long get_current_time_with_ms (void)
12 {
13     struct timeval tv;
14
15     gettimeofday(&tv, NULL);
16
17     long millisecondsSinceEpoch =
18         (long)(tv.tv_sec) * 1000 +
19         (long)(tv.tv_usec) / 1000;
20
21     return millisecondsSinceEpoch;
22 }
23
24 long early_diff = 0;
25
26 long ameba_epoch = 0;
27 long sys_epoch = 0;
28
29 long datacount = 0;
30 long total_shift = 0;
31
32 void process_data(char *buf) {

```

length: 2,706 lines: 110 Ln: 110 Col: 2 Sel: 0|0 Windows (CR LF) UTF-8 INS

Next, open a Cygwin terminal, change the working directory to the location of “UdpSendDelay.cpp”, and use the command “g++ UdpSendDelay.cpp -o UdpDelay” to compile the code. A file named “UdpDelay.exe” will be created in the same directory.

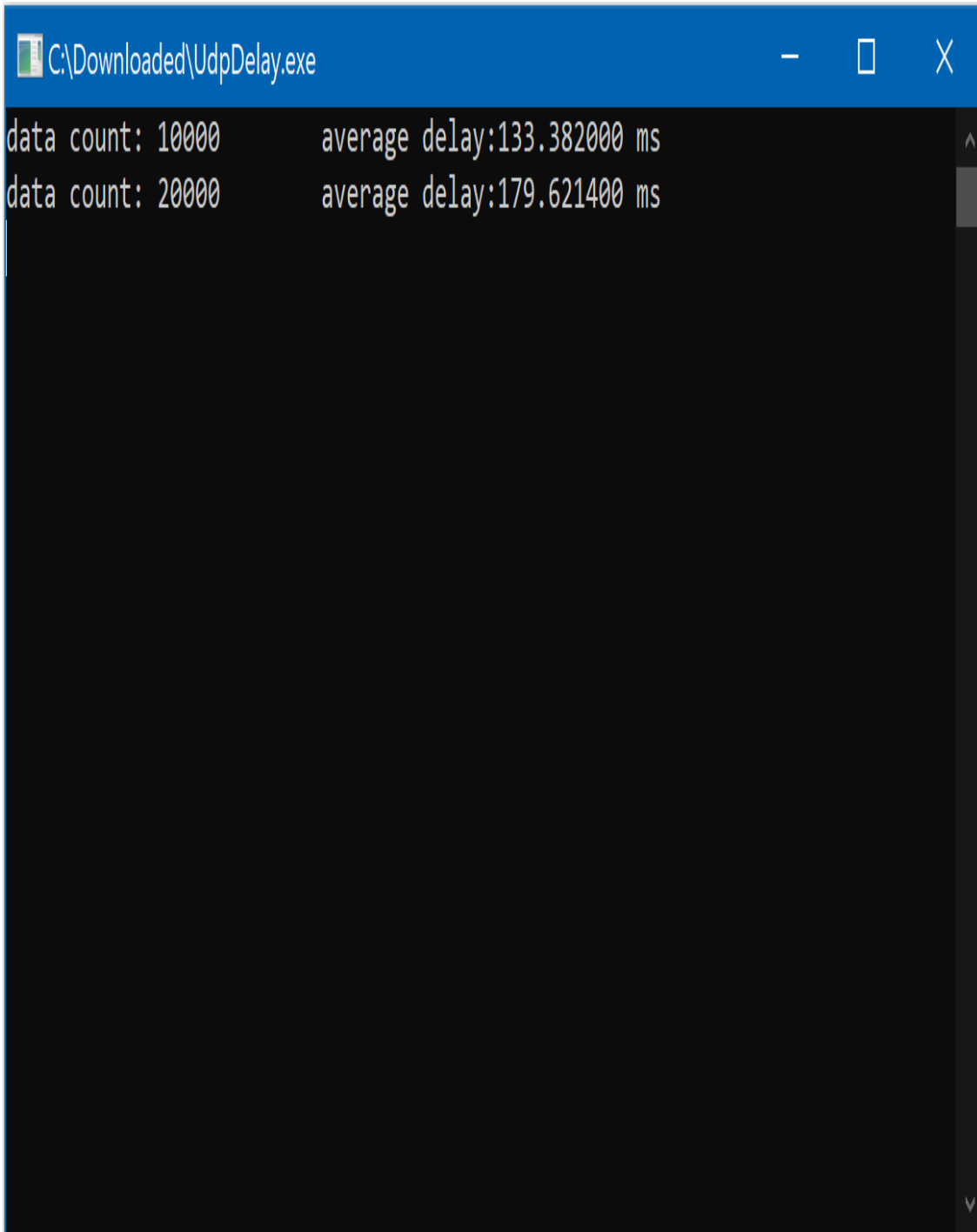
Running the Example

First, on the computer, run the UdpDelay.exe file, and the computer will begin to listen for packets from Ameba.

Next, compile and upload the code from the Arduino IDE to Ameba and press the reset button when the upload is complete.

The Ameba will begin to send UDP packets to the computer. Once 10000 packets have been received, the computer will calculate the average delay and print out the result.

It will take some time for 10000 packets to be sent.



```
C:\Downloaded\UdpDelay.exe
data count: 10000 average delay:133.382000 ms
data count: 20000 average delay:179.621400 ms
```

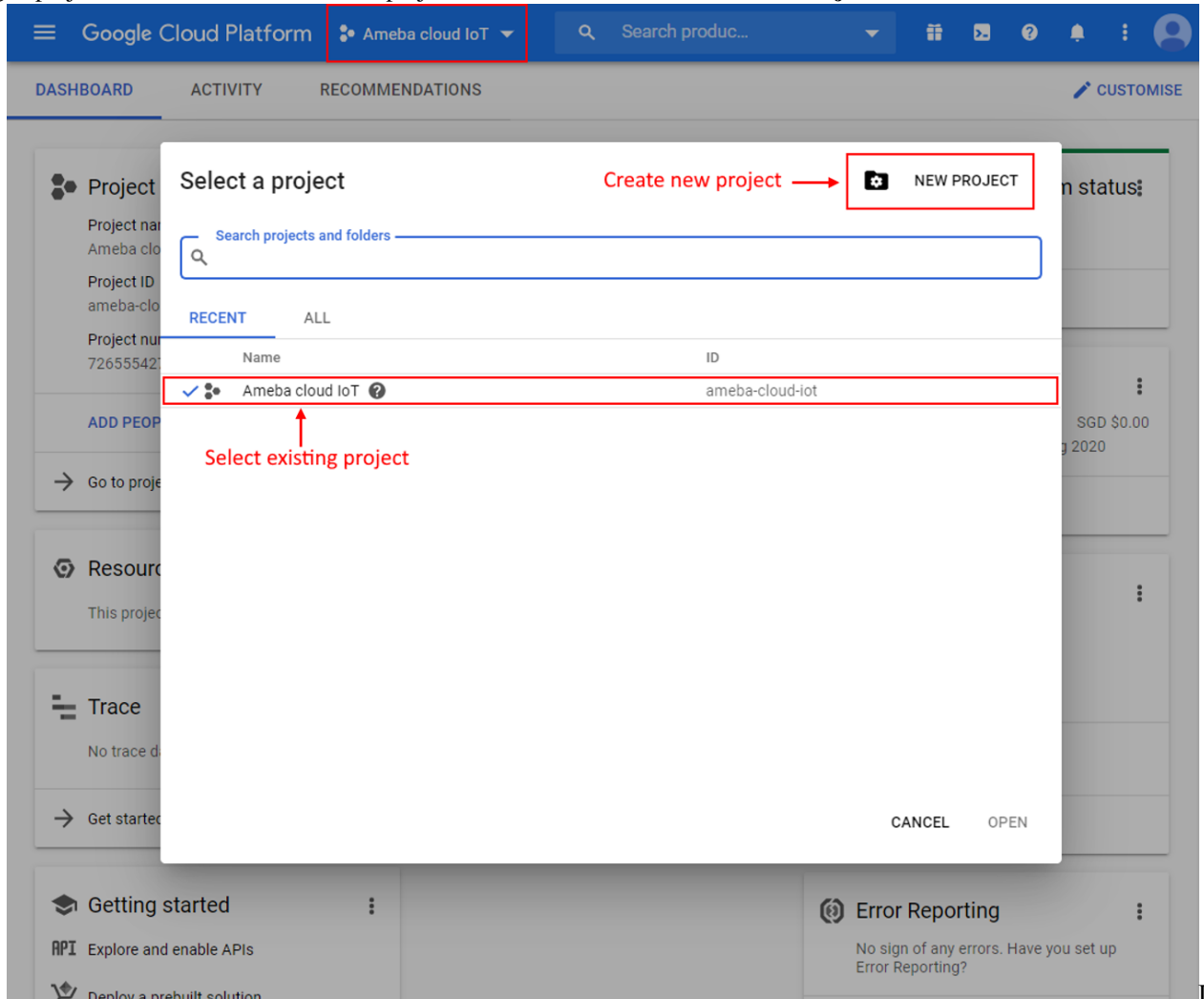
[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Google Cloud IoT

Preparation

- Ameba x 1

Google Cloud IoT Configuration

1. Select or create a Cloud Platform project In the Google Cloud Console, select an existing project or create a new project. You will need a **Project ID** to use with



Ameba. If creating a new project, enter a project name, and take note of the **Project ID** generated.

Google Cloud Platform Search products and resources

New Project

You have 22 projects remaining in your quota. Request an increase or delete projects. [Learn more](#)

[MANAGE QUOTAS](#)

Project name *
test-project ?

Project ID: test-project-286902 It cannot be changed later. [EDIT](#)

Location *
No organisation [BROWSE](#)

Parent organisation or folder

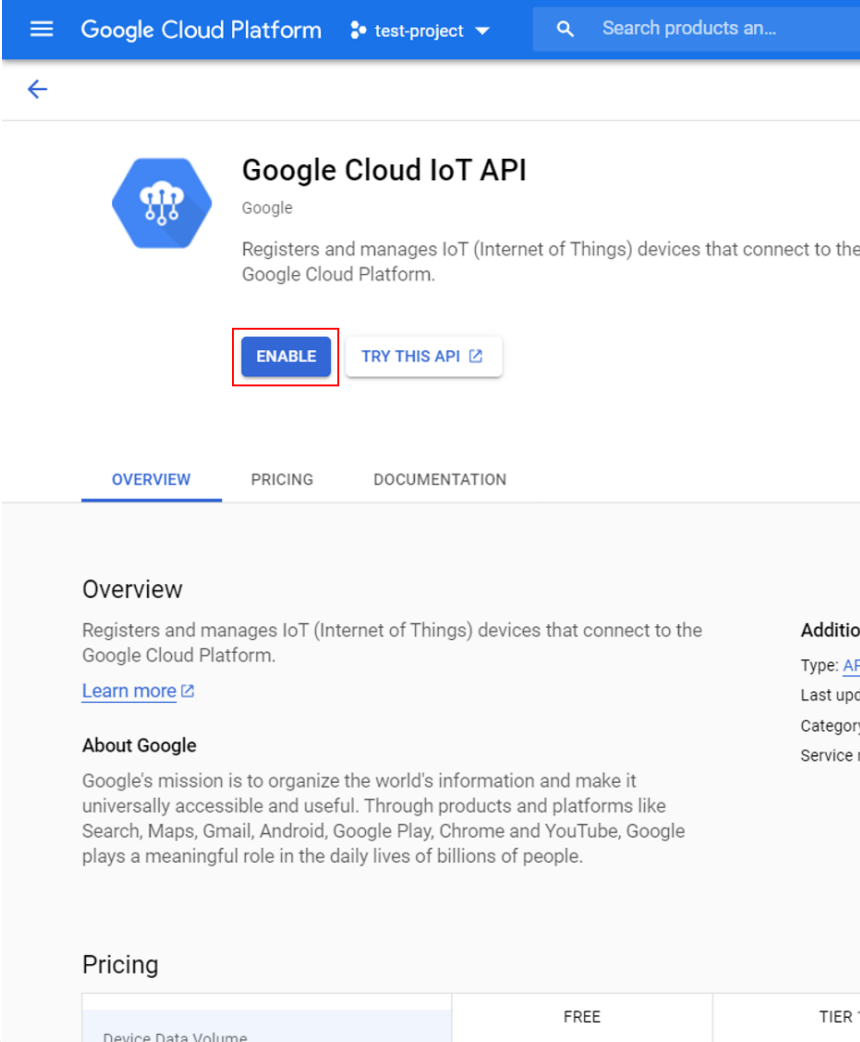
[CREATE](#) [CANCEL](#)

2. Enable billing for your project Billing needs to be enabled for your project to use Google Cloud Platform features. Follow the guide in Google cloud documentation to enable billing. <https://cloud.google.com/billing/docs/how-to/modify-project>
3. Enable the Cloud IoT Core API In Google Cloud console, click on the top left menu button and search for IoT

The screenshot displays the Google Cloud Platform (GCP) console interface. The top navigation bar is blue and contains the GCP logo, the text "Google Cloud Platform", a dropdown menu for "test-project", a search bar with the placeholder "Search products an...", and several utility icons (gift, mail, help, notifications, and user profile). The left-hand navigation menu is open, showing a list of services categorized by type. The "IoT Core" service is highlighted with a red rectangular box. Below it, other services like "BigQuery", "Data Catalog", "Data Fusion", "Financial Services", "Healthcare", "Life Sciences", "Dataprep", "AI platform", and "Data Labelling" are visible. The main content area on the right is dimmed, showing a dashboard with various widgets. These include a "RECOMMENDATIONS" section, a "Google Cloud Platform status" widget indicating "All services normal", a "Billing" widget showing "Estimated charges SGD \$0.00", a "Monitoring" widget with options to "Set up alerting policies" and "Create uptime checks", and an "Error Reporting" widget stating "No sign of any errors. Have you set up Error Reporting?".

Core.


Click



The screenshot shows the Google Cloud IoT API page. At the top, there's a blue header with the Google Cloud Platform logo, a dropdown menu for 'test-project', and a search bar. Below the header, there's a blue arrow pointing left. The main content area features the Google Cloud IoT API logo (a blue hexagon with a white cloud and three dots) and the text 'Google Cloud IoT API' followed by 'Google'. Below this, it says 'Registers and manages IoT (Internet of Things) devices that connect to the Google Cloud Platform.' There are two buttons: 'ENABLE' (highlighted with a red box) and 'TRY THIS API' (with an external link icon). Below the buttons, there are tabs for 'OVERVIEW', 'PRICING', and 'DOCUMENTATION'. The 'OVERVIEW' tab is selected, showing an 'Overview' section with a description, a 'Learn more' link, an 'About Google' section, and a 'Pricing' section. The 'Pricing' section shows a table with columns for 'Device Data Volume', 'FREE', and 'TIER'.

Google Cloud Platform test-project Search products an...

←

 **Google Cloud IoT API**
Google
Registers and manages IoT (Internet of Things) devices that connect to the Google Cloud Platform.

ENABLE TRY THIS API [↗](#)

OVERVIEW PRICING DOCUMENTATION

Overview
Registers and manages IoT (Internet of Things) devices that connect to the Google Cloud Platform.
[Learn more](#) [↗](#)

About Google
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and make it universally accessible and useful. Through products and platforms like Search, Maps, Gmail, Android, Google Play, Chrome and YouTube, Google plays a meaningful role in the daily lives of billions of people.

Pricing

Device Data Volume	FREE	TIER

enable to activate Google Cloud IoT API for your project.

4. Create a Cloud Pub/Sub topic In Google Cloud console, click on the top left menu button and search for

The screenshot displays the Google Cloud Platform (GCP) console interface. The top navigation bar includes the GCP logo, the project name 'test-project', a search bar, and various utility icons. On the left, a sidebar lists services under categories like 'BIG DATA' and 'ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE'. The 'Pub/Sub' service is highlighted, and a dropdown menu is open, showing options: 'Topics', 'Subscriptions', 'Snapshots', 'Lite Topics', and 'Lite Subscriptions'. The 'Topics' option is highlighted with a red rectangle. The main content area shows the 'Topics' page with a 'Filter table' and a 'Select a topic' section. A message in the 'Select a topic' section reads: 'Please select at least one resource.'

Google Cloud Platform test-project Search products an... HIDE INFO PANEL

Home

BIG DATA

Composer

Dataproc

Pub/Sub

Dataflow

IoT Core

BigQuery

Data Catalog

Data Fusion

Financial Services

Healthcare

Life Sciences

Dataprep

ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE

AI platform

Data Labelling

Topics

Subscriptions

Snapshots

Lite Topics

Lite Subscriptions

Filter table

Topic ID ↑ Encryption Topic

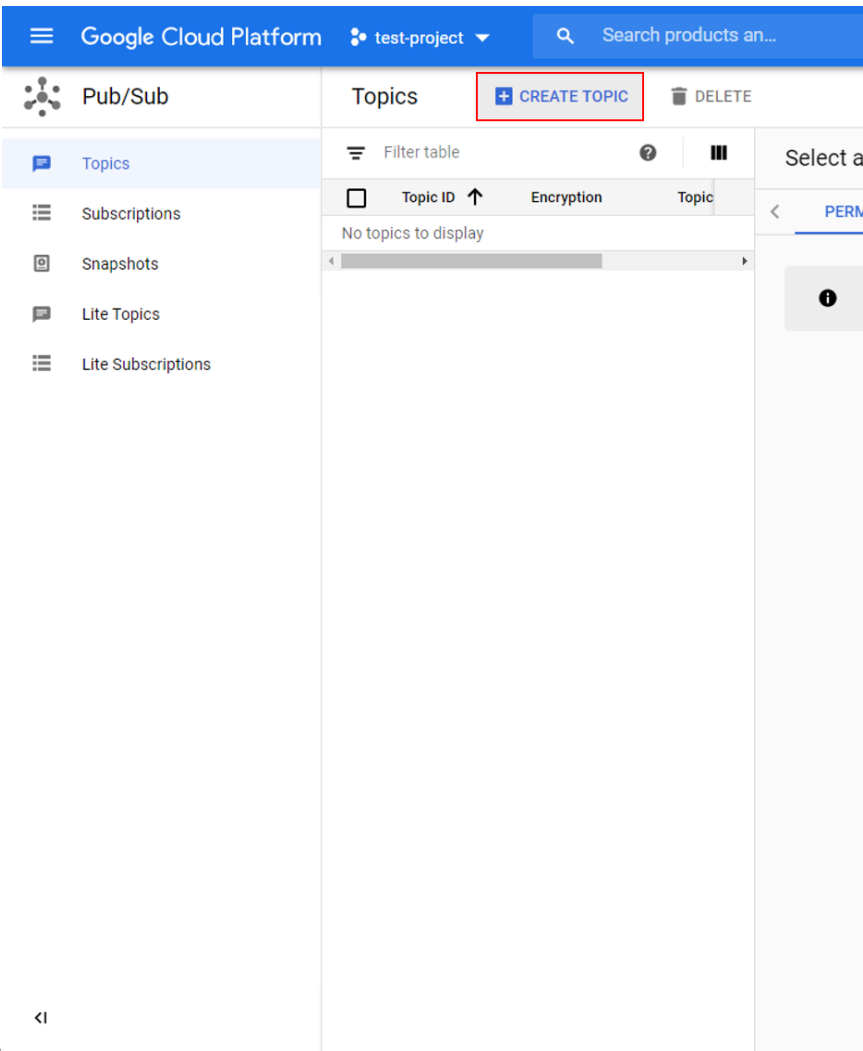
topics to display

Select a topic

PERMISSIONS LABELS STORAGE POLICY

Please select at least one resource.

Pub/Sub. Create



a new topic for your project and give it a suitable topic ID.
the topic is created, go to the permissions tab of the info panel, and add “cloud-iot@system.gserviceaccount.com” with the role of “Pub/Sub Publisher”.

Google Cloud Platform test-project Search products and resources

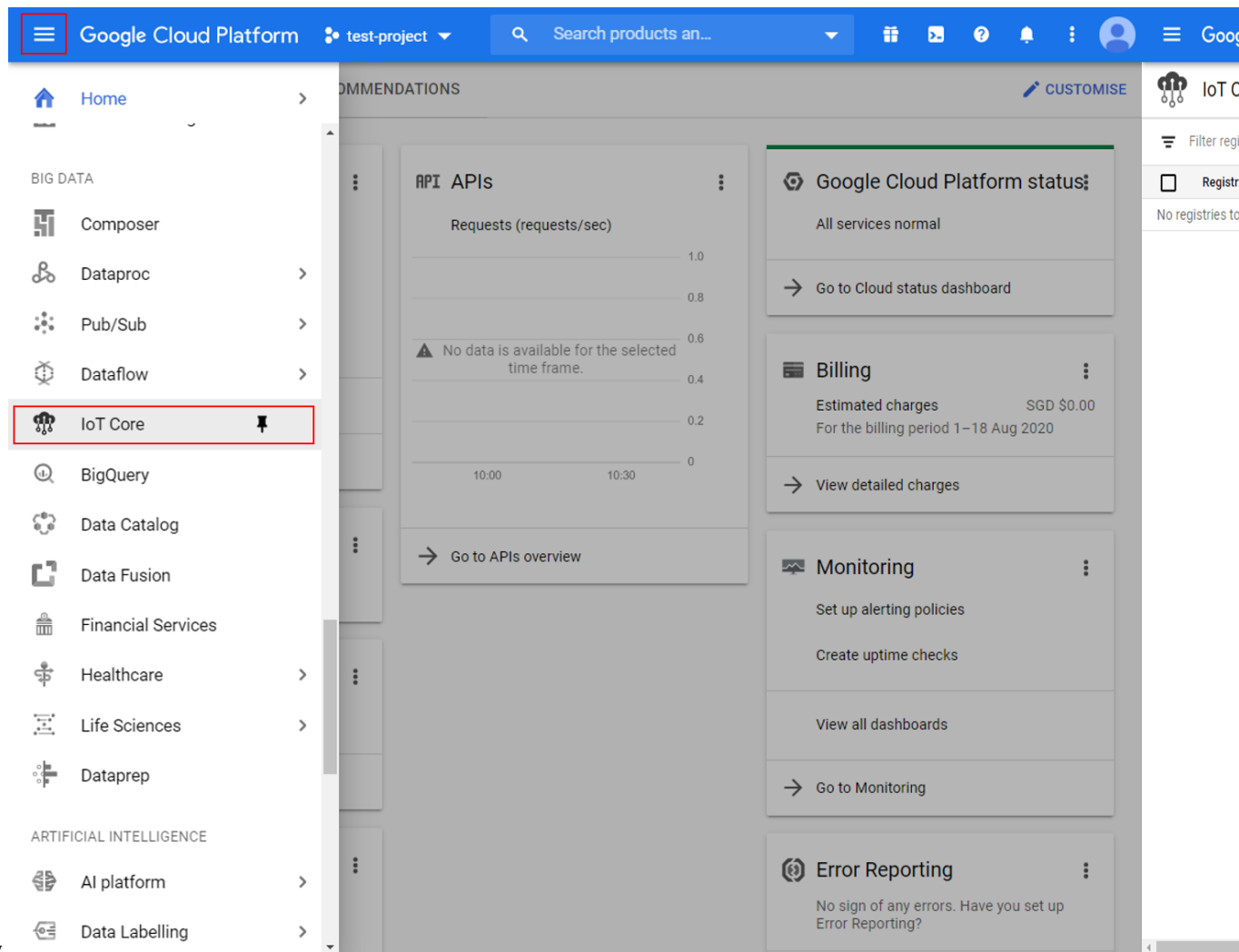
Pub/Sub Topics CREATE TOPIC DELETE SHOW INFO PANEL

Filter table

Topic ID ↑	Encryption	Topic name	Labels
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> test-topic	Google-managed	projects/test-project-286902/topics/test-topic	-

Topics Subscriptions Snapshots Lite Topics Lite Subscriptions

5. Create a device registry Go back to the IoT Core settings page and create a new



registry.
 a suitable **Registry ID** and in which to store data. Remember the ****Registry ID** and **Re-**
gion for use with Ameba later. For the Pub/Sub topic, select the topic created in the previous

Google Cloud Platform test-project Search products and resources

IoT Core Create a registry

Define how devices in this registry will send data to Cloud IoT Core. After you create your registry, you can start adding devices to it. [Learn more](#)

Registry properties

Registry ID
test-registry

Permanent identifier for your registry. 3–255 characters. Start with a letter. You can also include numbers and the following characters: + . % - _ ~

Region
us-central1

Determines where data is stored for devices in this registry. Choice is permanent.

Cloud Pub/Sub topics

Cloud IoT Core routes device messages to Cloud Pub/Sub for aggregation. You can route messages to different topics and subfolders in Cloud Pub/Sub based on the type of data in the messages. [Learn more](#)

Select a Cloud Pub/Sub topic
projects/test-project-286902/topics/test-topic

Device telemetry events will be published to this topic by default.

+ ADD ADDITIONAL TOPIC

SHOW ADVANCED OPTIONS

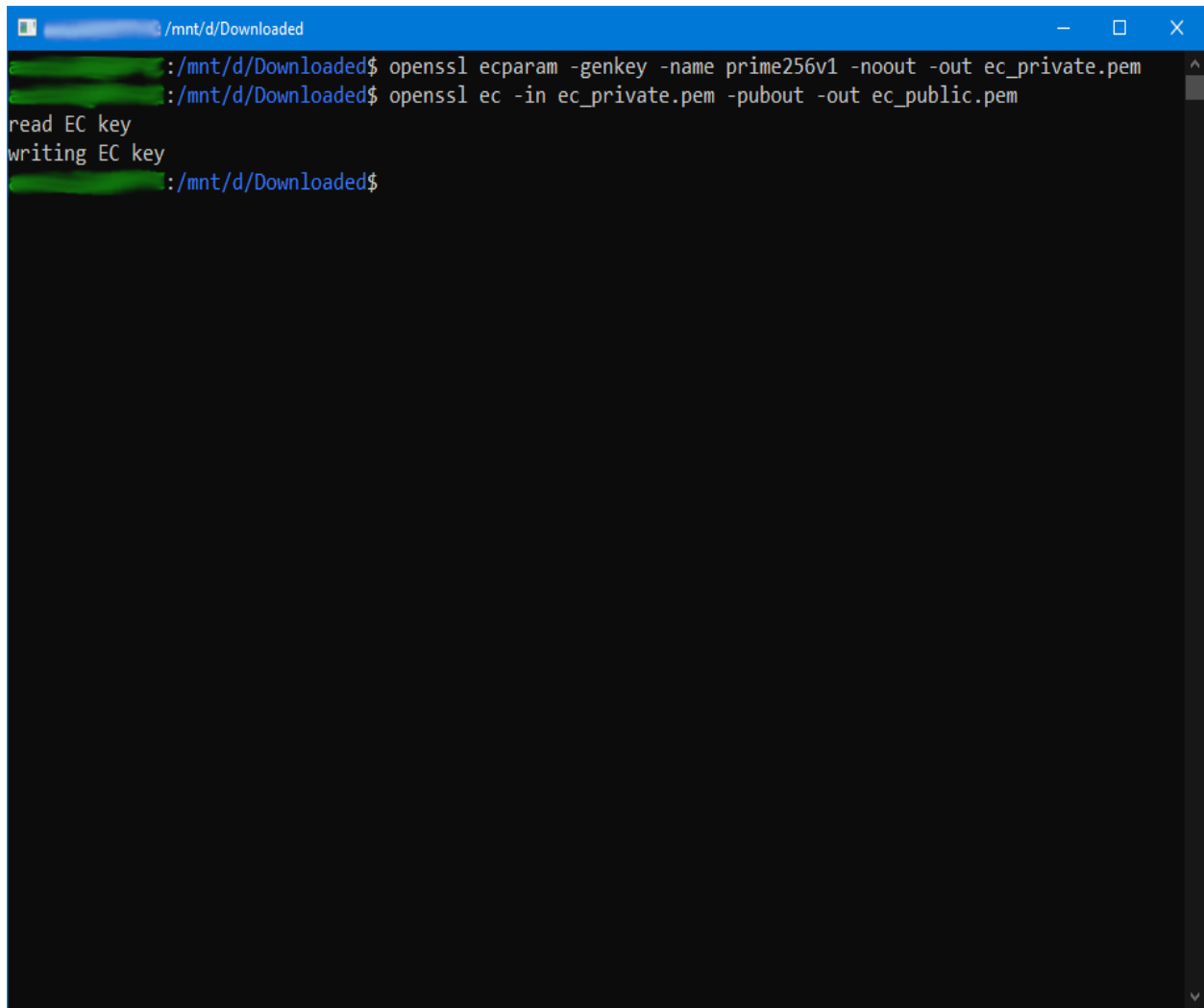
CREATE CANCEL

step. ◀

6. Create a public/private key pair Using Openssl in a terminal in Windows/Linux/MacOs, run the following commands to generate a private and public key pair. Two files will be created by these commands, “ec_private.pem” containing the private key, and “ec_public.pem” containing the public key.

```
$ openssl ecparam -genkey -name prime256v1 -noout -out ec_private.pem
```

```
$ openssl ec -in ec_private.pem -pubout -out ec_public.pem
```

A terminal window with a blue title bar and a black background. The window title is "/mnt/d/Downloaded". The terminal shows the following commands and output:

```
:/mnt/d/Downloaded$ openssl ecparam -genkey -name prime256v1 -noout -out ec_private.pem
:/mnt/d/Downloaded$ openssl ec -in ec_private.pem -pubout -out ec_public.pem
read EC key
writing EC key
:/mnt/d/Downloaded$
```

Run

the next command to extract out the private key, and remember the highlighted string of hexadecimal numbers for use with Ameba later.

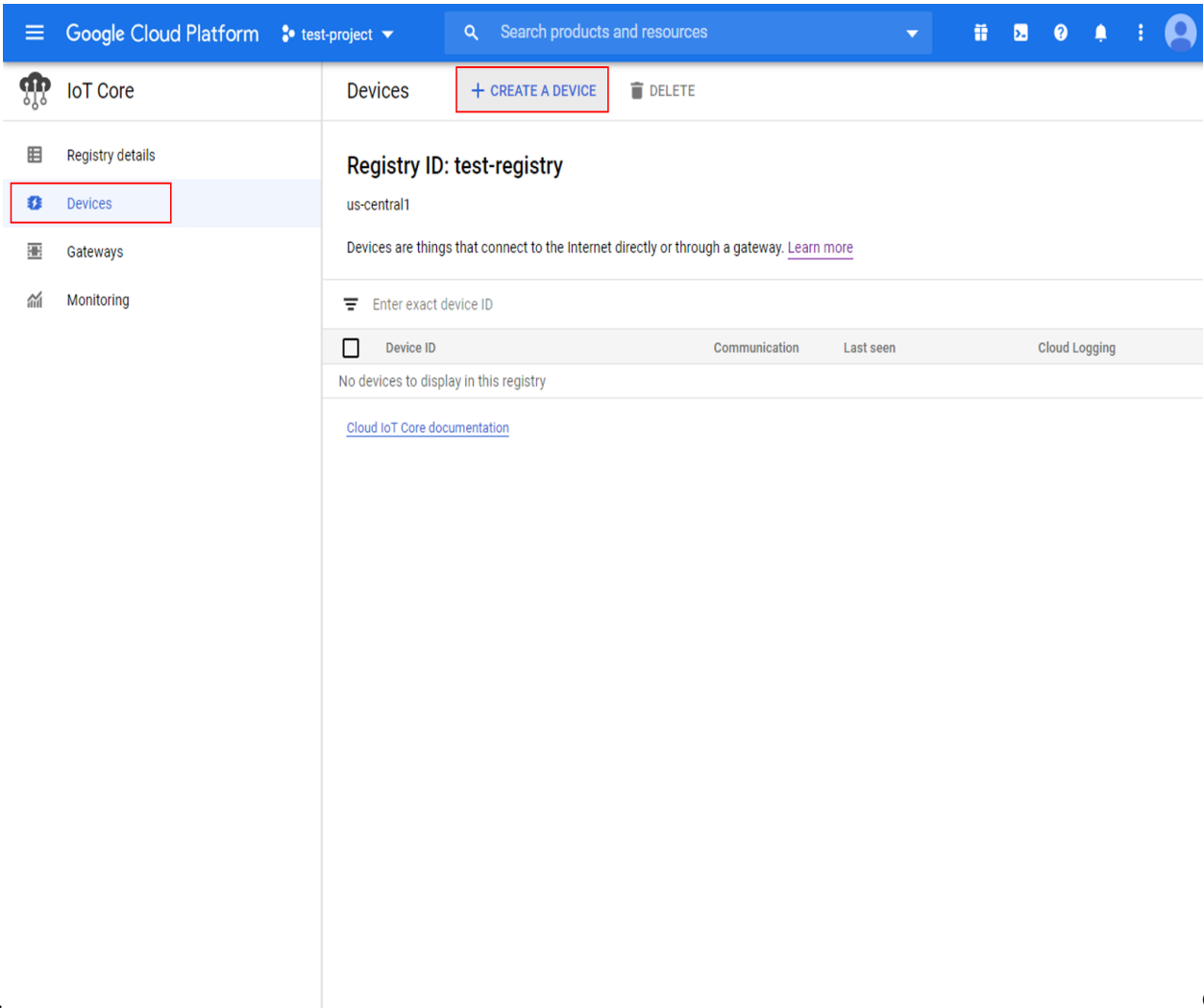
```
$ openssl ec -in ec_private.pem -noout -text
```



```

/mnt/d/Downloaded$ openssl ec -in ec_private.pem -noout -text
read EC key
Private-Key: (256 bit)
priv:
    f9:93:86:98:66:b0:f0:34:79:c5:fe:c9:82:50:0d:
    76:f2:ad:c6:2e:23:b9:af:02:c0:1c:d4:11:65:81:
    0a:fb
pub:
    04:29:8f:09:db:9c:d6:e2:b2:05:b8:11:c0:b5:f7:
    90:2a:7c:42:42:3e:db:ec:2d:05:88:b3:8b:14:09:
    9e:de:2d:ec:1b:da:7f:ae:6a:8d:31:55:e1:22:0c:
    d8:94:63:a2:4a:79:09:6f:57:68:76:61:72:9e:e3:
    22:23:93:fd:a6
ASN1 OID: prime256v1
NIST CURVE: P-256
/mnt/d/Downloaded$
```

Create a device Go back to the IoT Core settings page and create a new



device.

Give

Google Cloud Platform test-project Search products

IoT Core

- Registry details
- Devices
- Gateways
- Monitoring

Create a device

Device ID
test-device

Enter a permanent ID that starts with a low
You can also include the following characters

Device metadata (optional)

You can set custom metadata, such as m
can be used to query devices in this regis

+ ADD ATTRIBUTE

Device communication

If blocked, all communications from the c
Blocking a device may be useful if it's def

☒ Allow
☐ Block

Cloud Logging

Choose a log setting for this device. Will c
[Learn more](#)

☒ Use registry default setting
☐ Disabled
No device data stored.
☐ Error
Captures device errors, such as failed co
include authentication errors.
☐ Info
MQTT only. Captures device errors (exce
events, such as device connections and
☐ Debug
Captures all device activity in a highly ve

the device a suitable **Device ID** and remember it for use with Ameba later.

the authentication section of the additional options, upload the previously generated “ec_public.pem” public

Google Cloud Platform test-project Search products and resou...

IoT Core

- Registry details
- Devices
- Gateways
- Monitoring

Create a device

No device data stored.

- ☐ Error
Captures device errors, such as failed connection attempts and failed publishes. Does not include authentication errors.
- ☐ Info
MQTT only. Captures device errors (except authentication errors) and includes all lifecycle events, such as device connections and disconnections.
- ☐ Debug
Captures all device activity in a highly verbose log statement. Recommended for device troubleshooting.

Authentication (optional)

Specify the public key that will be used to authenticate this device. You can leave the key empty, but devices will not be able to connect to Google Cloud without a key. [Learn more](#)

Input method

☐ Enter manually

☒ Upload

Public key format
ES256

Public key value
ec_public.pem ✕ [BROWSE](#)

File content must be in PEM format

Public key expiry date (optional)

☐ Expires on:

Date HKT

[^ COMMUNICATION, CLOUD LOGGING, AUTHENTICATION](#)

[CREATE](#) [CANCEL](#)

key.

Create a Cloud Pub/Sub subscription To observe messages sent by Ameba, create a subscription in

8.

Google Cloud Platform

test-project

Search products and resou...

Pub/Sub

Subscriptions

CREATE SUBSCRIPTION

DELETE

SHOW INFO PANEL

Topics

Subscriptions

Snapshots

Lite Topics

Lite Subscriptions

Filter table

Subscription ID

Delivery type

Topic name

Subscription name

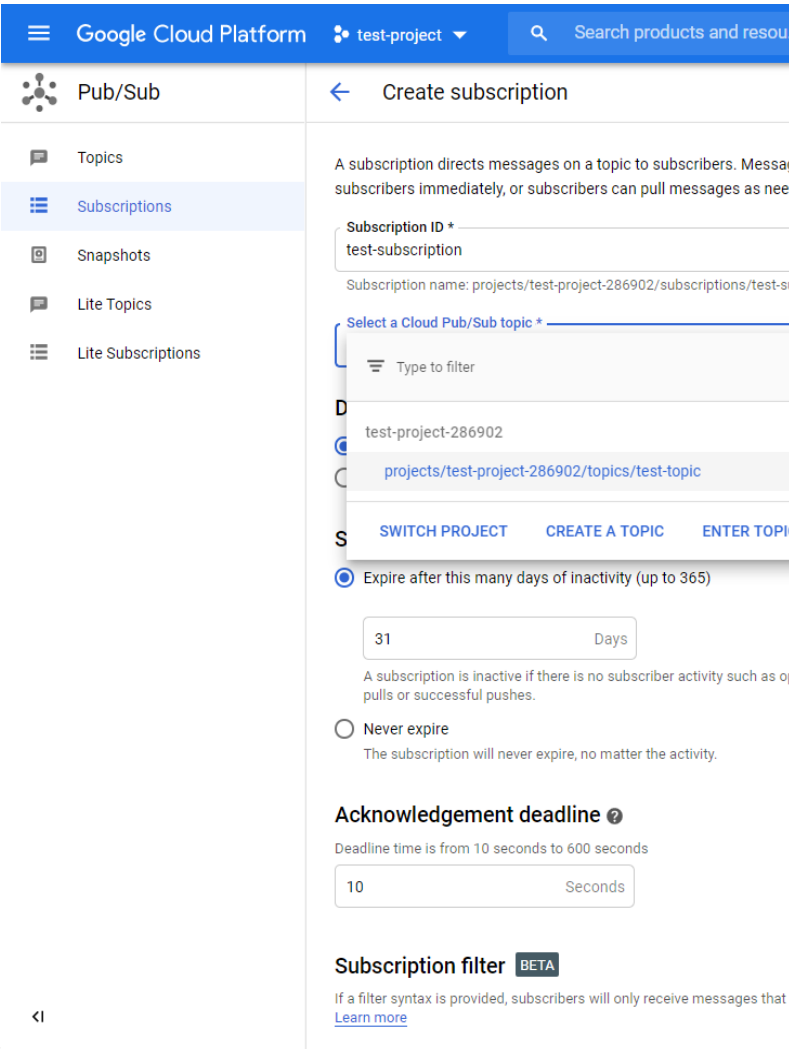
Acknowledge deac

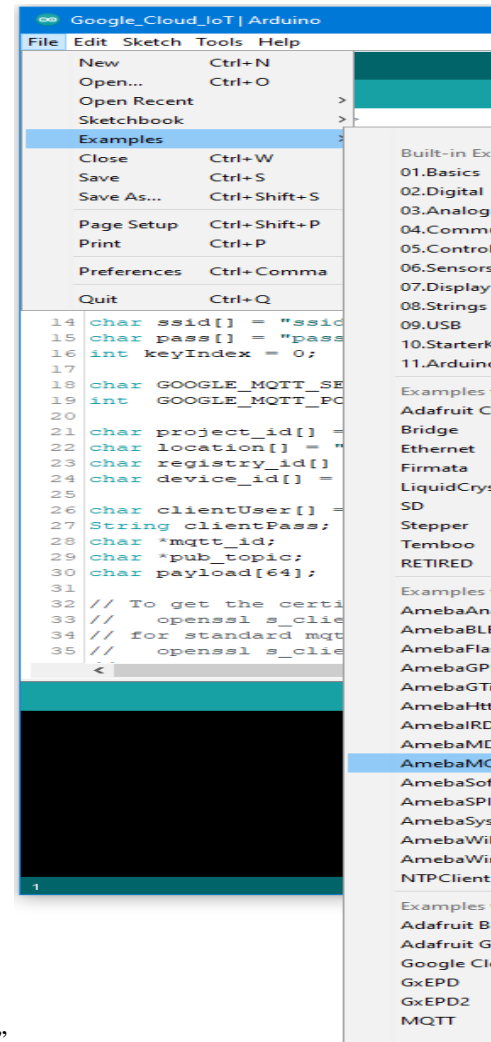
No subscriptions to display

Pub/Sub.

Choose

a suitable subscription ID and select the previously created topic.
Example





Open the example in “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaMQTTClient” -> “Google_Cloud_IoT”.

```

Google_Cloud_IoT
9 WiFiSSLClient wifiClient;
10 PubSubClient client(wifiClient);
11 WiFiUDP udpClient;
12 NTPClient timeClient(udpClient);
13
14 char ssid[] = "ssid";           // your network SSID (name)
15 char pass[] = "pass";          // your network password (use
16 int keyIndex = 0;               // your network key Index num
17
18 char GOOGLE_MQTT_SERVER[] = "mqtt.googleapis.com";
19 int  GOOGLE_MQTT_PORT = 8883;
20
21 char project_id[] = "project-id";
22 char location[] = "us-central1";
23 char registry_id[] = "my-registry";
24 char device_id[] = "ameba-device";
25
26 char clientUser[] = "unused";
27 String clientPass;
28 char *mqtt_id;
29 char *pub_topic;
30 char payload[64];
31 NN_DIGIT priv_key[9];
32
33 // To get the private key run (where private-key.pem is t
34 // used to create the certificate uploaded to google clou
35 // openssl ec -in <private-key.pem> -noout -text
36 // and copy priv: part.
37 // The key length should be exactly the same as the key l
38 // of hex digits). If it's bigger and it starts with "00:
39 // it's smaller add "00:" to the start. If it's too big o
40 // is probably wrong with your key.
41 char *private_key_str =
42 "57:e1:c0:3b:e5:cd:2f:42:fb:14:4f:a9:1e:3f:0a:"
43 "65:22:4c:f0:ac:0f:a0:82:e1:73:71:ae:76:70:48:"
44 "68:fe";
45

```

the required information in the highlighted sections below.

the yellow section, enter the SSID and password required to connect to your WiFi network. In the green section, enter the Project ID, server Region, Registry ID and Device ID previously configured in Google Cloud console. In the blue section, enter the hexadecimal string previously extracted from the private key. Upload the code and press the reset button on Ameba once the upload is finished. Open the serial monitor and observe as Ameba connects and sends messages to Google Cloud


```

COM9
Send

RTL8721D[Driver]: auth success, start assoc

RTL8721D[Driver]: association success(res=1)

RTL8721D[Driver]: ClientSendEAPOL[1527]: no use cache pmksa

RTL8721D[Driver]: set pairwise key to hw: alg:4(WEP40-1 WEP104-5 TKIP-2 AES-4)

RTL8721D[Driver]: set group key to hw: alg:4(WEP40-1 WEP104-5 TKIP-2 AES-4) keyid:2

Interface 0 IP address : 192.168.137.222Connected to wifi
Ready for Publishing
client connecting...
Ready for Publishing
client connecting...
Publishing the payload "This is Ameba's 0 message!!" with len: 27
client publish successfully!!! ret = 1
Publishing the payload "This is Ameba's 1 message!!" with len: 27
client publish successfully!!! ret = 1
Publishing the payload "This is Ameba's 2 message!!" with len: 27
client publish successfully!!! ret = 1
Publishing the payload "This is Ameba's 3 message!!" with len: 27
client publish successfully!!! ret = 1
Publishing the payload "This is Ameba's 4 message!!" with len: 27
client publish successfully!!! ret = 1
Publishing the payload "This is Ameba's 5 message!!" with len: 27
client publish successfully!!! ret = 1
Publishing the payload "This is Ameba's 6 message!!" with len: 27

☐ Autoscroll ☐ Show timestamp Newline 115200 baud Clear output

```

IoT.

Google Cloud console, go to Pub/Sub subscriptions, select the previously created sub-
 scription, and click view messages. Here you can view the messages sent by

In

Google Cloud Platform test-project Search products and resources

Pub/Sub test-subscripti... EDIT VIEW MESSAGES CREATE SNAPSHOT SHOW INFO PANEL

Topics Subscriptions Snapshots Lite Topics Lite Subscriptions

Subscription details

Subscription name `projects/test-project-286902/subscriptions/test-subscription`

Topic name `projects/test-project-286902/topics/test-topic`

1 hour 6 hours 1 day 7 days 30 days RESET ZOOM

Unacked message count

Oldest unacked message age

Delivery type
Pull

Subscription expiry ⓘ
Subscription expires in 31 days if there is no activity.

Acknowledgement deadline ⓘ
10 Seconds

Subscription filter ⓘ
-

Message retention duration
7 Days

Retained acknowledged messages
1000

Ameba.

Code Reference

In `setup()`, we set up `RootCA` which is required to form a TLS connection with Google's servers.

```
wifiClient.setRootCA((unsigned char*)rootCABuff);
```

In `loop()`, each loop checks the Internet status and re-connect to it when the environment has a problem.

```
if (WiFi.status() != WL_CONNECTED) {
  while (WiFi.begin(ssid, pass) != WL_CONNECTED)
  {
    delay(1000);
  }
  Serial.println("Connected to wifi");
}
```

To publish messages, `mqtt_id`, `clientPass` and `pub_topic` are required. `mqtt_id` is generated by printing the project ID, server location, registry ID and device ID in the required format:

```
mqtt_id = (char *)malloc(strlen("projects/") + strlen(project_id) + strlen("/locations/us-central1/registries/") +
strlen(registry_id) + strlen("/devices/") + strlen(device_id) + 1);
```

```
sprintf(mqtt_id, "projects/%s/locations/us-central1/registries/%s/devices/%s", project_id, registry_id, device_id);
```

clientPass is generated using a JSON web token (JWT) generator function, which requires the project ID and current time, and signs it with the private key:

```
clientPass = CreateJwt(project_id, timeClient.getEpochTime(), priv_key);
```

pub_topic is generated by printing the project ID and topic in the required format:

```
pub_topic = (char *)malloc(strlen("/devices/") + strlen(device_id) + strlen("/events") + 1);
```

```
sprintf(pub_topic, "/devices/%s/events", device_id);
```

MQTT Server setting:

```
client.setServer(GOOGLE_MQTT_SERVER, GOOGLE_MQTT_PORT);
```

```
client.setPublishQos(MQTTQOS1);
```

```
client.waitForAck(true);
```

Connect to google cloud and publish messages:

```
if (client.connect(mqtt_id, clientUser, clientPass.c_str()) )
```

```
{
```

```
for(int i = 0; i < count; i++){
```

```
sprintf(payload, "This is Ameba's %d message!!", i);
```

```
ret = client.publish(pub_topic, payload);
```

```
}
```

```
client.disconnect();
```

```
}
```

```
free(mqtt_id);
```

```
free(pub_topic);
```

Peripheral Examples

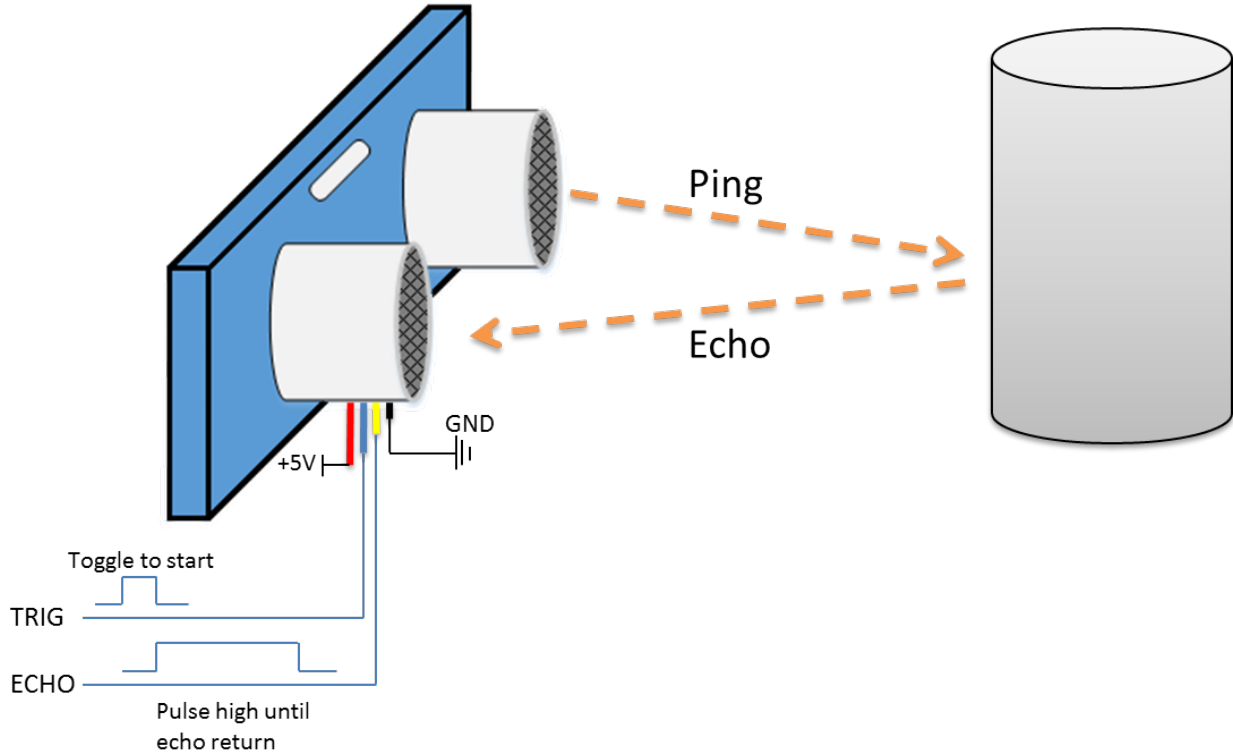
[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] GPIO – Measure The Distance By Ultrasound Module

Preparation

- Ameba x 1
- HC-SR04 Ultrasonic x 1
- Dropping resistor or Level converter

Example

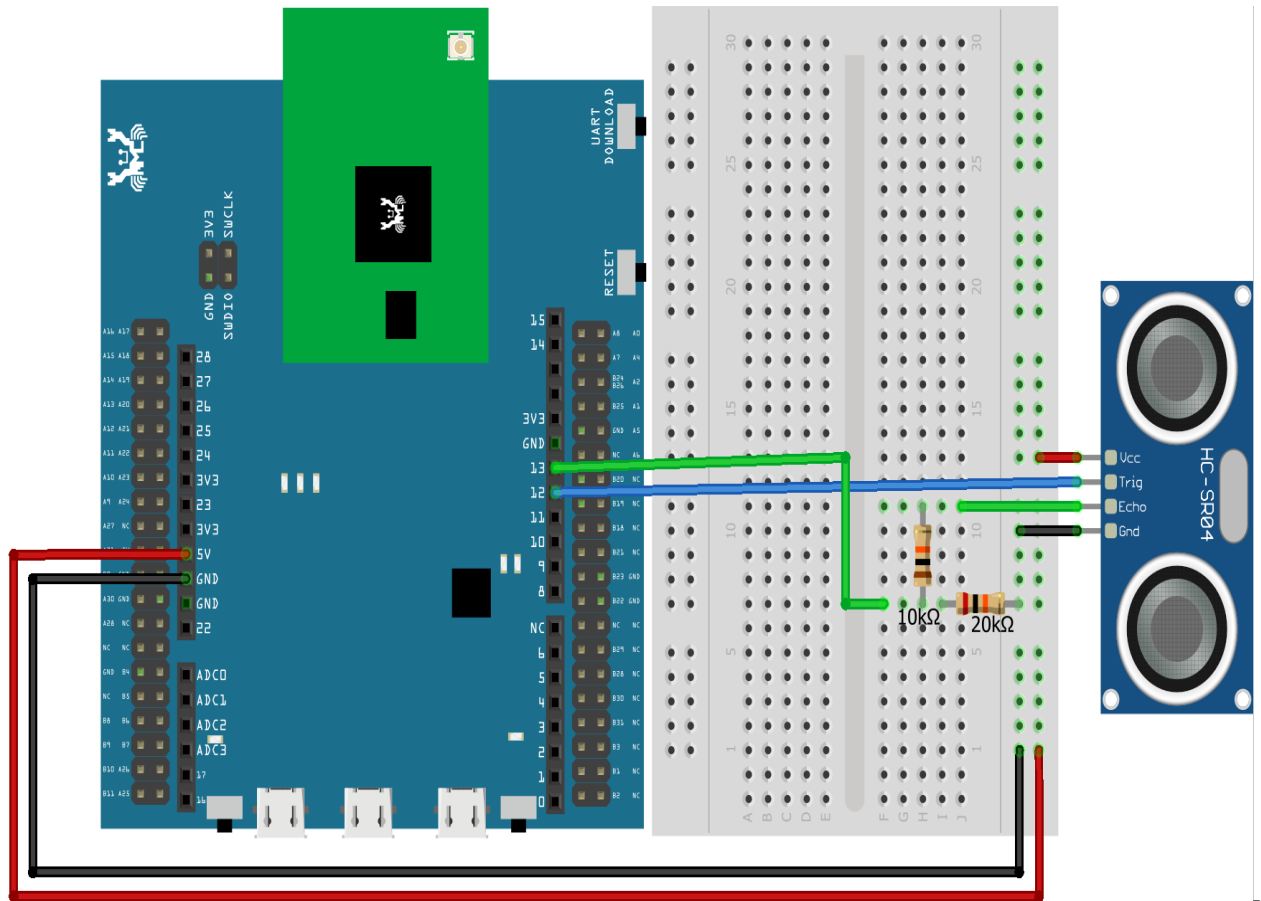
HC-SR04 is a module that uses ultrasound to measure the distance. It looks like a pair of eyes in its appearance, therefore it's often installed onto robot-vehicle or mechanical bugs to be their eyes. The way it works is that first we “toggle high” the TRIG pin (that is to pull high then pull low). The HC-SR04 would send eight 40kHz sound wave signal and pull high the ECHO pin. When the sound wave returns back, it pull low the ECHO



pin.

the velocity of sound is 340 m/s, the time it takes for the sound to advance 1 cm in the air is $340 \times 100 \times 10^{-6} = 29 \text{ us}$. The sound wave actually travels twice the distance between HC-SR04 and the object, therefore the distance can be calculated by $(\text{time}/29) / 2 = \text{time} / 58$. The working voltage of HC-SR04 is 5V. When we pull high the ECHO pin to 5V, the voltage might cause damage to the GPIO pin of Ameba. To avoid this situation, we need to drop the voltage as

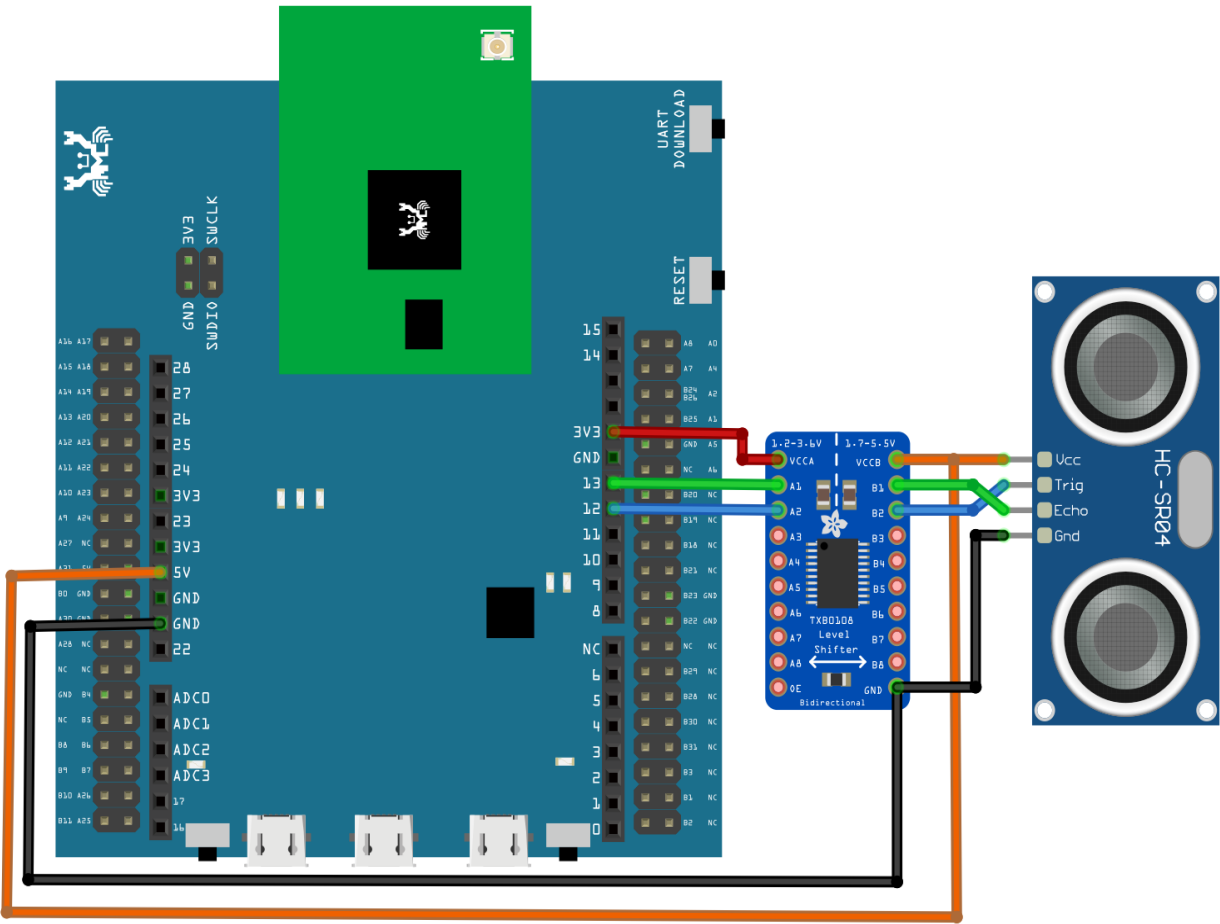
Assume



follows:

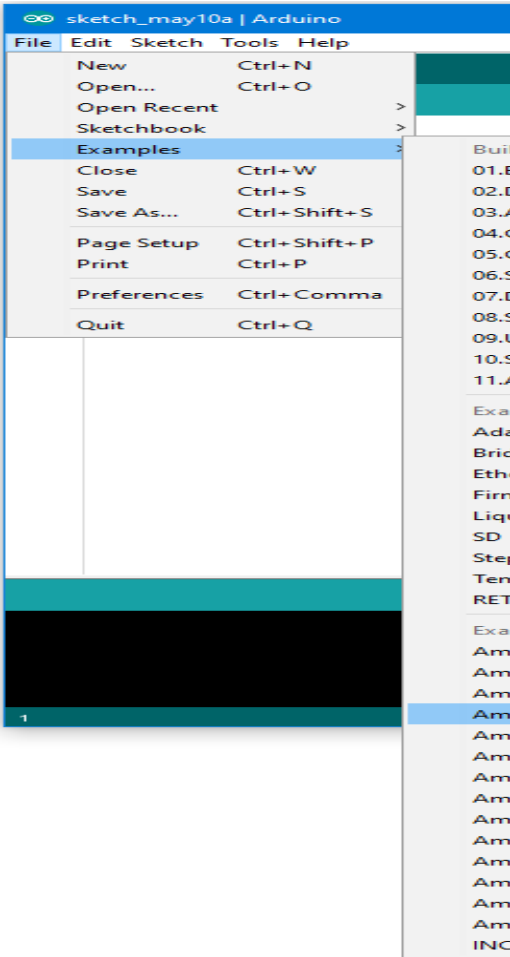
pick the resistors with resistance 1:2, in the example we use 10k ohm and 20k ohm. If you do not have resistors in hand, you can use level converter instead. The TXB0108 8 channel level converter is a suitable

We

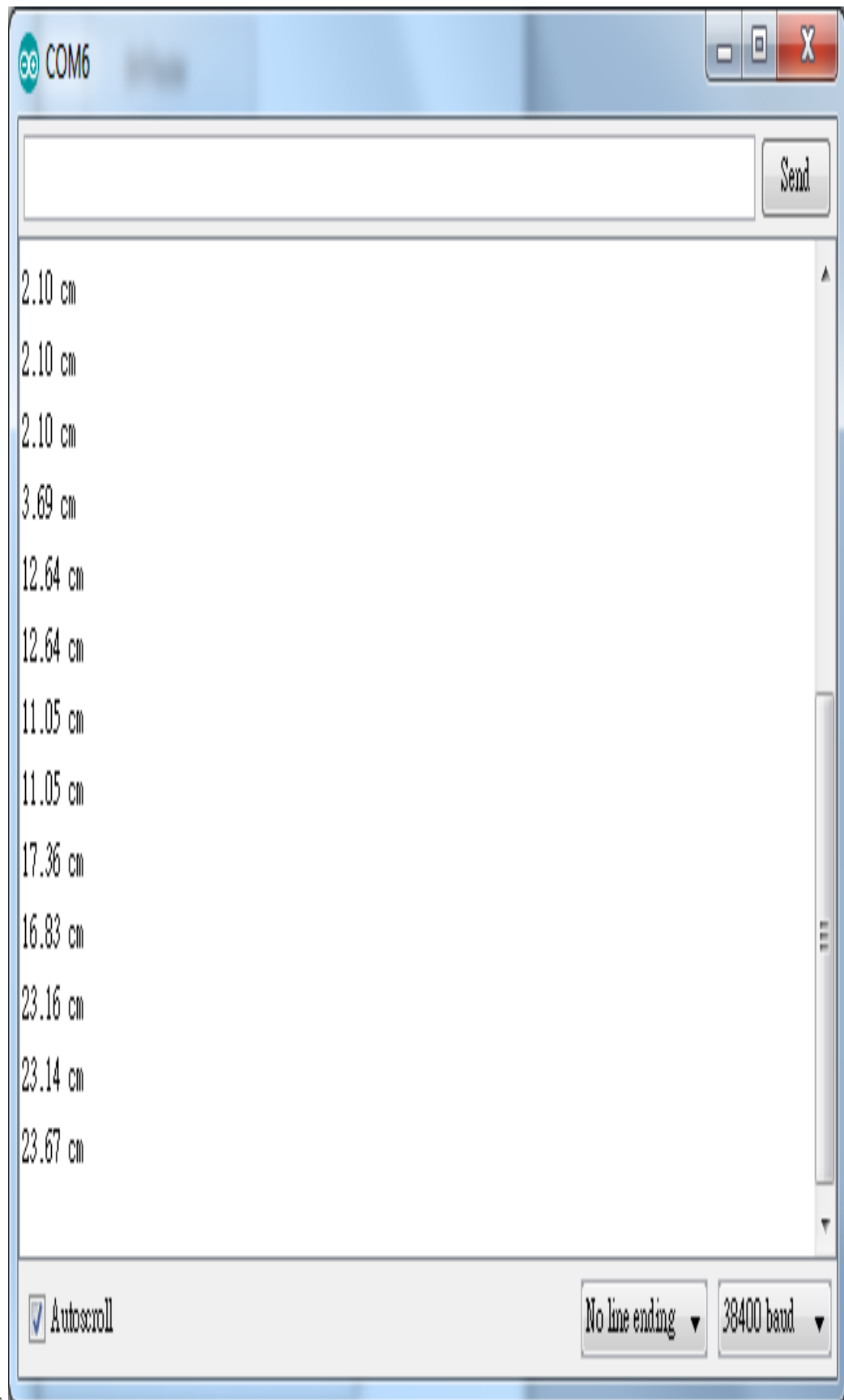


example:

Next,



open the sample code in “File”->“Examples”->“AmebaGPIO”->“HCSR04_Ultrasonic” and upload to Ameba, then press the reset button. Open the Serial Monitor, the calculated result is output to serial monitor



every 2 seconds.

Note

that the HCSR04 module uses the reflection of sound wave to calculate the distance, thus the result can be affected by the surface material of the object (e.g., harsh surface tends to cause scattering of sound wave, and soft surface may cause the sound wave to be absorbed).

Code Reference

Before the measurement starts, we need to pull high the TRIG pin for 10us and then pull low. By doing this, we are telling the HC-SR04 that we are about to start the measurement:

```
digitalWrite(trigger_pin, HIGH);
```

```
delayMicroseconds(10);
```

```
digitalWrite(trigger_pin, LOW);
```

Next, use pulseIn to measure the time when the ECHO pin is pulled high.

```
duration = pulseIn (echo_pin, HIGH);
```

Finally, use the formula to calculate the distance.

```
distance = duration / 58;
```

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] GPIO - Measuring The Temperature And Humidity

Preparation

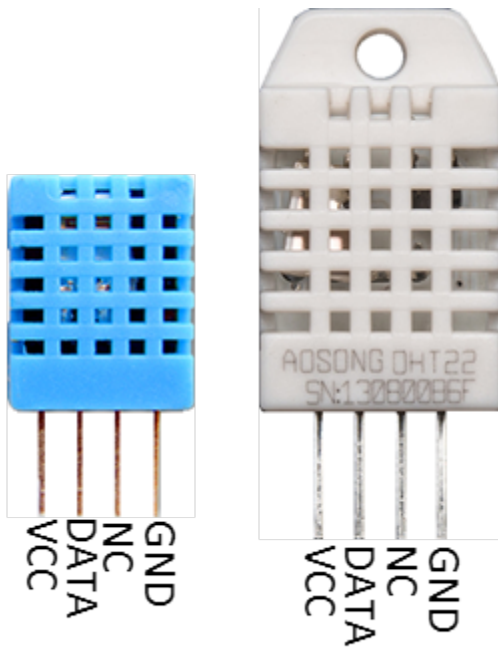
- Ameba x 1
- DHT11 or DHT22 or DHT21

Example

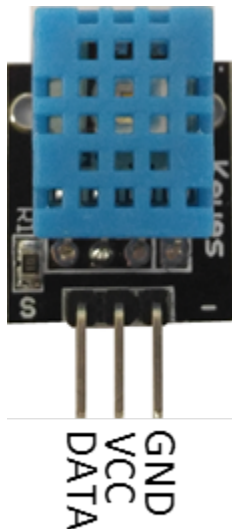
DHT11 is a temperature and humidity sensor which operates at voltage 3.3V~5V. At room temperature, the measurable range of the humidity is 20% ~ 90%RH with $\pm 5\%$ RH precision, the measurable range of the temperature is 0 ~ 50°C with $\pm 2^\circ\text{C}$ precision.

Another choice of temperature and humidity sensor is DHT22 sensor, which has better precision. Its measurable range of the humidity is 0%~100%RH with $\pm 5\%$ RH precision, the measurable range of the temperature is -40~125 °C with $\pm 0.2^\circ\text{C}$ precision.

There are 4 pins on the sensor:

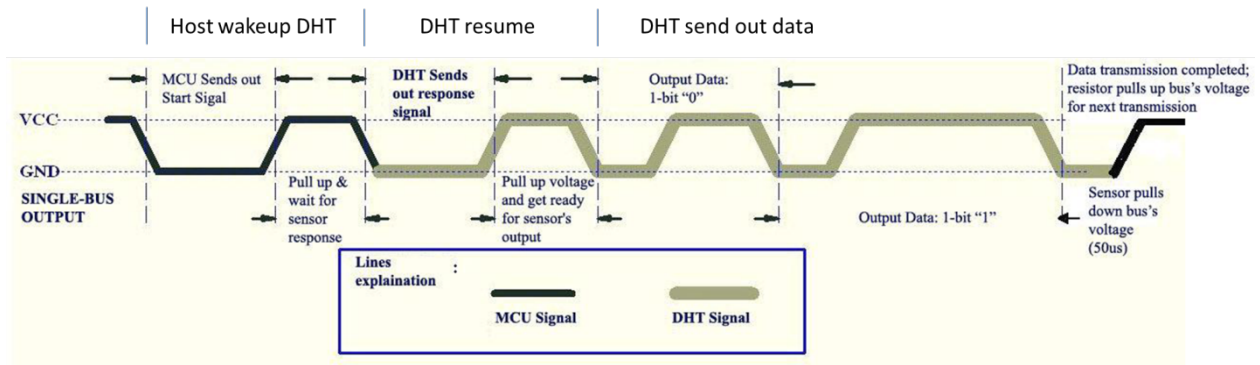


Since one of the 4 pins has no function, there are temperature/humidity sensors with only 3 pins on the market:

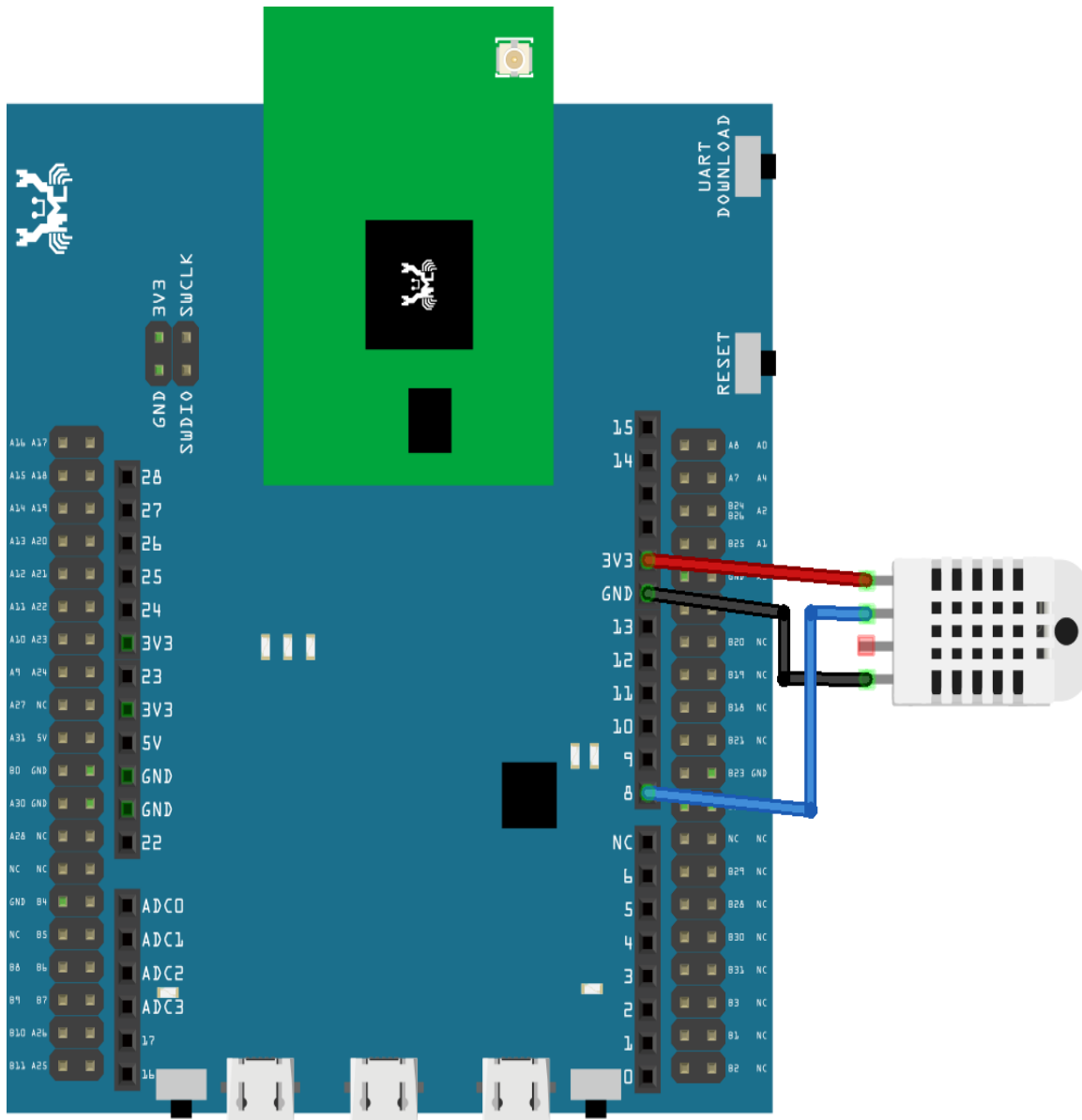


DHT is normally in the sleeping mode. To get the temperature/humidity data, please follow the steps:

1. **Awake DHT:** Ameba toggles low its DATA pin of GPIO. Now the DATA pin of GPIO serves as digital out to Ameba.
2. **DHT response:** DHT also toggle low its DATA pin of GPIO. Now the DATA pin of GPIO serves as digital in for Ameba.
3. **DHT sends data:** DHT sends out the temperature/humidity data (which has size 5 bytes) in a bit by bit manner. To represent each bit, DHT first pull low the DATA GPIO pin for a while and then pull high. If the duration of high is smaller than low, it stands for bit 0. Otherwise it stands for bit 1.



RTL8722 wiring diagram:



Open the sample code in “Files” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaGPIO” -> “DHT_Tester”. Compile and upload to Ameba, then press the reset button. The result would be shown on the Serial Monitor.

```
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]
DHTxx test!
Humidity: 61.00 %      Temperature: 25.00 *C 77.00 *F  Heat index: 25.15 *C 77.27 *F
Humidity: 61.00 %      Temperature: 25.00 *C 77.00 *F  Heat index: 25.15 *C 77.27 *F
Humidity: 61.00 %      Temperature: 25.00 *C 77.00 *F  Heat index: 25.15 *C 77.27 *F
Humidity: 61.00 %      Temperature: 25.00 *C 77.00 *F  Heat index: 25.15 *C 77.27 *F
Humidity: 61.00 %      Temperature: 25.00 *C 77.00 *F  Heat index: 25.15 *C 77.27 *F
Humidity: 61.00 %      Temperature: 25.00 *C 77.00 *F  Heat index: 25.15 *C 77.27 *F
Humidity: 61.00 %      Temperature: 25.00 *C 77.00 *F  Heat index: 25.15 *C 77.27 *F
Humidity: 61.00 %      Temperature: 25.00 *C 77.00 *F  Heat index: 25.15 *C 77.27 *F
Humidity: 61.00 %      Temperature: 25.00 *C 77.00 *F  Heat index: 25.15 *C 77.27 *F
Humidity: 61.00 %      Temperature: 25.00 *C 77.00 *F  Heat index: 25.15 *C 77.27 *F
Humidity: 61.00 %      Temperature: 25.00 *C 77.00 *F  Heat index: 25.15 *C 77.27 *F
Humidity: 61.00 %      Temperature: 25.00 *C 77.00 *F  Heat index: 25.15 *C 77.27 *F
Humidity: 61.00 %      Temperature: 25.00 *C 77.00 *F  Heat index: 25.15 *C 77.27 *F
Humidity: 61.00 %      Temperature: 25.00 *C 77.00 *F  Heat index: 25.15 *C 77.27 *F
Humidity: 61.00 %      Temperature: 25.00 *C 77.00 *F  Heat index: 25.15 *C 77.27 *F
Humidity: 91.00 %      Temperature: 25.00 *C 77.00 *F  Heat index: 25.93 *C 78.68 *F
Humidity: 91.00 %      Temperature: 27.00 *C 80.60 *F  Heat index: 31.27 *C 88.28 *F
Humidity: 91.00 %      Temperature: 27.00 *C 80.60 *F  Heat index: 31.27 *C 88.28 *F
Humidity: 91.00 %      Temperature: 27.00 *C 80.60 *F  Heat index: 31.27 *C 88.28 *F
Humidity: 92.00 %      Temperature: 28.00 *C 82.40 *F  Heat index: 34.46 *C 94.03 *F
```

Code Reference

Use `dht.readHumidity()` read the humidity value, and use `dht.readTemperature()` to read the temperature value.

Every time we read the temperature/humidity data, Ameba uses the buffered temperature/humidity data unless it found the data has expired (i.e., has not been updated for over 2 seconds). If the data is expired, Ameba issues a request to DHT to read the latest data.

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] GPIO - Use GPIO Interrupt To Control LED

Preparation

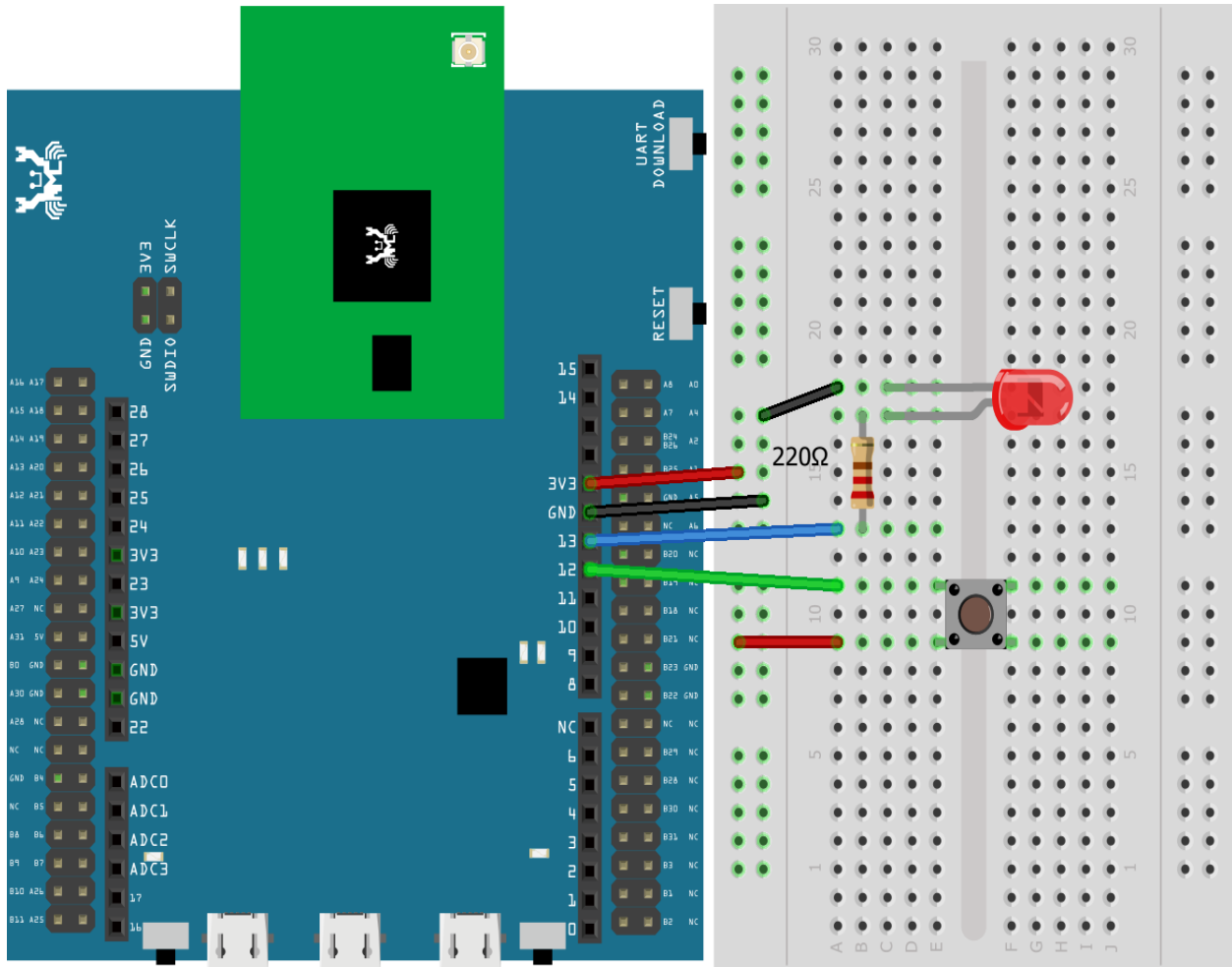
- Ameba x 1
- LED x 1
- Button x 1

Example

In this example, we use a button to trigger interrupt and control the LED. When we press and release the button, the LED dims, press and release the button again, and the LED lights. Note that in the Arduino example “Button and LED”, LED only lights when the button is pressed and hold, when we release the button, the LED dims.

Open the example, “Files” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaGPIO” -> “LED_InterruptCtrl”

RTL8722 wiring diagram:



Compile and upload the program, press reset.

The LED lights at first. Press and release the button, then the LED should dim. Press again, then the LED should light.

Code Reference

In

```
setup()
```

we set Pin 12 to

```
INPUT_IRQ_RISE
```

, this means that an interrupt occurs when the voltage of this pin changes from GND to 3V3. Therefore, we connect the other side of the button to 3V3, so as to trigger interrupt event when the button is pressed.

```
pinMode(button, INPUT_IRQ_RISE);
```

On the other hand, we can set pin 12 to

```
INPUT_IRQ_FALL
```

, this means that an interrupt occurs when the voltage of this pin changes from 3V3 to GND. In this case, the other side of the button is connected to GND. Next, we need to specify the function to be executed to handle the interrupt:

```
digitalSetIrqHandler(button, button_handler);
```

The second parameter is a function pointer, with prototype:

```
void button_handler(uint32_t id, uint32_t event)
```

In this handler, every time we press and release the button, we trigger an interrupt, and change the status of the LED.

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] PWM – Play Music

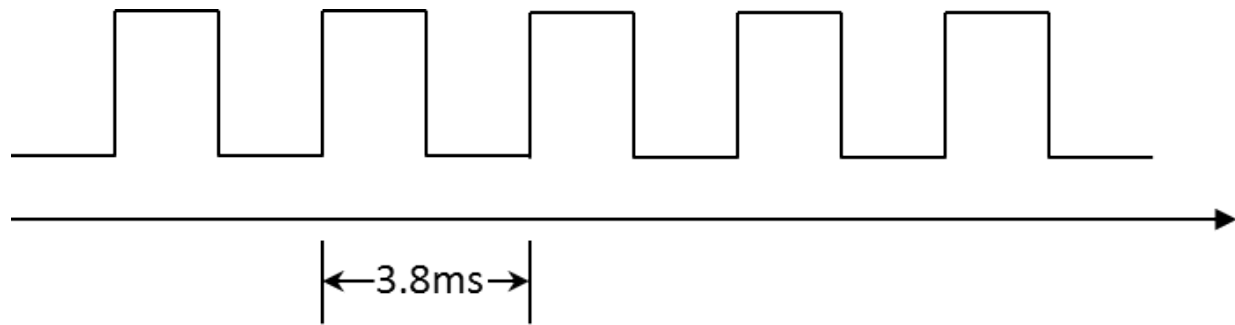
Preparation

- Ameba x 1
- Buzzer x 1

Example

A sound is composed of volume, tone and timbre. Volume is determined by the amplitude of the sound wave. Tone is determined by the frequency of the sound wave. Timbre is determined by the waveform of the sound wave.

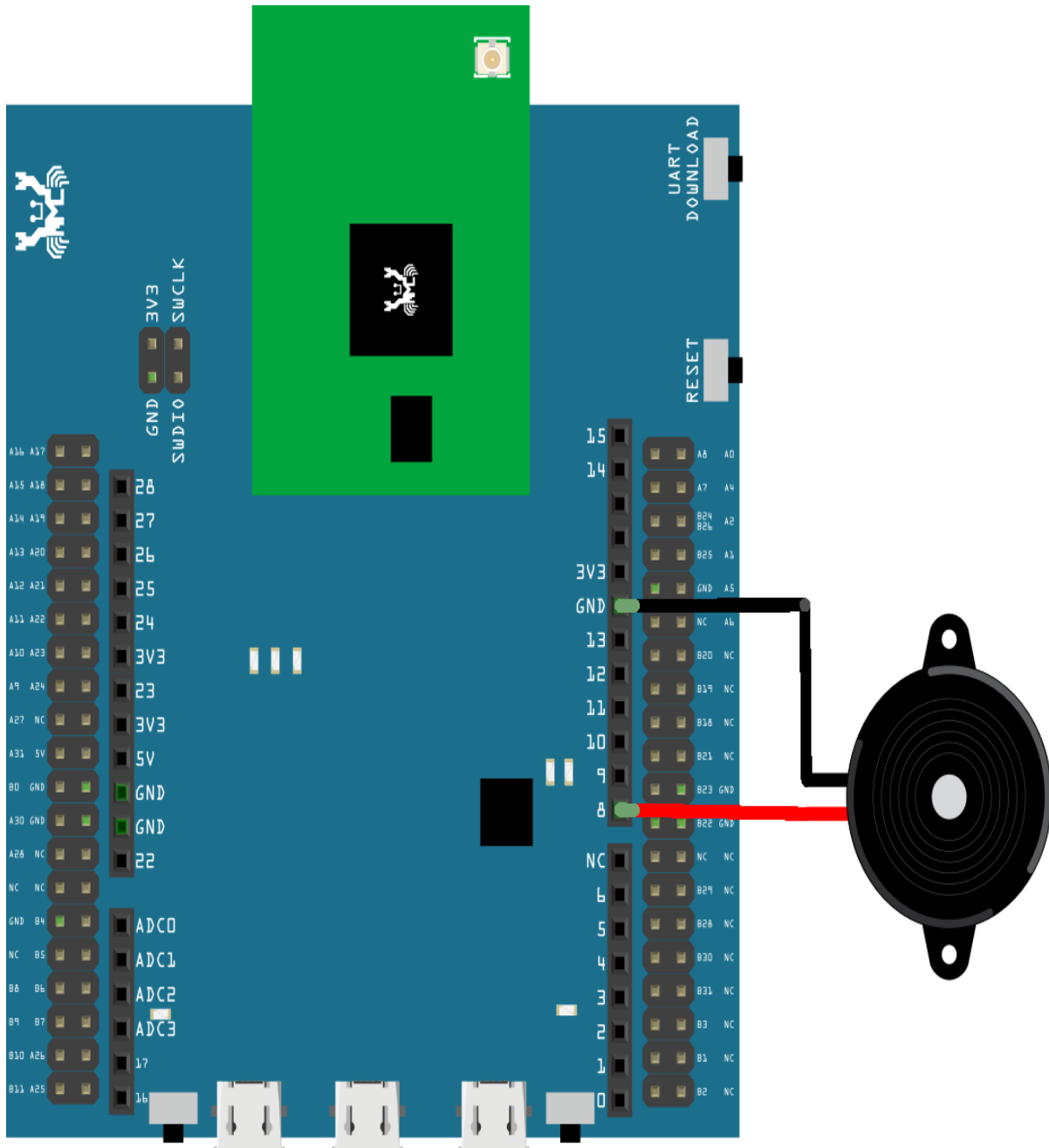
In this example, we use PWM to control the buzzer to emit sound with desired tone. As PWM outputs square wave, if we wish to emit tone C4 (frequency=262Hz), we have to make PWM to output square wave with wavelength $1/262 = 3.8\text{ms}$:



We use PWM to output sound wave with different frequency, so as to play music by the buzzer.

Connect the buzzer to the PWM output pin shown in the following diagrams.

RTL8722 wiring diagram:



Open the example code in “Examples” -> “AmebaAnalog” -> “TonePlayMelody”
 Compile and upload to Ameba, press the reset button. Then you can hear the buzzer playing music.

Code Reference

Ameba implement the `tone()` and `noTone()` API of Arduino:

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/Tone>

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/NoTone>

In the sample code, we initiate a melody array, which stores the tones to make. Another array, noteDurations, contains the length of each tone, 4 represents quarter note (equals to $3000\text{ms}/4 = 750\text{ms}$, and plus an extra 30% time pause), 8 represents eighth note.

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] PWM – Using A Servo

Preparation

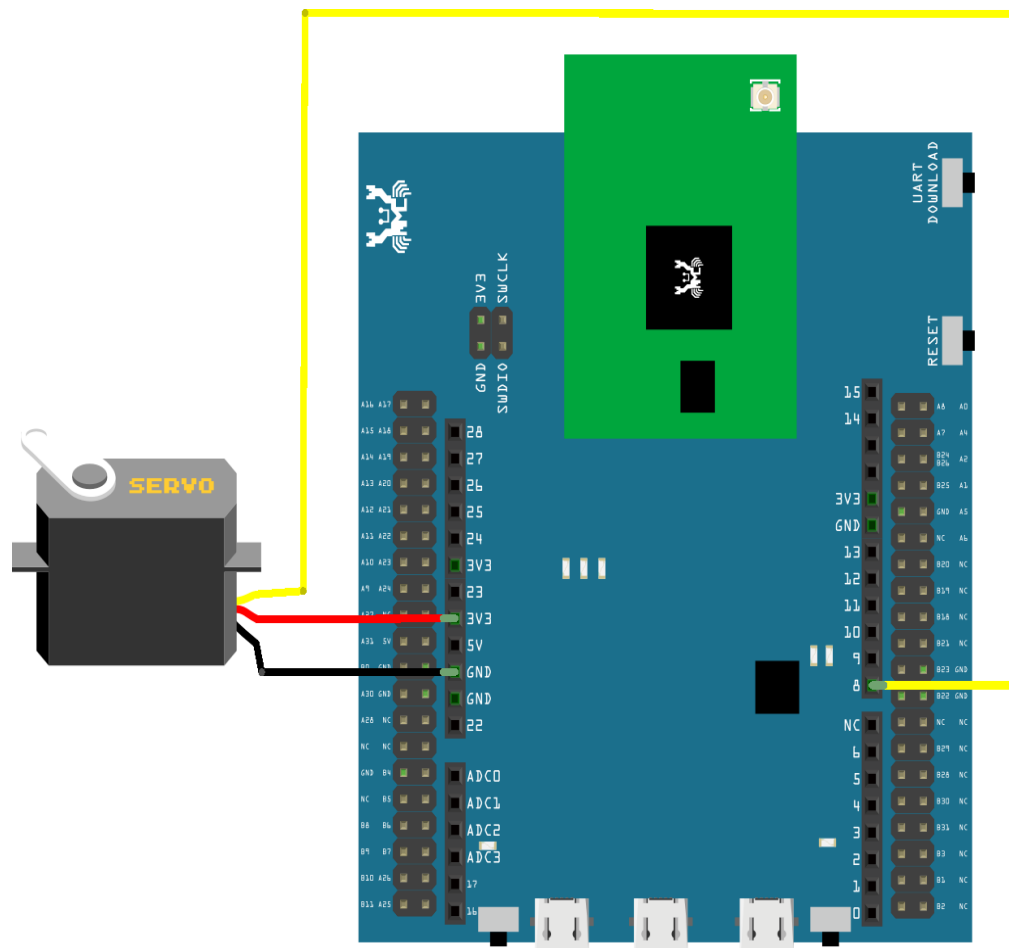
- Ameba x 1
- Servo x 1 (Ex. Tower Pro SG90)

Example

A typical servo has 3 wires, the red wire is for power, black or brown one should be connected to GND, and the other one is for signal data. We use PWM signal to control the rotation angle of the axis of the servo. The frequency of the signal is 50Hz, that is length 20ms. Each servo defines its pulse bandwidth, which is usually 1ms~2ms.

To control the rotation angle, for example if 1ms-length pulse rotates the axis to degree 0, then 1.5 ms pulse rotates the axis to 90 degrees, and 2 ms pulse rotates the axis to 180 degrees. Furthermore, a servo defines the “dead bandwidth”, which stands for the required minimum difference of the length of two consecutive pulse for the servo to work.

RTL8722 wiring diagram:



Open the example, “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaAnalog” -> “ServoSweep”

This example makes the servo to rotate from degree 0 to 180, and then rotate back to degree 0.

Code Reference

The Servo API of Ameba is similar to the API of Arduino. To distinguish from the original API of Arduino, we name the header file “AmebaServo.h” and the Class “AmebaServo”, the usage is identical to the Arduino API.

The default pulse bandwidth of Arduino Servo is 0.5ms~2.4ms, which is the same as Tower Pro SG90. Therefore, we set the attached pin directly:

```
myservo.attach(9);
```

Next, rotate the axis to desired position:

```
myservo.write(pos);
```

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] I2C - Communicate with Arduino UNO via I2C

Introduction of I2C

- **There are two roles in the operation of I2C, one is “master”, the other is “slave”.** Only one master is allowed and can be connected to many slaves. Each slave has its unique address, which is used in the communication between master and the slave. I2C uses two pins, one is for data transmission (SDA), the other is for the clock (SCL). Master uses the SCL to inform slave of the upcoming data transmission, and the data is transmitted through SDA. The I2C example was named “Wire” in the Arduino example.

Materials

- Ameba x 1
- Arduino UNOx 1

Example

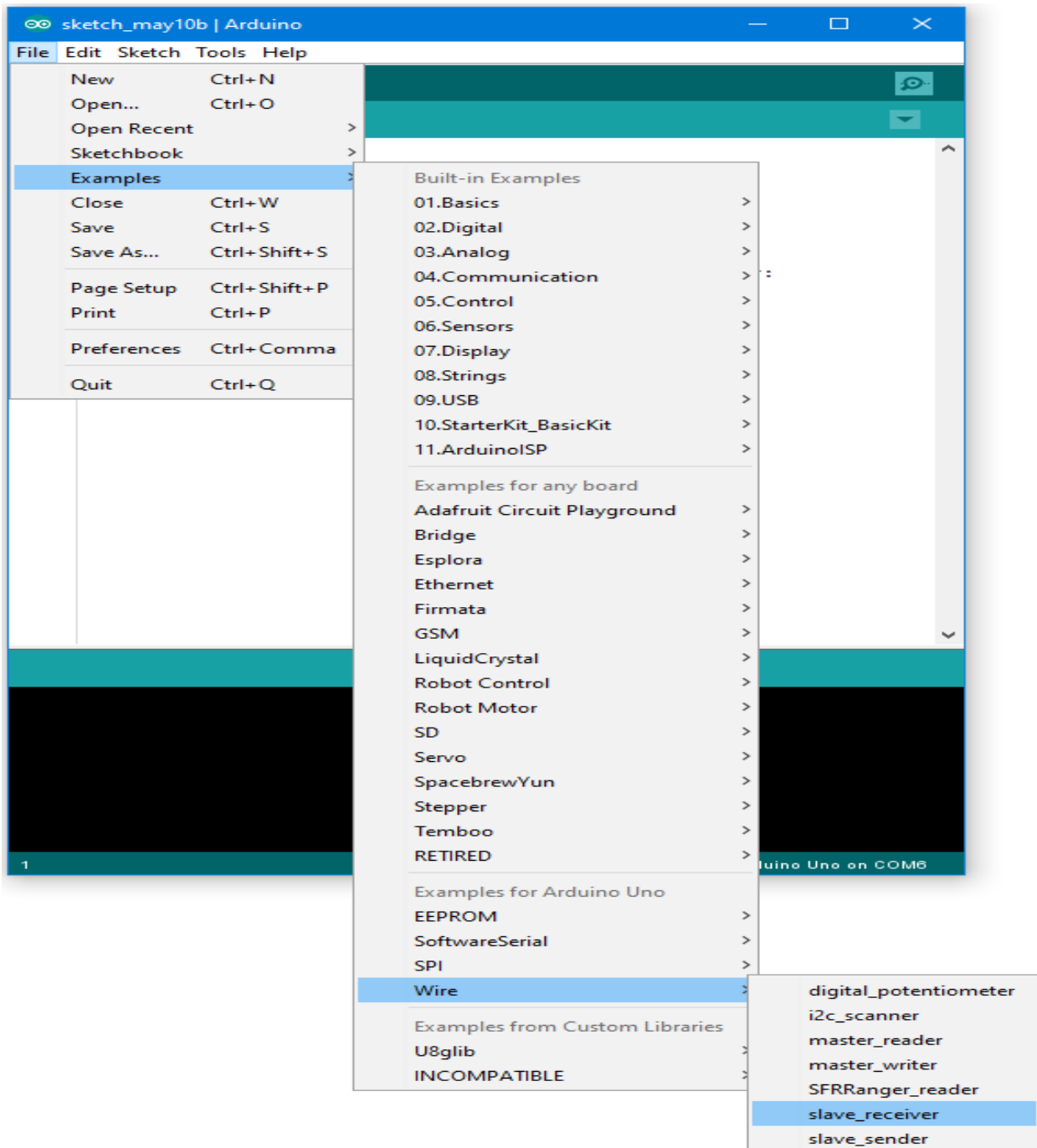
In this example, we use Ameba as the I2C master writer, and use Arduino as the I2C slave receiver.

When the I2C slave receives string sent from I2C master, it prints the received string.

- Setting up Arduino Uno to be I2C Slave

First, select Arduino in the Arduino IDE in “Tools” -> “Board” -> “Arduino Uno”

Open the “Slave Receiver” example in “Examples” -> “Wire” -> “slave_receiver”:

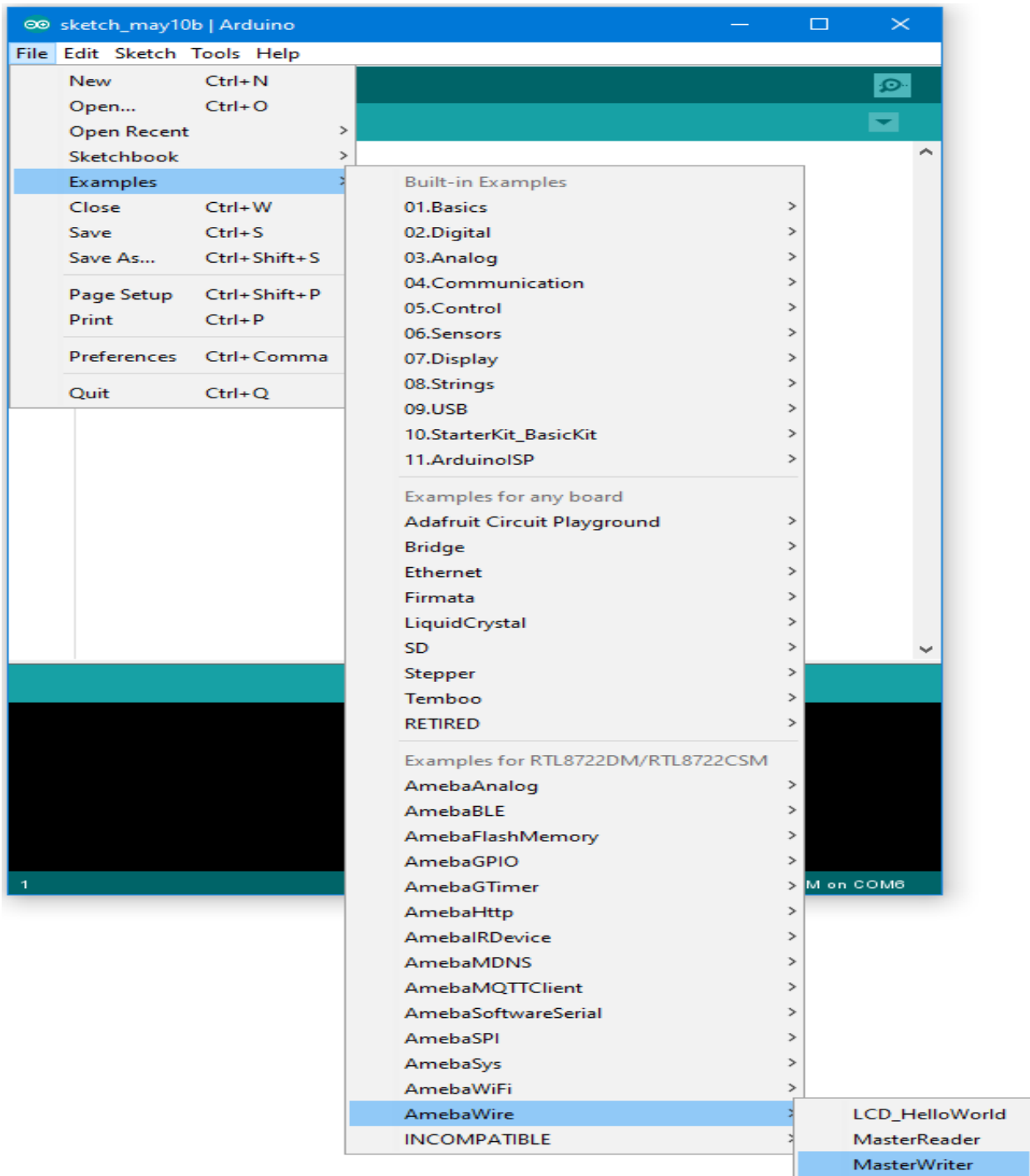


Then click “Sketch” -> “Upload” to compile and upload the example to Arduino Uno.

- Setting up Ameba to be I2C Master

Next, open another window of Arduino IDE, make sure to choose your Ameba development board in the IDE: “Tools” -> “Board”

Then open the “Master Writer” example in “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaWire” -> “MasterWriter”

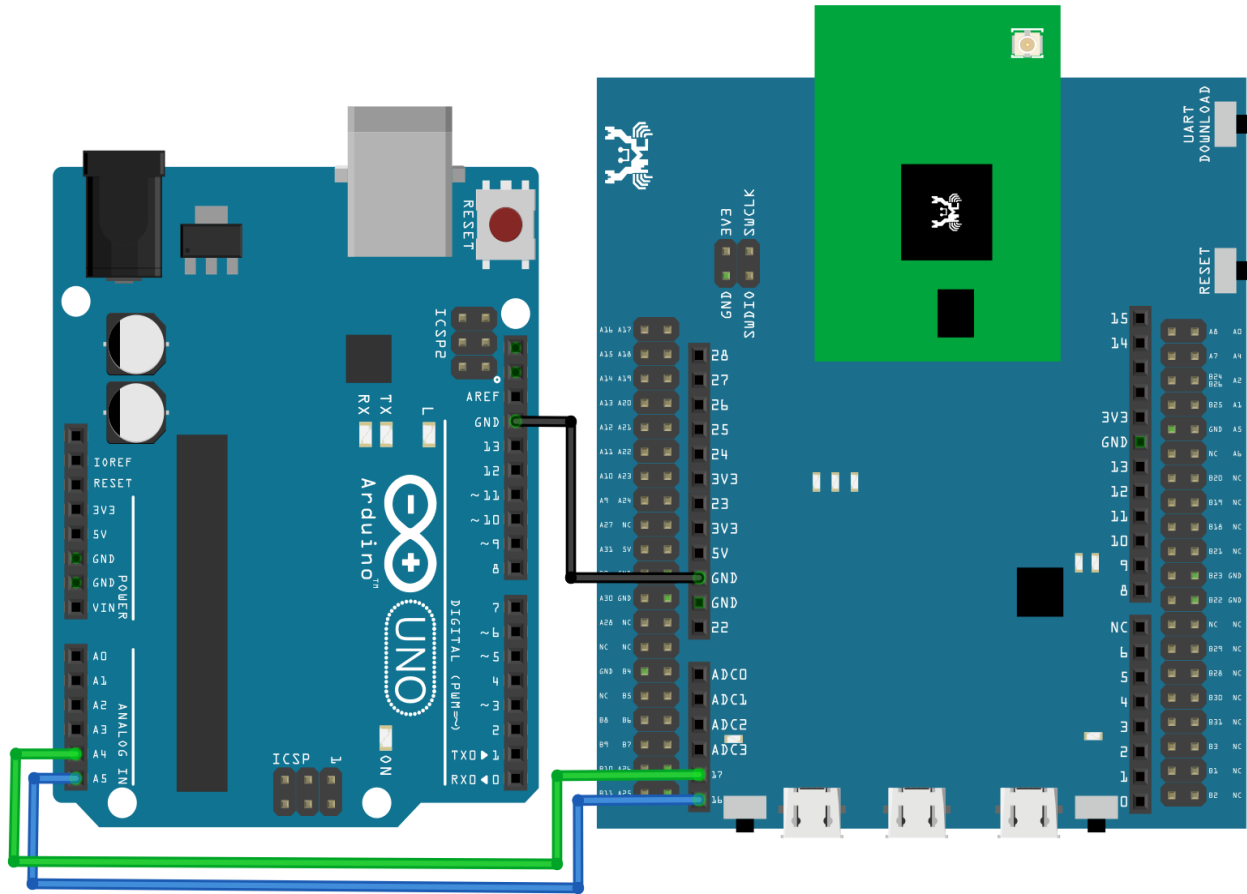


- Wiring

The Arduino example uses A4 as the I2C SDA and A5 as the I2C SCL.

Another important thing is that the GND pins of Arduino and Ameba should be connected to each other.

RTL8722 wiring diagram:

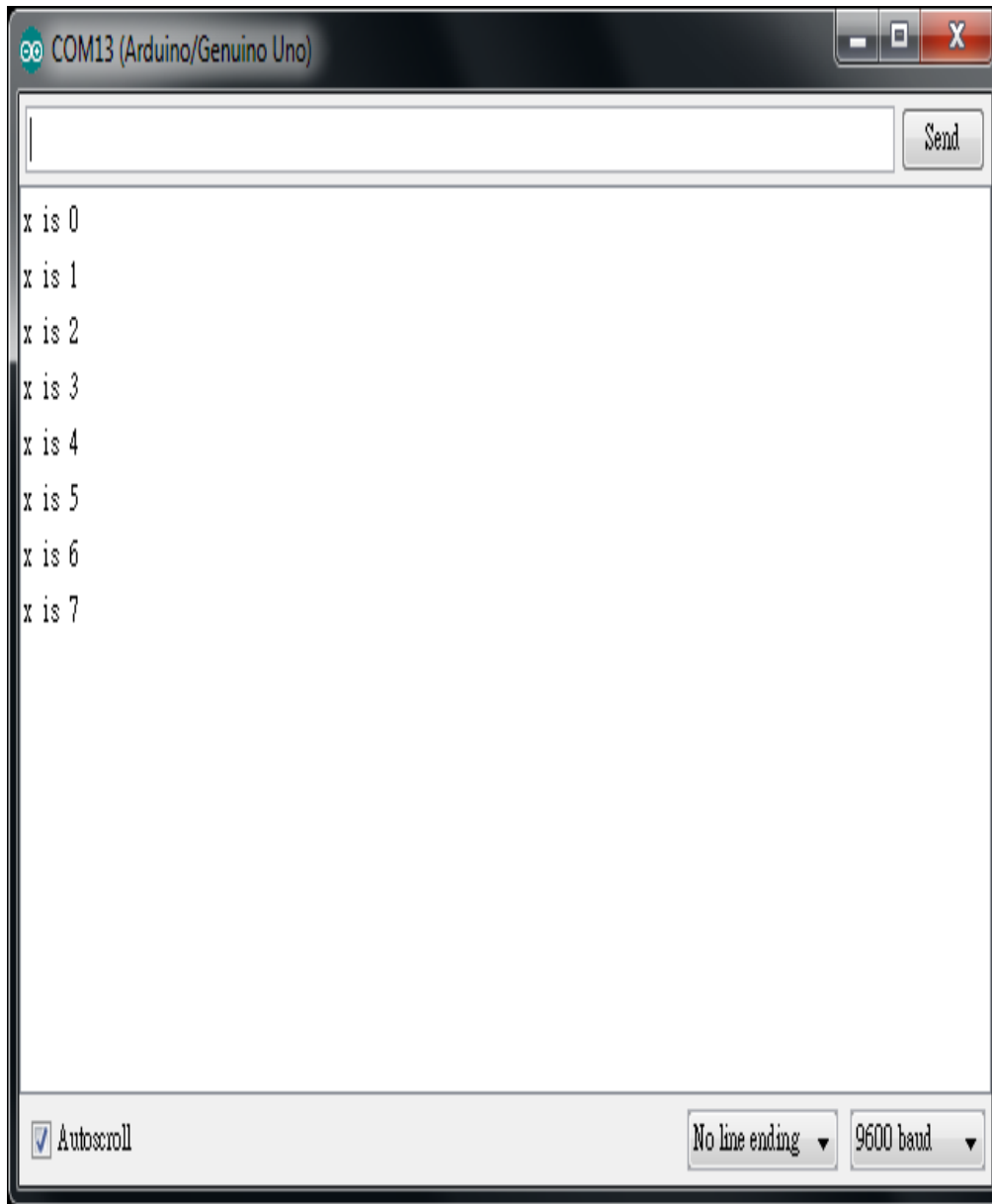


Open the Arduino IDE of the Arduino Uno and open the serial monitor (“Tools” -> “Serial Monitor”).

In the Serial Monitor, you can see the messages printed from Arduino Uno.

Next, press the reset button on Arduino Uno. Now the Arduino Uno is waiting for the connection from I2C Master.

We press the reset button on Ameba to start to send messages. Then observe the serial monitor, you can see the messages show up every half second.



Code Reference

You can find detailed information of this example in the documentation of Arduino:

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Tutorial/MasterWriter>

First use `Wire.begin()/Wire.begin(address)` to join the I2C bus as a master or slave, in the Master case the address is not required.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WireBegin>

Next, the Master uses `Wire.beginTransmission(address)` to begin a transmission to the I2C slave with the given address:

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WireBeginTransmission>

Uses `Wire.write()` to send data, and finally use `Wire.endTransmission()` to end a transmission to a Slave and transmits the bytes that were queued:

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WireEndTransmission>

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] I2C - Use I2C to receive data from Arduino UNO

Materials

- Ameba x 1
- Arduino UNO x 1

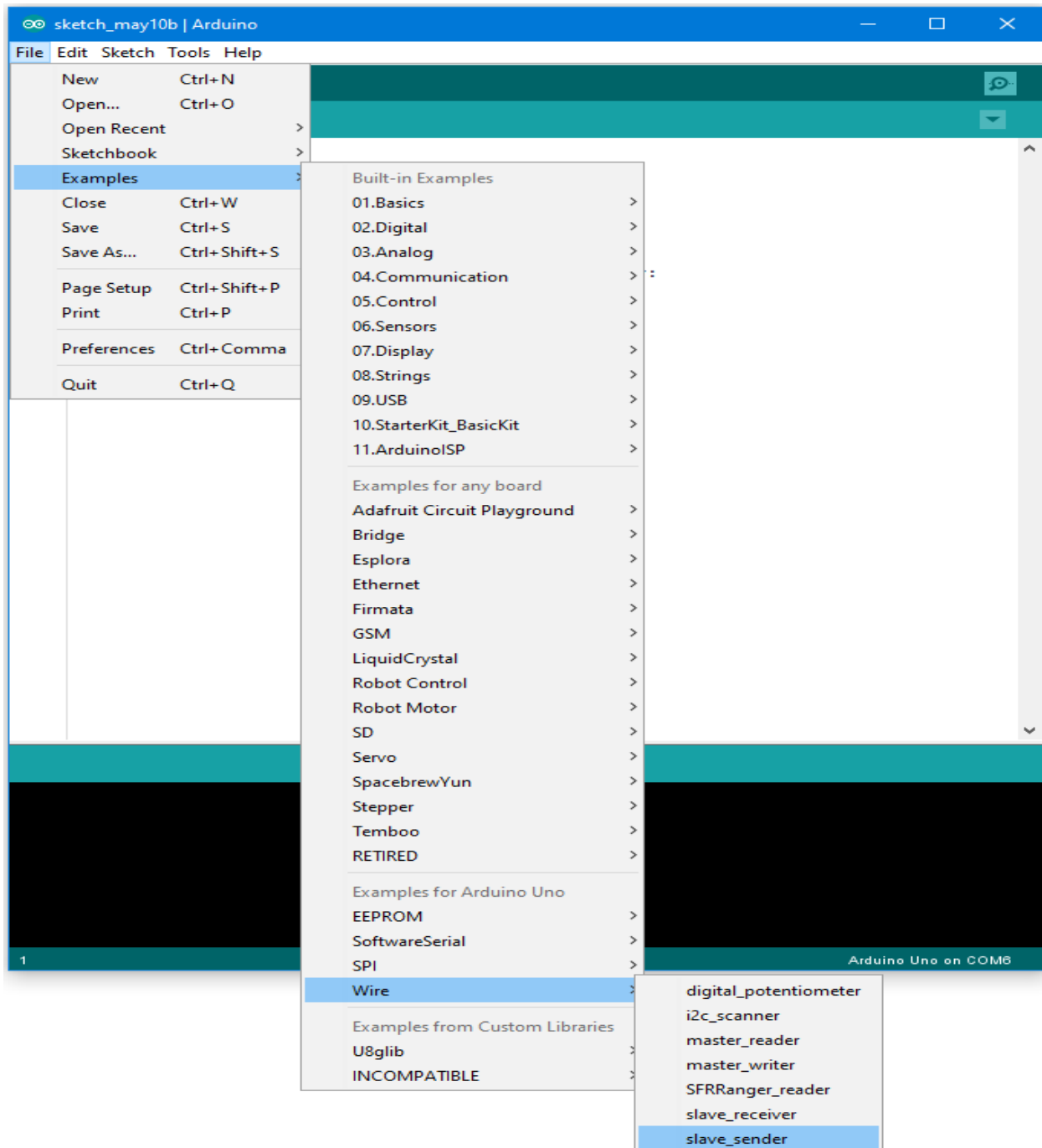
Example

In the previous example “[I2C – Communicate with Arduino UNO via I2C](#)”, Ameba, the I2C master, transmits data to the Arduino UNO, the I2C slave. As to this example, Ameba is the I2C master, and receives data from the Arduino UNO, which is the I2C slave.

- **Setting up Arduino Uno to be I2C Slave**

First, select Arduino in the Arduino IDE in “Tools” -> “Board” -> “Arduino Uno”:

Open “Examples” -> “Wire” -> “slave_sender”

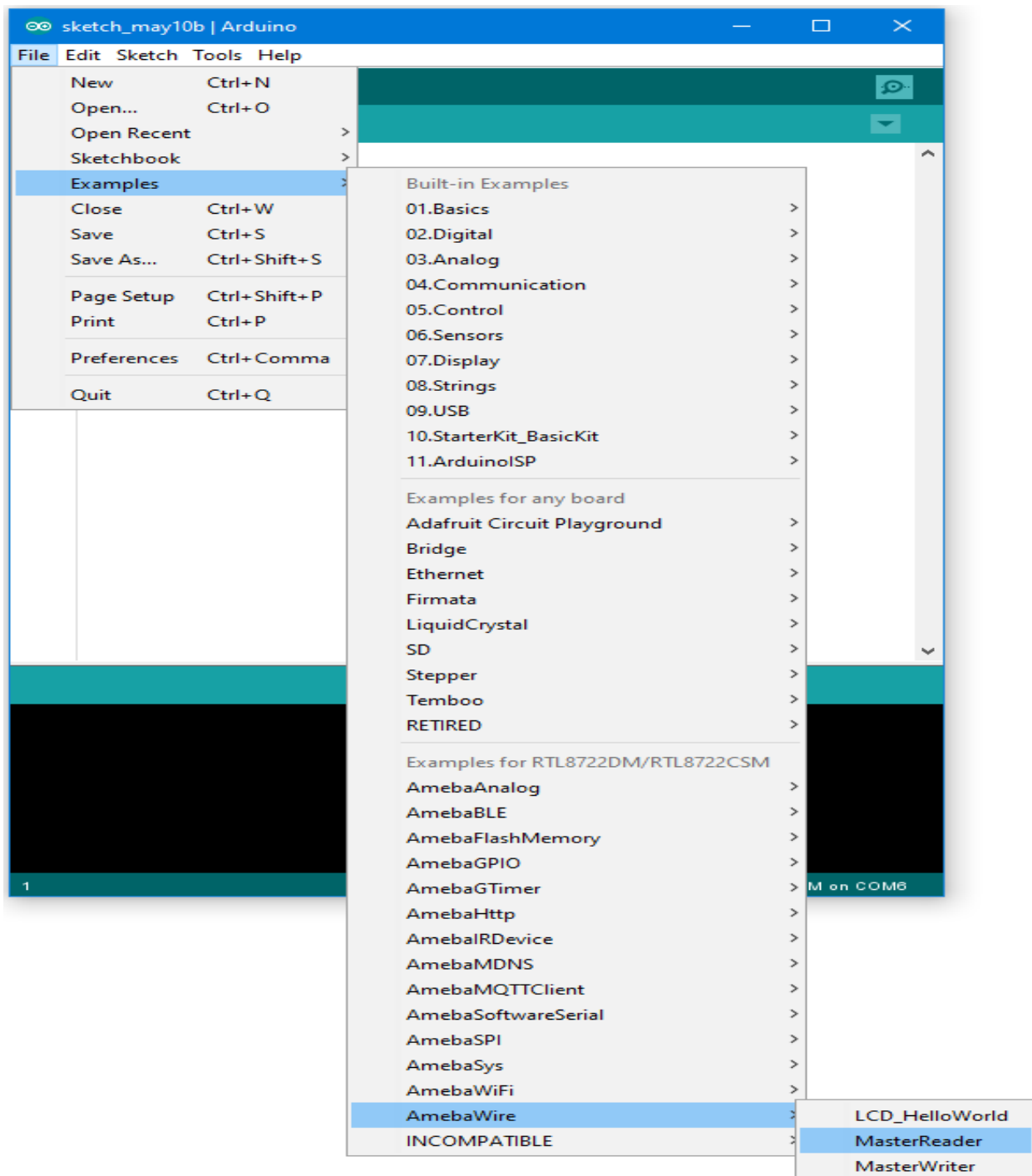


Then click “Sketch” -> “Upload” to compile and upload the example to Arduino Uno.

- **Setting up Ameba to be I2C Master**

Next, open another window of Arduino IDE, make sure to choose your Ameba development board in the IDE: “Tools” -> “Board”

Open “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaWire” -> “MasterReader”



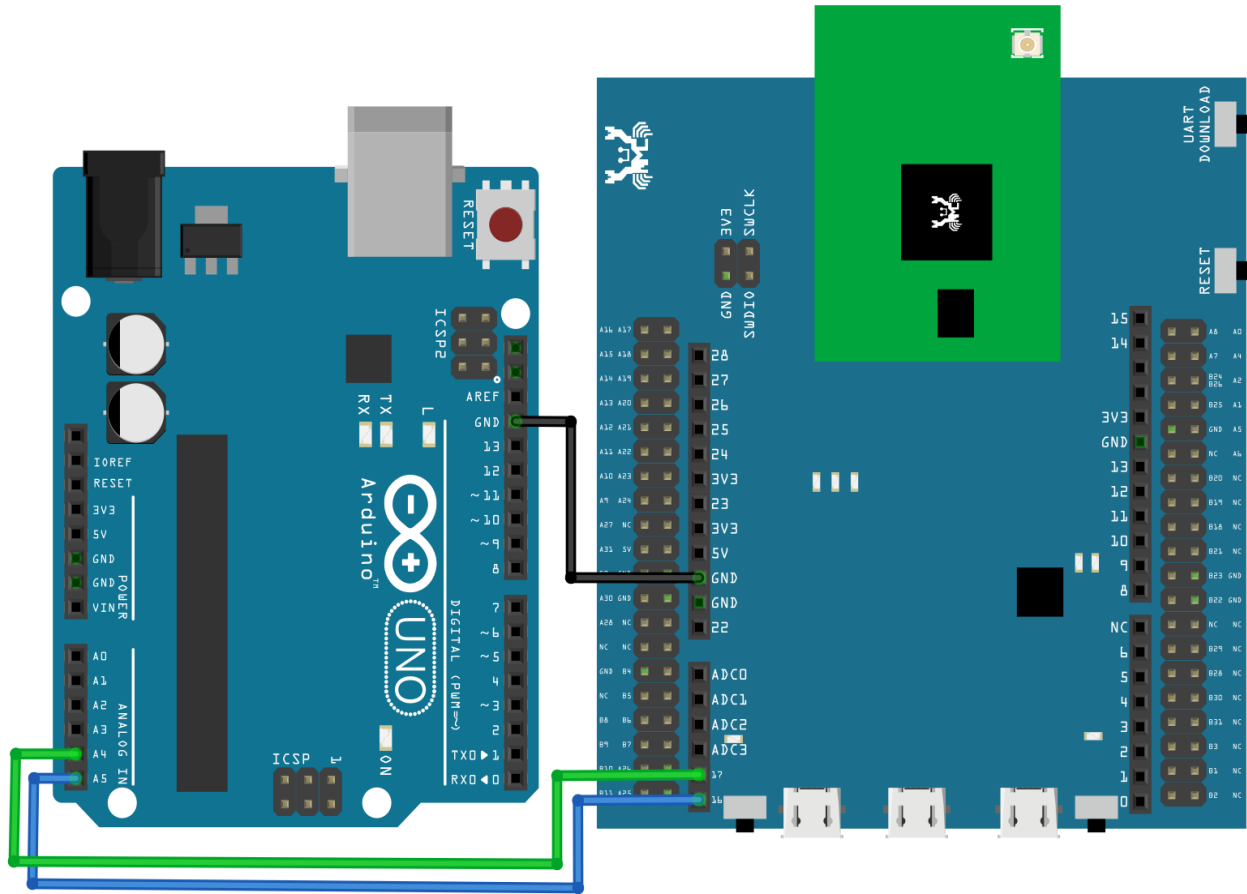
Click “Sketch” -> “Upload” to compile and upload the example to Ameba.

- **Wiring**

The Arduino example uses A4 as the I2C SDA and A5 as the I2C SCL.

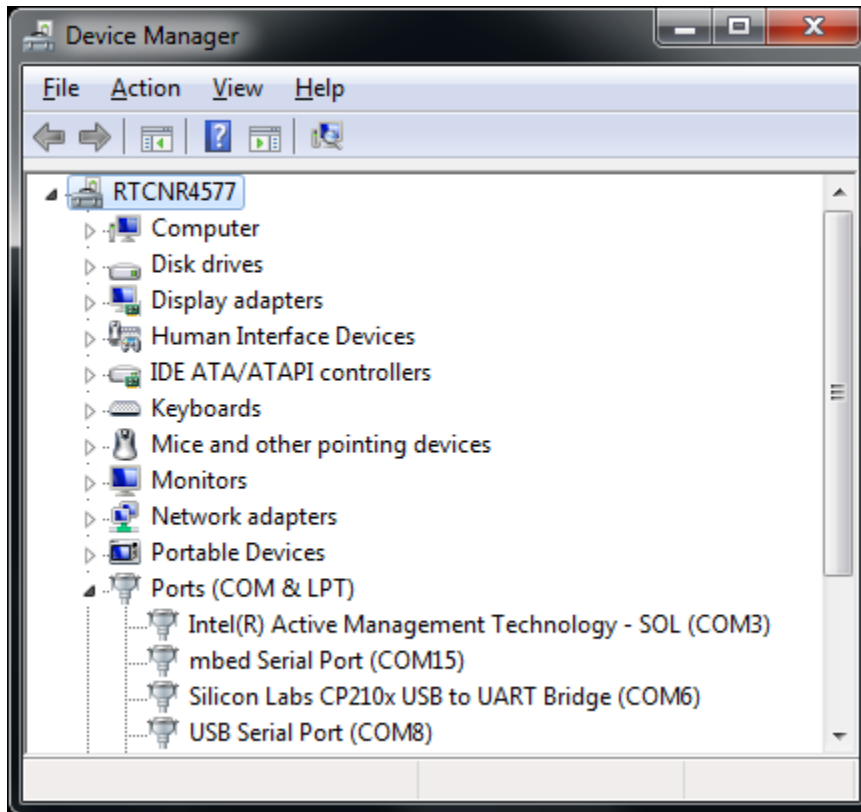
Another important thing is that the GND pins of Arduino and Ameba should be connected to each other.

RTL8722 wiring diagram:



Next, we will observe the data receive by Ameba in the Serial Monitor.

(Note: If you do not know which port the Ameba development board is connected to, please find it in the Device Manager of Windows first. Ameba is connected as “mbed Serial Port”. For example, if you find mbed Serial Port (COM15) means Ameba is connected to port COM15.)



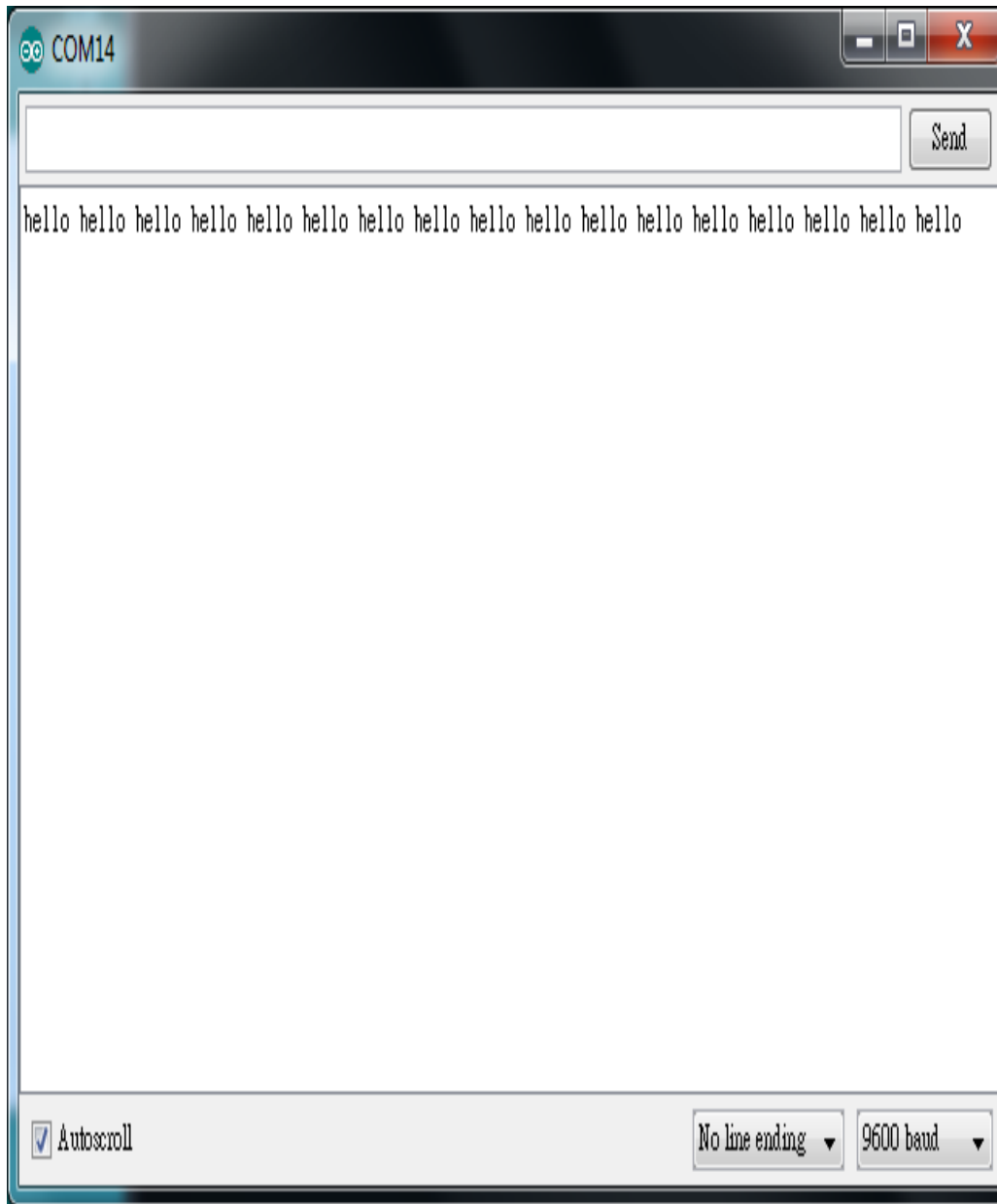
We select the port in “Tools” -> “Port” -> “COM15” (the port connected to Ameba)

Open the Arduino IDE window of the Ameba, go to “Tools” -> “Serial Monitor” to display the messages printed by Ameba.

Press the reset button on Arduino Uno, Arduino Uno now waits for connection from I2C master.

Then press the reset button on Ameba, Ameba will start to receive messages from Arduino Uno. And you can see the “hello ” message printed every half second in serial monitor.

(NOTE: If the message does not show in the Serial Monitor of Ameba, please close and open the serial monitor again.)



Code Reference

You can find detailed information of this example in the documentation of Arduino:

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Tutorial/MasterReader>

First use `Wire.begin()/Wire.begin(address)` to join the I2C bus as a master or slave, in the Master case the address is not required.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WireBegin>

Next, the Master uses `Wire.requestFrom()` to specify from which Slave to request data.

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WireRequestFrom>

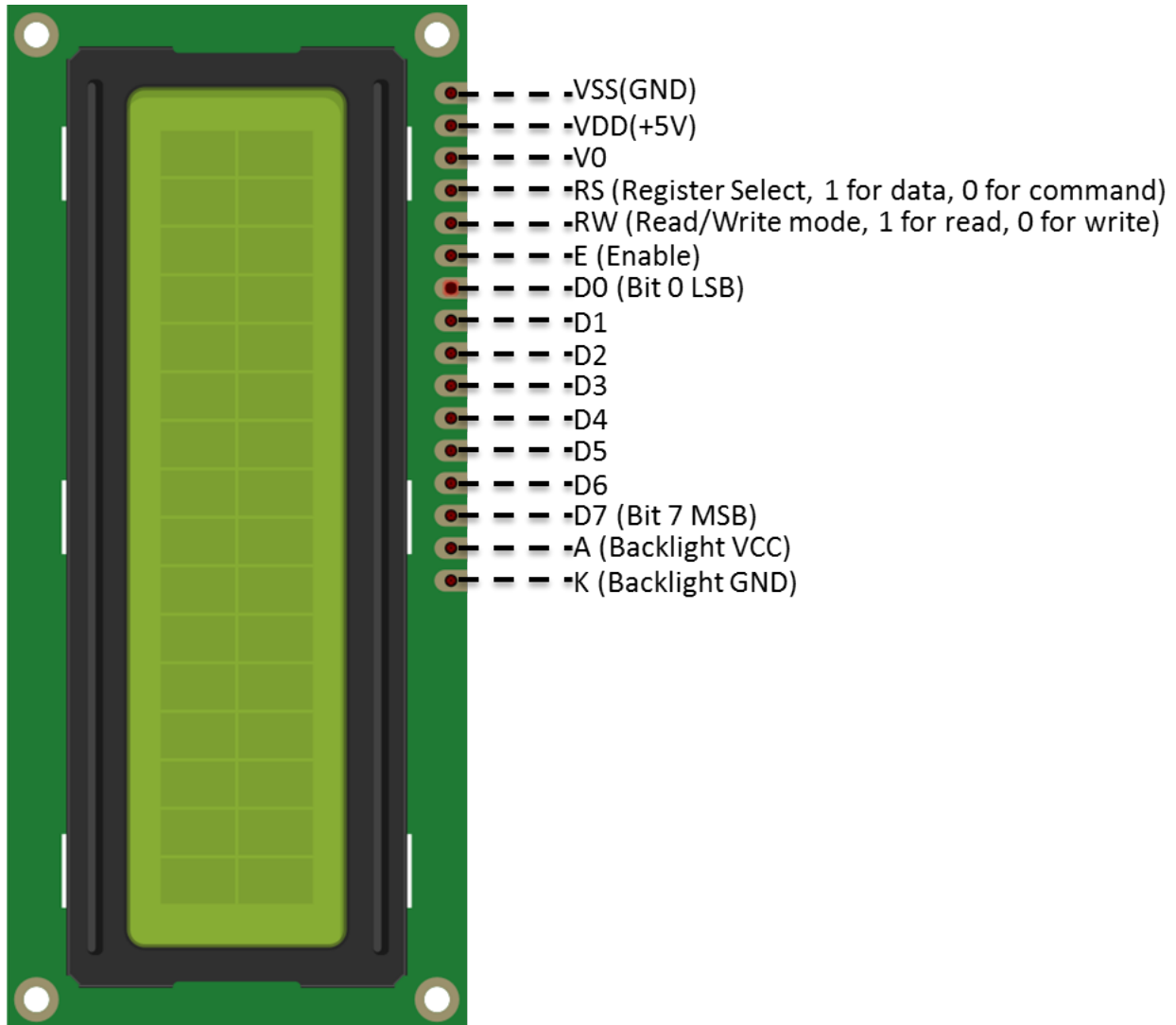
[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] I2C - Display Data On LCD Screen

Preparation

- Ameba x 1
- I2C 2×16 LCD

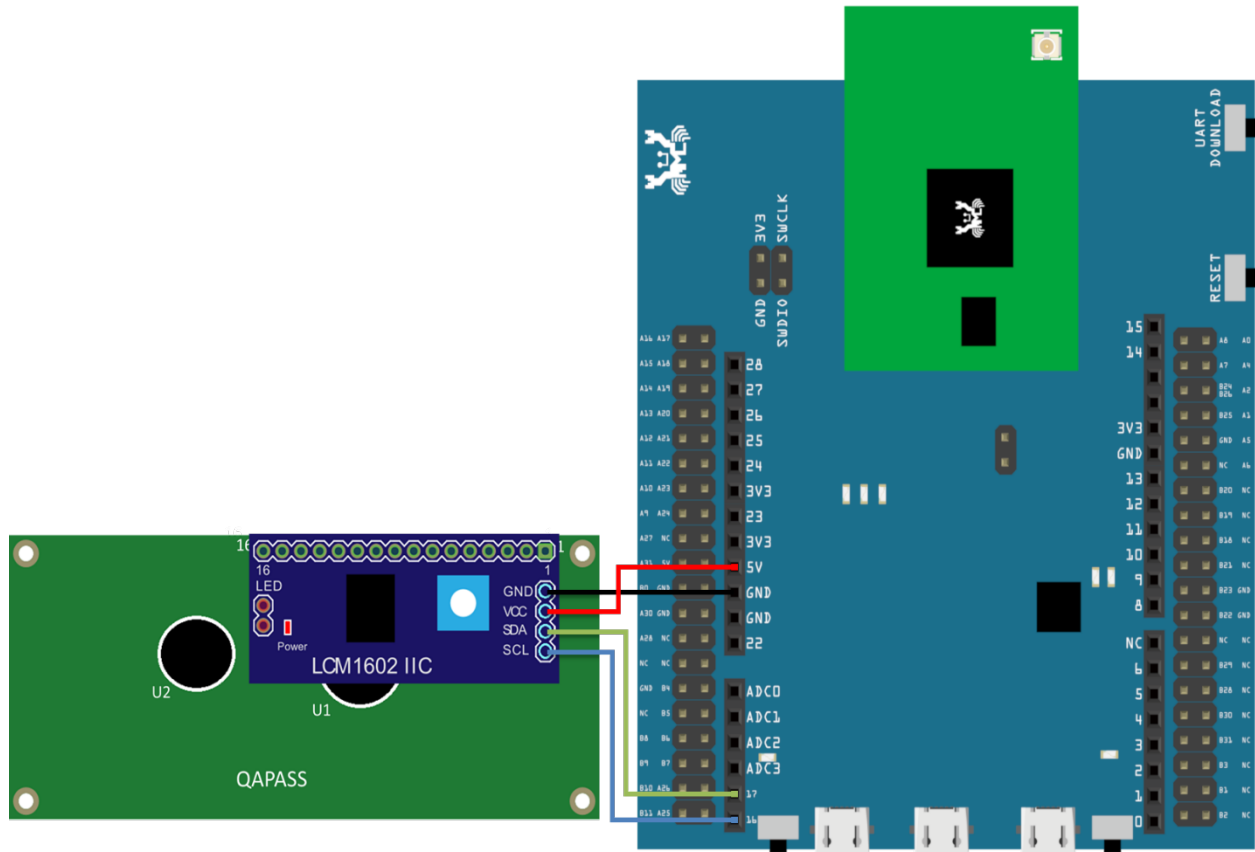
Example

Normally there are many pins on an LCD display, as shown in below figure.



An LCD display can be equipped with an additional processing chip to process the data. The processing chip can connect to a microcontroller using the I2C interface.

RTL8722 wiring diagram:



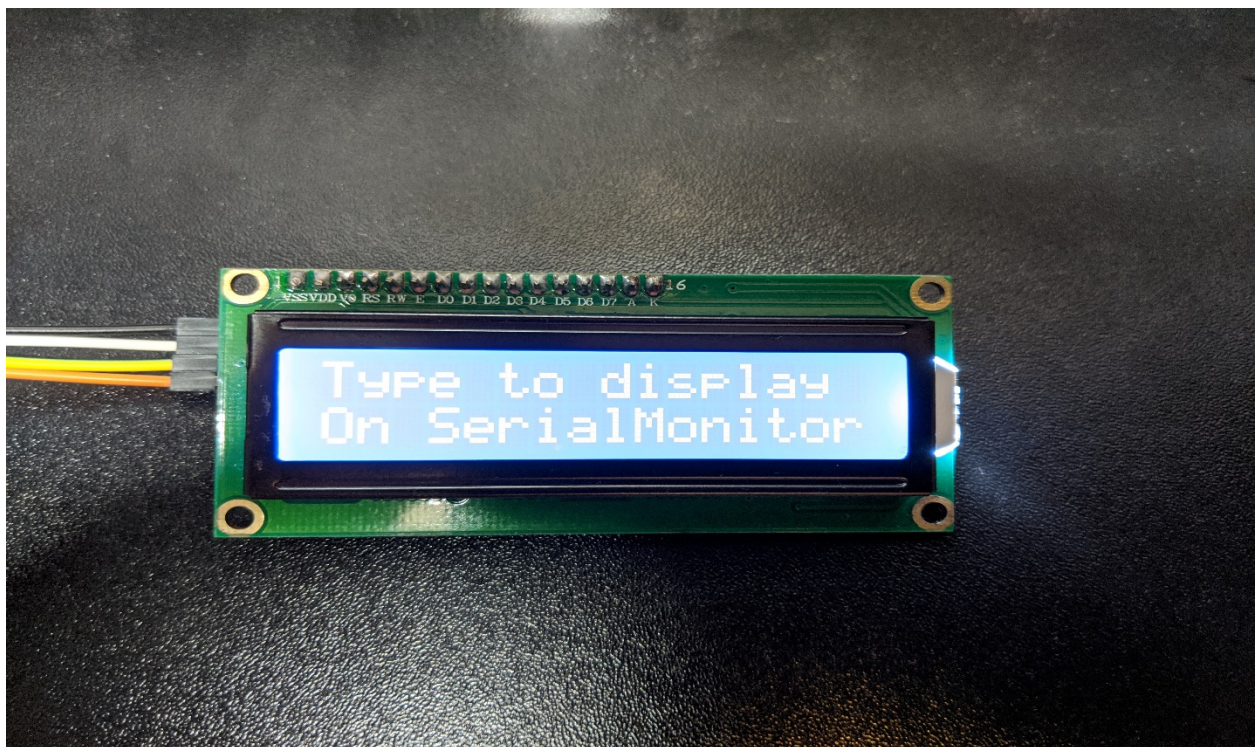
Open the example in “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaWire” -> “LCD_HelloWorld”.

Compile and upload to Ameba, then press the reset button.

Then you can see “Hello World” in the first line, and “Ameba” in the second line displayed on the LCD screen.



After 8 seconds, you can input to the Serial Monitor the string you would like to display on the LCD.



For example, we enter "123456789" and press "Send":



Code Reference

The required settings of each model of LCD might be different, the constructor we use in this example is:

```
LiquidCrystal_I2C(uint8_t lcd_Addr, uint8_t En, uint8_t Rw, uint8_t Rs,
uint8_t d4, uint8_t d5, uint8_t d6, uint8_t d7,
uint8_t backlighPin, t_backlighPol pol);
```

And the setting parameters are as follows:

```
LiquidCrystal_I2C lcd(0x27, 2, 1, 0, 4, 5, 6, 7, 3, POSITIVE); // Set the LCD I2C address
```

The first parameter 0x27 is the address of I2C. Each of the following 8 parameters represents the meaning of each bit in a byte, i.e., En is bit 2, Rw is bit 1, Rs is bit 0, d4 is bit 4, and so forth.

Call `backlight()` to light the screen,

Call `setCursor(0, 0)` to set the position of the cursor.

LCD inherits the Print class, so we can use `lcd.print()` to output string on the screen.

[RTL8722DM] [RTL8722DM] UART - Communicate with the computer via UART

Introduction of UART

- **UART uses two wire, one for transmitting and the other one for** receiving, so the data transmission is bidirectional. The communication uses a predefined frequency (baud rate) to transmit data. In Arduino, UART is called “Serial”. There is only one hardware UART on Arduino Uno and it is primarily used to read the log and messages printed by Arduino (so it is also called “Log UART”). If we use the hardware UART for other purposes, the Log UART does not have resources to function. To provide more UART connections, it is possible to use a GPIO pin to simulate the behavior of UART with a software approach, this is called Software Serial. Ameba is equipped with several hardware UART ports, but it is also compatible with the Software Serial library.

Materials

- Ameba x 1
- USB to TTL Adapter x 1

Example

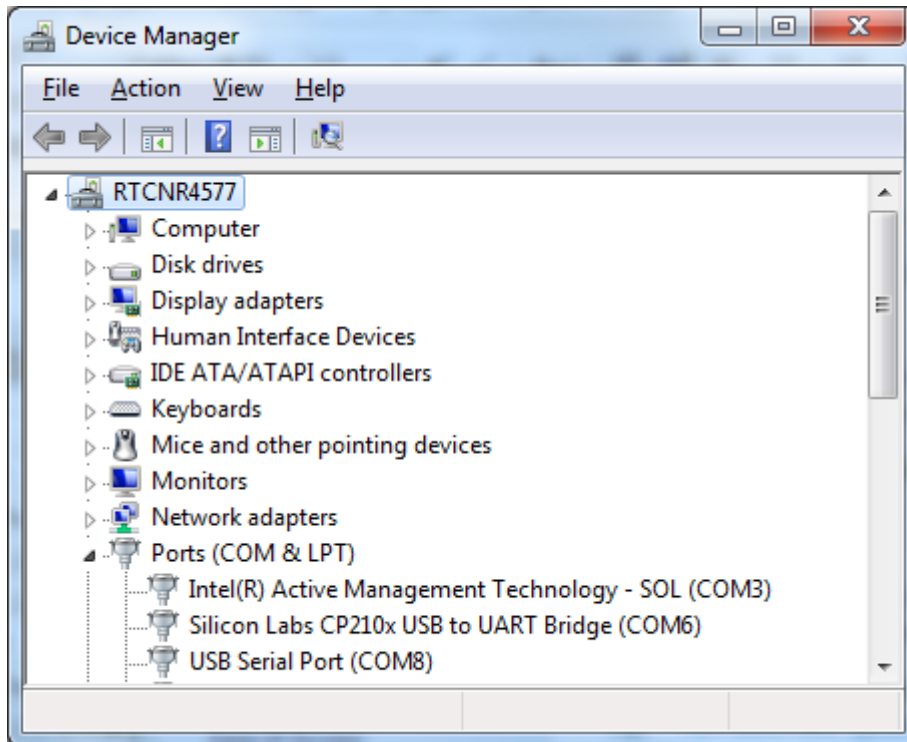
In this example, we use UART to connect USB to TTL adapter to Ameba.

USB to TTL adapter sends data to Ameba, the data would be returned by Ameba, and showed on the screen.

- **Install USB to TTL Adapter**

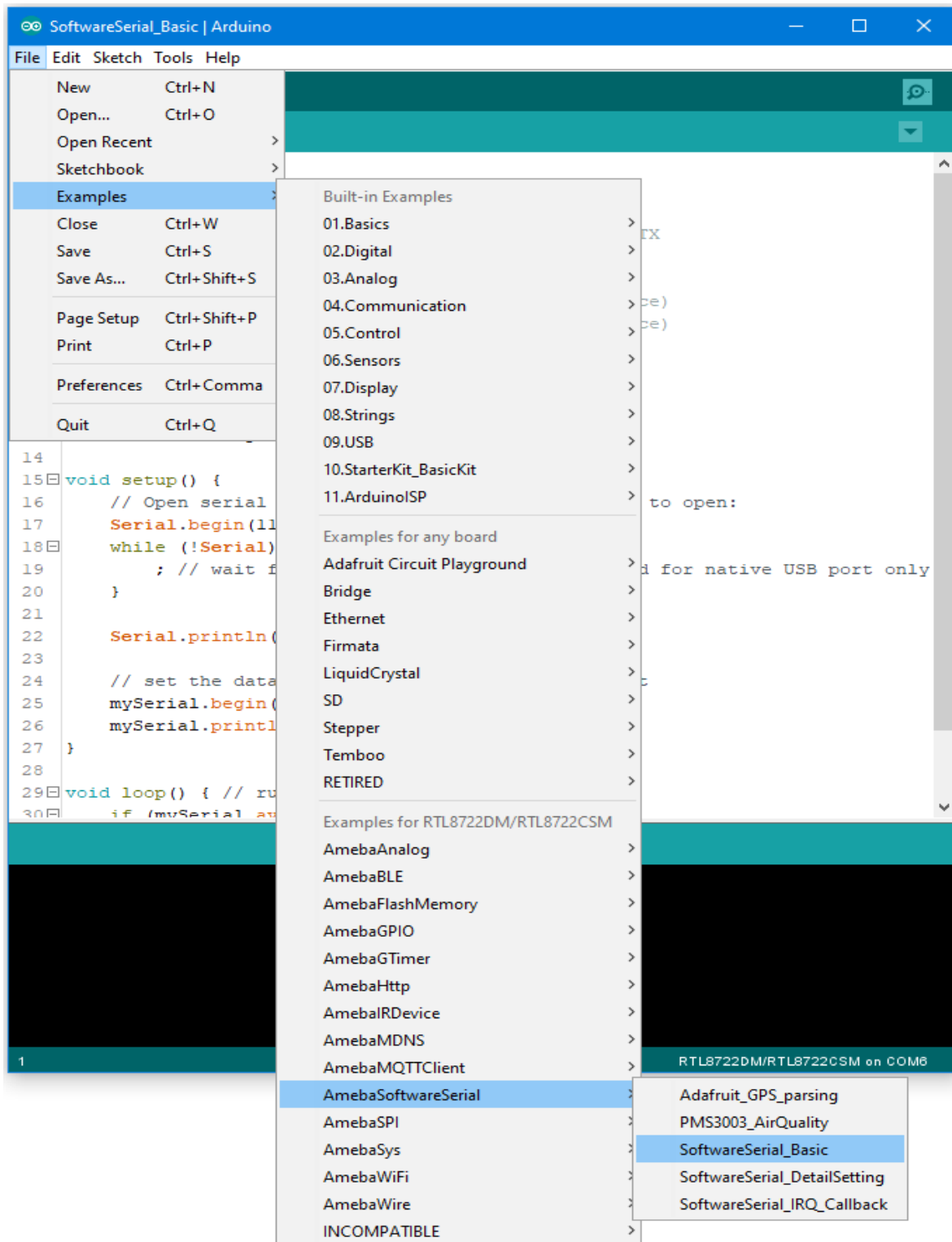
USB to TTL adapter converts USB to serial interface. Normally, there are at least 4 pins on the adapter, that is 3V3 (or 5V), GND, TX and RX. Generally, installing the driver for the USB to TTL adapter would be required before using it. If the adapter uses the chip of FTDI, Windows will search and install the driver automatically, otherwise, you may need to install corresponding driver yourself.

Afterwards, open device manager. You can find corresponding serial port number of the USB to TTL adapter:



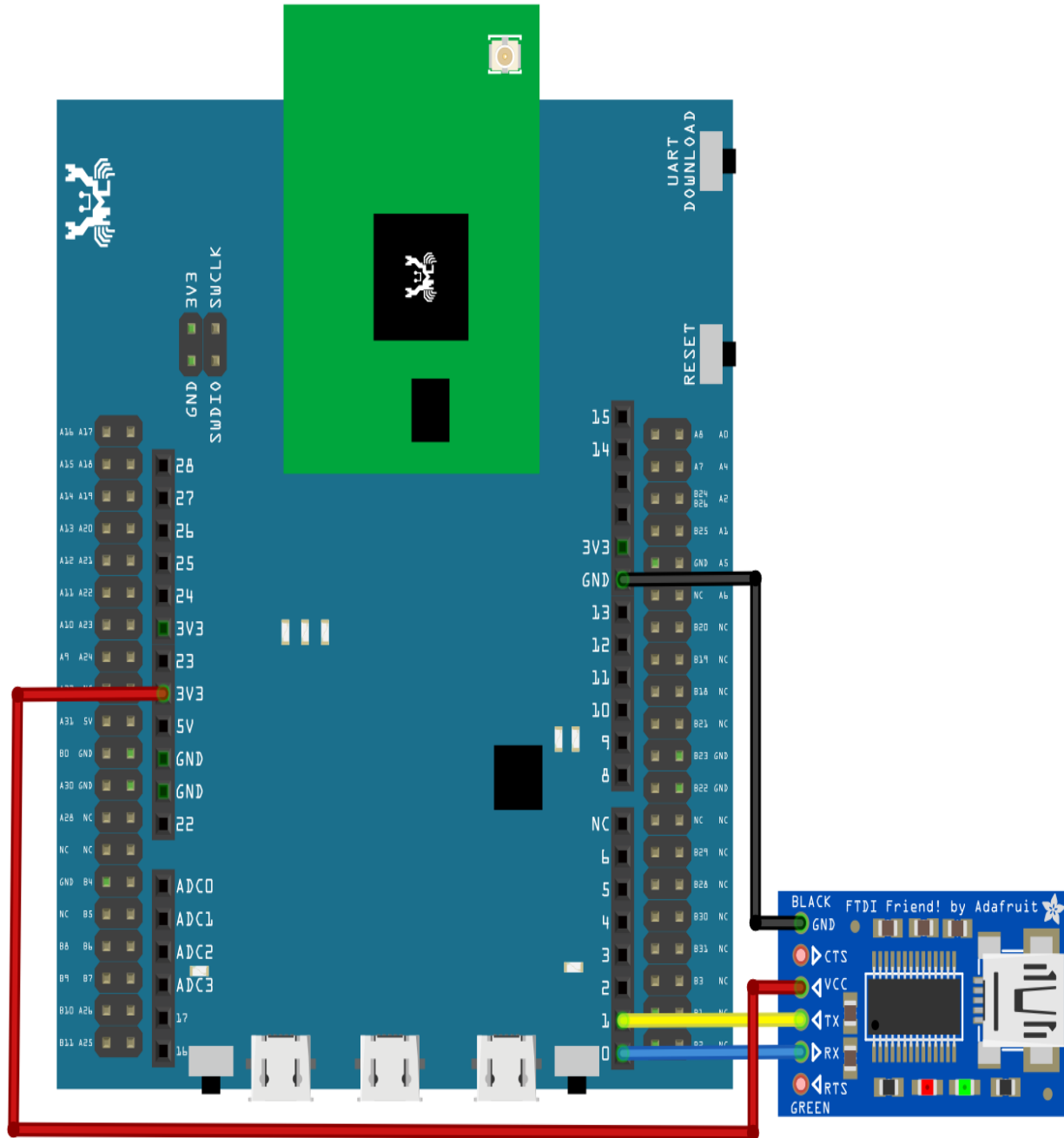
- Executing the Example

Open the "SoftwareSerialExample" example in "File" -> "Examples" -> "AmebaSoftwareSerial" -> "SoftwareSerial_Basic":

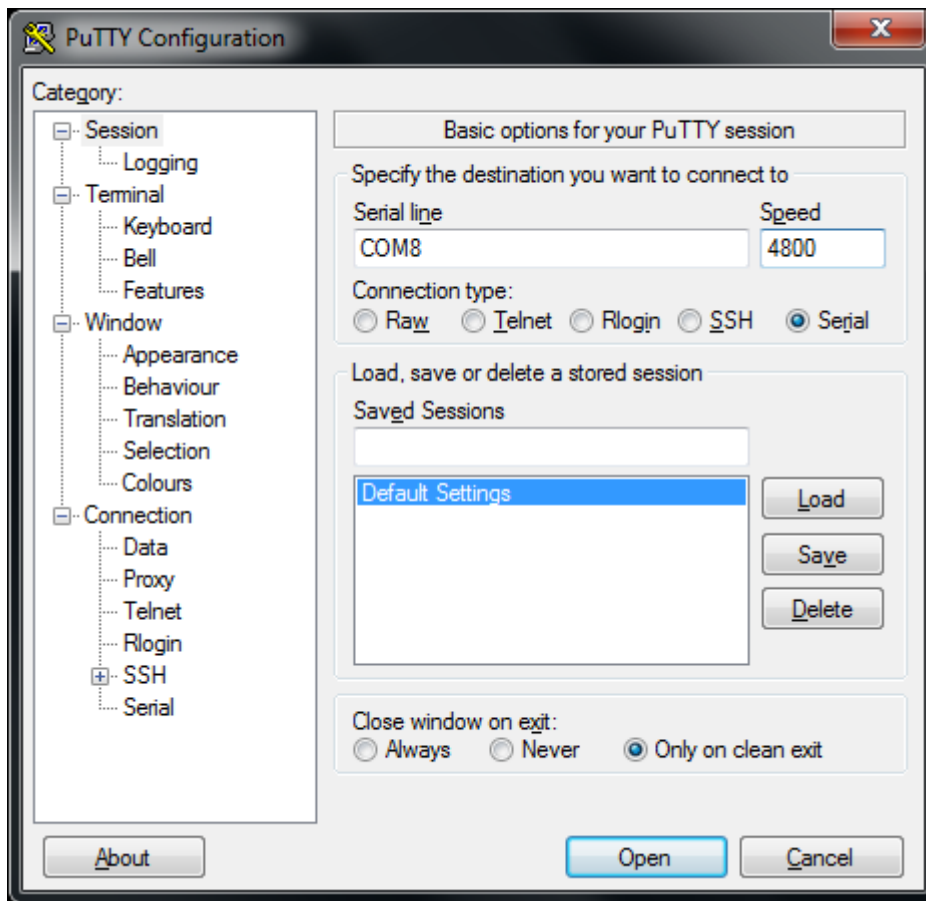


Connect the wire as the following diagrams show. The TX pin of USB to TTL adapter is connected to the RX of Ameba, and the RX pin of USB to TTL adapter is connected to the TX of Ameba.

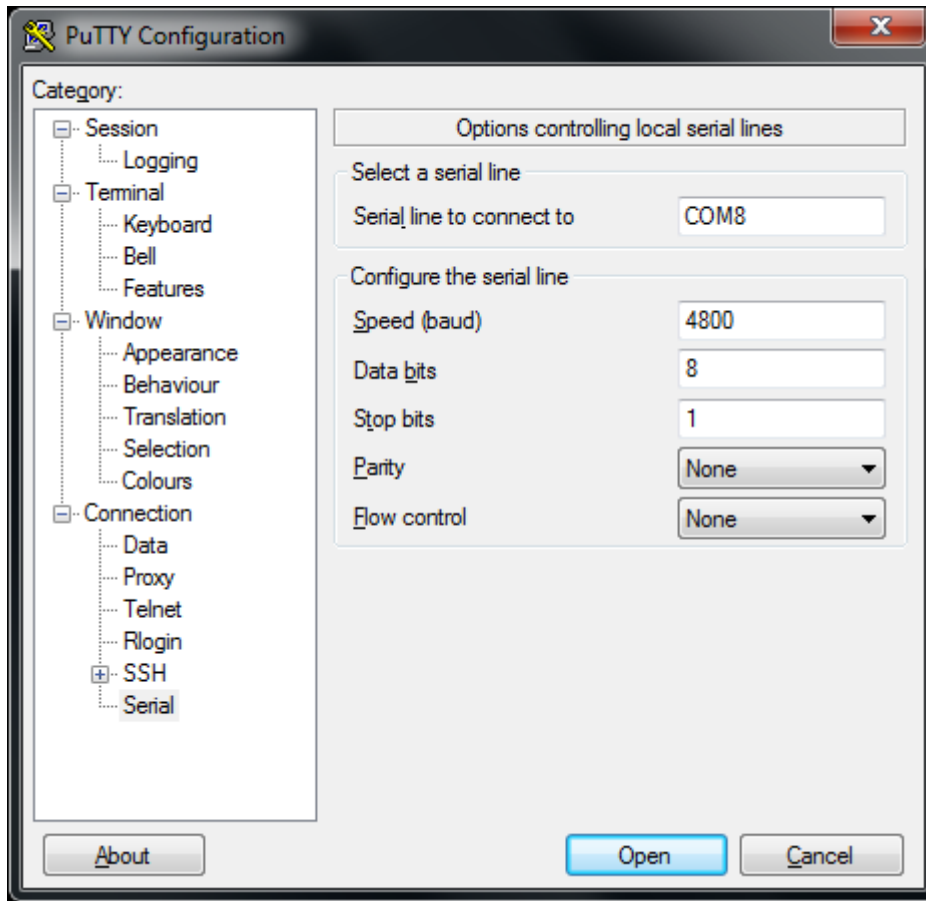
RTL8722 wiring diagram:



Next, open a serial port terminal, such as Putty or Tera Term. (Putty is used in this example). Open the Putty window, choose “Serial” in connection type, and specify the port number of the USB to TTL adapter (e.g. COM8). In the speed field, fill in the baud rate of this connection. Note that both sides of the connection should use the same baud rate. In this example we set baud rate 4800.



Next, select “Serial” on the left side. Set data bits to 8, stop bits to 1, parity to none, and flow control to none.



Then click Open and press the reset button on Ameba. You can see the “Hello, world?” message appears in Putty. If characters are typed into Putty, the input characters would be sent to Serial RX of Ameba by TX of USB to TTL Adapter, and returned by Serial TX of Ameba. Finally, RX of USB to TTL Adapter receives the returned characters and prints them in Putty. Therefore, if you insert “I am fine”, you will get something like this:



Code Reference

First, use `SoftwareSerial: begin(speed)` to set the baud rate for the serial communication:

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/SoftwareSerialBegin>

Use `write()` to send data, and use `SoftwareSerial:available()` to get the number of bytes available for reading from a software serial port:

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/SoftwareSerialAvailable>

If there are data available to read, use `read()` to read from serial port.

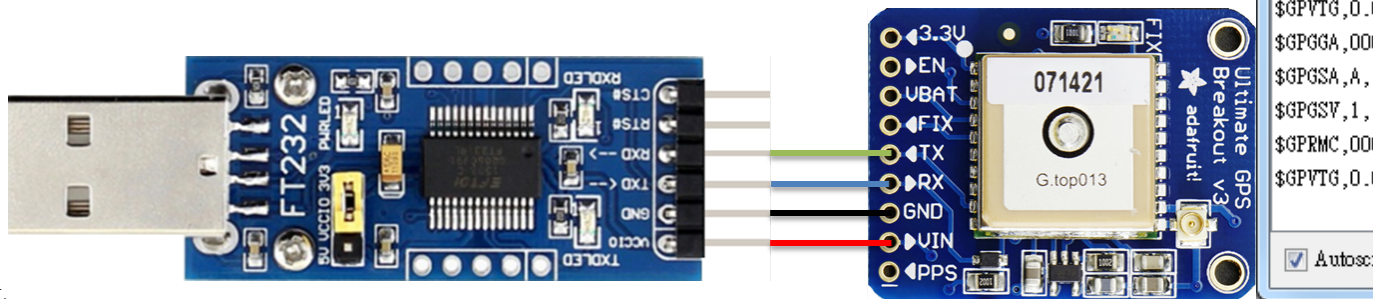
[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] UART - Retrieve GPS Position

Preparation

- Ameba x 1
- **Adafruit Ultimate GPS Breakout x 1** (Refer to official document)

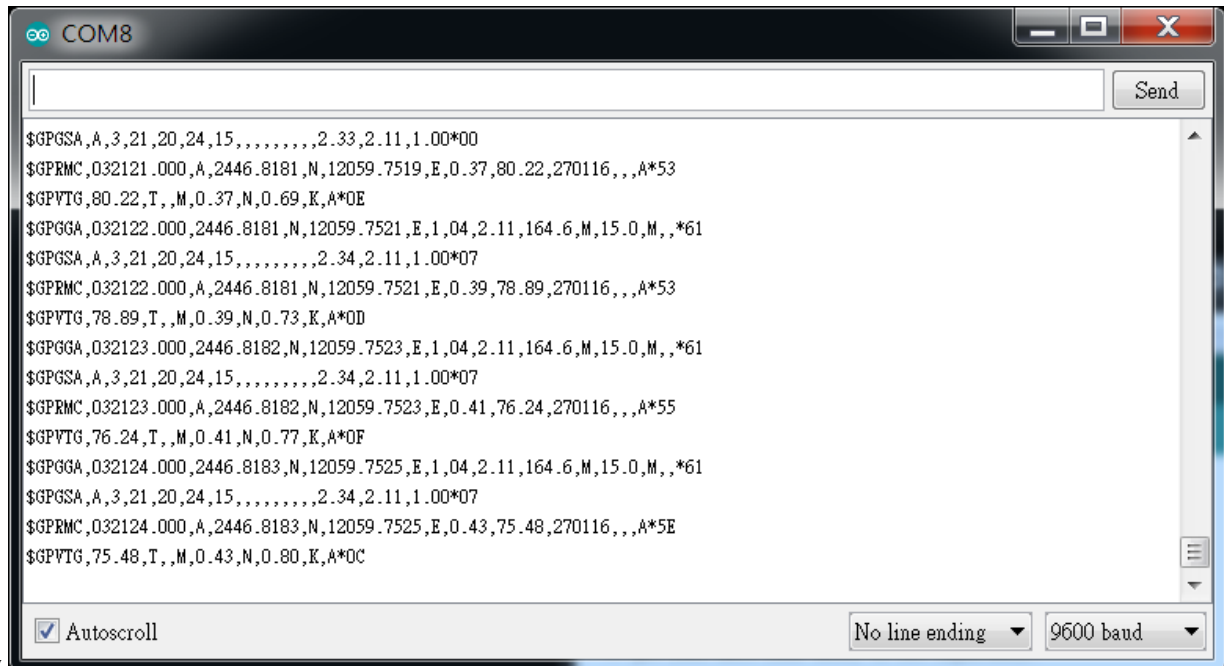
Example

In this example, we use Adafruit Ultimate GPS Breakout. Its data format is pure text, so we can connect it to USB to TTL Adapter and observe the



output.

follows the NMEA sentence format (refer to <http://aprs.gids.nl/nmea/>) The GPS signal is weak in indoor environment. The status that the GPS signal is not received is called “not fix”. Bring the GPS module outdoors, when the GPS signal is “fix”, you would get message similar to the figure



below.

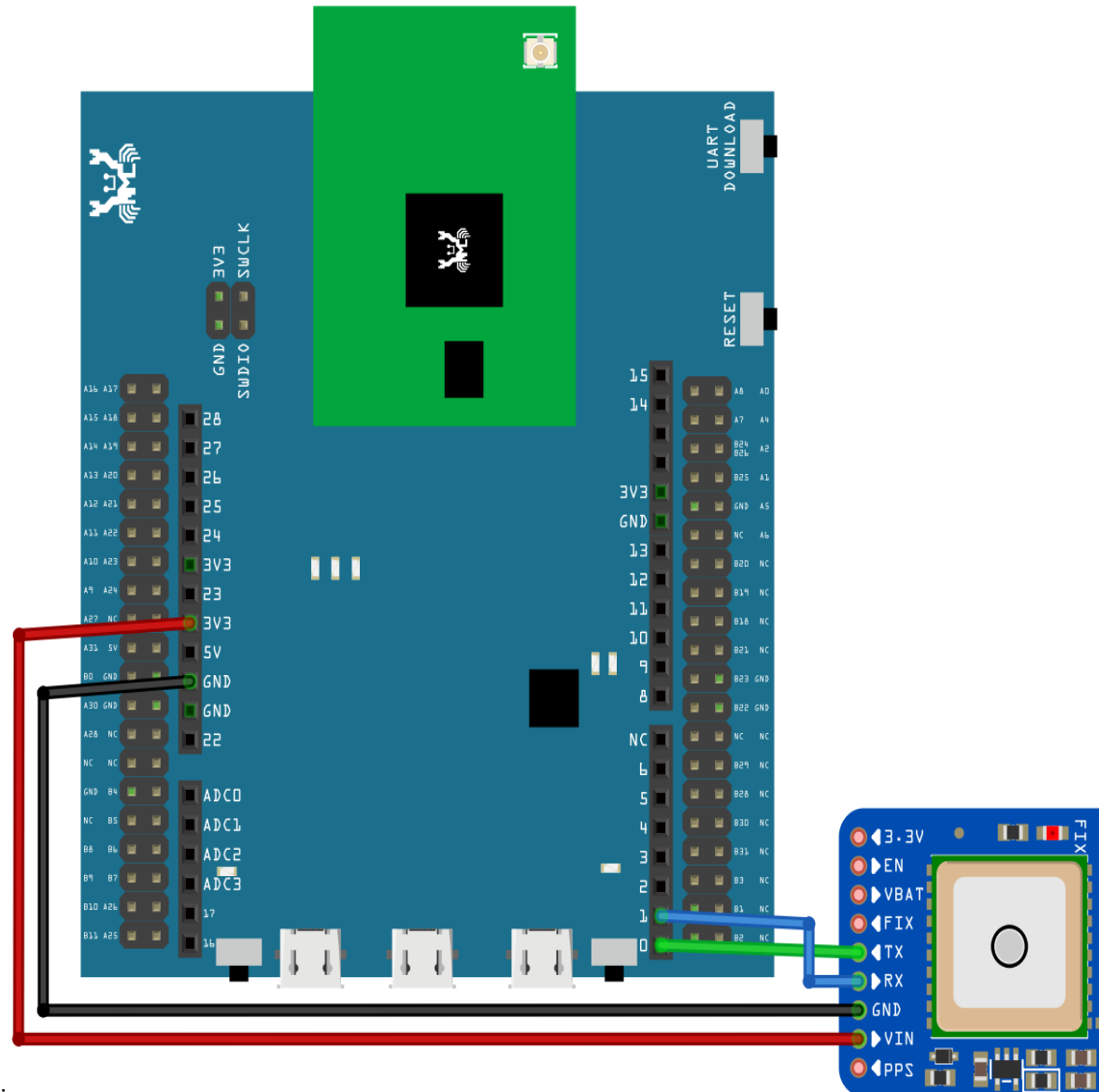
In this example we are only interested in the “\$GPRMC (Global Positioning Recommended Minimum Coordinates)”: **\$GPRMC,032122.000,A,2446.8181,N,12059.7521,E,0.39,78.89,270116,,,A*53** Each field is separated by a comma.

- **First field is the GMT time (Greenwich Mean Time), that is 032122.000** in this example. The time format is HH:MM:SS.SSS, i.e., 03:21:22.000. Note that the time zone and the daylight-saving time adjustment should be handled on your own.
- Second field represents the status code
 - V: Void (Invalid)
 - A: Active, meaning the GPS signal is fix.
- The third to sixth fields represent the geolocation

In this example, 2446.8181,N represents 24 degrees 46.8181 minutes north latitude, and 12059.7251,E represents 120 degrees 59.7251 minutes east longitude. We can search **+24 46.8181’, +120 59.7251’** in Google map to check whether the position is

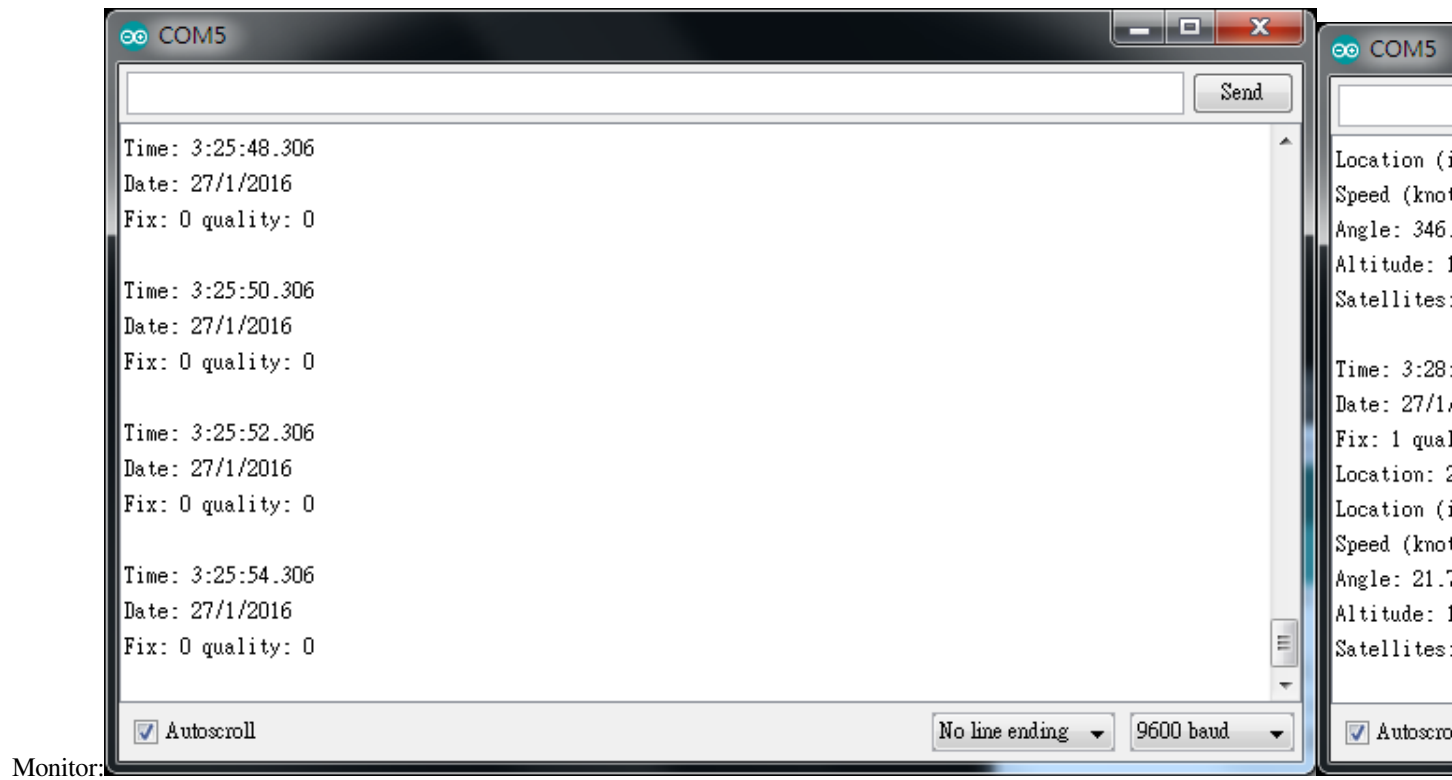


- The seventh field is relative speed(knot). 1 knot = 1.852km/hr, in this example the relative speed is 0.39 knot.
- The eighth field is the moving angle, which is calculated by its moving orbit.
- The ninth field is the date with format ddMMyy. In this example, “270116” stands for day 27, January, year 2016.
- The last field is checksum. In the example we have *53 as checksum.



RTL8722 wiring diagram:

the example in “Files” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaSoftwareSerial” -> “Adafruit_GPS_parsing”. Compile and upload to Ameba, then press the reset button. The result will be output to Serial



Monitor:

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] UART – Set Callback Function For UART Communications

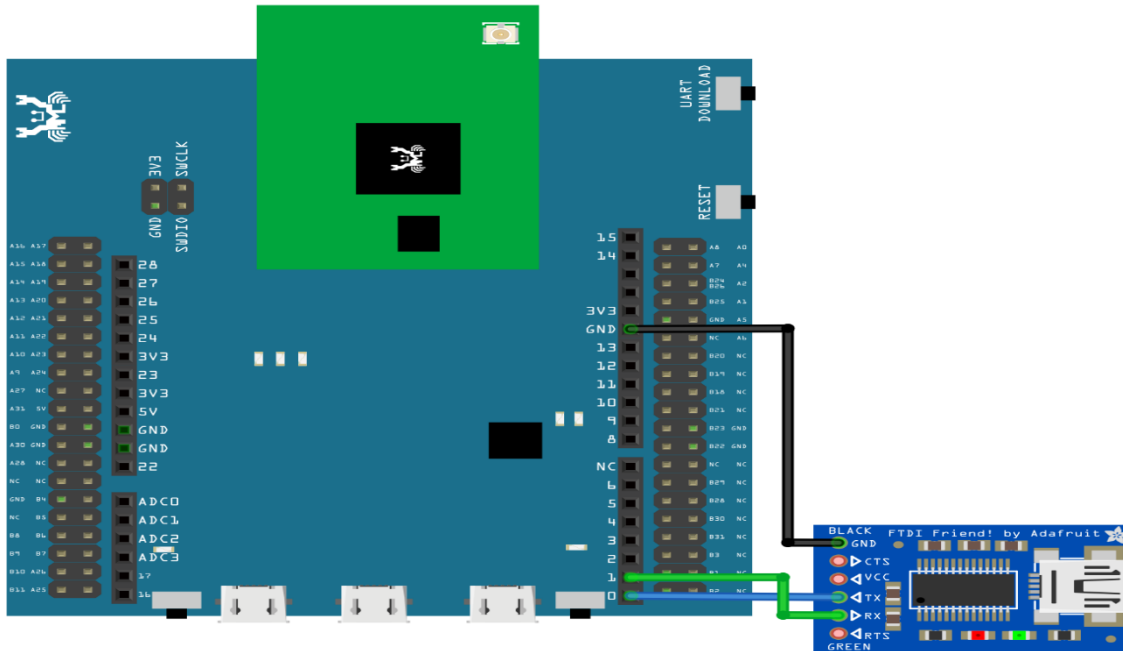
Materials

- Ameba x 1
- USB to TTL Adapter x 1

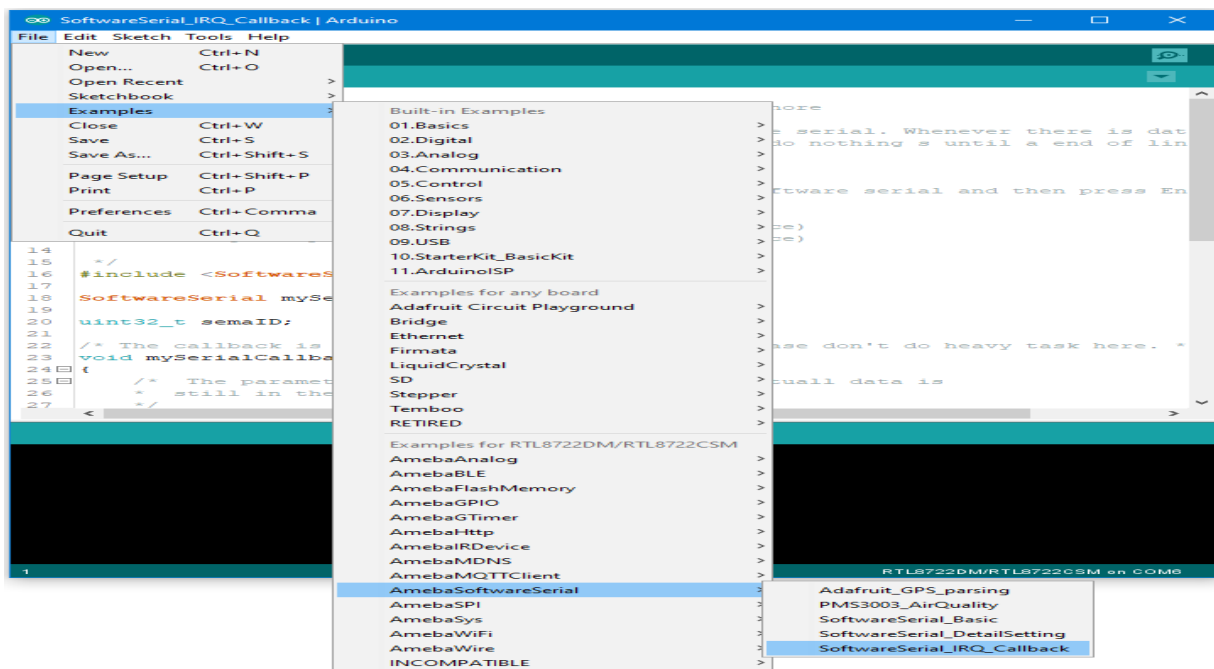
Example

This example shows how to set a callback function for UART communication to process the UART data.

A USB to TTL adapter is required for this example. Ensure that you have the driver installed and connect it to the Ameba board as shown.



Open the example in “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaSoftwareSerial” -> “SoftwareSerial_Irq_Callback”

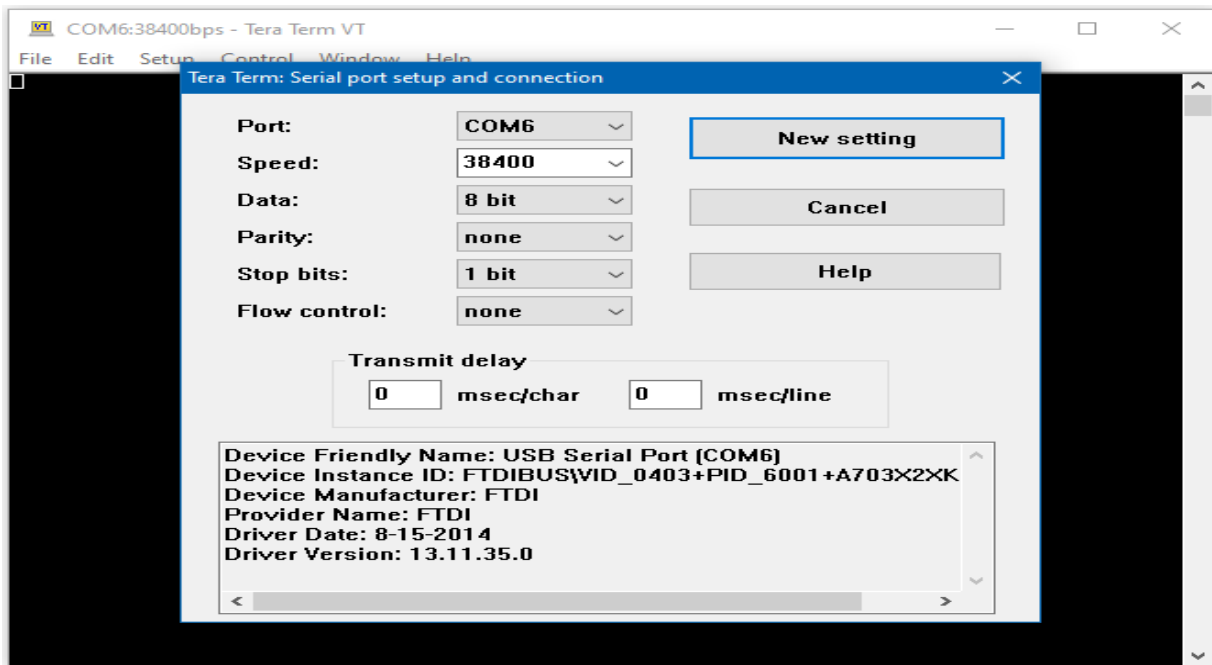


Upload the code and press the reset button on Ameba once the upload is finished.

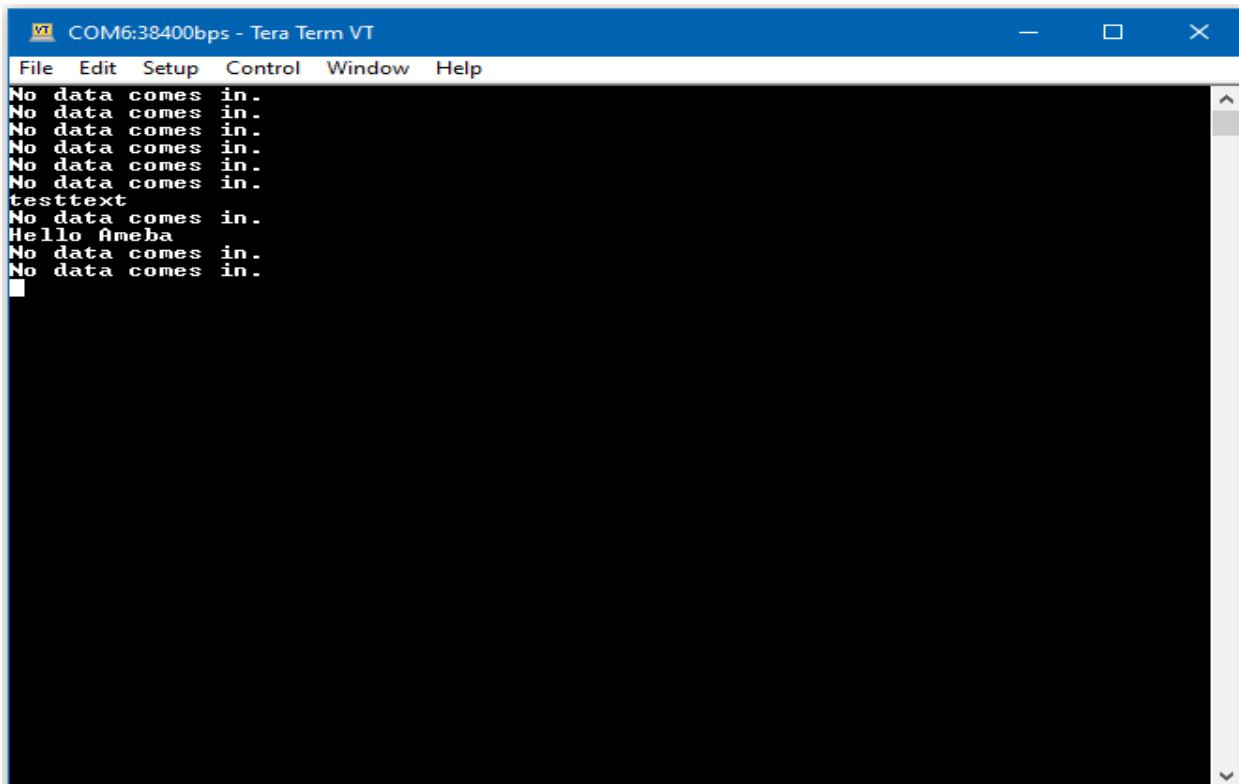
Next, using a terminal program, such as TeraTerm or PuTTY, open a serial port and configure it according to the settings. Make sure the serial port number corresponds to the USB to TTL adapter.

- Speed: 38400
- Data: 8 bit

- Parity: none
- Stop bits: 1 bit
- Flow control: none



Once the serial port is open, type in the terminal and press the enter key, and you will see the corresponding output.



Code Reference

`mySerial.setAvailableCallback(mySerialCallback);` is used to set the function `mySerialCallback` as a callback function for software serial. When a new character is received, the callback function checks if the character corresponds to the enter key, and releases the semaphore if it is true, which in turn allows the main loop to print out all the previously received characters.

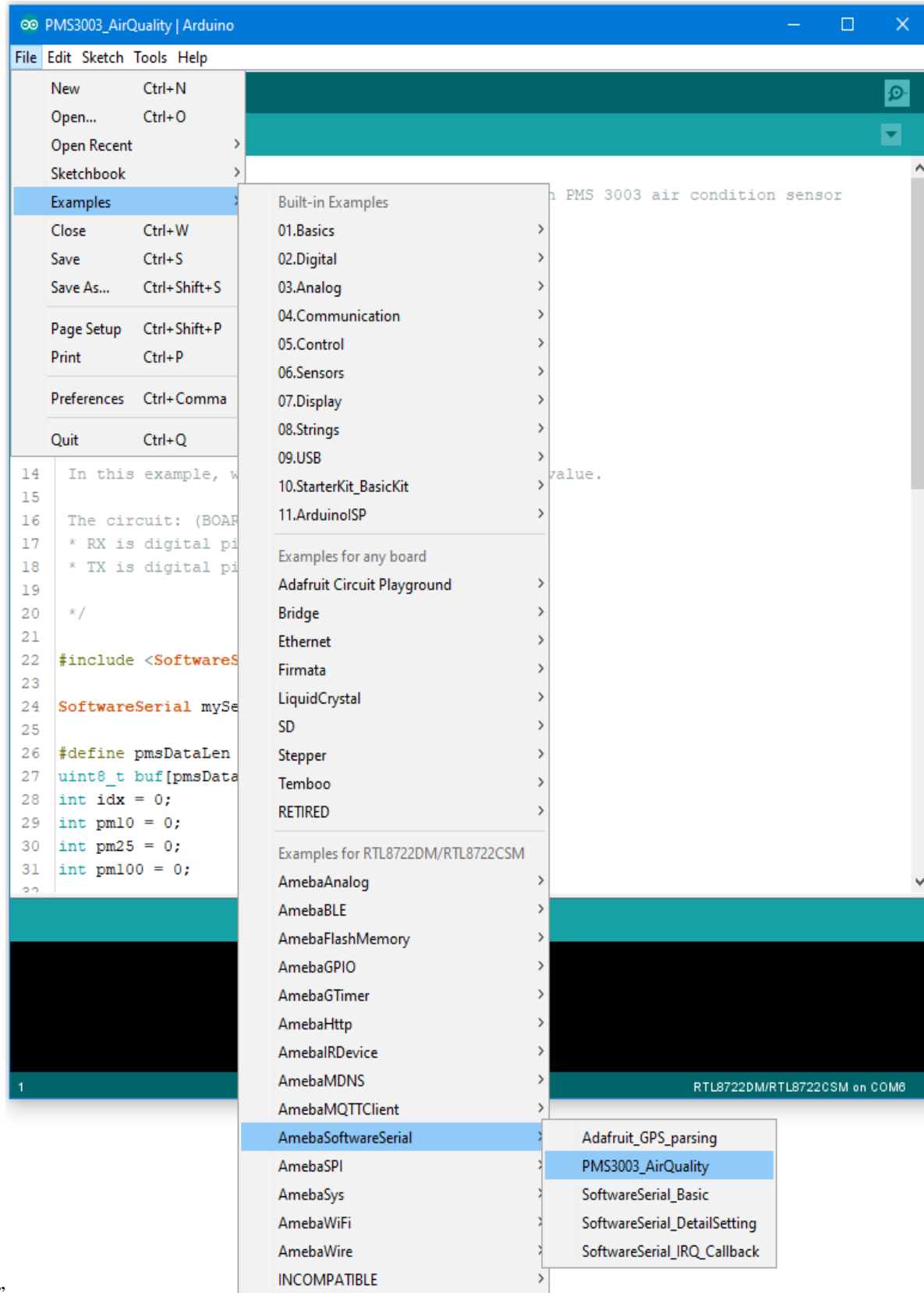
[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Detect PM2.5 Concentration In The Air

Preparation

- Ameba x 1
- PlanTower PMS3003 (or PMS5003) x 1

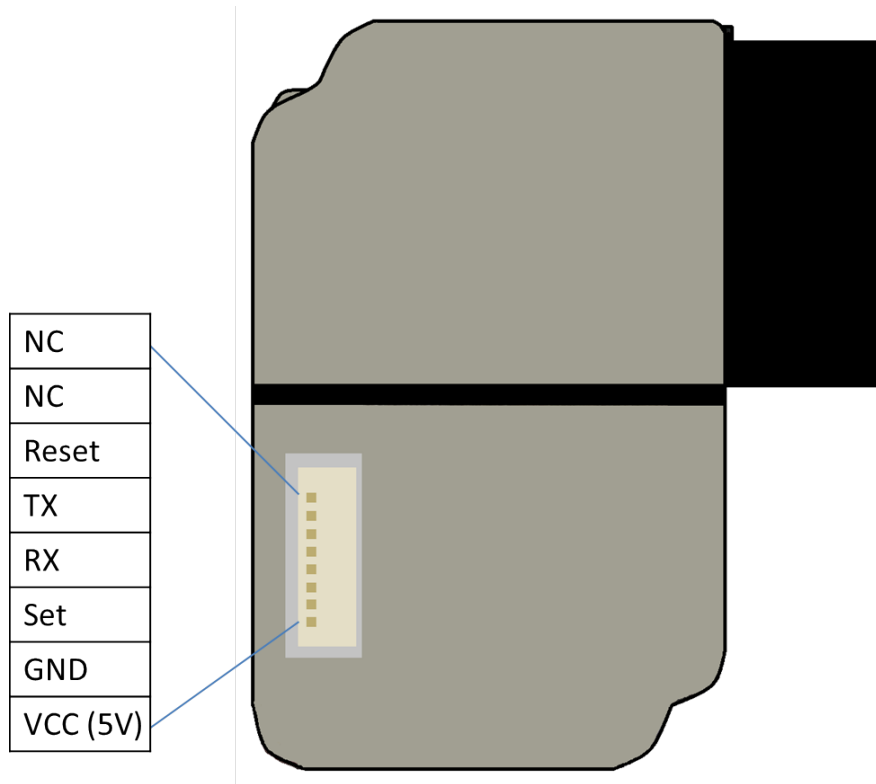
Example

PMS3003 (or PMS5003) is a sensor of air quality, it can detect the concentration of those 0.3 to 10 micrometer particulate matters in the air. The sensor output its data via UART. The PMS3003 (or PMS5003) sensor detects the concentration value of PM 1.0, PM 2.5, PM 10. Take PM 2.5 for example, it stands for the fine particles with a diameter of 2.5 micrometers or less. Open the example in “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaSoftwareSerial” ->



“PMS3003_AirQuality”

There are 8 pins in PMS3003:



PMS3003 requires 5V power, but the working voltage of its IC is 3.3V. Therefore, the working voltage of Reset, TX, RX, Set are 3.3V as well. If the “Set” pin is pulled to high, the PMS3003 is put to operating mode. If the “Set” pin is pulled low, the PMS3003 is put to standby mode. TX/RX pins are for UART connection. Under operating mode, PMS3003 outputs the data it reads continuously. Each data is of 32 bytes, please refer to the following article for detailed data format information: https://www.dfrobot.com/wiki/index.php?title=PM2.5_laser_dust_sensor_SKU:SEN0177 RTL8722 wiring

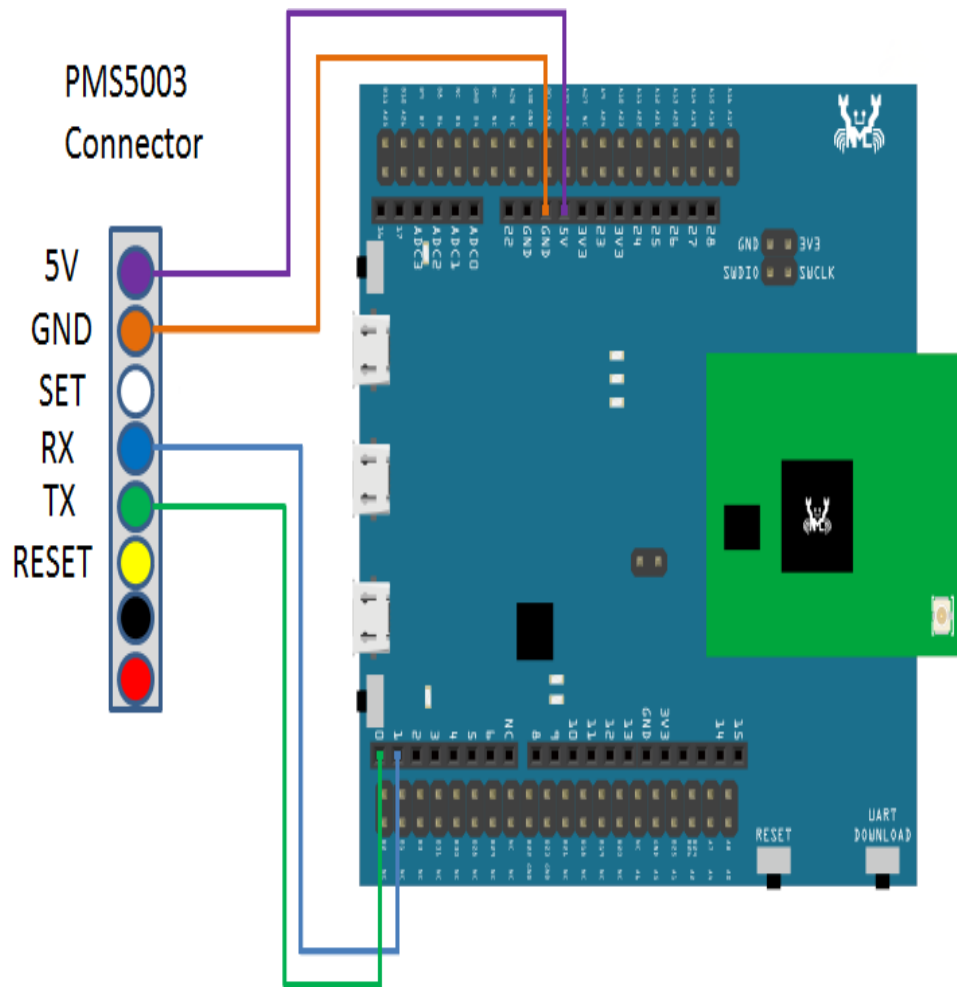
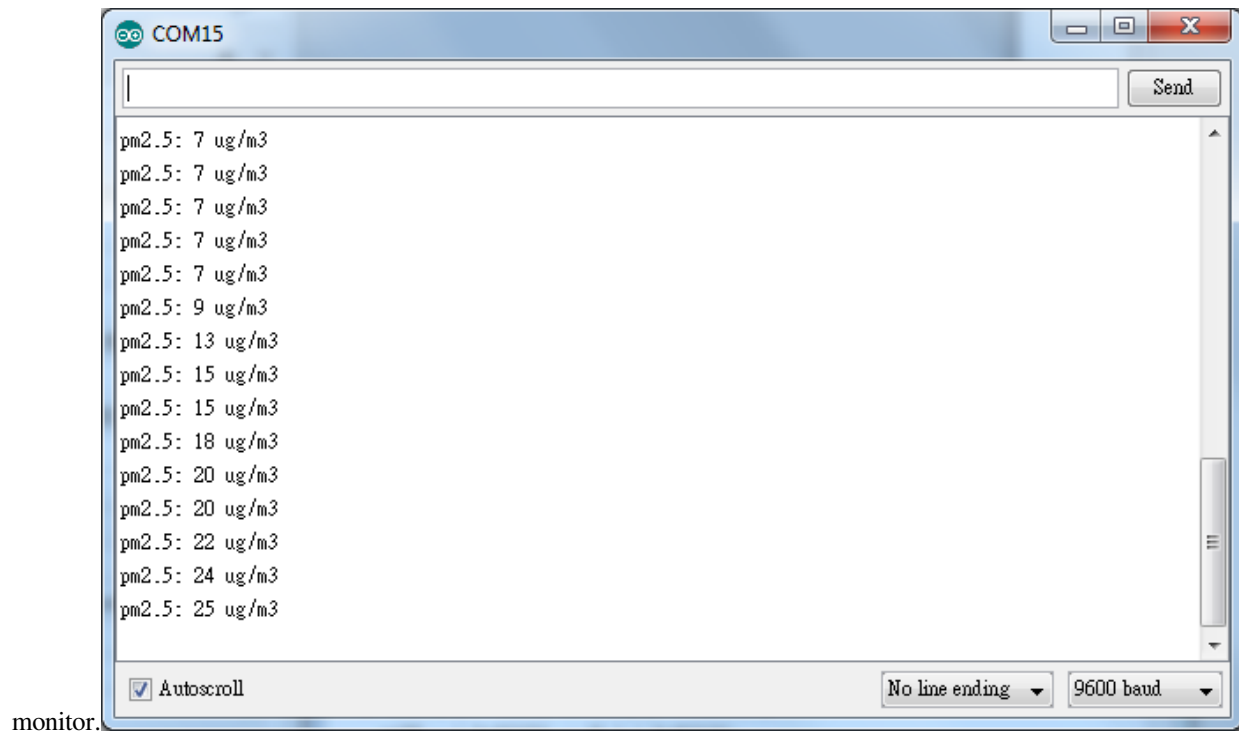


diagram:

this example, we do not use the “Set” and “Reset” pins. Compile the code and upload it to Ameba. After pressing the Reset button, Ameba starts to output the PM 2.5 data to serial

In



[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Flash Memory - Store data in FlashEEProm

Preparation

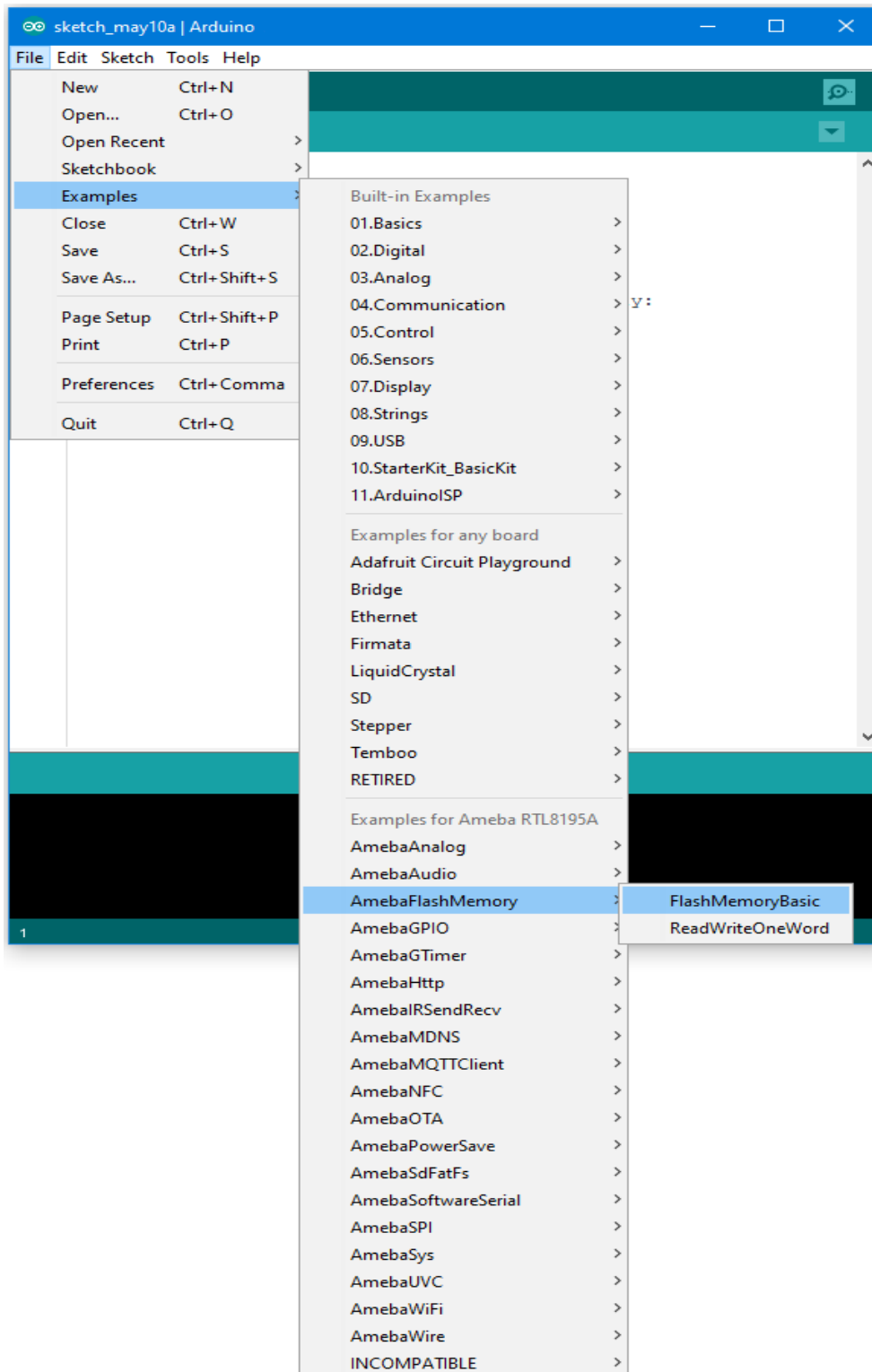
- Ameba x 1

Example

Ameba provides Flash Memory component for data storage and the data can be preserved when the power is off if necessary, e.g., compiled program. To avoid the memory space overlapped with the program on Ameba, the Flash API uses the tail part of the address space, with sector size 4K.

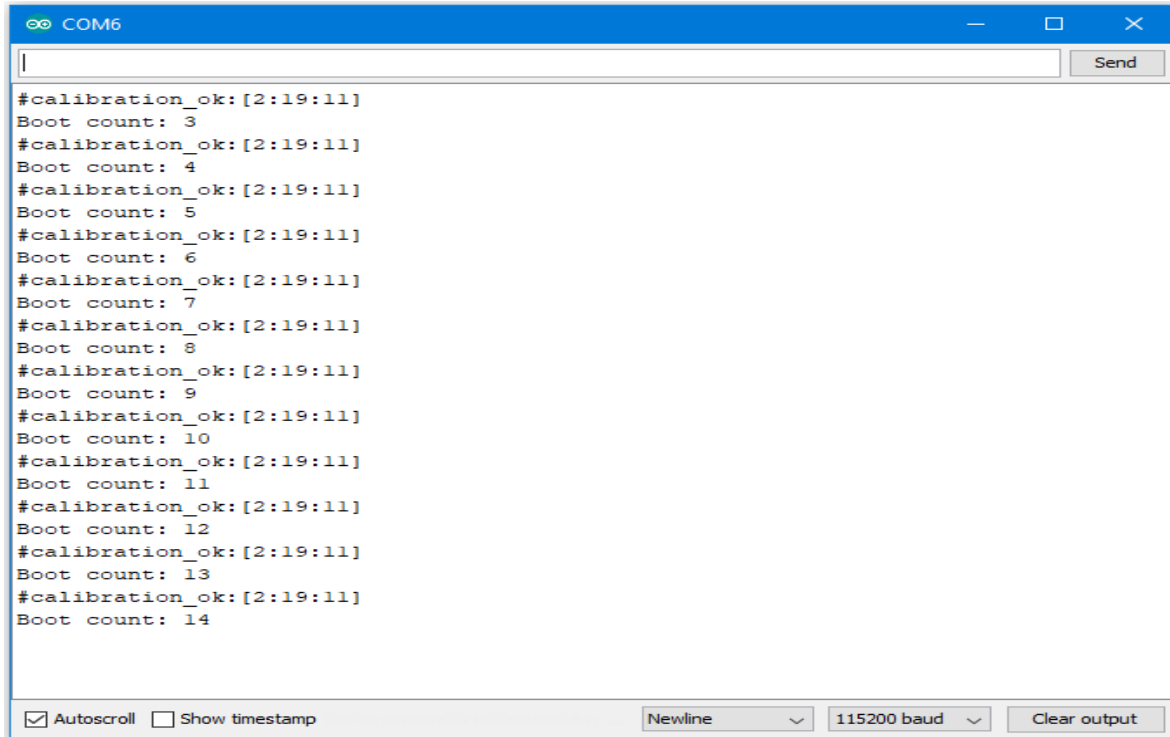
In this example, we store the value of boot times in flash memory. Every time Ameba reboots, it reads the boot times from flash, increases the value by 1, and writes it back to flash memory.

First open the example, “File” -> “Example” -> “AmebaFlashMemory” -> “FlashMemoryBasic”



Compile and upload to Ameba, then press the reset button.

Open the Serial Monitor, press the reset button for a few times. Then you can see the boot times value increases.



```

COM6
|
Send
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]
Boot count: 3
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]
Boot count: 4
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]
Boot count: 5
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]
Boot count: 6
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]
Boot count: 7
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]
Boot count: 8
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]
Boot count: 9
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]
Boot count: 10
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]
Boot count: 11
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]
Boot count: 12
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]
Boot count: 13
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]
Boot count: 14
Autoscroll Show timestamp Newline 115200 baud Clear output

```

Code Reference

By default, the Flash Memory API uses address 0xFF000~0xFFFFF to store data.

There is limitation when writing to flash memory. That is, you can not directly write data to the same address you used in last write. To do that correctly, you need erase the sector first. The Flash API of Ameba uses a 4K SRAM to record the user modification and do the erase/write task together.

Use `FlashMemory.read()` to read from Flash memory.

Use `FlashMemory.buf[0] = 0x00;` to manipulate the 4K buf.

Use `FlashMemory.update();` to update the data in buf to Flash Memory.

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Flash Memory - Use Flash Memory Larger Than 4K

Preparation

- Ameba x 1

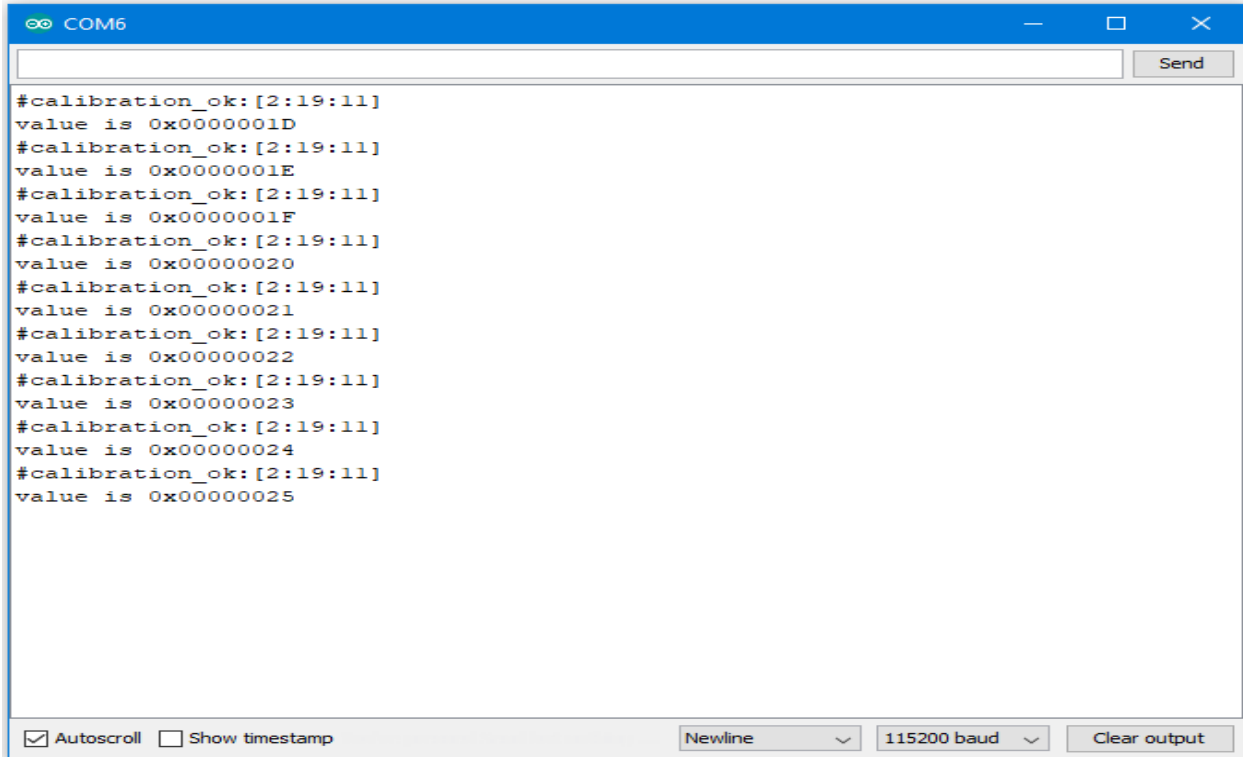
Example

Flash Memory API uses memory of 4K bytes, which is normally sufficient for most application. However, larger memory can be provided by specifying a specific memory address and required size.

First, open the sample code in “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaFlashMemory” -> “ReadWriteOneWord”

In this example, we specify the starting address of flash memory is 0xFC000 and size is 0x4000 (The default starting address is 0xFF000 and size is 0x1000).

Then calculate correct address according to the specified offset and perform read/write operation. In the sample code we use offset 0x3F00, that is, $0xFC000 + 0x3F00 = 0xFFFF00$ in flash. We set the value to 0 at first, then increase by 1 every time Ameba reboots.



```
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]
value is 0x0000001D
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]
value is 0x0000001E
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]
value is 0x0000001F
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]
value is 0x00000020
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]
value is 0x00000021
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]
value is 0x00000022
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]
value is 0x00000023
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]
value is 0x00000024
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]
value is 0x00000025
```

Code Reference

We can use the flash api we used in previous flash memory example, but we need to use `begin()` function to specify the desired starting address and memory size.

```
FlashMemory.begin(0xFC000, 0x4000);
```

Use `readWord()` to read the value stored in a memory address. In the example, we read the value stored in memory offset 0x3F00, that is $0xFC000 + 0x3F00 = 0xFFFF00$. `readWord()` function reads a 32-bit value and returns it.

```
value = FlashMemory.readWord(0x3F00);
```

Use `writeWord()` to write to a memory address. The first argument is the memory offset, the second argument is the value to write to memory.

```
FlashMemory.writeWord(0x3F0C, value);
```

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] SPI – Print Image And Text On LCD Screen

If you are not familiar with SPI, please read [Introduction to SPI](#) first.

Preparation

- Ameba x 1
- ILI9341 TFT LCD with SPI interface x 1

Example

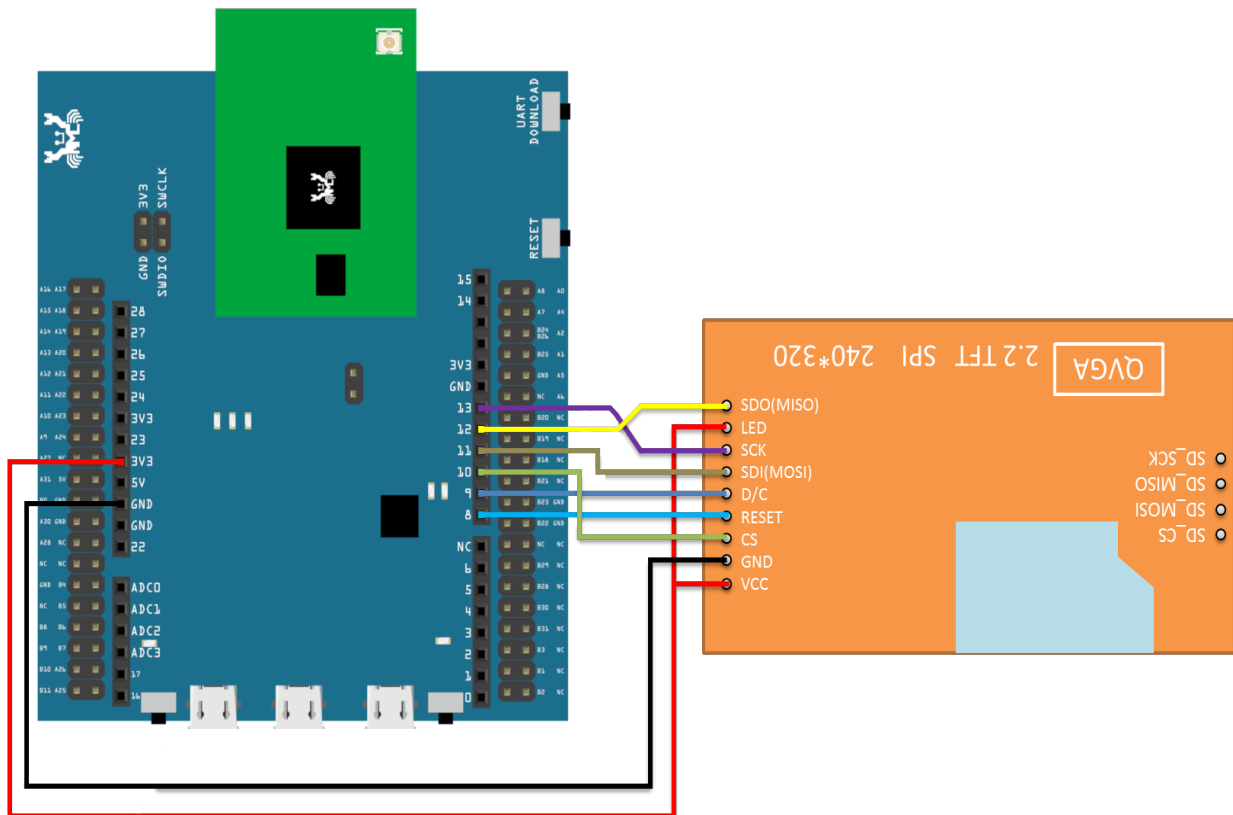
We have tested the following two models of ILI9341 TFT LCD with SPI interface:

- Adafruit 2.8" TFT LCD (with touch screen)
 - <https://www.adafruit.com/products/1651>
 - <https://learn.adafruit.com/adafruit-2-8-tft-touch-shield-v2?view=all>
- QVGA 2.2" TFT LCD
 - http://www.lcdwiki.com/2.2inch_SPI_Module_ILI9341_SKU:MSP2202

Common pins in ILI9341 TFT LCD with SPI interface:

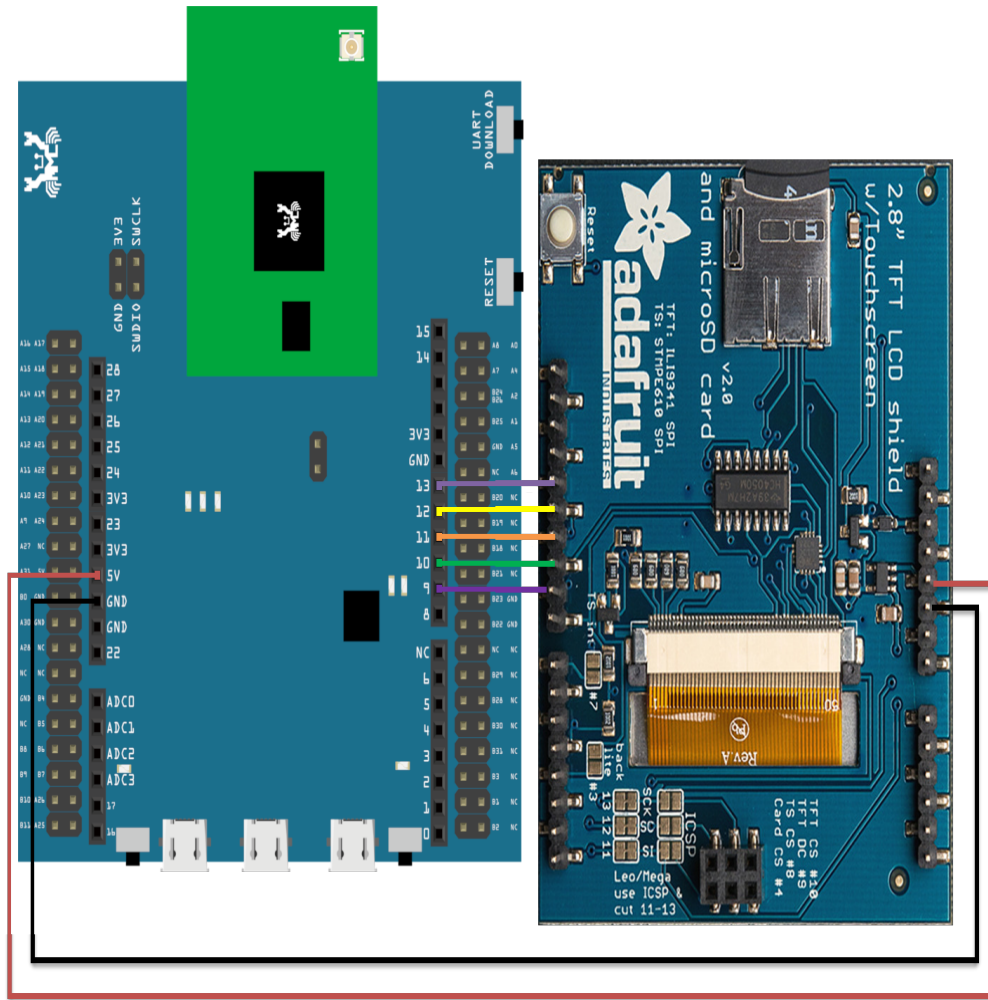
- MOSI: Standard SPI Pin
- MISO: Standard SPI Pin
- SLK: Standard SPI Pin
- CS: Standard SPI Pin
- RESET: Used to reboot LCD.
- **D/C: Data/Command. When it is at Low, the signal transmitted are** commands, otherwise the data transmitted are data.
- **LED (or BL): Adapt the screen backlight. Can be controlled by PWM or** connected to VCC for 100% backlight.
- VCC: Connected to 3V or 5V, depends on its spec.
- GND: Connected to GND.

Wiring example of QVGA TFT LCD:

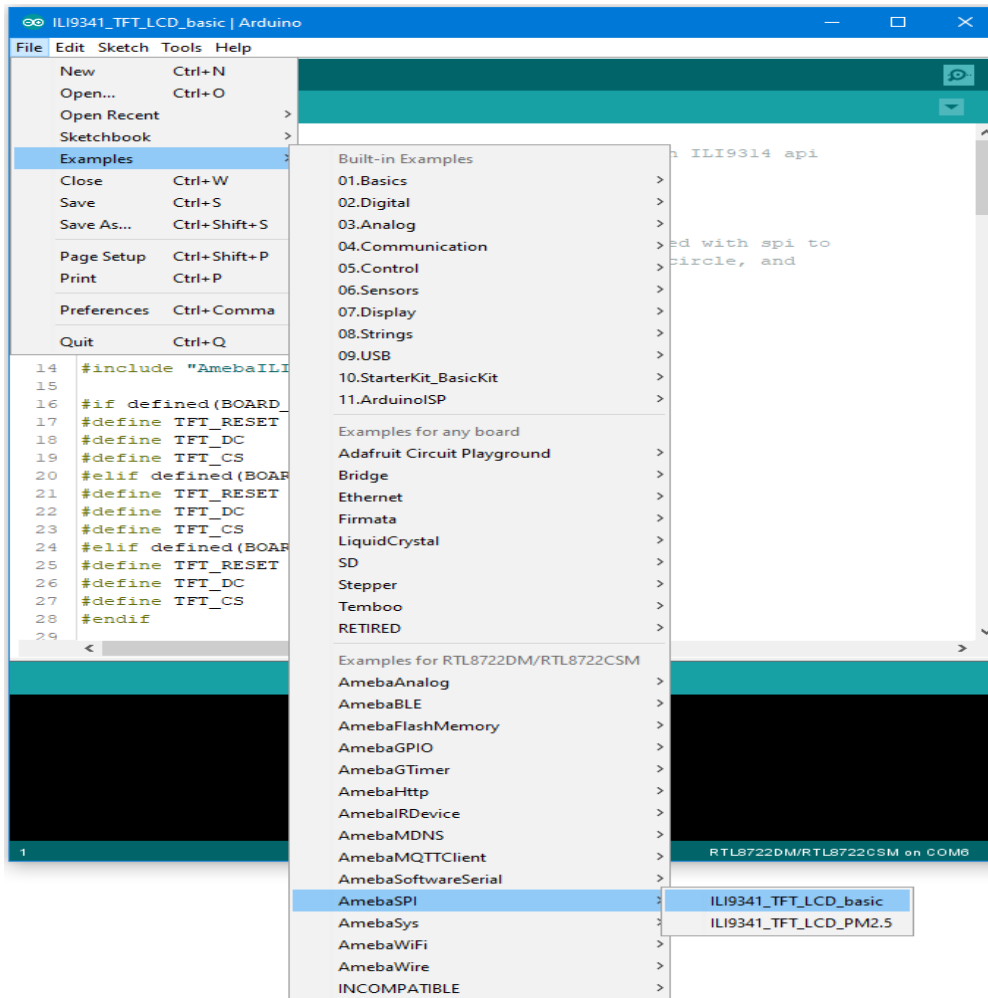


Wiring example of Adafruit 2.8" TFT LCD touch shield:

Please note that this shield model enables the backlight by default and pin 8 is not for backlight, and the VCC should be connected to 5V.

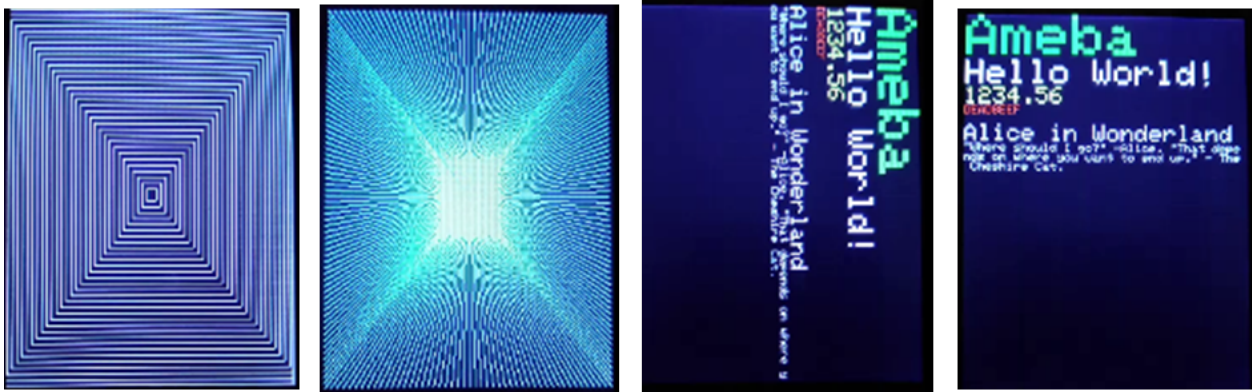


Open the example, “Files” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaSPI” -> “ILI9341_TFT_LCD_basic”



Compile and upload to Ameba, then press the reset button.

Then you can see some display tests appear on the LCD screen, such as displaying different colors, drawing vertical and horizontal lines, drawing circles, etc....



Code Reference

- **RGB 16-bit** | ILI9341 uses RGB 16-bit to display colors. Different from RGB 24-bit, it uses 5 bits for red, 6 bits for green, 5 bits for blue. For example, the RGB 24-bit representation of sky blue is 0x87CEFF, that is in binary:

- Red: 0x87 = B10000111
- Green: 0xCE = B11001110
- Blue: 0xFF = B11111111

and converted to RGB 16-bit:

- Red: B10000
- Green: B110011
- Blue: B11111

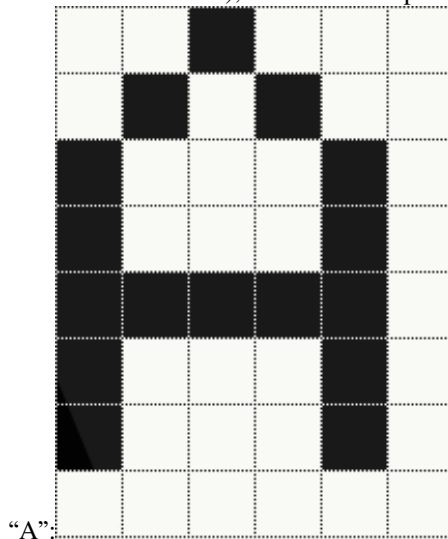
Then concatenate them, which forms B1000011001111111 = 0x867F

- **Drawing of ILI9341**

- **First you must specify the range of the rectangle to draw, then** pass the 2-byte RGB 16-bit color to ILI9341 corresponding to each pixel one by one, in this way ILI9341 fills each color to each pixel.
- **You still must specify the drawing range even though the range** covers only one pixel.
- **From the rules we mentioned above, we can conclude that drawing** vertical or horizontal lines are faster than diagonal lines.

- **Printing text on ILI9341**

- **In our API, each character is 5×7 but each character is printed to** size 6×8 (its right side and below are left blank), so as to separate from next character. For example, the character



- **The font size represents the dot size. For example, if the font** size is 2, each dot in the character is a 2×2 rectangle

- **Screen rotation**

- ILI9341 provides 0, 90, 180, 270 degrees screen rotation.
- **If the original width is 240 and original height is 320, when the** screen rotates 90 degrees, the width becomes 320 and the height becomes 240.

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Detect PM2.5 Concentration In The Air

If you are not familiar with SPI, please read [Introduction to SPI](#) first.

Preparation

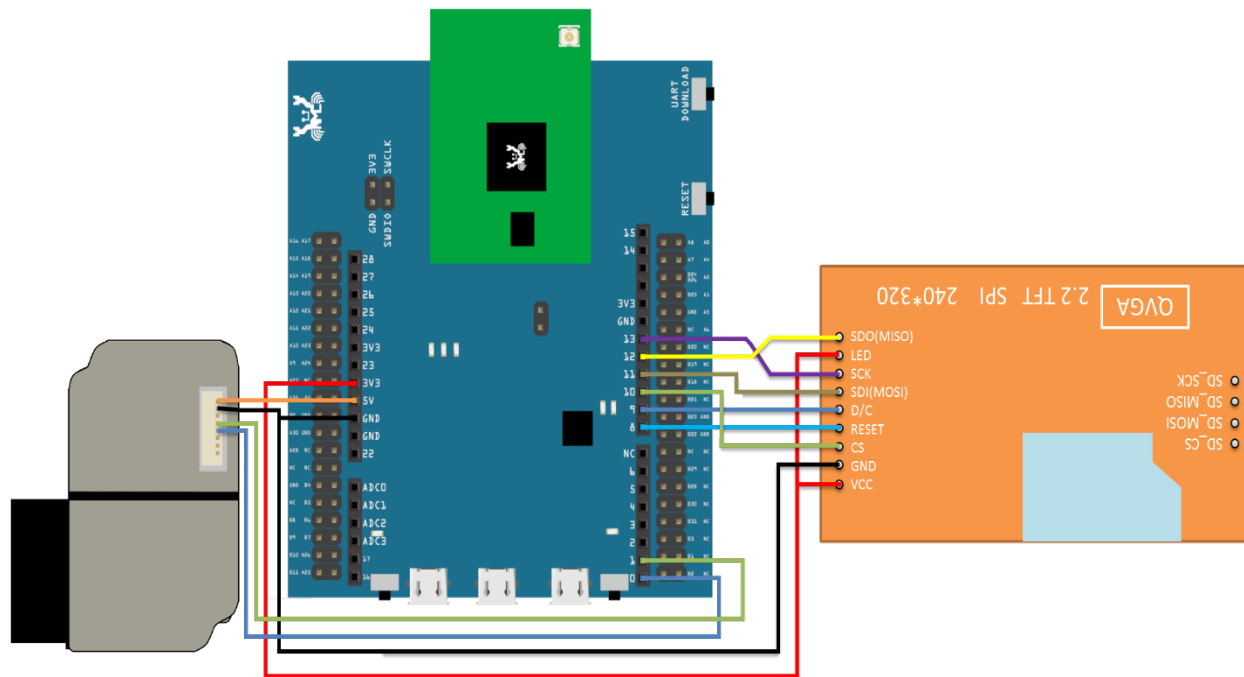
- Ameba x 1
- ILI9341 TFT LCD with SPI interface x 1
- Plantower PMS3003 or PMS5003 x 1

Example

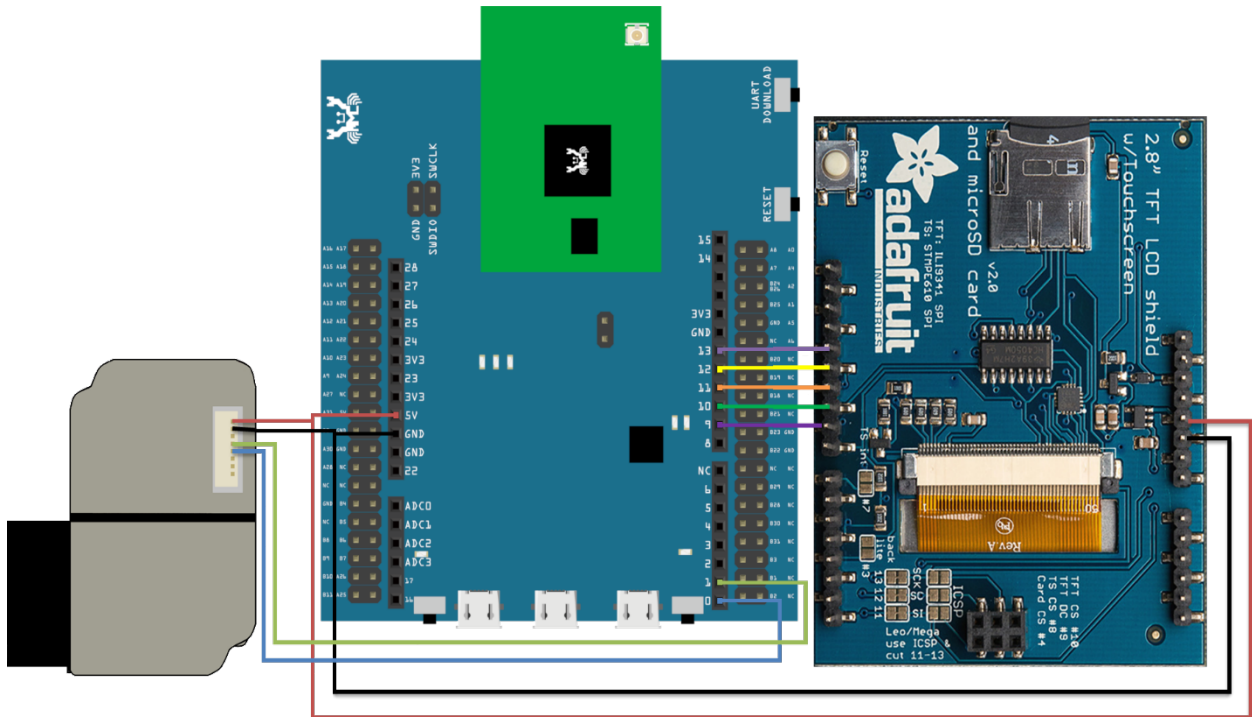
This example extends previous PM2.5 example to show the PM2.5 concentration on the LCD.

QVGA TFT LCD wiring diagram:

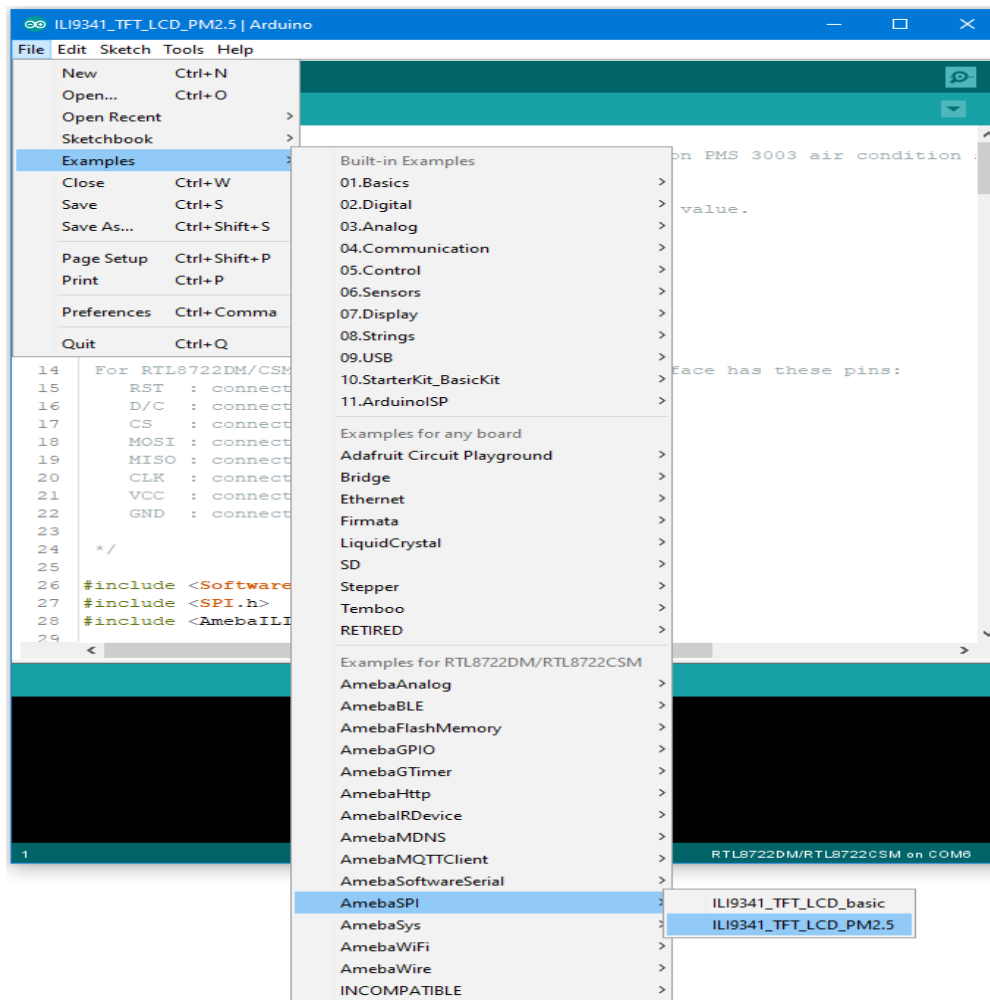
(Note: PMS3003/PMS5003 sensor requires 5V voltage)



Adafruit 2.8" TFT LCD wiring diagram:

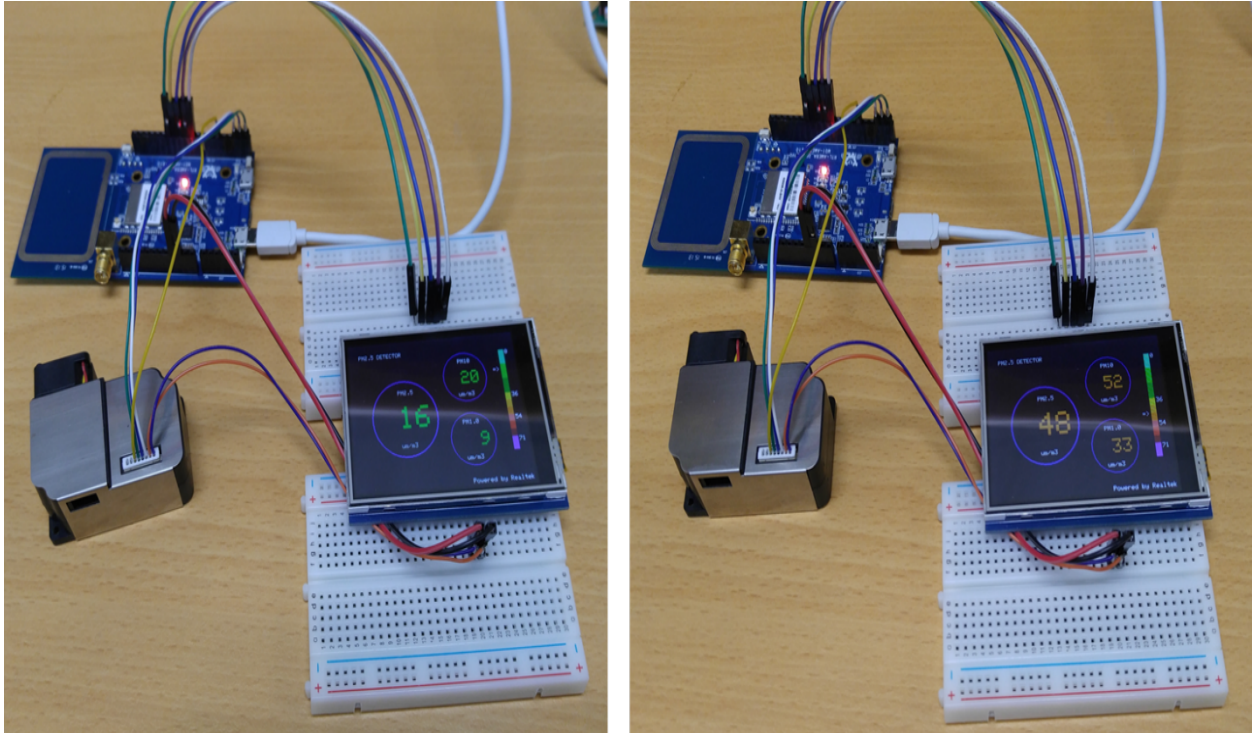


Open the example, “Files” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaSPI” -> “PM25_on_ILI9341_TFT_LCD”



Compile and upload to Ameba, then press the reset button.

Then you can see the concentration value of PM1.0, PM2.5 and PM10 on the LCD.



Code Reference

In this example, first rotate the screen by 90 degrees, and draw the static components such as the circles, the measuring scale, and the title text. After the concentration value is detected, it is printed inside the circle.

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Timer - Using The Periodic GTimer

Preparation

- Ameba x 1

Example

Ameba provides 5 hardware GTimer for users to use. The timers' resolution are at microseconds scale. Note that the timers may have overlapped pin with other peripherals. For example, the timer with ID 0 overlaps with PWM_3. Therefore, when we use Time 0, we cannot use the PWM_3 on D12.

Time ID	Note
0	Share with PWM_3
1	Share with PWM_0
2	Share with PWM_1
3	Share with PWM_2
4	Share with software RTC

The timer can be set to be periodic or for single use. The periodic timers reset periodically, and the single-use timers do not. Open the example, "File" -> "Examples" -> "AmebaGTimer" -> "TimerPeriodical". Compile and upload to Ameba, and press reset. In the Serial Monitor, you can see the counter value is increased periodically.

Code Reference

The first argument of `begin()` is the timer id (0~5). The second argument is the value of the timer (in microseconds). In the example, we fill in `1000000us = 1s`. The third argument specifies the function to call when the time is up. In the example, we call the “myhandler” function to increase the counter value by 1 and print the counter value to serial monitor.

```
GTimer.begin(0, 1 * 1000 * 1000, myhandler);
```

The GTimer is periodic by default, therefore “myhandler” function is called every second. When we want to stop the GTimer, use “stop()”:

```
GTimer.stop(0);
```

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Timer - Using The Single-Use GTimer

Preparation

- Ameba x 1

Example

In this example, we use five single-use GTimer, and carry user data in each timer. Open the example “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaGTimer” -> “TimerOneshot”. Compile and upload to Ameba, and press reset. Then you can see the 5 timers print out log to the serial monitor in series.

Code Reference

The first argument of `begin()` is the Timer ID (0~4). The second argument is the value of the timer (in microseconds). In the example, we fill in `1000000us = 1s`. The third argument specifies the function to call when the time is up. The fourth argument is to set whether this timer is a periodic timer, we use “false” here to begin a single-use timer. The fifth argument is the user data, we give 0 here to represent that this is timer 0.

```
GTimer.begin(0, 1 * 1000 * 1000, myhandler, false, 0);
```

Next, we set up the second timer, which has timer value 2 seconds, and user data 1. And other timers are set similarly.

```
GTimer.begin(1, 2 * 1000 * 1000, myhandler, false, 1);
```

In myhandler function, we print the user data to serial monitor. Since the five timers are separately set to count for 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 seconds, from 1 second to 5 second, the user data of each timer are printed on the serial monitor in order. After 5 second, no log will be printed.

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Power Save Deep Sleep Mode

Materials

- RTL8722DM x 1

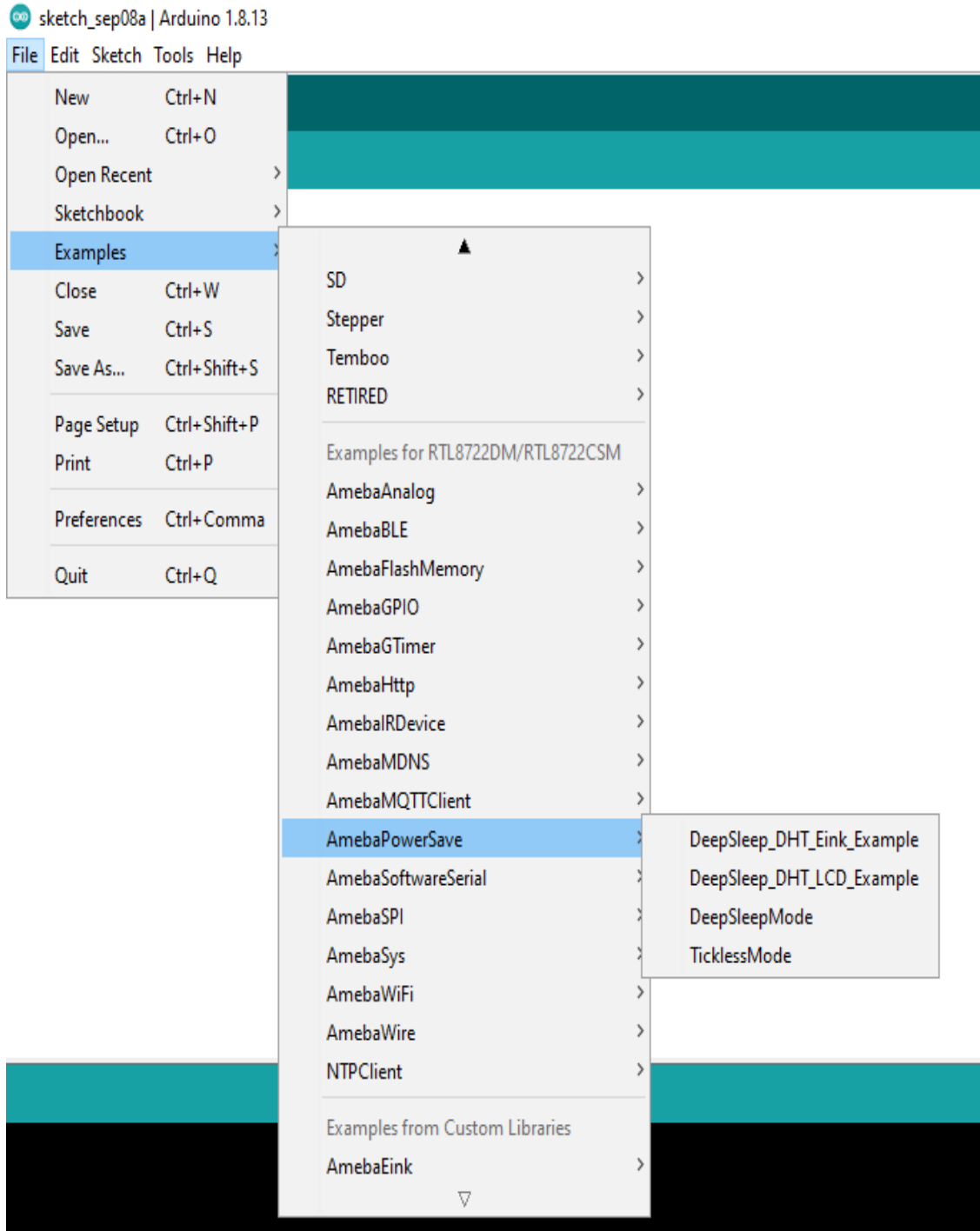
Example

Introduction

Ameba-D supports two low power modes which are deepsleep mode and sleep mode. Deepsleep mode turns off more power domain than sleep mode. The power consumptions of DeepSleep Mode is around 7uA to 8uA compare to normal state around 22mA. This example describes how to enter deepsleep mode and configure wakeup source.

Procedure

Open “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaPowerSave” -> “DeepSleepMode”



Set condition values as picture below.

“DS_WAKEUP_SOURCE” is used to set the wake-up source, user can chose 3 wake up sources now,

AON timer (SET_DS_AON_TIMER_WAKEUP);

AON pins (SET_DS_AON_WAKEPIN_WAKEUP);

RTC timer (SET_DS_RTC_WAKEUP);

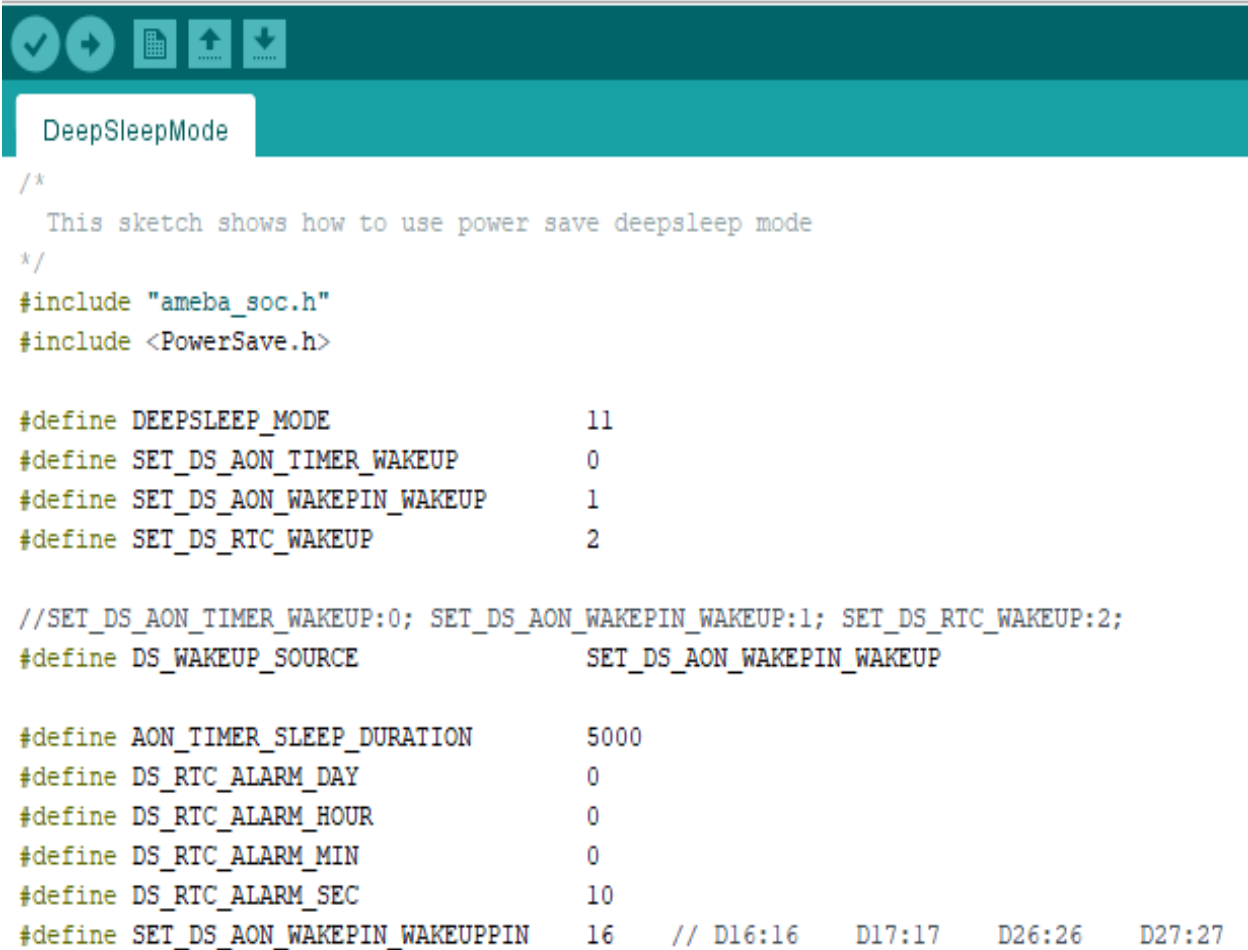
AON timer can be set from 0 to 32760000 range (unit ms) by AON_TIMER_SLEEP_DURATION

There are 4 pins can be set as AON pins and active high for wake-up, D16, D17, D26 and D27. The AON pin can be set by SET_DS_AON_WAKEPIN_WAKEUPPIN

RTC timer wake-up system by set alarm. The alarm has 4 values, day, hour, min and sec. All 4 values can be set by DS_RTC_ALARM_DAY, DS_RTC_ALARM_HOUR, DS_RTC_ALARM_MIN, and DS_RTC_ALARM_SEC

DeepSleepMode | Arduino 1.8.13

File Edit Sketch Tools Help



```

/*
 * This sketch shows how to use power save deepsleep mode
 */
#include "ameba_soc.h"
#include <PowerSave.h>

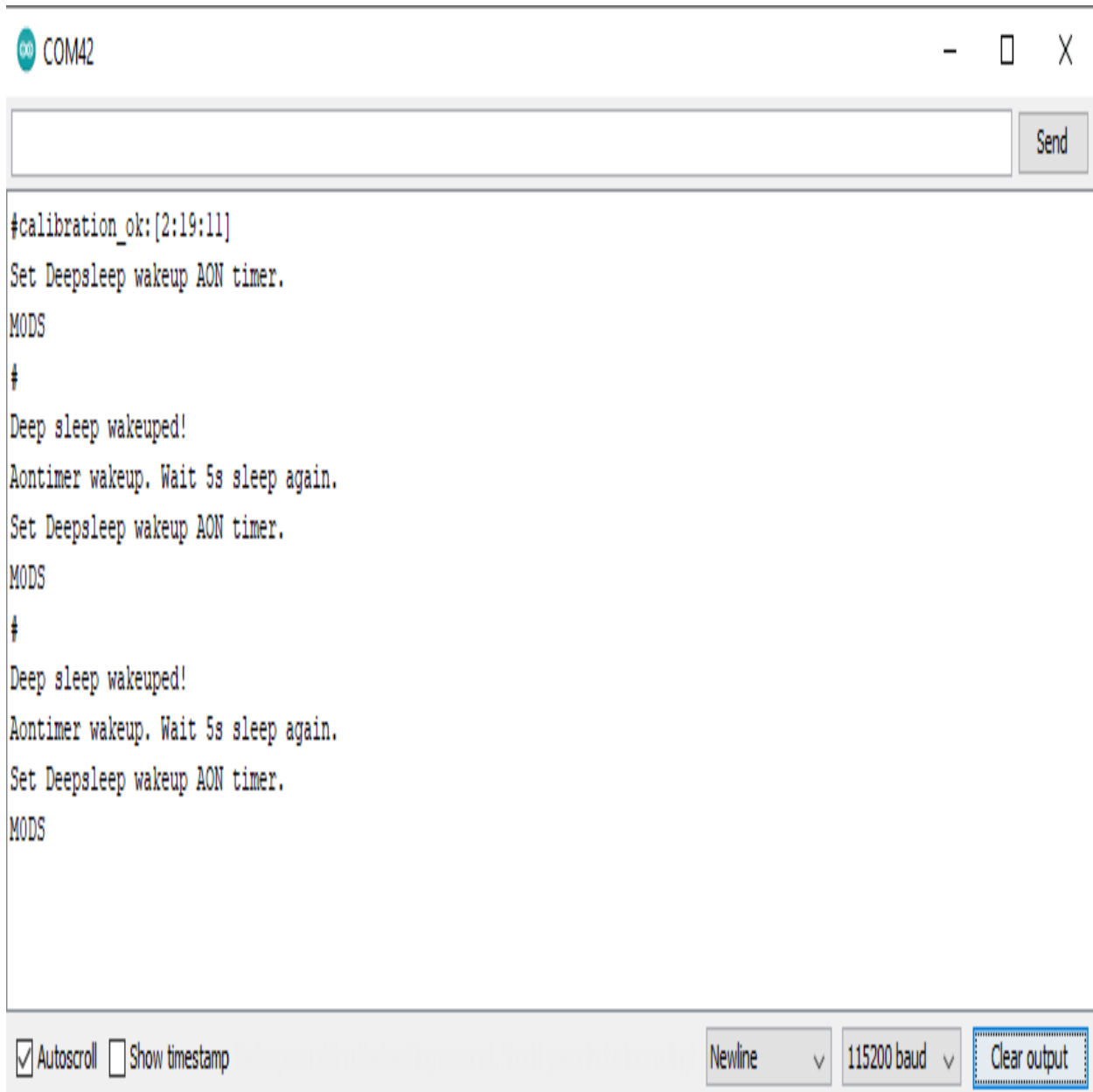
#define DEEPSLEEP_MODE            11
#define SET_DS_AON_TIMER_WAKEUP   0
#define SET_DS_AON_WAKEPIN_WAKEUP 1
#define SET_DS_RTC_WAKEUP         2

//SET_DS_AON_TIMER_WAKEUP:0; SET_DS_AON_WAKEPIN_WAKEUP:1; SET_DS_RTC_WAKEUP:2;
#define DS_WAKEUP_SOURCE          SET_DS_AON_WAKEPIN_WAKEUP

#define AON_TIMER_SLEEP_DURATION   5000
#define DS_RTC_ALARM_DAY          0
#define DS_RTC_ALARM_HOUR         0
#define DS_RTC_ALARM_MIN          0
#define DS_RTC_ALARM_SEC          10
#define SET_DS_AON_WAKEPIN_WAKEUPPIN 16 // D16:16   D17:17   D26:26   D27:27

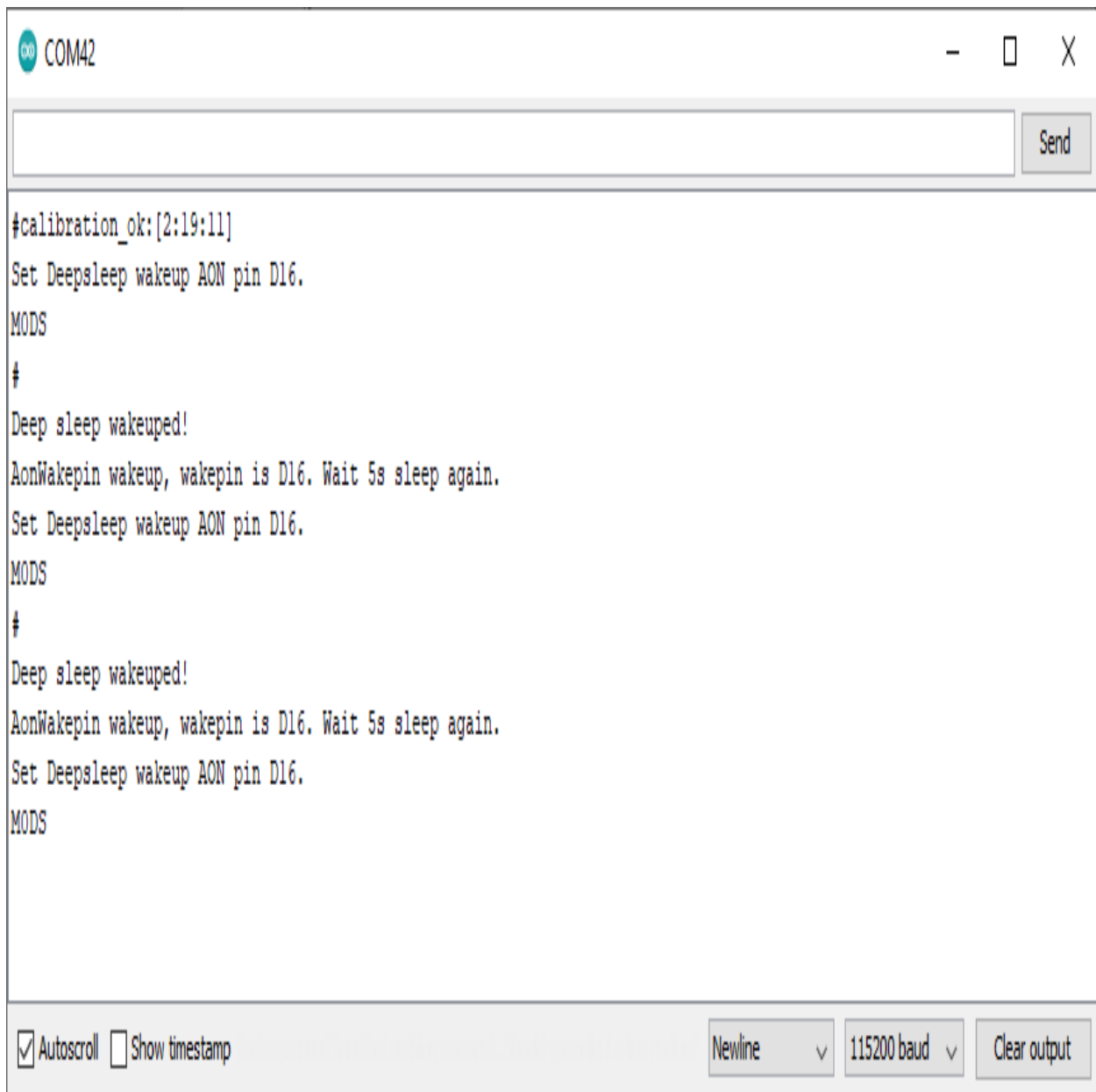
```

When finished the condition values setting, system will run and switch between normal and deepsleep mode controlled by wakeup source. Serial Monitor displays the switching log.



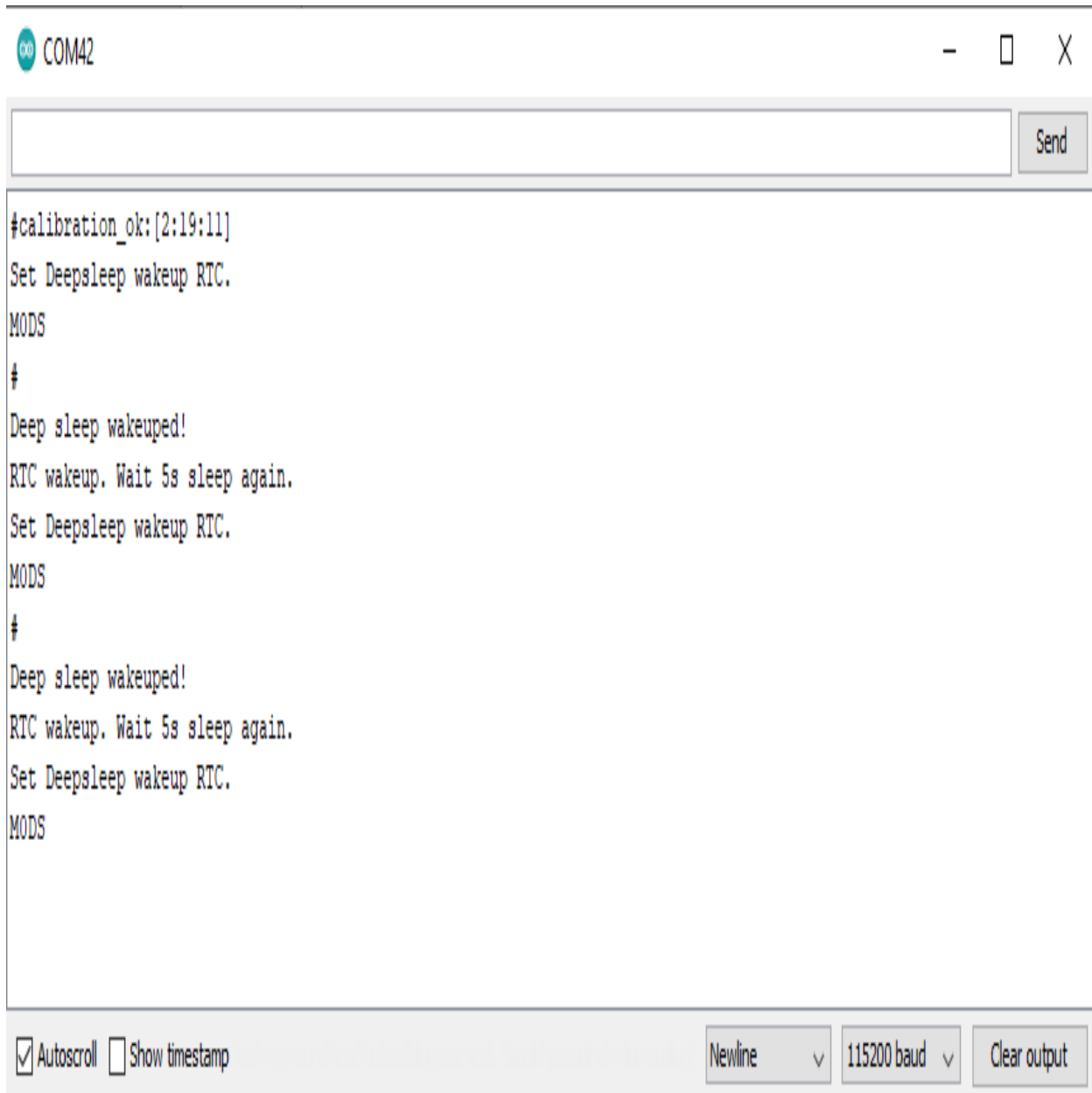
```
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]
Set Deepsleep wakeup AON timer.
MODS
#
Deep sleep wakeupid!
Aontimer wakeup. Wait 5s sleep again.
Set Deepsleep wakeup AON timer.
MODS
#
Deep sleep wakeupid!
Aontimer wakeup. Wait 5s sleep again.
Set Deepsleep wakeup AON timer.
MODS
```

☒ Autoscroll ☐ Show timestamp Newline 115200 baud Clear output



```
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]
Set Deepsleep wakeup AON pin D16.
MODS
#
Deep sleep wakeupid!
AonWakepin wakeup, wakepin is D16. Wait 5s sleep again.
Set Deepsleep wakeup AON pin D16.
MODS
#
Deep sleep wakeupid!
AonWakepin wakeup, wakepin is D16. Wait 5s sleep again.
Set Deepsleep wakeup AON pin D16.
MODS
```

☒ Autoscroll ☐ Show timestamp Newline 115200 baud Clear output



The screenshot shows a serial terminal window with the title 'COM42'. At the top, there is a text input field and a 'Send' button. The main area displays the following text:

```
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]
Set Deepsleep wakeup RTC.
MODS
#
Deep sleep wakeupid!
RTC wakeup. Wait 5s sleep again.
Set Deepsleep wakeup RTC.
MODS
#
Deep sleep wakeupid!
RTC wakeup. Wait 5s sleep again.
Set Deepsleep wakeup RTC.
MODS
```

At the bottom of the window, there are three checkboxes: 'Autoscroll' (checked), 'Show timestamp' (unchecked), and 'Newline' (unchecked). To the right of these are two dropdown menus: '115200 baud' and 'Clear output'.

Code Reference

Please refer to the [API Documents](#) PowerSave section for detail description of all API.

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Power Save Deep Sleep DHT Eink

Materials

- RTL8722DM x 1
- DHT11 or DHT22 or DHT21 x 1
- LCD I2C screen x 1

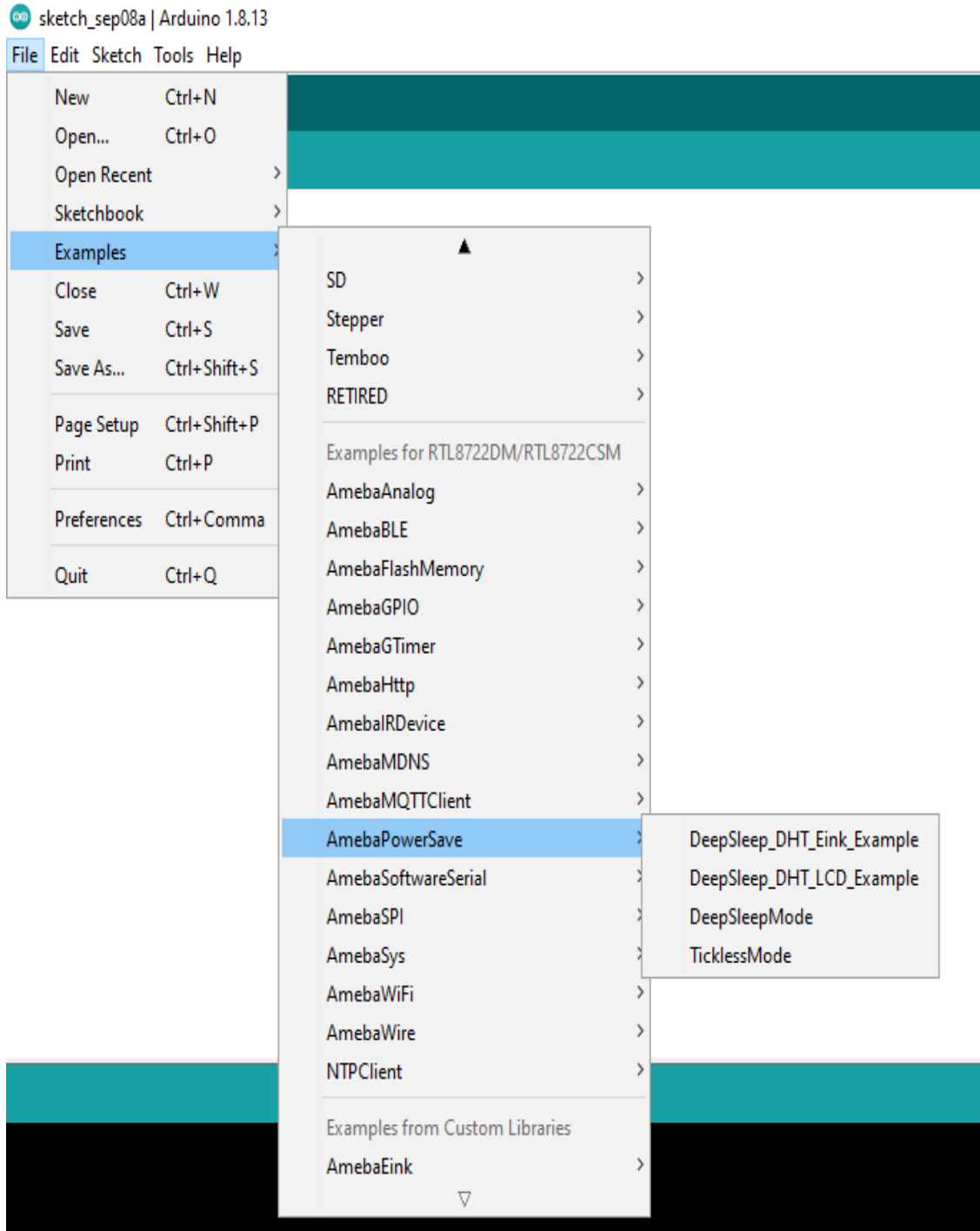
Example

Introduction

Ameba-D supports low power modes which are deepsleep mode. Deepsleep mode turns off most of the system power domain. The power consumptions of core module in DeepSleep Mode is around 7uA to 8uA compare to normal state around 22mA. This example gives demo of system switch between “working” and “sleep”(power save).Using DHT sensor to read data and display on Eink screen when system is awake. After 5 seconds system auto enter DeepSleep Mode for power save. System will wake up by wakeup source.(Aon timer, Aon Pins or RTC timer).

Procedure

Open “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaPowerSave” -> “DeepSleep_DHT_Eink_Example”



Set condition values as picture below.

“DS_WAKEUP_SOURCE” is used to set the wake-up source, user can chose 3 wake up sources now,

AON timer (SET_DS_AON_TIMER_WAKEUP);

AON pins (SET_DS_AON_WAKEPIN_WAKEUP);

RTC timer (SET_DS_RTC_WAKEUP);

AON timer can be set from 0 to 32760000 range (unit ms) by AON_TIMER_SLEEP_DURATION

There are 4 pins can be set as AON pins and active high for wake-up, D16, D17, D26 and D27. The AON pin can be set by SET_DS_AON_WAKEPIN_WAKEUPPIN

RTC timer wake-up system by set alarm. The alarm has 4 values, day, hour, min and sec. All 4 values can be set by DS_RTC_ALARM_DAY, DS_RTC_ALARM_HOUR, DS_RTC_ALARM_MIN, and DS_RTC_ALARM_SEC

DHTPIN is used to set DHT sensor data pin. User can choose any GPIO pins.

DHTTYPE is used to set DHT sensor type. (DHT11, DHT22 and DHT33)

DeepSleep_DHT_Eink_Example | Arduino 1.8.13

File Edit Sketch Tools Help



```
#define DHTPIN 6                // DHT data digital pin
#define DHTTYPE DHT11          // DHT 11
DHT dht(DHTPIN, DHTTYPE);

#define DEEPSLEEP_MODE         11
#define SET_DS_AON_TIMER_WAKEUP 0
#define SET_DS_AON_WAKEPIN_WAKEUP 1
#define SET_DS_RTC_WAKEUP      2

//SET_DS_AON_TIMER_WAKEUP:0; SET_DS_AON_WAKEPIN_WAKEUP:1; SET_DS_RTC_WAKEUP:2;
#define DS_WAKEUP_SOURCE        SET_DS_RTC_WAKEUP

#define AON_TIMER_SLEEP_DURATION 10000    // deepsleep time duration 0 to 32760000ms
#define DS_RTC_ALARM_DAY         0
#define DS_RTC_ALARM_HOUR        0
#define DS_RTC_ALARM_MIN         1
#define DS_RTC_ALARM_SEC         0
#define SET_DS_AON_WAKEPIN_WAKEUPPIN 27  // D16:16   D17:17   D26:26   D27:27
```

When finished the condition values setting, system will run and switch between normal working mode and deepsleep mode controlled by wakeup source. Eink screen will display the temperature and humidity data measured from DHT sensor when system is awake.

Code Reference

Please refer to the [API Documents](#) PowerSave section for detail description of all API.

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Power Save Deep Sleep DHT LCD

Materials

- RTL8722DM x 1
- DHT11 or DHT22 or DHT21 x 1
- LCD I2C screen x 1

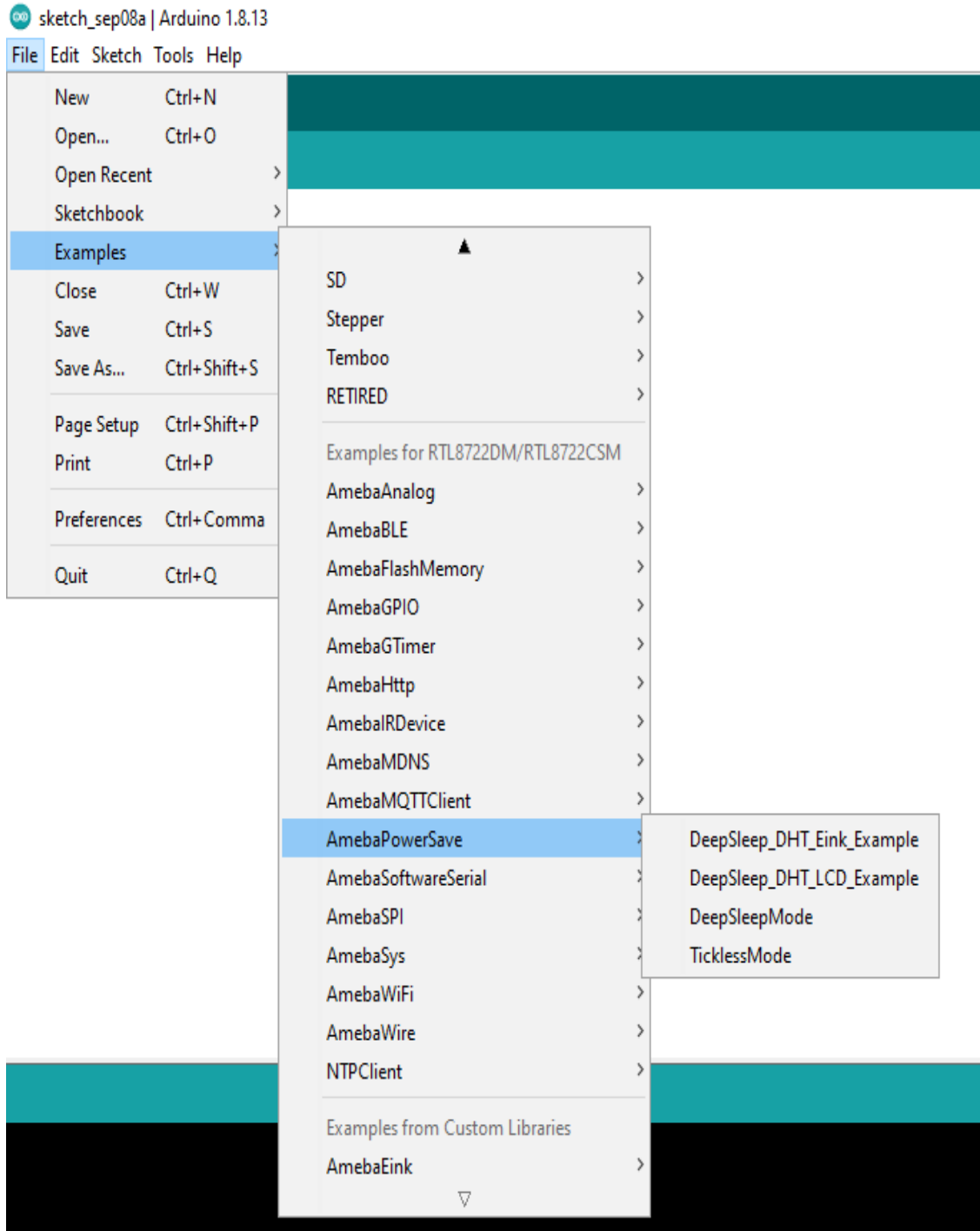
Example

Introduction

Ameba-D supports low power modes which are deepsleep mode. Deepsleep mode turns off most of the system power domain. The power consumptions of core module in DeepSleep Mode is around 7uA to 8uA compare to normal state around 22mA. This example gives demo of system switch between “working” and “sleep”(power save).Using DHT sensor to read data and display on LCD screen when system is awake. After 5 seconds system auto enter DeepSleep Mode for power save. System will wake up by wakeup source.(Aon timer, Aon Pins or RTC timer).

Procedure

Open “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaPowerSave” -> “DeepSleep_DHT_LCD_Example”



Set condition values as picture below.

“DS_WAKEUP_SOURCE” is used to set the wake-up source, user can chose 3 wake up sources now,

AON timer (SET_DS_AON_TIMER_WAKEUP);

AON pins (SET_DS_AON_WAKEPIN_WAKEUP);

RTC timer (SET_DS_RTC_WAKEUP);

AON timer can be set from 0 to 32760000 range (unit ms) by AON_TIMER_SLEEP_DURATION

There are 4 pins can be set as AON pins and active high for wake-up, D16, D17, D26 and D27. The AON pin can be set by SET_DS_AON_WAKEPIN_WAKEUPPIN

RTC timer wake-up system by set alarm. The alarm has 4 values, day, hour, min and sec. All 4 values can be set by DS_RTC_ALARM_DAY, DS_RTC_ALARM_HOUR, DS_RTC_ALARM_MIN, and DS_RTC_ALARM_SEC


DHTPIN is used to set DHT sensor data pin. User can choose any GPIO pins.

DHTTYPE is used to set DHT sensor type. (DHT11, DHT22 and DHT33)

DeepSleep_DHT_LCD_Example | Arduino 1.8.13

File Edit Sketch Tools Help

```


DeepSleep_DHT_LCD_Example

#define DHTPIN 8                // DHT data digital pin
#define DHTTYPE DHT11          // DHT 11
DHT dht(DHTPIN, DHTTYPE);

#define DEEPSLEEP_MODE         11
#define SET_DS_AON_TIMER_WAKEUP 0
#define SET_DS_AON_WAKEPIN_WAKEUP 1
#define SET_DS_RTC_WAKEUP      2

//SET_DS_AON_TIMER_WAKEUP:0; SET_DS_AON_WAKEPIN_WAKEUP:1; SET_DS_RTC_WAKEUP:2;
#define DS_WAKEUP_SOURCE        SET_DS_RTC_WAKEUP

#define AON_TIMER_SLEEP_DURATION 10000    // deepsleep time duration 0 to 32760000ms
#define DS_RTC_ALARM_DAY        0
#define DS_RTC_ALARM_HOUR       0
#define DS_RTC_ALARM_MIN        1
#define DS_RTC_ALARM_SEC        0
#define SET_DS_AON_WAKEPIN_WAKEUPPIN 27  // D16:16   D17:17   D26:26   D27:27

// #define DS_WAKEUP_SOURCE        SET_DS_AON_TIMER_WAKEUP

```

When finished the condition values setting, system will run and switch between normal working mode and deepsleep mode controlled by wakeup source. LCD screen will display the temperature and humidity data measured from DHT sensor when system is awake.

Code Reference

Please refer to the [API Documents](#) PowerSave section for detail description of all API.

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Power Save Tickless Mode

Materials

- RTL8722DM x 1

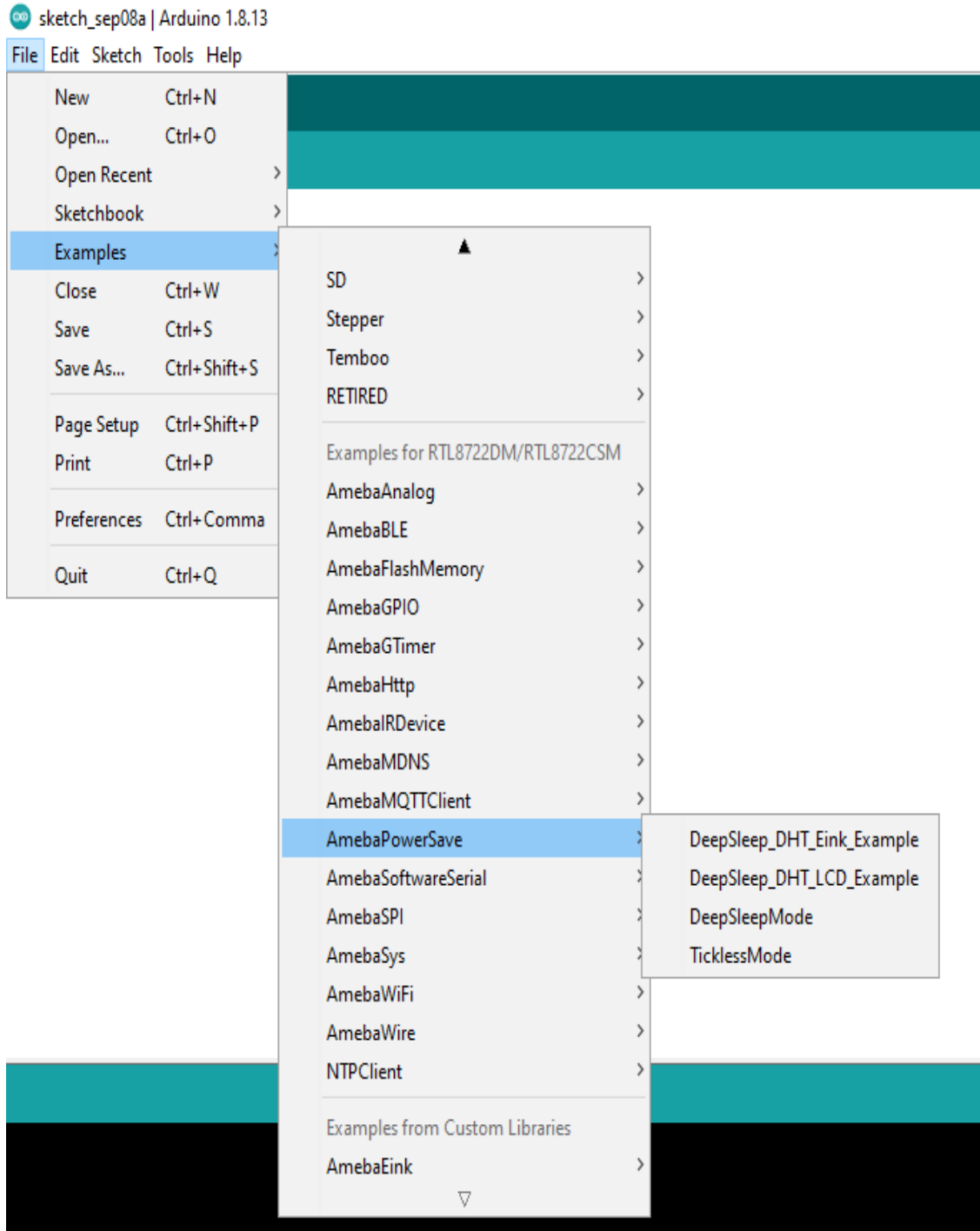
Example

Introduction

Ameba-D supports two low power modes which are deepsleep mode and sleep mode. The power consumptions of Tickless Sleep Mode is around 28uA to 30uA compare to normal state around 15mA. This example describes how to use freertos tickless with uart interruptable interface.

Procedure

Open “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaPowerSave” -> “TicklessMode”



Set condition values as picture below.

“TL_WAKEUP_SOURCE” is used to set the wake-up source, user can chose 3 wake up sources now,
 LOGUART (SET_TL_UART_WAKEUP);
 RTC timer (SET_TL_RTC_WAKEUP);
 AON pins (SET_TL_AON_WAKEPIN_WAKEUP);

When apply the LOGUART wakeup, KM4 “TL_Suspend_function” then enter sleep mode. KM0 keep alive 13s then enter sleep mode.

RTC timer wake-up system by set alarm. The alarm has 4 values, day, hour, min and sec. All 4 values can be set by TL_RTC_ALARM_DAY, TL_RTC_ALARM_HOUR, TL_RTC_ALARM_MIN, and TL_RTC_ALARM_SEC

There are 4 pins can be set as AON pins and active high for wake-up, D16, D17, D26 and D27. The AON pin can be set by SET_TL_AON_WAKEPIN_WAKEUP

TL_SYSACTIVE_TIME is for setting time duration of the system to keep alive. (unit ms)

 TicklessMode | Arduino 1.8.13

File Edit Sketch Tools Help



```

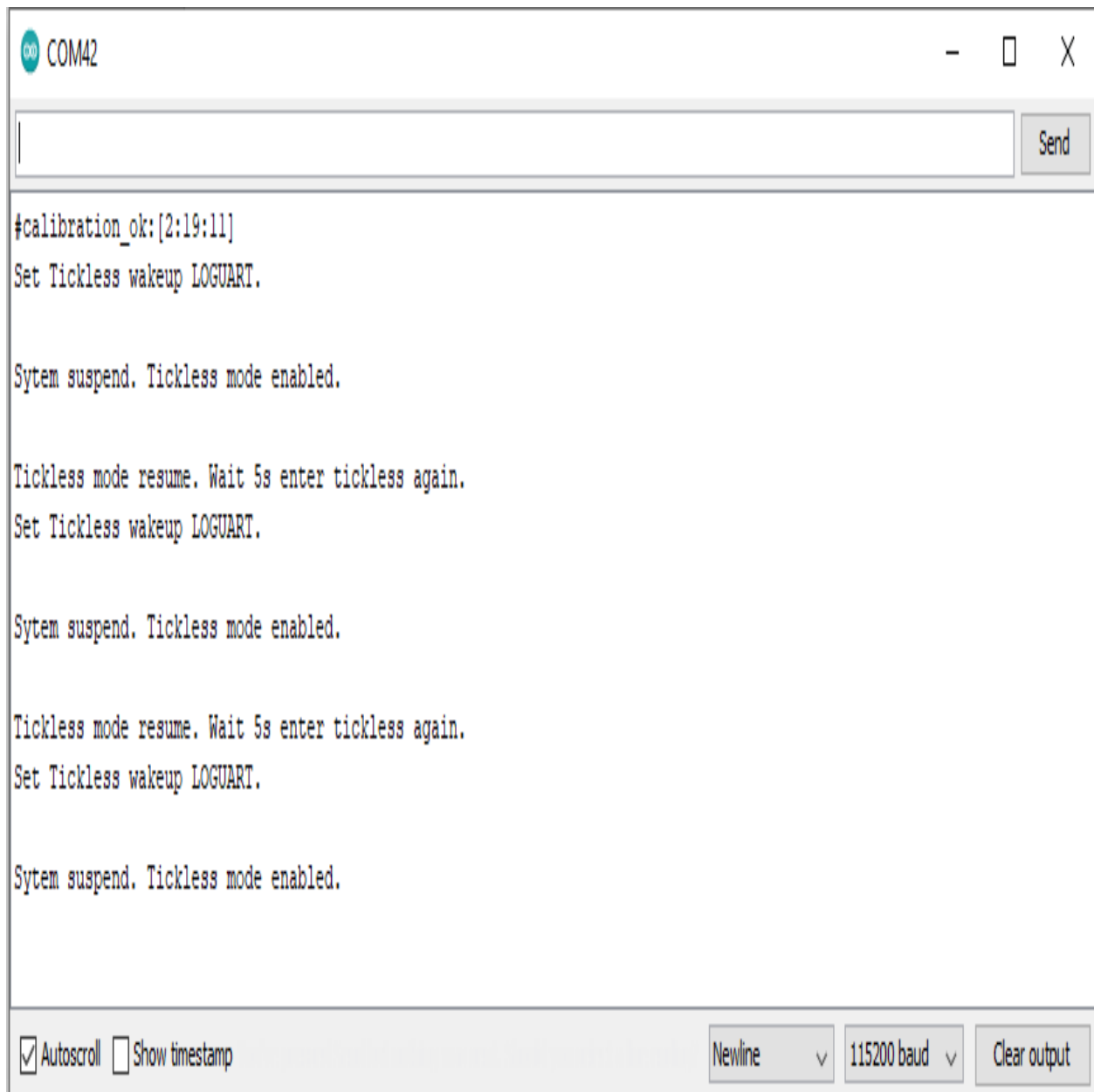
/*
 * This sketch shows how to use power save tickless mode
 */
#include "ameba_soc.h"
#include <PowerSave.h>

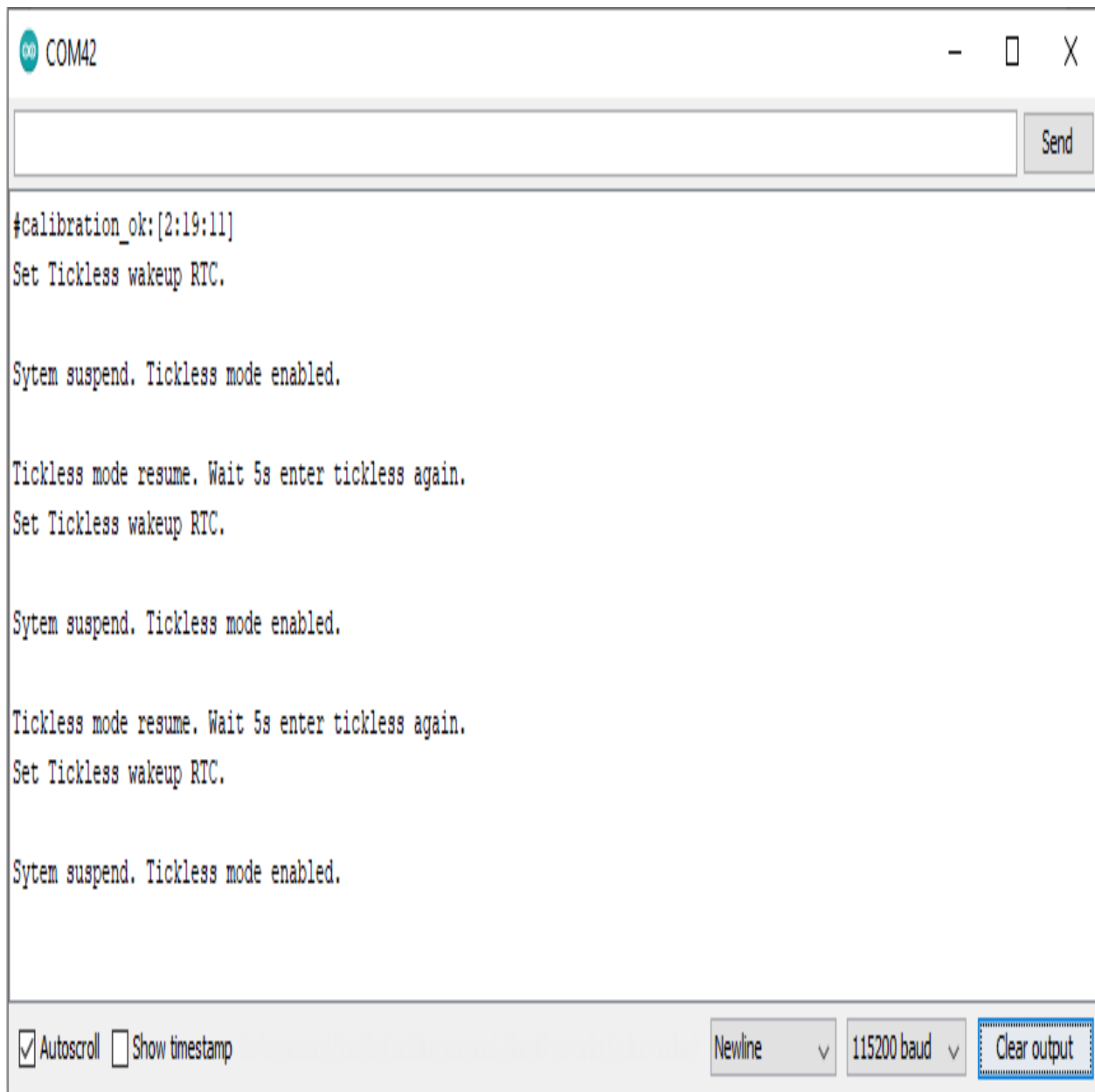
#define TICKLESS_MODE                22
#define SET_TL_UART_WAKEUP           0
#define SET_TL_RTC_WAKEUP             1
#define SET_TL_AON_WAKEPIN_WAKEUP    16 // D16:16    D17:17    D26:26    D27:27

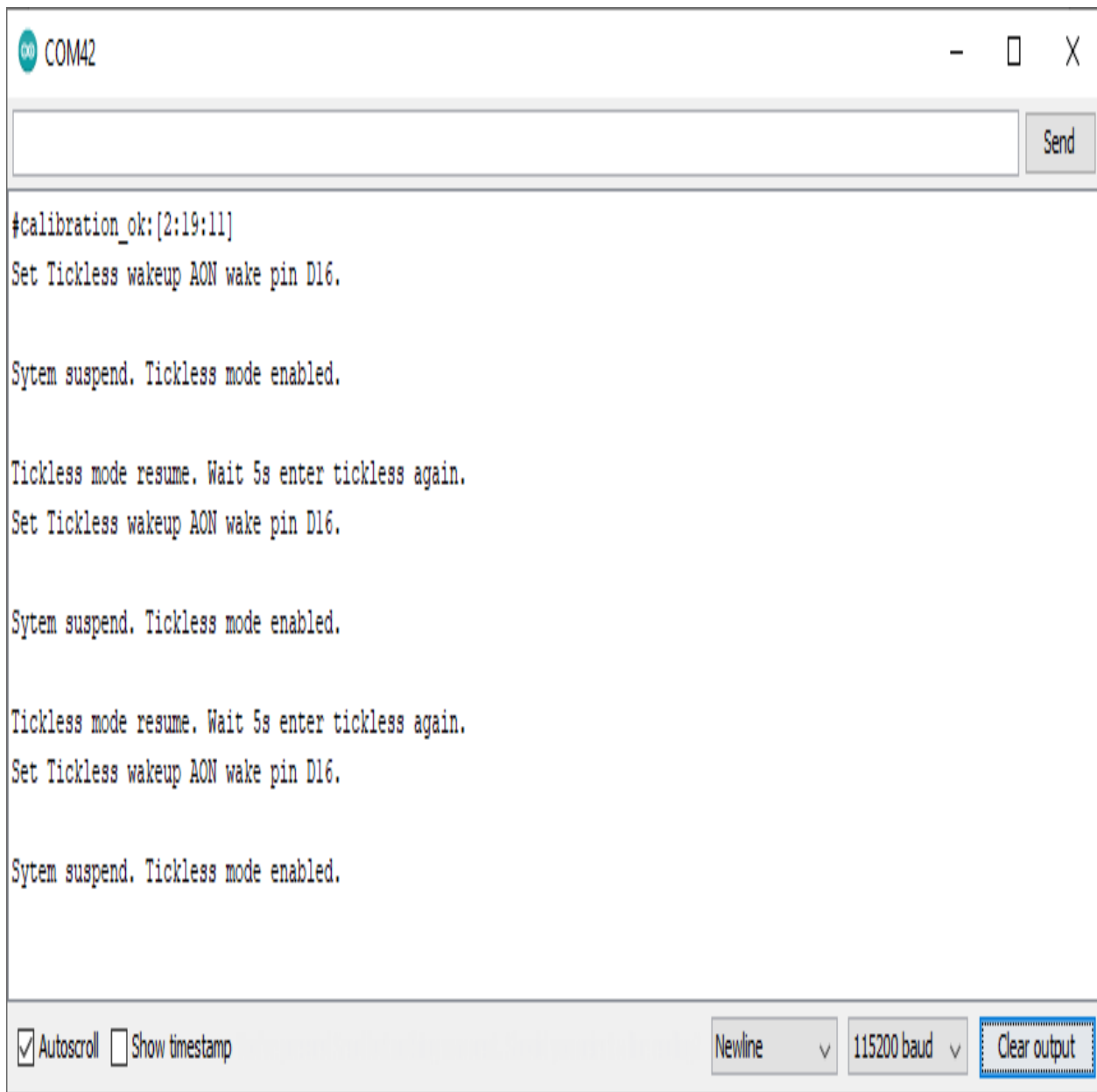
//SET_TL_UART_WAKEUP:0; SET_TL_RTC_WAKEUP:1; SET_TL_AON_WAKEPIN_WAKEUP:16 or 17 or 26 or 27;
#define TL_WAKEUP_SOURCE              SET_TL_UART_WAKEUP

#define TL_SYSACTIVE_TIME             5000
#define TL_RTC_ALARM_DAY              0
#define TL_RTC_ALARM_HOUR            0
#define TL_RTC_ALARM_MIN             0
#define TL_RTC_ALARM_SEC             10

```







```
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]
Set Tickless wakeup AON wake pin D16.

System suspend. Tickless mode enabled.

Tickless mode resume. Wait 5s enter tickless again.
Set Tickless wakeup AON wake pin D16.

System suspend. Tickless mode enabled.

Tickless mode resume. Wait 5s enter tickless again.
Set Tickless wakeup AON wake pin D16.

System suspend. Tickless mode enabled.
```

Code Reference

Please refer to the [API Documents](#) PowerSave section for detail description of all API.

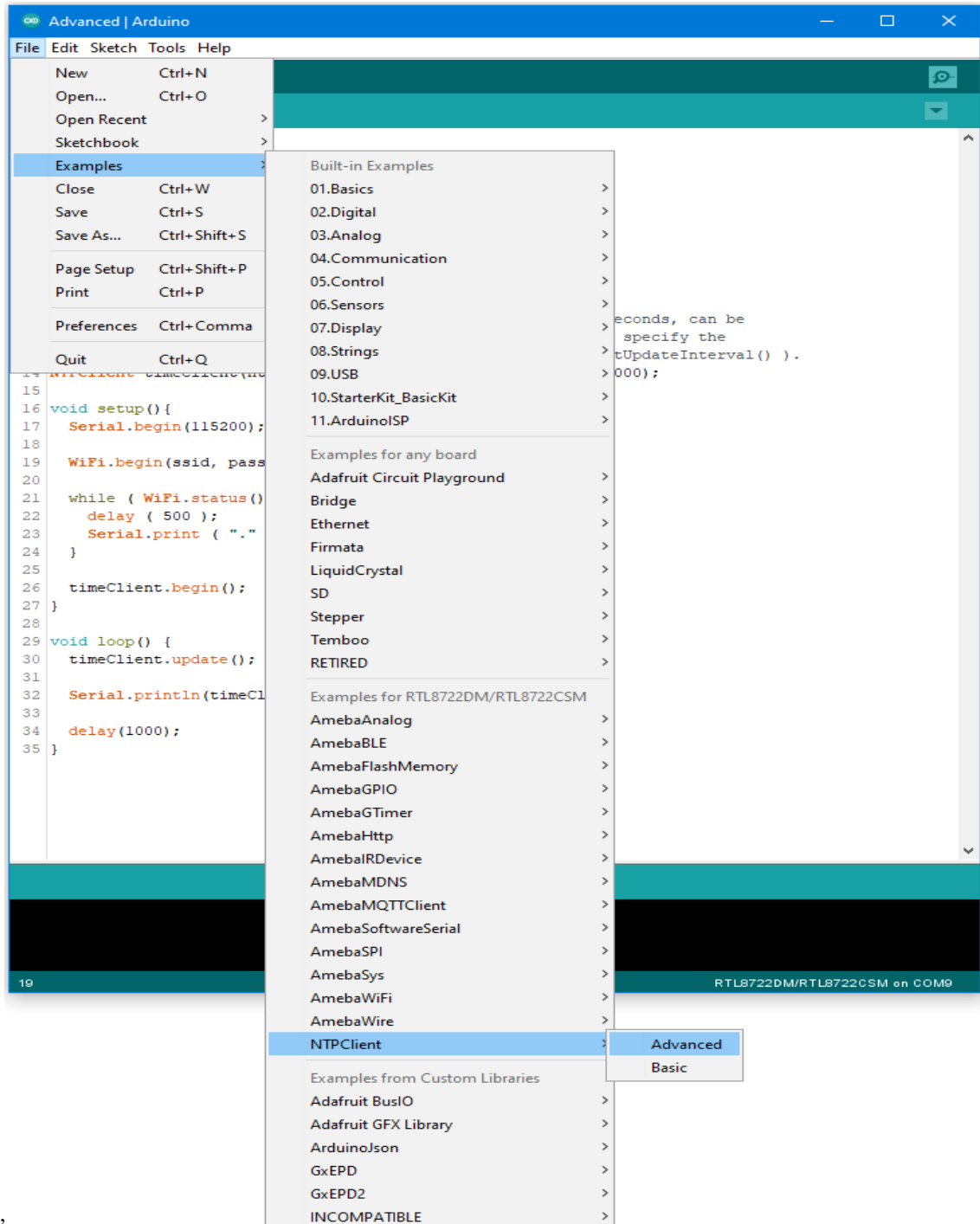
[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Use NTPClient Library To Obtain Local Time

Preparation

- Ameba x 1

Example

In this example, we use an NTP client to sync with NTP servers using UDP and keep track of time locally. Open the example. “File” -> “Examples” -> “NTPClient” ->



“Advanced”

Modify

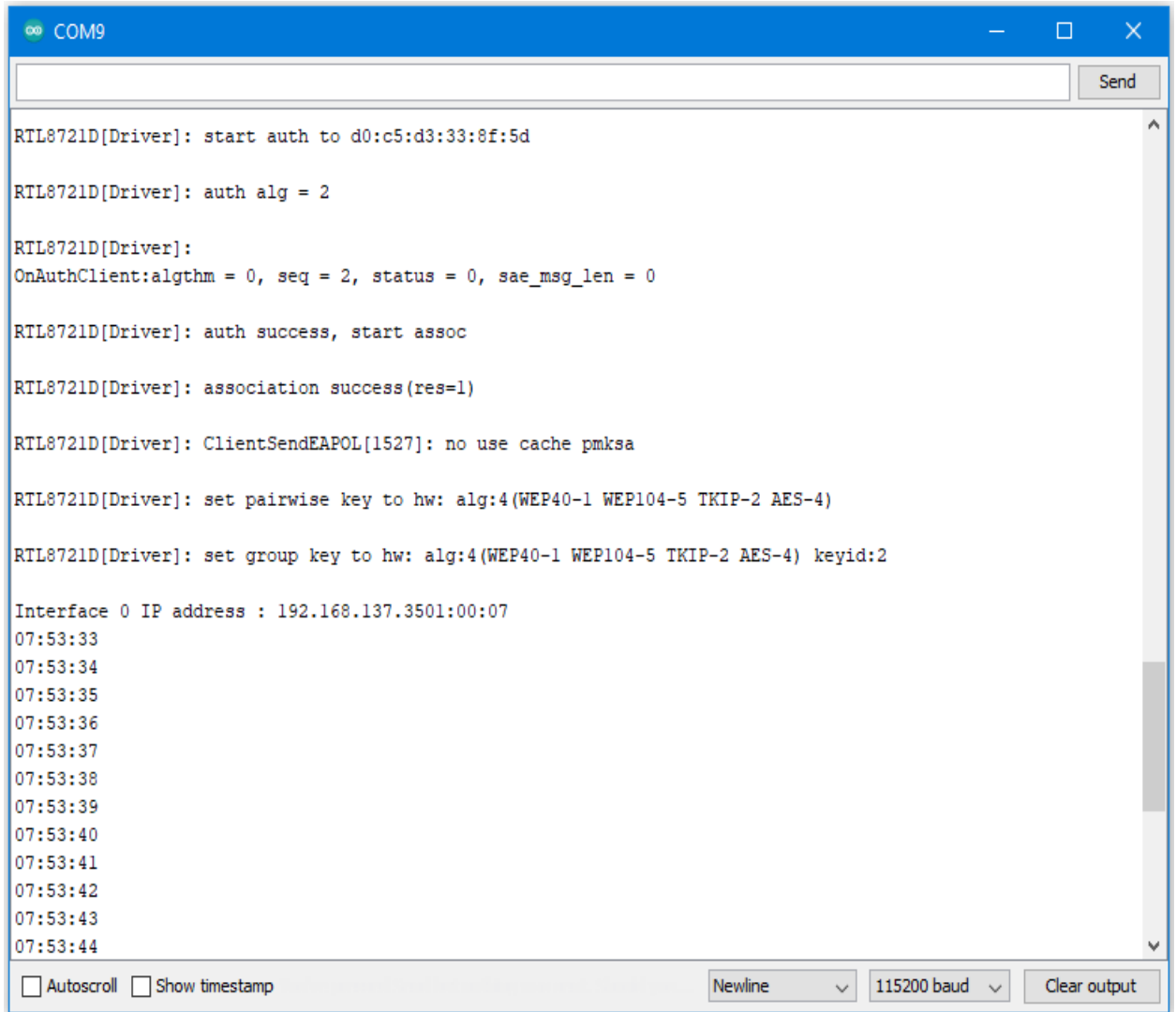

```

Advanced | Arduino
File Edit Sketch Tools Help
✓ → 📄 ⬆️ ⬇️
Advanced
1 #include <NTPClient.h>
2 #include <WiFi.h>
3 #include <WiFiUdp.h>
4
5 char ssid[] = "<SSID>";
6 char pass[] = "<PASS>";
7
8
9 WiFiUDP ntpUDP;
10
11 // You can specify the time server pool and the o
12 // changed later with setTimeOffset() ). Addition
13 // update interval (in milliseconds, can be chang
14 NTPClient timeClient(ntpUDP, "europe.pool.ntp.org
15
16 void setup() {
17   Serial.begin(115200);
18
19   WiFi.begin(ssid, pass);
20
21   while ( WiFi.status() != WL_CONNECTED ) {
22     delay ( 500 );
23     Serial.print ( "." );
24   }
25
26   timeClient.begin();
27 }
28
29 void loop() {
30   timeClient.update();
31
32   Serial.println(timeClient.getFormattedTime());
33
34   delay(1000);
35 }

```

the highlighted code section (ssid, password) to connect to your WiFi network.

the code and upload it to Ameba. After pressing the Reset button, Ameba connects to WiFi, gets the UTC time from the NTP server, and prints out the current time with time zone offset to the serial



```

COM9

RTL8721D[Driver]: start auth to d0:c5:d3:33:8f:5d

RTL8721D[Driver]: auth alg = 2

RTL8721D[Driver]:
OnAuthClient:alghthm = 0, seq = 2, status = 0, sae_msg_len = 0

RTL8721D[Driver]: auth success, start assoc

RTL8721D[Driver]: association success(res=1)

RTL8721D[Driver]: ClientSendEAPOL[1527]: no use cache pmksa

RTL8721D[Driver]: set pairwise key to hw: alg:4(WEP40-1 WEP104-5 TKIP-2 AES-4)

RTL8721D[Driver]: set group key to hw: alg:4(WEP40-1 WEP104-5 TKIP-2 AES-4) keyid:2

Interface 0 IP address : 192.168.137.3501:00:07
07:53:33
07:53:34
07:53:35
07:53:36
07:53:37
07:53:38
07:53:39
07:53:40
07:53:41
07:53:42
07:53:43
07:53:44

☐ Autoscroll ☐ Show timestamp
Newline 115200 baud Clear output

```

monitor.

Code Reference

Configure NTP client: The NTPClient needs to use a UDP client for communications. A WiFiUDP client is declared and passed to the NTPClient constructor, along with an NTP server address, time zone offset in seconds, and update interval in milliseconds. If detailed configuration is not needed, just passing in the UDP client is also sufficient, refer to the “NTPClient” -> “Basic” example.

```
WiFiUDP ntpUDP;
```

```
NTPClient timeClient(ntpUDP, “europe.pool.ntp.org”, 3600, 60000);
```

Start NTP client: After connecting to WiFi, the NTPClient is started using the begin() function, which causes the client to sync with the NTP server and get the UTC time.

```
WiFiUDP ntpUDP;
```

```
timeClient.begin();
```

Get local time: getFormattedTime() is used to format the received UTC time into the local time zone. update() is called every loop so that the NTPClient will sync with the NTP server once every update interval.

```
timeClient.update();
```

```
timeClient.getFormattedTime();
```

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Transmit IR NEC Raw Data And Decode

Materials

- Ameba x2 (one for IR transmitting, the other one for IR receiving)
- Grove – Infrared Emitter x1 (Figure 1)
- Grove – Infrared Receiver x1 (Figure 2)

Example

In this example, we use two Ameba RTL8722 modules that connecting with an infrared (IR) Emitter and an IR Receiver separately to transmit and receive IR NEC Raw data.



Figure 1: Grove – Infrared Receiver



Figure 2: Grove – Infrared Emitter

On the transmission side, the transmitter will send IR NEC raw data. The raw data can be seen as consecutive durations of “marks” and “spaces” (Figure 3) in microseconds (us).

- Mark: a specific period of sending pulses
- Space: a specific period of sending nothing

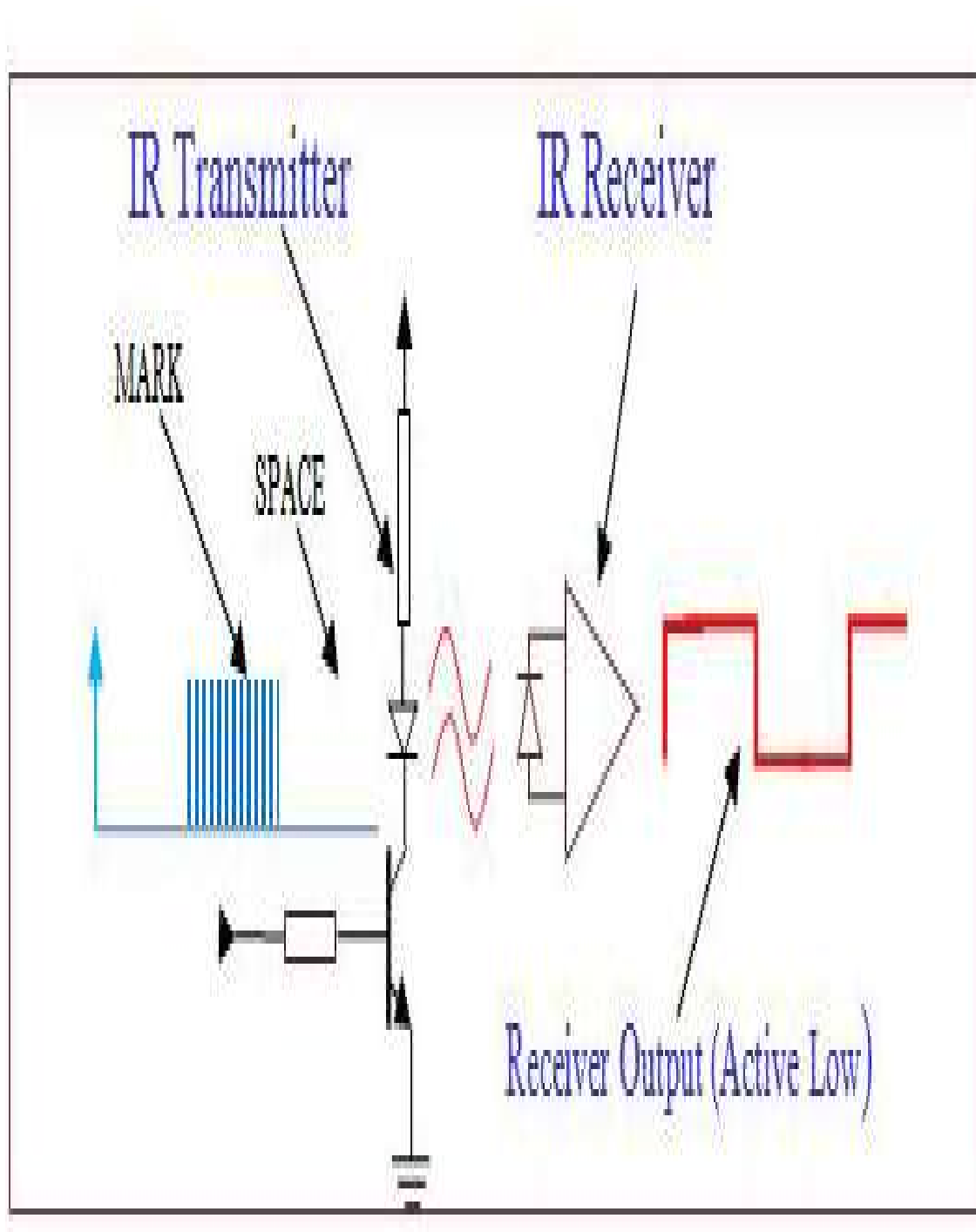


Figure 3: A typical IR transmission and reception setup implementation

For more details, please refer to SB-Projects' topic of [IR Remote Control Theory](#) to learn the theory of IR remote controls

operation and a collection of IR protocol descriptions. In this example, we are going to use NEC (Now Renesas, also known as Japanese Format) as the transmission protocol.

NEC Features

- 8-bit address and 8-bit command length.
- Extended mode available, doubling the address size.
- Address and command are transmitted twice for reliability.
- Pulse distance modulation.
- The carrier frequency of 38kHz.
- Bit time of 1.125ms or 2.25ms.

Modulation

NEC protocol uses Pulse Distance Encoding of the bits for data communication (Figure 4). A logical “1” is represented by total duration of 2250us, with 560us of “marks” and (2250-560) us of “spaces”. While logical “0” is represented by total duration of 1120us, with 560us “marks” and (1120-560) us of “spaces”.

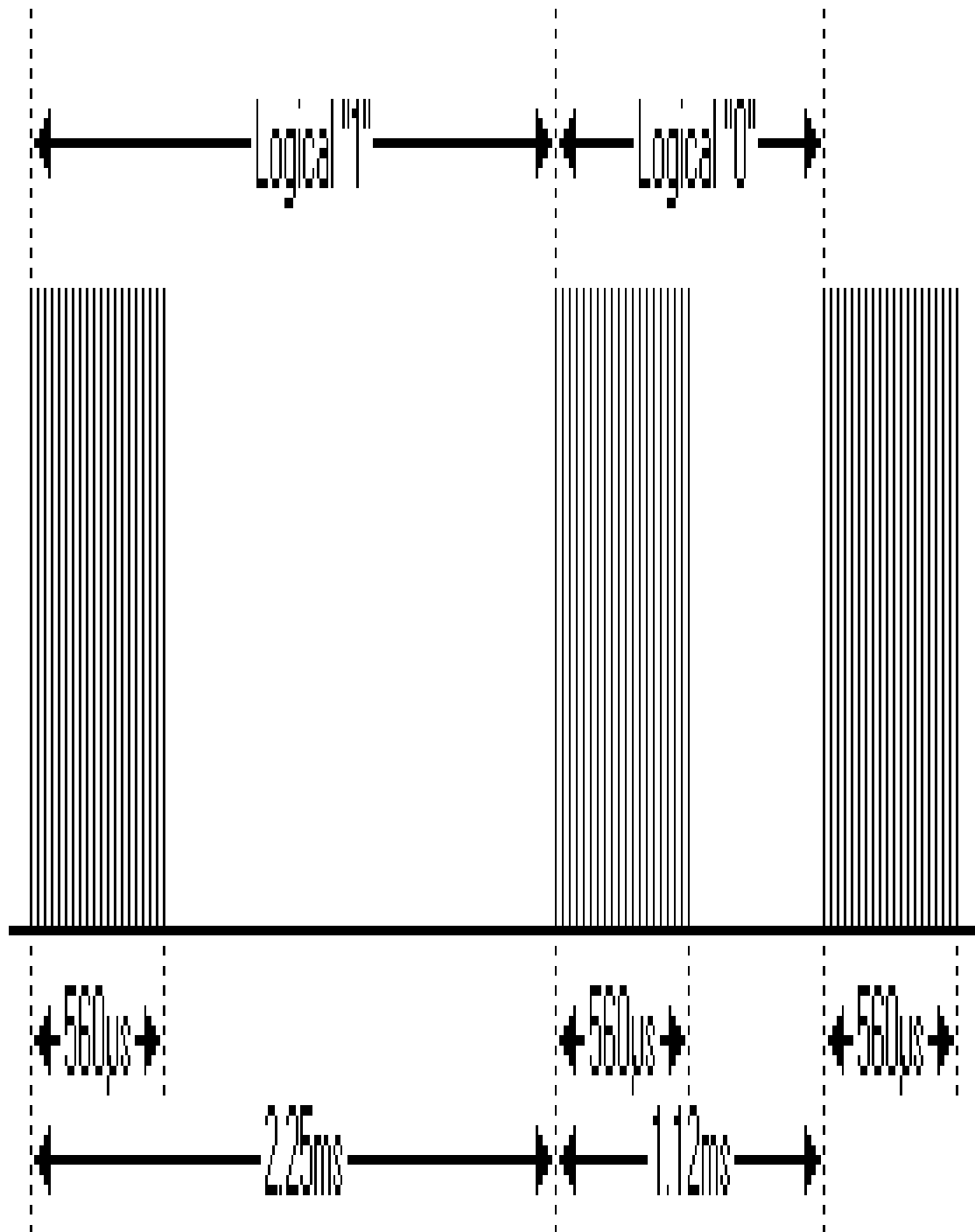


Figure 4: Modulation of NEC

Since a total number of 32-bit data together with the header and the end-bit will be transferred (Figure 5).

If we separate the data in the

time-frame (in us), there will be $(2 + 32) \times 2 + 1 = 69$ “marks” / “spaces” to be transmitted (Figure 6), which forms the raw NEC data we would like to transmit in our Arduino “*.ino” file. This part of the code can be modified by users.

Details of how to obtain raw data code for your remote devices, you may refer to [Ken Shirriff's blog](#), where it provides multiple libraries provided online.

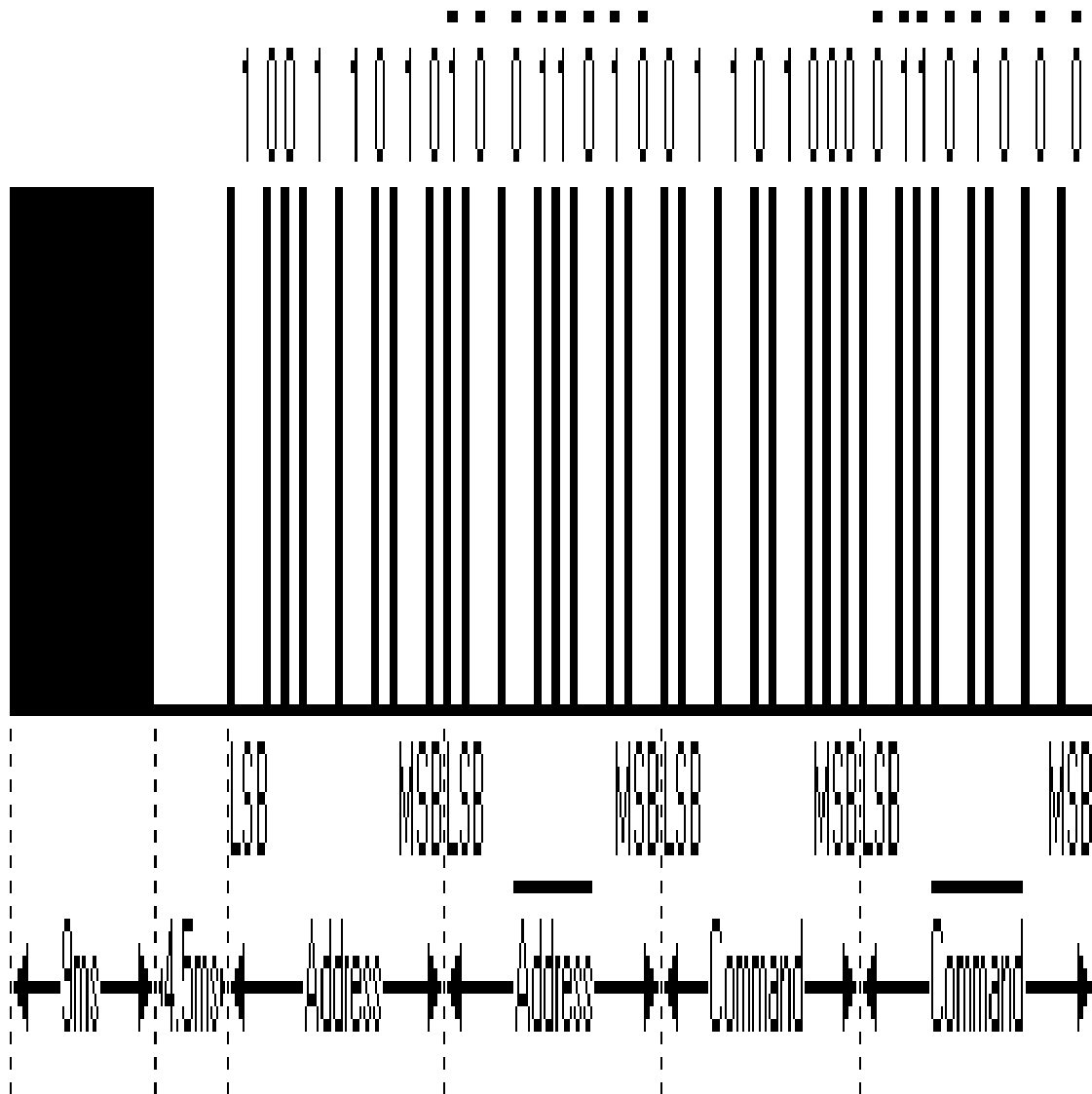


Figure 5: Sample of a Full NEC Data (in logic1 or 0)

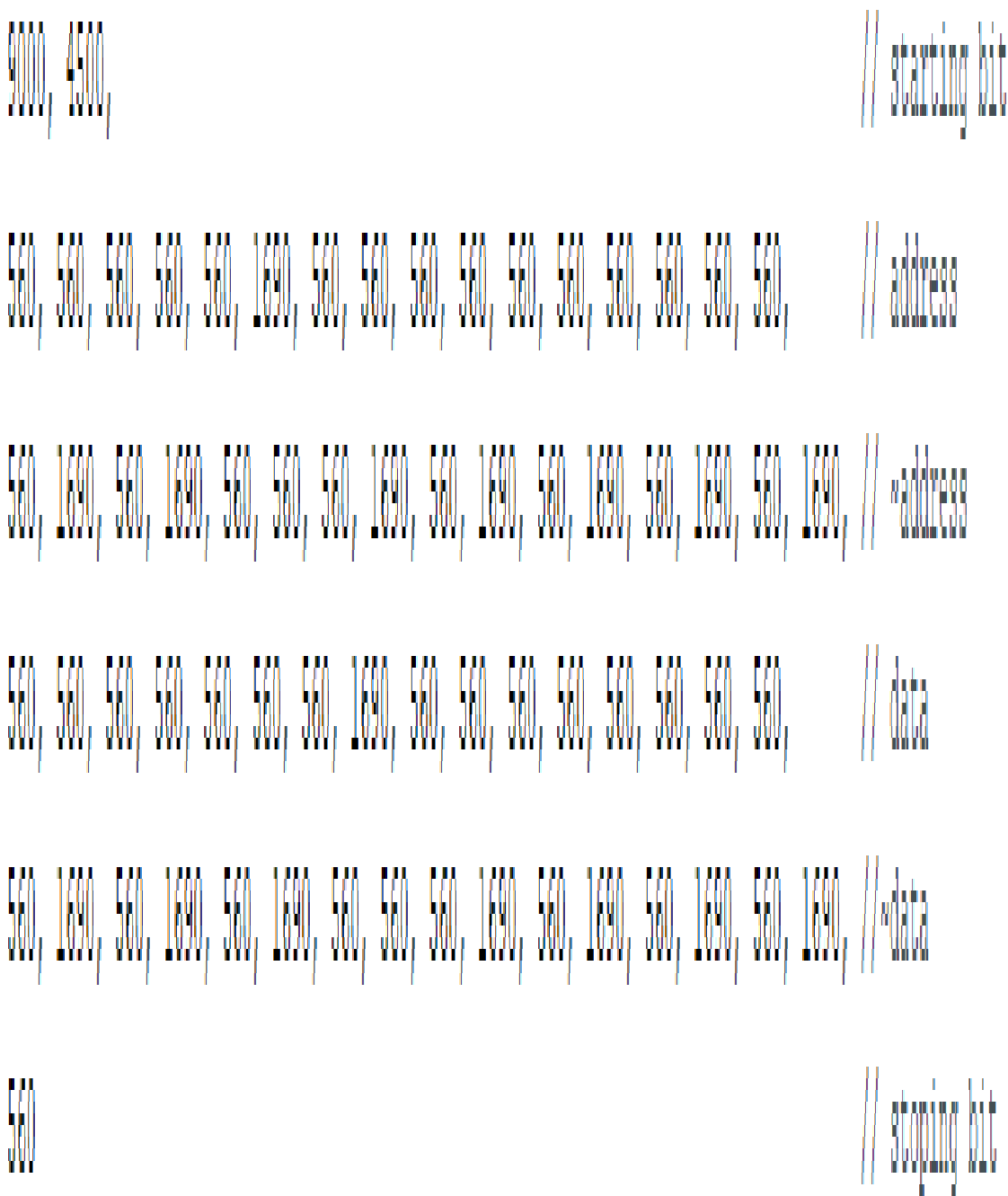


Figure 6: Sample of a Full NEC RAW Data (in us)

Figure 7 and 8 shows the pin configuration of IR Emitter and Receiver with Ameba RTL8722 board.

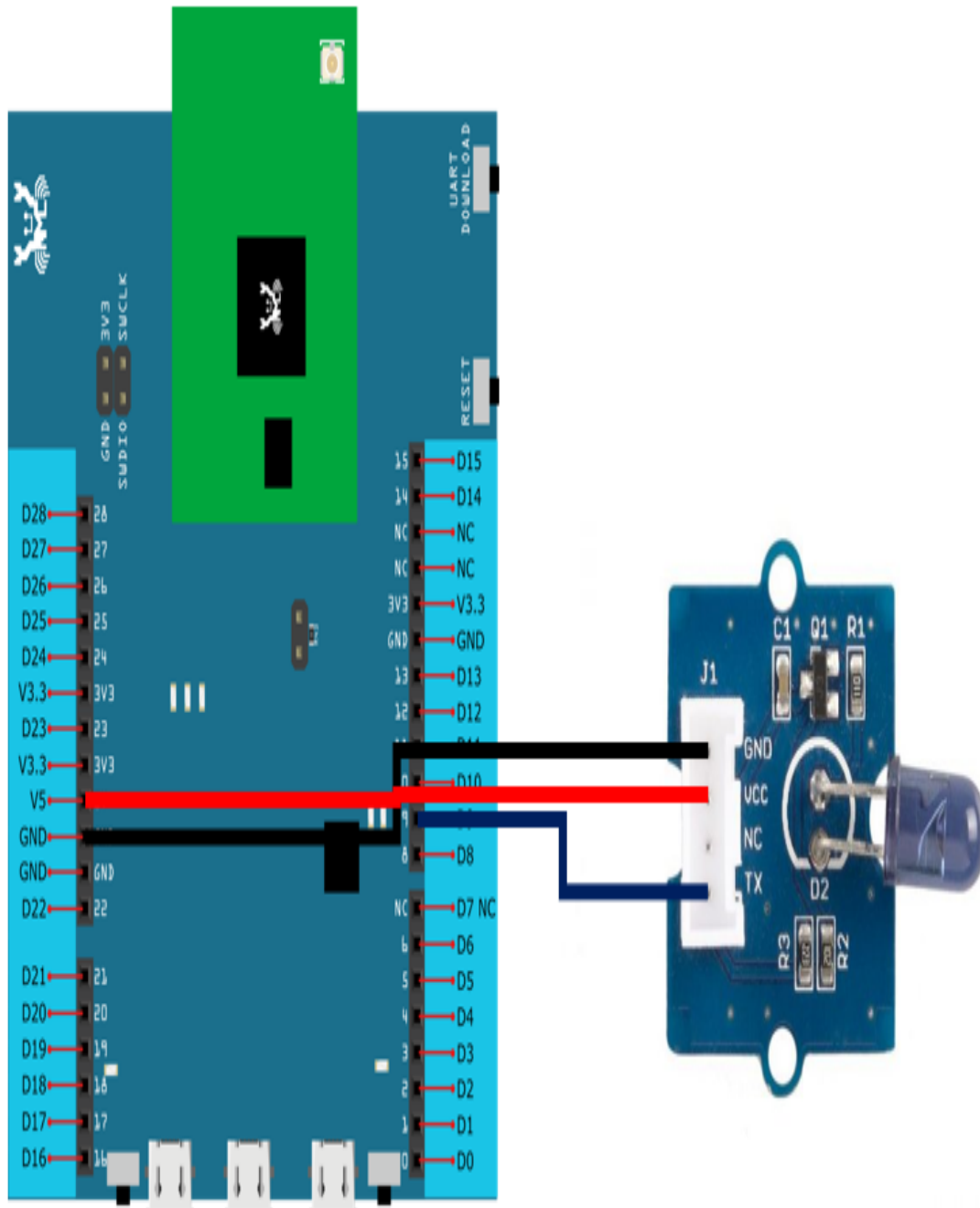


Figure 7: Pin configuration of IR Emitter and Ameba RTL8722

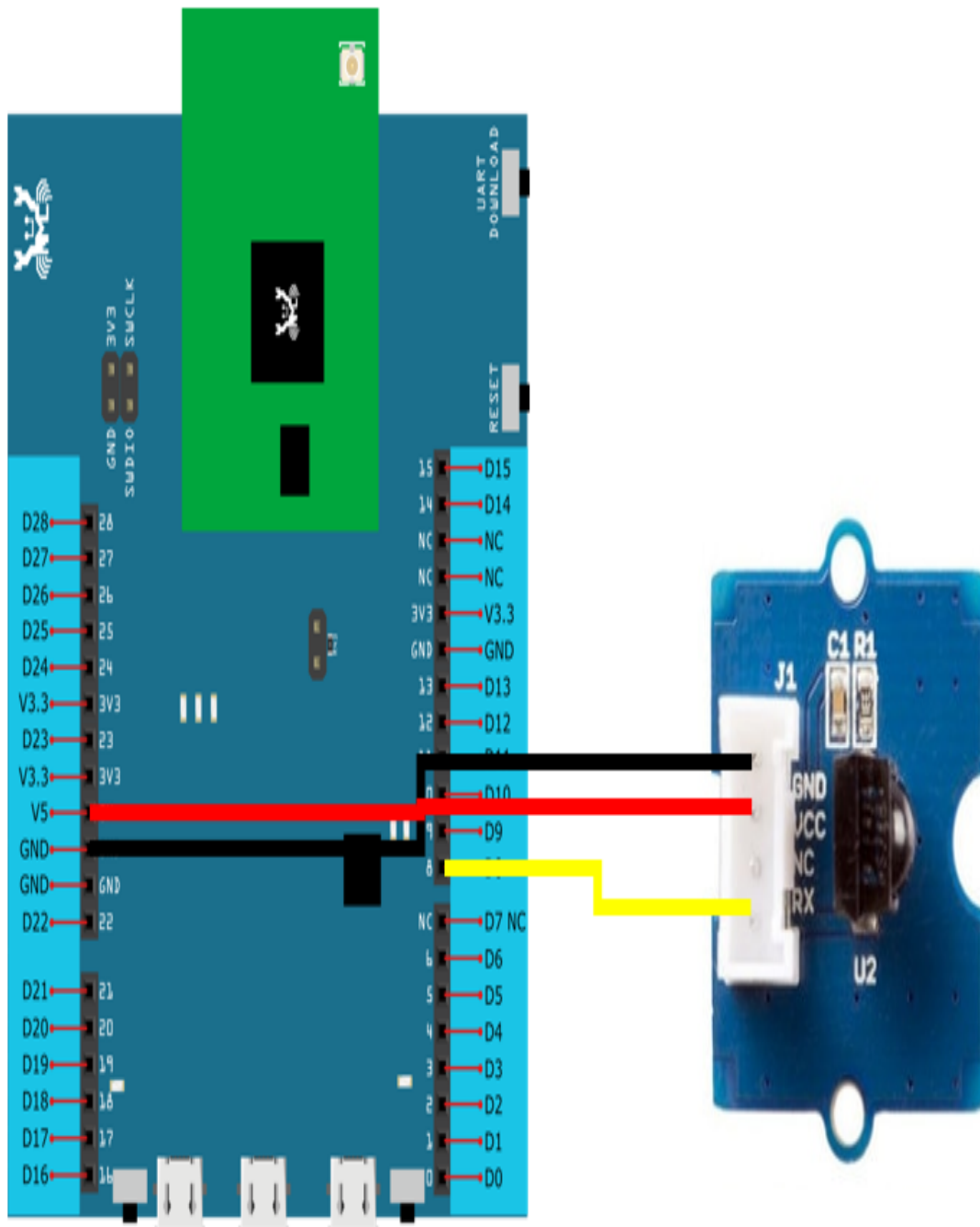


Figure 8: Pin configuration of the IR Receiver and Ameba RTL8722

After the connection is being set up correctly, we will move to the coding part for this example. First, make sure the correct Ameba development board is selected in Arduino IDE: “Tools” -> “Board” -> “RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM”.

Open the “IRSendRAW” example in “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaIRDevice” -> “IRSendRAW” (Figure 9) and upload to 1st board connected with IR Emitter:

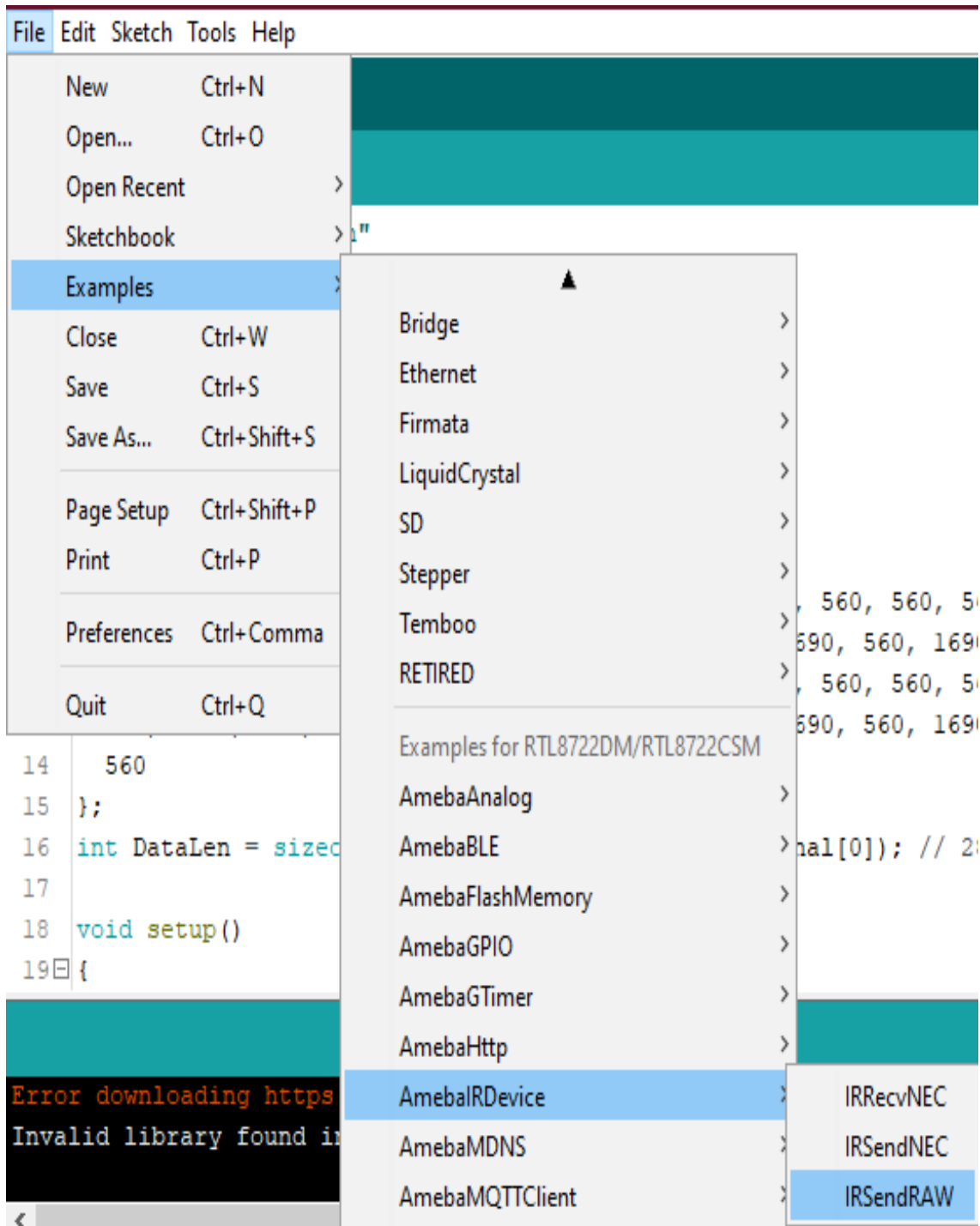


Figure 9: Example Location of IRSendRaw and IRRecvNEC

After successfully upload the sample code for IRSendRaw, you might need to upload the IRRecvNEC example for the 2nd board connected with IR Receiver from “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaIRDevice” -> “IRRecvNEC”.

After opening the serial monitor on the IR Receiver side and press the reset buttons on two boards, the data “48” will be received every 3 seconds (due to the delays () function, not compulsory to wait). After decoding the signal from the receiving Pin D8 and transmitting Pin D9 with Logic Analyser and Pulse View (Figure 10), the result is also shown as “48” after decoding the receiving data with IR NEC Protocol.

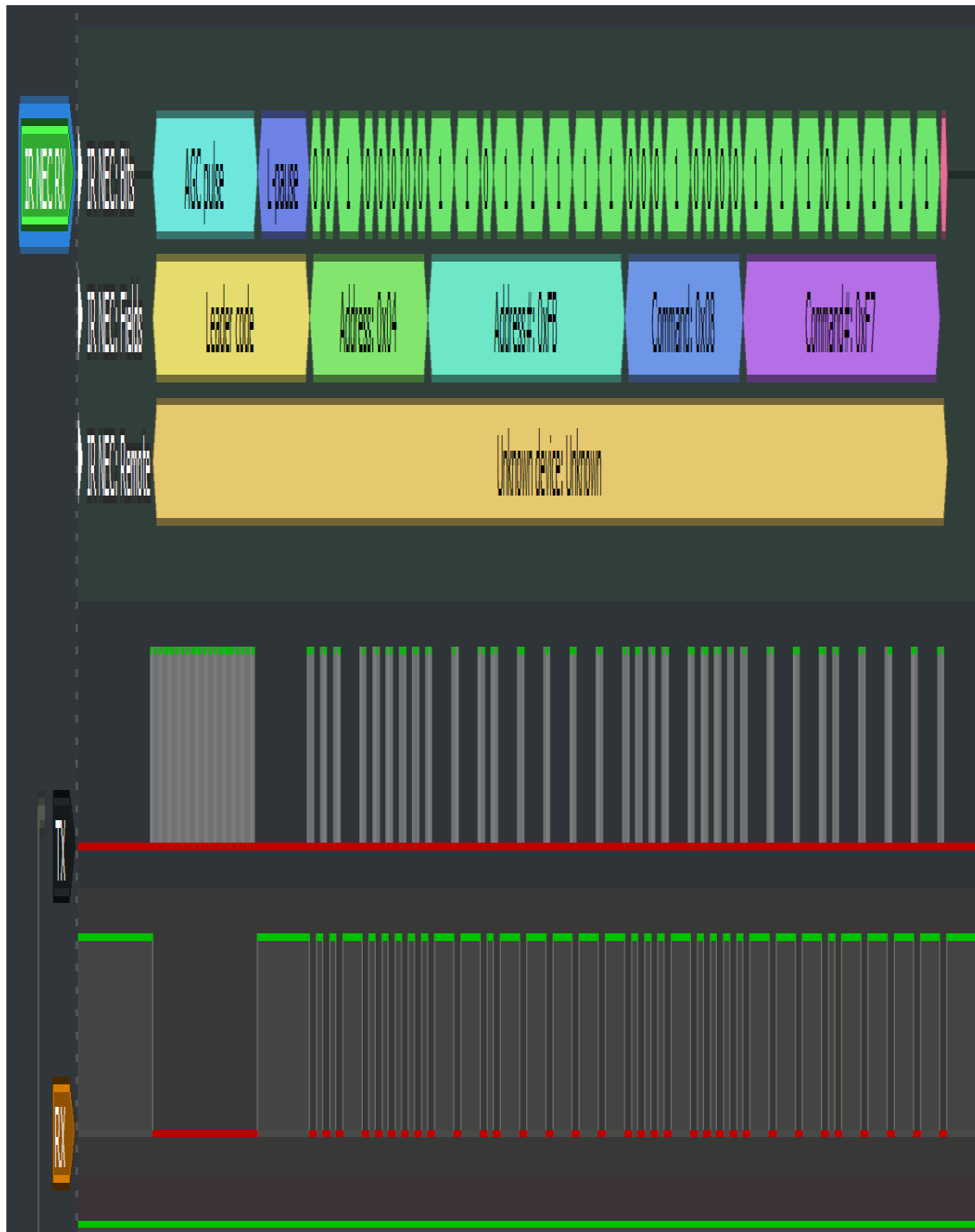


Figure 10: Pulse View results from sending and receiving pin

Code Reference

[1] Seeed Official website for Grove – Infrared Receiver
https://wiki.seeedstudio.com/Grove-Infrared_Receiver/
https://wiki.seeedstudio.com/Grove-Infrared_Receiver/

[2] Seed Official website for Grove – Infrared Emitter

https://wiki.seeedstudio.com/Grove-Infrared_Emitter/

[3] Ken SHirriff's blog on A Multi-Protocol Infrared Remote Library for the Arduino

<http://www.righ.to.com/2009/08/multi-protocol-infrared-remote-library.html>

[4] SB-Projects: IR Remote Control Project

<https://www.sbprojects.net/knowledge/ir/index.php>

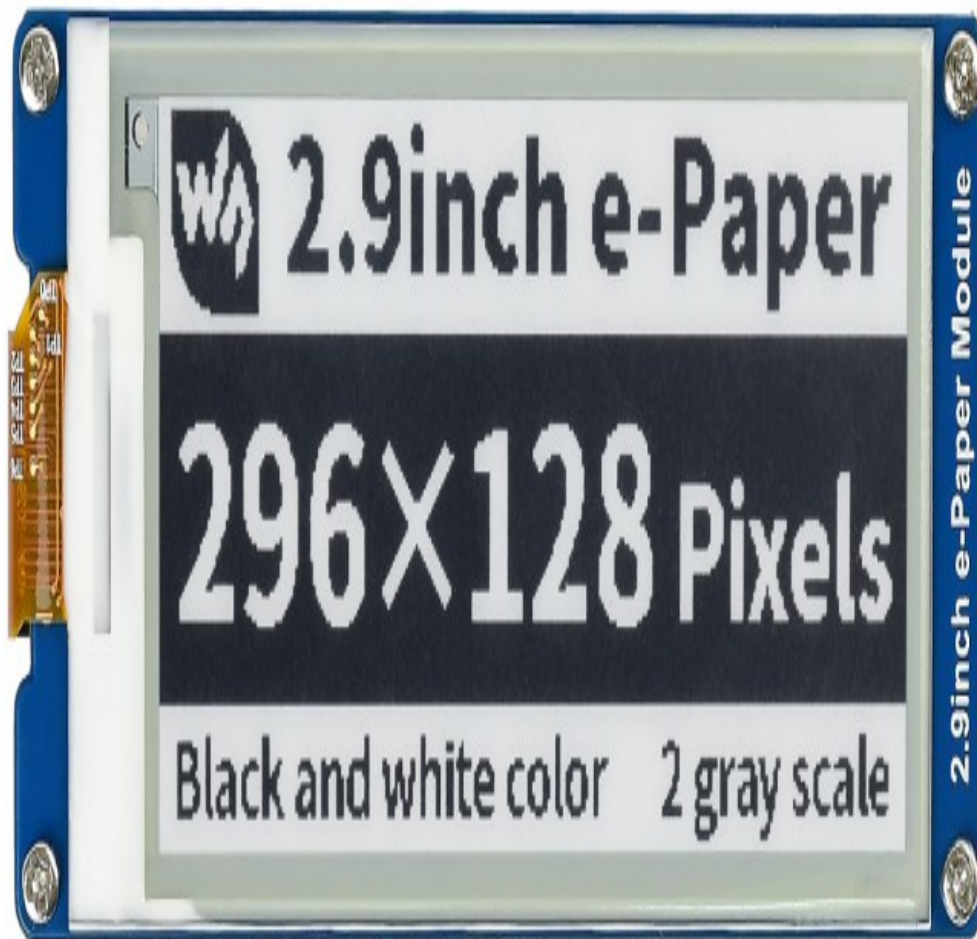
[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Display Images On E-Paper

Materials

- Ameba x 1
- Waveshare 2.9inch e-Paper HAT (D) x 1

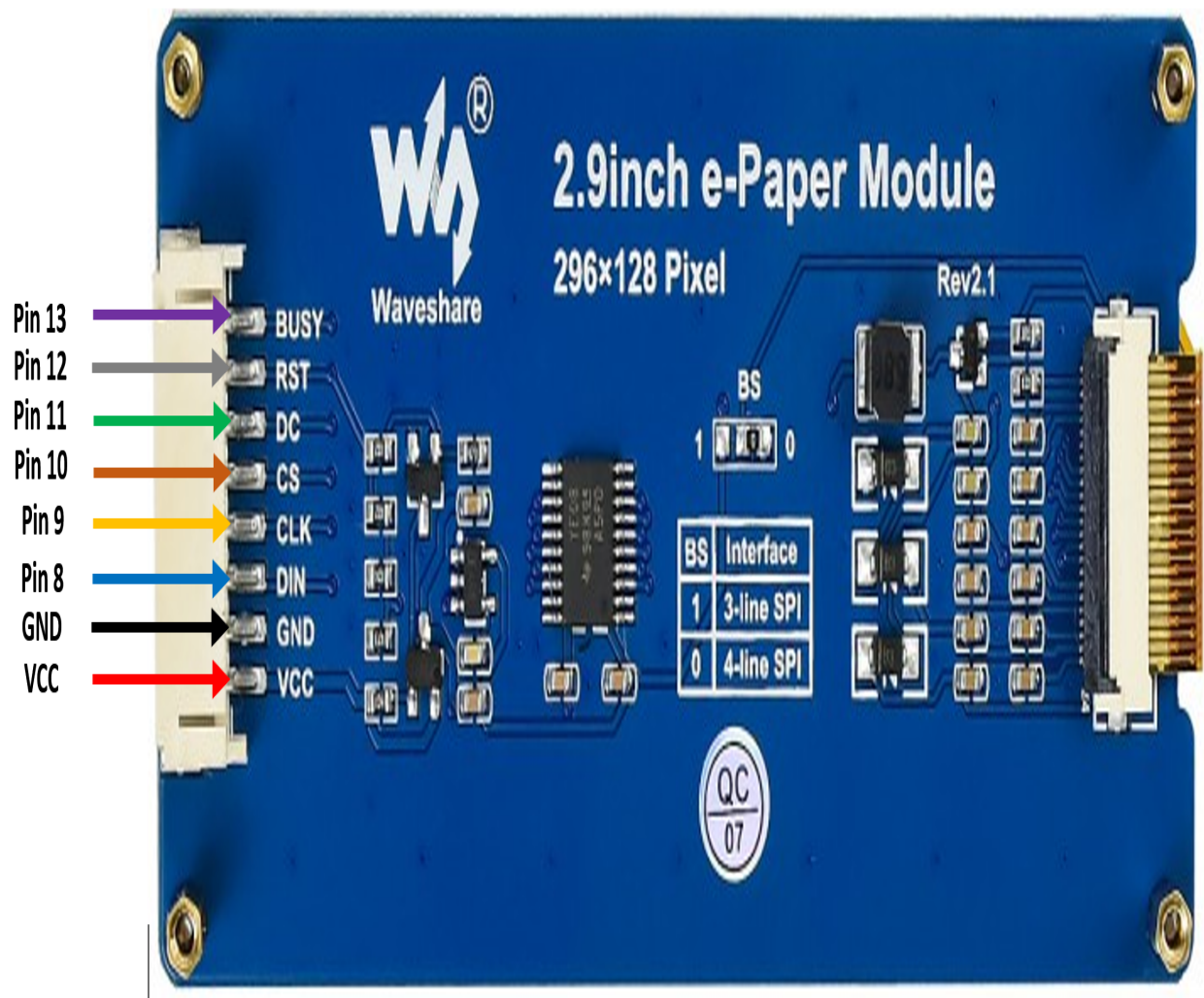
Example

In this example, we use the Ameba RTL8722 module connects to a Waveshare 2.9inch e-Paper module to display a few QR codes. The display uses the flexible substrate as a base plate, with an interface and a reference system design. The 2.9" active area contains 296×128 pixels and has 1-bit white/black full display capabilities. An integrated circuit contains gate buffer, source buffer, interface, timing control logic, oscillator, etc... are supplied with each panel. You may refer to the official [2.9inch e-Paper HAT \(D\) datasheet](#) to know more information about this module. Front view of the e-Paper



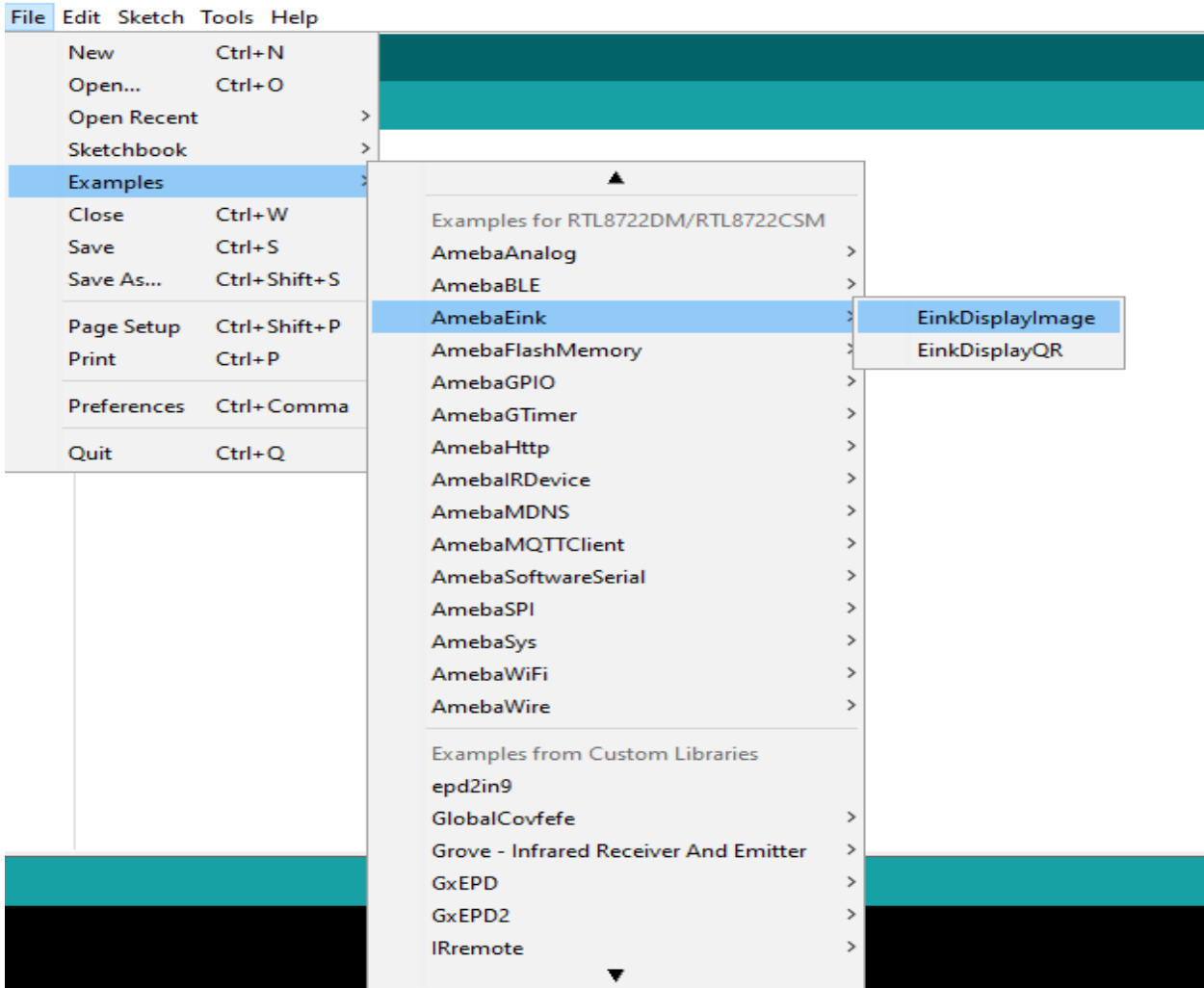
Module:

RTL8722



wiring diagram:

you need to prepare a picture/photo in the format of 296×128 pixels. We can easily find a photo resizing tool online, for example, the [Online Image Resizer](#). Following the instructions on the website, then download the generated image in JPG format. Secondly, we use the [Image2LCD](#) tool to transfer the downloaded 296×128 image into hexadecimal codes. You can visit this [YouTube](#) link to get detailed instructions. Then we move to the coding part for this example. First, make sure the correct Ameba development board is selected in Arduino IDE: “Tools” -> “Board” -> “RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM”. Then open the “DisplayQR” example in “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaEink” -> “EinkDisplayImage”



1. Upon successfully upload the sample code and press the reset button, you need to wait for around 1~2 seconds for the e-Paper module to fresh its screen. Then the screen will start to display an image for 5 seconds first, then 3 different QR codes will be displayed every 5 seconds (showing in the screenshot below, y may scan the QR codes and find out more information if you wish to). Lastly, a gif in which forms of 3 frames will be displayed for a few



seconds.

Code Reference

[1] We use Good Display GDEH029A1 2.9 Inch / 296×128 Resolution / Partial Refresh Arduino Sample Code to get the e-Paper successfully Display: <http://www.good-display.com/product/201.html>

[2] Provide the link to how to generate a QR code on the E-paper module: <https://eugeniopace.org/qrcode/arduino/eink/2019/07/01/qrcode-on-arduino.html>

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Display Text On E-Paper

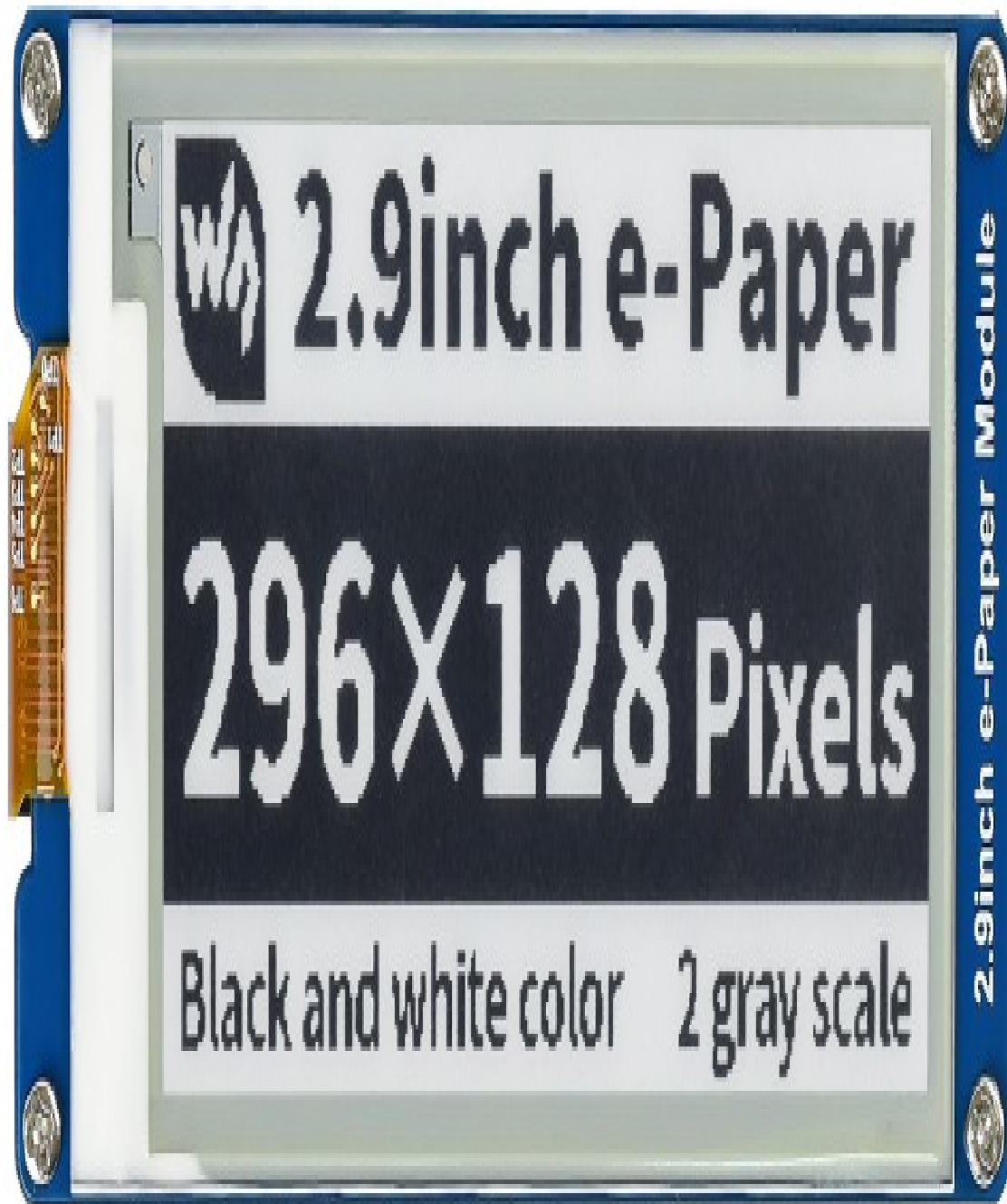
Materials

- Ameba x 1
- Waveshare 2.9inch e-Paper HAT (D) x 1

Example

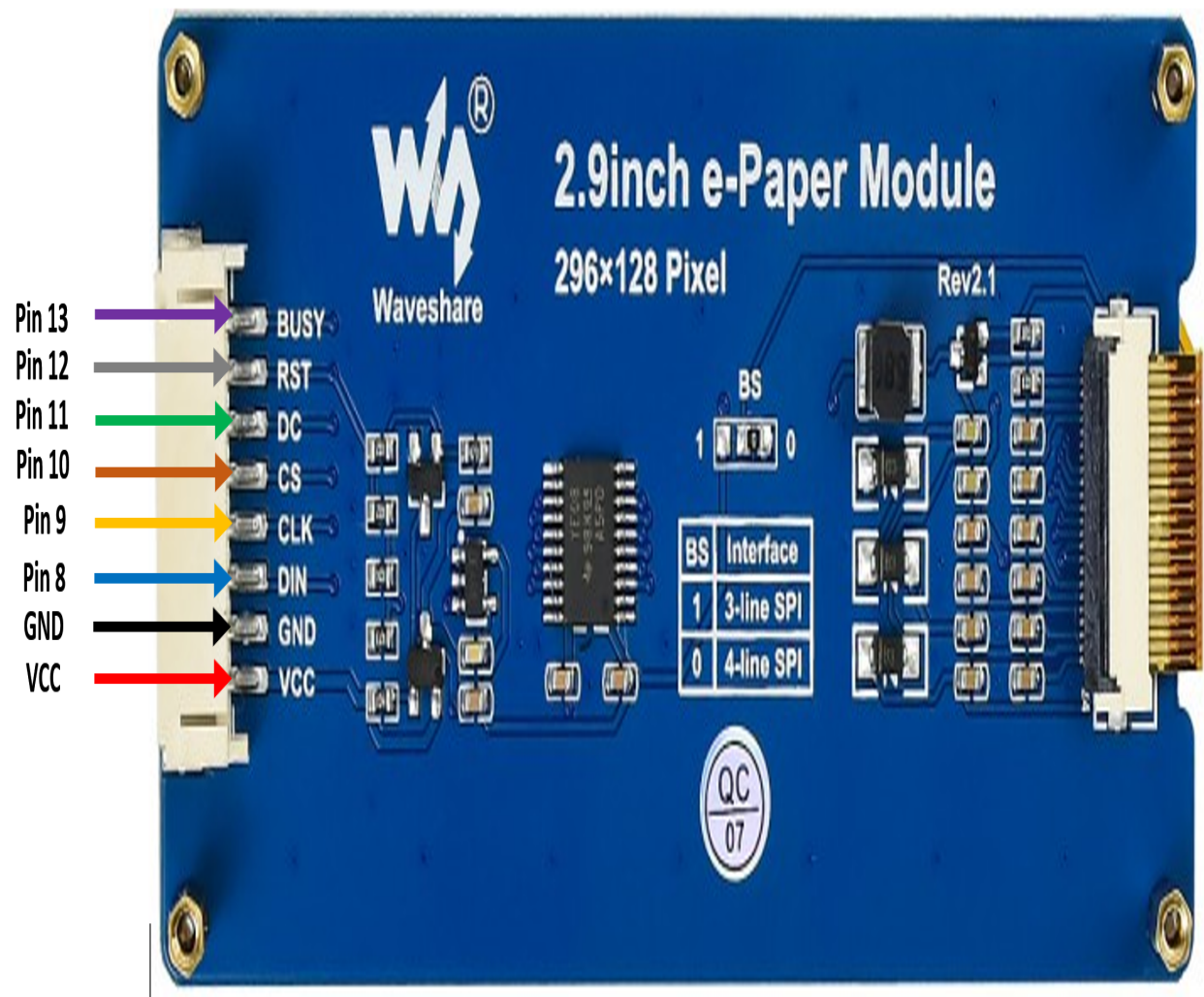
In this example, we use the Ameba RTL8722 module connects to a Waveshare 2.9inch e-Paper module to display a texts in alphanumeric. The display uses the flexible substrate as the base plate, with interface and a reference system design.

The 2.9" active area contains 296×128 pixels and has 1-bit white/black full display capabilities. An integrated circuit contains gate buffer, source buffer, interface, timing control logic, oscillator, etc... are supplied with each panel. You may refer to the official [2.9inch e-Paper HAT \(D\) datasheet](#) to know more about this module. Front view of the e-Paper



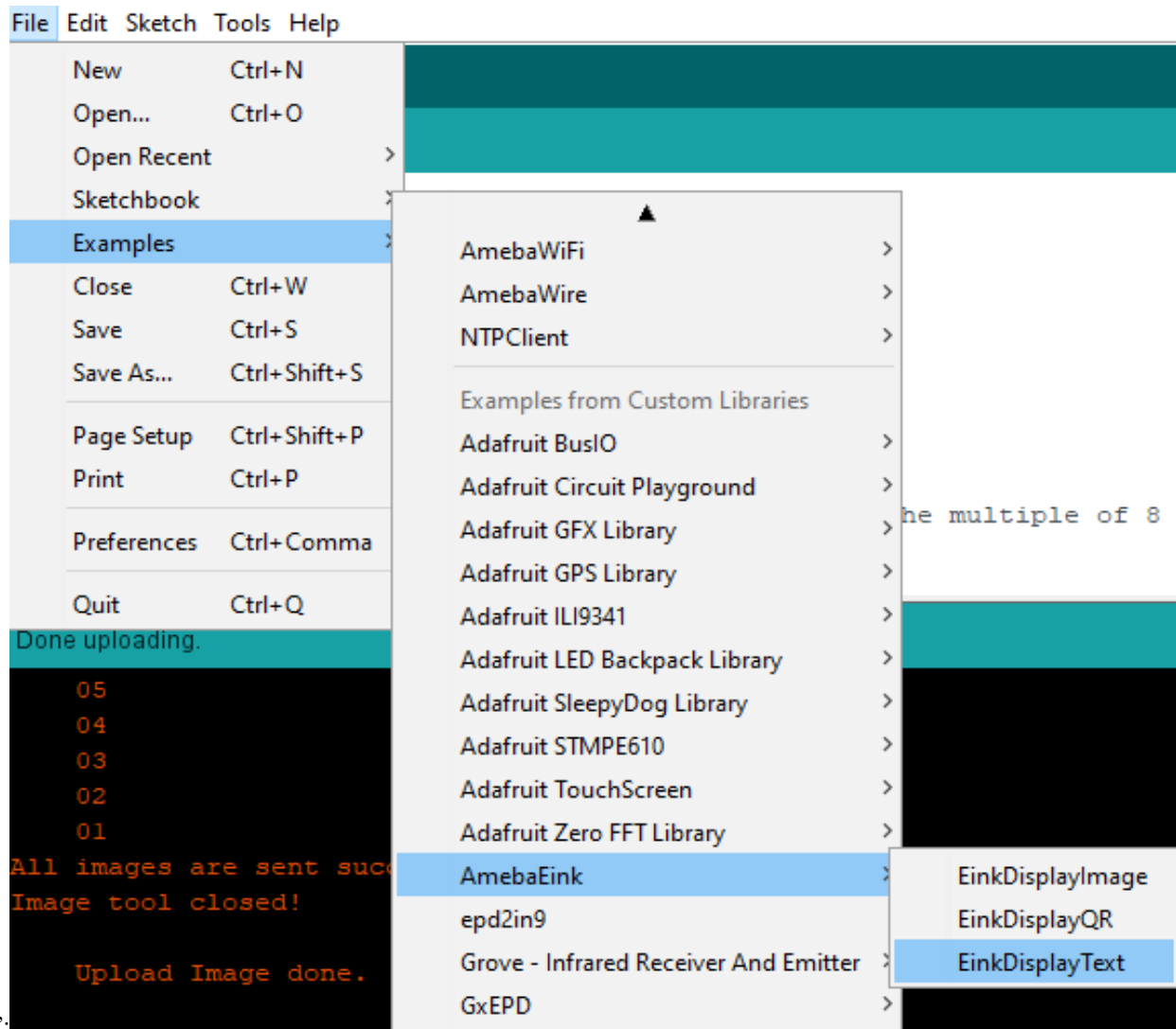
Module:

RTL8722

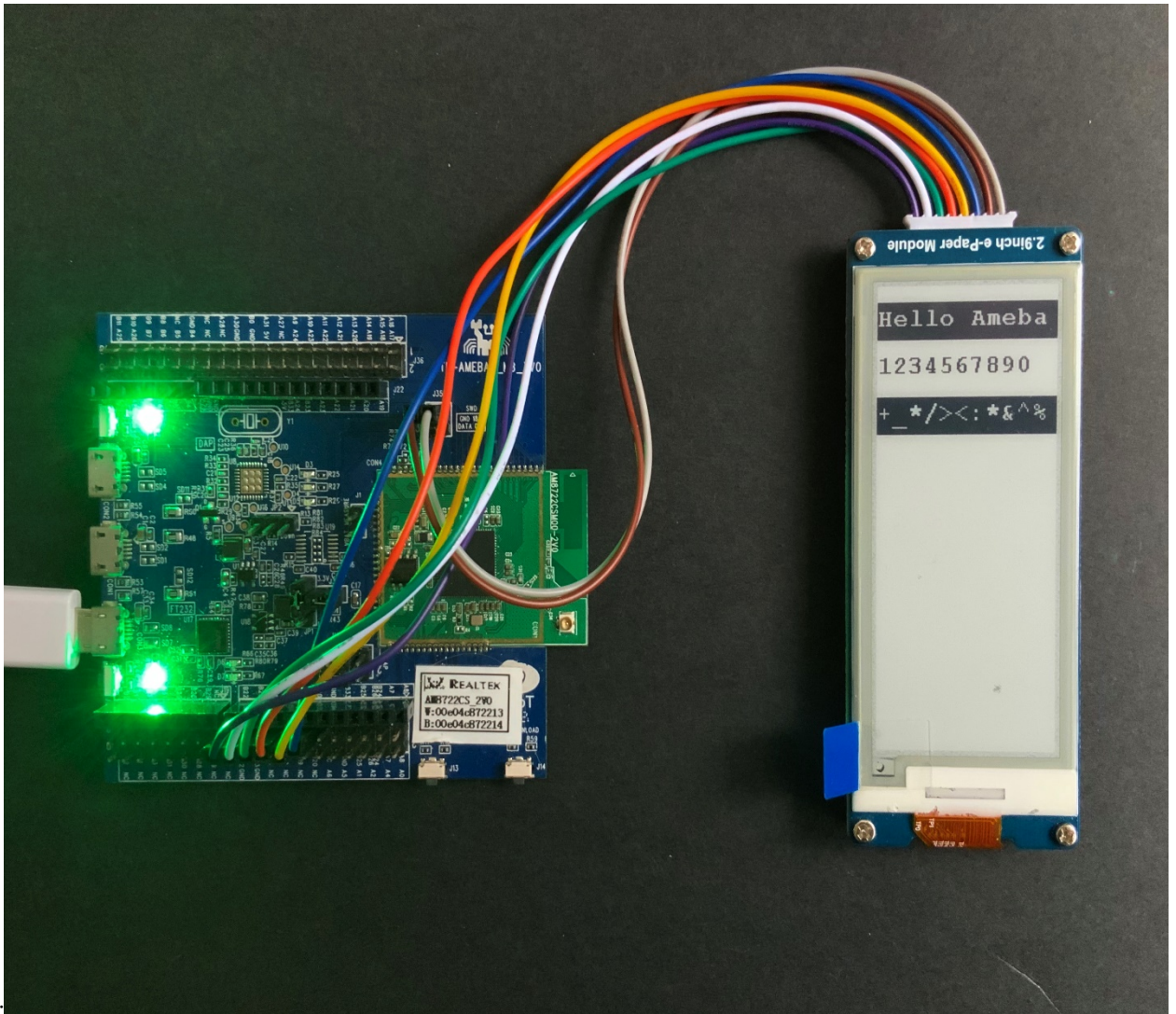


wiring diagram:

you need to open the "DisplayText" example in "File" -> "Examples" -> "AmebaEink" ->



“EinkDisplayText”:
the code to the board and press the Reset button after the uploading is done. You will find these texts displayed on the



board:

Code Reference

[1] We use Good Display GDEH029A1 2.9 Inch / 296×128 Resolution / Partial Refresh Arduino Sample Code to get the e-Paper successfully Display: <http://www.good-display.com/product/201.html>

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Display User-Generated QR Code on E-Paper

Materials

- Ameba x 1
- Waveshare 2.9inch e-Paper HAT (D) x 1

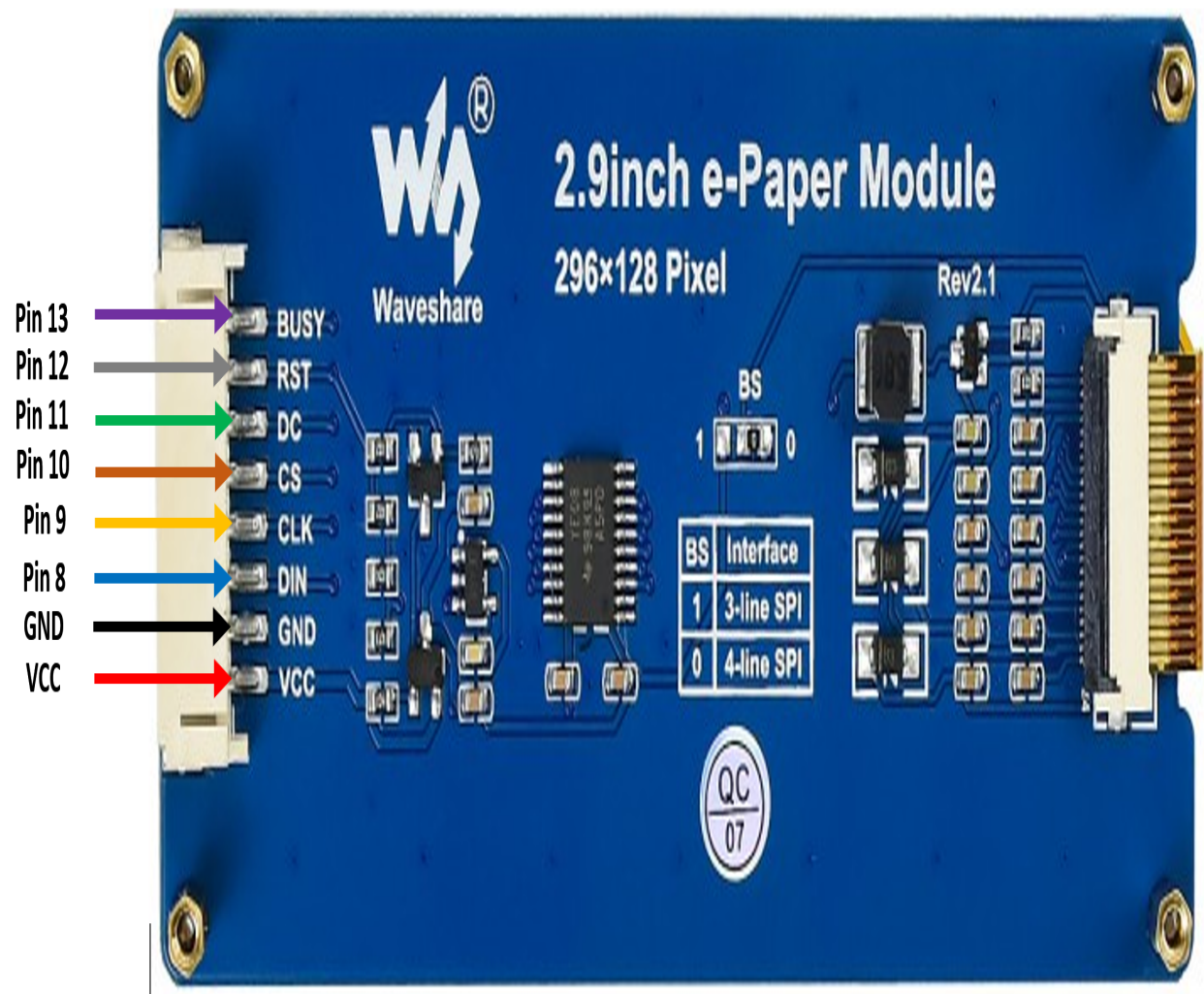
Example

In this example, we use the Ameba RTL8722 module connects to a Waveshare 2.9inch e-Paper module to display a few QR codes. The display uses the flexible substrate as the base plate, with interface and a reference system design. The 2.9" active area contains 296×128 pixels and has 1-bit white/black full display capabilities. An integrated circuit contains gate buffer, source buffer, interface, timing control logic, oscillator, etc... are supplied with each panel. You may refer to the official [2.9inch e-Paper HAT \(D\) datasheet](#) to know more about this module. Front view of the e-Paper



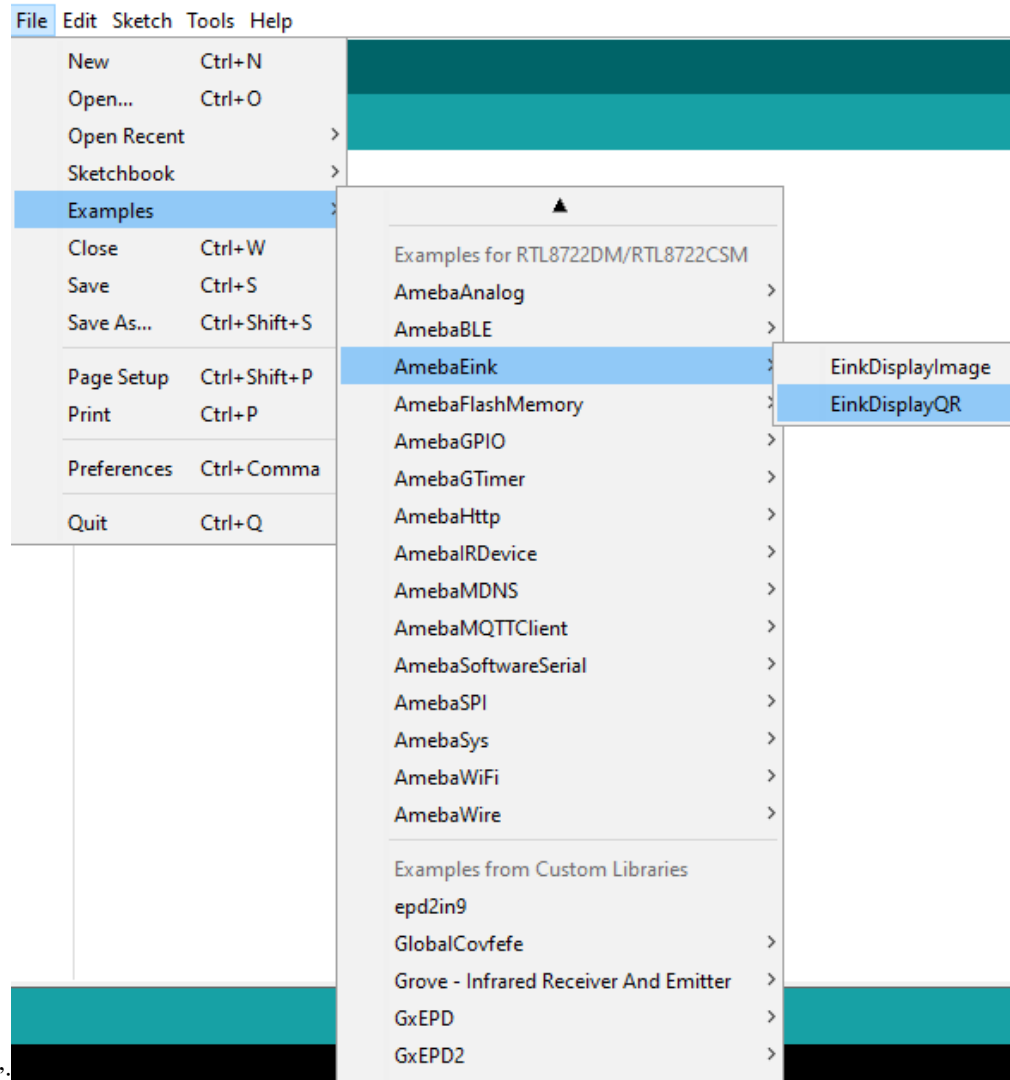
Module:

RTL8722



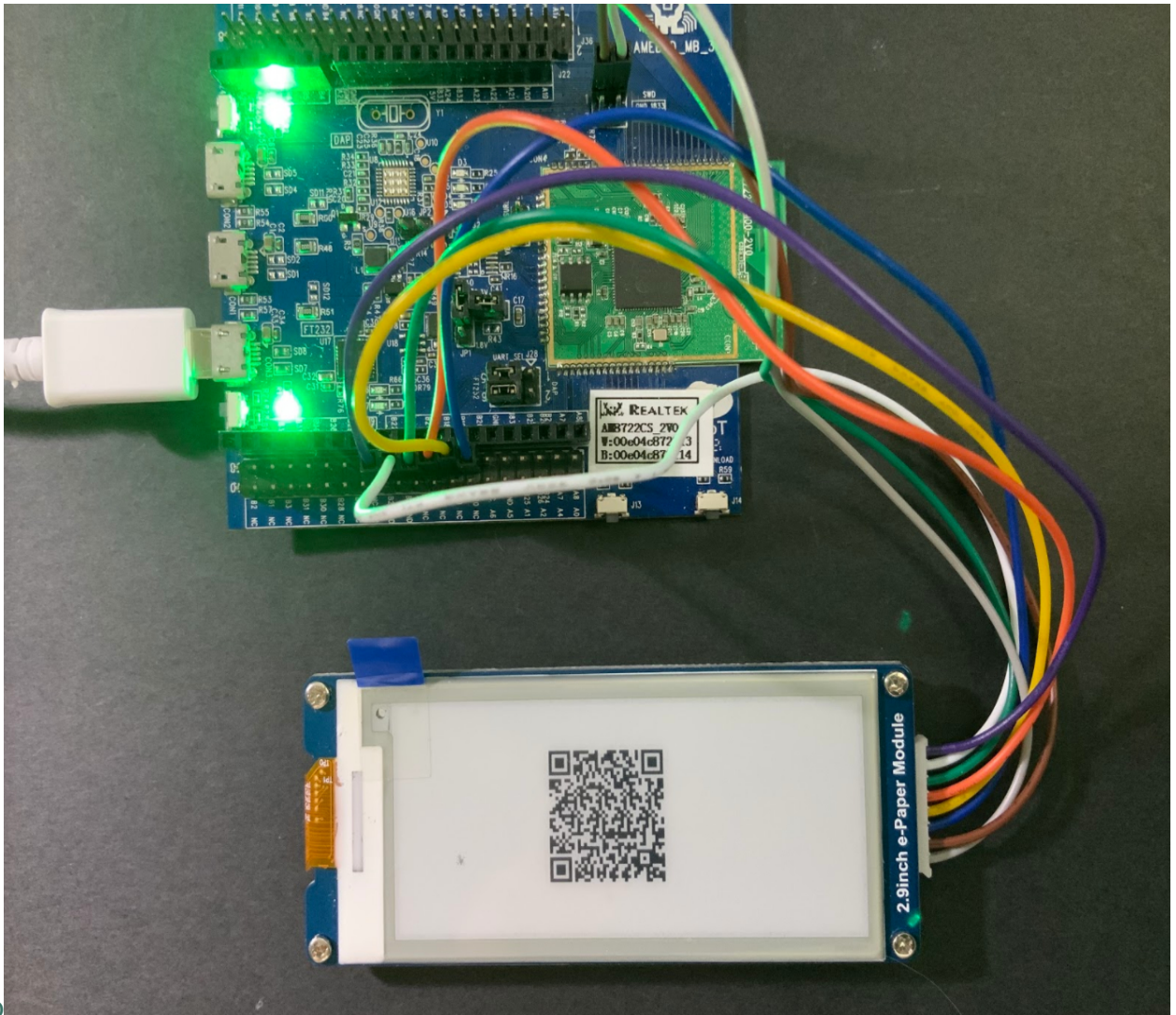
wiring diagram:

you need to open the “DisplayQR” example in “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaEink” ->



“EinkDisplayQR”:

the URL in the loop() section as your wish, after that, verify and upload the code to the Ameba board. Upon successfully upload the sample code and press the reset button, a QR code generated based on the URL of your input will be shown on the E-Paper module. The QR code showing below leads to our Ameba IoT official website: [Ameba AR-](#)



DUINO

Code Reference

- [1] We use Good Display GDEH029A1 2.9 Inch / 296×128 Resolution / Partial Refresh Arduino Sample Code to get the e-Paper successfully Display: <http://www.good-display.com/product/201.html>
- [2] Provide the link to how to generate a QR code on the E-paper module: <https://eugeniopace.org/qrcode/arduino/eink/2019/07/01/qrcode-on-arduino.html>
- [3] A simple library for generating QR codes in C, optimized for processing and memory-constrained systems: <https://github.com/ricmoo/QRCode#data-capacities>

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] A Simple RTC Example

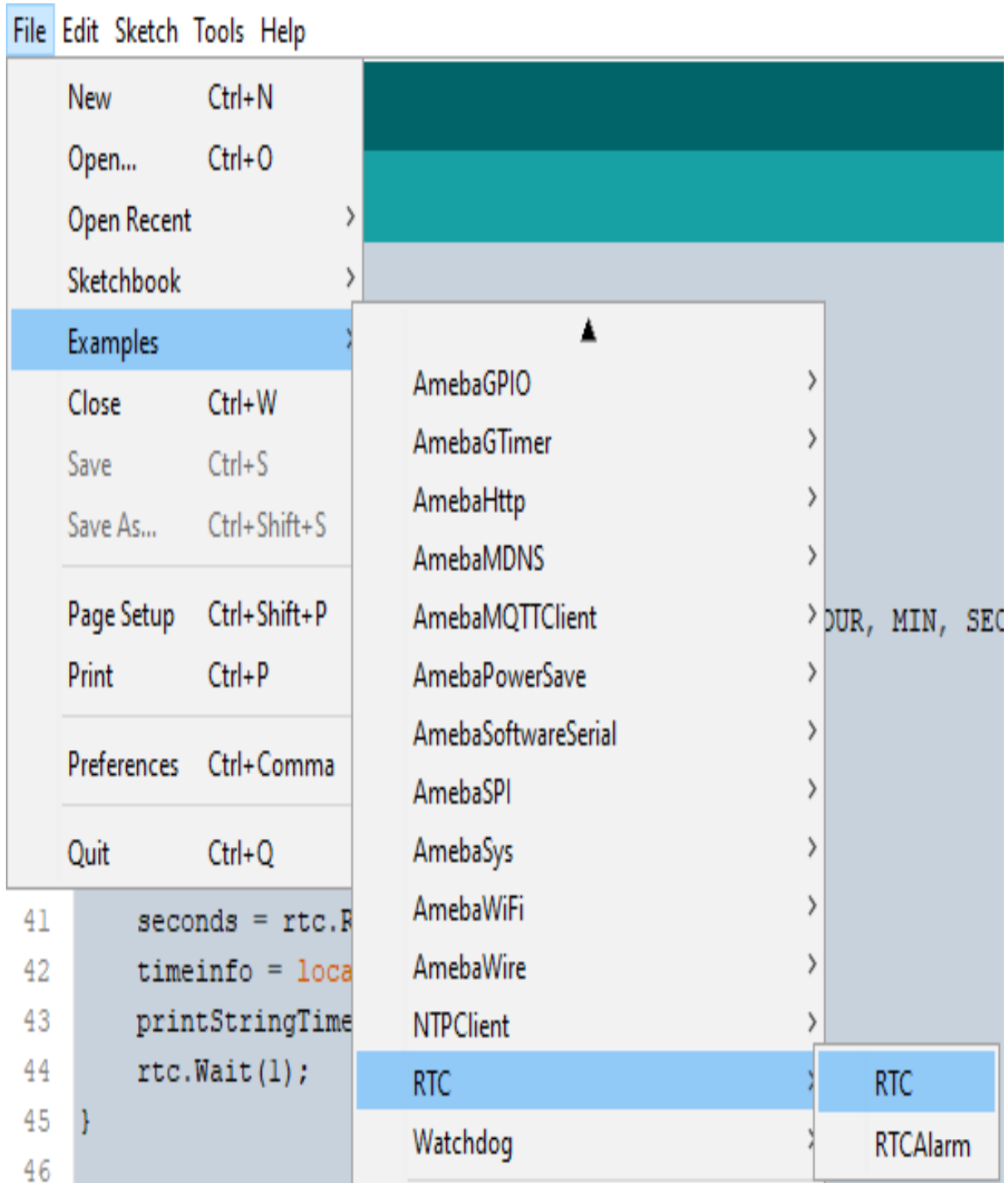
Materials

- Ameba D [RTL8722 CSM/DM] x 1

Example

This example demonstrates how to use the RTC library methods. This function describes how to use the RTC API. The RTC function is implemented by an independent BCD timer/counter.

Select the correct Ameba development board from the Arduino IDE: “Tools” -> “Board” -> “RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM”. Then open the “RTC” example from: “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaRTC” -> “RTC”:



Upon successfully upload the sample code and press the reset button, this example will print out time information since the user initialized time every second in the Serial Monitor.

```
Epoch Time(in s) since January, 1, 1970:1577884473s
Time as a basic string:           Wed Jan  1 13:14:33 2020
Time as a custom formatted string: 2020-1-1 13:14:33
-----
Epoch Time(in s) since January, 1, 1970:1577884474s
Time as a basic string:           Wed Jan  1 13:14:34 2020
Time as a custom formatted string: 2020-1-1 13:14:34
-----
Epoch Time(in s) since January, 1, 1970:1577884475s
Time as a basic string:           Wed Jan  1 13:14:35 2020
Time as a custom formatted string: 2020-1-1 13:14:35
-----
Epoch Time(in s) since January, 1, 1970:1577884476s
Time as a basic string:           Wed Jan  1 13:14:36 2020
Time as a custom formatted string: 2020-1-1 13:14:36
-----
```

☐ Autoscroll ☐ Show timestamp Newline 115200 baud Clear output

Code Reference

[1] Simple RTC example from Arduino Tutorials:
<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Tutorial/SimpleRTC>

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Simple RTC Alarm

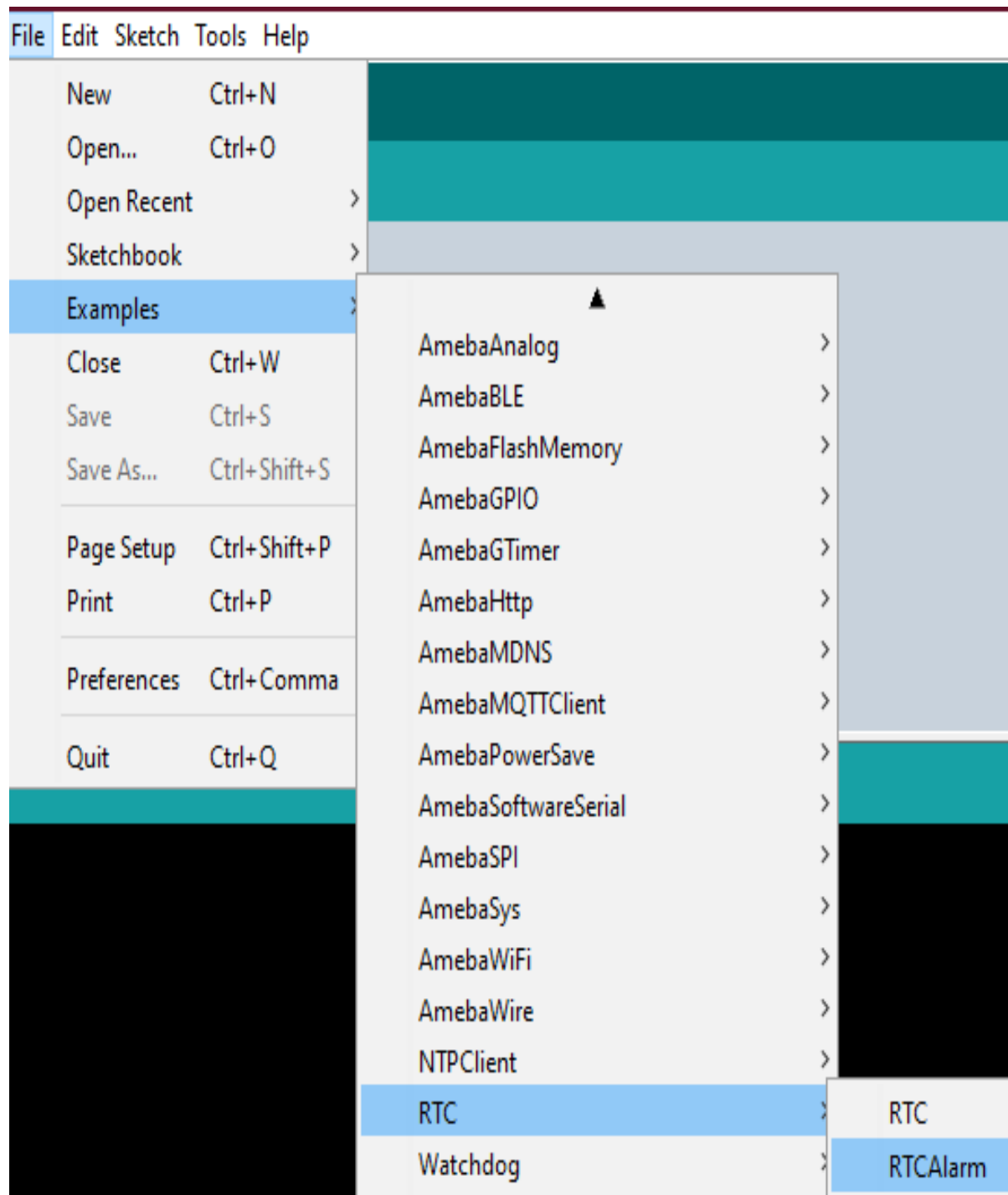
Materials

- Ameba D [RTL8722 CSM/DM] x 1

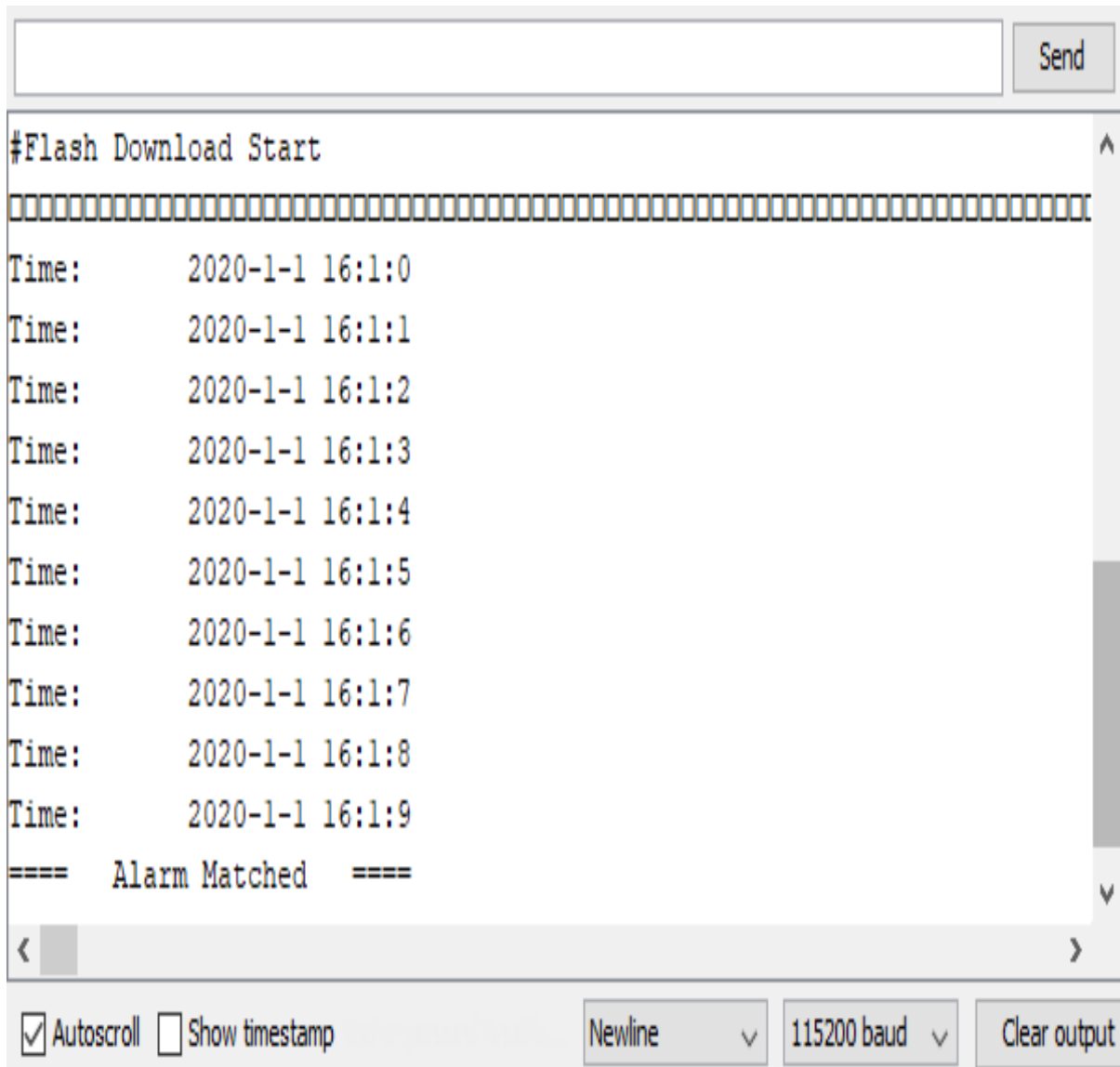
Example

This example demonstrates how to use the RTC library methods to create a RTC Alarm, so that to do some tasks when an alarm is matched. In particular, the RTC time is set at 16:00:00 and an alarm at 16:00:10. When the time matches, “Alarm Match” information will be printed on the serial monitor.

First, select the correct Ameba development board from the Arduino IDE: “Tools” -> “Board” -> “RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM”. Then open the ” RTCArm ” example from: “File” -> “Examples” -> “RTC” -> “RTCArm”:



In the example, the RTC time is set at 16:00:00 and an alarm is set at 16:00:10. Upon successfully upload the sample code and press the reset button. When the alarm time (10 seconds) is reached the attached interrupt function will print the following information: “Alarm Matched!” showing in this figure below.



[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Watchdog Timer Simple Example

Materials

- Ameba D [RTL8722 CSM/DM] x 1

Example

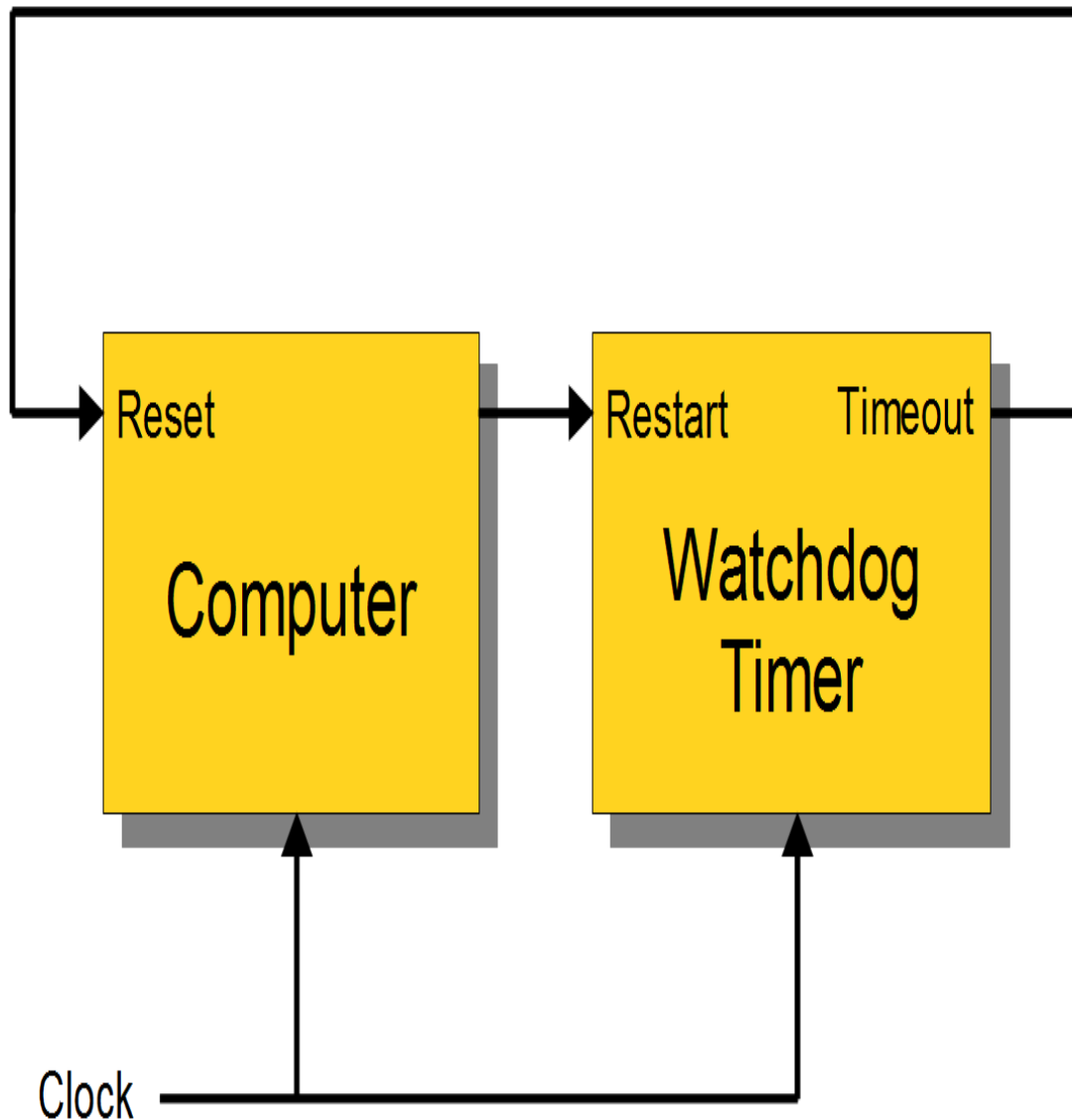
In this example, we will use this simple watchdog timer example runs on the Ameba RTL8722 module to illustrate how to use the watchdog API. Before we get into the details of the example, let's briefly go through the definition of Watchdog as well as it's working principles.

Watchdog

Watchdog Timer (WDT) is a hardware timer that is used to detect the occurrence of a software fault, then automatically generates a system reset or a watchdog interrupt on the expiry of a programmed period.

In layman terms, imagine in the situation while your micro-controller is confused in an infinity loop, or any case like the micro-controller hang while performing some tasks. The normal troubleshooting method would be to press the reset

button and jump out of the infinity loop. However, is it practically impossible to do press on the button all time, therefore, the watchdog timer that embedded inside the micro-controller would help with this situation.



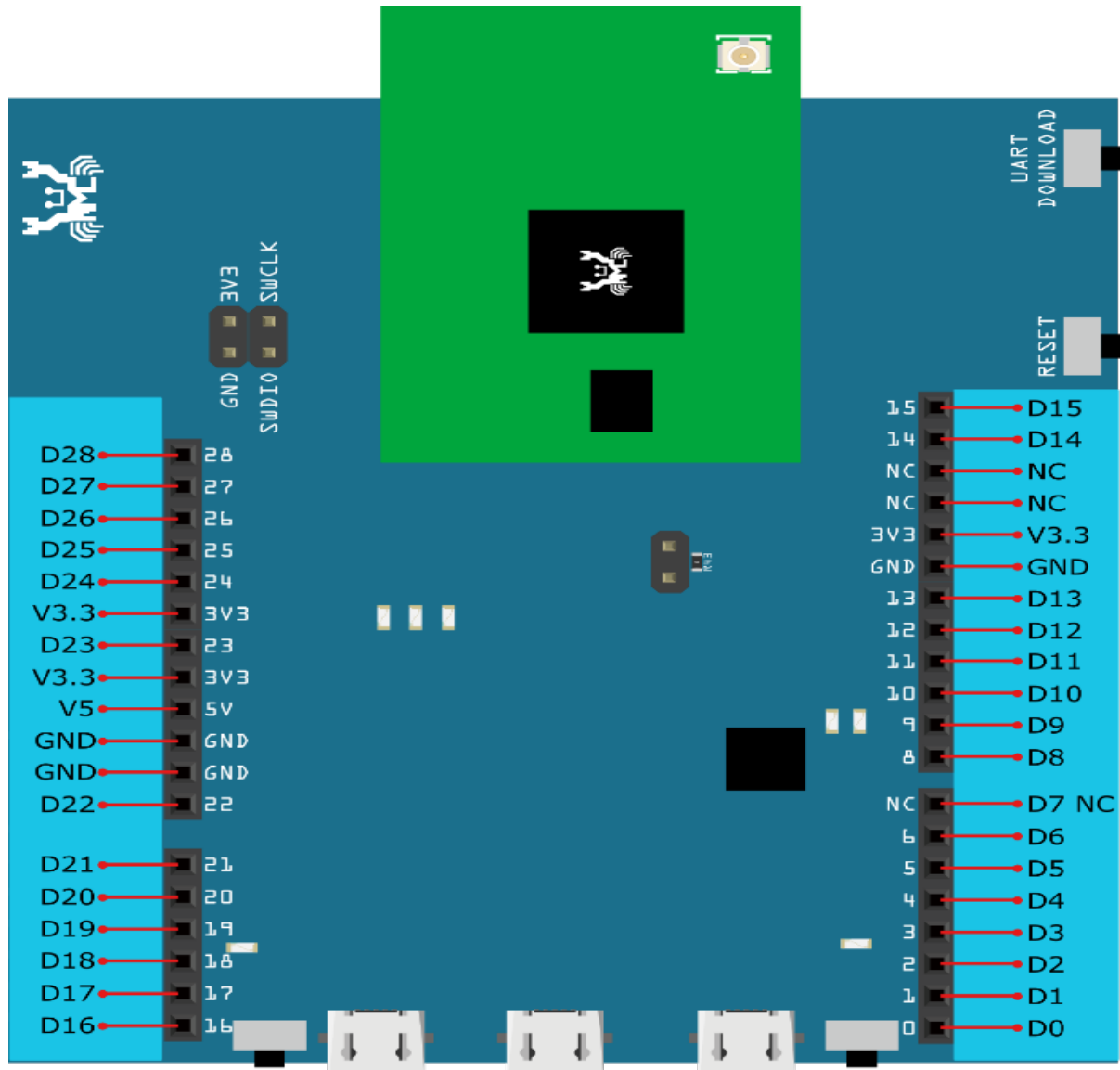
Feed the Dog

If you have a dog in your home. You need to feed that dog at a regular interval. if you can't feed one day, it will bite you! And likewise, this is the working logic behind the watchdog timer.

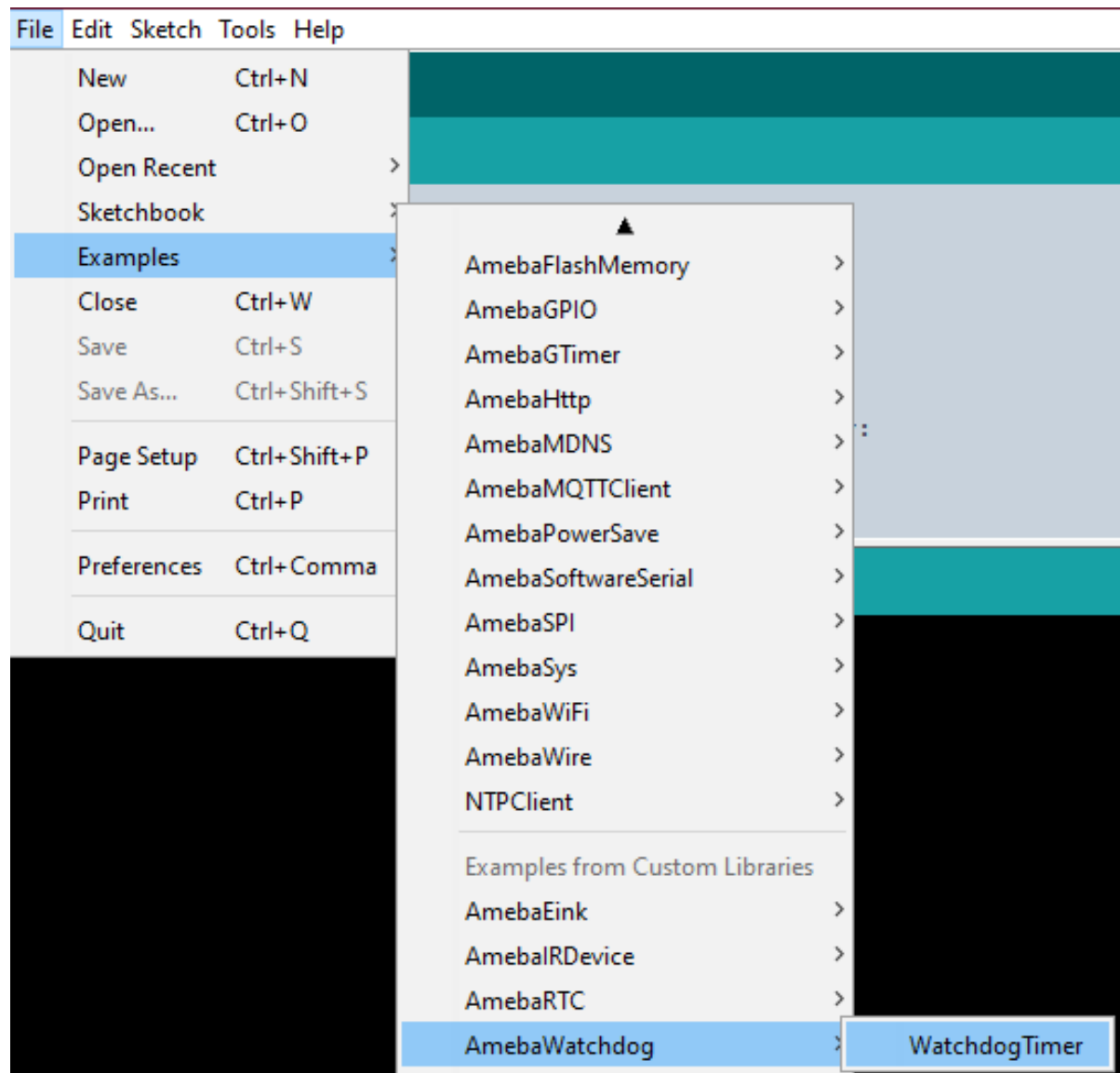
In our example, we created 2 tasks that contain some loop that runs over and over again, one is called a successful task and the other is a failed task. We are enabling the watchdog timer is loaded with an initial value (5 seconds) greater than the total delay in the successful task, but shorter than the failed task.

For the successful case, the watchdog is being refreshed/feed within 5 seconds, however, for the failed case, the loop is under processing and the watchdog is not being fresh after 5 seconds, which triggers the watchdog (dog barks), an interrupt is generated to reset the processor. Likewise, the watchdog timer protects the micro-controller from the hanging case.

Then we move to the coding part for this example, for this example, you will only need the Ameba RTL8722 board itself.



Firstly, make sure the correct Ameba development board is selected in Arduino IDE: “Tools” -> “Board” -> “RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM”. Then open the “Watchdog Timer” example in “File” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaWatchdog” -> “Watchdog Timer”:



Upon successfully upload the sample code, open the serial monitor, and press the reset button. You will find that the successful task (small task) can refresh the watchdog within the 5 seconds (initialized in the watchdog timer). However, the failed task (big task) will not be able to refresh the watchdog within 5 seconds, which leads to the microcontroller reset.

```
- -  
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]  
.....doing small task.....  
refresh watchdog  
  
.....doing big task.....  
doing dummy task #0  
doing dummy task #1  
doing dummy task #2  
doing dummy task #3  
doing dummy task #4  
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]  
.....doing small task.....  
refresh watchdog  
  
.....doing big task.....  
doing dummy task #0  
doing dummy task #1  
doing dummy task #2  
doing dummy task #3  
doing dummy task #4  
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]
```

[RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM] Audio Codec – Basic Input Output

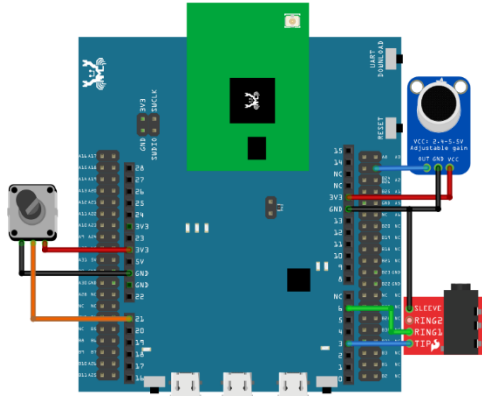
Materials

- Ameba D [RTL8722 CSM/DM] x 1
- Potentiometer x 1
- Analog microphone x 1 (e.g., Adafruit 1063 / 1064)
- 3.5mm TRS/TRRS breakout x 1 (e.g., Adafruit 2791 / Sparkfun 11570)

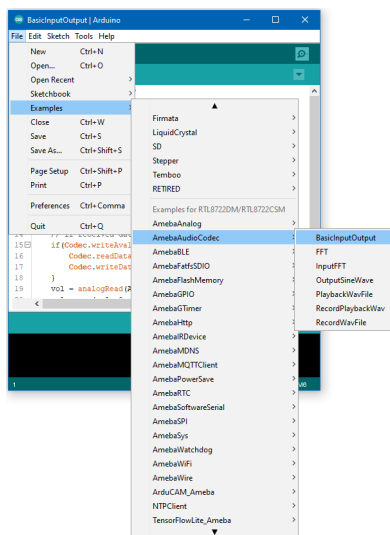
Example

Procedure

Connect the potentiometer, microphone and 3.5mm connector to the RTL8722 board following the diagram.



Open the example, “Files” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaAudioCodec” -> “BasicInputOutput”.



Upload the code and press the reset button on Amega once the upload is finished.

Connect a pair of wired headphones to the 3.5mm audio jack, blow at the microphone, and you should hear the sounds picked-up by the microphone replayed in the headphones. Adjust the potentiometer and the output volume will change as well. Note: if you are using a microphone with an amplifier included, such as Adafruit 1063, the amplifier can lead to the microphone picking up more noise.

[RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM] Audio Codec – FFT

Materials

- Amega D [RTL8722 CSM/DM] x 1

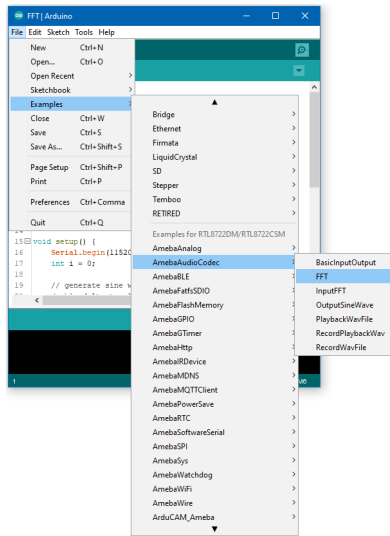
Example

Introduction

This example shows how to use the FFT class to calculate the fast Fourier transform of a signal to extract the frequencies present in the signal.

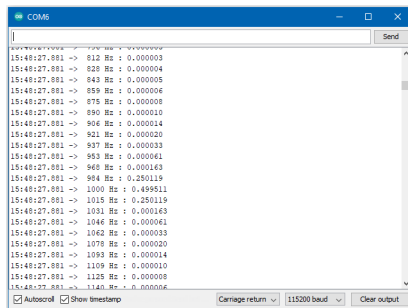
Procedure

Open the example, “Files” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaAudioCodec” -> “FFT”.



Upload the code and press the reset button on Ameba once the upload is finished.

Open the serial monitor, and the output results of the FFT calculation will be displayed.



[RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM] Audio Codec – Input FFT

Materials

- Ameba D [RTL8722 CSM/DM] x 1
- Analog microphone x 1 (e.g., Adafruit 1063 / 1064)

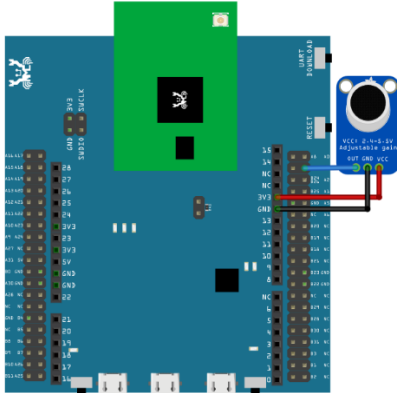
Example

Introduction

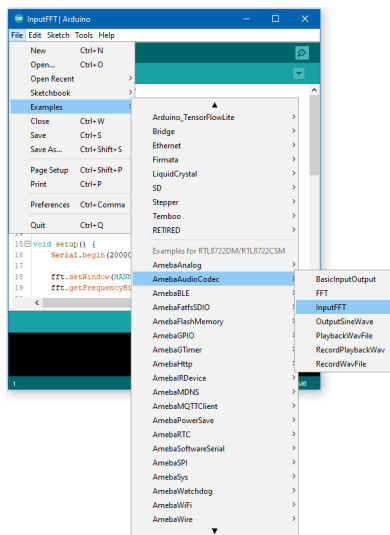
This example shows how to use the FFT class to calculate the fast Fourier transform of the audio signal recorded by the microphone.

Procedure

Connect the microphone to the RTL8722 board following the diagram.

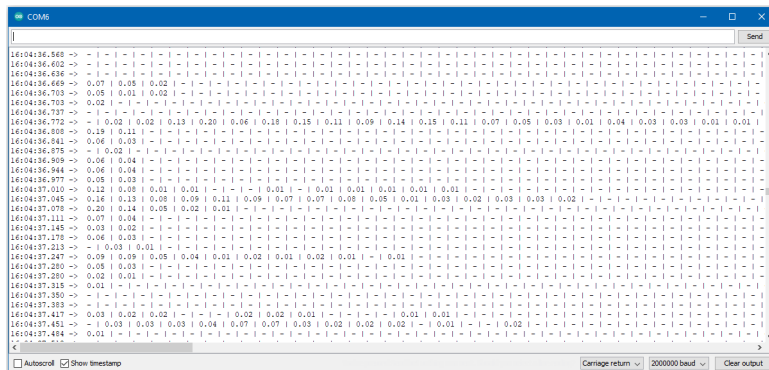


Open the example, “Files” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaAudioCodec” -> “InputFFT”.



Upload the code and press the reset button on Ameba once the upload is finished.

Open the serial monitor and change the baud rate to 2000000. A stream of FFT results of audio samples will be displayed. Try playing music or use a smartphone app to generate a sine wave into the microphone, and you should be able to see the FFT output change.



[RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM] Audio Codec – Output Sine Wave

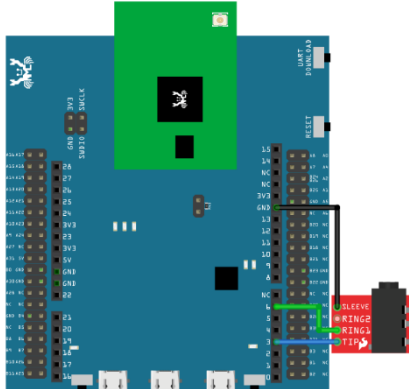
Materials

- Ameba D [RTL8722 CSM/DM] x 1
- 3.5mm TRS/TRRS breakout x 1 (e.g., Adafruit 2791 / Sparkfun 11570)

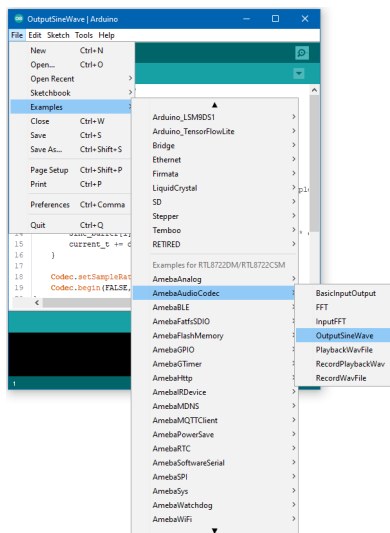
Example

Procedure

Connect the 3.5mm connector to the RTL8722 board following the diagram.



Open the example, “Files” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaAudioCodec” -> “OutputSineWave”.



Upload the code and press the reset button on Ameba once the upload is finished.

Connect a pair of wired headphones to the 3.5mm audio jack and you should hear the generate single sinusoidal tone.

[RTL8722DM_mini] FatfsSDIO – File system in SD card

Materials

- Ameba D [RTL8722DM_mini] x 1
- MicroSD card

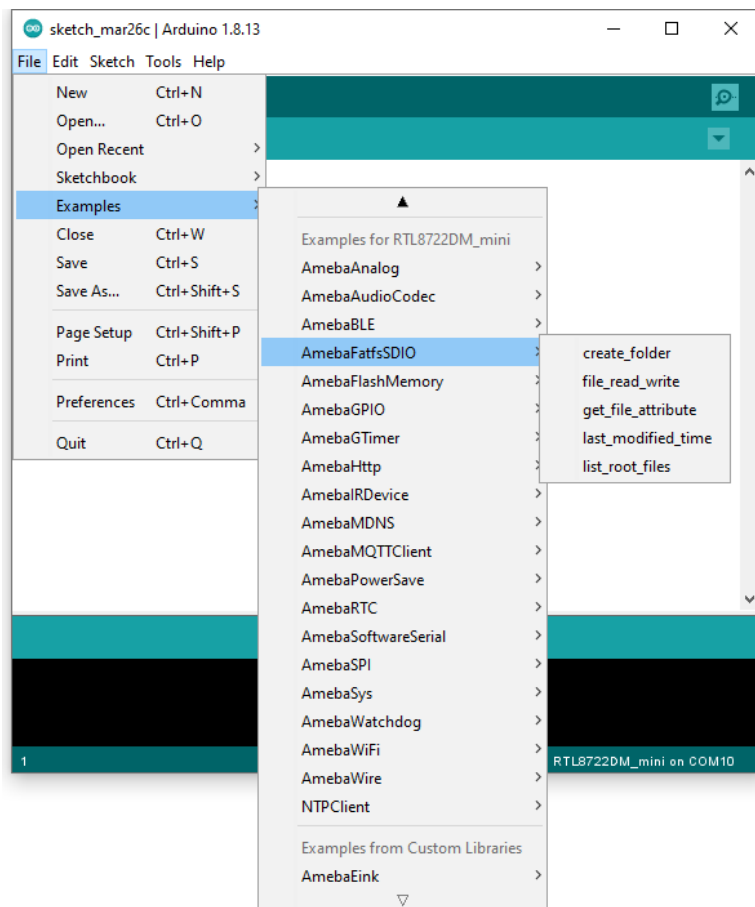
Example

Procedure

Insert a MicroSD card into the onboard SD card reader of RTL8722DM_mini board.

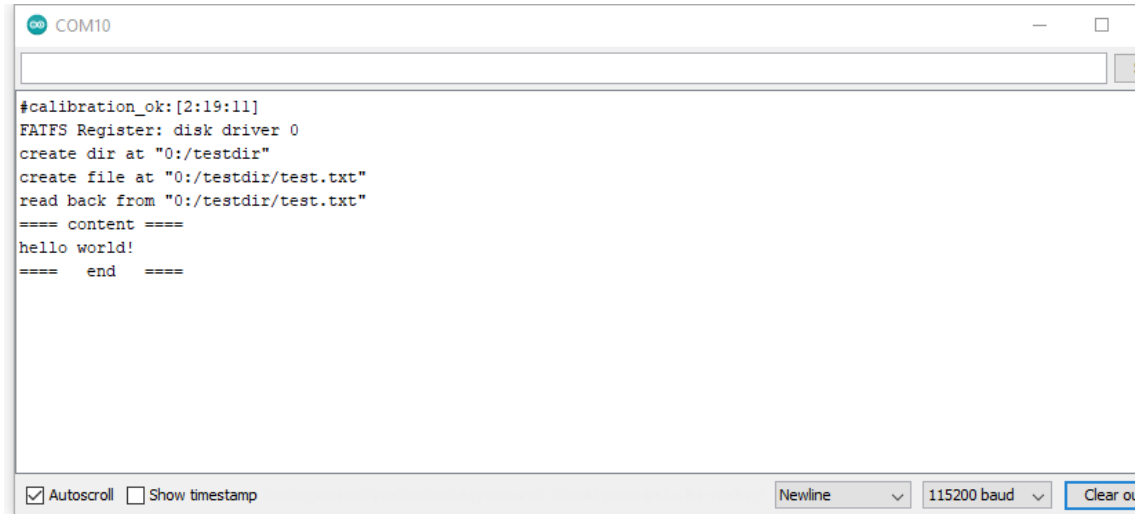
Example 01 create_folder

Open the example, “Files” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaFatfsSDIO” -> “create_folder”.



Upload the code and press the reset button on Ameba once the upload is finished.

In the sample code, we first create a folder “testdir”, then text file “test.txt” with content “hello world!”. Read the file and



print content to serial monitor.

Next, insert SD card into card reader, and check whether the operations succeeded.

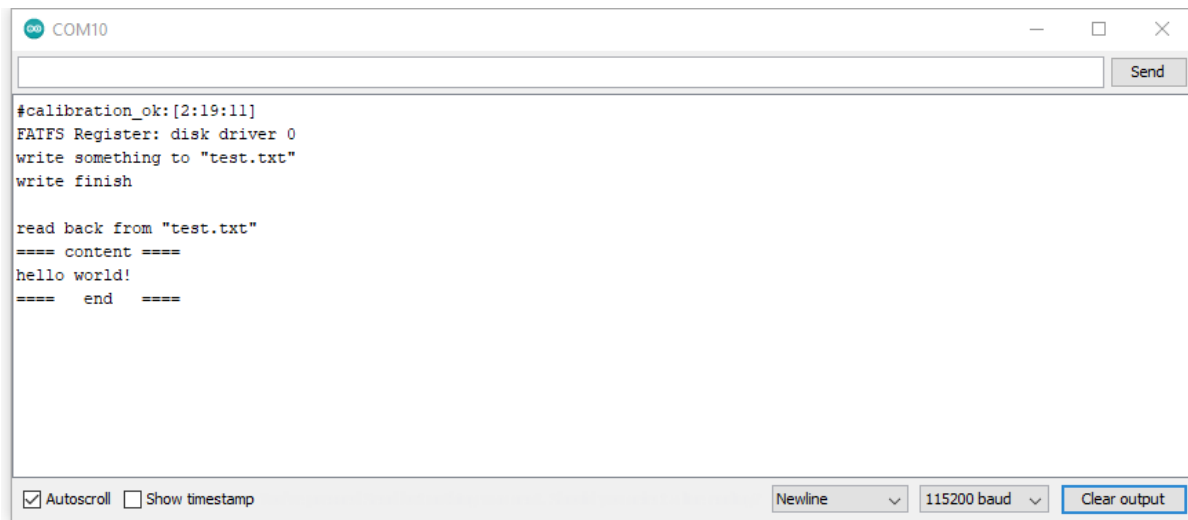


Example 02 file_read_write

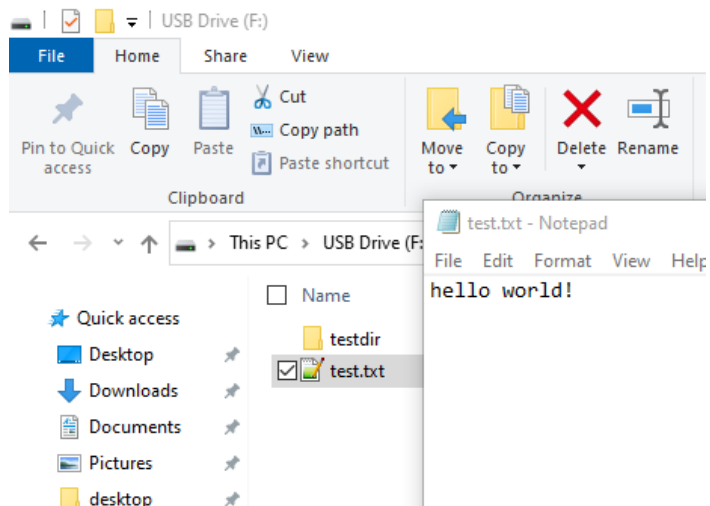
Open the example, “Files” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaFatfsSDIO” -> “file_read_write”.

Upload the code and press the reset button on Ameba once the upload is finished.

In the sample code, we create text file “test.txt” with content “hello world!”. Read the file and print content to serial monitor.



Next, insert SD card into card reader, and check whether the operations succeeded.

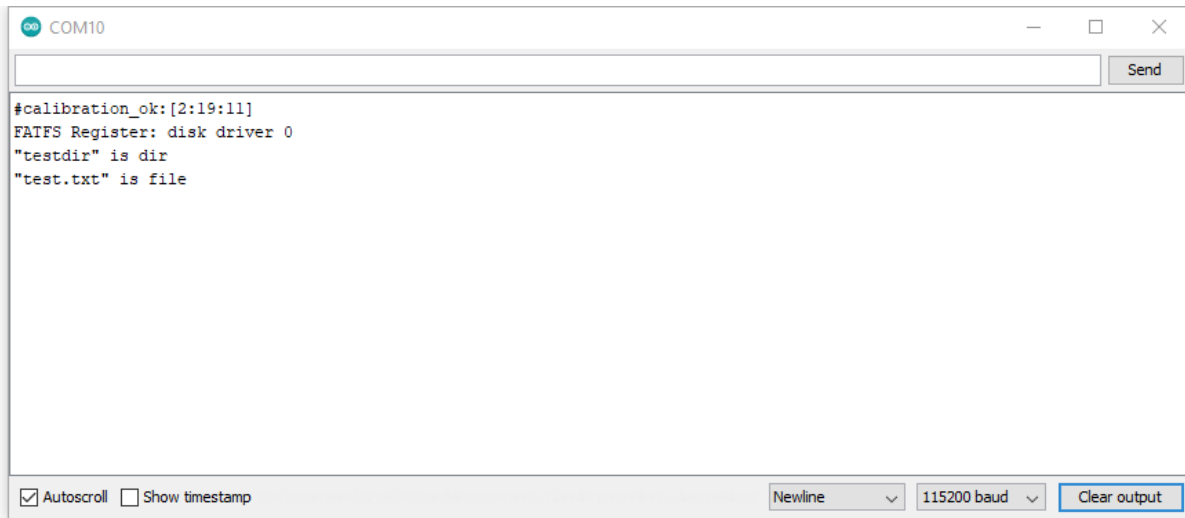


Example 03 get_file_attribute

Open the example, “Files” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaFatfsSDIO” -> “get_file_attribute”.

Upload the code and press the reset button on Ameba once the upload is finished.

In the sample code, system will print put all file attribute to serial monitor.



```
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]
FATFS Register: disk driver 0
"testdir" is dir
"test.txt" is file
```

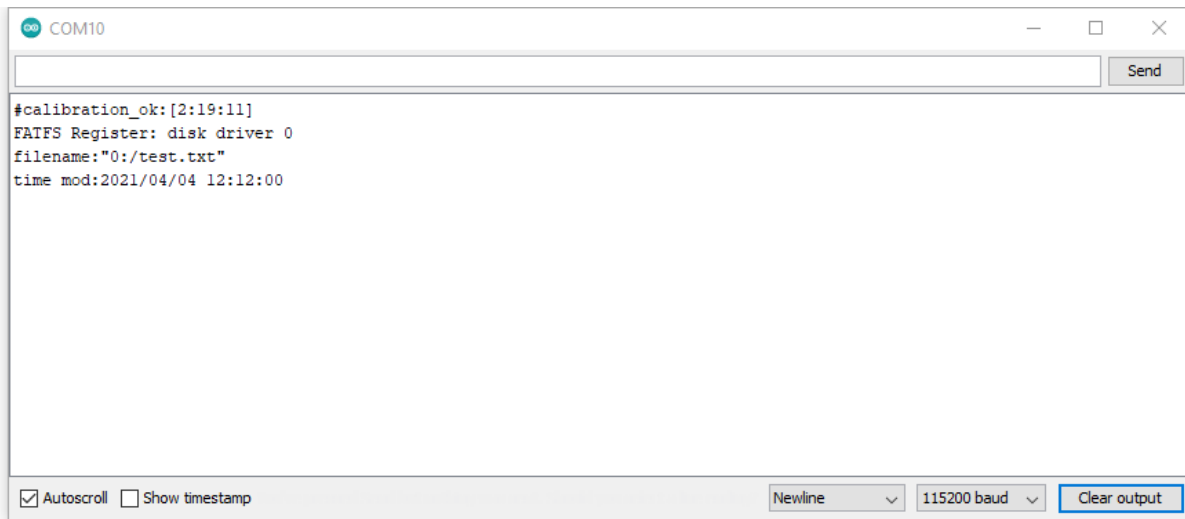
Next, insert SD card into card reader, and check whether the operations succeeded. In this case, we already know the attribute should be folder “testdir” and text file “test.txt” by refer the above pictures.

Example 04 last_modified_time

Open the example, “Files” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaFatfsSDIO” -> “last_modified_time”.

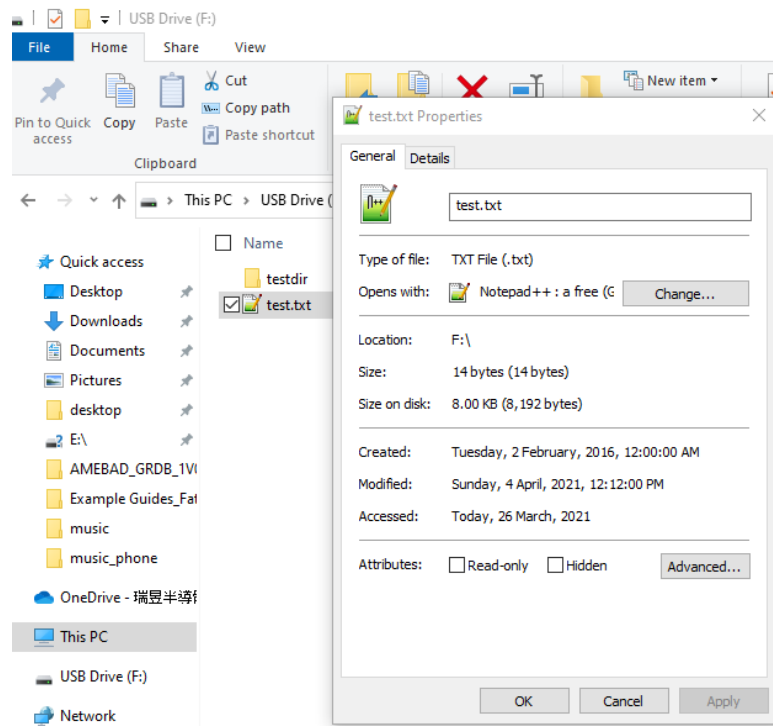
Upload the code and press the reset button on Ameba once the upload is finished.

In the sample code, system will print put the target file last modified time to serial monitor.



```
#calibration_ok:[2:19:11]
FATFS Register: disk driver 0
filename: "0:/test.txt"
time mod:2021/04/04 12:12:00
```

Next, insert SD card into card reader, and check whether the operations succeeded.

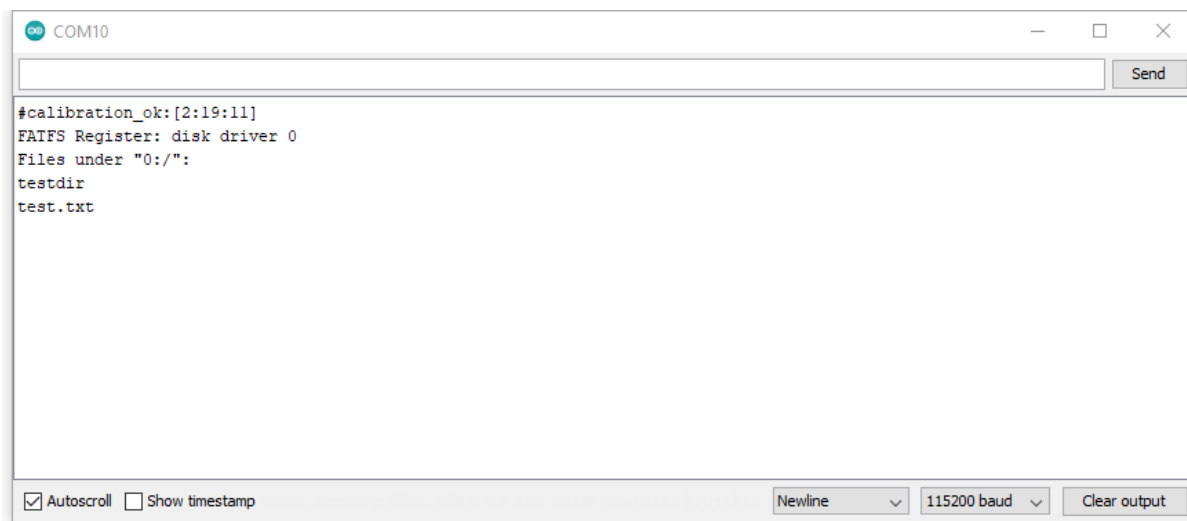


Example 05 list_root_files

Open the example, “Files” -> “Examples” -> “AmebaFatfsSDIO” -> “list_root_files”.

Upload the code and press the reset button on Ameba once the upload is finished.

In the sample code, system will print out all root file to serial monitor.



Next, insert SD card into card reader, and check whether the operations succeeded. In this case, we already know the root files folder “testdir” and text file “test.txt” by refer the above pictures.

[RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM] TensorFlow Lite - Hello World

Materials

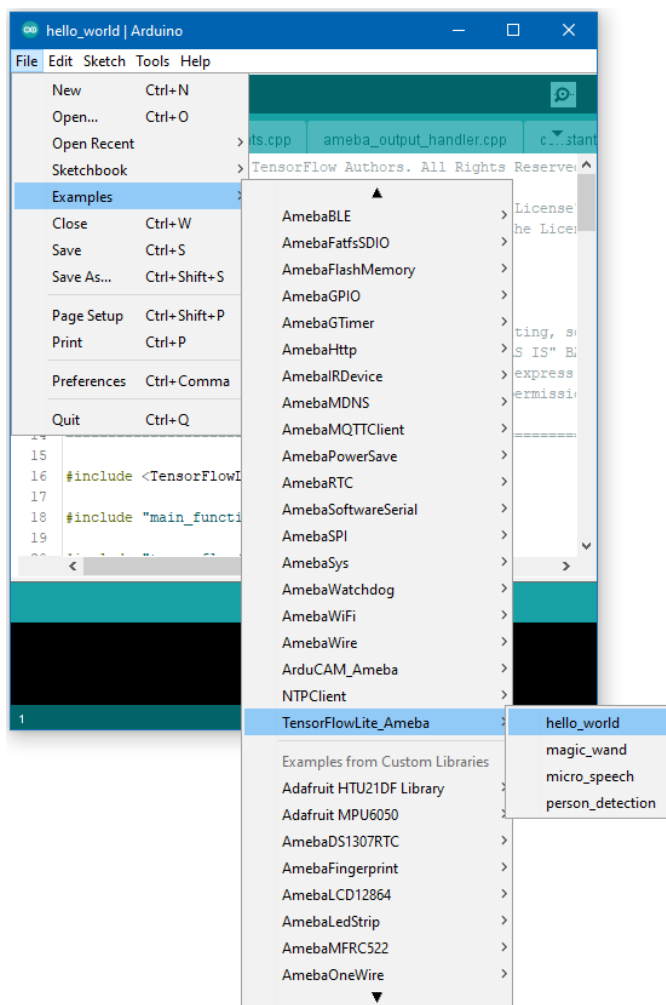
- Ameba D [RTL8722 CSM/DM] x 1
- LED x 1

Example

Procedure

Download the Ameba customized version of TensorFlow Lite for Microcontrollers library at https://github.com/ambiot/ambd_arduino/tree/master/Arduino_zip_libraries. Follow the instructions at <https://www.arduino.cc/en/guide/libraries> to install it. Ensure that the patch files found at https://github.com/ambiot/ambd_arduino/tree/master/Ameba_misc/ are also installed.

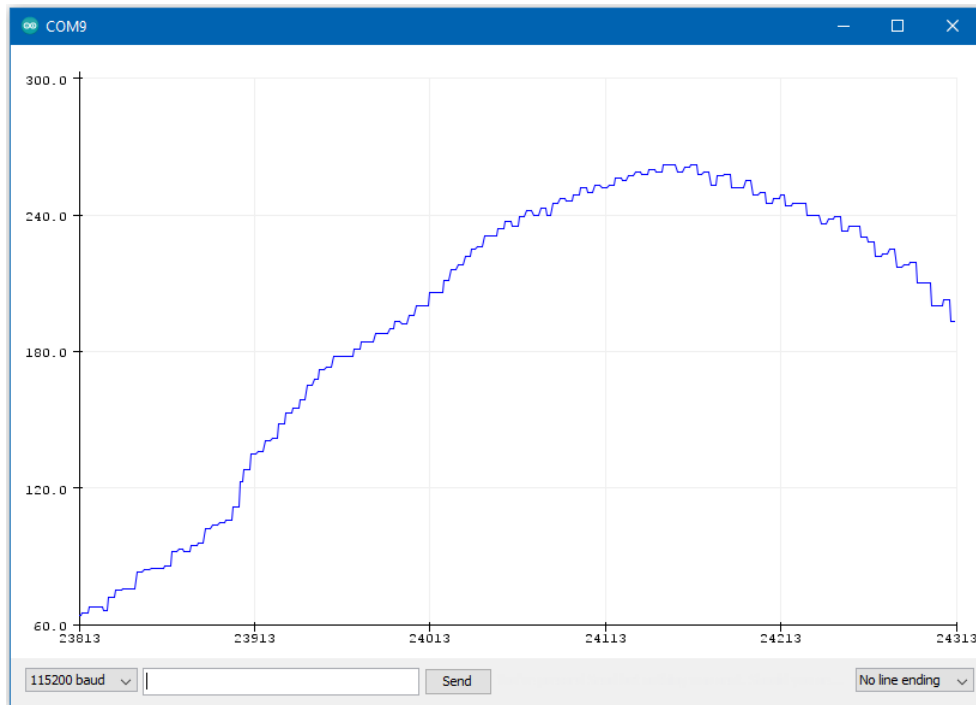
Open the example, “Files” -> “Examples” -> “TensorFlowLite_Ameba” -> “hello_world”.



Upload the code and press the reset button on Ameba once the upload is finished.

Connect the LED to digital pin 10 and ground, ensuring that the polarity is correct. You should see the LED fade in and out rapidly.

In the Arduino serial plotter, you can see the output value of the Tensorflow model plotted as a graph, it should resemble a sine wave.



Code Reference

More information on TensorFlow Lite for Microcontrollers can be found at: <https://www.tensorflow.org/lite/microcontrollers>

[RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM] TensorFlow Lite - Magic Wand

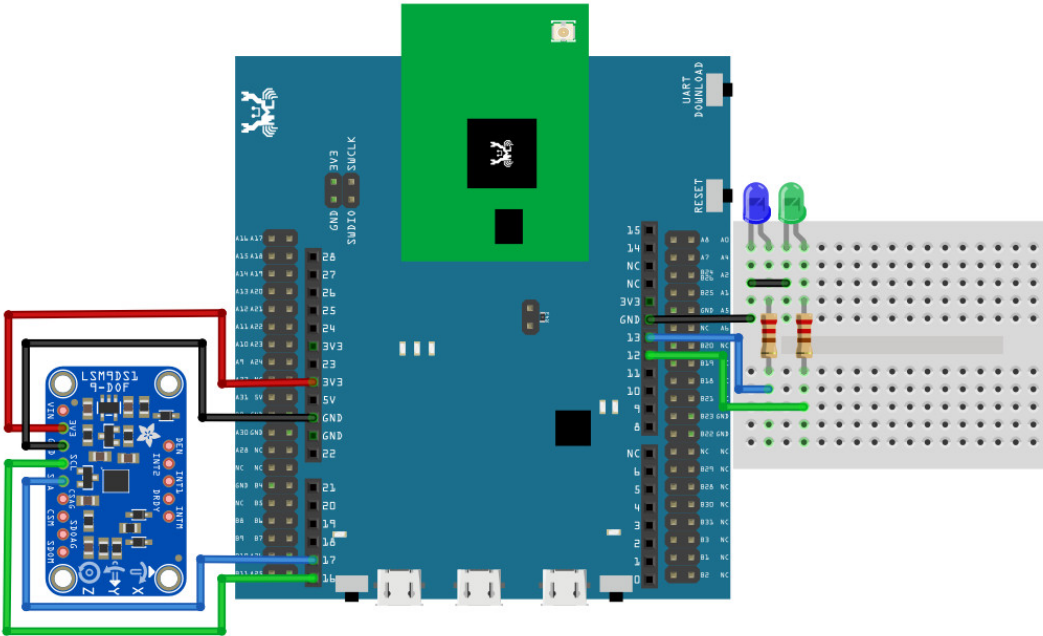
Materials

- Ameba D [RTL8722 CSM/DM] x 1
- Adafruit LSM9DS1 accelerometer
- LED x 2

Example

Procedure

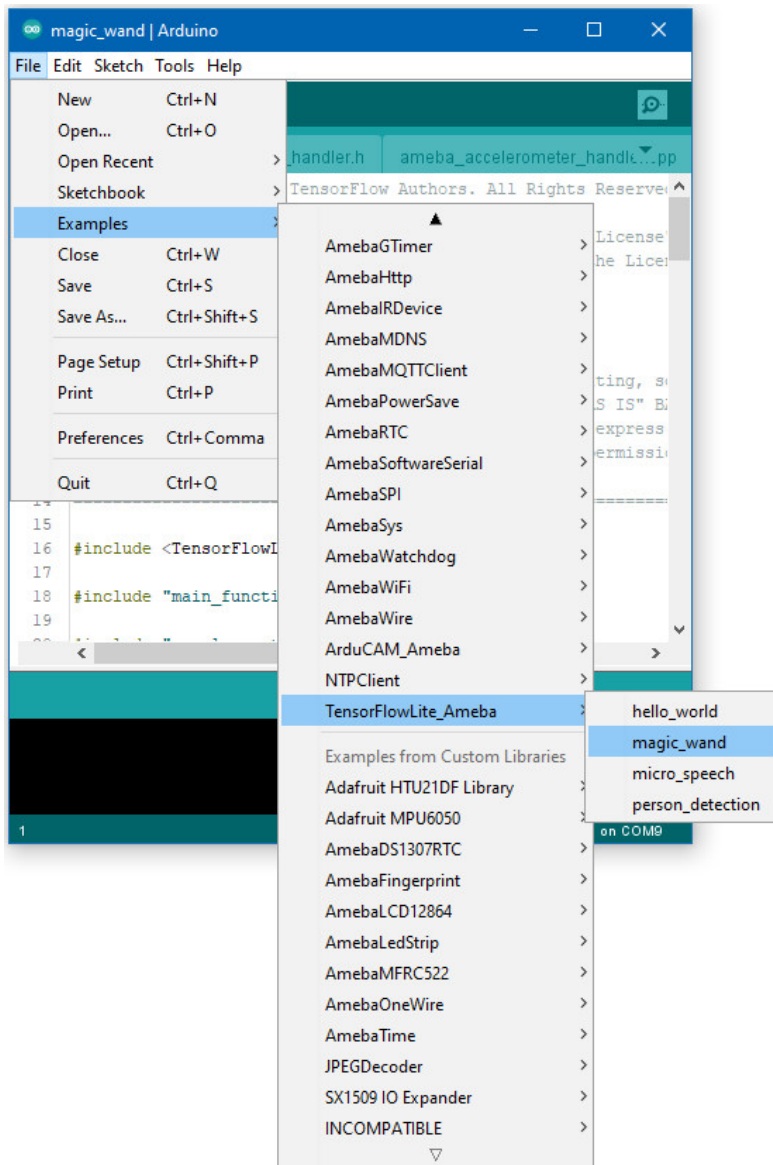
Connect the accelerometer and LEDs to the RTL8722 board following the diagram.



Download the Ameba customized version of TensorFlow Lite for Microcontrollers library at https://github.com/ambiot/ambd_arduino/tree/master/Arduino_zip_libraries. Follow the instructions at <https://www.arduino.cc/en/guide/libraries> to install it. Ensure that the patch files found at https://github.com/ambiot/ambd_arduino/tree/master/Ameba_misc/ are also installed.

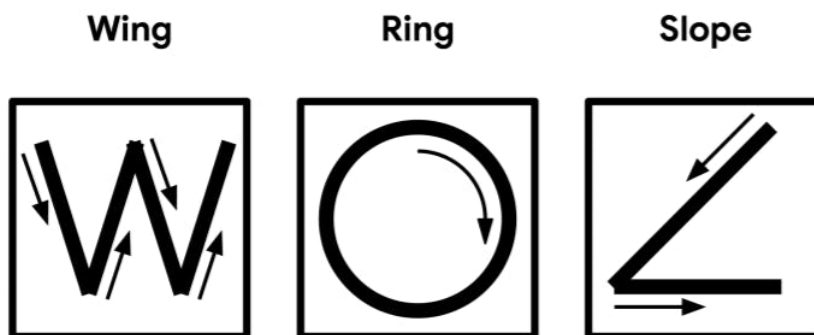
In the Arduino IDE library manager, install the Arduino_LSM9DS1 library. This example has been tested with version 1.1.0 of the LSM9DS1 library.

Open the example, “Files” -> “Examples” -> “TensorFlowLite_Ameba” -> “magic_wand”.



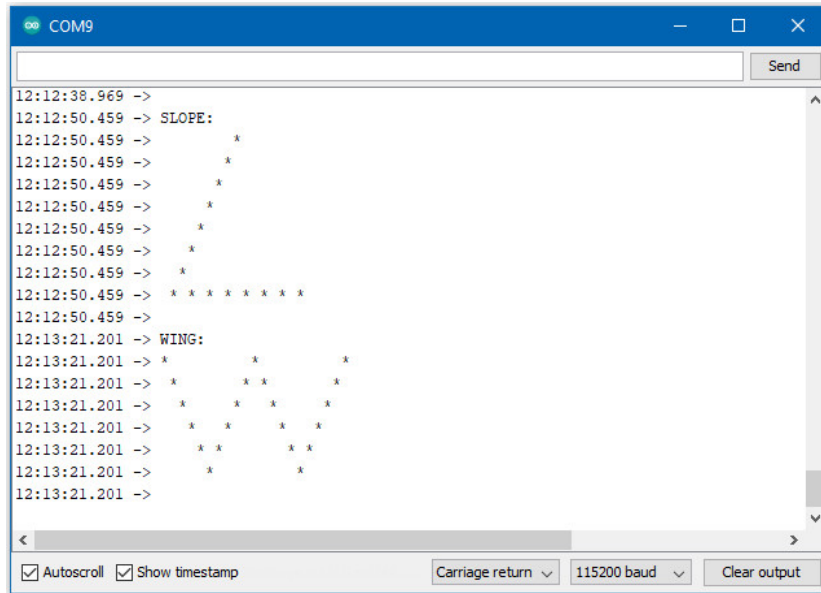
Upload the code and press the reset button on Ameba once the upload is finished.

Holding the accelerometer steady, with the positive x-axis pointing to the right and the positive z-axis pointing upwards, move it following the shapes as shown, moving it in a smooth motion over 1 to 2 seconds, avoiding any sharp movements.



If the movement is recognised by the TensorFlow Lite model, you should see the same shape output to the Arduino serial monitor. Different LEDs will light up corresponding to different recognized gestures.

Note that the wing shape is easy to achieve, while the slope and ring shapes tend to be harder to get right.



Code Reference

More information on TensorFlow Lite for Microcontrollers can be found at: <https://www.tensorflow.org/lite/microcontrollers>

[RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM] TensorFlow Lite - Micro Speech

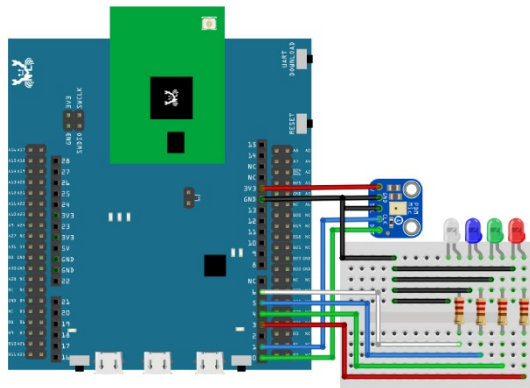
Materials

- Ameba D [RTL8722 CSM/DM] x 1
- Adafruit PDM MEMS microphone
- LED x 4

Example

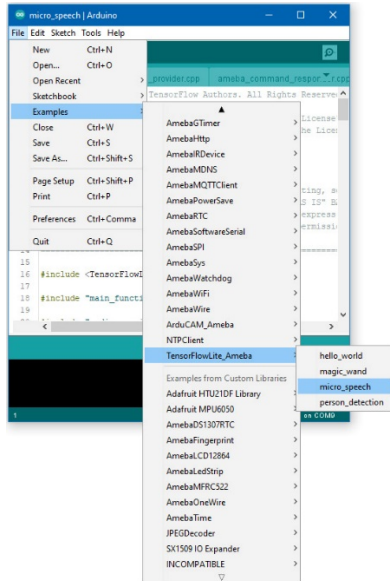
Procedure

Connect the microphone and LEDs to the RTL8722 board following the diagram.



Download the Ameba customized version of TensorFlow Lite for Microcontrollers library at https://github.com/ambiot/ambd_arduino/tree/master/Arduino_zip_libraries. Follow the instructions at <https://www.arduino.cc/en/guide/libraries> to install it. Ensure that the patch files found at https://github.com/ambiot/ambd_arduino/tree/master/Ameba_misc/ are also installed.

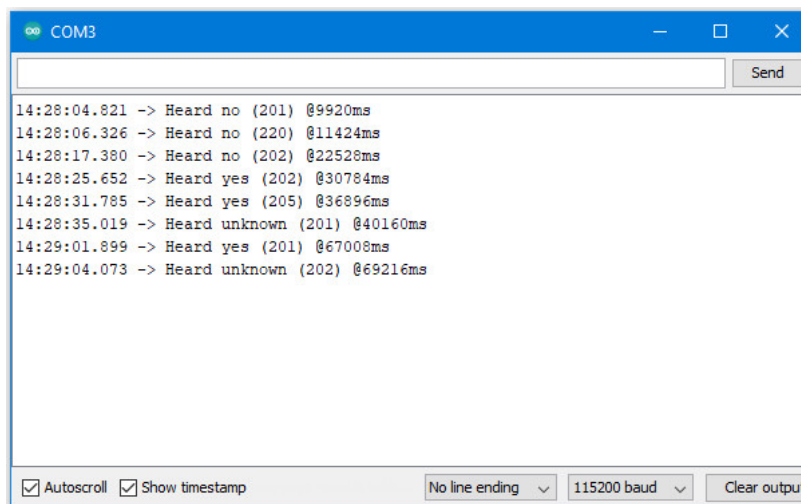
Open the example, “Files” -> “Examples” -> “TensorFlowLite_Ameba” -> “micro_speech”.



Upload the code and press the reset button on Ameba once the upload is finished.

Once it is running, you should see one of the LEDs flashing, indicating that it is processing audio. Saying the word “yes” will cause the green LED to light up. Saying the word “no” will cause the red LED to light up. If the word is not recognized, the blue LED will to light up.

The inference results are also output to the Arduino serial monitor, which appear as follows:



If you are having trouble in getting the words recognized, here are some tips:

- Ensure that your surroundings are quiet with minimal noise.
- Experiment with varying the distance of the microphone, starting with it at an arm’s length.
- Experiment with different tones and volume when saying the words.

- Depending on how you pronounce the words, the characteristics of the microphone used, getting one keyword recognized may be easier than the other.

Code Reference

More information on TensorFlow Lite for Microcontrollers can be found at: <https://www.tensorflow.org/lite/microcontrollers>

[RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM] TensorFlow Lite - Person Detection

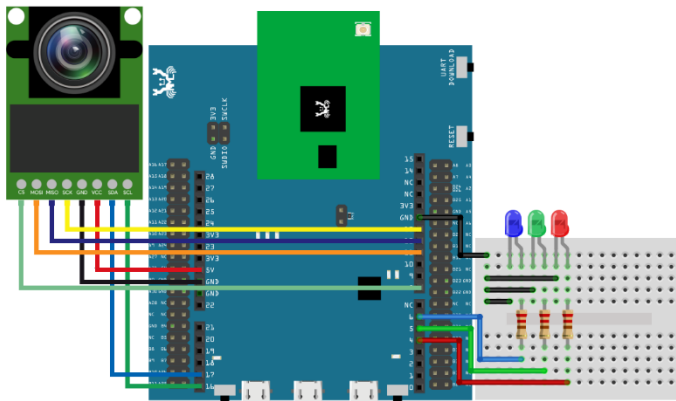
Materials

- Ameba D [RTL8722 CSM/DM] x 1
- Arducam Mini 2MP Plus OV2640 SPI Camera Module x 1
- LED x 3

Example

Procedure

Connect the camera and LEDs to the RTL8722 board following the diagram.



Download the Ameba customized version of TensorFlow Lite for Microcontrollers library at https://github.com/ambiot/ambd_arduino/tree/master/Arduino_zip_libraries. Follow the instructions at <https://www.arduino.cc/en/guide/libraries> to install it. Ensure that the patch files found at https://github.com/ambiot/ambd_arduino/tree/master/Ameba_misc/ are also installed.

You will also need to install the Ameba_ArduCAM library, found together with the TensorFlow Lite library.

In the Arduino IDE library manager, install the JPEGDecoder library. This example has been tested with version 1.8.0 of the JPEGDecoder library.

Once the library has installed, you will need to configure it to disable some optional components that are not compatible with the RTL8722DM. Open the following file:

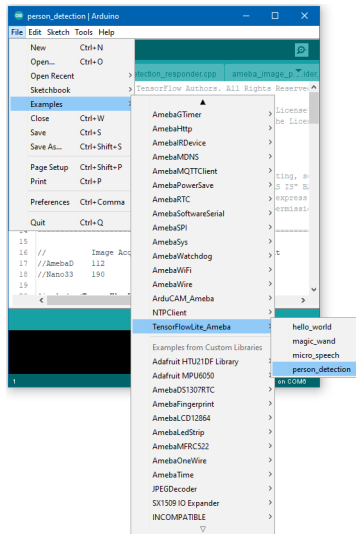
Arduino/libraries/JPEGDecoder/src/User_Config.h

Make sure that both `#define LOAD_SD_LIBRARY` and `#define LOAD_SDFAT_LIBRARY` are commented out, as shown in this excerpt from the file:

```
///#define LOAD_SD_LIBRARY // Default SD Card library
```

```
///#define LOAD_SDFAT_LIBRARY // Use SdFat library instead, so SD Card SPI can be bit bashed
```

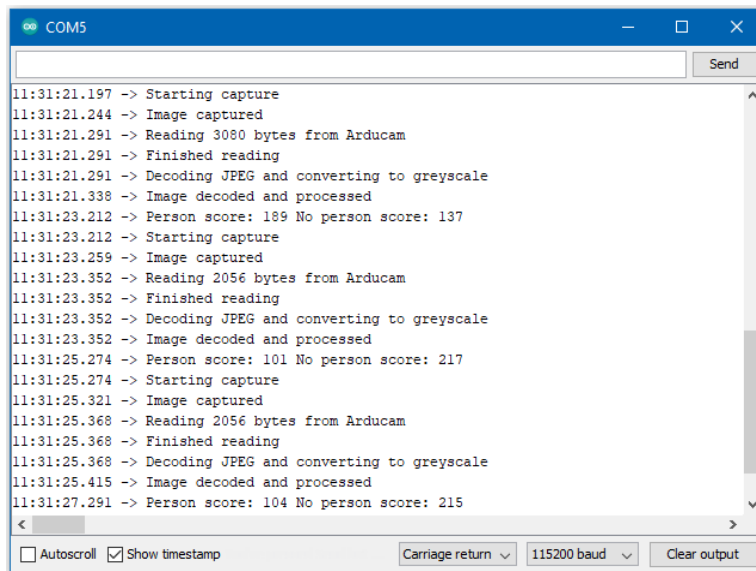
Open the example, “Files” -> “Examples” -> “TensorFlowLite_Ameba” -> “person_detection”.



Upload the code and press the reset button on Ameba once the upload is finished.

Once it is running, you should see the blue LED flashing once every few seconds, indicating that it has finished processing an image. The red LED will light up if it determines that there is no person in the previous image captured, and the green LED will light up if it determines that there is a person.

The inference results are also output to the Arduino serial monitor, which appear as follows:



Code Reference

More information on TensorFlow Lite for Microcontrollers can be found at: <https://www.tensorflow.org/lite/microcontrollers>

Components used

Table 2: Components used in Examples

	
<p><i>DHT11_DHT22</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Humidity & temperature sensor	<p><i>HC_SR04_Ultrasonic_module</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Distance measurement function
	
<p><i>ILI9341_TFT_LCD</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• TFT LCD display with SPI interface	<p><i>PMS3003_5003</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Air quality sensor
	
<p><i>QVGA_TFT_LCD</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• QVGA TFT LCD display module	<p><i>Adafruit_Ultimate_GPS_Breakout</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• High-quality GPS positioning module

(End)

1.1.4 Board HDK

- `Layout`
- `Schematic`

1.1.5 API Documents

Class AmebaServo

AmebaServo Class

Description

Defines a class of manipulating servo motors connected to Arduino pins.

Syntax

```
class AmebaServo
```

Members

Public Constructors	
<code>AmebaServo::AmebaServo</code>	Constructs an AmebaServo object.
Public Methods	
<code>AmebaServo::attach</code>	Attach the given pin to the next free channel.
<code>AmebaServo::detach</code>	Detach the servo.
<code>AmebaServo::write</code>	Write value, if the value is < 200 it's treated as an angle, otherwise as pulse-width in microseconds.
<code>AmebaServo::writeMicroseconds</code>	Write pulse width in microseconds.
<code>AmebaServo::read</code>	Output current pulse width as an angle between 0 and 180 degrees.
<code>AmebaServo::readMicroseconds</code>	Output current pulse width in microseconds for this servo.
<code>AmebaServo::attached</code>	Check if the servo is attached.

AmebaServo::attach

Description

Attach the given pin to the next free channel, sets pinMode (including minimum and maximum values for writes), returns channel number, or 0 if failure.

Syntax

```
uint8_t attach(int pin);
uint8_t attach(int pin, int min, int max);
```

Parameters

pin: The Arduino pin number to be attached.

min: Minimum values for writes.

max: Maximum values for writes.

Returns

The function returns channel number or 0

Example Code

Example: ServoSweep

The code demos servo motor sweeping from 0 degrees to 180 degrees then sweep back to 0 degrees in the step of 1 degree.

Listing 1: ServoSweep.ino

```
1  /* Sweep
2  by BARRAGAN < http://barraganstudio.com >
3  This example code is in the public domain.
4  modified 8 Nov 2013
5  by Scott Fitzgerald
6  http://www.arduino.cc/en/Tutorial/Sweep
7  refined 2016/03/18 by Realtek
8  */
9
10 #include "AmebaServo.h"
11
12 // create servo object to control a servo
13 // 4 servo objects can be created correspond to PWM pins
14
15 AmebaServo myservo;
16
17 // variable to store the servo position
18 int pos = 0;
19
20 void setup() {
21   #if defined(BOARD_RTL8195A)
22     // attaches the servo on pin 9 to the servo object
23     myservo.attach(9);
24   #elif defined(BOARD_RTL8710)
25     // attaches the servo on pin 13 to the servo object
26     myservo.attach(13);
27   #elif defined(BOARD_RTL8721D)
28     // attaches the servo on pin 8 to the servo object
29     myservo.attach(8);
30   #else
31     // attaches the servo on pin 9 to the servo object
32     myservo.attach(9);
33   #endif
34 }
35
36 void loop() {
37   // goes from 0 degrees to 180 degrees in steps of 1 degree
38   for (pos = 0; pos <= 180; pos += 1) {
39     // tell servo to go to position in variable 'pos'
40     myservo.write(pos);
41     // waits 15ms for the servo to reach the position
42     delay(15);
43   }
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

44 // goes from 180 degrees to 0 degrees
45 for (pos = 180; pos >= 0; pos -= 1) {
46     // tell servo to go to position in variable 'pos'
47     myservo.write(pos);
48     // waits 15ms for the servo to reach the position
49     delay(15);
50 }
51 }

```

Notes and Warnings

Every time must include the header file “AmebaServo.h” in front of the project to use the class function.

AmebaServo::detach**Description**

Detach the servo.

Syntax

```
void AmebaServo::detach(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Every time must include the header file “AmebaServo.h” in front of the project to use the class function.

AmebaServo::write**Description**

Write an integer value to the function, if the value is < 200, it's being treated as an angle, otherwise as pulse-width in microseconds.

Syntax

```
void AmebaServo::write(int value);
```

Parameters

value: The value < 200 its treated as an angle; otherwise as pulse width in microseconds.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: ServoSweep

The code demos servo motor sweeping from 0 degrees to 180 degrees then sweep back to 0 degrees in the step of 1 degree. Please refer to code in “AmebaServo:: attach” section.

Notes and Warnings

Every time must include the header file “AmebaServo.h” in front of the project to use the class function.

AmebaServo::writeMicroseconds**Description**

Write pulse width to the servo in microseconds.

Syntax

```
void AmebaServo::writeMicroseconds(int value);
```

Parameters

value: Write value the pulse width in microseconds.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Every time must include the header file “AmebaServo.h” in front of the project to use the class function.

AmebaServo::read**Description**

The function reads current pulse width and returns as an angle between 0 and 180 degrees.

Syntax

```
int AmebaServo::read(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The pulse width as an angle between 0 ~ 180 degrees.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Every time must include the header file “AmebaServo.h” in front of the project to use the class function.

AmebaServo::readMicroseconds**Description**

The function returns a Boolean value “true” if this servo is attached, otherwise returns “false”.

Syntax

```
int AmebaServo::readMicroseconds(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns current servo pulse width in microseconds.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Every time must include the header file “AmebaServo.h” in front of the project to use the class function.

AmebaServo::attached

Description

It returns true if this servo is attached, otherwise false.

Syntax

```
bool AmebaServo::attached(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns a Boolean value as true or false.

Example Code

Example: ServoSweep

The code demos servo motor sweeping from 0 degrees to 180 degrees then sweep back to 0 degrees in the step of 1 degree. Please refer to code in “AmebaServo:: attach” section.

Notes and Warnings

Every time must include the header file “AmebaServo.h” in front of the project to use the class function.

Class BLEAddr

BLEAddr Class

Description

A class used for managing Bluetooth addresses.

Syntax

```
class BLEAddr
```

Members

Public Constructors	
BLEAddr::BLEAddr	Constructs a BLEAddr object
Public Methods	
BLEAddr::str	Get the Bluetooth address represented as a formatted string
BLEAddr::data	Get the Bluetooth address represented as an integer array

BLEAddr::BLEAddr

Description

Constructs a BLEAddr object.

Syntax

```
BLEAddr::BLEAddr(void);  
BLEAddr::BLEAddr(uint8_t (&addr)[6]);  
BLEAddr::BLEAddr(const char* str);
```

Parameters

addr: An array of 6 bytes containing the desired Bluetooth address.

str: A character string representing the desired Bluetooth address.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

When expressed as a string, the Bluetooth address should be written as 6 bytes in hexadecimal format, using a colon ":" to separate the bytes is acceptable (example – 00:11:22:33:EE:FF).

BLEAddr::str**Description**

Get the Bluetooth address represented as a formatted string.

Syntax

```
const char* str(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns a pointer to a character string containing the hexadecimal representation of the Bluetooth address.

Example Code

Example: BLEScan

Notes and Warnings

The Bluetooth address expressed as a string will be written as 6 bytes in hexadecimal format, with a colon “:” separating the bytes (example – 00:11:22:33:EE:FF).

BLEAddr::data

Description

Get the Bluetooth address represented as an integer array.

Syntax

```
uint8_t* data(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns a pointer to a 6 byte array containing the Bluetooth address.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

The Bluetooth address is stored with MSB at array index [5].

Class BLEAdvert

BLEAdvert Class

Description

A class used for managing BLE advertising settings.

Syntax

```
class BLEAdvert
```

Members

Public Constructors

No public constructor is available as this class is intended to be a singleton class. You can get a pointer to this class using `BLEDevice::configAdvert()`.

Public Methods	
BLEAdvert::updateAdvertParams	Update the current BLE advertisement settings to the lower Bluetooth stack
BLEAdvert::startAdv	Start BLE advertising
BLEAdvert::stopAdv	Stop BLE advertising
BLEAdvert::setAdvType	Set the BLE advertising type
BLEAdvert::setMinInterval	Set the BLE advertising minimum interval
BLEAdvert::setMaxInterval	Set the BLE advertising maximum interval
BLEAdvert::setAdvData	Set BLE advertising data
BLEAdvert::setScanRspData	Set BLE scan response data

BLEAdvert::updateAdvertParams

Description

Update the lower Bluetooth stack with the current advertising settings.

Syntax

```
void updateAdvertParams(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Please use the other class member functions to set the BLE advertising parameters first before using this function.

BLEAdvert::startAdv

Description

Start BLE advertising.

Syntax

```
void startAdv(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

This function is provided for flexibility in controlling and updating BLE advertising parameters. You should avoid using this function to directly start the BLE advertising process without first registering the necessary callback and handler functions. Call `BLEDevice::beginPeripheral()` to register the necessary functions and start advertising for the first time.

BLEAdvert::stopAdv**Description**

Stop BLE advertising.

Syntax

```
void stopAdv(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

This function is provided for flexibility in controlling and updating BLE advertising parameters. You should avoid using this function to directly stop the BLE advertising process. Call `BLEDevice::end()` to stop advertising and free up used resources.

BLEAdvert::setAdvType**Description**

Set the BLE advertising type.

Syntax

```
void setAdvType(uint8_t advType);
```

Parameters

advType: the desired advertisement type. Valid values:

- 0 = GAP_ADTYPE_ADV_IND : connectable undirected advertisement
- 1 = GAP_ADTYPE_ADV_HDC_DIRECT_IND : connectable high duty cycle directed
- 2 = GAP_ADTYPE_ADV_SCAN_IND : scannable undirected advertisement
- 3 = GAP_ADTYPE_ADV_NONCONN_IND : Non-connectable undirected advertisement
- 4 = GAP_ADTYPE_ADV_LDC_DIRECT_IND : connectable low duty cycle directed advertisement

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEBatteryService

Notes and Warnings

Call this function with the GAP_ADTYPE_ADV_IND argument if connection requests should be allowed, and GAP_ADTYPE_ADV_NONCONN_IND if all connection requests should be rejected.

BLEAdvert::setMinInterval**Description**

Set the minimum BLE advertising interval.

Syntax

```
void setMinInterval(uint16_t minInt_ms);
```

Parameters

minInt_ms: the desired advertisement minimum interval, expressed in milliseconds. The valid values for the interval are from 20ms to 10240ms.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

BLE advertisements will repeat with an interval between the set minimum and maximum intervals. Set a shorter interval for the BLE device to be discovered rapidly and set a longer interval to conserve power.

BLEAdvert::setMaxInterval**Description**

Set the maximum BLE advertising interval.

Syntax

```
void setMaxInterval(uint16_t minInt_ms);
```

Parameters

minInt_ms: the desired advertisement maximum interval, expressed in milliseconds. The valid values for the interval are from 20ms to 10240ms.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

BLE advertisements will repeat with an interval between the set minimum and maximum intervals. Set a shorter interval for the BLE device to be discovered rapidly and set a longer interval to conserve power.

BLEAdvert::setAdvData**Description**

Set BLE advertising data.

Syntax

```
void setAdvData(BLEAdvertData adData);  
void setAdvData(uint8_t* pData, uint8_t size);
```

Parameters

adData: scan response data formatted in a BLEAdvertData class object

pData: pointer to a byte array containing the required scan response data.

size: number of bytes the scan response data contains, maximum of 31 bytes.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

N/A

BLEAdvert::setScanRspData

Description

Set BLE scan response data.

Syntax

```
void setScanRspData(BLEAdvertData adData);  
void setScanRspData(uint8_t* pData, uint8_t size);
```

Parameters

adData: scan response data formatted in a BLEAdvertData class object

pData: pointer to a byte array containing the required scan response data.

size: number of bytes the scan response data contains, maximum of 31 bytes.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

N/A

Class BLEAdvertData

BLEAdvertData Class

Description

A class used for managing BLE advertising data.

Syntax

```
class BLEAdvertData
```

Members

Public Constructors	
BLEAdvertData::BLEAdvertData	Constructs a BLEAdvertData object

Public Methods	
BLEAdvertData::clear	Clear all advertising data
BLEAdvertData::addData	Add binary advertising data
BLEAdvertData::addFlags	Add flags to advertising data
BLEAdvertData::addPartialServices	Add partial services to advertising data
BLEAdvertData::addCompleteServices	Add complete services to advertising data
BLEAdvertData::addAppearance	Add device appearance to advertising data
BLEAdvertData::addShortName	Add short device name to advertising data
BLEAdvertData::addCompleteName	Add complete device name to advertising data
BLEAdvertData::parseScanInfo	Parse advertising data received from a scan
BLEAdvertData::hasFlags	Check if received data includes advertising flags
BLEAdvertData::hasUUID	Check if received data includes UUIDs
BLEAdvertData::hasName	Check if received data includes device name
BLEAdvertData::hasManufacturer	Check if received data includes manufacturer data
BLEAdvertData::getAdvType	Get advertising type of received data
BLEAdvertData::getAddrType	Get Bluetooth address type of received data
BLEAdvertData::getAddr	Get Bluetooth address of received data
BLEAdvertData::getRSSI	Get RSSI of received data
BLEAdvertData::getFlags	Get advertising flags of received data
BLEAdvertData::getServiceCount	Get number of advertised services in received data
BLEAdvertData::getServiceList	Get array of advertised services in received data
BLEAdvertData::getName	Get advertised device name in received data
BLEAdvertData::getTxPower	Get advertised transmission power in received data
BLEAdvertData::getAppearance	Get advertised device appearance in received data
BLEAdvertData::getManufacturer	Get advertised manufacturer in received data
BLEAdvertData::getManufacturerDataLength	Get length of manufacturer data in received data
BLEAdvertData::getManufacturerData	Get advertised manufacturer data in received data

BLEAdvertData::BLEAdvertData

Description

Constructs a BLEAdvertData object.

Syntax

```
BLEAdvertData::BLEAdvertData(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

This class is used for managing BLE advertising data for two primary uses. First is to assemble advertising data for broadcasting as advertising packets. Second is to process and split up the advertising data received from a scan into separate types.

BLEAdvertData::clear

Description

Clear all advertising data currently saved in class object.

Syntax

```
void clear(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEAdvertData::addData

Description

Add binary advertising data.

Syntax

```
void addData(const uint8_t* data, uint8_t size);
```

Parameters

data: pointer to array containing desired advertising data.

size: number of bytes in array.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

This function is provided for flexibility in adding BLE advertising data. Other functions should be used for adding advertising data if possible, as this function does not perform any checks on the validity of the data.

BLEAdvertData::addFlags**Description**

Add flags to advertising data.

Syntax

```
uint8_t addFlags(uint8_t flags);
```

Parameters

flags: desired flags to add to advertising data. Valid values:

- GAP_ADTYPE_FLAGS_LIMITED
- GAP_ADTYPE_FLAGS_GENERAL
- GAP_ADTYPE_FLAGS_BREDR_NOT_SUPPORTED
- GAP_ADTYPE_FLAGS_SIMULTANEOUS_LE_BREDR_CONTROLLER
- GAP_ADTYPE_FLAGS_SIMULTANEOUS_LE_BREDR_HOST

Returns

Current total size of advertising data.

Example Code

Example: BLEBatteryService

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEAdvertData::addPartialServices

Description

Add partial list of service UUIDs to advertising data.

Syntax

```
uint8_t addPartialServices(BLEUUID uuid);
```

Parameters

uuid: the desired UUID contained in BLEUUID class object.

Returns

Current total size of advertising data.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEAdvertData::addCompleteServices

Description

Add complete list of service UUIDs to advertising data.

Syntax

```
uint8_t addCompleteServices(BLEUUID uuid);  
uint8_t addCompleteServices(uint8_t uuidBitLength);
```

Parameters

uuid: the desired UUID contained in BLEUUID class object.

uuidBitLength: UUID bit length for which a blank entry is to be added. Valid values: 16, 32, 128.

Returns

Current total size of advertising data.

Example Code

Example: BLEBatteryService

Notes and Warnings

uuidBitLength is used when it is desired to add a blank entry to the advertisement data, used to indicate that no services with UUIDs of a certain length are available.

BLEAdvertData::addAppearance**Description**

Add device appearance to advertising data.

Syntax

```
uint8_t addAppearance(uint16_t appearance);
```

Parameters

appearance: the desired device appearance.

Returns

Current total size of advertising data.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Refer to Bluetooth specifications for a full list of device appearance values.

BLEAdvertData::addShortName**Description**

Add shortened device name to advertising data.

Syntax

```
uint8_t addShortName(const char* str);
```

Parameters

str: character string containing desired device name.

Returns

Current total size of advertising data.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEAdvertData::addCompleteName

Description

Add complete device name to advertising data.

Syntax

```
uint8_t addCompleteName(const char* str);
```

Parameters

str: character string containing desired device name.

Returns

Current total size of advertising data.

Example Code

Example: BLEBatteryService

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEAdvertData::parseScanInfo

Description

Parse advertising data received from a scan.

Syntax

```
void parseScanInfo(T_LE_CB_DATA *p_data);
```

Parameters

p_data: pointer to advertising data received from a Bluetooth scan.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEBatteryClient

Notes and Warnings

Advertising data fields of parsed receive data can be access using member functions starting with “has” and “get”.

BLEAdvertData::hasFlags**Description**

Check if received data includes advertising flags.

Syntax

```
bool hasFlags(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

True if flags are present in received advertising data.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEAdvertData::hasUUID

Description

Check if received data includes service UUIDs.

Syntax

```
bool hasUUID(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

True if service UUIDs are present in received advertising data.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEAdvertData::hasName

Description

Check if received data includes device name.

Syntax

```
bool hasName(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

True if device name is present in received advertising data.

Example Code

Example: BLEBatteryClient

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEAdvertData::hasManufacturer**Description**

Check if received data includes manufacturer specific data.

Syntax

```
bool hasManufacturer(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

True if manufacturer specific data is present in received advertising data.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEAdvertData::getAdvType**Description**

Get advertising type of received data.

Syntax

```
T_GAP_ADV_EVT_TYPE getAdvType(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Advertising type of received advertising data.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Possible types:

- GAP_ADV_EVT_TYPE_UNDIRECTED
- GAP_ADV_EVT_TYPE_DIRECTED
- GAP_ADV_EVT_TYPE_SCANNABLE
- GAP_ADV_EVT_TYPE_NON_CONNECTABLE
- GAP_ADV_EVT_TYPE_SCAN_RSP

BLEAdvertData::getAddrType

Description

Get Bluetooth address type of received data.

Syntax

```
T_GAP_REMOTE_ADDR_TYPE getAddrType(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Bluetooth address type of received data.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Possible types:

- GAP_REMOTE_ADDR_LE_PUBLIC
- GAP_REMOTE_ADDR_LE_RANDOM

BLEAdvertData::getRSSI

Description

Get received signal strength indicator (RSSI) of received data.

Syntax

```
Int8_t getRSSI(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Received signal strength.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEAdvertData::getFlags**Description**

Get advertising flags of received data.

Syntax

```
uint8_t getFlags(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Advertising flags present in received advertising data, expressed as a single byte.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEAdvertData::getServiceCount**Description**

Get number of advertised services in received data.

Syntax

```
uint8_t getServiceCount(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Number of advertised service UUIDs in received data.

Example Code

Example: BLEBatteryClient

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEAdvertData::getServiceList

Description

Get list of advertised service UUIDs in received data.

Syntax

```
BLEUUID* getServiceList(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Pointer to a BLEUUID array containing all advertised service UUIDs.

Example Code

Example: BLEBatteryClient

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEAdvertData::getName

Description

Get advertised device name in received data.

Syntax

```
String getName(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Advertised device name contained in a String class object.

Example Code

Example: BLEBatteryClient

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEAdvertData::getTxPower**Description**

Get advertised transmission power in received data.

Syntax

```
int8_t getTxPower(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Advertised transmission power.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEAdvertData::getAppearance

Description

Get advertised device appearance in received data.

Syntax

```
uint16_t getAppearance(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Advertised device appearance.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Refer to Bluetooth specifications for full list of device appearance values.

BLEAdvertData::getManufacturer

Description

Get advertised manufacturer in received data.

Syntax

```
uint16_t getManufacturer(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Advertised manufacturer.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Refer to Bluetooth specifications for full list of manufacturer codes.

BLEAdvertData::getManufacturerDataLength

Description

Get length of manufacturer data in received data.

Syntax

```
uint8_t getManufacturerDataLength(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Number of bytes of manufacturer data present in received advertising data.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEAdvertData::getManufacturerData

Description

Get manufacturer data in received data.

Syntax

```
uint8_t* getManufacturerData(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Pointer to array containing manufacturer data.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

Class BLEBeacon

iBeacon Class

Description

A class used for managing iBeacon BLE advertising data.

Syntax

```
class iBeacon
```

Members

Public Constructors	
iBeacon::iBeacon	Create an instance of iBeacon advertising data
Public Methods	
iBeacon::getManufacturerId	Get current manufacturer ID value
iBeacon::getUUID	Get current UUID value
iBeacon::getMajor	Get current Major value
iBeacon::getMinor	Get current Minor value
iBeacon::getRSSI	Get current RSSI value
iBeacon::setManufacturerId	Set manufacturer ID value
iBeacon::setUUID	Set UUID value
iBeacon::setMajor	Set Major value
iBeacon::setMinor	Set Minor value
iBeacon::setRSSI	Set RSSI value
iBeacon::getAdvData	Get current advertising data
iBeacon::getScanRsp	Get current scan response data

altBeacon Class

Description

A class used for managing altBeacon BLE advertising data.

Syntax

```
class altBeacon
```

Members

Public Constructors	
altBeacon::altBeacon	Create an instance of altBeacon advertising data
Public Methods	
altBeacon::getManufacturerId	Get current manufacturer ID value
altBeacon::getUUID	Get current UUID value
altBeacon::getMajor	Get current Major value
altBeacon::getMinor	Get current Minor value
altBeacon::getRSSI	Get current RSSI value
altBeacon::getRSVD	Get current Reserved value
altBeacon::setManufacturerId	Set manufacturer ID value
altBeacon::setUUID	Set UUID value
altBeacon::setMajor	Set Major value
altBeacon::setMinor	Set Minor value
altBeacon::setRSSI	Set RSSI value
altBeacon::setRSVD	Set Reserved value
altBeacon::getAdvData	Get current advertising data
altBeacon::getScanRsp	Get current scan response data

iBeacon::iBeacon**Description**

Create an iBeacon object.

Syntax

```
void iBeacon(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Include “BLEBeacon.h” to use this class function.

altBeacon::altBeacon**Description**

Create an altBeacon object.

Syntax

```
void altBeacon(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Include “BLEBeacon.h” to use this class function.

iBeacon::getManufacturerId

altBeacon::getManufacturerId

Description

Get current Manufacturer ID value.

Syntax

```
uint16_t getManufacturerId(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

A 16-bit unsigned integer containing the current Company ID.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Refer to <https://www.bluetooth.com/specifications/assigned-numbers/company-identifiers/> for the full list of assigned Bluetooth company identifiers.

iBeacon::getUUID**altBeacon::getUUID****Description**

Get the current UUID value.

Syntax

```
void getUUID(uint8_t* UUID);
```

Parameters

UUID: pointer to a 16 element uint8_t array, current UUID will be copied into the array.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

UUID is a 128-bit number used to uniquely identify a beacon. It is commonly expressed as a 32-character hexadecimal string. UUIDs can be generated at <https://www.uuidgenerator.net/>.

iBeacon::getMajor**altBeacon::getMajor****Description**

Get current Major value.

Syntax

```
uint16_t getMajor(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

A 16-bit unsigned integer containing the current Major value.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Major and Minor are values used for customizing beacons. These can be set to any value. Refer to <https://developer.apple.com/ibeacon/> or <https://altbeacon.org/> for more information.

iBeacon::getMinor

altBeacon::getMinor

Description

Get current Minor value.

Syntax

```
uint16_t getMinor(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

A 16-bit unsigned integer containing the current Minor value.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Major and Minor are values used for customizing beacons. These can be set to any value. Refer to <https://developer.apple.com/ibeacon/> or <https://altbeacon.org/> for more information.

iBeacon::getRSSI

altBeacon::getRSSI

Description

Get the current RSSI value.

Syntax

```
int8_t getRSSI(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

An 8-bit signed integer containing the currently set RSSI value.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

The beacon RSSI value is the received signal strength at 1 meter. This can be used to estimate the distance to the beacon. Refer to <https://developer.apple.com/ibeacon/> or <https://altbeacon.org/> for more information.

iBeacon::setManufacturerId**altBeacon::setManufacturerId****Description**

Set Manufacturer ID value.

Syntax

```
void setManufacturerId(uint16_t id);
```

Parameters

id: desired Manufacturer ID

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEBeacon

Notes and Warnings

Refer to <https://www.bluetooth.com/specifications/assigned-numbers/company-identifiers/> for the full list of assigned Bluetooth company identifiers.

iBeacon::setUUID**altBeacon::setUUID**

Description

Set UUID value.

Syntax

```
void setUUID(uint8_t* UUID);  
void setUUID(const char* UUID);
```

Parameters

uint8_t* UUID: pointer to a 16 element uint8_t array containing the desired UUID
const char* UUID: desired UUID expressed as a character string

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEBeacon

Notes and Warnings

UUID is a 128-bit number used to uniquely identify a beacon. It is commonly expressed as a 32-character hexadecimal string. UUIDs can be generated at <https://www.uuidgenerator.net/>.

iBeacon::setMajor

altBeacon::setMajor

Description

Set Major value.

Syntax

```
void setMajor(uint16_t major);
```

Parameters

major: desired Major value

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEBeacon

Notes and Warnings

Major and Minor are values used for customizing beacons. These can be set to any value. Refer to <https://developer.apple.com/ibeacon/> or <https://altbeacon.org/> for more information.

iBeacon::setMinor**altBeacon::setMinor****Description**

Set Minor value.

Syntax

```
void setMinor(uint16_t minor);
```

Parameters

minor: desired Minor value

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEBeacon

Notes and Warnings

Major and Minor are values used for customizing beacons. These can be set to any value. Refer to <https://developer.apple.com/ibeacon/> or <https://altbeacon.org/> for more information.

iBeacon::setRSSI**altBeacon::setRSSI****Description**

Set RSSI value.

Syntax

```
void setRSSI(int8_t RSSI);
```

Parameters

RSSI: desired RSSI value

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEBeacon

Notes and Warnings

The beacon RSSI value is the received signal strength at 1 meter. This can be used to estimate the distance to the beacon. Refer to <https://developer.apple.com/ibeacon/> or <https://altbeacon.org/> for more information.

iBeacon::getAdvData

altBeacon::getAdvData

Description

Get current beacon advertising data.

Syntax

```
uint8_t* getAdvData(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

A uint8_t pointer to the structure containing beacon advertising data.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Avoid changing the beacon data through the returned pointer, use the member functions instead.

iBeacon::getScanRsp

altBeacon::getScanRsp

Description

Get current beacon advertising scan response data.

Syntax

```
uint8_t* getScanRsp(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

A uint8_t pointer to the structure containing beacon advertising scan response data.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Avoid changing the beacon data through the returned pointer, use the member functions instead.

altBeacon::getRSVD**Description**

Get current Reserved value.

Syntax

```
uint8_t getRSVD(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

An 8-bit unsigned integer containing the current Reserved value.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Reserved for use by the manufacturer to implement special features. The interpretation of this value is to be defined by the manufacturer and is to be evaluated based on the MFG ID value. Refer to <https://altbeacon.org/> for more information.

altBeacon::setRSVD

Description

Set Reserved value.

Syntax

```
void setRSVD(uint8_t rsvd);
```

Parameters

rsvd: desired Reserved value

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Reserved for use by the manufacturer to implement special features. The interpretation of this value is to be defined by the manufacturer and is to be evaluated based on the MFG ID value. Refer to <https://altbeacon.org/> for more information.

Class BLECharacteristic**BLECharacteristic Class****Description**

A class used for creating and managing BLE GATT characteristics.

Syntax

```
class BLECharacteristic
```

Members

Public Constructors	
BLEC haracteristic::BLECharacteristic	Constructs a BLECharacteristic object
Public Methods	
BLECharacteristic::setUUID	Set the characteristic UUID
BLECharacteristic::getUUID	Get the characteristic UUID
BLECharacteristic::setBufferLen	Set the size of the internal data buffer
BLECharacteristic::getBufferLen	Get the current size of the internal data buffer
BL ECharacteristic::setReadProperty	Get the current size of the internal data bufferSet the characteristic r
BLE Characteristic::setWriteProperty	Set the characteristic write property
BLEC haracteristic::setNotifyProperty	Set the characteristic notify property
BLECha racteristic::setIndicateProperty	Set the characteristic indicate property

continues o

Table 3 – continued from previous page

Public Constructors	
BLECharacteristic::setProperties	Set the characteristic properties
BLECharacteristic::getProperties	Get the characteristic properties
BLECharacteristic::readString	Read the characteristic data buffer as a String object
BLECharacteristic::readData8	Read the characteristic data buffer as an unsigned 8-bit integer
BLECharacteristic::readData16	Read the characteristic data buffer as an unsigned 16-bit integer
BLECharacteristic::readData32	Read the characteristic data buffer as an unsigned 32-bit integer
BLECharacteristic::writeString	Write data to the characteristic data buffer as a String object or character array
BLECharacteristic::writeData8	Write data to the characteristic data buffer as an unsigned 8-bit integer
BLECharacteristic::writeData16	Write data to the characteristic data buffer as an unsigned 16-bit integer
BLECharacteristic::writeData32	Write data to the characteristic data buffer as an unsigned 32-bit integer
BLECharacteristic::setData	Write data to the characteristic data buffer
BLECharacteristic::getData	Read data from the characteristic data buffer
BLECharacteristic::getDataBuff	Get a pointer to the characteristic data buffer
BLECharacteristic::getDataLen	Get the number of bytes of data in the characteristic data buffer
BLECharacteristic::notify	Send a notification to a connected device
BLECharacteristic::indicate	Send an indication to a connected device
BLECharacteristic::setUserDescriptor	Add a user description descriptor to characteristic
BLECharacteristic::setFormatDescriptor	Add a data format descriptor to characteristic
BLECharacteristic::Add a data format descriptor to characteristic	Set a user function as a read callback
BLECharacteristic::setWriteCallback	Set a user function as a write callback
BLECharacteristic::setCCCDCallback	Set a user function as a CCCD write callback

BLECharacteristic::BLECharacteristic**Description**

Constructs a BLECharacteristic object.

Syntax

```
BLECharacteristic::BLECharacteristic(BLEUUID uuid);
BLECharacteristic::BLECharacteristic(const char* uuid);
```

Parameters

uuid: characteristic UUID, expressed as a BLEUUID class object or a character array

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEUartService

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLECharacteristic::setUUID

Description

Set the characteristic UUID.

Syntax

```
void setUUID(BLEUUID uuid);
```

Parameters

uuid: the new characteristic UUID, expressed with a BLEUUID class object

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLECharacteristic::getUUID

Description

Get the characteristic UUID.

Syntax

```
BLEUUID getUUID();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the characteristic UUID in a BLEUUID class object.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLECharacteristic::setBufferLen**Description**

Set the size of the internal data buffer of the characteristic.

Syntax

```
void setBufferLen(uint16_t max_len);
```

Parameters

max_len: number of bytes to resize the internal buffer to

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEUartService

Notes and Warnings

Characteristic data buffer has a default size of 20 bytes and can be increased up to 230 bytes.

BLECharacteristic::getBufferLen**Description**

Get the size of the characteristic internal buffer.

Syntax

```
uint16_t getBufferLen();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the currently set internal buffer size.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLECharacteristic::setReadProperty

Description

Set the characteristic read property.

Syntax

```
void setReadProperty(bool value);
```

Parameters

value: TRUE to allow connected devices to read characteristic data

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEBatteryService

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLECharacteristic::setWriteProperty

Description

Set the characteristic write property.

Syntax

```
void setWriteProperty(bool value);
```

Parameters

value: TRUE to allow connected devices to write characteristic data

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEUartService

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLECharacteristic::setNotifyProperty**Description**

Set the characteristic notify property.

Syntax

```
void setNotifyProperty(bool value);
```

Parameters

value: TRUE to allow connected devices to enable receiving characteristic data notifications.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEUartService

Notes and Warnings

Enabling this property will add a CCCD descriptor to the characteristic.

BLECharacteristic::setIndicateProperty**Description**

Set the characteristic indicate property.

Syntax

```
void setIndicateProperty(bool value);
```

Parameters

value: TRUE to allow connected devices to enable receiving characteristic data indications.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Enabling this property will add a CCCD descriptor to the characteristic.

BLECharacteristic::setProperties

Description

Set the characteristic properties.

Syntax

```
void setProperties(uint8_t value);
```

Parameters

value: desired characteristic properties

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLECharacteristic::getProperties

Description

Get the currently set characteristic properties.

Syntax

```
uint8_t getProperties();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the currently set characteristic properties expressed as an unsigned 8-bit integer.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLECharacteristic::readString**Description**

Read the data in the characteristic internal buffer, expressed as a String class object.

Syntax

```
String readString();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the data in the characteristic internal buffer expressed as a String class object.

Example Code

Example: BLEUartService

Notes and Warnings

Non-ASCII data may result in unexpected characters in the string.

BLECharacteristic::readData8**Description**

Read the data in the characteristic internal buffer, expressed as an unsigned 8-bit integer.

Syntax

```
uint8_t readData8();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the data in the characteristic internal buffer expressed as a uint8_t value.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLECharacteristic::readData16

Description

Read the data in the characteristic internal buffer, expressed as an unsigned 16-bit integer.

Syntax

```
uint16_t readData16();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the data in the characteristic internal buffer expressed as a uint16_t value.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLECharacteristic::readData32

Description

Read the data in the characteristic internal buffer, expressed as an unsigned 32-bit integer.

Syntax

```
uint32_t readData32();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the data in the characteristic internal buffer expressed as a uint32_t value.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLECharacteristic::readData32

Description

Write data to the characteristic data buffer as a String object or character array.

Syntax

```
bool writeString(String str);  
bool writeString(const char* str);
```

Parameters

str: the data to write to the characteristic buffer, expressed as a String class object or a char array.

Returns

The function returns TRUE if write data is successful.

Example Code

Example: BLEUartService

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLECharacteristic::writeData8

Description

Write data to the characteristic data buffer as an unsigned 8-bit integer.

Syntax

```
bool writeData8(uint8_t num);
```

Parameters

num: the data to write to the characteristic buffer expressed as an unsigned 8-bit integer.

Returns

The function returns TRUE if write data is successful.

Example Code

Example: BLEBatteryService

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLECharacteristic::writeData16

Description

Write data to the characteristic data buffer as an unsigned 16-bit integer.

Syntax

```
bool writeData16(uint16_t num);
```

Parameters

num: the data to write to the characteristic buffer expressed as an unsigned 16-bit integer.

Returns

The function returns TRUE if write data is successful.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLECharacteristic::writeData32

Description

Write data to the characteristic data buffer as a 32-bit integer.

Syntax

```
bool writeData32(uint32_t num);  
bool writeData32(int num);
```

Parameters

num: the data to write to the characteristic buffer expressed as a 32-bit integer.

Returns

The function returns TRUE if write data is successful.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLECharacteristic::setData**Description**

Write data to the characteristic data buffer.

Syntax

```
bool setData(uint8_t* data, uint16_t datalen);
```

Parameters

data: pointer to byte array containing desired data

datalen: number of bytes of data to write

Returns

The function returns TRUE if write data is successful.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLECharacteristic::getData**Description**

Read data from the characteristic data buffer.

Syntax

```
uint16_t getData(uint8_t* data, uint16_t datalen);
```

Parameters

data: pointer to byte array to save data read from buffer

datalen: number of bytes of data to read

Returns

The function returns the number of bytes read.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

If the data buffer contains less data than requested, it will only read the available number of bytes of data.

BLECharacteristic::getDataBuff

Description

Get a pointer to the characteristic data buffer.

Syntax

```
uint8_t* getDataBuff();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns a pointer to the uint8_t array used as the characteristic internal buffer.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLECharacteristic::getDataLen

Description

Get the number of bytes of data in the characteristic data buffer.

Syntax

```
uint16_t getDataLen
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the number of bytes of data in the internal buffer.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLECharacteristic::notify**Description**

Send a notification to a connected device.

Syntax

```
void notify(uint8_t conn_id);
```

Parameters

conn_id: the connection ID for the device to send a notification to.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEUartService

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLECharacteristic::indicate**Description**

Send an indication to a connected device.

Syntax

```
void indicate(uint8_t conn_id);
```

Parameters

conn_id: the connection ID for the device to send an indication to.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLECharacteristic::setUserDescriptor

Description

Add a user description descriptor attribute (UUID 0x2901) to the characteristic.

Syntax

```
void setUserDescriptor(const char* description);
```

Parameters

description: the desired user description string expressed in a char array.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLECharacteristic::setFormatDescriptor

Description

Add a data format descriptor attribute (UUID 0x2904) to the characteristic.

Syntax

```
void setFormatDescriptor(uint8_t format, uint8_t exponent, uint16_t unit, uint16_t description);
```

Parameters

format: refer to <https://www.bluetooth.com/specifications/assigned-numbers/format-types/> for the valid values and associated format types.

exponent: base-10 exponent to be applied to characteristic data value.

unit: refer to <https://btprodspecificationrefs.blob.core.windows.net/assigned-values/16-bit%20UUID%20Numbers%20Document.pdf> for the valid values and associated units.

descriptor: refer to <https://www.bluetooth.com/specifications/assigned-numbers/gatt-namespace-descriptors/> for the valid values and associated descriptors.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLECharacteristic::setReadCallback

Description

Set a user function to be called when the characteristic data is read by a connected device.

Syntax

```
void setReadCallback(void (*fCallback) (BLECharacteristic* chr, uint8_t conn_id));
```

Parameters

fCallback: A user callback function that returns void and takes two arguments.

chr: pointer to BLECharacteristic object containing data read

conn_id: connection ID of connected device that read characteristic data

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEBatteryService

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLECharacteristic::setWriteCallback

Description

Set a user function to be called when the characteristic data is written by a connected device.

Syntax

```
void setWriteCallback(void (*fCallback) (BLECharacteristic* chr, uint8_t conn_id));
```

Parameters

fCallback: A user callback function that returns void and takes two arguments.

chr: pointer to BLECharacteristic object containing written data.

conn_id: connection ID of connected device that wrote characteristic data.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEUartService

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLECharacteristic::setCCCDCallback**Description**

Set a user function to be called when a connected device modifies the characteristic CCCD to enable or disable notifications or indications.

Syntax

```
void setCCCDCallback(void (*fCallback) (BLECharacteristic* chr, uint8_t conn_id, uint16_t ccc_bits));
```

Parameters

fCallback: A user callback function that returns void and takes two arguments.

chr: pointer to BLECharacteristic object containing written data.

conn_id: connection ID of connected device that wrote characteristic data.

ccc_bits: the new CCCD data bits after modification by the connected device

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEUartService

Notes and Warnings

NA

Class BLEClient**BLEClient Class****Description**

A class used for discovering and accessing BLE GATT services on a connected remote device.

Syntax

```
class BLEClient
```

Members**Public Constructors**

No public constructor is available for this class. You can get a pointer to an instance of this class using BLEDevice::addClient().

Public Methods	
BLEClient::connected	Check if the corresponding remote device for the client is connected
BLEClient::discoverServices	Start service discovery process for connected device
BLEClient::discoveryDone	Determine if service discovery process has been completed
BLEClient::printServices	Format and print discovered services to serial port
BLEClient::getService	Get a specific service on the remote device
BLEClient::getConnId	
BLEClient::getClientId	Get corresponding client ID
BLEClient::setDisconnectCallback	Set a user function to be called when the remote device is disconnected

BLEClient::connected**Description**

Check if the remote device associated with the client is still connected.

Syntax

```
bool connected();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns TRUE if the remote device is connected.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEClient::discoverServices

Description

Start the service discovery process for the connected remote device.

Syntax

```
void discoverServices();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEUartClient

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEClient::discoveryDone

Description

Check if the service discovery process has been completed.

Syntax

```
bool discoveryDone();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns TRUE if the service discovery process has been completed successfully, FALSE if the service discovery process failed, is still in progress, or has yet to start.

Example Code

Example: BLEUartClient

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEClient::printServices**Description**

Print out a formatted list of discovered services to the serial port.

Syntax

```
void printServices();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEClient::getService**Description**

Get a service with the specified UUID on the remote device.

Syntax

```
BLERemoteService* getService(const char* uuid);  
BLERemoteService* getService(BLEUUID uuid);
```

Parameters

uuid: the desired service UUID, expressed as a character array or a BLEUUID object.

Returns

The function returns the found service as a BLERemoteService object pointer, otherwise nullptr is returned if a service with the UUID is not found.

Example Code

Example: BLEUartClient

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEClient::getConnId

Description

Get the connection ID associated with the remote device.

Syntax

```
uint8_t getConnId;
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the connection ID for the connected remote device.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEClient::getClientId

Description

Get the client ID for the BLEClient object.

Syntax

```
T_CLIENT_ID getClientId();;
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the BLEClient object's client ID.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

The client ID is used when calling internal GATT client API.

BLEClient::setDisconnectCallback**Description**

Set a user function as a callback function when the remote device is disconnected.

Syntax

```
void setDisconnectCallback(void (*fCallback) (BLEClient* client));
```

Parameters

fCallback: A user callback function that returns void and takes one argument.

client: A pointer to the BLEClient object corresponding to the disconnected remote device

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

The user callback function will be called after the remote device has disconnected, before the characteristics, services and client associated with the remote device are deleted.

Class BLEConnect

BLEConnect Class

Description

A class used for managing BLE connection settings.

Syntax

```
class BLEConnect
```

Members

Public Constructors
No public constructor is available as this class is intended to be a singleton class. You can get a pointer to this class using BLEDevice::configConnection.

Public Methods	
BLEConnect::connect	Connect to a target BLE device
BLEConnect::disconnect	Disconnect from a target BLE device
BLEConnect::setScanInterval	Set the BLE scanning interval when connecting
BLEConnect::setScanWindow	Set the BLE scanning window when connecting
BLEConnect::setConnInterval	Set the BLE connection interval duration
BLEConnect::setConnLatency	Set the BLE connection slave latency
BLEConnect::setConnTimeout	Set the BLE connection timeout value
BLEConnect::updateConnParams	Send new BLE connection parameters to a connected device
BLEConnect::getConnInfo	Get connection information
BLEConnect::getConnAddr	Get the Bluetooth address for a certain connection
BLEConnect::getConnId	Get the connection ID for a certain device

BLEConnect::connect

Description

Connect to a target BLE device.

Syntax

```
bool connect(char* btAddr, T_GAP_REMOTE_ADDR_TYPE destAddrType, uint16_t scanTimeout);
bool connect(uint8_t (&btAddr)[6], T_GAP_REMOTE_ADDR_TYPE destAddrType, uint16_t scanTimeout);
bool connect(BLEAdvertData targetDevice, uint16_t scanTimeout);
bool connect(BLEAddr destAddr, T_GAP_REMOTE_ADDR_TYPE destAddrType, uint16_t scanTimeout);
```

Parameters

char* btAddr: target device Bluetooth address expressed as a character string.

uint8_t (&btAddr): target device Bluetooth address contained in a 6 byte array.

destAddr: target device Bluetooth address contained in BLEAddr class object.

targetDevice: advertising data packet scanned from target device.

destAddrType: Bluetooth address type of target device. Valid values:

- GAP_REMOTE_ADDR_LE_PUBLIC
- GAP_REMOTE_ADDR_LE_RANDOM

scan timeout: duration in milliseconds for which to look for target device before giving up.

Returns

True if connection successful, false if connection failed.

Example Code

Example: BLEBatteryClient

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEConnect::disconnect

Description

Disconnect from a target BLE device.

Syntax

```
bool disconnect(uint8_t connId);
```

Parameters

connId: connection ID for target device.

Returns

True if operation successful, false if otherwise.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEConnect::setScanInterval

Description

Set the BLE scan interval when searching for a target device to connect to.

Syntax

```
void setScanInterval(uint16_t scanInt_ms);
```

Parameters

scanInt_ms: scan interval in milliseconds. Value range of 3 to 10240.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEConnect::setScanWindow

Description

Set the BLE scan window when searching for a target device to connect to.

Syntax

```
void setScanWindow(uint16_t scanWindow_ms);
```

Parameters

scanWindow_ms: scan window in milliseconds. Value range of 3 to 10240.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEConnect::setConnInterval**Description**

Set the BLE connection interval value.

Syntax

```
void setConnInterval(uint16_t min_ms, uint16_t max_ms);
```

Parameters

min_ms: minimum acceptable connection interval in milliseconds. Value range of 8 to 4000.

max_ms: maximum acceptable connection interval in milliseconds. Value range of 8 to 4000.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

The BLE connection interval defines the period between successive connection events between a connected central and peripheral device. Even if there is no data to exchange, a connection event is required to maintain the connection.

max_ms should be larger than or equal to min_ms.

BLEConnect::setConnLatency**Description**

Set the BLE connection slave latency value.

Syntax

```
void setConnLatency(uint16_t latency);
```

Parameters

latency: Connection slave latency value. Value range of 0 to 499.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

The BLE connection slave latency defines the number of successive connection events a connected peripheral device can ignore without being considered as disconnected by the central device.

BLEConnect::setConnTimeout

Description

Set the BLE connection timeout value.

Syntax

```
void setConnTimeout(uint16_t timeout_ms);
```

Parameters

timeout_ms: connection timeout in milliseconds. Value range of 100 to 32000.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

The BLE connection timeout defines the duration after a failed connection events before a peripheral or central device considers the connection broken.

BLEConnect::updateConnParams

Description

Update a connected device with new connection parameters.

Syntax

```
void updateConnParams(uint8_t conn_id);
```

Parameters

conn_id: connection ID of target device to update connection parameters.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Update a connected device with previously set connection interval, slave latency and timeout values. The connected device may reject the new values if it is unable to conform to them.

BLEConnect::getConnInfo**Description**

Get connection information.

Syntax

```
bool getConnInfo(uint8_t connId, T_GAP_CONN_INFO *pConnInfo);
```

Parameters

connId: connection ID to get connection information from.

pConnInfo: pointer to T_GAP_CONN_INFO structure to store obtained connection information.

Returns

True if operation success, false if operation failed.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEConnect::getConnAddr**Description**

Get the Bluetooth address for a certain connection.

Syntax

```
bool getConnAddr(uint8_t connId, uint8_t* addr, uint8_t* addrType);
```

Parameters

connId: connection ID to get address information for

addr: pointer to 6 byte array to store retrieved Bluetooth address

addrType: pointer to uint8_t variable to store retrieved Bluetooth address type

Returns

True if operation success, false if operation failed.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEConnect::getConnId**Description**

Get the connection ID for a certain device.

Syntax

```
int8_t getConnId(char* btAddr, uint8_t addrType);  
int8_t getConnId(uint8_t* btAddr, uint8_t addrType);  
int8_t getConnId(BLEAdvertData targetDevice);
```

Parameters

char* btAddr: target device Bluetooth address expressed as a character string.

uint8_t* btAddr: pointer to a 6 byte array containing target device Bluetooth address.

targetDevice: advertising data packet scanned from target device.

addrType: Bluetooth address type of target device. Valid values:

- GAP_REMOTE_ADDR_LE_PUBLIC
- GAP_REMOTE_ADDR_LE_RANDOM

Returns

The function returns the requested connection ID. Returns -1 if failed to obtain connection ID.

Example Code

Example: BLEBatteryClient

Notes and Warnings

NA

Class BLEDevice

BLEDevice Class

Description

A class used for general control and management of BLE functions.

Syntax

```
class BLEDevice
```

Members

Public Constructors

The public constructor should not be used as this class is intended to be a singleton class. Access member functions using the object instance named BLE.

Public Methods	
BLEDevice::init	Allocate resources required for BLE functionality
BLEDevice::deinit	Free resources used by BLE functionality
BLEDevice::connected	Check if a BLE device is connected
BLEDevice::setDeviceName	Set BLE GAP device name
BLEDevice::setDeviceAppearance	Set BLE GAP device appearance
BLEDevice::configAdvert	Configure BLE advertising parameters
BLEDevice::configScan	Configure BLE scan parameters
BLEDevice::setScanCallback	Set callback function for BLE scans
BLEDevice::beginCentral	Start BLE stack in central mode
BLEDevice::beginPeripheral	Start BLE stack in peripheral mode
BLEDevice::end	Stop BLE stack
BLEDevice::configServer	Configure BLE stack for services
BLEDevice::addService	Add a service to the BLE stack
BLEDevice::configClient	Configure BLE stack for clients
BLEDevice::addClient	Add a client to the BLE stack
BLEDevice::getLocalAddr	Get local device Bluetooth address

BLEDevice::init

Description

Allocate resources required for BLE functionality.

Syntax

```
void init(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEBatteryService

Notes and Warnings

Call this member function first before using any other member functions in the BLEDevice class.

BLEDevice::deinit

Description

Free up resources used for BLE functionality.

Syntax

```
void deinit(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Call this member function last after all other BLE operations are stopped.

BLEDevice::connected

Description

Check if a BLE device is connected.

Syntax

```
bool connected(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

TRUE if another BLE device is connected, FALSE if no BLE device is connected.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEDevice::setDeviceName**Description**

Set the BLE GAP device name.

Syntax

```
void setDeviceName(String devName);
```

Parameters

devName: desired device name contained in an Arduino String object

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

The GAP device name has a maximum length of 39 characters. Other devices can see this name after a BLE connection is established. This name is separate and different from the device name sent in a BLE advertisement, the names should be the same but are not required.

BLEDevice::setDeviceAppearance**Description**

Set the BLE GAP device appearance.

Syntax

```
void setDeviceAppearance(uint16_t devAppearance);
```

Parameters

devAppearance: desired device appearance expressed as a 16-bit unsigned integer.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Refer to Bluetooth SIG assigned device appearances at <https://www.bluetooth.com/specifications/gatt/characteristics/>.

BLEDevice::configAdvert

Description

Configure BLE advertising parameters.

Syntax

```
BLEAdvert* configAdvert(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

A pointer to a BLEAdvert class instance for configuring BLE advertising parameters.

Example Code

Example: BLEBatteryService

Notes and Warnings

Use this member function instead of creating a BLEAdvert class instance manually.

BLEDevice::configScan

Description

Configure BLE scanning parameters.

Syntax

```
BLEScan* configScan(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

A pointer to a BLEScan class instance for configuring BLE scanning parameters.

Example Code

Example: BLEScan

```
#include "BLEDevice.h"
#include "BLEScan.h"

int dataCount = 0;

void scanFunction(T_LE_CB_DATA* p_data) {
  printf("\nScan Data %d\n", ++dataCount);
  BLE.configScan()->printScanInfo(p_data);
}

void setup() {
  BLE.init();
  BLE.configScan()->setScanMode(GAP_SCAN_MODE_ACTIVE);
  BLE.configScan()->setScanInterval(500); // Start a scan every 500ms
  BLE.configScan()->setScanWindow(250); // Each scan lasts for 250ms
  // Provide a callback function to process scan data.
  // If no function is provided, default BLEScan::printScanInfo is used
  BLE.setScanCallback(scanFunction);
  BLE.beginCentral(0);
  BLE.configScan()->startScan(5000); // Repeat scans for 5 seconds, then stop
}

void loop() {
}
```

Notes and Warnings

Use this member function instead of creating a BLEScan class instance manually.

BLEDevice::setScanCallback

Description

Set a callback function for processing BLE scan results.

Syntax

```
void setScanCallback(void (scanCB)(T_LE_CB_DATA));
```

Parameters

scanCB: a function that returns nothing and takes in a scan data pointer of type T_LE_CB_DATA*

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEScan

Notes and Warnings

Use this member function to set a callback function that will be called for each BLE device scan result found.

BLEDevice::beginCentral

Description

Start the BLE stack in central mode.

Syntax

```
void beginCentral(uint8_t connCount);
```

Parameters

connCount: maximum number of allowed connected devices. If no argument is provided, default to maximum allowed connected devices for specific board.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEScan

The function returns nothing.

Notes and Warnings

Use this member function to start the device in BLE central mode, after other BLE parameters are set correctly.

BLEDevice::beginPeripheral**Description**

Start the BLE stack in peripheral mode.

Syntax

```
void beginPeripheral(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEBatteryService

Notes and Warnings

Use this member function to start the device in BLE peripheral mode, after other BLE parameters are set correctly.

BLEDevice::end**Description**

Stop the BLE stack.

Syntax

```
void end(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Use this member function to stop the device operating in either BLE peripheral mode or BLE central mode.

BLEDevice::configServer

Description

Configure the BLE stack for services.

Syntax

```
void configServer(uint8_t maxServiceCount);
```

Parameters

maxServiceCount: Maximum number of services that will run on the device

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEBatteryService

Notes and Warnings

Use this member function before adding any service to the BLE stack.

BLEDevice::addService

Description

Add a new service to the BLE stack.

Syntax

```
void addService(BLEService& newService);
```


Parameters

newService: the service to be added, defined using a BLEService class object.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEBatteryService

Notes and Warnings

N/A

BLEDevice::configClient**Description**

Configure the BLE stack for clients.

Syntax

```
void configClient();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEBatteryClient

Notes and Warnings

Use this member function before adding any client to the BLE stack.

BLEDevice::addClient**Description**

Add a new client to the BLE stack.

Syntax

```
BLEClient* addClient(uint8_t connId);
```

Parameters

connId: the connection ID of the connected device to create a client for.

Returns

The function returns a pointer to a BLEClient class object, corresponding to the device with the specified connection ID, which can be used to access the services and characteristics on the connected device.

Example Code

Example: BLEBatteryClient

Notes and Warnings

Only one client should be added per connected device.

The BLEClient object and any service, characteristic, descriptor associated with the connected device will be deleted when the device is disconnected.

BLEDevice::getLocalAddr**Description**

Get local device Bluetooth address.

Syntax

```
void getLocalAddr(uint8_t (&addr)[GAP_BD_ADDR_LEN]);
```

Parameters

addr: 6 byte array to store local device Bluetooth address.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Local device address is only available after starting in central or peripheral mode. This function will return all zeros for the address if central or peripheral mode is not in operation.

Class BLERemoteCharacteristic

BLERemoteCharacteristic Class

Description

A class used for managing BLE GATT characteristics on connected remote devices.

Syntax

```
class BLERemoteCharacteristic
```

Members

Public Constructors

No public constructor is available for this class. You can get a pointer to an instance of this class using `BLERemoteService::getCharacteristic()`.

Public Methods

<code>BLERemoteCharacteristic::getDescriptor</code>	Get a specific descriptor on the remote device
<code>BLERemoteCharacteristic::getUUID</code>	Get the characteristic UUID
<code>BLERemoteCharacteristic::setBufferLen</code>	Set the size of the internal data buffer
<code>BLERemoteCharacteristic::getBufferLen</code>	Get the current size of the internal data buffer
<code>BLERemoteCharacteristic::canRead</code>	Determine if characteristic has read property enabled
<code>BLERemoteCharacteristic::canWrite</code>	Determine if characteristic has write property enabled
<code>BLERemoteCharacteristic::canNotify</code>	Determine if characteristic has notify property enabled
<code>BLERemoteCharacteristic::canIndicate</code>	Determine if characteristic has indicate property enabled
<code>BLERemoteCharacteristic::getProperties</code>	Get the characteristic properties
<code>BLERemoteCharacteristic::readString</code>	Read the characteristic data buffer as a String object
<code>BLERemoteCharacteristic::readData8</code>	Read the characteristic data buffer as an unsigned 8-bit integer
<code>BLERemoteCharacteristic::readData16</code>	Read the characteristic data buffer as an unsigned 16-bit integer
<code>BLERemoteCharacteristic::readData32</code>	Read the characteristic data buffer as an unsigned 32-bit integer
<code>BLERemoteCharacteristic::writeString</code>	Write data to the characteristic as a String object or character array
<code>BLERemoteCharacteristic::writeData8</code>	Write data to the characteristic as an unsigned 8-bit integer
<code>BLERemoteCharacteristic::writeData16</code>	Write data to the characteristic as an unsigned 16-bit integer
<code>BLERemoteCharacteristic::writeData32</code>	Write data to the characteristic as an unsigned 16-bit integer
<code>BLERemoteCharacteristic::setData</code>	Write data to the characteristic
<code>BLERemoteCharacteristic::getData</code>	Read data from the characteristic
<code>BLERemoteCharacteristic::enableNotifyIndicate</code>	Enable notification or indication for the characteristic
<code>BLERemoteCharacteristic::disableNotifyIndicate</code>	Disable notification and indication for the characteristic
<code>BLERemoteCharacteristic::setNotifyCallback</code>	Set a user function as a notification callback

BLERemoteCharacteristic::getDescriptor

Description

Get a descriptor with the specified UUID on the remote device.

Syntax

```
BLERemoteDescriptor* getDescriptor(const char* uuid);  
BLERemoteDescriptor* getDescriptor(BLEUUID uuid);
```

Parameters

uuid: the desired descriptor UUID, expressed as a character array or a BLEUUID object

Returns

The function returns the found descriptor as a BLERemoteDescriptor object pointer, otherwise nullptr is returned if a descriptor with the UUID is not found.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLERemoteCharacteristic::getUUID

Description

Get the characteristic UUID.

Syntax

```
BLEUUID getUUID();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the characteristic UUID as a BLEUUID class object.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLERemoteCharacteristic::setBufferLen

Description

Set the size of the internal data buffer of the characteristic.

Syntax

```
void setBufferLen(uint16_t max_len);
```

Parameters

max_len: number of bytes to resize the internal buffer to.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEUartClient

Notes and Warnings

Characteristic data buffer has a default size of 20 bytes and can be increased up to 230 bytes.

BLERemoteCharacteristic::getBufferLen**Description**

Get the size of the characteristic internal buffer.

Syntax

```
uint16_t getBufferLen();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the currently set internal buffer size.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLERemoteCharacteristic::canRead

Description

Determine if characteristic has read property enabled.

Syntax

```
bool canRead();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns TRUE if the read property for the characteristic is enabled.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLERemoteCharacteristic::canWrite

Description

Determine if characteristic has write property enabled.

Syntax

```
bool canWrite();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns TRUE if the write property for the characteristic is enabled.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLERemoteCharacteristic::canNotify

Description

Determine if characteristic has notify property enabled.

Syntax

```
bool canNotify();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns TRUE if the notify property for the characteristic is enabled.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLERemoteCharacteristic::canIndicate

Description

Determine if characteristic has indicate property enabled.

Syntax

```
bool canIndicate();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns TRUE if the indicate property for the characteristic is enabled.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLERemoteCharacteristic::getProperties

Description

Get the characteristic properties.

Syntax

```
uint16_t getProperties();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the characteristic properties.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLERemoteCharacteristic::readString

Description

Request for characteristic data from the remote device and read the data in the buffer, expressed as a String class object.

Syntax

```
String readString();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the data in the characteristic buffer expressed as a String class object.

Example Code

Example: BLEUartClient

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLERemoteCharacteristic::readData8**Description**

Request for characteristic data from the remote device and read the data in the buffer, expressed as an unsigned 8-bit integer.

Syntax

```
uint8_t readData8();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the data in the characteristic buffer expressed as a uint8_t value.

Example Code

Example: BLEBatteryClient

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLERemoteCharacteristic::readData16**Description**

Request for characteristic data from the remote device and read the data in the buffer, expressed as an unsigned 16-bit integer.

Syntax

```
uint16_t readData16();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the data in the characteristic buffer expressed as a uint16_t value.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLERemoteCharacteristic::readData32

Description

Request for characteristic data from the remote device and read the data in the buffer, expressed as an unsigned 32-bit integer.

Syntax

```
uint32_t readData32();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the data in the characteristic buffer expressed as a uint32_t value.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLERemoteCharacteristic::writeString

Description

Write data to the remote device characteristic as a String object or character array.

Syntax

```
bool writeString(String str);  
bool writeString(const char* str);
```

Parameters

str: the data to write to the remote characteristic, expressed as a String class object or a char array.

Returns

The function returns TRUE if write data is successful.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLERemoteCharacteristic::writeData8**Description**

Write data to the remote device characteristic as an unsigned 8-bit integer.

Syntax

```
bool writeData8(uint8_t num);
```

Parameters

num: the data to write to the characteristic buffer expressed as an unsigned 8-bit integer.

Returns

The function returns TRUE if write data is successful.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLERemoteCharacteristic::writeData16

Description

Write data to the remote device characteristic as an unsigned 16-bit integer.

Syntax

```
bool writeData16(uint16_t num);
```

Parameters

num: the data to write to the characteristic buffer expressed as an unsigned 16-bit integer.

Returns

The function returns TRUE if write data is successful.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLERemoteCharacteristic::writeData32

Description

Write data to the remote device characteristic as a 32-bit integer.

Syntax

```
bool writeData32(uint32_t num);  
bool writeData32(int num);
```

Parameters

num: the data to write to the characteristic buffer expressed as a 32-bit integer.

Returns

The function returns TRUE if write data is successful.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLERemoteCharacteristic::setData**Description**

Write data to the remote device characteristic.

Syntax

```
bool setData(uint8_t* data, uint16_t datalen);
```

Parameters

data: pointer to byte array containing desired data

datalen: number of bytes of data to write

Returns

The function returns TRUE if write data is successful.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLERemoteCharacteristic::getData**Description**

Request for characteristic data from the remote device and read the data in the buffer.

Syntax

```
uint16_t getData(uint8_t* data, uint16_t datalen);
```

Parameters

data: pointer to byte array to save data read from buffer

datalen: number of bytes of data to read

Returns

The function returns the number of bytes read.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

If the data buffer contains less data than requested, it will only read the available number of bytes of data.

BLERemoteCharacteristic::enableNotifyIndicate

Description

Enable the remote device to send notifications or indications for the characteristic.

Syntax

```
void enableNotifyIndicate(bool notify = 1);
```

Parameters

notify: TRUE to enable notifications, FALSE to enable indications.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEUartClient

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLERemoteCharacteristic::disableNotifyIndicate

Description

Disable receiving notifications and indications for the characteristic from the remote device.

Syntax

```
void disableNotifyIndicate();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLERemoteCharacteristic::setNotifyCallback**Description**

Set a user function to be called when the characteristic receives a notification from the remote device.

Syntax

```
void setNotifyCallback(void (*fCallback) (BLERemoteCharacteristic* chr, uint8_t* data, uint16_t length));
```

Parameters

fCallback: A user callback function that returns void and takes three arguments.

chr: pointer to BLERemoteCharacteristic object associated with notification.

data: pointer to byte array containing notification data.

length: number of bytes of notification data in array.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEUartClient

Notes and Warnings

NA

Class BLERemoteDescriptor**BLERemoteDescriptor Class****Description**

A class used for managing BLE GATT descriptors on connected remote devices.

Syntax

```
class BLERemoteDescriptor
```

Members

Public Constructors

No public constructor is available for this class. You can get a pointer to an instance of this class using `BLERemoteCharacteristic::getDescriptor()`.

Public Methods	
<code>BLERemoteDescriptor::getUUID</code>	Get the descriptor UUID
<code>BLERemoteDescriptor::setBufferLen</code>	Set the size of the internal data buffer
<code>BLERemoteDescriptor::getBufferLen</code>	Get the current size of the internal data buffer
<code>BLERemoteDescriptor::readString</code>	Read the descriptor data buffer as a String object
<code>BLERemoteDescriptor::readData8</code>	Read the descriptor data buffer as an unsigned 8-bit integer
<code>BLERemoteDescriptor::readData16</code>	Read the descriptor data buffer as an unsigned 16-bit integer
<code>BLERemoteDescriptor::readData32</code>	Read the descriptor data buffer as an unsigned 32-bit integer
<code>BLERemoteDescriptor::writeString</code>	Write data to the descriptor as a String object or character array
<code>BLERemoteDescriptor::writeData8</code>	Write data to the descriptor as an unsigned 8-bit integer
<code>BLERemoteDescriptor::writeData16</code>	Write data to the descriptor as an unsigned 16-bit integer
<code>BLERemoteDescriptor::writeData32</code>	Write data to the descriptor as an unsigned 16-bit integer
<code>BLERemoteDescriptor::setData</code>	Write data to the descriptor
<code>BLERemoteDescriptor::getData</code>	Read data from the descriptor

BLERemoteDescriptor::getUUID

Description

Get the descriptor UUID.

Syntax

```
BLEUUID getUUID();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the descriptor UUID as a `BLEUUID` class object.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLERemoteDescriptor::setBufferLen

Description

Set the size of the internal data buffer of the descriptor.

Syntax

```
void setBufferLen(uint16_t max_len);
```

Parameters

max_len: number of bytes to resize the internal buffer to.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Descriptor data buffer has a default size of 20 bytes and can be increased up to 230 bytes.

BLERemoteDescriptor::getBufferLen**Description**

Get the size of the descriptor internal buffer.

Syntax

```
uint16_t getBufferLen();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the currently set internal buffer size.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLERemoteDescriptor::readString

Description

Request for descriptor data from the remote device and read the data in the buffer, expressed as a String class object.

Syntax

```
String readString();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the data in the descriptor buffer expressed as a String class object.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLERemoteDescriptor::readData8

Description

Request for descriptor data from the remote device and read the data in the buffer, expressed as an unsigned 8-bit integer.

Syntax

```
uint8_t readData8();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the data in the descriptor buffer expressed as a uint8_t value.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLERemoteDescriptor::readData16**Description**

Request for descriptor data from the remote device and read the data in the buffer, expressed as an unsigned 16-bit integer.

Syntax

```
uint16_t readData16();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the data in the descriptor buffer expressed as a uint16_t value.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLERemoteDescriptor::readData32**Description**

Request for descriptor data from the remote device and read the data in the buffer, expressed as an unsigned 32-bit integer.

Syntax

```
uint32_t readData32();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the data in the descriptor buffer expressed as a uint32_t value.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLERemoteDescriptor::writeString

Description

Write data to the remote device descriptor as a String object or character array.

Syntax

```
bool writeString(String str);  
bool writeString(const char* str);
```

Parameters

str: the data to write to the remote descriptor, expressed as a String class object or a char array.

Returns

The function returns TRUE if write data is successful.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLERemoteDescriptor::writeData8

Description

Write data to the remote device descriptor as an unsigned 8-bit integer.

Syntax

```
bool writeData8(uint8_t num);
```

Parameters

num: the data to write to the descriptor buffer expressed as an unsigned 8-bit integer.

Returns

The function returns TRUE if write data is successful.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLERemoteDescriptor::writeData16**Description**

Write data to the remote device descriptor as an unsigned 16-bit integer.

Syntax

```
bool writeData16(uint16_t num);
```

Parameters

num: the data to write to the descriptor buffer expressed as an unsigned 16-bit integer.

Returns

The function returns TRUE if write data is successful.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLERemoteDescriptor::writeData32**Description**

Write data to the remote device descriptor as a 32-bit integer.

Syntax

```
bool writeData32(uint32_t num);  
bool writeData32(int num);
```

Parameters

num: the data to write to the descriptor buffer expressed as a 32-bit integer.

Returns

The function returns TRUE if write data is successful.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLERemoteDescriptor::setData

Description

Write data to the remote device descriptor.

Syntax

```
bool setData(uint8_t* data, uint16_t datalen);
```

Parameters

data: pointer to byte array containing desired data

datalen: number of bytes of data to write

Returns

The function returns TRUE if write data is successful.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLERemoteDescriptor::getData

Description

Request for descriptor data from the remote device and read the data in the buffer.

Syntax

```
uint16_t getData(uint8_t* data, uint16_t datalen);
```

Parameters

data: pointer to byte array to save data read from buffer

datalen: number of bytes of data to read

Returns

The function returns the number of bytes read.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

If the data buffer contains less data than requested, it will only read the available number of bytes of data.

Class BLERemoteService**BLERemoteService Class****Description**

A class used for managing BLE GATT services on connected remote devices.

Syntax

```
class BLERemoteService
```

Members**Public Constructors**

No public constructor is available for this class. You can get a pointer to an instance of this class using BLE-Client::getService().

Public Methods	
BLERemoteService::getUUID	Get the service UUID
BLE RemoteService::getCharacteristic	Get a specific characteristic on the remote device

BLERemoteService::getUUID**Description**

Get the service UUID.

Syntax

```
BLEUUID getUUID();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the service UUID as a BLEUUID class object.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLERemoteService::getCharacteristic

Description

Get a characteristic with the specified UUID on the remote device.

Syntax

```
BLERemoteCharacteristic* getCharacteristic (const char* uuid);  
BLERemoteCharacteristic* getCharacteristic (BLEUUID uuid);
```

Parameters

uuid: the desired characteristic UUID, expressed as a character array or a BLEUUID object.

Returns

The function returns the found characteristic as a BLERemoteCharacteristic object pointer, otherwise nullptr is returned if a characteristic with the UUID is not found.

Example Code

Example: BLEUartClient

Notes and Warnings

NA

Class BLEScan

BLEScan Class

Description

A class used for managing BLE scanning settings.

Syntax

```
class BLEScan
```

Members

Public Constructors

No public constructor is available as this class is intended to be a singleton class. You can get a pointer to this class using `BLEDevice::configScan`

Public Methods

<code>BLEScan::updateScanParams</code>	Update the current BLE advertisement settings to the lower Bluetooth stack
<code>BLEScan::startScan</code>	Start a BLE scan
<code>BLEScan::stopScan</code>	Stop a BLE scan
<code>BLEScan::setScanMode</code>	Set the BLE scanning mode
<code>BLEScan::setScanInterval</code>	Set the BLE scanning interval
<code>BLEScan::setScanWindow</code>	Set the BLE scanning window
<code>BLEScan::setScanDuplicateFilter</code>	Set the BLE scan duplicate filter
<code>BLEScan::scanInProgress</code>	Check if a scan is currently in progress
<code>BLEScan::printScanInfo</code>	Print out scanned information

BLEScan::updateScanParams

Description

Update the lower Bluetooth stack with the current scan settings.

Syntax

```
void updateScanParams(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: `BLEScan`

Notes and Warnings

Stop any scans in progress first before using this function.

BLEScan::startScan

Description

Start BLE scanning.

Syntax

```
void startScan();  
void startScan(uint32_t scanDuration_ms);
```

Parameters

scanDuration: BLE scan will stop after scanDuration milliseconds.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEScan

Notes and Warnings

Set the scan parameters first before starting a scan. BLE scans will occur continuously for the duration set with BLEDevice::setScanWindow() and will repeat with a time interval set with BLEDevice::setScanInterval(). Call this member function without an argument to start scanning until BLEDevice::stopScan() is called.

BLEScan::stopScan

Description

Stop BLE scanning.

Syntax

```
void stopScan(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEScan::setScanMode**Description**

Set the BLE scan mode.

Syntax

```
void setScanMode(uint8_t scanMode);
```

Parameters

scanMode: GAP_SCAN_MODE_PASSIVE for passive scanning, GAP_SCAN_MODE_ACTIVE for active scanning

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEScan

Notes and Warnings

Active scanning will request for scan response packets after discovering an advertising device. Passive scanning will only capture advertising data packets.

BLEScan::setScanInterval**Description**

Set the BLE scan interval.

Syntax

```
void setScanInterval(uint16_t scanInt_ms);
```

Parameters

scanInt_ms: scan interval in milliseconds. Value range of 3 to 10240.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEScan

Notes and Warnings

A BLE scan will repeat with a time interval set with this member function.

BLEScan::setScanWindow

Description

Set the BLE scan window.

Syntax

```
void setScanWindow(uint16_t scanWindow_ms);
```

Parameters

scanWindow_ms: scan window in milliseconds. Value range of 3 to 10240.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEScan

Notes and Warnings

A BLE scan will scan continuously for a window duration set with this member function. The scan window should be less than or equal to the scan interval.

BLEScan::setScanDuplicateFilter

Description

Set the scan duplicate filter.

Syntax

```
void setScanDuplicateFilter(bool dupeFilter);
```

Parameters

dupeFilter: TRUE to enable duplicate filtering.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Enabling duplicate filters will ignore scan results for devices already discovered previously.

BLEScan::scanInProgress**Description**

Set the scan duplicate filter.

Syntax

```
bool scanInProgress(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input paramter.

Returns

TRUE if BLE scanning is in progress.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEScan::printScanInfo

Description

Parse and print out scanned information.

Syntax

```
void printScanInfo(T_LE_CB_DATA* p_data);
```

Parameters

p_data: pointer to scan data of type T_LE_CB_DATA*

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEScan

Notes and Warnings

Use this member function to parse the various fields of received advertisement data packets and print the results out to the serial monitor.

Class BLEService**BLEService Class****Description**

A class used for creating and managing BLE GATT services.

Syntax

```
class BLEService
```

Members

Public Constructors	
BLEService::BLEService	Constructs a BLEService object
Public Methods	
BLEService::setUUID	Set service UUID
BLEService::getUUID	Get service UUID
BLEService::addCharacteristic	Add a characteristic to service
BLEService::getCharacteristic	Get a previously added characteristic

BLEService::BLEService**Description**

Constructs a BLEService object.

Syntax

```
BLEService::BLEService(BLEUUID uuid);  
BLEService::BLEService(const char* uuid);
```

Parameters

uuid: service UUID, expressed as a BLEUUID class object or a character array

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEUartService

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEService::setUUID**Description**

Set the service UUID.

Syntax

```
void setUUID(BLEUUID uuid);
```

Parameters

uuid: service UUID, expressed as a BLEUUID class object.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEService::getUUID

Description

Get the service UUID.

Syntax

```
BLEUUID getUUID();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the service UUID in a BLEUUID class object.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEService::addCharacteristic

Description

Add a characteristic to the service.

Syntax

```
void addCharacteristic(BLECharacteristic& newChar);
```

Parameters

newChar: the BLECharacteristic to add to the service.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEUartService

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEService::getCharacteristic

Description

Get a previously added characteristic.

Syntax

```
BLECharacteristic* getCharacteristic(uint8_t charIndex);
```

Parameters

charIndex: position index of characteristic.

Returns

The function returns a pointer to the BLECharacteristic at the requested position index.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

Class BLEUUID

BLEUUID Class

Description

A class used for creating and managing UUIDs.

Syntax

```
class BLEUUID
```

Members

Public Constructors	
BLEUUID::BLEUUID	Create a UUID object
Public Methods	
BLEUUID::str	Get the character string representation of UUID
BLEUUID::data	Get the binary representation of UUID
BLEUUID::length	Get the length of UUID

BLEUUID::BLEUUID

Description

Create a UUID object from a UUID character string

Syntax

```
BLEUUID();  
BLEUUID(const char* str);  
BLEUUID(uint8_t* data, uint8_t length);
```

Parameters

str: UUID character string used to created object

data: pointer to byte array containing the desired UUID

length: number of bytes in array containing the desired UUID. Valid values of 2, 4 or 16

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

BLEUUID::str

Description

Get the character string representation of UUID

Syntax

```
const char* str(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Pointer to a character string representation of the UUID

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

BLEUUID::data

Description

Get the binary representation of UUID

Syntax

```
const uint8_t* data(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Pointer to an unsigned 8-bit integer array containing the UUID expressed in binary form

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Returned pointer is of const uint8_t* type and will not allow changing of the data.

BLEUUID::length

Description

Get the length of UUID

Syntax

```
uint8_t length(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Length of the UUID, in terms of bytes

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

A 4-character UUID will be 16 bits / 2 bytes long.

A 32-character UUID will be 128 bits / 16 bytes long.

Class BLEWifiConfigService

BLEWifiConfigService Class

Description

A class used for managing a BLE WiFi configuration service running on the device.

Syntax

```
class BLEWifiConfigService
```

Members

Public Constructors	
BLEWifiConfigService::BLEWifiConfigService	Only one instance of this class should be created

Public Methods	
BLEWifiConfigService::begin	Start background thread to process WiFi configuration commands
BLEWifiConfigService::end	Stop background thread processing WiFi configuration commands
BLEWifiConfigService::addService	Add the service to the BLE stack
BLEWifiConfigService::advData	Get advertising data correctly formatted for WiFi configuration service

BLEWifiConfigService::BLEWifiConfigService

Description

Create an instance of the BLEWifiConfigService object.

Syntax

```
void BLEWifiConfigService ();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEWifiConfig

Notes and Warnings

Only one instance of this class / service should be created.

BLEWifiConfigService::begin**Description**

Start background thread to process WiFi configuration commands.

Syntax

```
void begin();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEWifiConfig

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEWifiConfigService::end**Description**

Stop background thread processing WiFi configuration commands.

Syntax

```
void end();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEWifiConfigService::addService

Description

Add the WiFi configuration service to the BLE stack.

Syntax

```
void addService();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BLEWifiConfig

Notes and Warnings

NA

BLEWifiConfigService::advData

Description

Get advertising data correctly formatted for WiFi configuration service.

Syntax

```
BLEAdvertData advData();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns a BLEAdvertData object that contains the required advertising data fields for the WiFi configuration service to work.

Example Code

Example: BLEWifiConfig

Notes and Warnings

The advertisement data needs to be correctly formatted for the corresponding smartphone app to recognise the device. WiFi configuration service advertisement data requires the local BT address, and should be called only after peripheral mode is started and may also require stopping and restarting the advertising process.

Class EpdIF**EpdIf Class****Description**

A class used to control the electronic paper display internal functions.

Syntax

```
class EpdIf
```

Members**Public Constructors**

A public constructor should not be used as this class is intended to be a singleton class. Access member functions using the object instance named EpdIf.

Public Methods	
EpdIf::EPD_Dis_Part	Put an image buffer to the frame memory, but not updating the display
EpdIf::EPD_SetFrame	Put display data to the frame memory, usually used for setup text display functions
EpdIf::EPD_SetRAMValue_BaseMap	To read image data stored in the RAM, but not display on the screen
EpdIf::EPD_SetFrameMemory	To read image data stored in the buffer, but not display on the screen
EpdIf::EPD_UpdateDisplay	Update the display
EpdIf::EPD_ClearScreen_White	Clear the frame memory with the White color, but not updating the display
EpdIf::EPD_ClearScreen_Black	Clear the frame memory with the Black color, but not updating the display
EpdIf::EPD_Busy	Wait until the Busy pin goes to low, which is the idle state
EpdIf::EPD_Reset	Used for the Epaper module reset. Often used to awaken the module in deep sleep
EpdIf::EPD_Sleep	After this command is transmitted, the chip would enter the deep-sleep mode to save power

EpdIf:: EPD_Dis_Part

Description

Put an image buffer to the frame memory, but not updating the display.

Syntax

```
void EPD_Dis_Part(unsigned int x_start, unsigned int y_start, const unsigned char* datas, unsigned int PART_COLUMN, unsigned int PART_LINE);
```

Parameters

x_start: starting position of the x-axis

y_start: starting position of the y-axis

datas: data to be displayed on the e-paper module

PART_COLUMN: height of the display area

PART_LINE: width of the display area

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

EpdIf:: EPD_SetFrame

Description

Put display data to the frame memory, usually used for setup text display functions.

Syntax

```
void EPD_SetFrame(const unsigned char* image_buffer, int x, int y, int image_width, int image_height);
```

Parameters

image_buffer: the buffer which stores the data to be displayed on the e-paper module, usually used to display texts.

x: starting position of the x-axis

y: starting position of the y-axis

image_width: width of the display area

image_height: height of the display area

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

EpdIf:: EPD_SetRAMValue_BaseMap**Description**

To read image data stored in the RAM, but not display on the screen.

Syntax

```
void EPD_SetRAMValue_BaseMap(const unsigned char* datas);
```

Parameters

datas: contains the black and white information that forms the image stored in RAM

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

EpdIf:: EPD_SetFrameMemory**Description**

To read image data stored in the buffer but not display on the screen.

Syntax

```
void EPD_SetFrameMemory(const unsigned char* image_buffer);
```

Parameters

image_buffer: the buffer where stores the image data in hexadecimal numbers

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

EpdIf:: EPD_UpdateDisplay

Description

Update the ePaper display module. Always combined used with functions set the frames.

Syntax

```
void EPD_UpdateDisplay(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

There are 2 memory areas embedded in the e-paper display but once this function is called, then the next action of SetFrameMemory or ClearScreen will set the other memory area.

EpdIf:: EPD_ClearScreen_White

Description

Clear the frame memory with the White color.

Syntax

```
void EpdIf::EPD_ClearScreen_White(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

If the users want to see the actual display on the e-paper screen, the function EPD_UpdateDisplay() is required to be added behind this code.

EpdIf:: EPD_ClearScreen_Black**Description**

Clear the frame memory with the Black color.

Syntax

```
void EpdIf::EPD_ClearScreen_Black(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

If the users want to see the actual display on the e-paper screen, the function EPD_UpdateDisplay() is required to be added behind this code.

EpdIf:: EPD_Busy**Description**

Wait until the busy_pin goes to low, which is the idle state.

Syntax

```
void EpdIf::EPD_Busy(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

If the users want to see the actual display on the e-paper screen, the function EPD_UpdateDisplay() is required to be added behind this code.

EpdIf:: EPD_Reset

Description

This command will let the E-paper module reset, it is often used to awaken the module in while it's in the deep sleep mode, you will find more details in the function EpdIf:: EPD_Sleep().

Syntax

```
void EpdIf::EPD_Reset(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

EpdIf::EPD_Sleep

Description

After this command is transmitted, the chip would enter the deep-sleep mode to save power. The deep sleep mode would return to standby by hardware reset. You can use `EPD::Init()` to awaken the E-paper module.

Syntax

```
void EpdIf::EPD_Sleep(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

Class EpdIF

FlashMemoryClass Class

Description

Defines a class of Flash memory API

Syntax

```
class FlashMemoryClass
```

Members

Public Constructors	
<code>FlashMemoryClass::FlashMemoryClass</code>	Constructs a FlashMemoryClass object
<code>FlashMemoryClass::~FlashMemoryClass</code>	Deconstructs a FlashMemoryClass object
Public Methods	
<code>FlashMemoryClass::begin</code>	Initialize/Re-initialize the base address and size
<code>FlashMemoryClass::read</code>	Read the content to buf
<code>FlashMemoryClass::update</code>	Write buf back to flash memory
<code>FlashMemoryClass::readWord</code>	Read 4 bytes from flash memory
<code>FlashMemoryClass::writeWord</code>	Write 4 bytes into flash memory
<code>FlashMemoryClass::buf_size</code>	The buf size
<code>FlashMemoryClass::*buf</code>	The buf to be operated

FlashMemoryClass::FlashMemoryClass

Description

Constructs a FlashMemoryClass object.

Syntax

```
FlashMemoryClass(unsigned int _base_address, unsigned int _buf_size);
```

Parameters

_base_address: The base address to operate.

_buf_size: The buf size for mirror a copy to reduce flash memory operation

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: FlashMemory_Basic

This example demonstrates the basic use of flash memory. Since boot count is stored in flash, each time upon device boot up, the boot count will be read from the flash, add one, then write back to the flash. Ameba's flash memory can be edit in a unit of a sector which has the size of 4K bytes.

Direct read from flash memory is allowed. To write data into flash memory, each bit on flash memory can only change from '1' to '0' and it cannot change from '0' to '1'. To make sure the data are correctly written we do erase the flash memory sector before write data on it.

```
#include <FlashMemory.h>
```

```
void setup() {  
  FlashMemory.read();  
  if (FlashMemory.buf[0] == 0xFF) {  
    FlashMemory.buf[0] = 0x00;  
    FlashMemory.update();  
    Serial.println("write count to 0");  
  } else {  
    FlashMemory.buf[0]++;  
    FlashMemory.update();  
    Serial.print("Boot count: ");  
    Serial.println(FlashMemory.buf[0]);  
  }  
}  
  
void loop() {  
  delay(1000);  
}
```

Example: ReadWriteOneWord

This example shows how to request flash memory larger than default 0x4000, and read/write one specific word (32-bit).

```
#include <FlashMemory.h>

void setup() {
  unsigned int value;
  /* request flash size 0x4000 from 0xFC000 */
  FlashMemory.begin(0xFC000, 0x4000);
  /* read one word (32-bit) from 0xFC000 plus offset 0x3F00 */
  value = FlashMemory.readWord(0x3F00);
  printf("value is 0x%08X\r\n", value);
  if (value == 0xFFFFFFFF) {
    value = 0;
  } else {
    value++;
  }
  /* write one word (32-bit) to 0xFC000 plus offset 0x3F00 */
  FlashMemory.writeWord(0x3F00, value);
}

void loop() {
  // put your main code here, to run repeatedly:
}
```

Notes and Warnings

Include “FlashMemory.h” to use the class function.

FlashMemoryClass::begin

Description

Initialize/Re-initialize the base address and size. The base address shell aligns with the size of 0x1000. And the size shell is multiple of 0x1000.

Syntax

```
void begin(unsigned int _base_address, unsigned int _buf_size);
```

Parameters

_base_address: The base address

_buf_size: The desired work size

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: FleshMemory_Basic

This example demonstrates the basic use of flash memory. Since boot count is stored in flash, each time upon device boot up, the boot count will be read from the flash, add one, then write back to the flash. Ameba's flash memory can be edit in a unit of a sector which has the size of 4K bytes.

Example: ReadWriteOneWord

This example shows how to request flash memory larger than default 0x4000, and read/write one specific word (32-bit). Details of the example codes can be found in the previous section of "FlashMemoryClass:: FlashMemoryClass".

Notes and Warnings

Include "FlashMemory.h" to use the class function.

FlashMemoryClass::read

Description

Read the content to buf. Read flash memory into the buf. The size would be 0x1000.

Syntax

```
void read(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: FleshMemory_Basic

This example demonstrates the basic use of flash memory. Since boot count is stored in flash, each time upon device boot up, the boot count will be read from the flash, add one, then write back to the flash. Ameba's flash memory can be edit in a unit of a sector which has the size of 4K bytes.

Details of the example codes can be found in the previous section of "FlashMemoryClass:: FlashMemoryClass".

Notes and Warnings

Include "FlashMemory.h" to use the class function.

FlashMemoryClass::update

Description

Write buf back to flash memory. Write flash memory with the content of the buffer. The size is 0x1000.

Syntax

```
void update(bool erase = true);
```

Parameters

erase: By default, it is true and erases flash memory before writing to it

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: FleshMemory_Basic

This example demonstrates the basic use of flash memory. Since boot count is stored in flash, each time upon device boot up, the boot count will be read from the flash, add one, then write back to the flash. Ameba's flash memory can be edit in a unit of a sector which has the size of 4K bytes.

Details of the example codes can be found in the previous section of "FlashMemoryClass: FlashMemoryClass".

Notes and Warnings

Include "FlashMemory.h" to use the class function.

FlashMemoryClass::readWord

Description

Read 4 bytes from flash memory. Read 4 byte from specific offset based on base address.

Syntax

```
unsigned int readWord(unsigned int offset);
```

Parameters

offset: The offset according to the base address

Returns

The read data with a size of 4 bytes

Example Code

Example: ReadWriteOneWord

This example shows how to request flash memory larger than default 0x4000, and read/write one specific word (32-bit). Details of the example codes can be found in the previous section of “FlashMemoryClass:: FlashMemoryClass”.

Notes and Warnings

Include “FlashMemory.h” to use the class function.

FlashMemoryClass::writeWord**Description**

Write 4 bytes into flash memory. It will try to write 4 bytes first. If the read data differ from the write data, then we buffer the sector of flash memory, erase it, and write correct data back to it.

Syntax

```
void writeWord(unsigned int offset, unsigned int data);
```

Parameters

offset: The offset according to the base address

data: The data to be written

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: ReadWriteOneWord

This example shows how to request flash memory larger than default 0x4000, and read/write one specific word (32-bit). Details of the example codes can be found in the previous section of “FlashMemoryClass:: FlashMemoryClass”.

Notes and Warnings

Include “FlashMemory.h” to use the class function.

FlashMemoryClass::buf_size**Description**

The buf size (It can be regarded as work size).

Syntax

```
unsigned int buf_size;
```

Example Code

Example: FlashMemory_Basic

This example demonstrates the basic use of flash memory. Since boot count is stored in flash, each time upon device boot up, the boot count will be read from the flash, add one, then write back to the flash. Ameba's flash memory can be edit in a unit of a sector which has the size of 4K bytes.

Details of the example codes can be found in the previous section of "FlashMemoryClass:: FlashMemoryClass".

Notes and Warnings

Include "FlashMemory.h" to use the class function.

FlashMemoryClass::*buf

Description

The buf to be operated. Modify buf won't change the content of the buf. It needs an update to write back to flash memory.

Syntax

```
unsigned char *buf;
```

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Include "FlashMemory.h" to use the class function.

Class DHT

DHT Class

Description

Defines a class of using DHT temperature & humidity sensors

Syntax

```
class DHT
```

Members

Public Constructors	
DHT::DHT	Constructs a DHT object
Public Methods	
DHT::begin	Initialize the DHT sensor
DHT::readTemperature	Read temperature(Fahrenheit or Celcius) from the DHT sensor
DHT::convertCtoF	Convert a value from Celcius to Fahrenheit
DHT::convertFtoC	Convert a value from Fahrenheit to Celcius
DHT::readHumidity	Read humidity(%) from the DHT sensor
DHT::computeHeatIndex	Compute the HeatIndex from the readings (Using both Rothfusz and Steadman's equations)
DHT::read	Check if the sensor is readable

DHT::DHT

Description

Constructs a DHT object.

Syntax

DHT::DHT(uint8_t pin, uint8_t type, uint8_t count)

Parameters

pin: The Arduino digital PIN connected

type: The DHT sensor type(DHT11, DHT22, or DHT21)

count: The count is now ignored as the DHT reading algorithm adjusts itself based on the speed of the processor

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example:DHTTester

The code demos basic testing for various DHT humidity & temperature sensors.

Notes and Warnings

Every time must include the header file “DHT.h” in front of the project to use the class function.

```
// Example testing sketch for various DHT humidity/temperature sensors
```

```
// Written by ladyada, public domain
```

```
#include “DHT.h”
```

```
// The digital pin we’re connected to.
```

```
#define DHTPIN 8
```

```
// Uncomment whatever type you’re using!
```

```

#define DHTTYPE DHT11 // DHT 11
// #define DHTTYPE DHT22 // DHT 22 (AM2302), AM2321
// #define DHTTYPE DHT21 // DHT 21 (AM2301)
// Connect pin 1 (on the left) of the sensor to +5V
// NOTE: If using a board with 3.3V logic like an Arduino Due connect pin 1
// to 3.3V instead of 5V!
// Connect pin 2 of the sensor to whatever your DHTPIN is
// Connect pin 4 (on the right) of the sensor to GROUND
// Connect a 10K resistor from pin 2 (data) to pin 1 (power) of the sensor
// Initialize DHT sensor.
// Note that older versions of this library took an optional third parameter to
// tweak the timings for faster processors. This parameter is no longer needed
// as the current DHT reading algorithm adjusts itself to work on faster procs.
DHT dht(DHTPIN, DHTTYPE);

void setup() {
  Serial.begin(115200);
  Serial.println("DHTxx test!");
  dht.begin();
}

void loop() {
  // Wait a few seconds between measurements.
  delay(2000);

  // Reading temperature or humidity takes about 250 milliseconds!
  // Sensor readings may also be up to 2 seconds 'old' (its a very slow sensor)
  float h = dht.readHumidity();
  // Read temperature as Celsius (the default)
  float t = dht.readTemperature();
  // Read temperature as Fahrenheit (isFahrenheit = true)
  float f = dht.readTemperature(true);
  // Check if any reads failed and exit early (to try again).
  if (isnan(h) || isnan(t) || isnan(f)) {
    Serial.println("Failed to read from DHT sensor!");
    return;
  }

  // Compute heat index in Fahrenheit (the default)
  float hif = dht.computeHeatIndex(f, h);

```

```
// Compute heat index in Celsius (isFahreheit = false)
float hic = dht.computeHeatIndex(t, h, false);
Serial.print("Humidity: ");
Serial.print(h);
Serial.print(" %t");
Serial.print("Temperature: ");
Serial.print(t);
Serial.print(" *C ");
Serial.print(f);
Serial.print(" *Ft");
Serial.print("Heat index: ");
Serial.print(hic);
Serial.print(" *C ");
Serial.print(hif);
Serial.println(" *F");
}
```

DHT::begin**Description**

Initialize the DHT sensor.

Syntax

```
void DHT::begin(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: DHTTester

The code demos basic testing for various DHT humidity & temperature sensors. Please refer to code in the “DHT: DHT” section.

Notes and Warnings

Every time must include the header file “DHT.h” in front of the project to use the class function.

DHT::readTemperature

Description

Read temperature(Fahrenheit or Celcius) from the DHT sensor.

Syntax

```
float DHT::readTemperature(bool S, bool force);
```

Parameters

S: Temperature scale, True is Fahrenheit and False is Celcius

force: Index of checking sensor readability, default is False

Returns

The function returns the current temperature as a float value.

Example Code

Example: DHTTester

The code demos basic testing for various DHT humidity & temperature sensors. Please refer to code in the “DHT: DHT” section.

Notes and Warnings

Every time must include the header file “DHT.h” in front of the project to use the class function.

DHT::convertCtoF

Description

Convert a value from Celcius to Fahrenheit.

Syntax

```
float DHT::convertCtoF(float c);
```

Parameters

c: The value in Celcius

Returns

The function returns the temperature in Fahrenheit as a float number.

Example Code

Example: DHTTester

The code demos basic testing for various DHT humidity & temperature sensors. Please refer to code in the “DHT: DHT” section.

Notes and Warnings

Every time must include the header file “DHT.h” in front of the project to use the class function.

DHT::convertFtoC

Description

Convert a value from Fahrenheit to Celcius.

Syntax

```
float DHT::convertFtoC(float f);
```

Parameters

f: The value in Fahrenheit

Returns

The function returns the temperature in Celcius as a float number.

Example Code

Example: DHTTester

The code demos basic testing for various DHT humidity & temperature sensors. Please refer to code in the “DHT: DHT” section.

Notes and Warnings

Every time must include the header file “DHT.h” in front of the project to use the class function.

DHT::computeHeatIndex

Description

Compute the HeatIndex from the readings (Using both Rothfus and Steadman’s equations). More details refer to http://www.wpc.ncep.noaa.gov/html/heatindex_equation.shtml .

Syntax

```
float DHT::computeHeatIndex(float temperature, float percentHumidity, bool isFahrenheit);
```

Parameters

temperature: The temperature value

percentHumidity: The humidity percent value

isFahrenheit: True, temperature value in Fahrenheit (Default); False, temperature value in Celcius

Returns

The function returns the heat index in Fahrenheit or Celsius as a float value.

Example Code

Example: DHTTester

The code demos basic testing for various DHT humidity & temperature sensors. Please refer to code in the “DHT: DHT” section.

Notes and Warnings

Every time must include the header file “DHT.h” in front of the project to use the class function.

DHT::readHumidity

Description

Reading temperature or humidity from the DHT sensor and return as a float value(%).

Syntax

```
float DHT::readHumidity(bool force);
```

Parameters

force: Ignored.

Returns

The function returns current humidity in a float number (in %).

Example Code

Example: DHTTester

The code demos basic testing for various DHT humidity & temperature sensors. Please refer to code in the “DHT: DHT” section.

Notes and Warnings

Every time must include the header file “DHT.h” in front of the project to use the class function. Reading temperature or humidity takes about 250 milliseconds! Sensor readings may also be up to 2 seconds.

DHT::read

Description

Check if the sensor is readable.

Syntax

```
boolean DHT::read(bool force);
```

Parameters

force: Index of whether checking the sensor was read less than two seconds ago or not. False, checking; True, not checking.

Returns

Return the last correct measurement of the sensor. False, low means not readable; True, high means readable.

Example Code

Example: DHTTester

The code demos basic testing for various DHT humidity & temperature sensors. Please refer to code in the “DHT: DHT” section.

Notes and Warnings

Every time must include the header file “DHT.h” in front of the project to use the class function.

Class HttpClient**InterruptLock Class****Description**

Defines a class of turning off/on interrupts temporarily

Syntax

```
class InterruptLock
```

Members

Public Constructors	
InterruptLock::InterruptLock	Constructs a InterruptLock object
InterruptLock::~~ InterruptLock	Deconstructs a InterruptLock object

Class EpdIF

GTimerClass Class

Description

GTimer is a hardware timer and this class is to operate it. The GTimer occupy same resource as PWM. Please make sure the timer is not conflict with you PWM index.

Syntax

```
class GTimerClass
```

Members

Public Constructors	
GTimerClass::GTimerClass	Constructs a GTimerClass object
Public Methods	
GTimerClass::begin	Initialize a timer and start it immediately
GTimerClass::stop	Stop a specific timer
GTimerClass::reload	Reload a specific timer
GTimerClass::read_us	Read current countdown value

GTimerClass::begin

Description

Initialize a timer and start it immediately.

Syntax

```
void GTimerClass::begin(uint32_t timerid, uint32_t duration_us, void (*handler)(uint32_t), bool periodical, uint32_t userdata);
```

Parameters

timerid: There are 5 valid GTimer with timer id 0~4.

duration_us: The duration of the timer. The time unit is microsecond and the precision is 32768Hz.

periodical: By default, the timer would keep periodically countdown and reload which means the handler would periodically be invoked.

userdata: The user data brings to the handler.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: TimerOneshot

```
/*
```

This sketch shows how to use several hardware timers in invoke handler only once for each timer.

```
*/
```

```
#include <GTimer.h>
```

```
void myhandler(uint32_t data) {
```

```
  Serial.print("I am timer!");
```

```
  Serial.println(data);
```

```
}
```

```
void setup() {
```

```
  // Open serial communications and wait for port to open:
```

```
  Serial.begin(115200);
```

```
  while (!Serial) {
```

```
    ; // wait for serial port to connect. Needed for native USB port only
```

```
  }
```

```
  // timerid 0, period 1s, invoke myhandler, invoke only once, user data is 0
```

```
  GTimer.begin(0, 1 * 1000 * 1000, myhandler, false, 0);
```

```
  // timerid 1, period 2s, invoke myhandler, invoke only once, user data is 1
```

```
  GTimer.begin(1, 2 * 1000 * 1000, myhandler, false, 1);
```

```
  GTimer.begin(2, 3 * 1000 * 1000, myhandler, false, 2);
```

```
  GTimer.begin(3, 4 * 1000 * 1000, myhandler, false, 3);
```

```
}
```

```
void loop() {
```

```
  delay(1000);
```

```
}
```

Example: TimerPeriodical

```
/*
```

This sketch shows how to use hardware timer and invoke interrupt handler periodically

```
*/
```

```
#include <GTimer.h>
```

```
int counter = 0;
```

```
void myhandler(uint32_t data) {
```

```
  counter++;
```

```
  Serial.print("counter: ");
```

```
  Serial.println(counter);
```

```
  if (counter >= 10) {
```

```
    Serial.println("stop timer");
```

```
GTimer.stop(0);
}
}
void setup() {
// Open serial communications and wait for port to open:
Serial.begin(115200);
while (!Serial) {
; // wait for serial port to connect. Needed for native USB port only
}
// timerid 0, period 1s, invoke myhandler
GTimer.begin(0, (1 * 1000 * 1000), myhandler);
}
void loop() {
delay(1000);
}
```

Notes and Warnings

Include “GTimer.h” to use the class function.

GTimerClass::stop

Description

Stop a specific timer

Syntax

```
void GTimerClass::stop(uint32_t timerid);
```

Parameters

timerid: Stop the timer with this timer id

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: TimerPeriodical, please refer to GTimerClass:: begin for more details.

Notes and Warnings

Include “GTimer.h” to use the class function.

GTimerClass::reload

Description

Reload a specific timer. The GTimer is a countdown timer. Reload it would make it discard the current countdown value and restart countdown based on the duration.

Syntax

```
void GTimerClass::reload(uint32_t timerid, uint32_t duration_us);
```

Parameters

timerid: The timer to be modified

duration_us: The updated duration in unit of microseconds

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Include “GTimer.h” to use the class function.

GTimerClass::read_us

Description

Read the current countdown value

Syntax

```
uint64_t GTimerClass::read_us(uint32_t timerid);
```

Parameters

timerid: The timer to be read

Returns

The function returns the current countdown value.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Include “GTimer.h” to use the class function.

Class HttpClient**HttpClient Class****Description**

Defines a class of using HttpClient

Syntax

```
class HttpClient
```

Members

Public Constructors	
HttpClient::HttpClient	Constructs a HttpClient object
Public Methods	
HttpClient::beginRequest	Start a more complex request
HttpClient::endRequest	End a more complex request
HttpClient::get	Connect to the server and start to send a GET request
HttpClient::post	Connect to the server and start to send a POST request
HttpClient::put	Connect to the server and start to send a PUT request
HttpClient::startRequest	Connect to the server and start to send the request
HttpClient::sendHeader	Send an additional header line
HttpClient::sendBasicAuth	Send a basic authentication header
HttpClient::finishRequest	Finish sending the HTTP request
HttpClient::responseStatusCode	Get the HTTP status code contained in the response
HttpClient::readHeader	Read the next character of the response headers
HttpClient::skipResponseHeaders	Skip any response headers to get to the body
HttpClient::endOfHeadersReached	Test whether all of the response headers have been consumed
HttpClient::endOfBodyReached	Test whether the end of the body has been reached
HttpClient::contentLength	Return the length of the body

HttpClient::HttpClient**Description**

Constructs a HttpClient object. If Macro “PROXY_ENABLED” is defined, currently disabled as introduces a dependency on DNS.h in Ethernet.

Syntax

```
HttpClient::HttpClient(Client& aClient, const char* aProxy = NULL, uint16_t aProxyPort = 0);
```

```
HttpClient::HttpClient(Client& aClient);
```

Parameters

aClient: The object of class WiFiClient.

aProxy: The proxy name. The default proxy name is “NULL”.

aProxyPort: The proxy port. The default value for the proxy port is 0.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: SimpleHttpExample

The example demonstrate how to download the content from URL indicated in kHostname[].

```
#include <HttpClient.h>
#include <WiFi.h>
#include <WiFiClient.h>

char ssid[] = "YourNetwork"; // your network SSID (name)
char pass[] = "password"; // your network password (use for WPA, or use as key for WEP)
int keyIndex = 0; // your network key Index number (needed only for WEP)

// Name of the server we want to connect to
const char kHostname[] = "www.google.com";
const char kPath[] = "/";

// Number of milliseconds to wait without receiving any data before we give up
const int kNetworkTimeout = 30*1000;

// Number of milliseconds to wait if no data is available before trying again
const int kNetworkDelay = 1000;

int status = WL_IDLE_STATUS;

void setup() {
  Serial.begin(9600);

  while ( status != WL_CONNECTED) {
    Serial.print("Attempting to connect to SSID: ");
    Serial.println(ssid);
    status = WiFi.begin(ssid, pass);

    // wait 10 seconds for connection:
    delay(10000);
  }
}
```



```

Serial.println("Connected to wifi");
printWifiStatus();
}
void loop() {
  int err =0;
  WiFiClient c;
  HttpClient http(c);
  err = http.get(kHostname, kPath);
  if (err == 0)
  {
    Serial.println("startedRequest ok");
    err = http.responseStatusCode();
    if (err >= 0)
    {
      Serial.print("Got status code: ");
      Serial.println(err);
      // Usually you'd check that the response code is 200 or a
      // similar "success" code (200-299) before carrying on,
      // but we'll print out whatever response we get
      err = http.skipResponseHeaders();
      if (err >= 0)
      {
        int bodyLen = http.contentLength();
        Serial.print("Content length is: ");
        Serial.println(bodyLen);
        Serial.println();
        Serial.println("Body returned follows:");
        // Now we've got to the body, so we can print it out
        unsigned long timeoutStart = millis();
        char c;
        // Whilst we haven't timed out & haven't reached the end of the body
        while ( (http.connected() || http.available()) &&
          ((millis() - timeoutStart) < kNetworkTimeout) )
        {
          if (http.available())
          {

```

```
c = http.read();
// Print out this character
Serial.print(c);
bodyLen--;
// We read something, reset the timeout counter
timeoutStart = millis();
}
else
{
// We haven't got any data, so let's pause to allow some to arrive
delay(kNetworkDelay);
}
}
}
else
{
Serial.print("Failed to skip response headers: ");
Serial.println(err);
}
}
else
{
Serial.print("Getting response failed: ");
Serial.println(err);
}
}
else
{
Serial.print("Connect failed: ");
Serial.println(err);
}
http.stop();
// And just stop, now that we've tried a download
while(1);
}
void printWifiStatus() {
```

```
// print the SSID of the network you're attached to:
Serial.print("SSID: ");
Serial.println(WiFi.SSID());
// print your WiFi shield's IP address:
IPAddress ip = WiFi.localIP();
Serial.print("IP Address: ");
Serial.println(ip);
// print the received signal strength:
long rssi = WiFi.RSSI();
Serial.print("signal strength (RSSI):");
Serial.print(rssi);
Serial.println(" dBm");
}
```

Notes and Warnings

Include "HttpClient.h" to use the class function.

HttpClient::beginRequest

Description

Start a more complex request. Use this when you need to send additional headers in the request, but you will also need to call endRequest() when you are finished.

Syntax

```
void HttpClient::beginRequest(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: SimpleHttpExample

The example demonstrates how to download the content from the URL indicated in kHostname[]. Details of the code can be found in the previous section of HttpClient: HttpClient.

Notes and Warnings

Include "HttpClient.h" to use the class function.

HttpClient::endRequest

Description

End a more complex request. Use this when you need to have sent additional headers in the request, but you will also need to call beginRequest() at the start.

Syntax

```
void HttpClient::endRequest(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: SimpleHttpExample

The example demonstrates how to download the content from the URL indicated in kHostname[]. Details of the code can be found in the previous section of HttpClient:: HttpClient.

Notes and Warnings

Include “HttpClient.h” to use the class function.

HttpClient::get

Description

Connect to the server and start to send a “GET” request. If the input parameter contains “aServerAddress”, the connection will not perform a DNS lookup and just purely connect to the given IP address.

Syntax

```
int HttpClient::get(const char* aServerName, uint16_t aServerPort, const char* aURLPath, const char* aUserAgent = NULL);  
int HttpClient::get(const char* aServerName, const char* aURLPath, const char* aUserAgent = NULL);  
int HttpClient::get(const IPAddress& aServerAddress, const char* aServerName, uint16_t aServerPort, const char* aURLPath, const char* aUserAgent = NULL);  
int HttpClient::get(const IPAddress& aServerAddress, const char* aServerName, const char* aURLPath, const char* aUserAgent = NULL);
```

Parameters

aServerName: The name of the server being connected to. If aServerName is “NULL”, the “Host” header line will not be sent.

aServerPort: The port on which server connected.

aURLPath: The URL to request.

aUserAgent: User-Agent string to be sent. If aUserAgent indicated as “NULL”, the default user-agent kUserAgent will be sent.

aServerAddress: IP address of the server to connect to.

Returns

Return 0 if successful, otherwise indicates an error occurs.

Example Code

Example: SimpleHttpExample

The example demonstrates how to download the content from the URL indicated in kHostname[]. Details of the code can be found in the previous section of HttpClient:: HttpClient.

Notes and Warnings

Include “HttpClient.h” to use the class function.

HttpClient::post

Description

Connect to the server and start to send a “POST” request. If the input parameter has “aServerAddress”, connects doesn’t perform a DNS lookup and just connects to the given IP address.

Syntax

```
int HttpClient::post(const char* aServerName, uint16_t aServerPort, const char* aURLPath, const char* aUserAgent = NULL);
```

```
int HttpClient::post(const char* aServerName, const char* aURLPath, const char* aUserAgent = NULL);
```

```
int HttpClient::post(const IPAddress& aServerAddress, const char* aServerName, uint16_t aServerPort, const char* aURLPath, const char* aUserAgent = NULL);
```

```
int HttpClient::post(const IPAddress& aServerAddress, const char* aServerName, const char* aURLPath, const char* aUserAgent = NULL);
```

Parameters

aServerName: Name of the server being connected to. If NULL, the “Host” header line won’t be sent.

aServerPort: Port to connect to on the server.

aURLPath: Url to request.

aUserAgent: User-Agent string to be sent. If aUserAgent indicated as “NULL”, the default user-agent kUserAgent will be sent.

aServerAddress: IP address of the server to connect to.

Returns

Return 0 if successful, otherwise indicates an error occurs.

Example Code

Example: SimpleHttpExample

The example demonstrates how to download the content from the URL indicated in kHostname[]. Details of the code can be found in the previous section of HttpClient:: HttpClient.

Notes and Warnings

Include “HttpClient.h” to use the class function.

HttpClient::put**Description**

Connect to the server and start to send a PUT request. If the input parameter has “aServerAddress”, connects doesn’t perform a DNS lookup and just connects to the given IP address.

Syntax

```
int HttpClient::put(const char* aServerName, uint16_t aServerPort, const char* aURLPath, const char* aUserAgent = NULL);  
int HttpClient::put(const char* aServerName, const char* aURLPath, const char* aUserAgent = NULL);  
int HttpClient::put(const IPAddress& aServerAddress, const char* aServerName, uint16_t aServerPort, const char* aURLPath, const char* aUserAgent = NULL);  
int HttpClient::put(const IPAddress& aServerAddress, const char* aServerName, const char* aURLPath, const char* aUserAgent = NULL);
```

Parameters

aServerName: Name of the server being connected to. If NULL, the “Host” header line won’t be sent.

aServerPort: Port to connect to on the server.

aURLPath: Url to request.

aUserAgent: User-Agent string to be sent. If aUserAgent indicated as “NULL”, the default user-agent kUserAgent will be sent.

aServerAddress: IP address of the server to connect to.

Returns

Return 0 if successful, otherwise indicates an error occurs.

Example Code

Example: SimpleHttpExample

The example demonstrates how to download the content from the URL indicated in kHostname[]. Details of the code can be found in the previous section of HttpClient:: HttpClient.

Notes and Warnings

Include “HttpClient.h” to use the class function.

HttpClient::startRequest

Description

Connect to the server and start to send the request.

Syntax

```
int HttpClient::startRequest(const char* aServerName, uint16_t aServerPort, const char* aURLPath, const char* aHttpMethod, const char* aUserAgent);
```

```
int HttpClient::startRequest(const IPAddress& aServerAddress, const char* aServerName, uint16_t aServerPort, const char* aURLPath, const char* aHttpMethod, const char* aUserAgent);
```

Parameters

aServerAddress: IP address of the server to connect to.

aServerName: Name of the server being connected to. If NULL, the “Host” header line won’t be sent.

aServerPort: Port to connect to on the server.

aURLPath: Url to request.

aHttpMethod: Type of HTTP request to make, e.g. “GET”, “POST”, etc.

aUserAgent: User-Agent string to send. If NULL the default user-agent kUserAgent will be sent.

Returns

Return 0 if successful, else error.

Example Code

Example: SimpleHttpExample

The example demonstrates how to download the content from the URL indicated in kHostname[]. Details of the code can be found in the previous section of HttpClient:: HttpClient.

Notes and Warnings

Include “HttpClient.h” to use the class function.

HttpClient::sendHeader

Description

The function sends an additional header line.

The function void HttpClient:: sendHeader(const char* aHeader);can only be called in between the calls to startRequest and finishRequest.

The other 2 functions void HttpClient::sendHeader(const char* aHeaderName, const char* aHeaderValue); and void HttpClient::sendHeader(const char* aHeaderName, const int aHeaderValue); are alternate form the previous one, which takes the header name and content as separately (as strings or integer). For example, to send an XXXXXX header, user might call sendHeader(“XXXXXX”, “Something”) or sendHeader(“XXXXXX”, 123).And the call will add the “: ” in the log to separate different header in the case of multiple headers.

Syntax

```
void HttpClient::sendHeader(const char* aHeader);  
void HttpClient::sendHeader(const char* aHeaderName, const char* aHeaderValue);  
void HttpClient::sendHeader(const char* aHeaderName, const int aHeaderValue);
```

Parameters

aHeader: Header line to send, in its entirety (but without the trailing CRLF. E.g. “Authorization: Basic YQDDCAIGES”.

aHeaderName: Type of header being sent.

aHeaderValue: Value for that header.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: SimpleHttpExample

The example demonstrates how to download the content from the URL indicated in kHostname[]. Details of the code can be found in the previous section of HttpClient:: HttpClient.

Notes and Warnings

Include “HttpClient.h” to use the class function.

HttpClient::sendBasicAuth

Description

The function sends a basic authentication header which will encode the given username and password, and send them in a suitable header line for doing Basic Authentication.

Syntax

```
void HttpClient::sendBasicAuth(const char* aUser, const char* aPassword);
```

Parameters

aUser: Username for the authorization.

aPassword: Password for the user aUser.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: SimpleHttpExample

The example demonstrates how to download the content from the URL indicated in `kHostname[]`. Details of the code can be found in the previous section of `HttpClient:: HttpClient`.

Notes and Warnings

Include “`HttpClient.h`” to use the class function.

`HttpClient::finishRequest`

Description

Finish sending the HTTP request. The function sends a blank line to signify the end of the request.

Syntax

```
void HttpClient::finishRequest(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: `SimpleHttpExample`

The example demonstrates how to download the content from the URL indicated in `kHostname[]`. Details of the code can be found in the previous section of `HttpClient:: HttpClient`.

Notes and Warnings

Include “`HttpClient.h`” to use the class function.

`HttpClient::responseStatusCode`

Description

Get the HTTP status code contained in the response. For example, “200” for successful requests, “404” for file not found, etc.

Syntax

```
int HttpClient::responseStatusCode(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Return 0 if successful, else error.

Example Code

Example: SimpleHttpExample

The example demonstrates how to download the content from the URL indicated in kHostname[]. Details of the code can be found in the previous section of HttpClient:: HttpClient.

Notes and Warnings

Include “HttpClient.h” to use the class function.

HttpClient::readHeader**Description**

The function reads the next character of the response headers. This functions the same as read() but to be used when reading through the headers which are slightly less efficient. The user might check whether the end of the headers has been reached by calling endOfHeadersReached(), although after that point this will still return data as read() would.

Syntax

```
int HttpClient::readHeader(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Return the next character of the response headers.

Example Code

Example: SimpleHttpExample

The example demonstrates how to download the content from the URL indicated in kHostname[]. Details of the code can be found in the previous section of HttpClient:: HttpClient.

Notes and Warnings

Include “HttpClient.h” to use the class function.

HttpClient::skipResponseHeaders**Description**

Skip any response headers to get to the body. Use this if you don’t want to do any special processing of the headers returned in the response. You can also use it after you’ve found all of the headers you’re interested in, and just want to get on with processing the body.

Syntax

```
int HttpClient::skipResponseHeaders(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Return 0 if successful, else error.

Example Code

Example: SimpleHttpExample

The example demonstrates how to download the content from the URL indicated in kHostname[]. Details of the code can be found in the previous section of HttpClient:: HttpClient.

Notes and Warnings

Include “HttpClient.h” to use the class function.

HttpClient::endOfHeadersReached**Description**

Test whether all of the response headers have been consumed.

Syntax

```
bool HttpClient::endOfHeadersReached(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Return true if we are now processing the response body, else false.

Example Code

Example: SimpleHttpExample

The example demonstrates how to download the content from the URL indicated in kHostname[]. Details of the code can be found in the previous section of HttpClient:: HttpClient.

Notes and Warnings

Include “HttpClient.h” to use the class function.

HttpClient::endOfBodyReached

Description

Test whether the end of the body has been reached. It only works if the Content-Length header was returned by the server.

Syntax

```
bool HttpClient::endOfBodyReached(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Return true if we are now at the end of the body, else false.

Example Code

Example: SimpleHttpExample

The example demonstrates how to download the content from the URL indicated in kHostname[]. Details of the code can be found in the previous section of HttpClient:: HttpClient.

Notes and Warnings

Include “HttpClient.h” to use the class function.

HttpClient::contentLength**Description**

The function returns the length of the body.

Syntax

```
int HttpClient::contentLength(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Return Length of the body, in bytes, or kNoContentLengthHeader if no Content-Length header was returned by the server.

Example Code

Example: SimpleHttpExample

The example demonstrates how to download the content from the URL indicated in kHostname[]. Details of the code can be found in the previous section of HttpClient:: HttpClient.

Notes and Warnings

Include “HttpClient.h” to use the class function.

Class HttpClient**IRDevice Class****Description**

A class used for managing, sending, and receiving data using IR.

Syntax

```
class IRDevice
```

Members

Public Constructors	
A public constructor should not be used as this class is intended to be a singleton class. Access member functions using the object instance named IR.	

Public Methods	
IRDevice::getFreq	Get the current IR modulation frequency
IRDevice::begin	Allocate resources and start the IR device with a custom frequency
IRDevice::end	Stop the IR device operations and free up resources
IRDevice::send	Send IR raw data
IRDevice::beginNEC	Allocate resources and start the IR device with a frequency suitable for the NEC protocol
IRDevice::sendNEC	Send data using the NEC protocol
IRDevice::recvNEC	Receive data using the NEC protocol

IRDevice::getFreq**Description**

Get the current IR modulation frequency.

Syntax

```
uint32_t getFreq(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Currently set IR modulation frequency in Hertz.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

IRDevice::begin

Description

Allocate resources and start the IR device with a custom frequency.

Syntax

```
void begin(uint8_t receivePin, uint8_t transmitPin, uint32_t irMode, uint32_t freq);
```

Parameters

receivePin: pin on which IR sensor is connected. Hardware IR receiver is available at pins 3, 8, 17.

transmitPin: pin on which IR LED is connected. Hardware IR transmitter is available at pins 6, 9, 16.

irMode: transmit or receive mode. Valid values: IR_MODE_TX, IR_MODE_RX

freq: IR modulation frequency in Hertz

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

IR device can only operate in either transmit or receive mode.

IRDevice::end

Description

Stop the IR device operations and free up resources.

Syntax

```
void end(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

IRDevice::send

Description

Send IR raw data.

Syntax

```
void send(const unsigned int buf[ ], uint16_t len);
```

Parameters

buf[] : IR raw signals (in us) in an array form.

len: total length of the IR raw signal array.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

```
#include "IRDevice.h"
```

```
// User defined txPin, rxPin and carrier frequency
```

```
#define IR_RX_PIN 8
```

```
#define IR_TX_PIN 9
```

```
#define CARRIER_FREQ 38000
```

```
unsigned int irRawSignal[] = {
```

```
9000, 4500, // starting bit
```

```
560, 560, 560, 560, 560, 1690, 560, 560, 560, 560, 560, 560, 560, 560, 560, // address 00100000 4
```

```
560, 1690, 560, 1690, 560, 560, 560, 1690, 560, 1690, 560, 1690, 560, 1690, 560, 1690, // ~ address 11011111
```

```
560, 560, 560, 560, 560, 560, 560, 1690, 560, 560, 560, 560, 560, 560, 560, 560, // data 00010000 8
```

```
560, 1690, 560, 1690, 560, 1690, 560, 560, 560, 1690, 560, 1690, 560, 1690, 560, 1690, //~ data 11101111
560 // stoping bit
};
int DataLen = sizeof(irRawSignal) / sizeof(irRawSignal[0]); // 284/ 4 = 71
void setup()
{
  Serial.begin(115200);
  IR.begin(IR_RX_PIN, IR_TX_PIN, IR_MODE_TX, CARRIER_FREQ);
}
void loop()
{
  IR.send(irRawSignal, DataLen);
  Serial.println("Finished Sending NEC Raw Data...");
  delay(3000);
}
```

Notes and Warnings

IR Raw Data array contains information in the form of consecutive microseconds (us). For more details, please refer to: <http://www.righto.com/2009/08/multi-protocol-infrared-remote-library.html>.

IRDevice::beginNEC

Description

Allocate resources and start the IR device with a frequency suitable for the NEC protocol.

Syntax

```
void beginNEC(uint8_t receivePin, uint8_t transmitPin, uint32_t irMode);
```

Parameters

receivePin: pin on which IR sensor is connected. Hardware IR receiver is available at pins 3, 8, 17.

transmitPin: pin on which IR LED is connected. Hardware IR transmitter is available at pins 6, 9, 16.

irMode: transmit or receive mode. Valid values: IR_MODE_TX, IR_MODE_RX

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: IRRecvNEC


```

#include "IRDevice.h"

uint8_t adr = 0;
uint8_t cmd = 0;

void setup() {
  //Initialize serial and wait for port to open:
  Serial.begin(115200);
  while (!Serial) {
    ; // wait for serial port to connect. Needed for native USB port only
  }
  IR.beginNEC(8, 9, IR_MODE_RX); // configure for NEC IR protocol
}

void loop() {
  if (IR.recvNEC(adr, cmd, 1000)) {
    Serial.print("Received ");
    Serial.print(adr);
    Serial.print(cmd);
    Serial.println();
  } else {
    Serial.println("Received nothing, timed out");
  }
  //IR.end();
}

```

Notes and Warnings

IR device can only operate in either transmit or receive mode. Refer to <https://techdocs.altium.com/display/FPGA/NEC+Infrared+Transmission+Protocol> for the NEC protocol.

IRDevice::sendNEC

Description

Send data using the NEC protocol.

Syntax

```
void sendNEC(uint8_t adr, uint8_t cmd);
```

Parameters

adr: 8-bit address to transmit

cmd: 8-bit command to transmit

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: IRSendNEC

```
#include "IRDevice.h"

uint8_t adr = 0;
uint8_t cmd = 0;

void setup() {
  //Initialize serial and wait for port to open:
  Serial.begin(115200);
  while (!Serial) {
    ; // wait for serial port to connect. Needed for native USB port only
  }
  IR.beginNEC(8, 9, IR_MODE_TX); // configure for NEC IR protocol
}

void loop() {
  if (cmd++ >= 255) {
    adr++;
  }
  IR.sendNEC(adr, cmd);
  Serial.print("Sent ");
  Serial.print(adr);
  Serial.print(cmd);
  Serial.println();
  //IR.end(); // Call this method to stop IR device and free up the pins for other uses
}
```

Notes and Warnings

IR device can only operate in either transmit or receive mode. Refer to <https://techdocs.altium.com/display/FPGA/NEC+Infrared+Transmission+Protocol> for the NEC protocol.

IRDevice::recvNEC

Description

Receive data using the NEC protocol.

Syntax

```
void recvNEC(uint8_t& adr, uint8_t& cmd uint32_t timeout);
```

Parameters

adr: variable to store received NEC address

cmd: variable to store received NEC command

timeout: time duration to wait for an incoming transmission

Returns

The function returns “1” if data has been received, returns “0” if no data has been received.

Example Code

Example: IRRecvNEC

Details of the code can be found in the previous section of IRDevice::beginNEC.

Notes and Warnings

IR device can only operate in either transmit or receive mode. Refer to <https://techdocs.altium.com/display/FPGA/NEC+Infrared+Transmission+Protocol> for the NEC protocol.

Class HttpClient**MDNSClass Class****Description**

A class used for registering and removing MDNS service records.

Syntax

```
class MDNSClass
```

Members**Public Constructors**

The public constructor should not be used as this class is intended to be a singleton class. Access member functions using the object instance named MDNS.
--

Public Methods	
MDNSClass::begin	Start MDNS operations
MDNSClass::end	Stop MDNS operations
MDNSClass::registerService	Add a service record
MDNSClass::deregisterService	Remove service record
MDNSClass::updateService	Update service record

MDNSClass::begin

Description

Start MDNS operations to begin responding to MDNS queries.

Syntax

```
void begin(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: mDNS_On_Arduino_IDE

This example shows how to register Ameba as a service that can be recognized by Arduino IDE. If both of the PC runs Arduino IDE and the Ameba board are connecting to the same local network. Then you can find Ameba in “Tools” -> “Port” -> “Arduino at 192.168.1.238 (Ameba RTL8195A), which means the Arduino IDE find Ameba via mDNS.

```
#include <WiFi.h>
```

```
#include <AmebaMDNS.h>
```

```
char ssid[] = “yourNetwork”; // your network SSID (name)
```

```
char pass[] = “secretPassword”; // your network password
```

```
MDNSService service(“MyAmeba”, “_arduino._tcp”, “local”, 5000);
```

```
void setup() {
```

```
  printf(“Try to connect to %srn”, ssid);
```

```
  while (WiFi.begin(ssid, pass) != WL_CONNECTED) {
```

```
    printf(“Failed. Wait 1s and retry...rn”);
```

```
    delay(1000);
```

```
  }
```

```
  printf(“Connected to %srn”, ssid);
```

```
  service.addTxtRecord(“board”, strlen(“ameba_rtl8195a”), “ameba_rtl8195a”);
```

```
service.addTxtRecord("auth_upload", strlen("no"), "no");
service.addTxtRecord("tcp_check", strlen("no"), "no");
service.addTxtRecord("ssh_upload", strlen("no"), "no");
printf("Start mDNS servicern");
MDNS.begin();
printf("register mDNS servicern");
MDNS.registerService(service);
}
void loop() {
// put your main code here, to run repeatedly:
delay(1000);
}
```

Notes and Warnings

Include "AmebaMDNS.h" to use the class function.

MDNSClass::end

Description

Stop MDNS operations and stop responding to MDNS queries.

Syntax

```
void end(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Include "AmebaMDNS.h" to use the class function.

MDNSClass::registerService

Description

Add a service record to be included in MDNS responses.

Syntax

```
void register service(MDNSService service);
```

Parameters

service: MDNSService class object with required MDNS service data

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: mDNS_On_Arduino_IDE

Details of the code can be found in the previous section of MDNSClass:: begin.

Notes and Warnings

Include “AmebaMDNS.h” to use the class function.

MDNSClass::deregisterService

Description

Remove a service record from MDNS responses.

Syntax

```
void deregisterService(MDNSService service);
```

Parameters

service: MDNSService class object to be removed

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: mDNS_On_Arduino_IDE

Details of the code can be found in the previous section of MDNSClass:: begin.

Notes and Warnings

Include “AmebaMDNS.h” to use the class function.

MDNSClass::updateService**Description**

Update a service record.

Syntax

```
void updateService(MDNSService service, unsigned int ttl);
```

Parameters

service: MDNSService class object to be updated

ttl: time-to-live(TTL) for service

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Include “AmebaMDNS.h” to use the class function.

Class HttpClient**MDNSService Class****Description**

A class used for creating MDNS service records.

Syntax

```
class MDNSService
```

Members

Public Constructors	
MDNSService::MDNSService	Create a MDNS service record
Public Methods	
MDNSService::addTxtRecord	Add text to MDNS service record

MDNSService::MDNSService**Description**

Create a MDNS service record.

Syntax

```
MDNSService(char* name, char* service_type, char* domain, unsigned short port, int bufsize);
```

Parameters

name: device name

service_type: MDNS service type

domain: host domain

port: network port

bufsize: size of buffer for MDNS text record

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: mDNS_On_Arduino_IDE

Notes and Warnings

Include “AmebaMDNS.h” to use the class function.

MDNSService::addTxtRecord**Description**

Add text to MDNS service record.

Syntax

```
int addTextRecord(char* key, int value_len, char* value);
```

Parameters

key: record type expressed as character string

value_len: length of value string

value: record value expressed as character string

Returns

0 if add record successful

Example Code

Example: mDNS_On_Arduino_IDE

Notes and Warnings

Include “AmebaMDNS.h” to use the class function.

Class PMUClass**PubSubClient Class****Description**

Defines a class of MQTT implementation for Ameba.

Syntax

```
class PubSubClient
```

Members

Public Constructors	
PubSubClient::PubSubClient	Constructs a PubSubClient object
Public Methods	
PubSubClient::setServer	Set MQTT server address and port
PubSubClient::setCallback	Set callback function
PubSubClient::setClient	Set WiFi client
PubSubClient::setStream	Set data stream
PubSubClient::connect	Attempt to connect to server
PubSubClient::disconnect	Disconnect from current session
PubSubClient::publish	Publish a message to server
PubSubClient::publish_P	Same as above
PubSubClient::subscribe	Subscribe to a topic
PubSubClient::unsubscribe	Unsubscribe to a topic
PubSubClient::loop	Keep MQTT session alive and process any queuing tasks
PubSubClient::connected	Check if client still connected
PubSubClient::state	Return connection state

PubSubClient::PubSubClient**Description**

Constructs a PubSubClient object and, if applicable, sets server address, port, callback function, data stream and wifi client.

Syntax

```
PubSubClient::PubSubClient();
PubSubClient::PubSubClient(Client& client);
PubSubClient::PubSubClient(IPAddress, uint16_t, Client& client);
PubSubClient::PubSubClient(IPAddress, uint16_t, Client& client, Stream&);
PubSubClient::PubSubClient(IPAddress, uint16_t, MQTT_CALLBACK_SIGNATURE, Client& client);
PubSubClient::PubSubClient(IPAddress, uint16_t, MQTT_CALLBACK_SIGNATURE, Client& client, Stream&);
```

```
PubSubClient::PubSubClient(uint8_t *, uint16_t, Client& client);
PubSubClient::PubSubClient(uint8_t *, uint16_t, Client& client, Stream&);
PubSubClient::PubSubClient(uint8_t *, uint16_t, MQTT_CALLBACK_SIGNATURE, Client& client);
PubSubClient::PubSubClient(uint8_t *, uint16_t, MQTT_CALLBACK_SIGNATURE, Client& client, Stream&);
PubSubClient::PubSubClient(const char*, uint16_t, Client& client);
PubSubClient::PubSubClient(const char*, uint16_t, Client& client, Stream&);
PubSubClient::PubSubClient(const char*, uint16_t, MQTT_CALLBACK_SIGNATURE, Client& client);
PubSubClient::PubSubClient(const char*, uint16_t, MQTT_CALLBACK_SIGNATURE, Client& client, Stream&);
```

Parameters

client: the network client to use, for example WiFiClient
IPAddress: MQTT server address
port: port for MQTT, usually 1883 for unencrypted connection
MQTT_CALLBACK_SIGNATURE: callback function for MQTT
Stream: a stream to write received messages to

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: MQTT_Basic

```
#include <WiFi.h>
#include <PubSubClient.h>

// Update these with values suitable for your network.

char ssid[] = "yourNetwork"; // your network SSID (name)
char pass[] = "secretPassword"; // your network password
int status = WL_IDLE_STATUS; // the Wifi radio's status
char mqttServer[] = "test.mosquitto.org";
char clientId[] = "amebaClient";
char publishTopic[] = "outTopic";
char publishPayload[] = "hello world";
char subscribeTopic[] = "inTopic";
void callback(char* topic, byte* payload, unsigned int length) {
  Serial.print("Message arrived [");
  Serial.print(topic);
  Serial.print("] ");
  for (int i=0;i<length;i++) {
    Serial.print((char)payload[i]);
```

```

}
Serial.println();
}
WiFiClient wifiClient;
PubSubClient client(wifiClient);
void reconnect() {
// Loop until we're reconnected
while (!client.connected()) {
Serial.print("Attempting MQTT connection...");
// Attempt to connect
if (client.connect(clientId)) {
Serial.println("connected");
// Once connected, publish an announcement...
client.publish(publishTopic, publishPayload);
// ... and resubscribe
client.subscribe(subscribeTopic);
else {
Serial.print("failed, rc=");
Serial.print(client.state());
Serial.println(" try again in 5 seconds");
// Wait 5 seconds before retrying
delay(5000);
}
}
}
void setup()
{
Serial.begin(38400);
while (status != WL_CONNECTED) {
Serial.print("Attempting to connect to SSID: ");
Serial.println(ssid);
// Connect to WPA/WPA2 network. Change this line if using open or WEP network:
status = WiFi.begin(ssid, pass);
// wait 10 seconds for connection:
delay(10000);
}
}

```

```
client.setServer(mqttServer, 1883);
client.setCallback(callback);
// Allow the hardware to sort itself out
delay(1500);
}
void loop()
{
if (!client.connected()) {
  reconnect();
}
client.loop();
}
```

Notes and Warnings

PubSubClient::PubSubClient(Client& client) would suffice for normal MQTT connection

PubSubClient::setServer

Description

Sets the server details.

Syntax

```
PubSubClient& PubSubClient::setServer(uint8_t * ip, uint16_t port)
PubSubClient& PubSubClient::setServer(IPAddress ip, uint16_t port)
PubSubClient& PubSubClient::setServer(const char * domain, uint16_t port)
```

Parameters

ip: the address of the server
port: the port to connect to, default 1883
domain: the address of the server

Returns

The client instance, allowing the function to be chained

Example Code

Example: MQTT_Basic

Notes and Warnings

NA

PubSubClient::setCallback**Description**

Sets the message callback function.

Syntax

PubSubClient& PubSubClient::setCallback(MQTT_CALLBACK_SIGNATURE)

Parameters

MQTT_CALLBACK_SIGNATURE: a pointer to a message callback function called when a message arrives for a subscription created by this client.

Returns

The client instance, allowing the function to be chained.

Example Code

Example: MQTT_Basic

Notes and Warnings

NA

PubSubClient::setClient**Description**

Sets the network client instance to use.

Syntax

PubSubClient& PubSubClient::setClient(Client& client)

Parameters

client: the network client to use, for example WiFiClient

Returns

The client instance, allowing the function to be chained

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

PubSubClient::setStream

Description

Sets the stream to write received messages to.

Syntax

PubSubClient& PubSubClient::setStream(Stream& stream)

Parameters

stream: a stream to write received messages to

Returns

The client instance, allowing the function to be chained.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

PubSubClient::connect

Description

Connects the client to the server.

Syntax

boolean PubSubClient::connect(const char *id)

boolean PubSubClient::connect(const char *id, const char *user, const char *pass)

boolean PubSubClient::connect(const char *id, const char* willTopic, uint8_t willQos, boolean willRetain, const char* willMessage)

boolean PubSubClient::connect(const char *id, const char *user, const char *pass, const char* willTopic, uint8_t willQos, boolean willRetain, const char* willMessage)

Parameters

id: Client ID, a unique string identifier

user: Username for authentication, default NULL

pass: Password for authentication, default NULL

willTopic: the topic to be used by the will message

willQoS: the quality of service to be used by the will message
willRetain: whether the will should be published with the retain flag
willMessage: the payload of the will message

Returns

True – connection succeeded
False – connection failed

Example Code

Example: MQTT_Basic

Notes and Warnings

Client ID is required and should always be unique else connection might be rejected by the server.

PubSubClient::disconnect**Description**

Disconnect the client

Syntax

void PubSubClient::disconnect(void)

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

PubSubClient::publish**Description**

Publishes a message to the specified topic.

Syntax

```
boolean PubSubClient::publish(const char* topic, const char* payload)
boolean PubSubClient::publish(const char* topic, const char* payload, boolean retained)
boolean PubSubClient::publish(const char* topic, const uint8_t* payload, unsigned int plength)
boolean PubSubClient::publish(const char* topic, const uint8_t* payload, unsigned int plength, boolean retained)
```

Parameters

topic: the topic to publish to
payload: the message to publish
plength: the length of the payload. Required if payload is a byte[]
retained: whether the message should be retained
– false – not retained
– true – retained

Returns

False – publish failed, either connection lost or message too large
True – publish succeeded

Example Code

Example: MQTT_Basic

Notes and Warnings

Default max packet size is 128 bytes.

PubSubClient::publish_P

Description

Publishes a message stored in PROGMEM to the specified topic.

Syntax

```
boolean PubSubClient::publish_P(const char* topic, const uint8_t* payload, unsigned int plength, boolean retained)
```

Parameters

topic: the topic to publish to
payload: the message to publish
plength: the length of the payload. Required if payload is a byte[]
retained: whether the message should be retained
– false – not retained
– true – retained

Returns

False – publish failed, either connection lost or message too large
True – publish succeeded

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

PubSubClient::subscribe**Description**

Subscribes to messages published to the specified topic.

Syntax

boolean PubSubClient::subscribe(const char* topic)
boolean PubSubClient::subscribe(const char* topic, uint8_t qos)

Parameters

topic: the topic to subscribe to
qos: the qos to subscribe at

Returns

False – sending the subscribe failed, either connection lost or message too large
True – sending the subscribe succeeded

Example Code

Example: MQTT_Basic

Notes and Warnings

NA

PubSubClient::unsubscribe**Description**

Unsubscribes from the specified topic.

Syntax

boolean PubSubClient::unsubscribe(const char* topic)

Parameters

topic: the topic to unsubscribe to

Returns

False – sending the unsubscribe failed, either connection lost or message too large

True – sending the unsubscribe succeeded

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

PubSubClient::loop

Description

A must method called regularly to allow the client to process incoming messages and maintain its connection to the server.

Syntax

boolean PubSubClient::loop(void)

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

False – the client is no longer connected

True – the client is still connected

Example Code

Example: MQTT_Basic

Notes and Warnings

A required method that should not be blocked for too long.

PubSubClient::connected

Description

Checks whether the client is connected to the server.

Syntax

```
boolean PubSubClient::connected(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

False – the client is not connected

True – the client is connected

Example Code

Example: MQTT_Basic

Notes and Warnings

NA

PubSubClient::state**Description**

Returns the current state of the client. If a connection attempt fails, this can be used to get more information about the failure.

All of the values have corresponding constants defined in PubSubClient.h.

Syntax

```
int PubSubClient::state(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

-4 : MQTT_CONNECTION_TIMEOUT – the server didn't respond within the keepalive time

-3 : MQTT_CONNECTION_LOST – the network connection was broken

-2 : MQTT_CONNECT_FAILED – the network connection failed

-1 : MQTT_DISCONNECTED – the client is disconnected cleanly

0 : MQTT_CONNECTED – the client is connected

1 : MQTT_CONNECT_BAD_PROTOCOL – the server doesn't support the requested version of MQTT

2 : MQTT_CONNECT_BAD_CLIENT_ID – the server rejected the client identifier

3 : MQTT_CONNECT_UNAVAILABLE – the server was unable to accept the connection

4 : MQTT_CONNECT_BAD_CREDENTIALS – the username/password were rejected

5 : MQTT_CONNECT_UNAUTHORIZED – the client was not authorized to connect

Example Code

Example: MQTT_Basic

Notes and Warnings

NA

MQTTClient_Readme

The Ameba MQTT related APIs and examples are works based on the PubSubClient libraries written by Nicholas O'Leary (<http://pubsubclient.knolleary.net>).

These include,

PubSubClient.cpp

PubSubClient.h

These libraries are under MIT License.

NTPClient_Readme

The NTPClient library is based on the NTPClient library written by Fabrice Weinberg, which can be found at <https://github.com/arduino-libraries/NTPClient>. These include, NTPClient.cpp NTPClient.h These libraries are licensed under MIT License.

Class PMUClass

PMUClass Class

Description

Defines a class of using power save API.

Syntax

```
class PMUClass
```

Members

Public Constructors	
PMUClass::PMUClass	Constructs a PMUClass object
Public Methods	
PMUCLASS::begin	Initialize the PMUCLASS select sleep mode
PMUCLASS::AONTimerDuration	Set time duration of AON timer
PMUCLASS::AONTimerCmd	Disable the AON timer for power save usage
PMUCLASS::RTCWakeSetup	Setup RTC timer for power save usage
PMUCLASS::enable	Enable power save deep sleep mode
PMUCLASS::AONWakeReason	Check the AON wakeup source
PMUCLASS::WakePinCheck	Check AON pin as wake up source
PMUCLASS::AONWakeClear	Clear all AON wake up source
PMUCLASS::DsleepWakeStatusGet	Check if set deepsleep mode
PMUCLASS::TL_sysactive_time	Tickless mode system active time
PMUCLASS::TL_wakelock	Tickless mode wake lock, select acquire or release

PMUCLASS::PMUCLASS

Description

Constructs a PMUCLASS object.

Syntax

```
PMUCLASS::PMUCLASS(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

```
Example: DeepSleep_DHT_LCD_Example; DeepSleepMode; TicklessMode
```

Notes and Warnings

Include “PMUCLASS.h” in order to use the class function.

PMUCLASS::begin

Description

Initialize the PMUCLASS select sleep mode.

Syntax

```
void PMUClass::begin(uint32_t sleep_mode);
```

Parameters

sleep_mode: Selection value, “11” enters the DeepSleep Mode, “22” enters the Tickless Mode.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: DeepSleep_DHT_LCD_Example; DeepSleepMode; TicklessMode

Notes and Warnings

Include “PMUCLASS.h” in order to use the class function.

PMUCLASS::AONTimerDuration

Description

Set time duration of AON timer.

Syntax

```
void PMUClass::AONTimerDuration(uint32_t duration_ms);
```

Parameters

duration_ms: Timer duration between 0 to 32760000ms.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: DeepSleep_DHT_LCD_Example; DeepSleepMode; TicklessMode

Notes and Warnings

Include “PMUCLASS.h” in order to use the class function.

PMUCLASS::AONTimerCmd

Description

Disable the AON timer for power save usage.

Syntax

```
void PMUClass::AONTimerCmd(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: DeepSleep_DHT_LCD_Example; DeepSleepMode; TicklessMode

Notes and Warnings

Include “PMUCLASS.h” in order to use the class function.

PMUCLASS::RTCWakeSetup**Description**

Setup RTC timer for power save usage.

Syntax

```
void PMUClass::RTCWakeSetup(uint32_t duration_d, uint32_t duration_h, uint32_t duration_m, uint32_t duration_s);
```

Parameters

duration_d: Set alarm number of days from 0.

duration_h: Set alarm number of hours from 0.

duration_m: Set alarm number of minutes from 0.

duration_s: Set alarm number of seconds from 0.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: DeepSleep_DHT_LCD_Example; DeepSleepMode; TicklessMode

Notes and Warnings

Include “PMUCLASS.h” in order to use the class function.

PMUCLASS::enable

Description

Enable power save deep sleep mode.

Syntax

```
void PMUClass::enable(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: DeepSleep_DHT_LCD_Example; DeepSleepMode; TicklessMode

Notes and Warnings

Include “PMUCLASS.h” in order to use the class function.

PMUCLASS::AONWakeReason

Description

Check the AON wakeup source.

Syntax

```
uint32_t PMUClass::AONWakeReason(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Return value of wakeup deepsleep source. “11” for AON pin, “22” for AON timer, “33” for RTC timer and “0” for none.

Example Code

Example: DeepSleep_DHT_LCD_Example; DeepSleepMode; TicklessMode

Notes and Warnings

Include “PMUCLASS.h” in order to use the class function.

PMUCLASS::WakePinCheck

Description

Check AON pin as wake up source.

Syntax

```
int PMUClass::WakePinCheck(void);
```

Parameters

```
int PMUClass::WakePinCheck(void);
```

Returns

Return the pin number for indicating Arduino pin names.

Example Code

Example: DeepSleep_DHT_LCD_Example; DeepSleepMode; TicklessMode

Notes and Warnings

Include “PMUCLASS.h” in order to use the class function.

PMUCLASS::AONWakeClear

Description

Clear all AON wake up source.

Syntax

```
void PMUClass::AONWakeClear(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: DeepSleep_DHT_LCD_Example; DeepSleepMode; TicklessMode

Notes and Warnings

Include “PMUCLASS.h” in order to use the class function.

PMUCLASS::DsleapWakeStatusGet

Description

Check if set deepsleep mode.

Syntax

```
bool PMUClass::DsleapWakeStatusGet(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Return True for enter DeepSleep Mode or False for negative.

Example Code

Example: DeepSleep_DHT_LCD_Example; DeepSleepMode; TicklessMode

Notes and Warnings

Include “PMUCLASS.h” in order to use the class function.

PMUCLASS::TL_sysactive_time

Description

Tickless mode system active time.

Syntax

```
void PMUClass::TL_sysactive_time(uint32_t duration_ms);
```

Parameters

duration_ms: Set time duration of system active time. Unit is milliseconds.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: DeepSleep_DHT_LCD_Example; DeepSleepMode; TicklessMode

Notes and Warnings

Include “PMUCLASS.h” in order to use the class function.

PMUCLASS::TL_wakelock**Description**

Tickless mode wake lock, select acquire or release.

Syntax

```
void PMUClass::TL_wakelock(uint32_t select_lock);
```

Parameters

select_lock: Wake lock selection value, “1” for acquire or “0” for release.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: DeepSleep_DHT_LCD_Example; DeepSleepMode; TicklessMode

Notes and Warnings

Include “PMUCLASS.h” in order to use the class function.

Class RTC

RTC Class

Description

A class used for displaying date and time and alarm configuration using RTC, the independent BCD (Binary-Coded-Decimal) timer.

Syntax

```
class RTC
```

Members

Public Constructors	
A public constructor should not be used as this class is intended to be a singleton class. Access member functions using the object instance named RTC.	

Public Methods	
RTC:: Init	Initializes the RTC device, including the Clock, the RTC registers, and other functions
RTC:: DeInit	Deinitialize the RTC device
RTC:: Write	Set the specified timestamp in seconds to RTC
RTC:: Read	Get the current timestamp in seconds from RTC
RTC:: Wait	Wait for 1 second
RTC:: SetEpoch	Convert human-readable time to epoch time

RTC::Init

Description

Initializes the RTC device, including the Clock, the RTC registers, and other functions.

Syntax

```
void RTC::Init(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: RTC

```

/*
 * This function describes how to use the RTC API.
 * The RTC function is implemented by an independent BCD timer/counter.
 * This example will print out the time information every second.
 */

#include <stdio.h>
#include <time.h>
#include "rtc.h"
#define YEAR 2020
#define MONTH 9
#define DAY 10
#define HOUR 20
#define MIN 30
#define SEC 40
/* Create an rtc object */
RTC rtc;
int32_t seconds;
struct tm *timeinfo;
void setup() {
  Serial.begin(115200);
  rtc.Init(); // initialize RTC
}
void loop() {
  // step 1: convert user time to epoch
  int epochTime = humanReadableToEpoch(YEAR, MONTH, DAY, HOUR, MIN, SEC);
  // step 2: write epoch time to rtc
  rtc.Write(epochTime);
  while (1) {
    seconds = rtc.Read();
    printf("Epoch Time (in s) since January 1, 1970 = %dsn", seconds);
    printf("Time as a basic string = %s", ctime(&seconds));
    timeinfo = localtime(&seconds);
    printf("Time as a custom formatted string = %d-%d-%d %d:%d:%dn",
      (timeinfo->tm_year + 1900), (timeinfo->tm_mon + 1), timeinfo->tm_mday, timeinfo->tm_hour,
      timeinfo->tm_min, timeinfo->tm_sec);
    Serial.println();
  }
}

```

```
rtc.wait(1);
}
}

// convert human readable time to epoch time
int humanReadableToEpoch(int year, int month, int day, int hour, int min, int sec) {
struct tm t;
time_t t_of_day;
t.tm_year = year - 1900; // Year - 1970
t.tm_mon = month - 1; // Month, where 0 = jan
t.tm_mday = day; // Day of the month
t.tm_hour = hour;
t.tm_min = min;
t.tm_sec = sec;
t.tm_isdst = -1; // Is DST on? 1 = yes, 0 = no, -1 = unknown
t_of_day = mktime(&t);
// printf("seconds since the Epoch: %dn", (long)t_of_day);
return t_of_day;
}
```

Notes and Warnings

NA

RTC::DeInit

Description

Deinitializes the RTC device.

Syntax

```
void RTC::DeInit(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: RTC

Details of the code can be found in the previous section of RTC:: Init.

Notes and Warnings

NA

RTC:: Write

Description

Set the specified timestamp in seconds to RTC. Seconds from 1970.1.1 00:00:00 (YEAR.MONTH.DAY, HOUR: MIN: SECONDS) to specified date and time which is to be set.

Syntax

```
void RTC::Write(int t);
```

Parameters

Parameters

t: Seconds from 1970.1.1 00:00:00 (YEAR.MONTH.DAY, HOUR: MIN: SECONDS) to specified date and time which is to be set.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: RTC

Details of the code can be found in the previous section of RTC:: Init.

Notes and Warnings

NA

RTC::Read

Description

Get the current timestamp in seconds from RTC. The current timestamp in seconds which is calculated from 1970.1.1 00:00:00 (YEAR.MONTH.DAY, HOUR: MIN: SECONDS).

Syntax

```
int32_t RTC::Read(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the current timestamp in seconds which is calculated from 1970.1.1 00:00:00 (YEAR.MONTH.DAY, HOUR: MIN: SECONDS).

Example Code

Example: RTC

Details of the code can be found in the previous section of RTC:: Init.

Notes and Warnings

NA

RTC:: Wait

Description

Send IR raw data.

Syntax

```
void RTC::wait(float s);
```

Parameters

s: unit microseconds (1 us)

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: RTC

Details of the code can be found in the previous section of RTC:: Init.

Notes and Warnings

NA

RTC:: SetEpoch

Description

Convert human-readable time to epoch time

Syntax

int RTC:: SetEpoch(int year, int month, int day, int hour, int min, int sec);

Parameters

year: user input year

month: user input month

day: user input day

hour: user input hour

min: user input minutes

sec: user input seconds

Returns

The function returns epoch time in seconds for RTC use.

Example Code

Example: RTC

Details of the code can be found in the previous section of RTC:: Init.

Notes and Warnings

NA

Class Adafruit_GPS**Adafruit_GPS Class****Description**

Defines a class to use GPS module on Ameba.

Syntax

class Adafruit_GPS

Members

Public Constructors	
Adafruit_GPS::Adafruit_GPS	Constructs an Adafruit_GPS object
Public Methods	
Adafruit_GPS::begin	Initialize serial communication
*Adafruit_GPS::lastNMEA	Returns the last NMEA line received and unsets the received flag
Adafruit_GPS::newNMEAreceived	Check to see if a new NMEA line has been received
Adafruit_GPS::common_init	Initialization code used by all constructor types
Adafruit_GPS::sendCommand	Send a command to the GPS device
Adafruit_GPS::pause	Pause/unpause receiving new data
Adafruit_GPS::parseHex	Read a Hex value and return the decimal equivalent
Adafruit_GPS::read	Read one character from the GPS device
Adafruit_GPS::parse	Parse an NMEA string
Adafruit_GPS::wakeup	Wake the sensor up
Adafruit_GPS::standby	Standby Mode Switches
Adafruit_GPS::waitForSentence	Wait for a specified sentence from the device
Adafruit_GPS::LOCUS_StartLogger	Start the LOCUS logger
Adafruit_GPS::LOCUS_StopLogger	Stop the LOCUS logger
Adafruit_GPS::LOCUS_ReadStatus	Read the logger status

Adafruit_GPS::Adafruit_GPS

Description

Constructs an Adafruit_GPS object and initialize serial using a SoftSerial object.

Syntax

```
Adafruit_GPS::Adafruit_GPS(SoftwareSerial *ser)
Adafruit_GPS::Adafruit_GPS(HardwareSerial *ser)
```

Parameters

ser: a Serial instance

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: Adafruit_GPS_parsing

This example code from Adafruit demonstrates GPS modules using MTK3329/MTK3339 driver. This code shows how to listen to the GPS module in an interrupt which allows the program to have more ‘freedom’ – just parse when a new NMEA sentence is available! Then access data when desired.

```
#include <Adafruit_GPS.h>
```

```
#include <SoftwareSerial.h>
```

```
// If you're using a GPS module:
```

```
// Connect the GPS Power pin to 3.3V
```

```

// Connect the GPS Ground pin to ground
// Connect the GPS TX (transmit) pin to Digital 0
// Connect the GPS RX (receive) pin to Digital 1
#if defined(BOARD_RTL8195A)
SoftwareSerial mySerial(0, 1);
#elif defined(BOARD_RTL8710)
SoftwareSerial mySerial(17, 5); // RTL8710 need change GPS TX/RX to pin 17 and 5
#else
SoftwareSerial mySerial(0, 1);
#endif
Adafruit_GPS GPS(&mySerial);
// Set GPSECHO to 'false' to turn off echoing the GPS data to the Serial console
// Set to 'true' if you want to debug and listen to the raw GPS sentences.
#define GPSECHO false
void setup()
{
  Serial.begin(38400);
  Serial.println("Adafruit GPS library basic test!");
  // 9600 NMEA is the default baud rate for Adafruit MTK GPS's- some use 4800
  GPS.begin(9600);
  // uncomment this line to turn on RMC (recommended minimum) and GGA (fix data) including altitude
  GPS.sendCommand(PMTK_SET_NMEA_OUTPUT_RMCGGA);
  // uncomment this line to turn on only the "minimum recommended" data
  //GPS.sendCommand(PMTK_SET_NMEA_OUTPUT_RMONLY);
  // For parsing data, we don't suggest using anything but either RMC only or RMC+GGA since
  // the parser doesn't care about other sentences at this time
  // Set the update rate
  GPS.sendCommand(PMTK_SET_NMEA_UPDATE_1HZ); // 1 Hz update rate
  // For the parsing code to work nicely and have time to sort thru the data, and
  // print it out we don't suggest using anything higher than 1 Hz
  // Request updates on antenna status, comment out to keep quiet
  GPS.sendCommand(PGCMD_ANTENNA);
  delay(1000);
  // Ask for firmware version
  mySerial.println(PMTK_Q_RELEASE);
}

```

```
uint32_t timer = millis();
void loop() // run over and over again
{
  // in case you are not using the interrupt above, you'll
  // need to 'hand query' the GPS, not suggested :(
  // read data from the GPS in the 'main loop'
  char c = GPS.read();
  // if you want to debug, this is a good time to do it!
  if (GPSECHO)
  if (c) Serial.print(c);
  // if a sentence is received, we can check the checksum, parse it...
  if (GPS.newNMEAreceived()) {
    // a tricky thing here is if we print the NMEA sentence, or data
    // we end up not listening and catching other sentences!
    // so be very wary if using OUTPUT_ALLDATA and trying to print out data
    //Serial.println(GPS.lastNMEA()); // this also sets the newNMEAreceived() flag to false
    if (!GPS.parse(GPS.lastNMEA())) // this also sets the newNMEAreceived() flag to false
      return; // we can fail to parse a sentence in which case we should just wait for another
  }
  // if millis() or timer wraps around, we'll just reset it
  if (timer > millis()) timer = millis();
  // approximately every 2 seconds or so, print out the current stats
  if (millis() - timer > 2000) {
    timer = millis(); // reset the timer
    Serial.print("nTime: ");
    Serial.print(GPS.hour, DEC); Serial.print(':');
    Serial.print(GPS.minute, DEC); Serial.print(':');
    Serial.print(GPS.seconds, DEC); Serial.print('.');
    Serial.println(GPS.milliseconds);
    Serial.print("Date: ");
    Serial.print(GPS.day, DEC); Serial.print('/');
    Serial.print(GPS.month, DEC); Serial.print("/20");
    Serial.println(GPS.year, DEC);
    Serial.print("Fix: "); Serial.print((int)GPS.fix);
    Serial.print(" quality: "); Serial.println((int)GPS.fixquality);
    if (GPS.fix) {
```

```

Serial.print("Location: ");
Serial.println(GPS.latitude, 4); Serial.print(GPS.lat);
Serial.print(", ");
Serial.println(GPS.longitude, 4); Serial.println(GPS.lon);
Serial.print("Location (in degrees, works with Google Maps): ");
Serial.print(GPS.latitudeDegrees, 4);
Serial.print(", ");
Serial.println(GPS.longitudeDegrees, 4);
Serial.print("Speed (knots): "); Serial.println(GPS.speed);
Serial.print("Angle: "); Serial.println(GPS.angle);
Serial.print("Altitude: "); Serial.println(GPS.altitude);
Serial.print("Satellites: "); Serial.println((int)GPS.satellites);
}
}
}

```

Notes and Warnings

IMPORTANT: SoftSerial is using hardware serial so pin mapping cannot be altered.

Adafruit_GPS::begin

Description

Initialize serial communication

Syntax

```
void Adafruit_GPS::begin(uint16_t baud)
```

Parameters

baud: serial baud rate

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: Adafruit_GPS_parsing

The details of the code can be found in the previous section of Adafruit_GPS: Adafruit_GPS.

Notes and Warnings

NA

*Adafruit_GPS::lastNMEA

Description

Returns the last NMEA line received and unsets the received flag

Syntax

```
char *Adafruit_GPS::lastNMEA(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Pointer to the last line string

Example Code

Example: Adafruit_GPS_parsing

The details of the code can be found in the previous section of Adafruit_GPS:: Adafruit_GPS.

Notes and Warnings

NA

Adafruit_GPS::newNMEAreceived

Description

Check to see if a new NMEA line has been received

Syntax

```
boolean Adafruit_GPS::newNMEAreceived(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

True if received, false if not

Example Code

Example: Adafruit_GPS_parsing

The details of the code can be found in the previous section of Adafruit_GPS:: Adafruit_GPS.

Notes and Warnings

NA

Adafruit_GPS::common_init**Description**

Initialization code used by all constructor types

Syntax

```
void Adafruit_GPS::common_init(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

Adafruit_GPS::sendCommand**Description**

Send a command to the GPS device

Syntax

```
void Adafruit_GPS::sendCommand(const char *str)
```

Parameters

str: Pointer to a string holding the command to send

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: Adafruit_GPS_parsing

The details of the code can be found in the previous section of Adafruit_GPS:: Adafruit_GPS.

Notes and Warnings

NA

Adafruit_GPS::pause

Description

Pause/unpause receiving new data

Syntax

void Adafruit_GPS::pause(boolean p)

Parameters

p: True = pause, false = unpause

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

Adafruit_GPS::parseHex

Description

Read a Hex value and return the decimal equivalent

Syntax

uint8_t Adafruit_GPS::parseHex(char c)

Parameters

c: Hex value

Returns

The decimal equivalent of the Hex value

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

Adafruit_GPS::read**Description**

Read one character from the GPS device

Syntax

char Adafruit_GPS::read(void)

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The character that we received, or 0 if nothing was available

Example Code

Example: Adafruit_GPS_parsing

The details of the code can be found in the previous section of Adafruit_GPS:: Adafruit_GPS.

Notes and Warnings

NA

Adafruit_GPS::parse**Description**

Parse an NMEA string

Syntax

boolean Adafruit_GPS::parse(char *nmea)

Parameters

nmea: an NMEA string

Returns

True if we parsed it, false if it has invalid data

Example Code

Example: Adafruit_GPS_parsing

Notes and Warnings

NA

Adafruit_GPS::wakeup

Description

Wake the sensor up

Syntax

boolean Adafruit_GPS::wakeup(void)

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

True if woken up, false if not in standby or failed to wake

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

Adafruit_GPS::standby

Description

Standby Mode Switches

Syntax

boolean Adafruit_GPS::standby(void)

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

False if already in standby, true if it entered standby

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

Adafruit_GPS::waitForSentence**Description**

Wait for a specified sentence from the device

Syntax

boolean Adafruit_GPS::waitForSentence(const char *wait4me, uint8_t max)

Parameters

wait4me: Pointer to a string holding the desired response

max: How long to wait, default is MAXWAITSENTENCE

Returns

True if we got what we wanted, false otherwise

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

Adafruit_GPS::LOCUS_StartLogger

Description

Start the LOCUS logger

Syntax

boolean Adafruit_GPS::LOCUS_StartLogger(void)

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

True on success, false if it failed

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

Adafruit_GPS::LOCUS_StopLogger

Description

Stop the LOCUS logger

Syntax

boolean Adafruit_GPS::LOCUS_StopLogger(void)

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

True on success, false if it failed

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

Adafruit_GPS::LOCUS_ReadStatus

Description

Read the logger status

Syntax

```
boolean Adafruit_GPS::LOCUS_ReadStatus(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

True if we read the data, false if there was no response

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

Class HttpClient

PMS3003 Class

Description

Defines a class to work with PMS3003 air quality sensor on Ameba.

Syntax

```
class PMS3003
```

Members

Public Constructors	
PMS3003::PMS3003	Constructs a PMS3003 object
Public Methods	
PMS3003::begin	Initialize hardware UART
PMS3003::end	Free allocated space thus stopping UART
PMS3003::get_pm1p0_cf1	Get PM1.0 under correction factor = 1
PMS3003:: get_pm2p5_cf1	Get PM2.5 under correction factor = 1
PMS3003:: get_pm10_cf1	Get PM10 under correction factor = 1
PMS3003:: get_pm1p0_air	Get PM1.0 air quality
PMS3003:: get_pm2p5_air	Get PM2.5 air quality
PMS3003:: get_pm10_air	Get PM10 air quality
PMS3003:update_cache	Updates the cache memory
PMS3003::pms3003_handle_interrupt	Set up the serial event handler

PMS3003::PMS3003

Description

Constructs a PMS3003 object and initialize the pin mapping.

Syntax

```
PMS3003::PMS3003(int _rx, int _tx, int _set, int _reset)
```

Parameters

_rx: RX pin of UART

_tx: TX pin of UART

_set: Set pin

_reset: Reset pin

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

PMS3003::begin

Description

Initialize hardware UART and allocate space for serial buffer

Syntax

```
void PMS3003::begin(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

PMS3003::end**Description**

Free serial buffer space and stop UART

Syntax

```
void PMS3003::end(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

PMS3003::get_pm1p0_cf1

Description

Get PM1.0 under correction factor = 1

Syntax

```
int PMS3003::get_pm1p0_cf1(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the value “pm1p0_cf1” as an integer.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

PMS3003::get_pm2p5_cf1

Description

Get PM2.5 under correction factor = 1

Syntax

```
int PMS3003::get_pm2p5_cf1(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the value of “pm2p5_cf1” as an integer.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

PMS3003::get_pm10_cf1**Description**

Get PM10 under correction factor = 1

Syntax

```
int PMS3003::get_pm10_cf1(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the value of “pm10_cf1” as an integer.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

PMS3003::get_pm1p0_air**Description**

Get PM1.0 air quality

Syntax

```
int PMS3003::get_pm1p0_air(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the value of “pm1p0_air” as an integer.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

PMS3003::get_pm2p5_air

Description

Get PM2.5 air quality

Syntax

```
int PMS3003::get_pm2p5_air(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the value of “pm2p5_air” as an integer.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

PMS3003::get_pm10_air

Description

Get PM10 air quality

Syntax

```
int PMS3003::get_pm10_air(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the value of “pm10_air” as an integer.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

PMS3003::pms3003_handle_interrupt

Description

Set up the serial event handler

Syntax

```
void pms3003_handle_interrupt(uint32_t id, uint32_t event)
```

Parameters

id: device identifier

event: Serial event for handling incoming data

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

PMS3003::update_cache

Description

Serves the function of updating cache memory. One package has 32 bytes. Illustrate the formate by using below raw data: 42 4d 00 1c 00 1b 00 21 00 29 00 1a 00 21 00 29 2b fb 04 be 00 6b 00 10 00 04 00 04 67 00 04 46

42 4d : header signature

00 1c : frame length, 0x001c = 28 bytes (not include header and this field)

00 1b : PM1.0 under CF=1

00 21 : PM2.5 under CF=1

00 29 : PM10 under CF=1

00 1a : PM1.0 under air

00 21 : PM2.5 under air

00 29 : PM10 under air

2b fb : number of pariticle, diameter size 0.3 um in 0.1 liter air
04 be : number of pariticle, diameter size 0.5 um in 0.1 liter air
00 6b : number of pariticle, diameter size 1.0 um in 0.1 liter air
00 10 : number of pariticle, diameter size 2.5 um in 0.1 liter air
00 04 : number of pariticle, diameter size 5.0 um in 0.1 liter air
00 04 : number of pariticle, diameter size 10 um in 0.1 liter air
67 : serial number
00 : error code
04 46 :
checksum,0x42+0x4d+0x00+0x1c+0x00+0x1b+0x00+0x21+0x00+0x29+0x00+0x1a+0x00+0x21+0x00+0x29+
0x2b+0xfb+0x04+0xbe+0x00+0x6b+0x00+0x10+0x00+0x04+0x00+0x04+0x67+0x00 = 0x0446

Syntax

void PMS3003::update_cache(void)

Parameters

The function requires no input parameters.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

Class SoftwareSerial**SoftwareSerial Class****Description**

Defines a class of software serial implementation for Ameba.

Syntax

class SoftwareSerial

Members

Public Constructors	
SoftwareSerial::SoftwareSerial	Constructs a SoftwareSerial object
Public Methods	
SoftwareSerial::begin	Sets the speed (baud rate) for the serial communication
SoftwareSerial::listen	Enables the selected software serial port to listen
SoftwareSerial::end	Same as stopListening
SoftwareSerial::stopListening	Stop listening on the port
SoftwareSerial::peek	Return a character that was received on the RX pin of the software serial port
SoftwareSerial::write	Prints data to the transmit pin of the software serial port as raw bytes
SoftwareSerial::read	Return a character that was received on the RX pin of the software serial port
SoftwareSerial::available	Get the number of bytes (characters) available for reading from a software serial port
SoftwareSerial::flush	Flush the received buffer
SoftwareSerial::setBufferSize	Set buffer size
SoftwareSerial::setAvailableCallback	Set available callback
SoftwareSerial::handle_interrupt	Private methods handles interrupt

SoftwareSerial::SoftwareSerial

Description

Constructs a SoftwareSerial object and sets RX and TX pin, and inverse logic.

Syntax

```
SoftwareSerial::SoftwareSerial(uint8_t receivePin, uint8_t transmitPin, bool inverse_logic /* = false */)
```

Parameters

receivePin: the pin on which to receive serial data
transmitPin: the pin on which to transmit serial data
inverse_logic: is used to invert the sense of incoming bits

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: SoftwareSerialExample

The example demonstrates a software serial test, it receives from serial RX and sends it to serial TX.

```
/*
```

```
The circuit: (BOARD RTL8195A)
```

```
* RX is digital pin 0 (connect to TX of other devices)
```

```
* TX is digital pin 1 (connect to RX of other devices)
```

```
*/
```

```
#include <SoftwareSerial.h>
#if defined(BOARD_RTL8195A)
SoftwareSerial mySerial(0, 1); // RX, TX
#elif defined(BOARD_RTL8710)
SoftwareSerial mySerial(17, 5); // RX, TX
#else
SoftwareSerial mySerial(0, 1); // RX, TX
#endif

void setup() {
// Open serial communications and wait for port to open:
Serial.begin(57600);
while (!Serial) {
; // wait for serial port to connect. Needed for native USB port only
}
Serial.println("Goodnight moon!");
// set the data rate for the SoftwareSerial port
mySerial.begin(4800);
mySerial.println("Hello, world?");
}

void loop() { // run over and over
if (mySerial.available()) {
mySerial.write(mySerial.read());
}
}
```

Notes and Warnings

Software Serial is using hardware serial thus DO NOT change the default pins

SoftwareSerial::begin

Description

Sets the speed (baud rate) for the serial communication

Syntax

```
void SoftwareSerial::begin(long speed)
void SoftwareSerial::begin(long speed, int data_bits, int parity, int stop_bits)
```

```
void SoftwareSerial::begin(long speed, int data_bits, int parity, int stop_bits, int flowctrl, int rtsPin, int ctsPin)
```

Parameters

speed: the baud rate

data_bits: number of data bits, 8 bits(default) or 7 bits

stop_bits: number of stop bits, 1 bit(default), 1.5 bits or 2 bits

flowctrl: flow control pin

rtsPin: request to send pin

ctsPin: clear to send pin

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: SoftwareSerialExample

The example demonstrates a software serial test, it receives from serial RX and sends it to serial TX. Details of the code can be found in the previous section of SoftwareSerial_Basic:: SoftwareSerial.

Notes and Warnings

NA

SoftwareSerial::listen**Description**

Enables the selected software serial port to listen

Syntax

```
bool SoftwareSerial::listen(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Returns true if it replaces another

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

SoftwareSerial::end

Description

Same as stopListening

Syntax

```
void SoftwareSerial::end(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

SoftwareSerial::isListening

Description

Tests to see if requested software serial port is actively listening

Syntax

```
bool SoftwareSerial::isListening(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns “True” if the port is listening.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

SoftwareSerial::stopListening

Description

Stop listening on the port

Syntax

```
bool SoftwareSerial::stopListening(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns “True” if listening on the port is stopped.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

SoftwareSerial::peek

Description

Return a character that was received on the RX pin of the software serial port

Syntax

```
int SoftwareSerial::peek(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the character read, or returns “-1” if none is available.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

SoftwareSerial::write**Description**

Prints data to the transmit pin of the software serial port as raw bytes

Syntax

```
size_t SoftwareSerial::write(uint8_t b)
```

Parameters

b: byte to be written

Returns

The function returns the number of bytes written.

Example Code

Example: SoftwareSerialExample

The example demonstrates a software serial test, it receives from serial RX and sends it to serial TX. Details of the code can be found in the previous section of SoftwareSerial: SoftwareSerial.

Notes and Warnings

NA

SoftwareSerial::read**Description**

Return a character that was received on the RX pin of the software serial port

Syntax

```
int SoftwareSerial::read(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the character read, or -1 if none is available.

Example Code

Example: SoftwareSerialExample

The example demonstrates a software serial test, it receives from serial RX and sends it to serial TX. Details of the code can be found in the previous section of SoftwareSerial:: SoftwareSerial.

Notes and Warnings

NA

SoftwareSerial::available**Description**

Get the number of bytes available for reading from a software serial port

Syntax

int SoftwareSerial::available(void)

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the number of bytes available to read.

Example Code

Example: SoftwareSerialExample

The example demonstrates a software serial test, it receives from serial RX and sends it to serial TX. Details of the code can be found in the previous section of SoftwareSerial:: SoftwareSerial.

Notes and Warnings

NA

SoftwareSerial::flush

Description

Flush the received buffer

Syntax

```
void SoftwareSerial::flush(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

SoftwareSerial::setBufferSize

Description

Set buffer size

Syntax

```
void SoftwareSerial::setBufferSize(uint32_t buffer_size)
```

Parameters

buffer_size: the size of the serial buffer

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

SoftwareSerial::setAvailableCallback**Description**

Set available callback

Syntax

```
void SoftwareSerial::setAvailableCallback(void (*callback)(char c))
```

Parameters

*callback: user-defined serial callback function

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: SoftwareSerialIrqCallback

This example demonstrates the software serial testing using IRQ callback and semaphore. Set callback function “mySerialCallback” to software serial. Whenever there is data comes in, “mySerialCallback” is invoked. In this sketch, it does nothing until the end of the line. And then it sends a semaphore. The loop() uses a non-busy loop to wait for the semaphore. To test this sketch, you need to type something on software serial and then press Enter.

```
/*
```

```
The circuit: (BOARD RTL8195A)
```

```
RX is digital pin 0 (connect to TX of other devices)
```

```
TX is digital pin 1 (connect to RX of other devices)
```

```
*/
```

```
#include <SoftwareSerial.h>
```

```
#if defined(BOARD_RTL8195A)
```

```
SoftwareSerial mySerial(0, 1); // RX, TX
```

```
#elif defined(BOARD_RTL8710)
```

```
SoftwareSerial mySerial(17, 5); // RX, TX
```

```
#else
```

```
SoftwareSerial mySerial(0, 1); // RX, TX
```

```
#endif
```

```
uint32_t semaID;
```

```
// The callback is hooking at UART IRQ handler and please don't do heavy task here.
```

```
void mySerialCallback(char c)
```

```
{
```

```
/* The parameter c is only for peeking. The actual data is
 * still in the buffer of SoftwareSerial.
 */
if (c == 'r' || c == 'n') {
  os_semaphore_release(semaID);
}
}

void setup() {
  // use 1 count for binary semaphore
  semaID = os_semaphore_create(1);
  // There is a token in the semaphore, clear it.
  os_semaphore_wait(semaID, 0xFFFFFFFF);
  // set the data rate for the SoftwareSerial port
  mySerial.begin(38400);
  mySerial.setAvailableCallback(mySerialCallback);
}

void loop() { // run over and over
  // wait semaphore for 5s timeout
  if (os_semaphore_wait(semaID, 5 * 1000)) {
    // we got data before timeout
    while(mySerial.available()) {
      mySerial.print((char)mySerial.read());
    }
    mySerial.println();
  } else {
    mySerial.println("No data comes in.");
  }
}
```

Notes and Warnings

NA

SoftwareSerial::handle_interrupt

Description

A private method handles the interrupt

Syntax

```
void handle_interrupt(uint32_t id, uint32_t event)
```

Parameters

id: the interrupt id

event: interrupt event

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

SoftwareSerial_Readme

The Ameba Software Serial related APIs and examples are works based on libraries formerly known as NewSoftSerial.h by Mikal Hart (<http://arduiniiana.org/libraries/newsoftserial>).

These include,

SoftwareSerial.cpp

SoftwareSerial.h

These libraries are under GNU Lesser General Public License.

The Ameba GPS related APIs and examples are works based on Adafruit GPS library written by Limor Fried/Ladyada for Adafruit Industries (<http://www.adafruit.com/products/746>).

These include,

Adafruit_GPS.cpp

Adafruit_GPS.h

These libraries are under BSD License.

Class AmebaILI9341

AmebaILI9341 Class

Description

Defines a class to use ILI9341 TFT SPI display for Ameba.

Syntax

```
class AmebaILI9341
```

Members

Public Constructors	
AmebaILI9341::AmebaILI9341	Constructs an AmebaILI9341 object
Public Methods	
AmebaILI9341::begin	Initialize SPI, pin mapping and screen configuration
AmebaILI9341::setAddress	Initialize image size and position
AmebaILI9341::writecommand	SPI transfer a command
AmebaILI9341::writedata	SPI transfer a piece of data
AmebaILI9341::setRotation	Set screen orientation
AmebaILI9341::fillScreen	Fill the screen with a color
AmebaILI9341::clr	Clear screen
AmebaILI9341::fillRectangle	Fill a rectangular space with a color
AmebaILI9341::drawPixel	Turn on a pixel on the screen
AmebaILI9341::drawChar	To print a character on the screen
AmebaILI9341::drawLine	Draw line on the screen
AmebaILI9341::drawRectangle	Draw a rectangle on the screen
AmebaILI9341::drawCircle	Draw a circle on the screen
AmebaILI9341::write	Same as drawChar
AmebaILI9341::getWidth	Return the width 240
AmebaILI9341::getHeight	Return the height 320
AmebaILI9341::setCursor	Set cursor to the desired position
AmebaILI9341::setForeground	Set foreground color
AmebaILI9341::setBackground	Set background color
AmebaILI9341::setFontSize	Set character font size
AmebaILI9341::reset	Reset pin to High or Low

AmebaILI9341::AmebaILI9341

Description

Constructs an AmebaILI9341 object and set CS, DC and RESET pins .

Syntax

```
AmebaILI9341::AmebaILI9341(int csPin, int dcPin, int resetPin)
```

Parameters

csPin: pin for Chip Select dcPin: pin for Data/Command resetPin: pin for Reset

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: : PM25_ON_ILI9341_TFT_LCD

This example demonstrates how to read pm2.5 value on PMS 3003 air-condition sensor and display it on ILI9341 TFT LCD.

```
/*
```

PMS 3003 pin map is as follow:

PIN1 :VCC, connect to 5V

PIN2 :GND

PIN3 :SET, 0:Standby mode, 1:operating mode

PIN4 :RXD :Serial RX

PIN5 :TXD :Serial TX

PIN6 :RESET

PIN7 :NC

PIN8 :NC

In this example, we only use Serial to get PM 2.5 value.

The circuit:

* RX is digital pin 0 (connect to TX of PMS 3003)

* TX is digital pin 1 (connect to RX of PMS 3003)

For RTL8195A ILI9341 TFT LCD with SPI interface has these pins:

D/C : connect to pin 9

CS : connect to pin 10

MOSI : connect to pin 11

MISO : connect to pin 12

CLK : connect to pin 13

VCC : connect to 3V3

GND : connect to GND

```
*/
```

```
#include "SoftwareSerial.h"
```

```
#include "SPI.h"
```

```
#include "AmebaILI9341.h"
```

```
#if defined(BOARD_RTL8195A)
```

```
SoftwareSerial mySerial(0, 1); // RX, TX
```

```
#define TFT_RESET 8
```

```
#define TFT_DC 9
```

```
#define TFT_CS 10
```

```
#elif defined(BOARD_RTL8710)
```

```
SoftwareSerial mySerial(17, 5); // RX, TX
```

```
// IMPORTANT: Due to limit pin, we do not connect TFT_RESET pin.
```

```
#define TFT_RESET 0xFFFFFFFF
#define TFT_DC 2
#define TFT_CS 10
#endif

AmebaILI9341 tft = AmebaILI9341(TFT_CS, TFT_DC, TFT_RESET);

#define ILI9341_SPI_FREQUENCY 20000000
#define pmsDataLen 32
uint8_t buf[pmsDataLen];
int idx = 0;
int pm10 = 0;
int last_pm25 = 0;
int pm25 = 0;
int pm100 = 0;
uint16_t pm25color[] = {
  0x9FF3,
  0x37E0,
  0x3660,
  0xFFE0,
  0xFE60,
  0xFCC0,
  0xFB2C,
  0xF800,
  0x9800,
  0xC99F
};

void setup() {
  Serial.begin(57600);
  mySerial.begin(9600); // PMS 3003 UART has baud rate 9600
  SPI.setDefaultFrequency(ILI9341_SPI_FREQUENCY);
  tft.begin();
  drawPictureFrames();
}

void loop() { // run over and over
  uint8_t c;
  idx = 0;
  memset(buf, 0, pmsDataLen);
```

```

while (true) {
while (c != 0x42) {
while (!mySerial.available());
c = mySerial.read();
}
while (!mySerial.available());
c = mySerial.read();
if (c == 0x4d) {
// now we got a correct header)
buf[idx++] = 0x42;
buf[idx++] = 0x4d;
break;
}
}

while (idx != pmsDataLen) {
while (!mySerial.available());
buf[idx++] = mySerial.read();
}

pm10 = ( buf[10] << 8 ) | buf[11];
last_pm25 = pm25;
pm25 = ( buf[12] << 8 ) | buf[13];
pm100 = ( buf[14] << 8 ) | buf[15];
updateValueToTftScreen();
}

void drawPictureFrames() {
tft.setRotation(1);
tft.clr();
tft.setFontSize(1);
// Upper title
tft.setFontSize(1);
tft.setCursor(20,20);
tft.print("PM2.5 DETECTOR");
// PM 2.5 Circle Frame
tft.drawCircle(100,130,60, ILI9341_BLUE);
tft.drawCircle(100,130,61, ILI9341_BLUE);
tft.setFontSize(1);

```

```
tft.setCursor(90,85);
tft.print("PM2.5");
tft.setFontSize(1);
tft.setCursor(90,170);
tft.print("um/m3");
// PM 10 Circle Frame
tft.drawCircle(220,70,40, ILI9341_BLUE);
tft.setFontSize(1);
tft.setCursor(210,40);
tft.print("PM10");
tft.setFontSize(1);
tft.setCursor(205,95);
tft.print("um/m3");
// PM 1.0 Circle Frame
tft.drawCircle(220,170,40, ILI9341_BLUE);
tft.setFontSize(1);
tft.setCursor(205,140);
tft.print("PM1.0");
tft.setFontSize(1);
tft.setCursor(205,195);
tft.print("um/m3");
// right side bar, referenced from: http://taqm.epa.gov.tw/taqm/tw/
tft.fillRect(290, 30+ 0*2, 10, 12*2, pm25color[0]); // 0~11
tft.fillRect(290, 30+12*2, 10, 12*2, pm25color[1]); // 12-23
tft.fillRect(290, 30+24*2, 10, 12*2, pm25color[2]); // 24-35
tft.fillRect(290, 30+36*2, 10, 6*2, pm25color[3]); // 36-41
tft.fillRect(290, 30+42*2, 10, 6*2, pm25color[4]); // 42-47
tft.fillRect(290, 30+48*2, 10, 6*2, pm25color[5]); // 48-53
tft.fillRect(290, 30+54*2, 10, 6*2, pm25color[6]); // 54-58
tft.fillRect(290, 30+59*2, 10, 6*2, pm25color[7]); // 59-64
tft.fillRect(290, 30+65*2, 10, 6*2, pm25color[8]); // 65-70
tft.fillRect(290, 30+71*2, 10, 10*2, pm25color[9]); // >=71
tft.setCursor(302, 30);
tft.setFontSize(1);
tft.print("0");
tft.setCursor(302, 30+36*2);
```

```
tft.print("36");
tft.setCursor(302, 30+54*2);
tft.print("54");
tft.setCursor(302, 30+71*2);
tft.print("71");
// bottom right text
tft.setCursor(210,230);
tft.setFontSize(1);
tft.print("Powered by Realtek");
updateValueToTftScreen();
}
void updateValueToTftScreen() {
tft.setCursor(60, 111);
tft.setFontSize(5);
tft.setForeground( getPm25Color(pm25) );
if (pm25 < 10) {
tft.print(" ");
} else if (pm25 < 100) {
tft.print(" ");
}
tft.print(pm25);
tft.setCursor(195,60);
tft.setFontSize(3);
if (pm100 < 10) {
tft.print(" ");
} else if (pm100 < 100) {
tft.print(" ");
}
tft.print(pm100);
tft.setCursor(198,160);
if (pm10 < 10) {
tft.print(" ");
} else if (pm10 < 100) {
tft.print(" ");
}
tft.print(pm10);
```

```
tft.setFontSize(1);
tft.setForeground(ILI9341_WHITE);
if (last_pm25 > 80) {
tft.fillRect(275, 80*2+30-3, 12, 8, ILI9341_BLACK);
} else {
tft.fillRect(275, last_pm25*2+30-3, 12, 8, ILI9341_BLACK);
}
if (pm25 > 80) {
tft.setCursor(275, 80*2+30-3);
} else {
tft.setCursor(275, pm25*2+30-3);
}
tft.print("=>");
}

uint16_t getPm25Color(int v) {
if (v < 12) {
return pm25color[0];
} else if (v < 24) {
return pm25color[1];
} else if (v < 36) {
return pm25color[2];
} else if (v < 42) {
return pm25color[3];
} else if (v < 48) {
return pm25color[4];
} else if (v < 54) {
return pm25color[5];
} else if (v < 59) {
return pm25color[6];
} else if (v < 65) {
return pm25color[7];
} else if (v < 71) {
return pm25color[8];
} else {
return pm25color[9];
}
```

```
}
```

Notes and Warnings

NA

AmebaILI9341::begin**Description**

Initialize hardware SPI, pin mapping and screen configuration

Syntax

```
void AmebaILI9341::begin(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: PM25_ON_ILI9341_TFT_LCD

Details of the code are given in the previous section of AmebaILI9341:: AmebaILI9341.

Notes and Warnings

This method is required to run first before other operations on the display.

AmebaILI9341::setAddress**Description**

Initialize image size and positioning on the display

Syntax

```
void AmebaILI9341::setAddress(uint16_t x0, uint16_t y0, uint16_t x1, uint16_t y1)
```

Parameters

x0: leftmost coordinate of the image y0: top coordinate of the image x1: rightmost coordinate of the image y1: bottom coordinate of the image

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Do not use this to set the cursor, use the “setCursor” method instead.

AmebaILI9341::writecommand**Description**

Write a single-byte command to display

Syntax

```
void AmebaILI9341::writecommand(uint8_t command)
```

Parameters

command: a single byte command

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

AmebaILI9341::writedata

Description

Write 1 byte of data to display

Syntax

```
void AmebaILI9341::writedata(uint8_t data)
```

Parameters

data: 1 byte data

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Only use this method to write 1 byte at a time.

AmebaILI9341::setRotation

Description

Setting screen orientation, “0” for no rotation, “1” for 90 degrees rotation and so on so forth.

Syntax

```
void AmebaILI9341::setRotation(uint8_t m)/span> Parameters
```

m: one of the 4 rotation modes -> “0” for no rotation, “1” for 90⁰, “2” for 180⁰, “3” for 270⁰

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: PM25_ON_ILI9341_TFT_LCD

Details of the code are given in the previous section of AmebaILI9341:: AmebaILI9341.

Notes and Warnings

if m=4, it's equivalent to mode 0, and m=5 for mode 1, m=6 for mode 2 so on so forth.

AmebaILI9341::fillScreen

Description

Fill the entire screen with one color

Syntax

```
void AmebaILI9341::fillScreen(uint16_t color)
```

Parameters

color: a 16-bit color reference defined in AmebaILI9341.h

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Refer to AmebaILI9341.h for available colors.

AmebaILI9341::clr

Description

Fill the entire screen with a certain background-color

Syntax

```
void AmebaILI9341::clr(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: PM25_ON_ILI9341_TFT_LCD

Details of the code are given in the previous section of AmebaILI9341:: AmebaILI9341

Notes and Warnings

background-color can be set by calling setBackground method.

AmebaILI9341::fillRectangle

Description

Fill a rectangular space with a color on the screen

Syntax

```
void AmebaILI9341::fillRectangle(int16_t x, int16_t y, int16_t w, int16_t h, uint16_t color)
```

Parameters

x: leftmost coordinate of the image y: top coordinate of the image w: width of the image h: height of the image color: the color of the image

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: PM25_ON_ILI9341_TFT_LCD

Details of the code are given in the previous section of AmebaILI9341:: AmebaILI9341.

Notes and Warnings

NA

AmebaILI9341::drawPixel

Description

Turn on a pixel on the screen

Syntax

```
void AmebaILI9341::drawPixel(int16_t x, int16_t y, uint16_t color)
```

Parameters

x: leftmost coordinate of the image y: top coordinate of the image color: the color of the image

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

AmebaILI9341::drawChar

Description

Draw character on the screen

Syntax

```
void AmebaILI9341::drawChar(unsigned char c) void AmebaILI9341::drawChar(int16_t x, int16_t y, unsigned char c, uint16_t _fontcolor, uint16_t _background, uint8_t _fontsize)
```

Parameters

x: leftmost coordinate of the image y: top coordinate of the image c: a character _fontcolor: font color _background: background color _fontsize: font size

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

In the actual example, the Print method is used to print a string of character on the screen instead of using this method.

AmebaILI9341::drawLine

Description

Draw a straight line on the screen

Syntax

```
void AmebaILI9341::drawLine(int16_t x0, int16_t y0, int16_t x1, int16_t y1) void AmebaILI9341::drawLine(int16_t x0, int16_t y0, int16_t x1, int16_t y1, uint16_t color)
```

Parameters

x0: leftmost coordinate of the image y0: top coordinate of the image x1: leftmost coordinate of the image y1: top coordinate of the image color: the color of the image

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

AmebaILI9341::drawRectangle**Description**

Draw a rectangular shape on the screen

Syntax

```
void AmebaILI9341::drawRectangle(int16_t x, int16_t y, int16_t w, int16_t h) void AmebaILI9341::drawRectangle(int16_t x, int16_t y, int16_t w, int16_t h, uint16_t color)
```

Parameters

x: leftmost coordinate of the image y: top coordinate of the image w: width of the image h: height of the image color: the color of the image

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

AmebaILI9341::drawCircle**Description**

Draw a circular shape on the screen

Syntax

```
void AmebaILI9341::drawCircle(int16_t x0, int16_t y0, int16_t r) void AmebaILI9341::drawCircle(int16_t x0, int16_t y0, int16_t r, uint16_t color)
```

Parameters

x0: leftmost coordinate of the image y0: top coordinate of the image r: radius of the image color: the color of the image

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Include “AmebaServo.h” to use the class function.

AmebaILI9341::write

Description

Same as drawChar, write a character on the screen

Syntax

```
size_t AmebaILI9341::write(uint8_t c)
```

Parameters

c: a character to be written on the screen

Returns

Number of bytes written

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

This an inherited method from Print class and is seldom used.

AmebaILI9341::getWidth

Description

Get the width of the image

Syntax

```
int16_t AmebaILI9341::getWidth(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Width of the image

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

AmebaILI9341::getHeight

Description

Get the height of the image

Syntax

```
int16_t AmebaILI9341::getHeight(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Height of the image

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

AmebaILI9341::setCursor**Description**

Set the cursor to a specific position on the screen

Syntax

```
void AmebaILI9341::setCursor(int16_t x, int16_t y)
```

Parameters

x: coordinate on the x-axis y: coordinate on the y-axis

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: PM25_ON_ILI9341_TFT_LCD

Details of the code are given in the previous section of AmebaILI9341:: AmebaILI9341.

Notes and Warnings

NA

AmebaILI9341::setForeground**Description**

Set foreground color

Syntax

```
void AmebaILI9341::setForeground(uint16_t color)
```

Parameters

color: one of the colors available in AmebaILI9341.h

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: PM25_ON_ILI9341_TFT_LCD

Details of the code are given in the previous section of AmebaILI9341:: AmebaILI9341.

Notes and Warnings

NA

AmebaILI9341::setBackground**Description**

Set background color

Syntax

```
void AmebaILI9341::setBackground(uint16_t _background)
```

Parameters

_background: one of the colors available in AmebaILI9341.h

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: PM25_ON_ILI9341_TFT_LCD

Details of the code are given in the previous section of AmebaILI9341:: AmebaILI9341.

Notes and Warnings

NA

AmebaILI9341::setFontSize

Description

Set the font size of the characters printed on the screen.

Syntax

```
void AmebaILI9341::setFontSize(uint8_t size)
```

Parameters

size: font size, default 1 for smallest, 5 for largest font size

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: PM25_ON_ILI9341_TFT_LCD

Details of the code are given in the previous section of AmebaILI9341:: AmebaILI9341.

Notes and Warnings

NA

AmebaILI9341::reset

Description

Reset the pin to High or Low

Syntax

```
void AmebaILI9341::reset(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

Class SPISettings_SPIClass**SPISettings Class****Description**

Defines a class to set SPI parameters.

Syntax

```
class SPISettings
```

Members

Public Constructors	
SPISettings::SPISettings	Create a SPISettings object and set SPI clock speed, bit order and data mode

SPISettings::SPISettings**Description**

Construct an object and configure SPI parameters — clock speed, bit order and data model to the preferred default value.

Syntax

```
SPISettings YourObject(uint32_t clock, BitOrder bitOrder, uint8_t dataMode);
```

Parameters

clock: SPI clock speed, default is 4000000

bitOrder: order of bit stream, MSB first or LSB first, default is MSBFIRST

dataMode: There are 4 modes -> SPI_MODE0~3, default is SPI_MODE0

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

This class seldom used alone, it is always used with beginTransaction() as a parameter in SPIClass.

SPIClass Class

Description

Defines a class of SPI implementation for Ameba.

Syntax

```
class SPIClass
```

Members

Public Constructors	
SPIClass::SPIClass	Constructs an SPI object
Public Methods	
SPIClass::transfer	Transfer data through SPI
SPIClass::transfer16	Transfer a 16-bits data through SPI
SPIClass::beginTransaction	Set slave select pin and SPI initial settings
SPIClass::endTransaction	Stop SPI transaction
SPIClass::begin	Associate each SPI pin to Ameba pin using ameba HAL APIs
SPIClass::end	Stop SPI master mode
SPIClass::setBitOrder	Set MSB first or LSB first
SPIClass::setDataMode	Set to one of the four data modes
SPIClass::setClockDivider	Set to correct clock speed (no effect on Ameba)
SPIClass::setDefaultFrequency	Set default SPI frequency

SPIClass::SPIClass

Description

Construct an SPI object, create a pointer to the object, and attach “MOSI, MISO, CLK, and SS” to each pin on Ameba.

Syntax

```
SPIClass(void *pSpiObj, int mosi, int miso, int clk, int ss);
```

Parameters

pSpiObj: SPI pointer to the object

mosi: master out slave in

miso: master in slave out

clk: clock

ss: slave select

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code


```
SPIClass SPI((void *)&spi_obj0), 11, 12, 13, 10);
```

Notes and Warnings

2 SPI objects are created in the library for 2 different hardware SPI on Ameba (if applicable), use “SPI” for first hardware SPI and “SPI1” for the second.

SPIClass::transfer

Description

Calling HAL API to send data in the buffer to the slave

Syntax

```
byte SPIClass::transfer (byte _pin, uint8_t _data, SPITransferMode _mode);  
byte SPIClass::transfer (uint8_t _data, SPITransferMode _mode);  
void SPIClass::transfer (byte _pin, void *_buf, size_t _count, SPITransferMode _mode);  
void SPIClass::transfer (void *_buf, size_t _count, SPITransferMode _mode);
```

Parameters

_pin: Slave select pin
_data: Actual data being sent over
_mode: SPI transfer mode
_count: number of bytes of data
_buf: data buffer

Returns

Void or “0” in case of error, “d” in case success

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

SPIClass::transfer16

Description

Same as “transfer” method above except data being of 16-bits.

Syntax

```
uint16_t SPIClass::transfer16(byte _pin, uint16_t _data, SPITransferMode _mode)
uint16_t SPIClass::transfer16(uint16_t _data, SPITransferMode _mode)
```

Parameters

_pin: Slave select pin
_data: Actual data being sent over
_mode: SPI transfer mode

Returns

The data being transferred

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

SPIClass::beginTransaction

Description

Set slave select pin and initialize SPI with default settings using SPISettings class.

Syntax

```
void SPIClass::beginTransaction(uint8_t pin, SPISettings settings)
void SPIClass::beginTransaction(SPISettings settings)
```

Parameters

pin: slave select pin
settings: an object of SPISettings class

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Refer to SPISettings class for details of the initial settings.

SPIClass::endTransaction**Description**

Set slave select pin to 1 and stop SPI transaction.

Syntax

```
void SPIClass::endTransaction(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

SPIClass::begin**Description**

Calling HAL APIs to initialize SPI pins to physical Ameba pins and set SPI format and frequency

Syntax

```
void SPIClass::begin(void)  
void SPIClass::begin(int ss)
```

Parameters

void or ss: slave select

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

This is a required method to use SPI on Ameba.

SPIClass::end

Description

Free hardware SPI from any activity.

Syntax

```
void SPIClass::end(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

SPIClass::setBitOrder

Description

A specific method to set bit order to either MSB first or LSB first and set slave select pin.

Syntax

```
void SPIClass::setBitOrder(uint8_t _pin, BitOrder _bitOrder)  
void SPIClass::setBitOrder(BitOrder _order)
```

Parameters

_pin: slave select

_bitOrder: bit order -> either MSB first or LSB first

_order: same as above

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

SPIClass::setDataMode**Description**

A specific method to set data mode to one of the 4 modes (default: SPI_MODE0) and set slave select pin.

Syntax

```
void SPIClass::setDataMode(uint8_t _pin, uint8_t _mode)
```

```
void SPIClass::setDataMode(uint8_t _mode)
```

Parameters

_pin: slave select

_mode: one of the 4 modes (default: SPI_MODE0)

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

SPIClass::setClockDivider**Description**

A specific method to set to divider in order to get correct clock speed

Syntax

```
void SPIClass::setClockDivider(uint8_t _pin, uint8_t _divider)
```

```
void SPIClass::setClockDivider(uint8_t _div)
```

Parameters

_pin: slave select
_divider: clock divider
_div: same as above

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

This function does not affect the Ameba board.

SPIClass::setDefaultFrequency

Description

A specific method to set default SPI frequency

Syntax

```
void SPIClass::setDefaultFrequency(int _frequency)
```

Parameters

_frequency: the default SPI frequency

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: PM25_on_ILI9341_TFT_LCD

Details of the code are given in the previous section of AmebaILI9341:: AmebaILI9341.

Notes and Warnings

Take note that defaultFrequency = _frequency.

SPI_Readme

The Ameba SPI related APIs and examples are works based on SPI Master library for arduino written by Cristian Maglie <c.maglie@arduino.cc> and Paul Stoffregen <paul@pjrc.com> (Transaction API).

These include,
 SPI.cpp
 SPI.h

These libraries are under GNU Lesser General Public License, version 2.1.

Wiring_OS_API

Wiring OS API

Description

A wrapper to CMSIS (Cortex Microcontroller Software Interface Standard) OS API which serve as a RTOS to create multi-threaded application with real-time behaviour.

Syntax

NA

Members

Public Methods	
os_thread_create_arduino	Create a thread and add it to Active Threads and set it to state READY
os_thread_get_id_arduino	Return the thread ID of the current running thread
os_thread_terminate_arduino	Terminate execution of a thread and remove it from Active Threads
os_thread_yield_arduino	Pass control to next thread that is in state READY
os_thread_set_priority_arduino	Change priority of an active thread
os_thread_get_priority_arduino	Get current priority of an active thread
os_signal_set_arduino	Set the specified Signal Flags of an active thread
os_signal_clear_arduino	Clear the specified Signal Flags of an active thread
os_signal_wait_arduino	Wait for one or more Signal Flags to become signaled for the current RUNNING thread
os_timer_create_arduino	Create a timer
os_timer_start_arduino	Start or restart a timer
os_timer_stop_arduino	Stop the timer
os_timer_delete_arduino	Delete a timer that was created by os_timer_create
os_semaphore_create_arduino	Create and Initialize a Semaphore object used for managing resources
os_semaphore_wait_arduino	Wait until a Semaphore token becomes available
os_semaphore_release_arduino	Release a Semaphore token
os_semaphore_delete_arduino	Delete a Semaphore that was created by os_semaphore_create
os_get_free_heap_size_arduino	Return the available heap memory space when called

os_thread_create_arduino

Description

Create a thread and add it to Active Threads and set it to state READY.

Syntax

```
uint32_t os_thread_create_arduino (void (*task)(const void *argument), void *argument, int priority, uint32_t stack_size);
```

Parameters

task: task Function pointer which is the thread body. It should not run into the end of function unless os_thread_terminate is invoked

argument: the data pointer which brings to task

priority: The underlying os is FreeRTOS. It executes tasks with highest priority which are not in idle state.

stack_size: The stack_size is used as memory heap only for this task.

Returns

The thread id which is used in thread operation and signalling.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

os_thread_get_id_arduino**Description**

Return the thread ID of the current running thread

Syntax

```
uint32_t os_thread_get_id_arduino (void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Current thread id which calls os_thread_get_id.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

os_thread_terminate_arduino**Description**

Terminate execution of a thread and remove it from Active Threads

Syntax

```
uint32_t os_thread_terminate_arduino (uint32_t thread_id);
```

Parameters

thread_id: Terminate the thread with specific thread_id

Returns

os_status code

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Thread should not ended without terminate first.

os_thread_yield_arduino**Description**

Pass control to next thread that is in state READY

Syntax

```
uint32_t os_thread_yield_arduino (void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

os_status code

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

By default, the minimal execution unit is 1 millisecond. In a scenario that if a thread with smaller want to handout execution right to a thread with higher priority immediately without waiting for the ending of current 1 millisecond, then invoke `os_thread_yield` can transfer execution right to OS's idle task and check which is the next execution thread.

os_thread_set_priority_arduino

Description

Change priority of an active thread

Syntax

```
uint32_t os_thread_set_priority_arduino (uint32_t thread_id, int priority);
```

Parameters

thread_id: The target thread with the thread id to be changed

priority: The updated priority

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

os_thread_get_priority_arduino

Description

Get current priority of an active thread

Syntax

```
uint32_t os_thread_get_priority_arduino (uint32_t thread_id);
```

Parameters

thread_id: The target thread with the thread id to be searched

Returns

os_priority

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

os_signal_set_arduino**Description**

Set the specified Signal Flags of an active thread

Syntax

```
int32_t os_signal_set_arduino (uint32_t thread_id, int32_t signals);
```

Parameters

thread_id: Send signal to a thread with the thread id

signals: the signals to be send

Returns

os_status code

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

os_signal_clear_arduino**Description**

Clear the specified Signal Flags of an active thread

Syntax

```
int32_t os_signal_clear_arduino (uint32_t thread_id, int32_t signals);
```

Parameters

thread_id: Clear signal to a thread with the thread id

signals: The signals to be clear

Returns

os_status code

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

os_signal_wait_arduino

Description

Wait for one or more Signal Flags to become signaled for the current RUNNING thread

Syntax

```
os_event_t os_signal_wait_arduino (int32_t signals, uint32_t millisec);
```

Parameters

signals: the signals to be wait

millisec: the timeout value if no signal comes in. Fill in 0xFFFFFFFF for infinite wait

Returns

os_status code

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

os_timer_create_arduino

Description

Create a timer

Syntax

```
uint32_t os_timer_create_arduino (void (*callback)(void const *argument), uint8_t isPeriodic, void *argument);
```

Parameters

callback: The function to be invoke when timer timeout

isPeriodic: OS_TIMER_ONCE or OS_TIMER_PERIODIC

argument: The argument that is bring into callback function

Returns

timer id

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

os_timer_start_arduino**Description**

Start or restart a timer

Syntax

```
uint32_t os_timer_start_arduino (uint32_t timer_id, uint32_t millisec);
```

Parameters

timer_id: The timer id obtained from by os_timer_create

millisec: The delays after timer starts

Returns

os_status code

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

os_timer_stop_arduino

Description

Stop the timer

Syntax

```
uint32_t os_timer_stop_arduino (uint32_t timer_id);
```

Parameters

timer_id: The timer id obtained from by os_timer_create

Returns

os_status code

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

os_timer_delete_arduino

Description

Delete a timer that was created by os_timer_create

Syntax

```
uint32_t os_timer_delete_arduino (uint32_t timer_id);
```

Parameters

timer_id: The timer id obtained from by os_timer_create

Returns

os_status code

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

os_semaphore_create_arduino

Description

Create and Initialize a Semaphore object used for managing resources

Syntax

```
uint32_t os_semaphore_create_arduino (int32_t count);
```

Parameters

count: The number of available resources

Returns

semaphore ID

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

os_semaphore_wait_arduino

Description

Wait until a Semaphore token becomes available

Syntax

```
int32_t os_semaphore_wait_arduino (uint32_t semaphore_id, uint32_t millisec);
```

Parameters

semaphore_id: semaphore id obtained from os_semaphore_create

millisec: timeout value

Returns

os_status code

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

os_semaphore_release_arduino

Description

Release a Semaphore token

Syntax

```
uint32_t os_semaphore_release_arduino (uint32_t semaphore_id);
```

Parameters

semaphore_id: semaphore id obtained from os_semaphore_create

Returns

os_status code

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

os_semaphore_delete_arduino

Description

Delete a Semaphore that was created by os_semaphore_create

Syntax

```
uint32_t os_semaphore_delete_arduino (uint32_t semaphore_id);
```


Parameters

semaphore_id: semaphore id obtained from os_semaphore_create

Returns

os_status code

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

os_get_free_heap_size_arduino**Description**

Return the available heap memory space when called

Syntax

```
size_t os_get_free_heap_size_arduino(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

current free heap size

Example Code

Example: MemInfo

Notes and Warnings

NA

Class WDT

WDT Class

Description

A class used for initializing, starting, stopping watchdog timer.

Syntax

```
class WDT
```

Members

Public Constructors	
A public constructor should not be used as this class is intended to be a singleton class. Access member functions using the object instance named WDT.	

Public Methods	
WDT:: InitWatchdog	Initializes the watchdog, include time setting, and mode register
WDT:: StartWatchdog	Start the watchdog counting
WDT:: StopWatchdog	Stop the watchdog counting
WDT:: RefreshWatchdog	Refresh the watchdog counting to prevent WDT timeout
WDT:: InitWatchdogIRQ	Switch the watchdog timer to interrupt mode and register a watchdog timer timeout interrupt handler

WDT:: InitWatchdog

Description

Initializes the watchdog, include time setting, and mode register.

Syntax

```
void InitWatchdog(uint32_t timeout_ms);
```

Parameters

timeout_ms: the watch-dog timer timeout value in millisecond (ms). The default action after watchdog timer timeout is to reset the whole system.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: WatchdogTimer

```

/*
 * This example describes how to use watchdog api.
 * In this example, watchdog is setup to 5s timeout.
 * Watchdog won't bark if we refresh it before timeout in smallTask.
 * The timer is also reloaded after refresh.
 * Otherwise, while running bigTask, watchdog will restart system in default or call callback function if registered.
 */

#include "wdt.h"

#define RUN_CALLBACK_IF_WATCHDOG_BARKS (0)

WDT wdt;

void setup() {
  Serial.begin(115200);
  wdt.InitWatchdog(5000); // setup 5s watchdog
  #if RUN_CALLBACK_IF_WATCHDOG_BARKS
    wdt.InitWatchdogIRQ(my_watchdog_irq_handler, 0);
  #else
    // system would restart in default when watchdog barks
  #endif
  wdt.StartWatchdog(); // enable watchdog timer
  successfulTask();
  failedTask();
  while (1)
  ;
}

void loop() {
}

void successfulTask(void) {
  Serial.println(".....doing small task.....");
  for (int i = 0; i < 50000000; i++) // dummy task
    asm("nop");
  Serial.println("refresh watchdogrn");
  wdt.RefreshWatchdog();
}

/*
 * Doing this task will lead to failed refresh the
 * watchdog timer within the time limits of 5 seconds

```

```
*/  
void failedTask(void) {  
  Serial.println(".....doing big task.....");  
  for (int i = 0; i < 10; i++) {  
    Serial.print("doing dummy task #");  
    Serial.println(i, DEC);  
    for (int j = 0; j < 50000000; j++) // dummy task  
    asm(" nop");  
  }  
  Serial.println("refresh watchdogrn");  
  wdt.RefreshWatchdog();  
}  
void my_watchdog_irq_handler(uint32_t id) {  
  printf("watchdog barks!!!rn");  
  WDG_Cmd(DISABLE);  
}
```

Notes and Warnings

NA

WDT:: StartWatchdog

Description

Start the watchdog counting.

Syntax

```
void StartWatchdog(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: WatchdogTimer

You may refer to the code in previous section of WDT::InitWatchdog.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WDT:: StopWatchdog**Description**

Stop the watchdog counting.

Syntax

```
void StopWatchdog(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: WatchdogTimer

You may refer to the code in previous section of WDT::InitWatchdog.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WDT:: RefreshWatchdog**Description**

Refresh the watchdog counting to prevent WDT timeout.

Syntax

```
void RefreshWatchdog(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: WatchdogTimer

You may refer to the code in previous section of WDT::InitWatchdog.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WDT:: InitWatchdogIRQ

Description

Switch the watchdog timer to interrupt mode and register a watchdog timer timeout interrupt handler. The interrupt handler will be called when the watchdog timer is timeout.

Syntax

```
void WDT::InitWatchdogIRQ(wdt_irq_handler handler, uint32_t id)
```

Parameters

handler: the callback function for WDT timeout interrupt.

id: the parameter for the callback function

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: WatchdogTimer

You may refer to the code in previous section of WDT::InitWatchdog.

Notes and Warnings

NA

Class WiFi

WiFiClass Class

Description

Defines a class of WiFi and network implementation for Ameba.

Syntax

```
class WiFiClass
```

Members

Public Constructors	
WiFiClass::WiFiClass	Constructs a WiFiClass object and initializes the WiFi libraries and network settings
Public Methods	
WiFiClass::firmwareVersion	Get firmware version
WiFiClass:: begin	Start Wifi connection for OPEN networks
WiFiClass:: config	Configure network IP settings
WiFiClass:: setDNS	Set the DNS server IP address to use
WiFiClass:: disconnect	Disconnect from the network
WiFiClass:: macAddress	Get the interface MAC address
WiFiClass:: localIP	Get the interface IP address
WiFiClass:: subnetMask	Get the interface subnet mask address
WiFiClass:: gatewayIP	Get the gateway IP address
WiFiClass:: SSID	Return the current SSID associated with the network
WiFiClass:: BSSID	Return the current BSSID associated with the network
WiFiClass:: RSSI	Return the current RSSI (Received Signal Strength in dBm) associated with the network
WiFiClass:: encryption-Type	Return the Encryption Type associated with the network
WiFiClass:: scanNetworks	Start scan WiFi networks available
WiFiClass:: SSID	Return the SSID discovered during the network scan
WiFiClass:: encryption-Type	Return the encryption type of the networks discovered during the scanNetworks
WiFiClass:: encryption-TypeEx	Return the security type and encryption type of the networks discovered during the scanNetworks
WiFiClass:: RSSI	Return the RSSI of the networks discovered during the scanNetworks
WiFiClass:: status	Return Connection status
WiFiClass:: hostByName	Resolve the given hostname to an IP address
WiFiClass:: apbegin	Start AP mode
WiFiClass:: disablePower-Save	Disable power-saving mode

WiFiClass::WiFiClass

Description

Constructs a WiFiClass object and initializes the WiFi libraries and network settings.

Syntax

```
WiFiClass::WiFiClass()
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

An instance of `WiFiClass` is created as `WiFi` inside `WiFi.h` and is extern for direct use.

WiFiClass::firmwareVersion

Description

Get firmware version

Syntax

```
char* WiFiClass::firmwareVersion()
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

WiFi firmware version

Example Code

Example: `ConnectWithWPA`

This example demos how to connect to an unencrypted WiFi network, and prints the MAC address of the Wifi shield, the IP address obtained, and other network details.

#include <WiFi.h>

```
// char ssid[] = "yourNetwork"; // your network SSID (name)
// char pass[] = "secretPassword"; // your network password
char ssid[] = "SINGTEL-D45F"; // your network SSID (name)
char pass[] = "mooxuteeth"; // your network key
int status = WL_IDLE_STATUS; // the Wifi radio's status

void setup() {
  //Initialize serial and wait for port to open:
  Serial.begin(9600);

  while (!Serial) {
    ; // wait for serial port to connect. Needed for native USB port only
  }

  // check for the presence of the shield:
  if (WiFi.status() == WL_NO_SHIELD) {
```



```

Serial.println("WiFi shield not present");
// don't continue:
while (true);
}
String fv = WiFi.firmwareVersion();
if (fv != "1.1.0") {
Serial.println("Please upgrade the firmware");
}
// attempt to connect to Wifi network:
while (status != WL_CONNECTED) {
Serial.print("Attempting to connect to WPA SSID: ");
Serial.println(ssid);
// Connect to WPA/WPA2 network:
status = WiFi.begin(ssid, pass);
// wait 10 seconds for connection:
delay(10000);
}
// you're connected now, so print out the data:
Serial.print("You're connected to the network");
printCurrentNet();
printWifiData();
}
void loop() {
// check the network connection once every 10 seconds:
delay(10000);
printCurrentNet();
}
void printWifiData() {
// print your WiFi shield's IP address:
IPAddress ip = WiFi.localIP();
Serial.print("IP Address: ");
Serial.println(ip);
Serial.println(ip);
// print your MAC address:
byte mac[6];
WiFi.macAddress(mac);

```

```
Serial.print("MAC address: ");
Serial.print(mac[0], HEX);
Serial.print(":");
Serial.print(mac[1], HEX);
Serial.print(":");
Serial.print(mac[2], HEX);
Serial.print(":");
Serial.print(mac[3], HEX);
Serial.print(":");
Serial.print(mac[4], HEX);
Serial.print(":");
Serial.println(mac[5], HEX);
}

void printCurrentNet() {
// print the SSID of the network you're attached to:
Serial.print("SSID: ");
Serial.println(WiFi.SSID());
// print the MAC address of the router you're attached to:
byte bssid[6];
WiFi.BSSID(bssid);
Serial.print("BSSID: ");
Serial.print(bssid[5], HEX);
Serial.print(":");
Serial.print(bssid[4], HEX);
Serial.print(":");
Serial.print(bssid[3], HEX);
Serial.print(":");
Serial.print(bssid[2], HEX);
Serial.print(":");
Serial.print(bssid[1], HEX);
Serial.print(":");
Serial.println(bssid[0], HEX);
// print the received signal strength:
long rssi = WiFi.RSSI();
Serial.print("signal strength (RSSI):");
Serial.println(rssi);
```

```
// print the encryption type:
byte encryption = WiFi.encryptionType();
Serial.print("Encryption Type:");
Serial.println(encryption, HEX);
Serial.println();
}
```

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiClass::begin

Description

Start Wifi connection for OPEN networks

Syntax

```
int WiFiClass::begin(char* ssid)
int WiFiClass::begin(char* ssid, uint8_t key_idx, const char *key)
int WiFiClass::begin(char* ssid, const char *passphrase)
```

Parameters

ssid: Pointer to the SSID string

key_idx: The key index to set. Valid values are 0-3.

key: Key input buffer.

passphrase: Passphrase. Valid characters in a passphrase must be between ASCII 32-126 (decimal).

Returns

WiFi status

Example Code

Example: ConnectWithWPA

This example demos how to connect to an unencrypted WiFi network, and prints the MAC address of the Wifi shield, the IP address obtained, and other network details. The details of the code can be found in the previous section of WiFiClass:: firmwareVersion.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiClass::config

Description

Configure network settings for the WiFi network

Syntax

```
void WiFiClass::config(IPAddress local_ip)
void WiFiClass::config(IPAddress local_ip, IPAddress dns_server)
void WiFiClass::config(IPAddress local_ip, IPAddress dns_server, IPAddress gateway)
void WiFiClass::config(IPAddress local_ip, IPAddress dns_server, IPAddress gateway, IPAddress subnet)
```

Parameters

local_ip: Local device IP address to use on the network
dns_server: IP address of the DNS server to use
gateway: IP address of the gateway device on the network
subnet: Subnet mask for the network, expressed as a IP address

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

This will disable the DHCP client when connecting to a network, and will require the network accepts a static IP. The configured IP addresses will also apply to AP mode, but the DHCP server will not be disabled in AP mode.

WiFiClass::setDNS

Description

Configure the IP address of the DNS server to use

Syntax

```
void WiFiClass::setDNS(IPAddress dns_server1)
void WiFiClass::setDNS(IPAddress dns_server1, IPAddress dns_server2)
```

Parameters

dns_server1: IP address of DNS server to use
dns_server2: IP address of DNS server to use

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiClass::disconnect**Description**

Disconnect from the network

Syntax

```
int WiFiClass::disconnect()
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns one value of wl_status_t enum as an integer.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiClass::macAddress**Description**

Get the interface MAC address

Syntax

```
uint8_t* WiFiClass::macAddress(uint8_t* mac)
```

Parameters

mac: an array to store MAC address

Returns

The function returns a pointer to uint8_t array with length WL_MAC_ADDR_LENGTH.

Example Code

Example: ConnectWithWPA

This example demos how to connect to an unencrypted WiFi network, and prints the MAC address of the Wifi shield, the IP address obtained, and other network details. The details of the code can be found in the previous section of `WiFiClass::firmwareVersion`.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiClass::localIP

Description

Get the interface IP address

Syntax

`IPAddress WiFiClass::localIP()`

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Ip address value

Example Code

Example: ConnectWithWPA

This example demos how to connect to an unencrypted WiFi network, and prints the MAC address of the Wifi shield, the IP address obtained, and other network details. The details of the code can be found in the previous section of `WiFiClass::firmwareVersion`.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiClass::subnetMask

Description

Get the interface subnet mask address

Syntax

`IPAddress WiFiClass::subnetMask()`

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

subnet mask address value

Example Code

Example: ConnectNoEncryption

This example demonstrates how to connect to an unencrypted WiFi network and prints the MAC address of the WiFi shield, the IP address obtained, and other network details.

```
#include <WiFi.h>

char ssid[] = "SINGTEL-D45F_5G"; // the name of your network
int status = WL_IDLE_STATUS; // the Wifi radio's status

void setup() {
  //Initialize serial and wait for port to open:
  Serial.begin(9600);

  while (!Serial) {
    ; // wait for serial port to connect. Needed for native USB port only
  }

  // check for the presence of the shield:
  if (WiFi.status() == WL_NO_SHIELD) {
    Serial.println("WiFi shield not present");
    // don't continue:
    while (true);
  }

  String fv = WiFi.firmwareVersion();
  if (fv != "1.1.0") {
    Serial.println("Please upgrade the firmware");
  }

  // attempt to connect to Wifi network:
  while (status != WL_CONNECTED) {
    Serial.print("Attempting to connect to open SSID: ");
    Serial.println(ssid);
    status = WiFi.begin(ssid);

    // wait 10 seconds for connection:
    delay(10000);
```

```
}  
// you're connected now, so print out the data:  
Serial.print("You're connected to the network");  
printCurrentNet();  
printWifiData();  
}  
void loop() {  
  // check the network connection once every 10 seconds:  
  delay(10000);  
  printCurrentNet();  
}  
void printWifiData() {  
  // print your WiFi shield's IP address:  
  IPAddress ip = WiFi.localIP();  
  Serial.print("IP Address: ");  
  Serial.println(ip);  
  Serial.println(ip);  
  // print your MAC address:  
  byte mac[6];  
  WiFi.macAddress(mac);  
  Serial.print("MAC address: ");  
  Serial.print(mac[0], HEX);  
  Serial.print(":");  
  Serial.print(mac[1], HEX);  
  Serial.print(":");  
  Serial.print(mac[2], HEX);  
  Serial.print(":");  
  Serial.print(mac[3], HEX);  
  Serial.print(":");  
  Serial.print(mac[4], HEX);  
  Serial.print(":");  
  Serial.println(mac[5], HEX);  
  // print your subnet mask:  
  IPAddress subnet = WiFi.subnetMask();  
  Serial.print("NetMask: ");  
  Serial.println(subnet);
```



```

// print your gateway address:
IPAddress gateway = WiFi.gatewayIP();
Serial.print("Gateway: ");
Serial.println(gateway);
}

void printCurrentNet() {
// print the SSID of the network you're attached to:
Serial.print("SSID: ");
Serial.println(WiFi.SSID());

// print the MAC address of the router you're attached to:
byte bssid[6];
WiFi.BSSID(bssid);
Serial.print("BSSID: ");
Serial.print(bssid[5], HEX);
Serial.print(":");
Serial.print(bssid[4], HEX);
Serial.print(":");
Serial.print(bssid[3], HEX);
Serial.print(":");
Serial.print(bssid[2], HEX);
Serial.print(":");
Serial.print(bssid[1], HEX);
Serial.print(":");
Serial.println(bssid[0], HEX);

// print the received signal strength:
long rssi = WiFi.RSSI();
Serial.print("signal strength (RSSI):");
Serial.println(rssi);

// print the encryption type:
byte encryption = WiFi.encryptionType();
Serial.print("Encryption Type:");
Serial.println(encryption, HEX);
}

```

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiClass::gatewayIP

Description

Get the gateway IP address

Syntax

```
IPAddress WiFiClass::gatewayIP()
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the value of the gateway IP address.

Example Code

Example: ConnectNoEncryption

This example demonstrates how to connect to an unencrypted WiFi network and prints the MAC address of the WiFi shield, the IP address obtained, and other network details. Details of the code can be found in the section of WiFiClass::subnetMask.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiClass::SSID

Description

Return the current SSID associated with the network

Syntax

```
char* WiFiClass::SSID()
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns current SSID associate with the network.

Example Code

Example: ConnectWithWPA

This example demos how to connect to an unencrypted WiFi network, and prints the MAC address of the Wifi shield, the IP address obtained, and other network details. The details of the code can be found in the previous section of `WiFiClass::firmwareVersion`.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiClass::BSSID

Description

Return the current BSSID associated with the network

Syntax

```
uint8_t* WiFiClass::BSSID(uint8_t* bssid)
```

Parameters

bssid: an array to store bssid

Returns

pointer to uint8_t array with length WL_MAC_ADDR_LENGTH

Example Code

Example: `ConnectWithWPA`

This example demos how to connect to an unencrypted WiFi network, and prints the MAC address of the Wifi shield, the IP address obtained, and other network details. The details of the code can be found in the previous section of `WiFiClass::firmwareVersion`.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiClass::RSSI

Description

Return the current RSSI (Received Signal Strength in dBm) associated with the network

Syntax

```
int32_t WiFiClass::RSSI()
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns a signed-value signal strength

Example Code

Example: ConnectWithWPA

This example demos how to connect to an unencrypted WiFi network, and prints the MAC address of the Wifi shield, the IP address obtained, and other network details. The details of the code can be found in the previous section of `WiFiClass::firmwareVersion`.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiClass::encryptionType

Description

Return the Encryption Type associated with the network

Syntax

```
uint8_t WiFiClass::encryptionType()
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns one unsigned integer value of `wl_enc_type` enum.

Example Code

Example: ConnectWithWPA

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiClass::scanNetworks

Description

Start scan WiFi networks available

Syntax

```
int8_t WiFiClass::scanNetworks()
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the number of discovered networks as an integer.

Example Code

Example: ScanNetworks

This example prints the Wifi shield's MAC address, and scans for available Wifi networks using the Wifi shield. Every ten seconds, it scans again. It doesn't connect to any network, so no encryption scheme is specified.

```
#include <WiFi.h>

void setup() {
  //Initialize serial and wait for port to open:
  Serial.begin(9600);

  while (!Serial) {
    ; // wait for serial port to connect. Needed for native USB port only
  }

  // check for the presence of the shield:
  if (WiFi.status() == WL_NO_SHIELD) {
    Serial.println("WiFi shield not present");
    // don't continue:
    while (true);
  }

  String fv = WiFi.firmwareVersion();
  if (fv != "1.1.0") {
    Serial.println("Please upgrade the firmware");
  }

  // Print WiFi MAC address:
  printMacAddress();
}

void loop() {
  // scan for existing networks:
  Serial.println("Scanning available networks...");
  listNetworks();
  delay(10000);
}
```

```
void printMacAddress() {
// the MAC address of your Wifi shield
byte mac[6];
// print your MAC address:
WiFi.macAddress(mac);
Serial.print("MAC: ");
Serial.print(mac[0], HEX);
Serial.print(":");
Serial.print(mac[1], HEX);
Serial.print(":");
Serial.print(mac[2], HEX);
Serial.print(":");
Serial.print(mac[3], HEX);
Serial.print(":");
Serial.print(mac[4], HEX);
Serial.print(":");
Serial.println(mac[5], HEX);
}

void listNetworks() {
// scan for nearby networks:
Serial.println("* Scan Networks *");
int numSsid = WiFi.scanNetworks();
if (numSsid == -1) {
Serial.println("Couldn't get a wifi connection");
while (true);
}
// print the list of networks seen:
Serial.print("number of available networks:");
Serial.println(numSsid);
// print the network number and name for each network found:
for (int thisNet = 0; thisNet < numSsid; thisNet++) {
Serial.print(thisNet);
Serial.print(" ");
Serial.print(WiFi.SSID(thisNet));
Serial.print("tSignal: ");
Serial.print(WiFi.RSSI(thisNet));
```

```

Serial.print(" dBm");
Serial.print("tEncryptionRaw: ");
printEncryptionTypeEx(WiFi.encryptionTypeEx(thisNet));
Serial.print("tEncryption: ");
printEncryptionType(WiFi.encryptionType(thisNet));
}
}

void printEncryptionTypeEx(uint32_t thisType) {
/* Arduino wifi api use encryption type to mapping to security type.
* This function demonstrate how to get more richful information of security type.
*/

switch (thisType) {
case SECURITY_OPEN:
Serial.print("Open");
break;
case SECURITY_WEP_PSK:
Serial.print("WEP");
break;
case SECURITY_WPA_TKIP_PSK:
Serial.print("WPA TKIP");
break;
case SECURITY_WPA_AES_PSK:
Serial.print("WPA AES");
break;
case SECURITY_WPA2_AES_PSK:
Serial.print("WPA2 AES");
break;
case SECURITY_WPA2_TKIP_PSK:
Serial.print("WPA2 TKIP");
break;
case SECURITY_WPA2_MIXED_PSK:
Serial.print("WPA2 Mixed");
break;
case SECURITY_WPA_WPA2_MIXED:
Serial.print("WPA/WPA2 AES");
break;

```

```
}  
}  
void printEncryptionType(int thisType) {  
  // read the encryption type and print out the name:  
  switch (thisType) {  
    case ENC_TYPE_WEP:  
      Serial.println("WEP");  
      break;  
    case ENC_TYPE_TKIP:  
      Serial.println("WPA");  
      break;  
    case ENC_TYPE_CCMP:  
      Serial.println("WPA2");  
      break;  
    case ENC_TYPE_NONE:  
      Serial.println("None");  
      break;  
    case ENC_TYPE_AUTO:  
      Serial.println("Auto");  
      break;  
  }  
}
```

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiClass::SSID

Description

Return the SSID discovered during the network scan

Syntax

```
char* WiFiClass::SSID(uint8_t networkItem)
```

Parameters

networkItem: specify from which network item want to get the information

Returns

The function returns ssid string of the specified item on the networks scanned a list.

Example Code

Example: ScanNetworks

This example prints the Wifi shield's MAC address, and scans for available Wifi networks using the Wifi shield. Every ten seconds, it scans again. It doesn't connect to any network, so no encryption scheme is specified. The details of the code can be found in the previous section of `WiFiClass::scanNetworks`.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiClass::encryptionType**Description**

Return the encryption type of the networks discovered during the `scanNetworks`

Syntax

```
uint8_t WiFiClass::encryptionType(uint8_t networkItem)
```

Parameters

`networkItem`: specify from which network item want to get the information

Returns

encryption type (enum `wl_enc_type`) of the specified item on the networks scanned a list

Example Code

Example: ScanNetworks

This example prints the Wifi shield's MAC address, and scans for available Wifi networks using the Wifi shield. Every ten seconds, it scans again. It doesn't connect to any network, so no encryption scheme is specified. The details of the code can be found in the previous section of `WiFiClass::scanNetworks`.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiClass::encryptionTypeEx**Description**

Return the security type and encryption type of the networks discovered during the `scanNetworks`

Syntax

```
uint32_t WiFiClass::encryptionTypeEx(uint8_t networkItem)
```

Parameters

networkItem: specify from which network item want to get the information

Returns

security and encryption type of the specified item on the networks scanned a list

Example Code

Example: ScanNetworks

This example prints the Wifi shield's MAC address, and scans for available Wifi networks using the Wifi shield. Every ten seconds, it scans again. It doesn't connect to any network, so no encryption scheme is specified. The details of the code can be found in the previous section of `WiFiClass::scanNetworks`.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiClass::RSSI

Description

Return the RSSI of the networks discovered during the scanNetworks

Syntax

```
int32_t WiFiClass::RSSI(uint8_t networkItem)
```

Parameters

networkItem: specify from which network item want to get the information

Returns

signed value of RSSI of the specified item on the networks scanned a list

Example Code

Example: ScanNetworks

This example prints the Wifi shield's MAC address, and scans for available Wifi networks using the Wifi shield. Every ten seconds, it scans again. It doesn't connect to any network, so no encryption scheme is specified. The details of the code can be found in the previous section of `WiFiClass::scanNetworks`.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiClass::status**Description**

Return Connection status

Syntax

```
uint8_t WiFiClass::status()
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns one of the values defined in `wl_status_t` as an unsigned integer.

Example Code

Example: `ConnectWithWPA`

This example demos how to connect to an unencrypted WiFi network, and prints the MAC address of the Wifi shield, the IP address obtained, and other network details. The details of the code can be found in the previous section of `WiFiClass::firmwareVersion`.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiClass::hostByName**Description**

Resolve the given hostname to an IP address

Syntax

```
int WiFiClass::hostByName(const char* aHostname, IPAddress& aResult)
```

Parameters

`aHostname`: Name to be resolved

`aResult`: `IPAddress` structure to store the returned IP address

Returns

The function returns “1” if `aIPAddrString` was successfully converted to an IP address,else otherwise, it will return as an error code.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiClass::apbegin

Description

Start AP mode

Syntax

```
int WiFiClass::apbegin(char* ssid, char* channel)
int WiFiClass::apbegin(char* ssid, char* password, char* channel)
```

Parameters

ssid: SSID of the AP network
channel: AP's channel, default 1
password: AP's password

Returns

The function will return the WiFi status.

Example Code

Example: WiFiAPMode

#include

```
char ssid[] = "yourNetwork"; //Set the AP's SSID
char pass[] = "Password"; //Set the AP's password
char channel[] = "1"; //Set the AP's channel
int status = WL_IDLE_STATUS; // the Wifi radio's status
void setup() {
  //Initialize serial and wait for port to open:
  Serial.begin(9600);
  while (!Serial) {
    ; // wait for serial port to connect. Needed for native USB port only
  }
  // check for the presence of the shield:
  if (WiFi.status() == WL_NO_SHIELD) {
```

```

Serial.println("WiFi shield not present");
while (true);
}
String fv = WiFi.firmwareVersion();
if (fv != "1.1.0") {
Serial.println("Please upgrade the firmware");
}
// attempt to start AP:
while (status != WL_CONNECTED) {
Serial.print("Attempting to start AP with SSID: ");
Serial.println(ssid);
status = WiFi.apbegin(ssid, pass, channel);
delay(10000);
}
//AP MODE already started:
Serial.println("AP mode already started");
Serial.println();
printWifiData();
printCurrentNet();
}
void loop() {
// check the network connection once every 10 seconds:
delay(10000);
printCurrentNet();
}
void printWifiData() {
// print your WiFi shield's IP address:
IPAddress ip = WiFi.localIP();
Serial.print("IP Address: ");
Serial.println(ip);
// print your subnet mask:
IPAddress subnet = WiFi.subnetMask();
Serial.print("NetMask: ");
Serial.println(subnet);
// print your gateway address:
IPAddress gateway = WiFi.gatewayIP();

```

```
Serial.print("Gateway: ");
Serial.println(gateway);
Serial.println();
}
void printCurrentNet() {
// print the SSID of the AP:
Serial.print("SSID: ");
Serial.println(WiFi.SSID());
// print the MAC address of AP:
byte bssid[6];
WiFi.BSSID(bssid);
Serial.print("BSSID: ");
Serial.print(bssid[0], HEX);
Serial.print(":");
Serial.print(bssid[1], HEX);
Serial.print(":");
Serial.print(bssid[2], HEX);
Serial.print(":");
Serial.print(bssid[3], HEX);
Serial.print(":");
Serial.print(bssid[4], HEX);
Serial.print(":");
Serial.println(bssid[5], HEX);
// print the encryption type:
byte encryption = WiFi.encryptionType();
Serial.print("Encryption Type:");
Serial.println(encryption, HEX);
Serial.println();
}
```

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiClass::disablePowerSave

Description

Disable power-saving mode

Syntax

```
int WiFiClass::disablePowerSave()
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

1 if disable success, 0 if failed

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

Class WiFiClient**WiFiClient Class****Description**

Defines a class of WiFi Client implementation for Ameba.

Syntax

```
class WiFiClient
```

Members

Public Constructors	
WiFiClient::WiFiClient	Constructs a WiFiClient instance that connects to the specified IP address and port.
Public Methods	
WiFiClient::connect	Connect to the IP address and port
WiFiClient::write	Write a single byte into the packet
WiFiClient::available	Number of bytes remaining in the current packet
WiFiClient::read	Read a single byte from the current packet
WiFiClient:: peek	Return the next byte from the current packet without moving on to the next byte
WiFiClient:: flush	Finish reading the current packet
WiFiClient::stop	Stop client connection
WiFiClient::connected	Check if client is connected, return 1 if connected, 0 if not
WiFiClient::setRecvTimeout	Set receiving timeout

WiFiClient::WiFiClient**Description**

Constructs a WiFiClient instance that connects to the specified IP address and port.

Syntax

```
WiFiClient::WiFiClient()
WiFiClient::WiFiClient(uint8_t sock)
```

Parameters

sock: socket state, default -1.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: WiFiWebClient

#include <WiFi.h>

```
char ssid[] = "yourNetwork"; // your network SSID (name)
char pass[] = "password"; // your network password (use for WPA, or use as key for WEP)
int keyIndex = 0; // your network key Index number (needed only for WEP)
int status = WL_IDLE_STATUS;
//IPAddress server(64,233,189,94); // numeric IP for Google (no DNS)
char server[] = "www.google.com"; // name address for Google (using DNS)
WiFiClient client;

void setup() {
  //Initialize serial and wait for port to open:
  Serial.begin(9600);
  while (!Serial) {
    ;
  }
  // check for the presence of the shield:
  if (WiFi.status() == WL_NO_SHIELD) {
    Serial.println("WiFi shield not present");
    // don't continue:
    while (true);
  }
  String fv = WiFi.firmwareVersion();
  if (fv != "1.1.0") {
```



```

Serial.println("Please upgrade the firmware");
}
// attempt to connect to Wifi network:
while (status != WL_CONNECTED) {
Serial.print("Attempting to connect to SSID: ");
Serial.println(ssid);
// Connect to WPA/WPA2 network. Change this line if using open or WEP network:
status = WiFi.begin(ssid, pass);
// wait 10 seconds for connection:
delay(10000);
}
Serial.println("Connected to wifi");
printWifiStatus();
Serial.println("\nStarting connection to server...");
// if you get a connection, report back via serial:
if (client.connect(server, 80)) {
Serial.println("connected to server");
// Make a HTTP request:
client.println("GET /search?q=ameba HTTP/1.1");
client.println("Host: www.google.com");
client.println("Connection: close");
client.println();
}
}
void loop() {
// if there are incoming bytes available
// from the server, read them and print them:
while (client.available()) {
char c = client.read();
Serial.write(c);
}
// if the server's disconnected, stop the client:
if (!client.connected()) {
Serial.println();
Serial.println("disconnecting from server.");
client.stop();
}
}

```

```
// do nothing forevermore:
while (true);
}
}

void printWifiStatus() {
// print the SSID of the network you're attached to:
Serial.print("SSID: ");
Serial.println(WiFi.SSID());
// print your WiFi shield's IP address:
IPAddress ip = WiFi.localIP();
Serial.print("IP Address: ");
Serial.println(ip);
// print the received signal strength:
long rssi = WiFi.RSSI();
Serial.print("signal strength (RSSI):");
Serial.print(rssi);
Serial.println(" dBm");
}
```

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiClient::connect

Description

Connect to the IP address and port

Syntax

```
int WiFiClient::connect(IPAddress ip, uint16_t port)
int WiFiClient::connect(const char *host, uint16_t port)
```

Parameters

ip: IP address
host: Host name
port: the port to listen on

Returns

Returns “1”: if successful

Returns “0”: if failed

Example Code

Example: WiFiWebClient

The details of the example are explained in the previous section of WiFiClient:: WiFiClient.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiClient::write

Description

Write a single byte into the packet

Syntax

size_t WiFiClient::write(uint8_t byte)

size_t WiFiClient::write(const uint8_t *buf, size_t size)

Parameters

byte: the outgoing byte

buf: the outgoing message

size: the size of the buffer

Returns

The function returns single byte into the packet or returns bytes size from buffer into the packet.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiClient::available

Description

Number of bytes remaining in the current packet

Syntax

```
int WiFiClient::available(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

- Function returns the number of bytes available in the current packet
- Function returns 0: if no data available

Example Code

Example: WiFiWebClient

The details of the example are explained in the previous section of WiFiClient:: WiFiClient.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiClient::read

Description

Read a single byte from the current packet

Syntax

```
int WiFiClient::read()  
int WiFiClient::read(unsigned char* buf, size_t size)  
int WiFiClient::read(char *buf, size_t size)
```

Parameters

buf: buffer to hold incoming packets (char*)

size: maximum size of the buffer (int)

Returns

size: the size of the buffer

-1: if no buffer is available

Example Code

Example: WiFiWebClient

The details of the example are explained in the previous section of WiFiClient:: WiFiClient.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiClient::peek**Description**

Return the next byte from the current packet without moving on to the next byte

Syntax

```
int WiFiClient::peek(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

b: the next byte or character

-1: if none is available

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiClient::flush**Description**

Finish reading the current packet

Syntax

```
void WiFiClient::flush(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiClient::stop

Description

Disconnect from the server. Stop client connection

Syntax

```
void WiFiClient::stop(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: WiFiWebClient

The details of the example are explained in the previous section of WiFiClient:: WiFiClient.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiClient::connected

Description

Check if client is connected, return 1 if connected, 0 if not.

Syntax

```
uint8_t WiFiClient::connected(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns “1” if connected, returns “0” if not connected.

Example Code

Example: WiFiWebClient

The details of the example are explained in the previous section of WiFiClient:: WiFiClient.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiClient::setRecvTimeout**Description**

Set receiving timeout

Syntax

```
int WiFiClient::setRecvTimeout(int timeout)
```

Parameters

timeout: timeout in seconds

Returns

0

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

Class WiFiServer**WiFiServer Class****Description**

Defines a class of WiFi server implementation for Ameba.

Syntax

```
class WiFiServer
```

Members

Public Constructors	
WiFiServer::WiFiServer	Constructs a WiFiServer object and creates a server that listens for incoming connections on the specified port
Public Methods	
WiFiServer::available	Gets a client that is connected to the server and has data available for reading. The connection persists when the returned client object goes out of scope; you can close it by calling the client.stop()
WiFiServer::begin	Tells the server to begin listening for incoming connections
WiFiServer::write	Write data to all the clients connected to a server

WiFiServer::WiFiServer

Description

Constructs a WiFiServer object and creates a server that listens for incoming connections on the specified port.

Syntax

WiFiServer::WiFiServer(uint16_t port)

Parameters

port: The port number being connected to.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: SimpleServerWiFi

```
#include <WiFi.h>
```

```
char ssid[] = "yourNetwork"; // your network SSID (name)
```

```
char pass[] = "secretPassword"; // your network password
```

```
int keyIndex = 0; // your network key Index number (needed only for WEP)
```

```
int status = WL_IDLE_STATUS;
```

```
WiFiServer server(5000);
```

```
void setup() {
```

```
  Serial.begin(9600); // initialize serial communication
```

```
  pinMode(9, OUTPUT); // set the LED pin mode
```



```

// check for the presence of the shield:
if (WiFi.status() == WL_NO_SHIELD) {
  Serial.println("WiFi shield not present");
  while (true); // don't continue
}

String fv = WiFi.firmwareVersion();
if ( fv != "1.1.0" )
  Serial.println("Please upgrade the firmware");
// attempt to connect to Wifi network:
while ( status != WL_CONNECTED) {
  Serial.print("Attempting to connect to Network named: ");
  Serial.println(ssid); // print the network name (SSID);
  // Connect to WPA/WPA2 network. Change this line if using open or WEP network:
  status = WiFi.begin(ssid, pass);
  // wait 10 seconds for connection:
  delay(10000);
}

server.begin(); // start the tcp server on port 5000
printWifiStatus(); // you're connected now, so print out the status
}

char buffer[256];
void loop() {
  WiFiClient client = server.available();
  while (client.connected()) {
    memset(buffer, 0, 256);
    int n = client.read((uint8_t*)&buffer[0], sizeof(buffer));
    if (n > 0) {
      for (int i=0; i<n; i++) {
        Serial.print(buffer[i]);
      }
      n = client.write(buffer, n);
      if (n <= 0) break;
    }
  }
  client.stop();
}

```

```
void printWifiStatus() {  
  // print the SSID of the network you're attached to:  
  Serial.print("SSID: ");  
  Serial.println(WiFi.SSID());  
  // print your WiFi shield's IP address:  
  IPAddress ip = WiFi.localIP();  
  Serial.print("IP Address: ");  
  Serial.println(ip);  
  // print the received signal strength:  
  long rssi = WiFi.RSSI();  
  Serial.print("signal strength (RSSI):");  
  Serial.print(rssi);  
  Serial.println(" dBm");  
}
```

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiServer::available

Description

Gets a client that is connected to the server and has data available for reading. The connection persists when the returned client object goes out of scope; you can close it by calling the client.stop().

Syntax

WiFiClient WiFiServer::available(uint8_t* status)

Parameters

status: WiFi availability status

Returns

A Client object; if no Client has data available for reading, this object will evaluate to false in an if-statement

Example Code

Example: SimpleServerWiFi

Details of the code can be found in the previous section of WiFiServer:: WiFiServer.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiServer::begin**Description**

Tells the server to begin listening for incoming connections

Syntax

```
void WiFiServer::begin(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: SimpleServerWiFi

Details of the code can be found in the previous section of WiFiServer:: WiFiServer.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiServer::write**Description**

Write data to all the clients connected to a server

Syntax

```
size_t WiFiServer::write(uint8_t b)
size_t WiFiServer::write(const uint8_t *buf, size_t size)
```

Parameters

b: byte to be written

buf: data buffer

size: Size of the data in the buffer

Returns

The function returns the number of bytes written. It is not necessary to read this.

Example Code

Example: SimpleServerWiFi

Details of the code can be found in the previous section of WiFiServer:: WiFiServer.

Notes and Warnings

NA

Class WiFiSSLClient**WiFiSSLClient Class****Description**

Defines a class of WiFi Secure Socket Layer Client implementation for Ameba.

Syntax

class WiFiSSLClient

Members

Public Constructors	
WiFiSSLClient::WiFiSSLClient	Constructs a WiFiSSLClient instance that always connects in SSL to the specified IP address and port
Public Methods	
WiFiSSLClient::connect	Connect to the IP address and port
WiFiSSLClient::write	Write a single byte into the packet
WiFiSSLClient::available	Number of bytes remaining in the current packet
WiFiSSLClient::read	Read a single byte from the current packet
WiFiSSLClient:: peek	Return the next byte from the current packet without moving on to the next byte
WiFiSSLClient:: flush	Finish reading the current packet
WiFiSSLClient::stop	Stop SSL client connection
WiFiSSLClient::connected	Check if SSL client is connected, return 1 if connected, 0 if not
WiFiSSLClient:: setRootCA	Set Root CA for authentication
WiFiSSLClient:: set-ClientCertificate	Set certificate of the client
WiFiSSLClient::setRecvTimeout	Set receiving timeout
WiFiSSLClient::setPreSharedKey	Set the pre shared key (PSK) to use for authentication

WiFiSSLClient::WiFiSSLClient**Description**

Constructs a WiFiSSLClient instance that always connects in SSL to the specified IP address and port.

Syntax

```
WiFiSSLClient::WiFiSSLClient(void)
```

```
WiFiSSLClient::WiFiSSLClient(uint8_t sock)
```

Parameters

sock: socket state, default -1

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: WiFiSSLClient

#include

```
char ssid[] = "yourNetwork"; // your network SSID (name)
char pass[] = "secretPassword"; // your network password (use for WPA, or WEP)
int keyIndex = 0; // your network key Index number (needed only for WEP)
int status = WL_IDLE_STATUS;

char server[] = "www.google.com"; // name address for Google (using DNS)
//unsigned char test_client_key[] = ""; //For the usage of verifying client
//unsigned char test_client_cert[] = ""; //For the usage of verifying client
//unsigned char test_ca_cert[] = ""; //For the usage of verifying server
WiFiSSLClient client;

void setup() {
//Initialize serial and wait for port to open:
Serial.begin(9600);

while (!Serial) {
; // wait for serial port to connect. Needed for native USB port only
}

// check for the presence of the shield:
if (WiFi.status() == WL_NO_SHIELD) {
Serial.println("WiFi shield not present");
// don't continue:
while (true);
}

// attempt to connect to Wifi network:
while (status != WL_CONNECTED) {
```

```
Serial.print("Attempting to connect to SSID: ");
Serial.println(ssid);
// Connect to WPA/WPA2 network. Change this line if using open or WEP network:
status = WiFi.begin(ssid,pass);
// wait 10 seconds for connection:
delay(10000);
}
Serial.println("Connected to wifi");
printWifiStatus();
Serial.println("\nStarting connection to server...");
// if you get a connection, report back via serial:
if (client.connect(server, 443)) { //client.connect(server, 443, test_ca_cert, test_client_cert, test_client_key)
Serial.println("connected to server");
// Make a HTTP request:
client.println("GET /search?q=realtek HTTP/1.0");
client.println("Host: www.google.com");
client.println("Connection: close");
client.println();
}
else
Serial.println("connected to server failed");
}
void loop() {
// if there are incoming bytes available
// from the server, read them and print them:
while (client.available()) {
char c = client.read();
Serial.write(c);
}
// if the server's disconnected, stop the client:
if (!client.connected()) {
Serial.println();
Serial.println("disconnecting from server.");
client.stop();
// do nothing forevermore:
while (true);
```

```

}
}
void printWifiStatus() {
// print the SSID of the network you're attached to:
Serial.print("SSID: ");
Serial.println(WiFi.SSID());
// print your WiFi shield's IP address:
IPAddress ip = WiFi.localIP();
Serial.print("IP Address: ");
Serial.println(ip);
// print your MAC address:
byte mac[6];
WiFi.macAddress(mac);
Serial.print("MAC address: ");
Serial.print(mac[0], HEX);
Serial.print(":");
Serial.print(mac[1], HEX);
Serial.print(":");
Serial.print(mac[2], HEX);
Serial.print(":");
Serial.print(mac[3], HEX);
Serial.print(":");
Serial.print(mac[4], HEX);
Serial.print(":");
Serial.println(mac[5], HEX);
// print the received signal strength:
long rssi = WiFi.RSSI();
Serial.print("signal strength (RSSI):");
Serial.print(rssi);
Serial.println(" dBm");
}

```

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiSSLClient::connect

Description

Connect to the IP address and port.

Syntax

```
int WiFiSSLClient::connect(IPAddress ip, uint16_t port)
int WiFiSSLClient::connect(const char *host, uint16_t port)
int WiFiSSLClient::connect(const char* host, uint16_t port, unsigned char* rootCABuff, unsigned char* cli_cert,
unsigned char* cli_key)
int WiFiSSLClient::connect(IPAddress ip, uint16_t port, unsigned char* rootCABuff, unsigned char* cli_cert, unsigned
char* cli_key)
```

Parameters

ip: IP address
host: Host name
port: the port to listen on
rootCABuff: buffer that store root CA
cli_cert: buffer that store client certificate
cli_key buffer that store client key pair

Returns

1: if successful
0: if failed

Example Code

Example: WiFiSSLClient

Details of the code can be found in the previous section of WiFiSSLClient:: WiFiSSLClient.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiSSLClient::write**Description**

Write a single byte into the packet

Syntax

```
size_t WiFiSSLClient::write(uint8_t byte)
size_t WiFiSSLClient::write(const uint8_t *buf, size_t size)
```

Parameters

byte: the outgoing byte
buf: the outgoing message

size: the size of the buffer

Returns

The function returns single -byte into the packet or turns bytes size from the buffer into the packet.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiSSLClient::available**Description**

Number of bytes remaining in the current packet

Syntax

```
int WiFiSSLClient::available(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the number of bytes available in the current packet; else return "0:" if no data available.

Example Code

Example: WiFiSSLClient

Details of the code can be found in the previous section of WiFiSSLClient:: WiFiSSLClient.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiSSLClient::read**Description**

Read a single byte from the current packet

Syntax

```
int WiFiSSLClient::read()
```

int WiFiSSLClient::read(unsigned char* buf, size_t size)

Parameters

buf: buffer to hold incoming packets (char*)

size: maximum size of the buffer (int)

Returns

size: the size of the buffer

-1: if no buffer is available

Example Code

Example: WiFiSSLClient

Details of the code can be found in the previous section of WiFiSSLClient:: WiFiSSLClient.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiSSLClient::peek

Description

Return the next byte from the current packet without moving on to the next byte.

Syntax

int WiFiSSLClient::peek(void)

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

b: the next byte or character

-1: if none is available

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiSSLClient::flush

Description

Finish reading the current packet

Syntax

```
void WiFiSSLClient::flush(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiSSLClient::stop**Description**

Disconnect from the server. Stop SSL client connection

Syntax

```
void WiFiSSLClient::stop(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: WiFiSSLClient

Details of the code can be found in the previous section of WiFiSSLClient:: WiFiSSLClient.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiSSLClient::connected

Description

Check if SSL client is connected, return 1 if connected, 0 if not.

Syntax

```
uint8_t WiFiSSLClient::connected(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns “1” if connected, returns “0” if not connected.

Example Code

Example: WiFiSSLClient

Details of the code can be found in the previous section of WiFiSSLClient:: WiFiSSLClient.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiSSLClient::setRootCA

Description

Set Root CA for authentication

Syntax

```
void WiFiSSLClient::setRootCA(unsigned char *rootCA)
```

Parameters

rootCA: a string of rootCA

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiSSLClient::setClientCertificate

Description

Set certificate of client

Syntax

```
void WiFiSSLClient::setClientCertificate(unsigned char *client_ca, unsigned char *private_key)
```

Parameters

client_ca: Client certificate

private_key: client's private key pair

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiSSLClient::setRecvTimeout

Description

Set receiving timeout

Syntax

```
int WiFiSSLClient::setRecvTimeout(int timeout)
```

Parameters

timeout: timeout in seconds

Returns

The function returns "0".

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiSSLClient::setPreSharedKey

Description

Set the pre shared key (PSK) to use for authentication

Syntax

```
void WiFiSSLClient::setPreSharedKey(unsigned char *pskIdent, unsigned char *psKey)
```

Parameters

pskIdent: identity for PSK

psKey: Pre shared key

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Do not set a root CA and client certificate if PSK should be used for authentication. If root CA, client certificate and PSK are all set, certificate based authentication will be used.

Class WiFiUdp

WiFiUDP Class

Description

Defines a class of WiFi UDP implementation for Ameba.

Syntax

```
class WiFiUDP
```

Members

Public Constructors	
WiFiUDP::WiFiUDP	Constructs a WiFiUDP instance of the WiFi UDP class that can send and receive UDP messages
Public Methods	
WiFiUDP:: begin	initialize, start listening on the specified port. Returns 1 if successful, 0 if there are no sockets available to use
WiFiUDP:: stop	Finish with the UDP socket
WiFiUDP:: beginPacket	Start building up a packet to send to the remote host-specific in IP and port
WiFiUDP:: endPacket	Finish off this packet and send it
WiFiUDP:: write	Write a single byte into the packet
WiFiUDP:: writeImmediately	Send packet immediately from the buffer
WiFiUDP:: parsePacket	Start processing the next available incoming packet
WiFiUDP::available	Number of bytes remaining in the current packet
WiFiUDP::read	Read a single byte from the current packet
WiFiUDP:: peek	Return the next byte from the current packet without moving on to the next byte
WiFiUDP:: flush	Finish reading the current packet
WiFiUDP:: remoteIP	Return the IP address of the host who sent the current incoming packet
WiFiUDP:: remotePort	Return the port of the host who sent the current incoming packet
WiFiUDP:: setRecvTimeout	Set receiving timeout

WiFiUDP::WiFiUDP

Description

Constructs a WiFiUDP instance of the WiFi UDP class that can send and receive UDP messages.

Syntax

WiFiUDP::WiFiUDP(void)

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: WiFiUdpSendReceiveString

This example demonstrates WiFi UDP send and receive string. This sketch waits for a UDP packet on a local port using a WiFi shield. When a packet is received an Acknowledge packet is sent to the client on port remotePort.

```
#include <WiFi.h>
```

```
#include <WiFiUdp.h>
```

```
int status = WL_IDLE_STATUS;
char ssid[] = "yourNetwork"; // your network SSID (name)
char pass[] = "secretPassword"; // your network password (use for WPA, or use as key for WEP)
int keyIndex = 0; // your network key Index number (needed only for WEP)
unsigned int localPort = 2390; // local port to listen on
char packetBuffer[255]; //buffer to hold incoming packet
char ReplyBuffer[] = "acknowledged"; // a string to send back
WiFiUDP Udp;

void setup() {
//Initialize serial and wait for port to open:
Serial.begin(9600);
while (!Serial) {
; // wait for serial port to connect. Needed for native USB port only
}
// check for the presence of the shield:
if (WiFi.status() == WL_NO_SHIELD) {
Serial.println("WiFi shield not present");
// don't continue:
while (true);
}
String fv = WiFi.firmwareVersion();
if (fv != "1.1.0") {
Serial.println("Please upgrade the firmware");
}
// attempt to connect to Wifi network:
while (status != WL_CONNECTED) {
Serial.print("Attempting to connect to SSID: ");
Serial.println(ssid);
// Connect to WPA/WPA2 network. Change this line if using open or WEP network:
status = WiFi.begin(ssid,pass);
// wait 10 seconds for connection:
delay(10000);
}
Serial.println("Connected to wifi");
printWifiStatus();
Serial.println("\nStarting connection to server...");
```



```

// if you get a connection, report back via serial:
Udp.begin(localPort);
}

void loop() {
// if there's data available, read a packet
int packetSize = Udp.parsePacket();
if (packetSize) {
  Serial.print("Received packet of size ");
  Serial.println(packetSize);
  Serial.print("From ");
  IPAddress remoteIp = Udp.remoteIP();
  Serial.print(remoteIp);
  Serial.print(", port ");
  Serial.println(Udp.remotePort());
  // read the packet into packetBuffer
  int len = Udp.read(packetBuffer, 255);
  if (len > 0) {
    packetBuffer[len] = 0;
  }
  Serial.println("Contents:");
  Serial.println(packetBuffer);
  // send a reply, to the IP address and port that sent us the packet we received
  Udp.beginPacket(Udp.remoteIP(), Udp.remotePort());
  Udp.write(ReplyBuffer);
  Udp.endPacket();
}
}

void printWifiStatus() {
// print the SSID of the network you're attached to:
Serial.print("SSID: ");
Serial.println(WiFi.SSID());
// print your WiFi shield's IP address:
IPAddress ip = WiFi.localIP();
Serial.print("IP Address: ");
Serial.println(ip);
// print the received signal strength:

```

```
long rssi = WiFi.RSSI();  
Serial.print("signal strength (RSSI):");  
Serial.print(rssi);  
Serial.println(" dBm");  
}
```

Notes and Warnings

This constructor does not take in any parameter, thus use another method to set up the IP address and port number.

WiFiUDP::begin

Description

Initialize, start listening on the specified port. Returns 1 if successful, 0 if there are no sockets available to use.

Syntax

```
uint8_t WiFiUDP::begin(uint16_t port)
```

Parameters

port: the local port to listen on

Returns

1: if successful
0: if there are no sockets available to use

Example Code

Example: WiFiUdpSendReceiveString

This example demonstrates WiFi UDP send and receive string. This sketch waits for a UDP packet on a local port using a WiFi shield. When a packet is received an Acknowledge packet is sent to the client on port remotePort. The detail of the code can be found in WiFiUDP:: WiFiUDP.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiUDP::stop

Description

Disconnect from the server. Release any resource being used during the UDP session.

Syntax

```
void WiFiUDP::stop(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiUDP::beginPacket**Description**

Start building up a packet to send to the remote host-specific in IP and port.

Syntax

```
int WiFiUDP::beginPacket(const char *host, uint16_t port)
int WiFiUDP::beginPacket(IPAddress ip, uint16_t port)
```

Parameters

host: hostname
port: port number
ip: IP address

Returns

1: if successful
0: if there was a problem with the supplied IP address or port

Example Code

Example: WiFiUdpSendReceiveString

This example demonstrates WiFi UDP send and receive string. This sketch waits for a UDP packet on a local port using a WiFi shield. When a packet is received an Acknowledge packet is sent to the client on port remotePort. The detail of the code can be found in WiFiUDP:: WiFiUDP.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiUDP::endPacket

Description

Finish off this packet and send it

Syntax

```
int WiFiUDP::endPacket(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

1: if the packet was sent successfully
0: if there was an error

Example Code

Example: WiFiUdpSendReceiveString

This example demonstrates WiFi UDP send and receive string. This sketch waits for a UDP packet on a local port using a WiFi shield. When a packet is received an Acknowledge packet is sent to the client on port remotePort. The detail of the code can be found in WiFiUDP:: WiFiUDP.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiUDP::write

Description

Write a single byte into the packet.

Syntax

```
size_t WiFiUDP::write(uint8_t byte)  
size_t WiFiUDP::write(const uint8_t *buffer, size_t size)
```

Parameters

byte: the outgoing byte

buffer: the outgoing message
size: the size of the buffer

Returns

single-byte into the packet
bytes size from the buffer into the packet

Example Code

Example: WiFiUdpSendReceiveString

This example demonstrates WiFi UDP send and receive string. This sketch waits for a UDP packet on a local port using a WiFi shield. When a packet is received an Acknowledge packet is sent to the client on port remotePort. The detail of the code can be found in WiFiUDP:: WiFiUDP.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiUDP::writeImmediately**Description**

Send packet immediately from the buffer

Syntax

size_t WiFiUDP::writeImmediately(const uint8_t *buffer, size_t size)

Parameters

buffer: the outgoing message
size: the size of the buffer

Returns

single-byte into the packet
bytes size from the buffer into the packet

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiUDP::parsePacket

Description

Start processing the next available incoming packet

Syntax

```
int WiFiUDP::parsePacket(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the size of the packet in bytes or returns “0:” if no packets are available.

Example Code

Example: WiFiUdpSendReceiveString

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiUDP::available

Description

Number of bytes remaining in the current packet.

Syntax

```
int WiFiUDP::available(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

the number of bytes available in the current packet
0: if parsePacket hasn't been called yet

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiUDP::read**Description**

Read a single byte from the current packet

Syntax

```
int WiFiUDP::read()
```

```
int WiFiUDP::read(unsigned char* buffer, size_t len)
```

Parameters

buffer: buffer to hold incoming packets (char*)

len: maximum size of the buffer (int)

Returns

size: the size of the buffer

-1: if no buffer is available

Example Code

Example: WiFiUdpSendReceiveString

his example demonstrates WiFi UDP send and receive string. This sketch waits for a UDP packet on a local port using a WiFi shield. When a packet is received an Acknowledge packet is sent to the client on port remotePort. The detail of the code can be found in WiFiUDP:: WiFiUDP.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiUDP::peek**Description**

Return the next byte from the current packet without moving on to the next byte

Syntax

```
int WiFiUDP::peek(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

b: the next byte or character
-1: if none is available

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiUDP::flush

Description

Finish reading the current packet

Syntax

```
void WiFiUDP::flush(void)
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiUDP::remoteIP

Description

Return the IP address of the host who sent the current incoming packet

Syntax

IPAddress WiFiUDP::remoteIP(void)

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

IP address connecting to

Example Code

Example: WiFiUdpSendReceiveString

This example demonstrates WiFi UDP send and receive string. This sketch waits for a UDP packet on a local port using a WiFi shield. When a packet is received an Acknowledge packet is sent to the client on port remotePort. The detail of the code can be found in WiFiUDP:: WiFiUDP.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiUDP::remotePort**Description**

Return the port of the host who sent the current incoming packet

Syntax

uint16_t WiFiUDP::remotePort(void)

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The remote port connecting to

Example Code

Example: WiFiUdpSendReceiveString

This example demonstrates WiFi UDP send and receive string. This sketch waits for a UDP packet on a local port using a WiFi shield. When a packet is received an Acknowledge packet is sent to the client on port remotePort. The detail of the code can be found in WiFiUDP:: WiFiUDP.

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFiUDP::setRecvTimeout

Description

Set receiving timeout

Syntax

```
void WiFiUDP::setRecvTimeout(int timeout)
```

Parameters

timeout in seconds

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

NA

WiFi_Readme

The Ameba WiFi related APIs and examples are works based on Arduino WiFi shield libraries (<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Reference/WiFi>).

These include,

WiFi.cpp
WiFi.h
WiFiServer.cpp
WiFiServer.h
WiFiUdp.cpp
WiFiUdp.h

These libraries are under GNU Lesser General Public License, either version 2.1 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.

Class TwoWire

TwoWire Class

Description

Defines a class of I2C API

Syntax

```
class TwoWire
```

Members

Public Constructors	
TwoWire::TwoWire	Constructs a TwoWire object
Public Methods	
TwoWire::begin	Initialize I2C master/slave
TwoWire::setClock	Set I2C frequency
TwoWire::beginTransaction	Begin I2C transmission
TwoWire::endTransmission	End I2C transmission
TwoWire::requestFrom	Set I2C requestFrom
TwoWire::write	Write data to I2C
TwoWire::available	Check if I2C is available
TwoWire::read	Read data from I2C
TwoWire::peek	Read peek from I2C
TwoWire::flush	Do nothing, use, and transmission(..) to force data transfer
TwoWire::onReceive	Callback function when I2C on receive
TwoWire::onRequest	Callback function when I2C on request

TwoWire::TwoWire

Description

Constructs a TwoWire object.

Syntax

```
TwoWire::TwoWire (uint32_t dwSDAPin, uint32_t dwSCLPin);
```

Parameters

dwSDAPin: The Arduino PIN to be set as an SDA pin.

dwSCLPin: The Arduino PIN to be set as an SCL pin.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: MasterWriter

This example demonstrates the use of the wire library writes to an I2C/TWI slave device.

```
#include <Wire.h>

void setup() {
  Wire.begin(); // join i2c bus (address optional for master)
}

byte x = 0;

void loop() {
  Wire.beginTransmission(8); // transmit to device #8
  Wire.write("x is "); // sends five bytes
  Wire.write(x); // sends one byte
  Wire.endTransmission(); // stop transmitting
  x++;
  delay(500);
}
```

Example: MasterReader

```
#include <Wire.h>

void setup() {
  Wire.begin(); // join i2c bus (address optional for master)
  Serial.begin(9600); // start serial for output
}

void loop() {
  Wire.requestFrom(8, 6); // request 6 bytes from slave device #8
  while (Wire.available()) { // slave may send less than requested
    char c = Wire.read(); // receive a byte as character
    Serial.print(c); // print the character
  }
  delay(500);
}
```

This example demonstrates the use of the wire library reads data from an I2C/TWI slave device.

Notes and Warnings

Include “Wire.h” to use the class function.

TwoWire::begin

Description

Initialize I2C master/slave.

Syntax

```
void TwoWire::begin (void);  
void TwoWire::begin (uint8_t address = 0);  
void TwoWire::begin (int address);
```

Parameters

void: Set the I2C master mode.

address: Set the I2C master mode with slave address value.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: MasterReader; MasterWriter

The details of the code can be found in the previous section of TwoWire:: TwoWire.

Notes and Warnings

Include “Wire.h” to use the class function.

TwoWire::setClock**Description**

Set I2C frequency.

Syntax

```
void TwoWire::setClock(uint32_t frequency);
```

Parameters

frequency: The frequency values.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: MasterReader; MasterWriter

The details of the code can be found in the previous section of TwoWire:: TwoWire.

Notes and Warnings

Include “Wire.h” to use the class function.

TwoWire::beginTransaction

Description

Begin I2C transmission.

Syntax

```
void TwoWire::beginTransaction (uint8_t address);  
void TwoWire::beginTransaction (int address);
```

Parameters

address: The transmission address.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: MasterReader; MasterWriter

The details of the code can be found in the previous section of TwoWire:: TwoWire.

Notes and Warnings

Include “Wire.h” to use the class function.

TwoWire::endTransmission

Description

End I2C transmission. Originally, ‘endTransmission’ was an f(void) function. It has been modified to take one parameter indicating whether or not a STOP should be performed on the bus. Calling endTransmission(false) allows a sketch to perform a repeated start.

WARNING: Nothing in the library keeps track of whether the bus tenure has been properly ended with a STOP. It is very possible to leave the bus in a hung state if no call to endTransmission(true) is made. Some I2C devices will behave oddly if they do not see a STOP.

If the input parameter is void, this provides backward compatibility with the original definition, and expected behavior, of endTransmission.

Syntax

```
uint8_t TwoWire::endTransmission (uint8_t sendStop);  
uint8_t TwoWire::endTransmission (void);
```

Parameters

sendStop: True to end the transmission

Returns

Return 0 if successful, else error.

Example Code

Example: MasterReader; MasterWriter

The details of the code can be found in the previous section of TwoWire:: TwoWire.

Notes and Warnings

Include “Wire.h” to use the class function.

TwoWire::requestFrom**Description**

Set I2C requestFrom.

Syntax

```
uint8_t TwoWire::requestFrom (uint8_t address, uint8_t quantity, uint8_t sendStop);  
uint8_t TwoWire::requestFrom (uint8_t address, uint8_t quantity);  
uint8_t TwoWire::requestFrom(int address, int quantity);  
uint8_t TwoWire::requestFrom (int address, int quantity, int sendStop);
```

Parameters

address: I2C read address.

quantity: I2C read quantity.

sendStop: True to end the transmission.

Returns

Return 0 if successful, else error.

Example Code

Example: MasterReader; MasterWriter

The details of the code can be found in the previous section of TwoWire:: TwoWire.

Notes and Warnings

Include “Wire.h” to use the class function.

TwoWire::write

Description

Write data to I2C.

Syntax

```
size_t TwoWire::write (uint8_t data);  
size_t TwoWire::write (const uint8_t *data, size_t quantity);
```

Parameters

data: The data to be transmitted.

quantity: The quantity of data.

Returns

Return 0 if successful, else error.

Example Code

Example: MasterReader; MasterWriter

The details of the code can be found in the previous section of TwoWire:: TwoWire.

Notes and Warnings

Include “Wire.h” to use the class function.

TwoWire::available

Description

Check if I2C is available.

Syntax

```
int TwoWire::available (void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Return 0 if successful, else error.

Example Code

Example: MasterReader; MasterWriter

The details of the code can be found in the previous section of TwoWire:: TwoWire.

Notes and Warnings

Include “Wire.h” to use the class function.

TwoWire::read**Description**

Read data from I2C

Syntax

```
int TwoWire::read (void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The read data from the receive buffer.

Example Code

Example: MasterReader; MasterWriter

The details of the code can be found in the previous section of TwoWire:: TwoWire.

Notes and Warnings

Include “Wire.h” to use the class function.

TwoWire::peek**Description**

Read peek from I2C.

Syntax

```
int TwoWire::peek (void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The peek data read from the receive buffer.

Example Code

Example: MasterReader; MasterWriter

The details of the code can be found in the previous section of TwoWire:: TwoWire.

Notes and Warnings

Include “Wire.h” to use the class function.

TwoWire::flush

Description

Do nothing, use endTransmission(..) to force data transfer.

Syntax

```
void TwoWire::flush (void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: MasterReader; MasterWriter

Notes and Warnings

Include “Wire.h” in order to use the class function.

TwoWire::onReceive

Description

Callback function when I2C on receive.

Syntax

```
void TwoWire::onReceive (void(*function)(int));
```

Parameters

function: The callback function.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: MasterReader; MasterWriter

The details of the code can be found in the previous section of TwoWire:: TwoWire.

Notes and Warnings

Include “Wire.h” to use the class function.

TwoWire::onRequest**Description**

Callback function when I2C on request.

Syntax

```
void TwoWire::onRequest (void(*function)(void));
```

Parameters

function: The callback function

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: MasterReader; MasterWriter

The details of the code can be found in the previous section of TwoWire:: TwoWire.

Notes and Warnings

Include “Wire.h” to use the class function.

Wire_Readme

The Ameba LCD related api and example are works based on “New LiquidCrystal library” (<https://bitbucket.org/fmalpartida/new-liquidcrystal/>).

These include,

LCD.h
LCD.cpp
I2CIO.h
I2CIO.cpp
LiquidCrystal_I2C.h
LiquidCrystal_I2C.cpp
examples/LcdHelloWorld/LcdHelloWorld.ino

These files inherit the licence of “New LiquidCrystal Library” which are under a Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 3.0 Unported License. CC BY-SA 3.0.

Class AudioCodec

Description

A class used for general control and management of the hardware audio codec functions.

Syntax

```
class AudioCodec
```

Members

Public Constructors

The public constructor should not be used as this class is intended to be a singleton class. Access member functions using the object instance named Codec.

Public Methods

AudioCodec::begin	Configure and start the audio codec for transmit and receive operation
AudioCodec::end	Stop all audio codec operation
Au- dioCodec::getBufferSize	Get the byte size of a single page of the audio codec buffer
AudioCodec::setSampleRate	Configure the audio codec transmit and receive sampling rate
AudioCodec::setBitDepth	Configure the audio codec transmit and receive bit depth (bits per sample)
Au- dioCodec::setChannelCount	Configure the audio codec transmit and receive channel count
Au- dioCodec::setInputMicType	Configure for analog or digital input microphone type
Au- dioCodec::setInputLRMux	Configure input left right channel multiplexing
AudioCodec::setDMicBoost	Configure boost gain for digital microphone input
AudioCodec::setAMicBoost	Configure boost gain for analog microphone input
AudioCodec::setADCGain	Configure gain of ADC used to acquire analog input
AudioCodec::muteInput	Mute input audio data stream
Au- dioCodec::setOutputVolume	Configure output audio volume
AudioCodec::muteOutput	Mute output audio
AudioCodec::writeAvaliable	Check for free buffer page available for data write
AudioCodec::writeDataPage	Write audio data to an available buffer page
AudioCodec::readAvaliable	Check for buffer page with new data available for read
AudioCodec::readDataPage	Read audio data from a ready buffer page
Au- dioCodec::setWriteCallback	Set a callback function to be notified when a free buffer page is available for write
Au- dioCodec::setReadCallback	Set a callback function to be notified when a buffer page with new data is available for read

AudioCodec::begin**Description**

Configure and start the audio codec for transmit and receive operation.

Syntax

```
void begin(bool input, bool output);
```

Parameters

input: enable audio codec data input

output: enable audio codec data output

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BasicInputOutput

Notes and Warnings**AudioCodec::end****Description**

Stop all audio codec operation.

Syntax

```
void end();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

AudioCodec::getBufferSize

Description

Get the byte size of a single page of the audio codec buffer.

Syntax

```
uint32_t getBufferSize();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The size of a audio codec buffer page, in number of bytes.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

The AudioCodec class includes a transmit and receive buffer to store audio sample data while transferring to and from the DAC output and ADC input. The buffer is divided into pages of fixed size, and audio data can be read and written one page at a time. Depending on the configured bit depth (bits per audio sample) and channel count, a buffer page may contain a different number of audio samples.

AudioCodec::setSampleRate

Description

Configure the audio codec transmit and receive sampling rate.

Syntax

```
void setSampleRate(uint32_t sampleRate);
```

Parameters

sampleRate: desired audio codec sampling rate in Hz. Default value of 48000. Supported values: 8000, 16000, 32000, 44100, 48000, 88200, 96000.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BasicInputOutput

Notes and Warnings

High sample rates above 48000Hz will require frequent buffer reads and writes to keep up with the large amount of data input and output. If there is insufficient processing time dedicated to this task, audio quality will be degraded.

AudioCodec::setBitDepth**Description**

Configure the audio codec transmit and receive bit depth (bits per sample).

Syntax

```
void setBitDepth(uint8_t bitDepth);
```

Parameters

bitDepth: desired number of bits per sample. Default value of 16. Supported values: 8, 16, 24.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Setting a bit depth of 24 bits per sample will require 32 bits (4 bytes) of buffer space for storing each sample, with the most significant byte ignored.

AudioCodec::setChannelCount**Description**

Configure the audio codec transmit and receive channel count.

Syntax

```
void setChannelCount(uint8_t monoStereo);
```

Parameters

monoStereo: number of channels. Default value of 1. Supported values: 1, 2.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BasicInputOutput

Notes and Warnings**AudioCodec::setInputMicType****Description**

Configure for analog or digital input microphone type.

Syntax

```
Void setInputMicType(Mic_Type micType);
```

Parameters

micType: Input microphone type. Default value ANALOGMIC. Valid values:

- ANALOGMIC – microphone with an analog output

- PDMMIC – digital microphone with a PDM output

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

For analog single-ended output, connect to PA_4 for the left channel and PA_2 for the right channel.

For digital PDM output, connect the PDM clock to PB_1 and PDM data to PB_2.

AudioCodec::setInputLRMux**Description**

Configure input left right channel multiplexing.

Syntax

```
void setInputLRMux(uint32_t mux);
```

Parameters

mux: desired left right audio channel multiplexing setting. Default value RX_CH_LR. Valid values:

- RX_CH_LR
- RX_CH_RL
- RX_CH_LL
- RX_CH_RR

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

In mono channel mode, both RX_CH_LR and RX_CH_LL will result in the audio codec sampling input data from the left channel microphone. Similarly, both RX_CH_RL and RX_CH_RR will result in the audio codec sampling input data from the right channel microphone.

In stereo channel mode, RX_CH_RL will switch the positions of input data sampled from the microphones. RX_CH_RR and RX_CH_LL will result in duplicated samples from the right and left microphones respectively.** **

AudioCodec::setDMicBoost**Description**

Configure boost gain for digital microphone input.

Syntax

```
void setDMicBoost(uint32_t leftBoost, uint32_t rightBoost);
```

Parameters

leftBoost: boost gain for left channel digital microphone input

rightBoost: boost gain for right channel digital microphone input

Valid boost gain values:

- 0 : 0dB
- 1 : 12dB
- 2 : 24dB
- 3 : 36dB

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

AudioCodec::setAMicBoost

Description

Configure boost gain for analog microphone input.

Syntax

```
void setAMicBoost(uint32_t leftBoost, uint32_t rightBoost);
```

Parameters

leftBoost: boost gain for left channel analog microphone input

rightBoost: boost gain for right channel analog microphone input

Valid boost gain values:

- 0 : 0dB
- 1 : 20dB
- 2 : 30dB
- 3 : 40dB

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Only use this function if additional gain is required after using setADCGain function.

AudioCodec::setADCGain

Description

Configure gain of ADC used to acquire analog input.

Syntax

```
void setADCGain(uint32_t leftGain, uint32_t rightGain);
```

Parameters

leftGain: Gain for left channel ADC

rightGain: Gain for right channel ADC

Valid value range is from 0x00 to 0x7f. Gain increases by 0.375dB for every increment in value:

- 0x00 : -17.625dB
- 0x01 : -17.25dB
- 0x2f : 0dB
- 0x30 : 0.375dB
- 0x7f : 30dB

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

AudioCodec::muteInput

Description

Mute input audio data stream.

Syntax

```
void muteInput(uint8_t leftMute, uint8_t rightMute);
```

Parameters

leftMute: 1 to mute left channel input, 0 to unmute

rightMute: 1 to mute right channel input, 0 to unmute

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

AudioCodec::setOutputVolume

Description

Configure output audio volume.

Syntax

```
void setOutputVolume(uint8_t leftVol, uint8_t rightVol);
```

Parameters

leftVol: left channel output volume

rightVol: right channel output volume

Valid value ranges from 0 to 100, corresponding to a volume of -65.625dB to 0dB.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: BasicInputOutput

Notes and Warnings**AudioCodec::muteOutput****Description**

Mute output audio.

Syntax

```
void muteOutput(uint8_t leftMute, uint8_t rightMute);
```

Parameters

leftMute: 1 to mute left channel output, 0 to unmute

rightMute: 1 to mute right channel output, 0 to unmute

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings**AudioCodec::writeAvaliable****Description**

Check for free buffer page available for data write.

Syntax

```
bool writeAvaliable();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Returns true if there is a buffer page that is available for writing data into. Returns false if all buffer pages are full.

Example Code

Example: BasicInputOutput

Notes and Warnings**AudioCodec::writeDataPage****Description**

Write audio data to an available buffer page.

Syntax

```
uint32_t writeDataPage(int8_t* src, uint32_t len);
```

```
uint32_t writeDataPage(int16_t* src, uint32_t len);
```

Parameters

src: pointer to array containing audio samples to write to audio codec.

len: number of audio samples in array.

Returns

The function returns the number of audio samples written to the audio codec.

Example Code

Example: BasicInputOutput

Notes and Warnings**AudioCodec::readAvaliable****Description**

Check for buffer page with new data available for read.

Syntax

```
bool readAvaliable();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Returns true if there is a buffer page with new data that is ready for reading data from. Returns false if all buffer pages are empty.

Example Code

Example: BasicInputOutput

Notes and Warnings**AudioCodec::readDataPage****Description**

Read audio data from a ready buffer page.

Syntax

```
uint32_t readDataPage(int8_t* dst, uint32_t len);  
uint32_t readDataPage(int16_t* dst, uint32_t len);
```

Parameters

dst: pointer to array to contain audio samples read from audio codec.

len: number of audio samples to read.

Returns

The function returns the number of audio samples read from the audio codec.

Example Code

Example: BasicInputOutput

Notes and Warnings**AudioCodec::setWriteCallback****Description**

Set a callback function to be notified when a free buffer page is available for write.

Syntax

```
void setWriteCallback(void (writeCB)(**void*));
```

Parameters

writeCB: function to be called when a buffer page becomes available for data write. Takes no arguments and returns nothing

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

After starting the audio codec with AudioCodec::begin(), the callback function will be called each time the audio codec finishes outputting the data in a buffer page.

AudioCodec::setReadCallback**Description**

Set a callback function to be notified when a buffer page with new data is available for read.

Syntax

```
void setReadCallback(void (readCB)(**void*));
```

Parameters

readCB: function to be called when a buffer page with new data becomes available for data read. Takes no arguments and returns nothing

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

After starting the audio codec with AudioCodec::begin(), the callback function will be called each time the audio codec fills up a buffer page with newly acquired audio samples.

Class SdFatFs**Description**

Defines a class of SD FAT File system.

Syntax

```
class SdFatFs
```

Members**Public Constructors**

SdFatFs::SdFatFs Constructs a SdFatFs object

SdFatFs::~SdFatFs Destructs a SdFatFs object

Public Methods

SdFatFs::begin	Initialize SD FAT File System
SdFatFs::end	Deinitialize SD FAT File System
SdFatFs::*getRootPath	Get the root path of the SD FAT File System
SdFatFs::readDir	List items under a specific folder
SdFatFs::mkdir	Create folder
SdFatFs::rm	Remove folder or file
SdFatFs::isDir	Check if a specific path is a directory
SdFatFs::isFile	Check if a specific path is a file
SdFatFs::getLastModTime	Get the last modified time for a file or directory
SdFatFs::setLastModTime	Set the last modified time for a file or directory
SdFatFs::status	Return the current status of SD
SdFatFs::open	Open a file

SdFatFs::begin

Description

Initialize SD FAT File System.

Syntax

```
int SdFatFs::begin(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Returns “0” if success, else returns a negative value.

Example Code

Example: create_folder; file_read_write; get_file_attribute; last_modified_time; list_root_files.

Notes and Warnings

Include “SdFatFs.h” to use the class function.

SdFatFs::end

Description

De-initialize SD FAT File System.

Syntax

```
int SdFatFs::end(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Returns “0” if success, else returns a negative value.

Example Code

Example: create_folder; file_read_write; get_file_attribute; last_modified_time; list_root_files.

Notes and Warnings

Include “SdFatFs.h” to use the class function.

SdFatFs::getRootPath**Description**

Get the root path of the SD FAT File System. The logical volume character is starting from ‘0’, so the root path would like “0:/”.

Syntax

```
char *SdFatFs::getRootPath(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the root path.

Example Code

Example: create_folder; file_read_write; get_file_attribute; last_modified_time; list_root_files.

Notes and Warnings

Include “SdFatFs.h” to use the class function.

SdFatFs::readDir**Description**

List items under a specific folder. List items under a specific folder and store the result in the buffer that user specified. Each item is separated by ‘0’.

Syntax

```
int SdFatFs::readDir(char *path, char *result_buf, unsigned int bufsize);
```

Parameters

path: The absolute directory path to be listed.

result_buf: The buffer to be stored results.

bufsize: The size of result_buf. If results exceed this size, then the results larger than this size would be discarded.

Returns

Returns “0” if success, else returns a negative value.

Example Code

Example: get_file_attribute; list_root_files

Notes and Warnings

Include “SdFatFs.h” to use the class function.

SdFatFs::mkdir**Description**

Create folder.

Syntax

```
int SdFatFs::mkdir(char *absolute_path);
```

Parameters

absolute_path: The absolute directory path to be created

Returns

Returns “0” if success, else returns a negative value.

Example Code

Example: create_folder

Notes and Warnings

Include “SdFatFs.h” to use the class function.

SdFatFs::rm

Description

Remove folder or file.

Syntax

```
int SdFatFs::rm(char *absolute_path);
```

Parameters

absolute_path: The absolute directory or file path to be deleted

Returns

Returns “0” if success, else returns a negative value.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Include “SdFatFs.h” to use the class function.

SdFatFs::isDir**Description**

Check if a specific path is a directory.

Syntax

```
unsigned char SdFatFs::isDir(char *absolute_path);
```

Parameters

absolute_path: The absolute path to be queried

Returns

The function returns “1” if it is a directory, else returns “0”.

Example Code

Example: get_file_attribute

Notes and Warnings

Include “SdFatFs.h” to use the class function.

SdFatFs::isFile

Description

Check if a specific path is a file.

Syntax

```
unsigned char SdFatFs::isFile(char *absolute_path);
```

Parameters

absolute_path: The absolute path to be queried

Returns

The function returns “1” if it is a directory, else returns “0”.

Example Code

Example: get_file_attribute

Notes and Warnings

Include “SdFatFs.h” to use the class function.

SdFatFs::getLastModTime

Description

Get the last modified time for a file or directory.

Syntax

```
int SdFatFs::getLastModTime(char *absolute_path, uint16_t *year, uint16_t *month, uint16_t *date, uint16_t *hour, uint16_t *minute, uint16_t *second);
```

Parameters

absolute_path: The absolute path to be queried.

year: The value of the year.

month: The value of the month.

date: The value of the date.

hour: The value of an hour.

minute: The value of a minute.

second: field “second” contains no valid information in the current version.

Returns

The function returns “0” if success, otherwise returns a negative value for failure.

Example Code

Example: last_modified_time

Notes and Warnings

Include “SdFatFs.h” to use the class function.

SdFatFs::setLastModTime

Description

Set the last modified time for a file or directory. Ameba doesn’t have built-in RTC. So we manually change file/directory last modified time.

Syntax

```
int SdFatFs::setLastModTime(char *absolute_path, uint16_t year, uint16_t month, uint16_t date, uint16_t hour,
uint16_t minute, uint16_t second);
```

Parameters

absolute_path: The absolute path to be queried.

year: The value of the year.

month: The value of the month.

date: The value of the date.

hour: The value of an hour.

minute: The value of a minute.

second: field “second” contains no valid information in the current version.

Returns

The function returns “0” if success, otherwise returns a negative value for failure.

Example Code

Example: last_modified_time

Notes and Warnings

Include “SdFatFs.h” to use the class function.

SdFatFs::open

Description

Open a file.

Syntax

```
SdFatFile SdFatFs::open(char *absolute_path);
```

Parameters

absolute_path: The path to a file.

Returns

The file object is an instance of SdFatFile.

Example Code

Example: create_folder; file_read_write; get_file_attribute; last_modified_time; list_root_files.

Notes and Warnings

Include “SdFatFs.h” to use the class function.

SdFatFs::status

Description

Return the current status of SD.

Syntax

```
int SdFatFs::status(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

Function returns “1” if ready to use, else return “0” if the status is inactivating or abnormal.

Example Code

NA.

Notes and Warnings

Include “SdFatFs.h” to use the class function.

Class FFT

Description

A class used for performing FFT calculations with real-number inputs and outputs.

Syntax

```
class FFT
```

Members

Public Constructors

FFT::FFT	Create an instance of the FFT class
----------	-------------------------------------

Public Methods

FFT::setWindow	Configure the window function used in FFT calculations
FFT::calculate	Calculate FFT for an input array of values
FFT::getFrequencyBins	Get the FFT output frequency bins
FFT::getFFTSize	Get the size of FFT output for a given input size

FFT::FFT

Description

Create a FFT class object.

Syntax

```
void FFT();
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: FFT

Notes and Warnings

FFT::setWindow

Description

Configure the window function used in FFT calculations.

Syntax

```
void setWindow(FFTWindow_t window, uint16_t sampleCount);
```

Parameters

window: The window function to be used in FFT calculations. Valid values: None, Hann, Hamming.

sampleCount: Number of sample datapoints in the input.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: FFT

Notes and Warnings

The window function is used to reduce the effects of discontinuities that occur when the input signal has frequencies that do not fit an integer number of periods in the sample datapoints.

More information on FFTs and window functions can be seen at:

<https://download.ni.com/evaluation/pxi/Understanding%20FFTs%20and%20Windowing.pdf>

https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Window_function

FFT::Calculate**Description**

Calculate FFT for an input array of values.

Syntax

```
void calculate(float* inputBuf, float* outputBuf, uint16_t sampleCount);
```

```
void calculate(int16_t* inputBuf, float* outputBuf, uint16_t sampleCount);
```

Parameters

inputBuf: pointer to an array of sampleCount size, containing input sample datapoints, in float or uint16_t format.

outputBuf: pointer to a float array of sampleCount/2 size, for containing FFT output.

sampleCount: number of sample datapoints in the input array, valid values: 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, 1024, 2048.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example:FFT

Notes and Warnings

Large sample counts will require a longer time for FFT calculations, but will also return a result with higher frequency resolution.

FFT::getFrequencyBins**Description**

Get the FFT output frequency bins.

Syntax

```
void getFrequencyBins(uint16_t* outputBuf, uint16_t sampleCount, uint32_t sampleRate);
```

Parameters

outputBuf: pointer to a uint16_t array of sampleCount/2 size, for containing the calculated center frequency of each FFT output element.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

Example: FFT

Notes and Warnings**FFT::getFFTSIZE****Description**

Get the size of FFT output for a given input size.

Syntax

```
uint16_t getFFTSIZE(uint16_t sampleCount);
```

Parameters

sampleCount: number of input sample datapoints.

Returns

The function returns the FFT output size for the given sampleCount, which is sampleCount/2.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings**Class SdFatFile****Description**

Defines a class of SD FAT File.

Syntax

```
class SdFatFile
```

Members

Public Constructors	
SdFatFile::SdFatFile	Constructs a SdFatFile object
SdFatFile::~SdFatFile	Destructs a SdFatFile object
Public Methods	
SdFatFile::write	Write 1 byte/bytes to file
SdFatFile::read	Read 1 byte/bytes from the file
SdFatFile::peek	Read 1 byte from file without move cursor
SdFatFile::available	Check if the cursor is at EOF (End-Of-File)
SdFatFile::bool	Check if file is opened
SdFatFile::seek	Change cursor to a specific position
SdFatFile::close	Close file

SdFatFile::write**Description**

Write 1 byte or bytes to the file.

Syntax

```
size_t SdFatFile::write(uint8_t c);  
size_t SdFatFile::write(const uint8_t *buf, size_t size);
```

Parameters

c: The character to be written.

buf: The buffer to be written.

size: The length of buffer to be written.

Returns

The function returns the number of byte count that has been successfully written to the file.

Example Code

NA.

Notes and Warnings

Include “SdFatFile.h” to use the class function.

SdFatFile:: read**Description**

Read 1 byte or bytes from the file.

Syntax

```
int SdFatFile::read(void);  
int SdFatFile::read(void *buf, uint16_t nbyte);
```

Parameters

buf: The buffer to store the content.

nbyte: The buffer size. (Or can be regarded as the desired length to read).

Returns

The function returns a read character or the read size of the buffer.

Example Code

1. #include “FatFs_SD.h”
- 2.
3. char dirname[] = “testdir”;
4. char filename[] = “test.txt”;
5. char write_content[] = “hello world!”;


```
6.
7. FatFsSD fs;
8.
9. void setup() {
10. char buf[128];
11. char absolute_filename[128];
12.
13. fs.begin();
14.
15. sprintf(absolute_filename, "%s%s", fs.getRootPath(), dirname);
16. fs.mkdir(absolute_filename);
17. printf("create dir at \"%s\"rn", absolute_filename);
18.
19. sprintf(absolute_filename, "%s%s/%s", fs.getRootPath(), dirname, filename);
20. SdFatFile file = fs.open(absolute_filename);
21. file.println(write_content);
22. file.close();
23. printf("create file at \"%s\"rn", absolute_filename);
24.
25. printf("read back from \"%s\"rn", absolute_filename);
26. file = fs.open(absolute_filename);
27.
28. memset(buf, 0, sizeof(buf));
29. file.read(buf, sizeof(buf));
30.
31. file.close();
32. printf("==== content =====rn");
33. printf("%s", buf);
34. printf("==== end =====rn");
35.
36. fs.end();
37. }
38.
39. void loop() {
40. delay(1000);
41. }
```

42.

Example: create_folder;

This example shows how to create a folder and open a file under it.

```
1. #include "FatFs_SD.h"
2.
3. char filename[] = "test.txt";
4. char write_content[] = "hello world!";
5.
6. FatFsSD fs;
7.
8. void setup() {
9.   char buf[128];
10.  char absolute_filename[128];
11.
12.  fs.begin();
13.
14.  printf("write something to \"%s\"rn", filename);
15.  sprintf(absolute_filename, "%s%s", fs.getRootPath(), filename);
16.  SdFatFile file = fs.open(absolute_filename);
17.
18.  file.println(write_content);
19.
20.  file.close();
21.  printf("write finishrnrn");
22.
23.  printf("read back from \"%s\"rn", filename);
24.  file = fs.open(absolute_filename);
25.
26.  memset(buf, 0, sizeof(buf));
27.  file.read(buf, sizeof(buf));
28.
29.  file.close();
30.  printf("==== content ====rn");
31.  printf("%s", buf);
32.  printf("==== end ====rn");
```

```
33.  
34. fs.end();  
35. }  
36.  
37. void loop() {  
38.   delay(1000);  
39. }  
40.
```

Example: file_read_write;

This example shows how to open/close files and perform read/write to it.

Notes and Warnings

Include “SdFatFile.h” to use the class function.

SdFatFile:: peek

Description

Read one byte from the file without moving the curser.

Syntax

```
int SdFatFile::peek(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns the read character as an integer number.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Include “SdFatFile.h” to use the class function.

SdFatFile:: available

Description

Check if the cursor is at EOF.

Syntax

```
int SdFatFile::available(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns “0” if the cursor is at EOF, else returns “1”.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Include “SdFatFile.h” to use the class function.

SdFatFile:: flush

Description

It is a nop. This is an inherited function from class Stream. And it does not affect SD File.

Syntax

```
void SdFatFile::flush(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns nothing.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Include “SdFatFile.h” to use the class function.

SdFatFile:: seek

Description

Change cursor to a specific position.

Syntax

```
int SdFatFile::seek(uint32_t pos);
```

Parameters

pos: The desired position.

Returns

The function returns 0 if success otherwise returns a negative value.

Example Code

NA

Notes and Warnings

Include “SdFatFile.h” in order to use the class function.

SdFatFile:: close**Description**

Close file.

Syntax

```
int SdFatFile::close(void);
```

Parameters

The function requires no input parameter.

Returns

The function returns 0 if runs successfully otherwise it returns a negative value.

Example Code

Example: last_modified_time;

The example shows how to get and set last modified time of a file.

Example: create_folder;

This example shows how to create a folder and open a file under it. The details of the code can be found in the section of SdFatFile:: read.

Example: file_read_write;

This example shows how to open/close files and perform read/write to it. The details of the code can be found in the section of `SdFatFile:: read`.

```
1. #include <FatFs_SD.h>
2.
3. FatFsSD fs;
4.
5. char filename[] = "test.txt";
6.
7. void setup() {
8.   char absolute_filename[128];
9.
10.  uint16_t year = 2021;
11.  uint16_t month = 4;
12.  uint16_t date = 4;
13.  uint16_t hour = 12;
14.  uint16_t minute = 12;
15.  uint16_t second = 12;
16.
17.  fs.begin();
18.
19.  sprintf(absolute_filename, "%s%s", fs.getRootPath(), filename);
20.  SdFatFile file = fs.open(absolute_filename);
21.  file.close();
22.
23.  fs.setLastModTime(absolute_filename, year, month, date, hour, minute, second);
24.
25.  fs.getLastModTime(absolute_filename, &year, &month, &date, &hour, &minute, &second);
26.  printf("filename:\"%s\"rn", absolute_filename);
27.  printf("time mod:%04d/%02d/%02d %02d:%02d:%02drn", year, month, date, hour, minute, second);
28.
29.  fs.end();
30. }
31.
32. void loop() {
33.   delay(1000);
34. }
```

35.

Notes and Warnings

Include “SdFatFile.h” in order to use the class function.

1.1.6 Resources

Links

- [AmebaD Arduino Github](#)
- [Arduino Website](#)

1.1.7 Support

FAQ

Where to buy Ameba RTL8722DM Board?

Refer to [Purchase link](#).

Which Bluetooth standards are supported by RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM?

Both boards support BLE 5.0. Classic Bluetooth (BR/EDR) is not supported.

Which BLE roles are supported?

RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM can operate as either a BLE Central or BLE Peripheral device.

Are all pins on RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM usable?

No, those marked “NC” are not connected to any pin and thus unusable.

Is XIP (execute in place) supported on RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM?

Yes, it is supported.

Does RTL8722CSM support 5G WiFi?

No. Only RTL8722DM supports dual band 2.4G + 5G WiFi. RTL8722CSM only supports single band 2.4G WiFi.

How to enter the download mode?

Press and hold the UART DOWNLOAD button. Then Press the RESET button and release both UART DOWNLOAD and RESET buttons.

Trouble shooting

RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM cannot be found as a Bluetooth device

Please make sure the antenna is connected properly. Check your code for the correct Bluetooth configurations.

My code is not behaving as I expected.

Try to debug your program using printf and Serial.print statements. If the issue persists, you can ask for help at [Forums](#)

Why is there no output on my serial terminal after connecting to RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM UART?

RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM is by default configured at 115200 baud rate, please check if your serial terminal is configured to 115200.

My program is not being downloaded into RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM

Please follow the procedure for the correct downloading.

1. Enter the download mode. The on board Green LED will blink when entered download mode.
2. When downloading the image into board the on board Red LED will blink
3. When success downloaded, Arduino IDE will show notification.

Sometimes WiFi signal is weak

The default antenna for RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM uses the I-Pex Connector. Please change/connect the I-Pex Connector antenna.

Why is my board not powering up?

Please make sure the connector J38 beside resistor R43 is connected. The connector is used to link the power to IC.

1.2 RTL8722DM_MINI

This is the RTL8722DM_MINI online documentation



1.2.1 Getting Started with RTL8722DM_MINI

Ameba ARDUINO: Getting Started with RTL8722DM_MINI

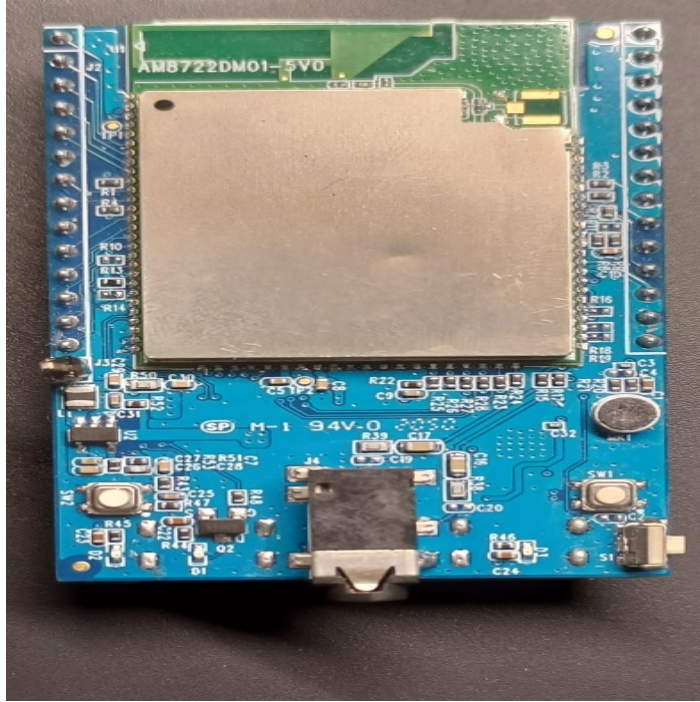
Required Environment

AmebaD RTL8722DM_MINI currently supports Windows XP/7/8/10 32-bits and 64-bits, Linux and Mac operating systems. In this documentation, please use Arduino IDE with version 1.8.12 or later.

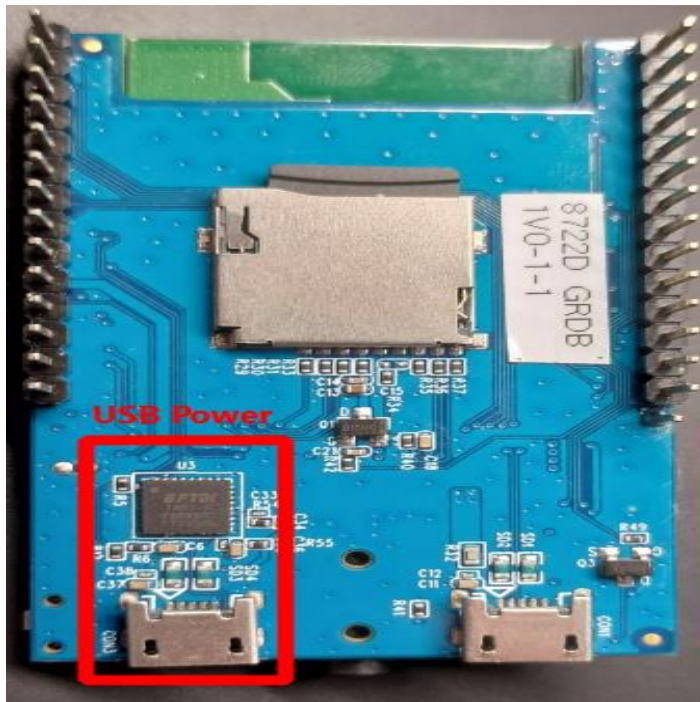
Introduction to AmebaD RTL8722DM_MINI

Ameba is an easy-to-program platform for developing all kind of IoT applications. AmebaD is equipped with various peripheral interfaces, including WiFi, GPIO INT, I2C, UART, SPI, PWM, ADC. Through these interfaces, AmebaD can connect with electronic components such as LED, switches, manometer, hygrometer, PM2.5 dust sensors, ...etc.

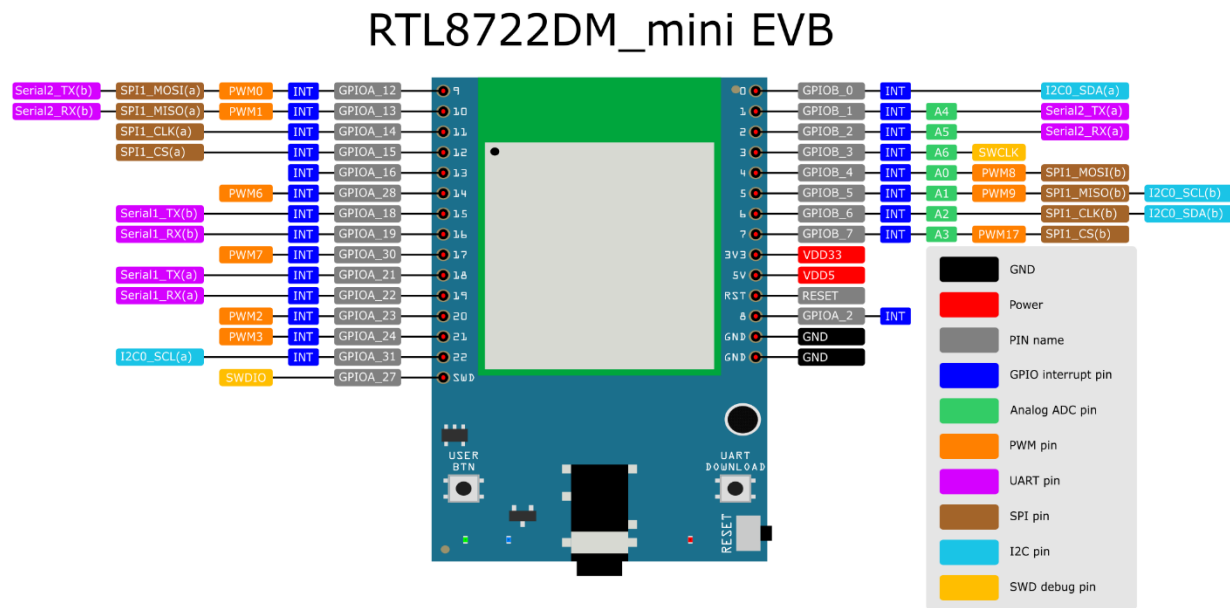
The collected data can be uploaded via WiFi and be utilized by applications on smart devices to realize IoT implementation.



RTL8722DM_MINI has smaller size than Arduino Uno, as shown in the above figure.



RTL8722DM_MINI uses Micro USB to supply power, which is common in many smart devices.
Please refer to the following figure and table for the pin diagram and function of RTL8722DM_MINI.

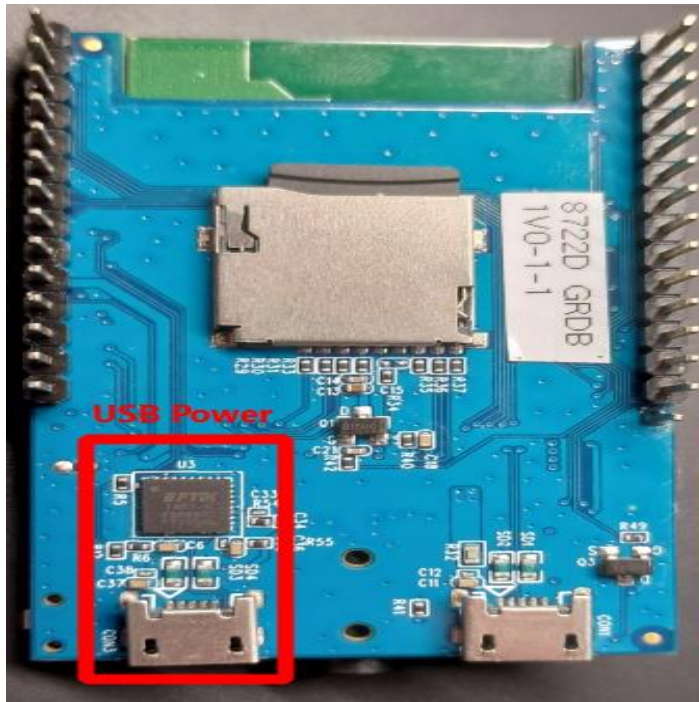


D0	GPIOB_0	✓				I2C0 SDA
D1	GPIOB_1	✓	A4		Serial2_TX	
D2	GPIOB_2	✓	A5		Serial2_RX	
D3	GPIOB_3	✓	A6			
D4	GPIOB_4	✓	A0	✓		
D5	GPIOB_5	✓	A1	✓		I2C0 SCL
D6	GPIOB_6	✓	A2			I2C0 SDA
D7	GPIOB_7	✓	A3	✓		
D8	GPIOA_2	✓				
D9	GPIOA_12	✓		✓	Serial2_TX	SPI1_MOSI
D10	GPIOA_13	✓		✓	Serial2_RX	SPI1_MISO
D11	GPIOA_14	✓				SPI1_CLK
D12	GPIOA_15	✓				SPI1_CS
D13	GPIOA_16	✓				
D14	GPIOA_28	✓		✓		
D15	GPIOA_18	✓			Serial1_TX	
D16	GPIOA_19	✓			Serial1_RX	
D17	GPIOA_30	✓		✓		
D18	GPIOA_21	✓			Serial1_TX	
D19	GPIOA_22	✓			Serial1_RX	
D20	GPIOA_23	✓		✓		
D21	GPIOA_24	✓		✓		
D22	GPIOA_31	✓				I2C0 SCL

Setting up Development Environment

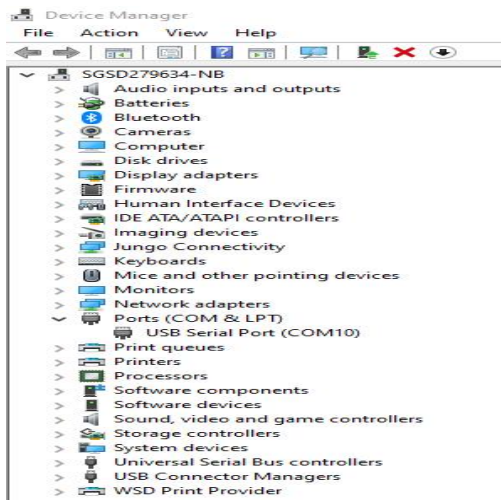
Step 1. Installing the Driver

First, connect RTL8722DM_MINI to the computer via Micro USB(same as power):



If this is the first time you connect RTL8722DM_MINI to your computer, the USB driver for RTL8722DM_MINI will be automatic installed.

You can check the COM port number in Device Manager of your computer:

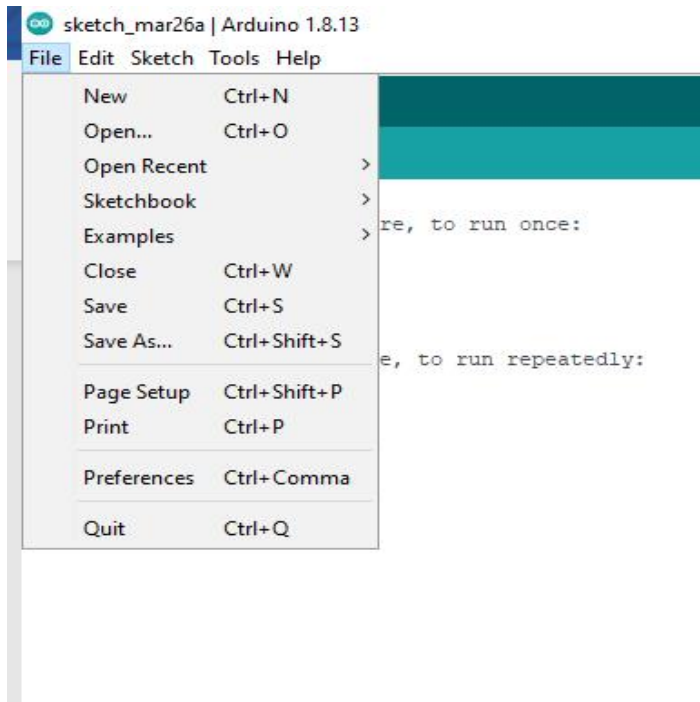


Step 2. Set up Arduino IDE

From version 1.6.5, Arduino IDE supports third-party hardware. Therefore, we can use Arduino IDE to develop applications on RTL8722DM_MINI, and the examples of Arduino can run on RTL8722DM_MINI too. Refer to [basic example link](#).

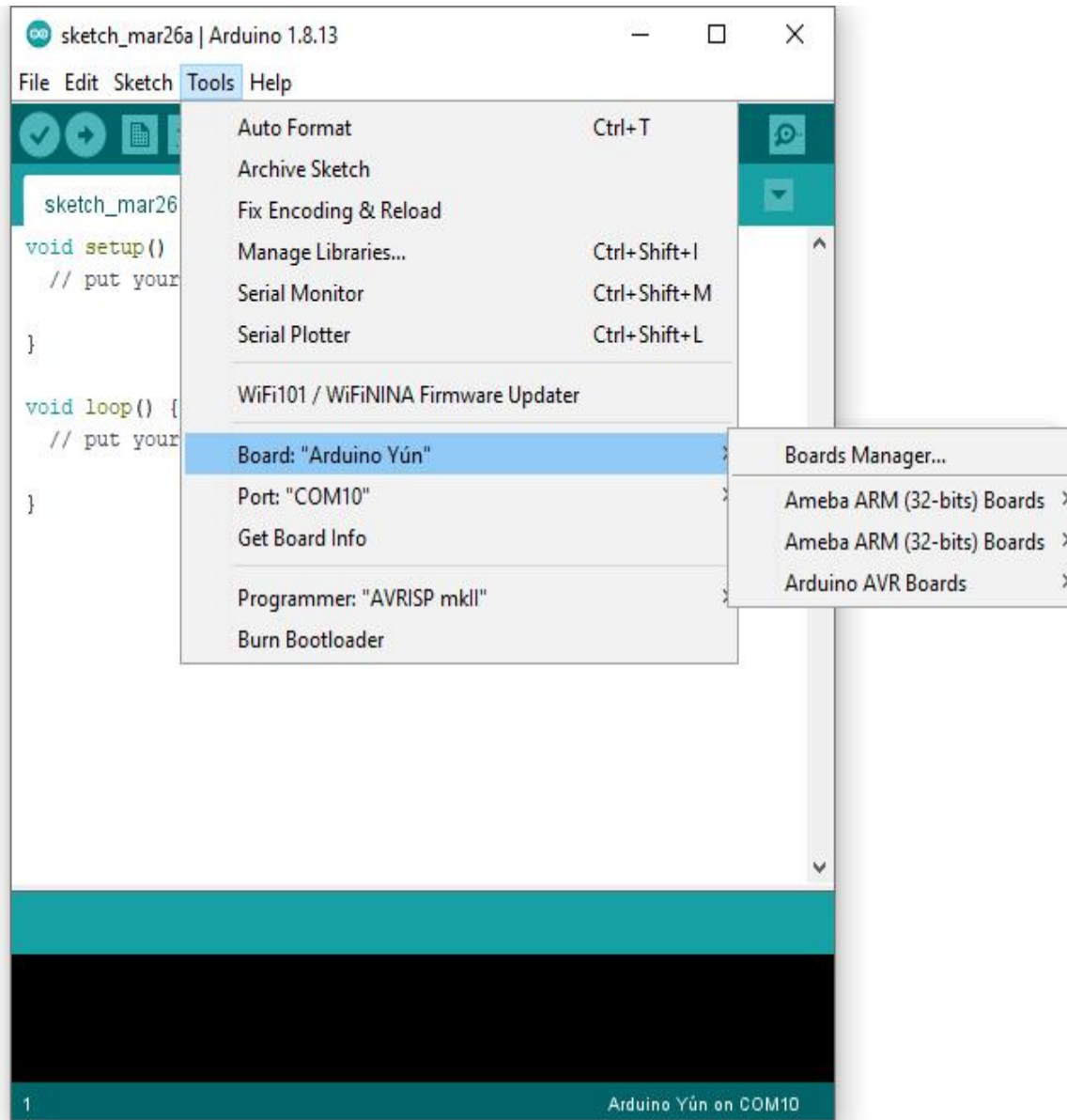
Arduino IDE can be downloaded in the Arduino website: <https://www.arduino.cc/en/Main/Software>

When the installation is finished, open Arduino IDE. To set up RTL8722DM_MINI correctly in Arduino IDE, go to “File” -> “Preferences”.

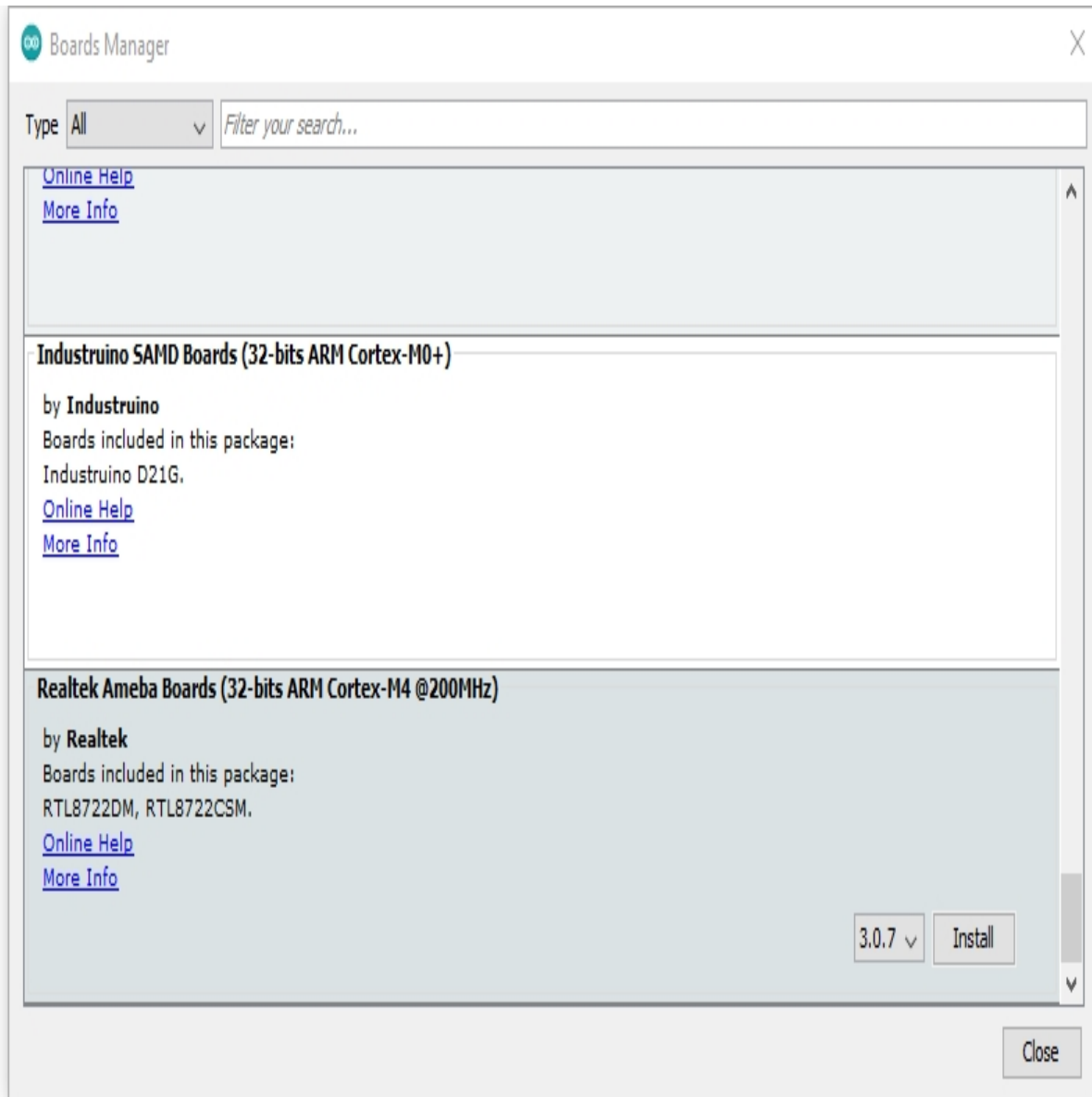


And paste the following URL into “Additional Boards Manager URLs” field: https://github.com/ambiot/ambd_arduino/raw/master/Arduino_package/package_realtek.com_amebad_index.json

Next, go to “Tools” -> “Board” -> “Boards Manager”:



The “Boards Manager” requires about 10~20 seconds to refresh all hardware files (if the network is in bad condition, it may take longer). Every time the new hardware is connected, we need to reopen the Board Manager. So, we close the Boards Manager, and then open it again. Find “Realtek AmebaD Boards (32-bits ARM Cortex-M4 @200MHz)” in the list, click “Install”, then the Arduino IDE starts to download required files for AmebaD.



If you are facing GitHub downloading issue, please refer to the following link at “Download/Software Development Kit”. There are 3 sections.

1. “AmebaD_Arduino_patch1_SDK”, please select at least 1 of the SDKs. There are 5 latest released SDK options.
2. “AmebaD_Arduino_patch2_Tools”, please select according to your operation system. There are Windows, Linux and MacOS.
3. “AmebaD_Arduino_Source_Code”, this section is optional download only wants to refer the latest source code.

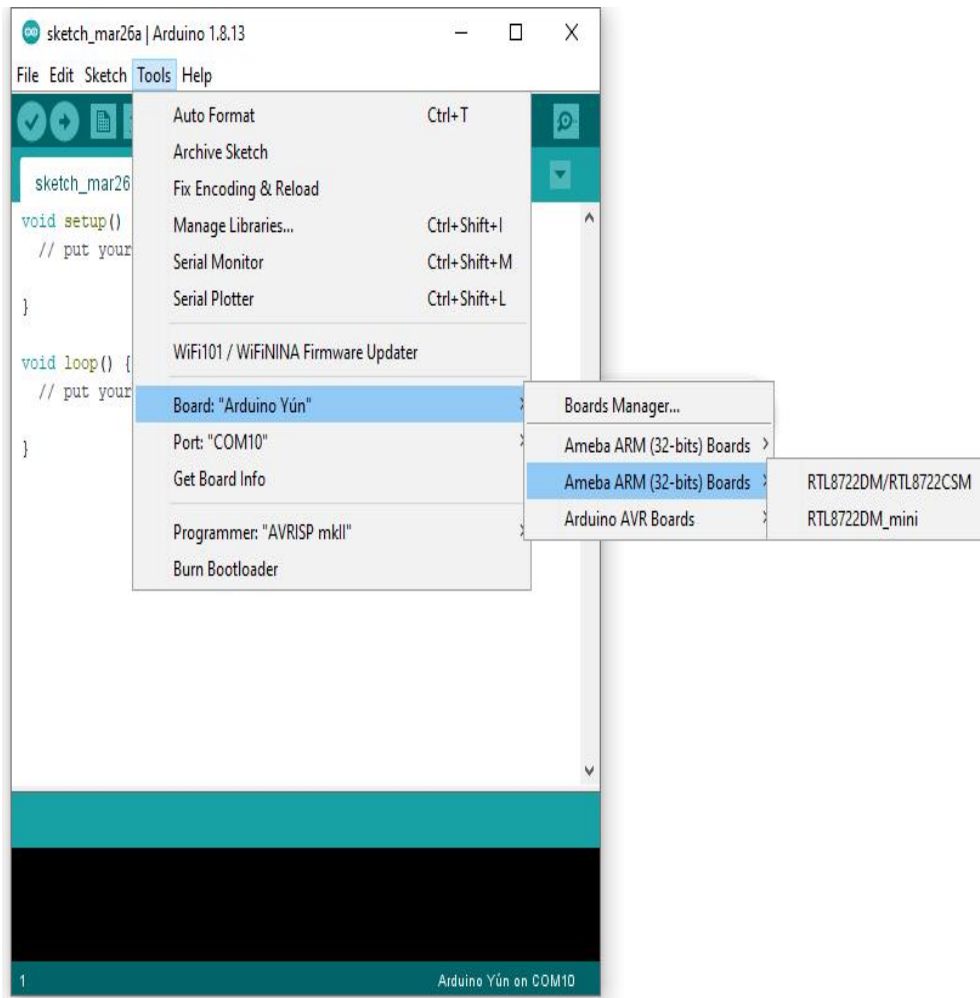
<https://www.amebaiot.com.cn/en/ameba-arduino-summary/>

Download the files selected, then unzip (patch1 and patch2 are compulsory). There are “Install.doc”/”Install.pdf” for you to refer installation steps. According to your system, please run the installation tool in the “Offline_SDK_installation_tool” folder.

After the installation tool running successfully, you may open Arduino IDE and proceed to “tools” -> “Board” -> “Boards

Manager...”. Try to find “Realtek AmebaD Boards (32-bits ARM Cortex-M4 @200MHz)” in the list, click “Install”, then the Arduino IDE starts to download required files for AmebaD.

Finally, we select AmebaD as current connected board in “tools” -> “Board” -> “Ameba ARM (32-bits) Boards” -> “RTL8722DM_MINI”:

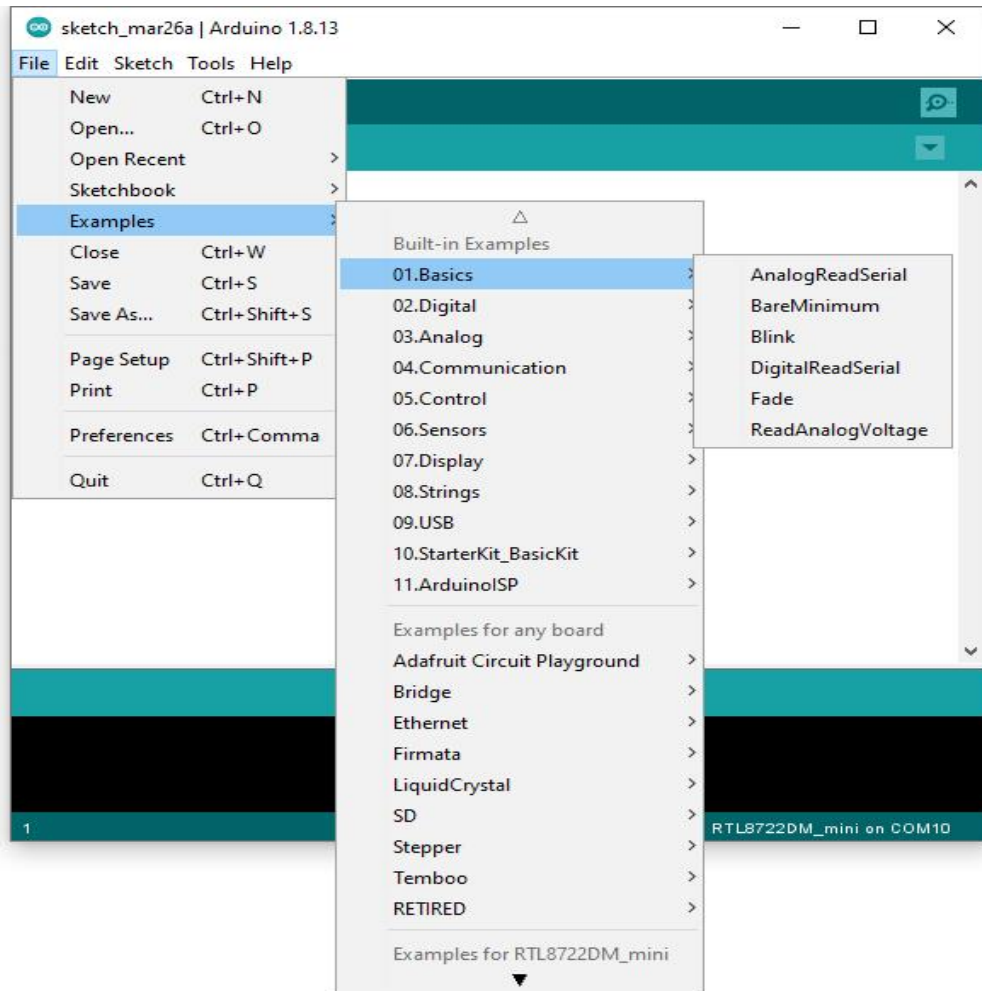


Try the First Example

Step 1. Compile & Upload

Arduino IDE provides many built-in examples, which can be compiled, uploaded and run directly on the boards. Here, we take the “Blink” example as the first try.

Open “File” -> “Examples” -> “01.Basics” -> “Blink”:



Arduino IDE opens a new window with the complete sample code.


```

Blink | Arduino 1.8.13
File Edit Sketch Tools Help

Blink $
If you want to know what pin the on-board LED is connected to on your Arduino
model, check the Technical Specs of your board at:
https://www.arduino.cc/en/Main/Products

modified 8 May 2014
by Scott Fitzgerald
modified 2 Sep 2016
by Arturo Guadalupi
modified 8 Sep 2016
by Colby Newman

This example code is in the public domain.

http://www.arduino.cc/en/Tutorial/Blink
*/

// the setup function runs once when you press reset or power the board
void setup() {
  // initialize digital pin LED_BUILTIN as an output.
  pinMode(LED_BUILTIN, OUTPUT);
}

// the loop function runs over and over again forever
void loop() {
  digitalWrite(LED_BUILTIN, HIGH);   // turn the LED on (HIGH is the voltage level)
  delay(1000);                       // wait for a second
  digitalWrite(LED_BUILTIN, LOW);    // turn the LED off by making the voltage LOW
  delay(1000);                       // wait for a second
}

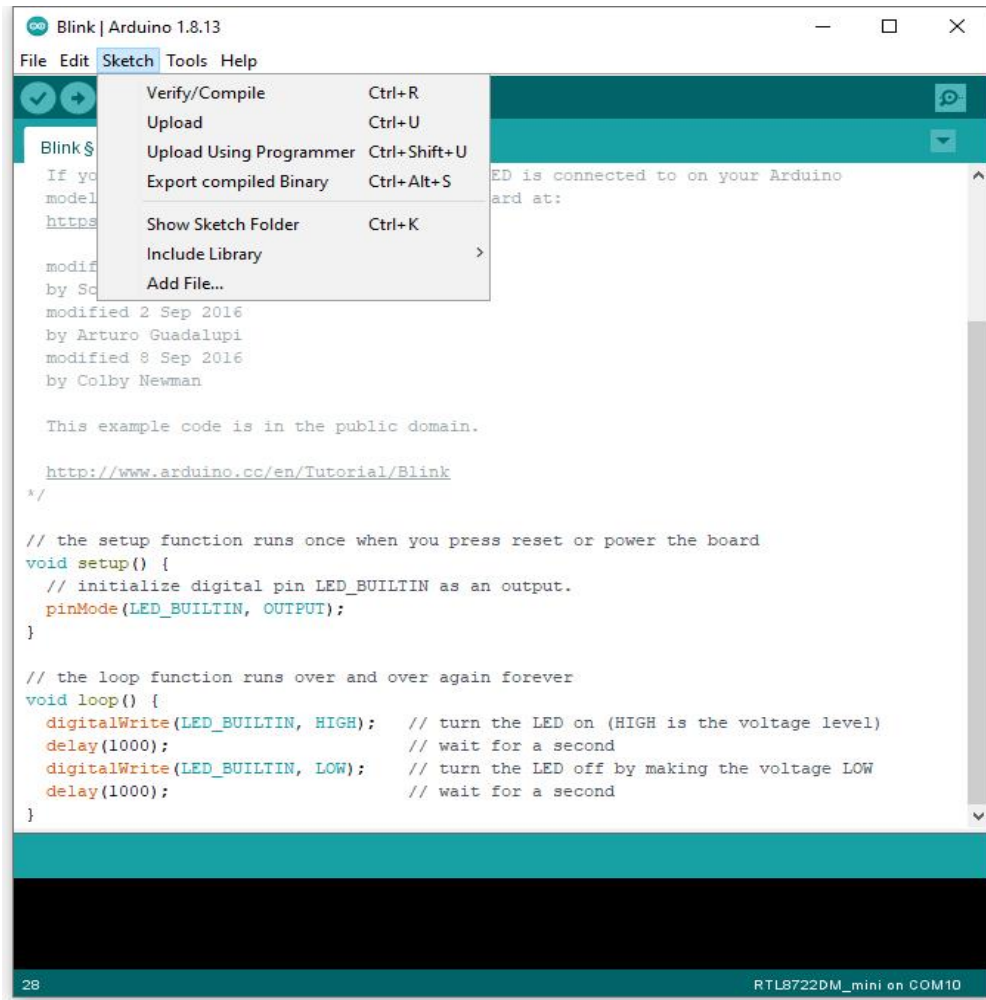
28 RTL8722DM_mini on COM10

```

There are onboard LED of RTL8722DM_MINI, the default “LED_BUILTIN” is blue onboard LED. Change “LED_BUILTIN” to “LED_B” or “LED_G” for different colour. Onboard LEDs options LED_B and LED_G. (blue and green).



Next, we compile the sample code directly; click “Sketch” -> “Verify/Compile”



Arduino IDE prints the compiling messages in the bottom area of the IDE window. When the compilation is finished, you will get the message similar to the following figure:

```

Blink $
If you want to know what pin the on-board LED is connected to on your Arduino
model, check the Technical Specs of your board at:
https://www.arduino.cc/en/Main/Products

modified 8 May 2014
by Scott Fitzgerald
modified 2 Sep 2016
by Arturo Guadalupi
modified 8 Sep 2016
by Colby Newman

This example code is in the public domain.

http://www.arduino.cc/en/Tutorial/Blink
*/

// the setup function runs once when you press reset or power the board
void setup() {
  // initialize digital pin LED_BUILTIN as an output.
  pinMode(LED_BUILTIN, OUTPUT);
}

// the loop function runs over and over again forever
void loop() {
  digitalWrite(LED_BUILTIN, HIGH);   // turn the LED on (HIGH is the voltage level)
  delay(1000);                       // wait for a second
  digitalWrite(LED_BUILTIN, LOW);    // turn the LED off by making the voltage LOW
  delay(1000);                       // wait for a second
}

Done compiling.

Sketch uses 192928 bytes (9%) of program storage space. Maximum is 2097152 bytes.

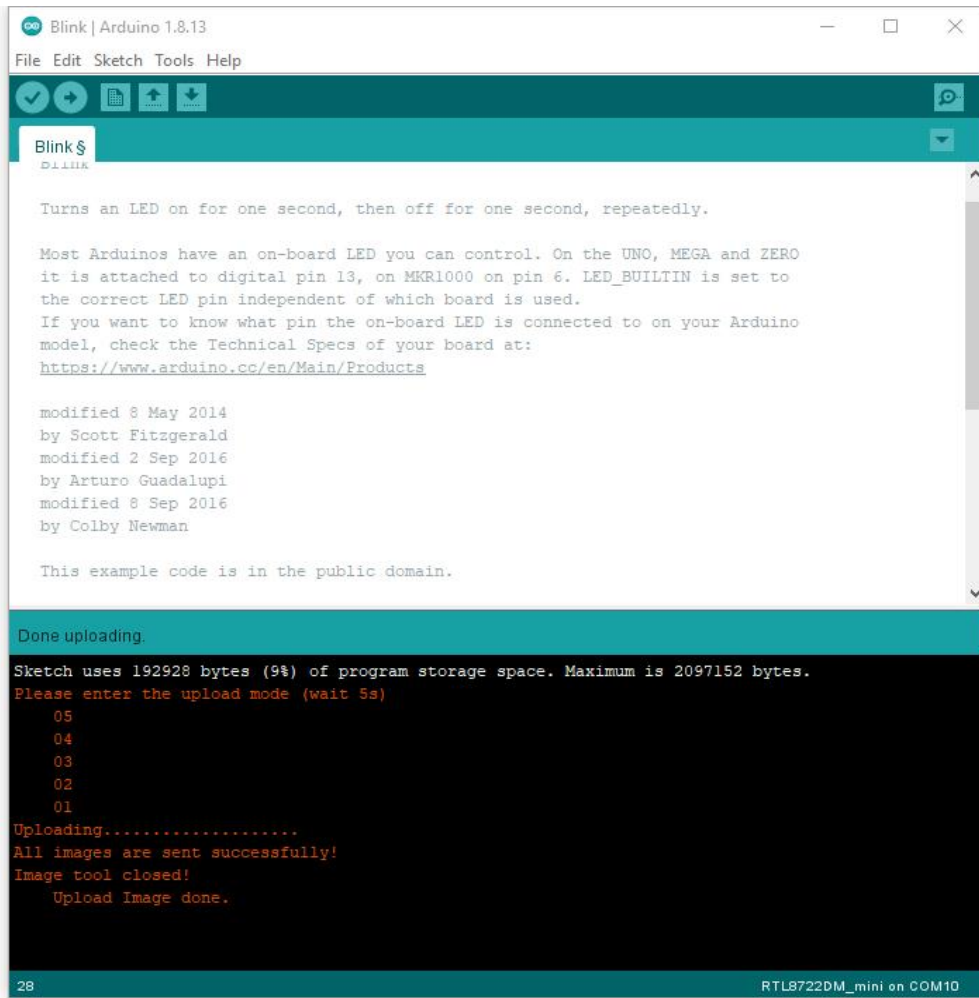
28 RTL8722DM_mini on COM10

```

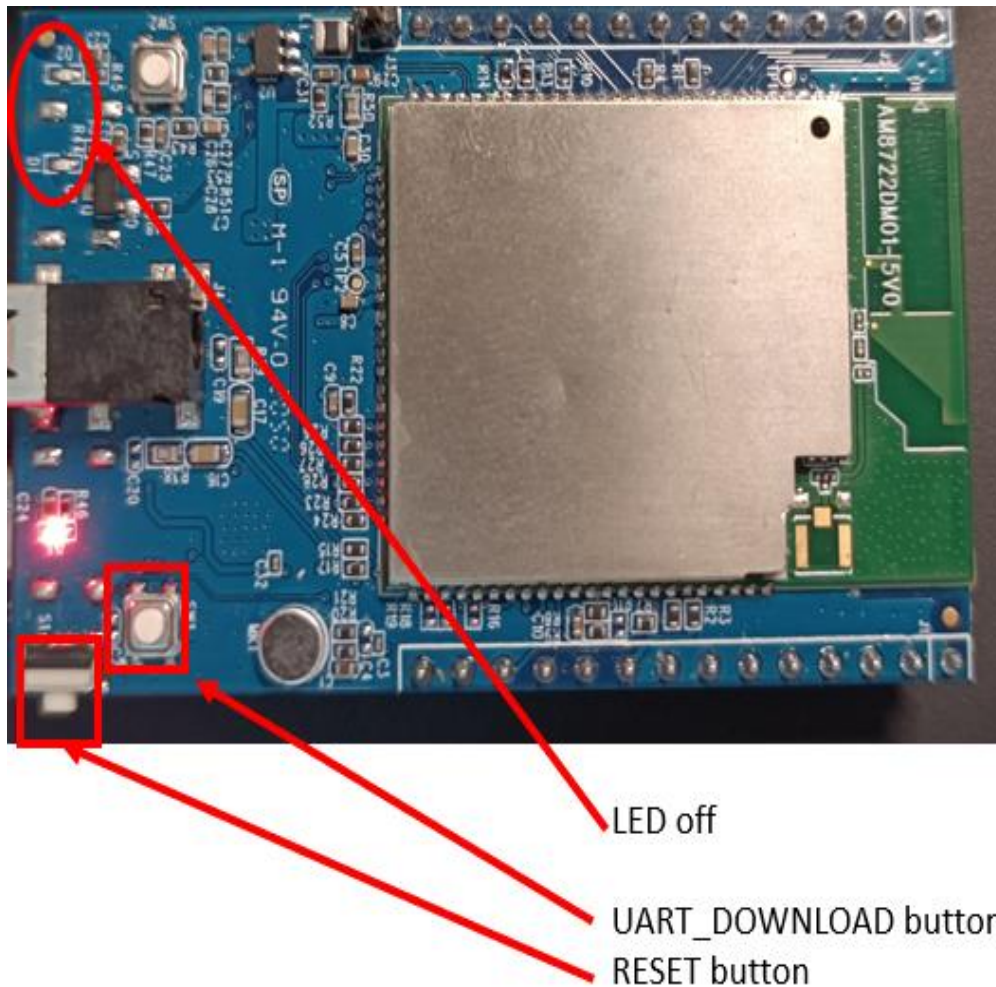
Afterwards, we will upload the compiled code to RTL8722DM_MINI.

Please make sure RTL8722DM_MINI is connected to your computer, then click “Sketch” -> “Upload”.

The Arduino IDE will compile first then upload. During the uploading process, users are required to enter the upload mode of the board. Arduino IDE will wait 5s for DEV board to enter the upload mode.



To enter the upload mode, first press and hold the UART_DOWNLOAD button, then press the RESET button. If success, you should see the onboard green LED and blue LED all turned off.



Again, during the uploading procedure the IDE prints messages. Uploading procedure takes considerably longer time (about 30 seconds to 1 minute). When upload completed, the “Done uploading” message is printed.

Run the Blink example

In each example, Arduino not only provides sample code, but also detailed documentation, including wiring diagram, sample code explanation, technical details, ...etc. These examples can be directly used on RTL8722DM_MINI.

So, we find the detailed information of the Blink example:

<https://www.arduino.cc/en/Tutorial/BuiltInExamples/Blink>

In short, for RTL8722DM_MINI, the example can be run on both onboard LEDs (green or blue) or external LED (use any GPIO pins for signal output).

Finally, press the RESET button, and you can see the LED blinking.

If you encounter any problem, please refer to Troubleshooting.

1.2.2 Download

Release History

- **Version 3.0.8 – 2021/05/06**
- Feature:
 - – Add RTL8722DM_mini board
 - – Add fatfs for SD card
 - – Add AudioCodec
 - – Add TensorFlow lite support with examples
 - – Add zip libraries for TensorFlow lite support
 - – Update SDK for supporting Arduino IDE 2.0
 - – Update wlan lib
- API Updates:
 - – Update zip libraries of E Ink- – ADC updates, Change calculation method to use EFUSE calibration parameters and SDK formula to improve accuracy
 - – writing_analog updates, minor bug fix and support for mini board
 - – SPI updates, minor bug fix and support for mini board
 - – I2S updates, minor bug fix and support for mini board
 - – IRDevice updates, minor bug fix
- **Version 3.0.7 – 2020/11/19**
- Feature:
 - – Add AmebaIRDevice example IRSendSONY
 - – Update Ameba Arduino IRDevice API
 - – Update Ameba Arduino SSL related API
 - – Update Ameba Arduino Wlan API to support static IP function
- **Version 3.0.6 – 2020/10/28**
- Feature:
 - – Add Ameba RTC support
 - – Add AmebaRTC example RTC and RTCAlarm
 - – Add Ameba Watchdog support
 - – Add AmebaWatchdog example WatchdogTimer
 - – Update Ameba BLE support
 - – Add AmebaBLE example BLEUartService, DHT_over_BLEUart
 - – Update Ameba Wlan library
 - – Update Ameba Wlan SDK structure, add AP mode hidden SSID support
- **Version 3.0.5 – 2020/09/09**
- Feature:

- – Build in tool updates V1.0.4
- – Add zip lib AmebaEink
- – **Add AmebaEink example EinkDisplayImage, EinkDisplayQR, and EinkDisplayText**
- – Add google cloud examples
- – Update Amazon AWS related examples
- – Add power save support
- – **Add AmebaPowerSave example TicklessMode, DeepSleepMode, DeepSleep_DHT_LCD_Example, and DeepSleep_DHT_Eink_Example**
- **Version 3.0.4 – 2020/07/27**
- Feature:
 - – Update BLE library. Add example BLEBatteryClient and BLEWifiConfig
 - – Update from polarssl to mbedtls 2.4.0
- **Version 3.0.3– 2020/07/03**
- Feature:
 - – Build in Image tool updates V1.0.3
 - – Upload log clean up
- **Version 3.0.2 – 2020/06/30**
- Feature:
 - – Windows, Linux and macOS X support
 - – Build in Image tool updates
- **Version 3.0.1 – 2020/05/15**
- Feature:
 - – Official release of AmebaD Arduino SDK
 - – warning cleaning
 - – I2C lib updates
- **Version 3.0.0 – 2020/05/01**
- Feature:
 - – Support Boards Manager and Arduino IDE development
 - – WiFi scan AP, connect to AP, TCP Server/Client, including 5G
 - – Bluetooth, BLE
 - – GPIO digital in/out and interrupt
 - – ADC analog in/out (0 ~ 3.3V)
 - – PWM getting analog results with digital means
 - – SPI master and slave mode
 - – UART 1 for log, 2 for customize usage
 - – I2C master mode

1.2.3 Peripherals & Examples

Basic Examples

There are many built-in examples in Arduino. In the table below, we list all examples that are compatible with Ameba.

Category	Name	Comment	Remarks
1. Basics	AnalogReadSerial	Connect potentiometer. Reading voltage range 0 to 3.3V.	ADC pin options A0, A1, A2, A3, A4, A5 and A6.
	BareMinimum		
	Blink		Onboard LEDs options LED_B and LED_G. (blue and green)
	DigitalReadSerial		Onboard button PUSH_BTN.
	Fade	Replace “led = 9;” by a PWM pin (D4, D5, D7, D9, D10, D14, D17, D20, or D21). e.g. “led = 4;”	* *
	ReadAnalogVoltage	ADC can read a maximum of 3.3V.	* *
2. Digital	BlinkWithoutDelay	The onboard blue LED (LED_B) has been used.	Onboard LEDs options LED_G.
	Button		Onboard LEDs options LED_B and LED_G. On-board button PUSH_BTN.
	Debounce		Onboard LEDs options LED_B and LED_G. On-board button PUSH_BTN.
	DigitalInputPullup		Onboard LEDs options LED_B and LED_G.
	StateChangeDetection		Onboard LEDs options LED_B and LED_G. On-board button PUSH_BTN.
	toneKeyboard	Replace “tone(8, notes[thisSensor], 20);” by a PWM pin (D4, D5, D7, D9, D10, D14, D17, D20, or D21). e.g. “tone(21, notes[thisSensor], 20);”	
	toneMelody		
	toneMultiple		
	tonePitchFollower		
3. Analog	AnalogInOutSerial	Replace “const int analogOutPin = 9;” by a PWM pin (D4, D5, D7, D9, D10, D14, D17, D20, or D21). e.g. “const int analogOutPin = 4;”	

continues on next page

Table 4 – continued from previous page

Category	Name	Comment	Remarks
	AnalogInput		Onboard LEDs options LED_B and LED_G.
	Analog Write Mega		
	Calibration	Replace “ledPin = 9;” by a PWM pin (D4, D5, D7, D9, D10, D14, D17, D20, or D21). e.g. “ledPin = 4;”	Onboard LEDs options LED_B and LED_G. On-board button PUSH_BTN.
	Fading		
	Smoothing		
04. Communication	ASCIITable		
	Dimmer	Replace “ledPin = 9;” by a PWM pin (D4, D5, D7, D9, D10, D14, D17, D20, or D21). e.g. “ledPin = 4;”	
	Graph	Connect potentiometer. Reading voltage range 0 to 3.3V.	ADC pin options A0, A1, A2, A3, A4, A5 and A6.
	Midi	Please use Serial1 with D18 or Serial2 with D1.	
	MultiSerial		
	PhysicalPixel		Onboard LEDs options LED_B and LED_G.
	ReadASCIIString	Use PWM pin for LED (D4, D5, D7, D9, D10, D14, D17, D20, or D21).	
	SerialCallResponse		
	SerialCallResponseASCII		
	SerialEvent		
	SerialPassthrough	For “Serial1”, please use D18 and D19.	
	VirtualColorMixer		ADC pin options A0, A1, A2, A3, A4, A5 and A6.
5. Control	Arrays		
	ForLoopIteration		
	IfStatementConditional		ADC pin options A0, A1, A2, A3, A4, A5 and A6. Onboard LEDs options LED_B and LED_G.
	switchCase		
	switchCase2		
	WhileStatementConditional	Replace “ledPin = 9;” by a PWM pin (D4, D5, D7, D9, D10, D14, D17, D20, or D21). e.g. “ledPin = 4;”	ADC pin options A0, A1, A2, A3, A4, A5 and A6.
6. Display	barGraph		ADC pin options A0, A1, A2, A3, A4, A5 and A6. Onboard LEDs options LED_B and LED_G.

continues on next page

Table 4 – continued from previous page

Category	Name	Comment	Remarks
	Row ColumnScanning		ADC pin options A0, A1, A2, A3, A4, A5 and A6.
7. Strings	CharacterAnalysis		
	StringAdditionOperator		
	StringAppendOperator		
	StringCaseChanges		
	StringCharacters		
	StringComparisonOperators		ADC pin options A0, A1, A2, A3, A4, A5 and A6.
	StringIndexOf		
	StringLength		
	StringLengthTrim		
	StringReplace		
	StringStartsWith-EndsWith		
	StringSubstring		
	StringToInt		

1.2.4 Board HDK

- Layout
- Schematic

1.2.5 API Documents

1.2.6 Resources

Links

[AmebaD Arduino Github](#)

[Arduino Website](#)

1.2.7 Support

FAQ

Where to buy Ameba RTL8722DM Board?

Refer to [Purchase link](#).

Which Bluetooth standards are supported by RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM?

Both boards support BLE 5.0. Classic Bluetooth (BR/EDR) is not supported.

Which BLE roles are supported?

RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM can operate as either a BLE Central or BLE Peripheral device.

Are all pins on RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM usable?

No, those marked “NC” are not connected to any pin and thus unusable.

Is XIP (execute in place) supported on RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM?

Yes, it is supported.

Does RTL8722CSM support 5G WiFi?

No. Only RTL8722DM supports dual band 2.4G + 5G WiFi. RTL8722CSM only supports single band 2.4G WiFi.

How to enter the download mode?

Press and hold the UART DOWNLOAD button. Then Press the RESET button and release both UART DOWNLOAD and RESET buttons.

Trouble shooting

RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM cannot be found as a Bluetooth device

Please make sure the antenna is connected properly. Check your code for the correct Bluetooth configurations.

My code is not behaving as I expected.

Try to debug your program using printf and Serial.print statements. If the issue persists, you can ask for help at [Forums](#)

Why is there no output on my serial terminal after connecting to RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM UART?

RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM is by default configured at 115200 baud rate, please check if your serial terminal is configured to 115200.

My program is not being downloaded into RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM

Please follow the procedure for the correct downloading.

1. Enter the download mode. The on board Green LED will blink when entered download mode.
2. When downloading the image into board the on board Red LED will blink
3. When success downloaded, Arduino IDE will show notification.

Sometimes WiFi signal is weak

The default antenna for RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM uses the I-Pex Connector. Please change/connect the I-Pex Connector antenna.

Why is my board not powering up?

Please make sure the connector J38 beside resistor R43 is connected. The connector is used to link the power to IC.

MICROPYTHON SDK

This is the Ameba MicroPython online documentation



2.1 Getting Started

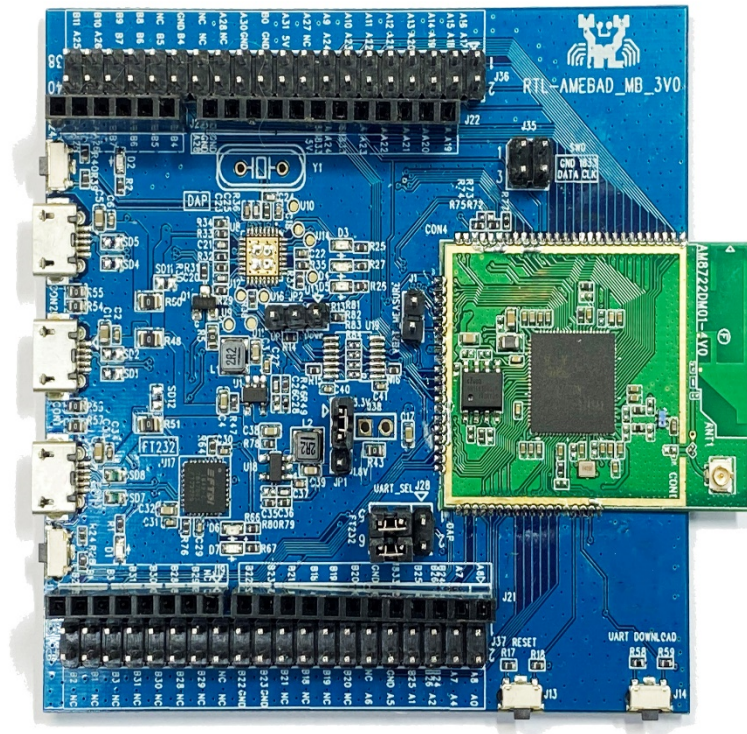
2.1.1 Required Environment

AmebaD RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM MicroPython SDK currently supports Windows 10 and Linux operating systems.

2.1.2 Introduction to AmebaD RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM

Ameba is an easy-to-program platform for developing all kind of IoT applications. AmebaD is equipped with various peripheral interfaces, including WiFi, BLE, GPIO, I2C, UART, SPI, PWM, ADC and so on. Through these interfaces, AmebaD can connect with electronic components such as LED, switches, manometer, hygrometer, PM2.5 dust sensors, ...etc.

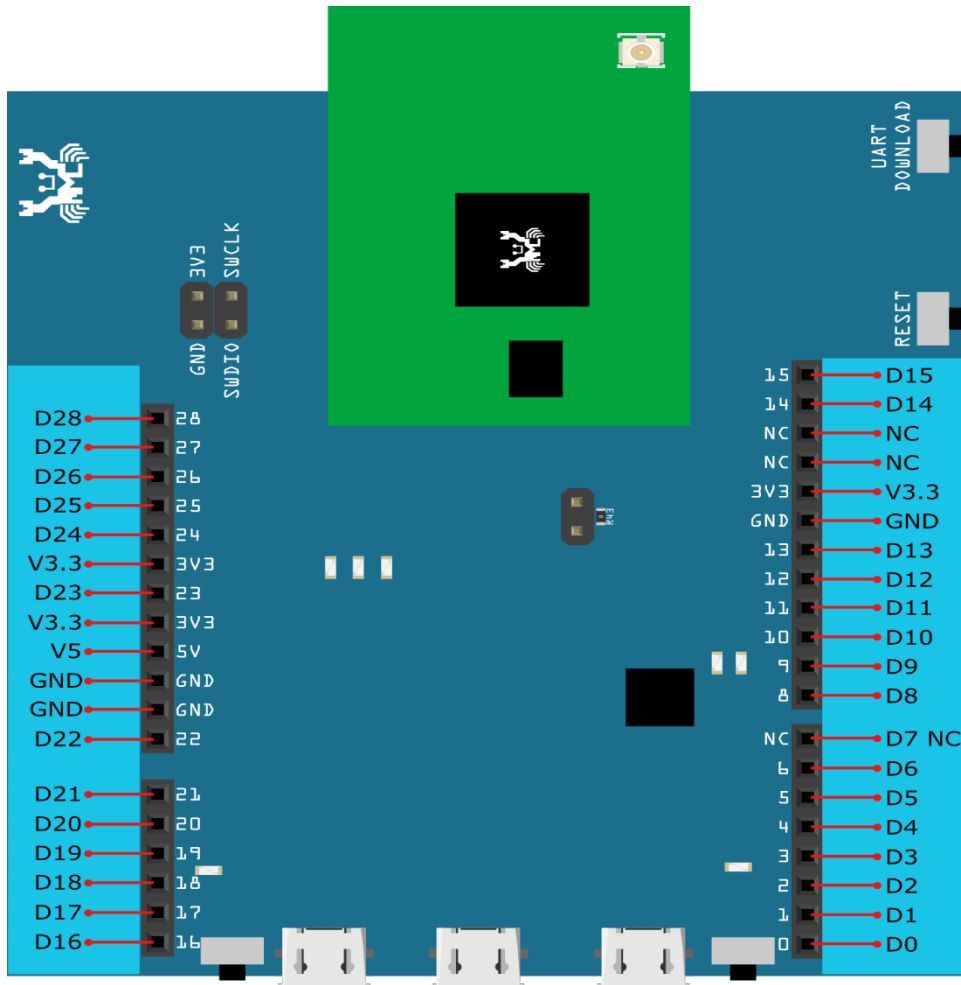
The collected data can be uploaded via WiFi and be utilized by applications on smart devices to realize IoT implementation.



AmebaD and Arduino Uno have similar size, as shown in the above figure, and the pins on AmebaD are compatible with Arduino Uno.

AmebaD uses Micro USB to supply power, which is common in many smart devices.

Please refer to the following figure and table for the pin diagram and function of AmebaD.



INDEX	PIN name	GPIO INT	ADC	PWM	UART	SPI	I2C
D00	GPIOB_2	✓	ADC5		UART3_RX(b)		
D01	GPIOB_1	✓	ADC4		UART3_TX(b)		
D02	GPIOB_3	✓	ADC6				
D03	GPIOB_31	✓					
D04	GPIOB_30	✓					
D05	GPIOB_28	✓					
D06	GPIOB_29	✓					
D07	NC						
D08	GPIOB_22	✓		PWM14			
D09	GPIOB_23	✓		PWM15			
D10	GPIOB_21	✓		PWM13	UART0_RTS(b)	SPI0_CS	
D11	GPIOB_18	✓		PWM10	UART0_RX(b)	SPI0_MOSI	
D12	GPIOB_19	✓		PWM11	UART0_TX(b)	SPI0_MISO	
D13	GPIOB_20	✓		PWM12	UART0_CTS(b)	SPI0_CLK	
D14	GPIOA_7	✓			UART2_TX(log)		
D15	GPIOA_8	✓			UART2_RX(log)		
D16	GPIOA_25	✓		PWM4	UART3_RX(a)		I2C0_SCL
D17	GPIOA_26	✓		PWM5	UART3_TX(a)		I2C0_SDA
D18	GPIOB_7	✓	ADC3	PWM17		SPI1_CS	
D19	GPIOB_6	✓	ADC2			SPI1_CLK	
D20	GPIOB_5	✓	ADC1	PWM9		SPI1_MISO	
D21	GPIOB_4	✓	ADC0	PWM8		SPI1_MOSI	
D22	GPIOA_28	✓					
D23	GPIOA_24	✓		PWM3	UART0_CTS(a)		I2C1_SDA
D24	GPIOA_23	✓		PWM2	UART0_RTS(a)		I2C1_SCL
D25	GPIOA_22	✓			UART0_RX(a)		
D26	GPIOA_21	✓			UART0_TX(a)		
D27	GPIOA_20	✓					
D28	GPIOA_19	✓					

Note: Not all sets of peripherals shown on the picture/table above are available on MicroPython, please refer to “**Peripheral Example and API**” section for more information.

2.1.3 Introduction to RTL8722 MicroPython port

Background Information

MicroPython, by definition, is a lean and efficient Python3 compiler and runtime specially designed for microcontrollers.

MicroPython distinguishes itself from other compilation-based platforms (Arduino etc.) with its powerful method of real-time interaction to Microcontroller through a built-in feature – REPL.

REPL stands for Read-Evaluation-Print-Loop, it is an interactive prompt that you can use to access and control your microcontroller.

REPL has been equipped with other powerful features such as tab completion, line editing, auto-indentation, input history and more. It basically functions like the classic Python IDLE but running on microcontroller.

To use REPL, simply open any serial terminal software (most common ones are teraterm, putty etc.) on your PC and connect to your microcontroller's serial port, then set baudrate to 115200 before manually reset the board, then you will see >>> MicroPython prompt appear on the terminal. Now you may type in any Python script on REPL as long as it's support by MicroPython and your microcontroller's MicroPython port.

Most importantly, try to abuse “help()” function as much as possible to gain more information. For example, upon microcontroller power up and REPL shown, just type

```
>>> help()
```

You will see a help page giving you more details about this port; also if you type

```
>>> help(modules)
```

it will list out all available builtin modules that are at your disposal

Furthermore, if you want to learn more about a module, such as its API and CONSTANT available, simply type the following code and details of that module will be returned to you,

```
>>> help(the module of your interest)
```

Let’s take Pin module (GPIO) as an example:

```
>>> help(Pin)
object <class 'Pin'> is of type type
  id -- <function>
  init -- <function>
  value -- <function>
  off -- <function>
  on -- <function>
  toggle -- <function>
  board -- <class 'board'>
  IN -- 0
  OUT -- 1
  PULL_NONE -- 0
  PULL_UP -- 1
  PULL_DOWN -- 2
```

REPL Hotkeys

- Ctrl + d :

Soft reboot MicroPython will perform software reboot, this is useful when your microcontroller is behaving abnormally. This will also run scripts in ‘boot.py’ once again. Note that this will only reset the MicroPython interpreter not the hardware, all your previously configured hardware will stay the way it is until you manually hard-reset the board.

- Ctrl + e :

Paste mode Paste mode allow you to perform pasting a large trunk of code into REPL at once without executing code line by line. This is useful when you have found a MicroPython library and wish to test it out immediately by copy and paste

- Ctrl + b :

Normal mode This hotkey will set REPL back to normal mode. This is useful if you are stuck in certain mode and can not get out.

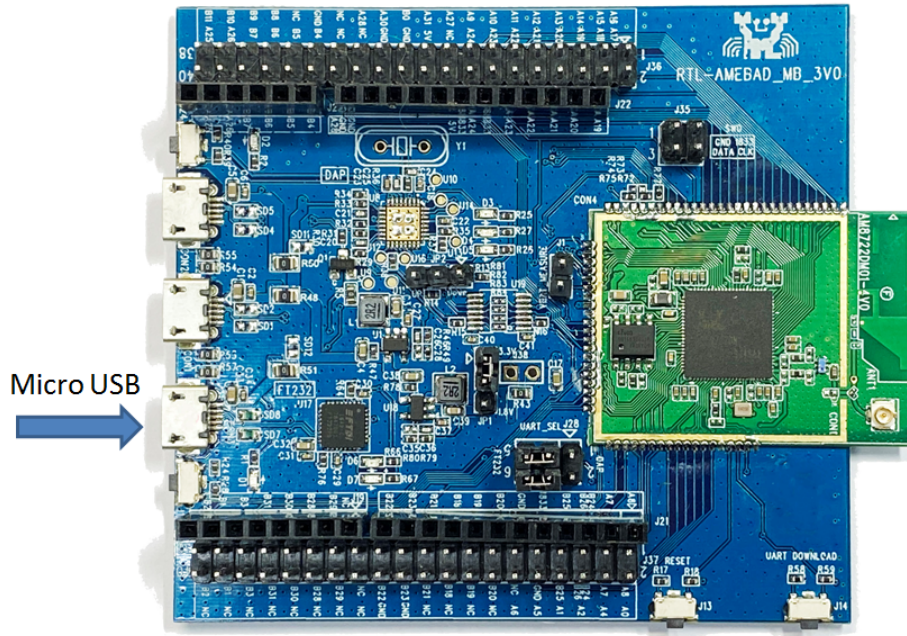
- Ctrl + c :

Quick cancel This hotkey help you to cancel any input and return a new line

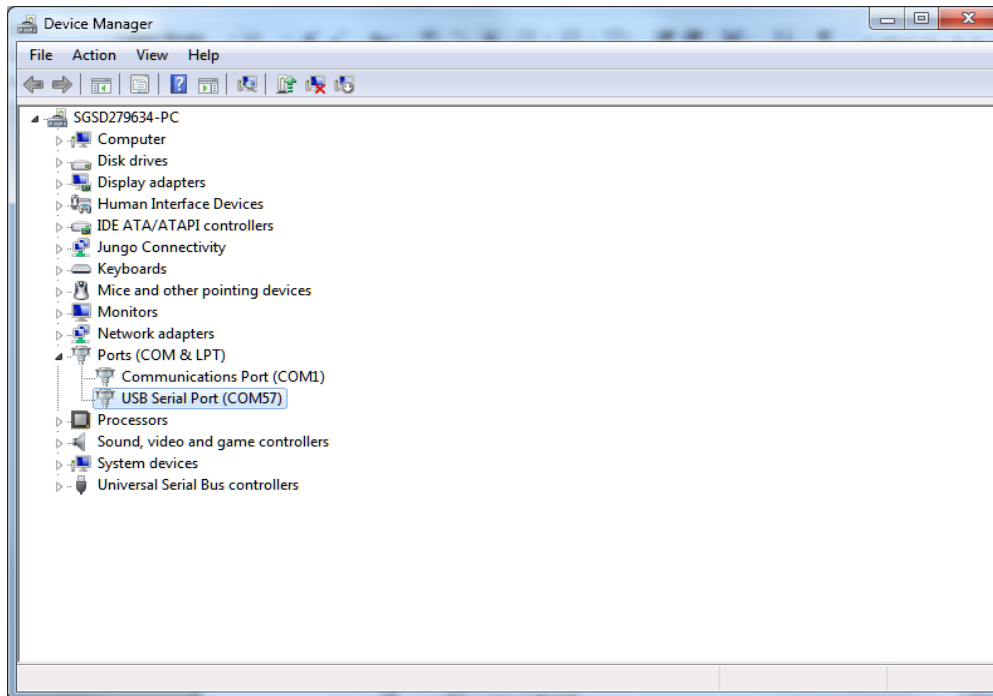
2.1.4 Setting up Development Environment

Step 1. Installing the Driver

First, connect AmebaD to the computer via Micro USB:



If this is the first time you connect AmebaD to your computer, the USB driver for AmebaD will be automatic installed. You can check the COM port number in Device Manager of your computer:



Step 2. Installing the necessary tools

On Windows

For windows users, please install a serial terminal software to interact with MicroPython. The most common serial terminals are **Tera Term** and **Putty**, here we recommend using Tera Term, which can be downloaded from internet.

For advanced developer who wish to compile MicroPython firmware from scratch, then please be sure to install **Cygwin**, which is a Linux-like environment running on Windows system. When selecting the Cygwin installer, we recommend using the Cygwin 32-bit version. During Cygwin installation, installer will prompt user if wish to install other software, please make sure to select the GNU version of **make** from the **Devel** category (see picture below) and pick the latest edition.

Cygwin Setup - Select Packages

Select Packages						
Select packages to install						
View	Category	Search	make	Clear		
Package	Current	New	Src?	Categories	Size	Description
<input type="checkbox"/> All		Default	<input type="checkbox"/>			
<input type="checkbox"/> Archive (1)		Default	<input type="checkbox"/>			
<input type="checkbox"/> Debug (6)		Default	<input type="checkbox"/>			
<input type="checkbox"/> Devel (27)		Default	<input type="checkbox"/>			
autotools		Skip	<input type="checkbox"/>	Devel	3k	Wrapper for multiple versions of Automake
autotools1.10		Skip	<input type="checkbox"/>	Devel	689k	(1.10) a tool for generating GNU-compliant Makefiles
autotools1.11		Skip	<input type="checkbox"/>	Devel	836k	(1.11) a tool for generating GNU-compliant Makefiles
autotools1.12		Skip	<input type="checkbox"/>	Devel	706k	(1.12) a tool for generating GNU-compliant Makefiles
autotools1.13		Skip	<input type="checkbox"/>	Devel	749k	(1.13) a tool for generating GNU-compliant Makefiles
autotools1.14		Skip	<input type="checkbox"/>	Devel	773k	(1.14) a tool for generating GNU-compliant Makefiles
autotools1.15		Skip	<input type="checkbox"/>	Devel	598k	(1.15) a tool for generating GNU-compliant Makefiles
autotools1.16		Skip	<input type="checkbox"/>	Devel	812k	(1.16) a tool for generating GNU-compliant Makefiles
autotools1.4		Skip	<input type="checkbox"/>	Devel	248k	(1.4) a tool for generating GNU-compliant Makefiles
autotools1.5		Skip	<input type="checkbox"/>	Devel	332k	(1.5) a tool for generating GNU-compliant Makefiles
autotools1.6		Skip	<input type="checkbox"/>	Devel	365k	(1.6) a tool for generating GNU-compliant Makefiles
autotools1.7		Skip	<input type="checkbox"/>	Devel	426k	(1.7) a tool for generating GNU-compliant Makefiles
autotools1.8		Skip	<input type="checkbox"/>	Devel	499k	(1.8) a tool for generating GNU-compliant Makefiles
autotools1.9		Skip	<input type="checkbox"/>	Devel	557k	(1.9) a tool for generating GNU-compliant Makefiles
cmake		Skip	<input type="checkbox"/>	Devel	6,111k	Cross-platform makefile generation system
cmake-doc		Skip	<input type="checkbox"/>	Devel	1,723k	Cross-platform makefile generation system (documentation)
cmake-gui		Skip	<input type="checkbox"/>	Devel	1,753k	Cross-platform makefile generation system (GUI)
extra-cmake-modules		Skip	<input type="checkbox"/>	Devel	281k	Extra CMake Modules for KDE
gcc-tools-epoch1-autotools		Skip	<input type="checkbox"/>	Devel	420k	(gcc-special) a tool for generating GNU-compliant Makefiles
gcc-tools-epoch2-autotools		Skip	<input type="checkbox"/>	Devel	589k	(gcc-special) a tool for generating GNU-compliant Makefiles
gccmakedep		Skip	<input type="checkbox"/>	Devel	6k	X Makefile dependency tool for GCC
imake		Skip	<input type="checkbox"/>	Devel	35k	X Imake legacy build system
make	4.3-1	Keep	<input type="checkbox"/>	Devel	502k	The GNU version of the 'make' utility
makeDEPEND		Skip	<input type="checkbox"/>	Devel	29k	X Makefile dependency tool
mingw64-i686-qh-qmake		Skip	<input type="checkbox"/>	Devel	7,292k	QH development tools for Win32 toolchain
mingw64-x86_64-qh-qmake		Skip	<input type="checkbox"/>	Devel	7,290k	QH development tools for Win64 toolchain
psl-make-dafsa		Skip	<input type="checkbox"/>	Devel	8k	Generates optimized DAFSA from Public Suffix List

Also, Python3 is required during firmware compilation, so be sure to download the latest Python3 from its official website and have it added as environment variable when asked during installation.

On Linux

For Linux user, please install a serial terminal software of your choice using apt-get install command. Here we recommend using **picocom** for its lightweight.

For advanced developer interested in developing MicroPython module in C, please make sure the GNU make of at least version 3.82 or newer and Python3 are installed and can be found using terminal.

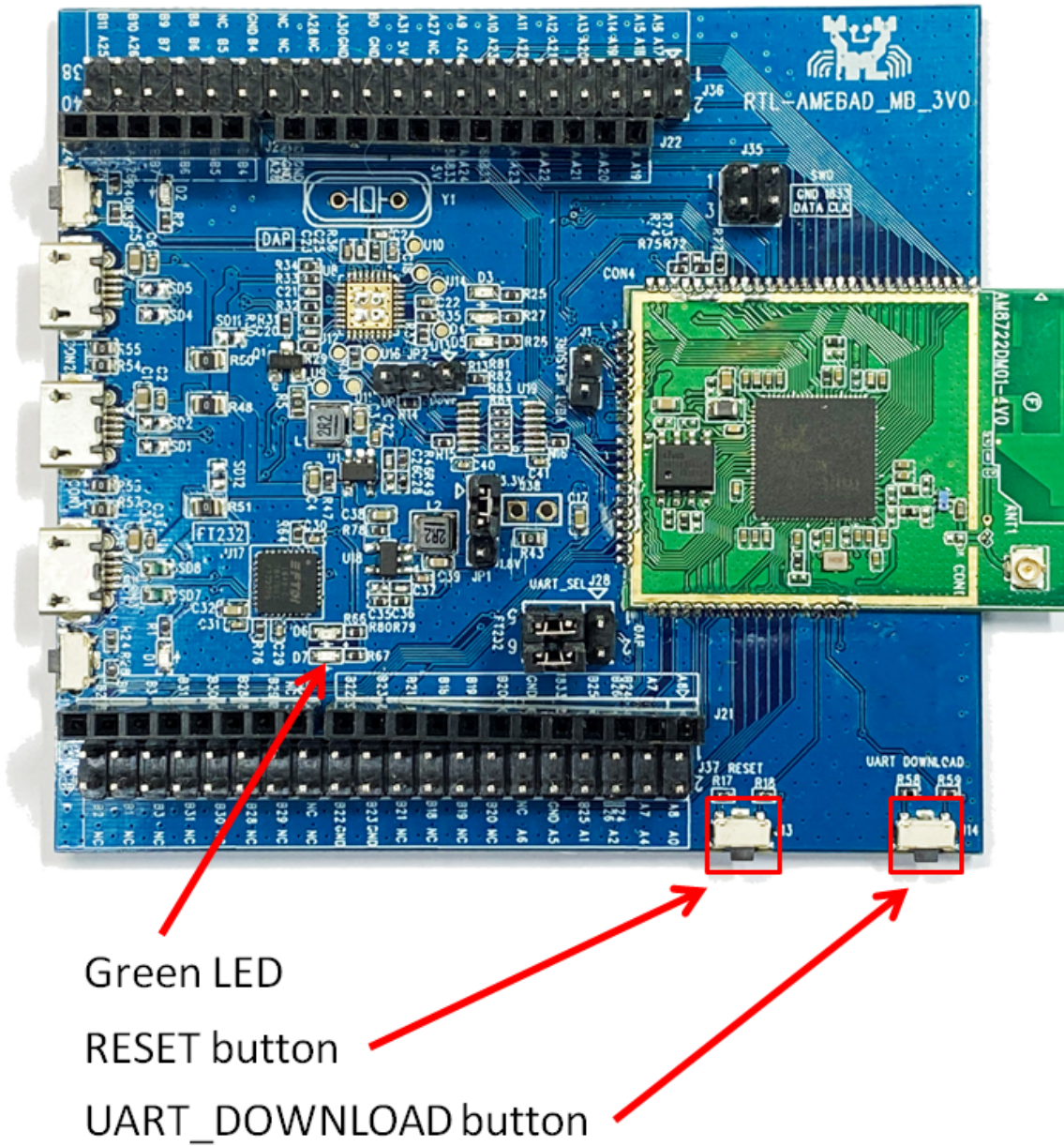
2.1.5 Upload Firmware into Ameba

Step 1. Navigate to “Release” folder

After downloading the MicroPython repository from Github, you will notice a “Release” folder in the root directory of this repository, enter this folder and locate a tool named “Double-Click-Me-to-Upload”.

Step 2. Enter UART Download mode

To do this, first press and hold the UART_DOWNLOAD button, then press the RESET button. If success, you should see a green LED flashing on your ameba.

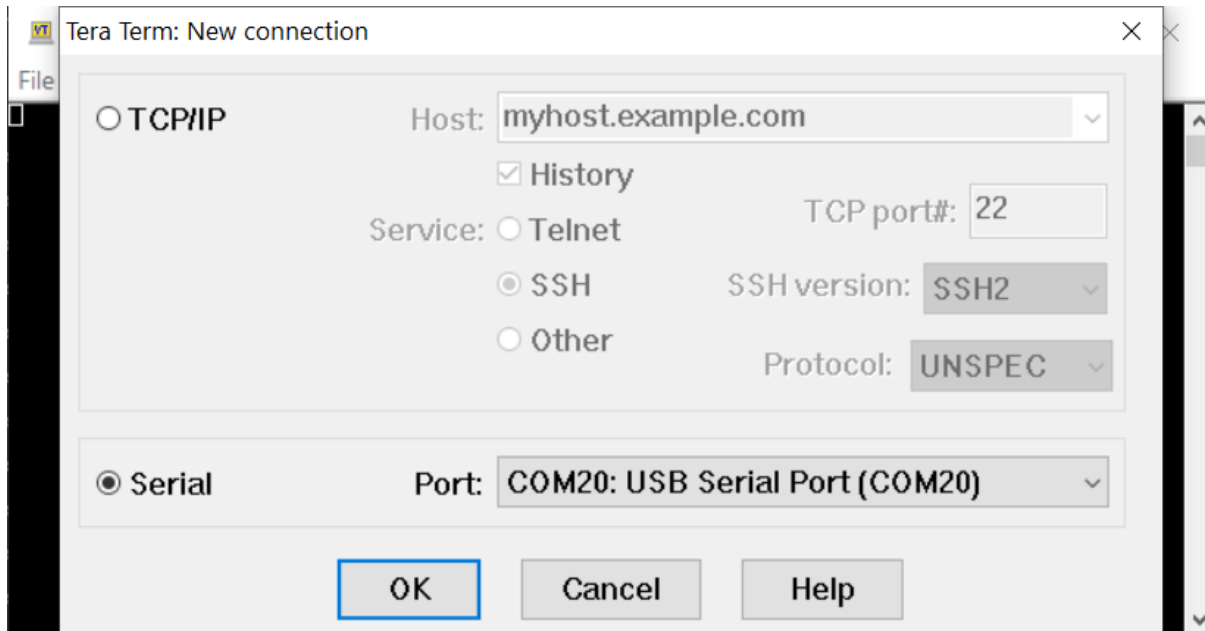


Step 3. Run “Double-Click-Me-to-Upload”

As the name suggested, double click on the file to run it, follow instructions printed on the screen to update the ameba’s serial COM port (this is known to us during the driver installation step mentioned above) so the uploading can be carried out successfully. Once the uploading is successful, you will see a line of log printed on the screen – “All images are sent successfully”

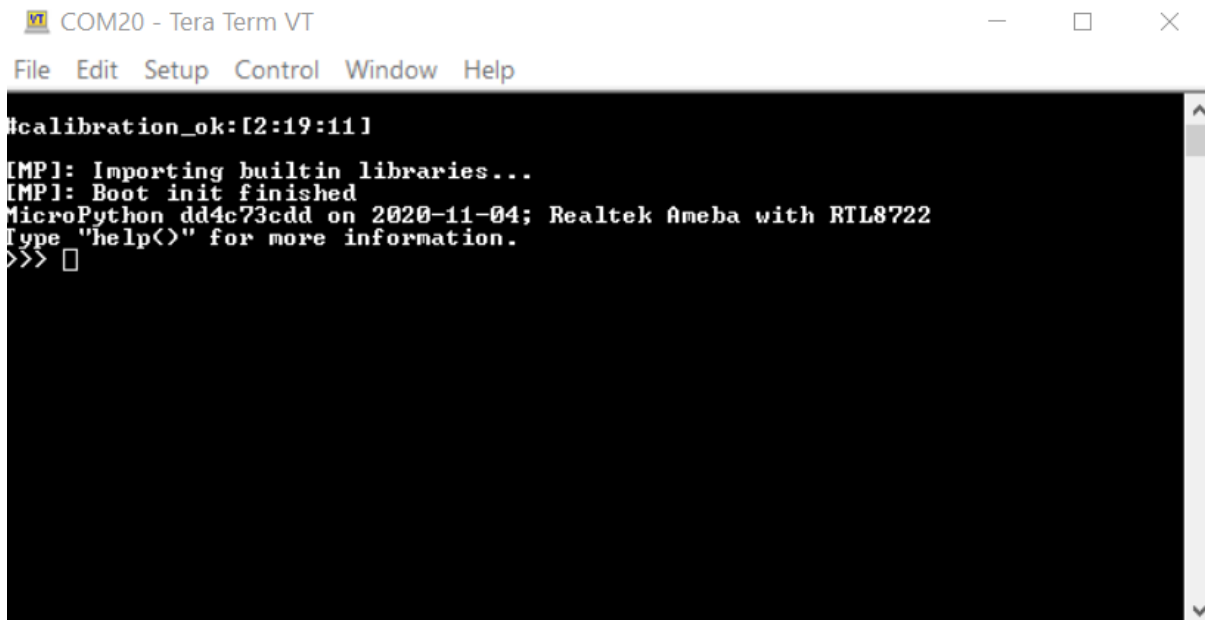
2.1.6 Try the First Example

Step 1. Open REPL



REPL stands for Read, Evaluate, Print and Loop, it is the MicroPython's terminal for user to control the microcontroller. REPL is running on LOG UART, thus we need to open our serial terminal software, in this case, Tera Term to see REPL,

Once Tera Term is opened, select "Serial" like in the picture above and choose your ameba's serial port using the dropdown list, after that, hit "OK". If your serial terminal is not configured to 115200 baud rate, now is the time to change it to **115200** and leave the rest of settings as default.



Now that the serial port is connected, press the RESET button once on your ameba and you should see the MicroPython's welcome page as shown below,

What happened here was that your Ameba first check its calibration data and then boot into MicroPython's firmware, MicroPython then run the "boot.py" python script and imported builtin libraries.

Now, you can simply type

```
>>> help()
```

to see more information, and type

```
>>> help(modules)
```

to check all readily available libraries

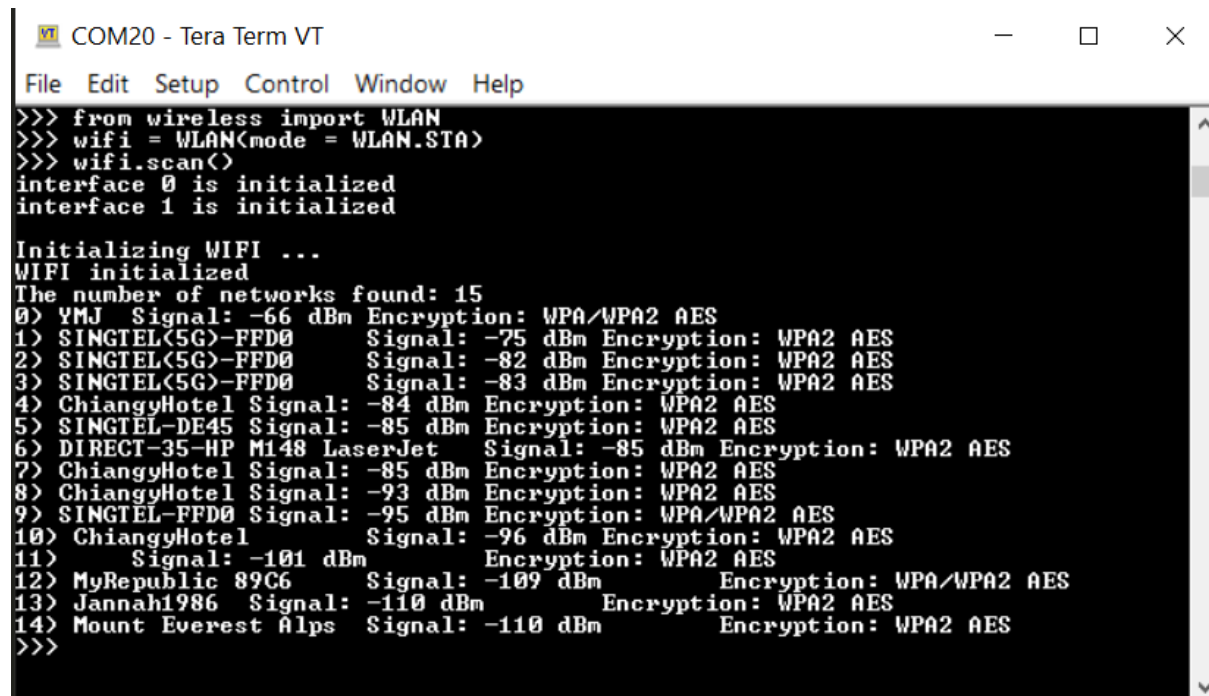
Step 2. Run WiFi Scan example

As most of peripherals' examples requires additional hardware to show the example is working, we will just use WiFi Scan example as our first example and to see how easy it is to control WiFi using MicroPython.

Now, please follow along by copy+paste the following code or manually typing them out into Tera Term and hit "Enter"

```
>>> from wireless import WLAN
>>> wifi = WLAN(mode = WLAN.STA)
>>> wifi.scan()
```

You should be able to see the returned result with all discovered wireless network in your surrounding



```
COM20 - Tera Term VT
File Edit Setup Control Window Help
>>> from wireless import WLAN
>>> wifi = WLAN(mode = WLAN.STA)
>>> wifi.scan()
interface 0 is initialized
interface 1 is initialized

Initializing WIFI ...
WIFI initialized
The number of networks found: 15
0) YMJ Signal: -66 dBm Encryption: WPA/WPA2 AES
1) SINGTEL<5G>-FFD0 Signal: -75 dBm Encryption: WPA2 AES
2) SINGTEL<5G>-FFD0 Signal: -82 dBm Encryption: WPA2 AES
3) SINGTEL<5G>-FFD0 Signal: -83 dBm Encryption: WPA2 AES
4) ChiangyHotel Signal: -84 dBm Encryption: WPA2 AES
5) SINGTEL-DE45 Signal: -85 dBm Encryption: WPA2 AES
6) DIRECT-35-HP M148 LaserJet Signal: -85 dBm Encryption: WPA2 AES
7) ChiangyHotel Signal: -85 dBm Encryption: WPA2 AES
8) ChiangyHotel Signal: -93 dBm Encryption: WPA2 AES
9) SINGTEL-FFD0 Signal: -95 dBm Encryption: WPA/WPA2 AES
10) ChiangyHotel Signal: -96 dBm Encryption: WPA2 AES
11) Signal: -101 dBm Encryption: WPA2 AES
12) MyRepublic 89C6 Signal: -109 dBm Encryption: WPA/WPA2 AES
13) Jannah1986 Signal: -110 dBm Encryption: WPA2 AES
14) Mount Everest Alps Signal: -110 dBm Encryption: WPA2 AES
>>>
```

(End)

Note: If you face any issue, please refer to the FAQ and troubleshooting page.

2.2 Download

2.2.1 Release History

Version 1.0.1 release – 2021/06/07

Feature:

- Added MacOS Support for firmware uploading (not compilation)
- Fixed PWM API issue with loop
- Implemented SDFS (SD FileSystem) module [Currently only support RTL8722DM_mini]
- Update welcome message and help message
- Update Ameba SDK and libraries
- Fixed network and WLAN security issues
- Fix bugs related to WiFi
- Update Readme
- Provide examples for new module

Version 1.0.0 release – 2020/11/11

Feature:

- OS Support Windows and Linux
- WiFi
- Socket
- ADC
- built-in help
- Example and online API

Version 0.0.1 alpha release – 2020/09/29

Feature:

- Ported basic MicroPython functions
- Implemented REPL and basic terminal functions
- Added Pin Mapping for RTL8722
- Added peripheral helper modules:

GPIO

RTC

Time and Delay

PWM

Timer

UART

I2C

SPI

2.3 Examples

2.3.1 Network/Peripheral Examples

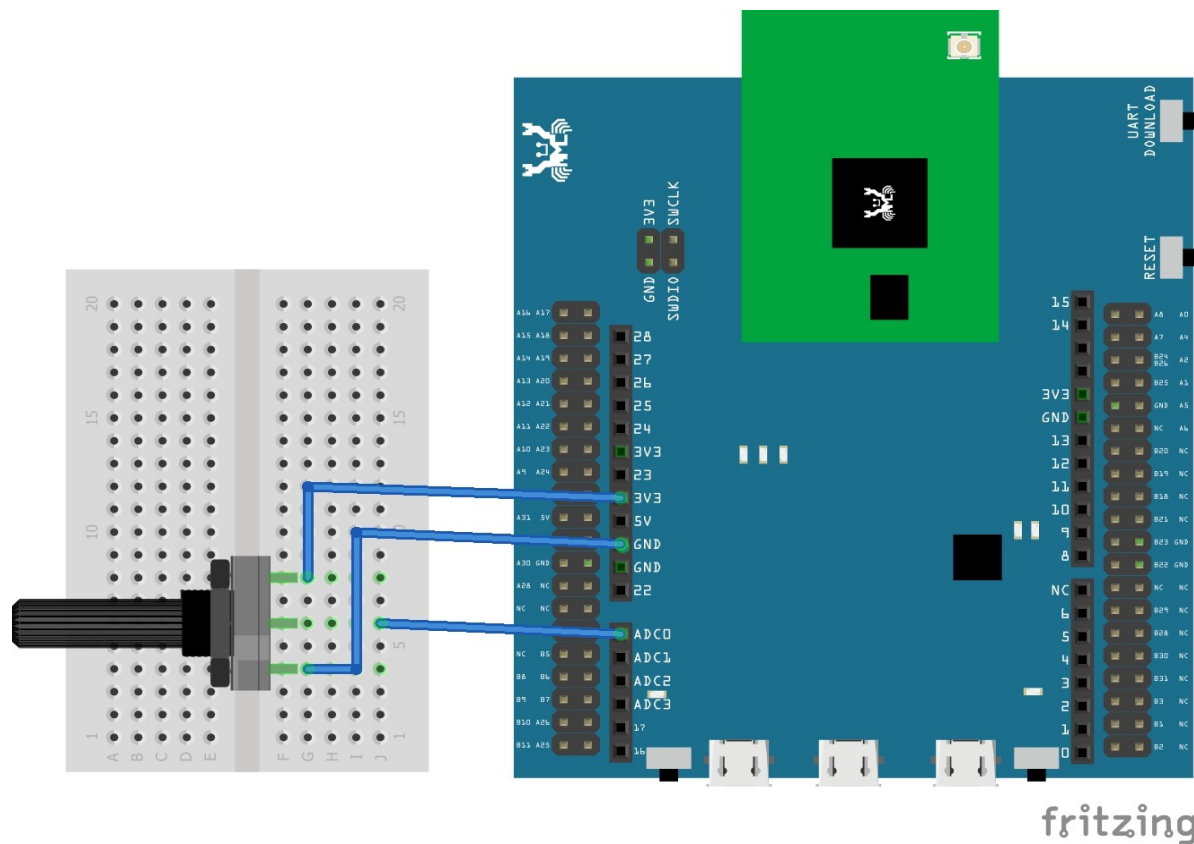
[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] ADC - Read potentiometer

Materials

- Ameba x 1, Potentiometer x 1

Steps

Here we connect ameba to a potentiometer to measure its analogue value, the connection is as follows.



Copy and paste the following code into REPL.

```
1 import socket
2 a = ADC(0)
3 a.read()
```

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] GPIO - Blink

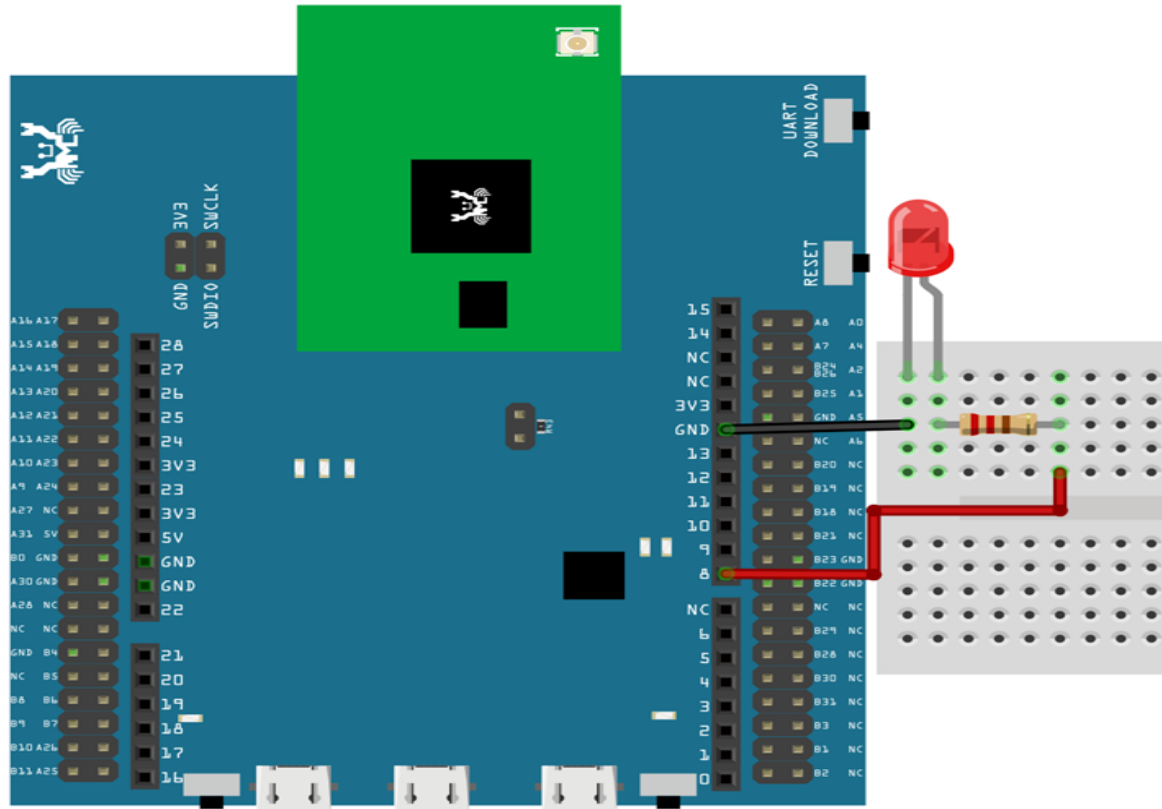
Materials

- Ameba x 1, LED x 1, Resistor(220ohm) x 1

Steps

Blink is one of the best examples to get started with MicroPython.

Let us connect pin PB_22 to the anode leg of an LED which in series with a current limiting resistor and GND to cathode of the LED as shown below,



Then, copy the following code and press Ctrl + e in REPL to enter the paste mode (for more information about REPL and paste mode, check “Getting started” page). If you are using Tera Term, simply right click on any blank space of the terminal and paste the code into REPL, then press Ctrl + d to execute the code. If everything is order, you should be able to see the LED blink for 3 times in 3 seconds.

```

1 from machine import Pin
2 a = Pin("PB_22", Pin.OUT)
3 a.value(1)
4 time.sleep_ms(500)
5 a.value(0)
6 time.sleep_ms(500)
7 a.on()
8 time.sleep_ms(500)
9 a.off()
10 time.sleep_ms(500)
11 a.toggle()

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

12 time.sleep_ms(500)
13 a.toggle()

```

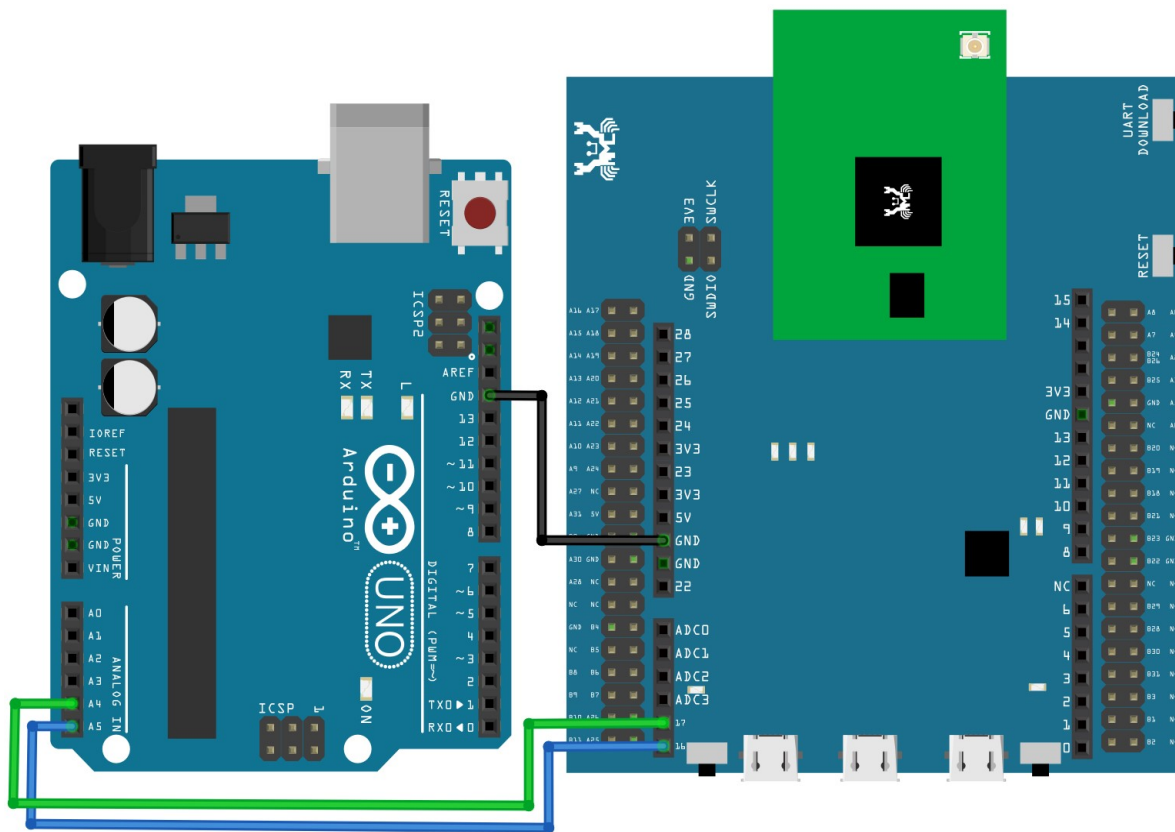
[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] I2C - Send and Receive

Materials

- Ameba x 1, Arduino UNO x 1

Steps

I2C is a very common module on microcontrollers, it only takes 2 wire and able to achieve data rate at up to 3.4Mbps. It works in master-slave model and a master can simultaneously connect to up to 128 slaves, making it a very versatile communication protocol between microcontroller and sensor. Here we are going to use Ameba as an I2C master and Arduino UNO as a slave to achieve I2C send and rcv. Before connection, make sure to upload the “Examples -> Wire -> Slave_receiver” example code to Arduino UNO. Connection is shown as follows, here we are using PA_26 as SDA pin and PA_25 as SCL. Note: There is currently 1 set of I2C available to MicroPython user, they are



Then copy and paste the following code line by line into REPL to see their effects.

```

1 from machine import Pin, I2C
2 i2c = I2C(scl = "PA_25", sda = "PA_26", freq=100000) # configure I2C with pins and
  ↳freq. of 100KHz
3 i2c.scan()
4 i2c.writeto(8, 123) # send 1 byte to slave with address 8
5 i2c.readfrom(8, 6) # receive 6 bytes from slave

```

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] PWM - LED fade

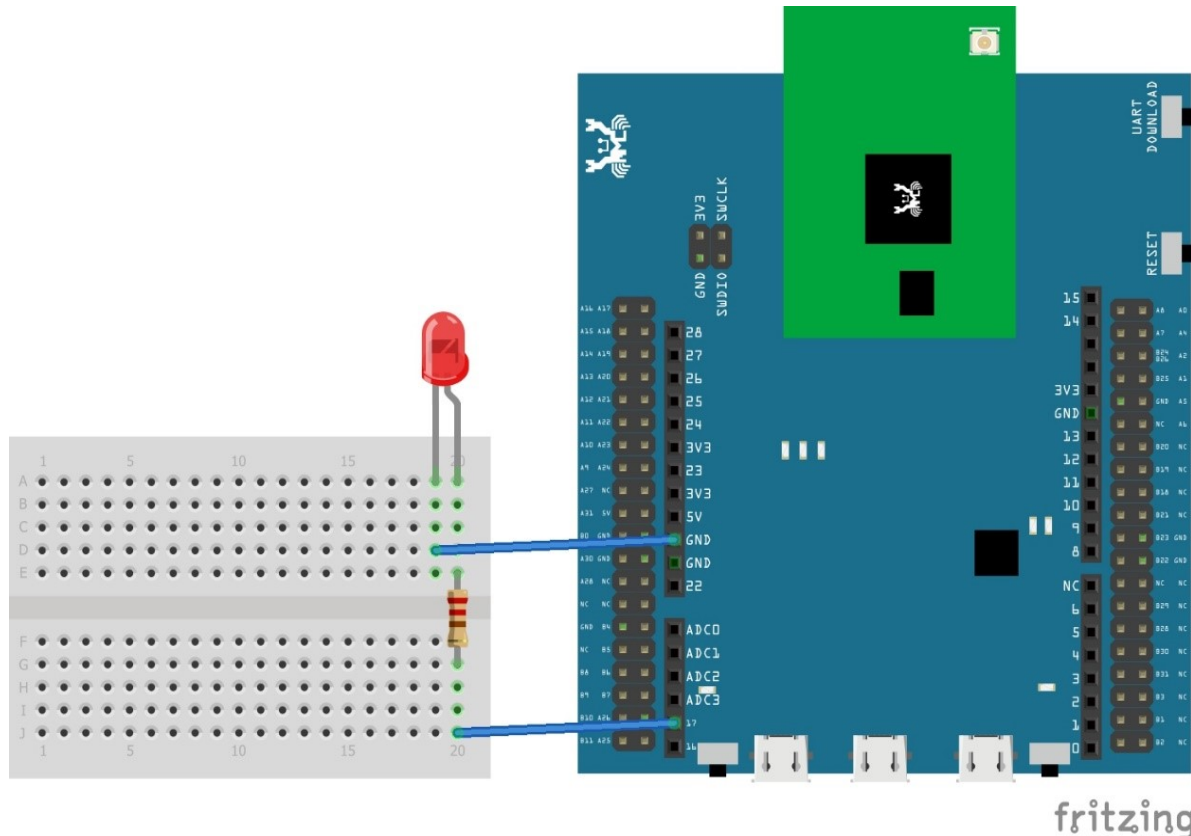
Materials

- Ameba x 1, LED x 1, Resistor(220ohm) x 1

Steps

PWM use pulse width modulation to control output duty cycle and is widely used to control LED brightness and motor. Here we are using an LED to demonstrate how PWM works.

Let us connect pin PA_26 to the anode leg of an LED which in series with a current limiting resistor and GND to cathode of the LED as shown below,



Then, copy and paste the following code line by line into REPL and hit Enter. If everything is in order, you should be able to see the LED slowly become brighter as you paste another line of code.

```

1 from machine import Pin, PWM
2 import time
3 p = PWM(pin = "PA_26")
4 # 0 duty cycle thus output 0
5 p.write(0.0)
6 # 10% duty cycle
7 p.write(0.1)
8 # 50% duty cycle
9 p.write(0.5)
10 # 100% duty cycle
11 p.write(1.0)

```

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] RTC -Get time

Materials

- Ameba x 1

Steps

RTC module help microcontroller to keep track of time and is essential to our time module. Here we an example to demonstrate how to get local time and update the time.

Copy and paste the following code line by line into REPL to see its effect.

```
1 rtc = RTC()
2 rtc.datetime() # get date and time
3 rtc.datetime((2020, 12, 31, 4, 23, 58, 59, 0)) # set a specific date and time (year, ↵
↵month, day, weekday(0 for Monday), hour, minute, second, total seconds)
4 rtc.datetime() # check the updated date and time
```

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Socket - Echo Server and Client

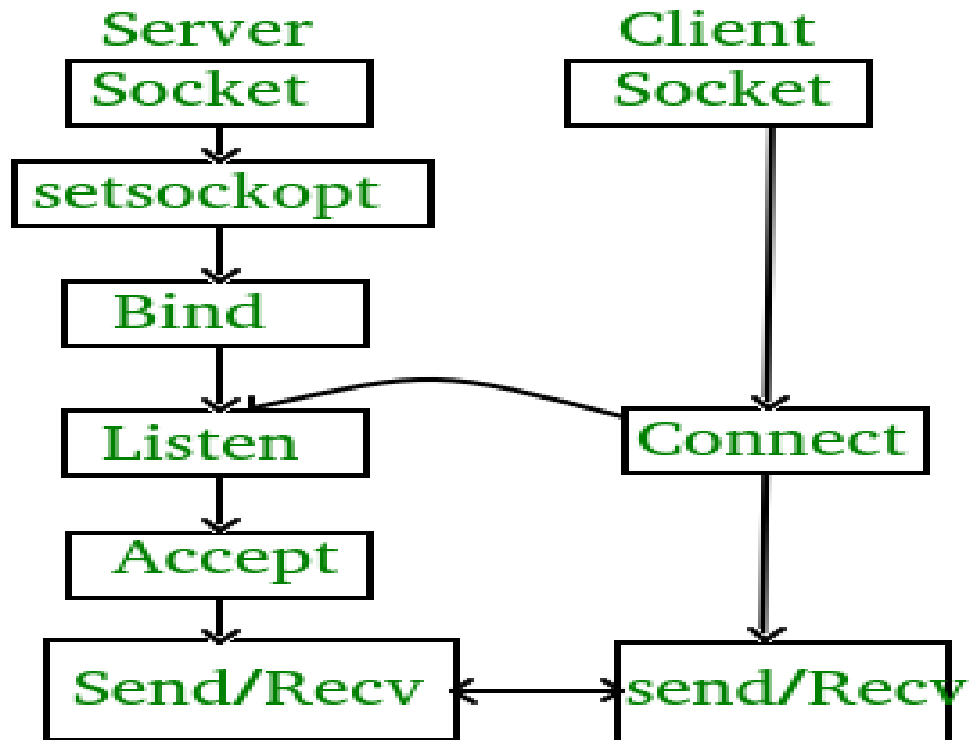
Materials

- Ameba x 2

Steps

After WiFi is set up, the best way to access the internet is to use socket. Socket is like an imaginary ethernet socket by which you use to connect your PC to some server on the internet like Google or Github.

Application layer protocol like HTTP are also built on top of socket. Once you are given an IP address and a port number, you can start to connect to the remote device and talk to it.



Here is an example of letting a server socket and a client socket to echo each other's message, to use this example, you need 2 ameba RTL8722 running MicroPython, copy and paste the following code to 2 ameba respectively under REPL paste mode.

This is the server code,

```

1 import socket
2 from wireless import WLAN
3 wifi = WLAN(mode = WLAN.STA)
4 wifi.connect(ssid = "YourWiFiSSID", pswd = "YourWiFiPassword") # change the ssid and
  ↳pswd to yours
5 s = socket.SOCK()
6 port = 5000
7 s.bind(port)
8 s.listen()
9 conn, addr = s.accept()
10 while True:
11     data = conn.recv(1024)
12     conn.send(data+"from server")
  
```

This is the client code,

```

1 import socket
2 from wireless import WLAN
3 wifi = WLAN(mode = WLAN.STA)
4 wifi.connect(ssid = "YourWiFiSSID", pswd = "YourWiFiPassword") # change the ssid and
  ↳pswd to yours
5 c = socket.SOCK()
6 # make sure to check the server IP address and update in the next line of code
  
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

7 c.connect("your server IP address", 5000)
8 c.send("hello world")
9 data = c.recv(1024)
10 print(data)

```

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Socket - Get information from HTTP website

Materials

- Ameba x 1

Steps

With socket created, we can visit an HTTP website and get information from it. Copy and paste the following code into REPL under paste mode.

```

1 import socket
2 from wireless import WLAN
3 wifi = WLAN(mode = WLAN.STA)
4 wifi.connect(ssid = "YourWiFiSSID", pswd = "YourPassword") # change the ssid and pswd
  ↳to yours
5 def http_get(url):
6     _, _, host, path = url.split('/', 3)
7     c = socket.SOCK()
8     # We are visiting MicroPython official website's test page
9     c.connect(host, 80)
10    c.send(bytes('GET /%s HTTP/1.0\r\nHost: %s\r\n\r\n' % (path, host), 'utf8'))
11    while True:
12        data = c.recv(100)
13        if data:
14            print(str(data, 'utf8'), end='')
15        else:
16            break
17 http_get('http://micropython.org/ks/test.html')

```

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] SPI - Slave Receive

Materials

- Ameba x 1, Arduino UNO x 1

Steps

SPI is a fast and robust communication protocol that are commonly found on many microcontrollers and is often used to retrieve sensor data or output image signal to a display. Ameba support SPI in both master and slave mode. Here we are going to see an example demonstrating how ameba receive data in slave mode on MicroPython.

Before connection, make sure to upload the following code to your Arduino UNO.

```

1 rtc = RTC()
2 //////////////////////////////////////////////////
3 // SPI Master Write //
4 //////////////////////////////////////////////////
5 #include
6 void setup (void) {
7     Serial.begin(115200); //set baud rate to 115200 for usart

```

(continues on next page)

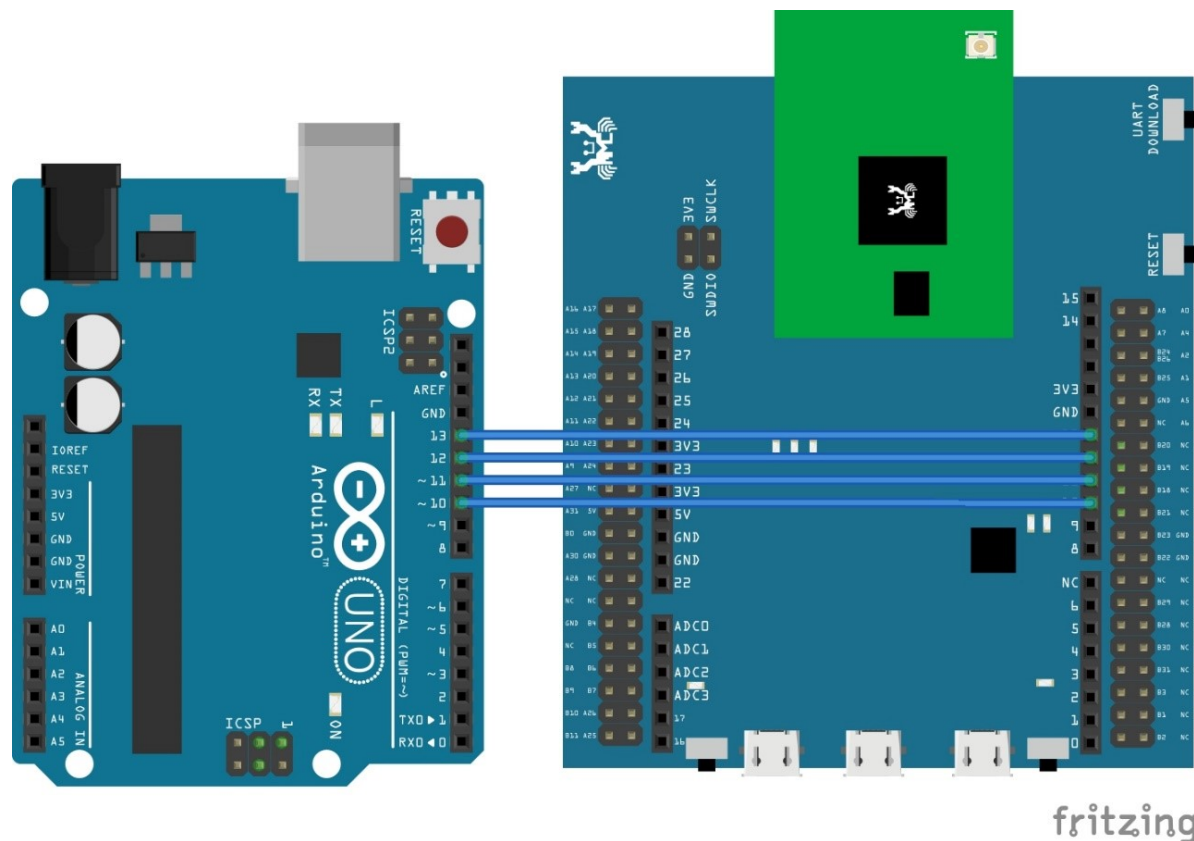
(continued from previous page)

```

8         digitalWrite(SS, HIGH); // disable Slave Select
9         SPI.begin ();
10    }
11    void loop (void) {
12        char c;
13        digitalWrite(SS, LOW); // enable Slave Select
14        // send test string
15        for (const char * p = "Hello, world!\r" ; c = *p; p++) {
16            SPI.transfer(c);
17            Serial.print(c);
18        }
19        Serial.println();
20        digitalWrite(SS, HIGH); // disable Slave Select
21        delay(2000);
22    }

```

Connection is shown as follows, here we are using unit 0 as SPI slave, and Arduino UNO as SPI master,



Then copy and paste the following code into REPL under paste mode to see their effects.

```

1 from machine import SPI
2 s1= SPI(0 , mode = SPI.SLAVE)
3 for i in range(14):
4     chr(s1.read())

```


[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Time - Delay and Timing

Materials

- Ameba x 1

Steps

MicroPython has provided rich functions to deal with time and delay, here are some examples.

Copy and paste the following code line by line into REPL to see its effect.

```
1 import time
2 time.sleep(1) # sleep for 1 second
3 time.sleep_ms(500) # sleep for 500 milliseconds
4 time.sleep_us(10) # sleep for 10 microseconds
5 start = time.ticks_ms() # get millisecond counter
```

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] Timer -Periodical timer

Materials

- Ameba x 1

Steps

There are 3 sets of general timers available to user, each at 32KHz, they are timer 1/2/3. Here we use timer 1 as example to demonstrate how a periodical timer works.

Copy and paste the first 3 lines of code into REPL to see its effect.

```
1 from machine import Timer
2 t = Timer(1) # Use Timer 1/2/3 only
3 t.start(2000000, t.PERIODICAL) # Set GTimer fired periodically at duration of 2_
  ↳seconds, printing text on the terminal
4 # To stop the periodical timer, type
5 t.stop()
```

A text of “-timer triggered. to stop: type t.stop()-” will be printed on the terminal every 2 seconds.To stop the timer, simply type t.stop().

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] UART - Send and Receive

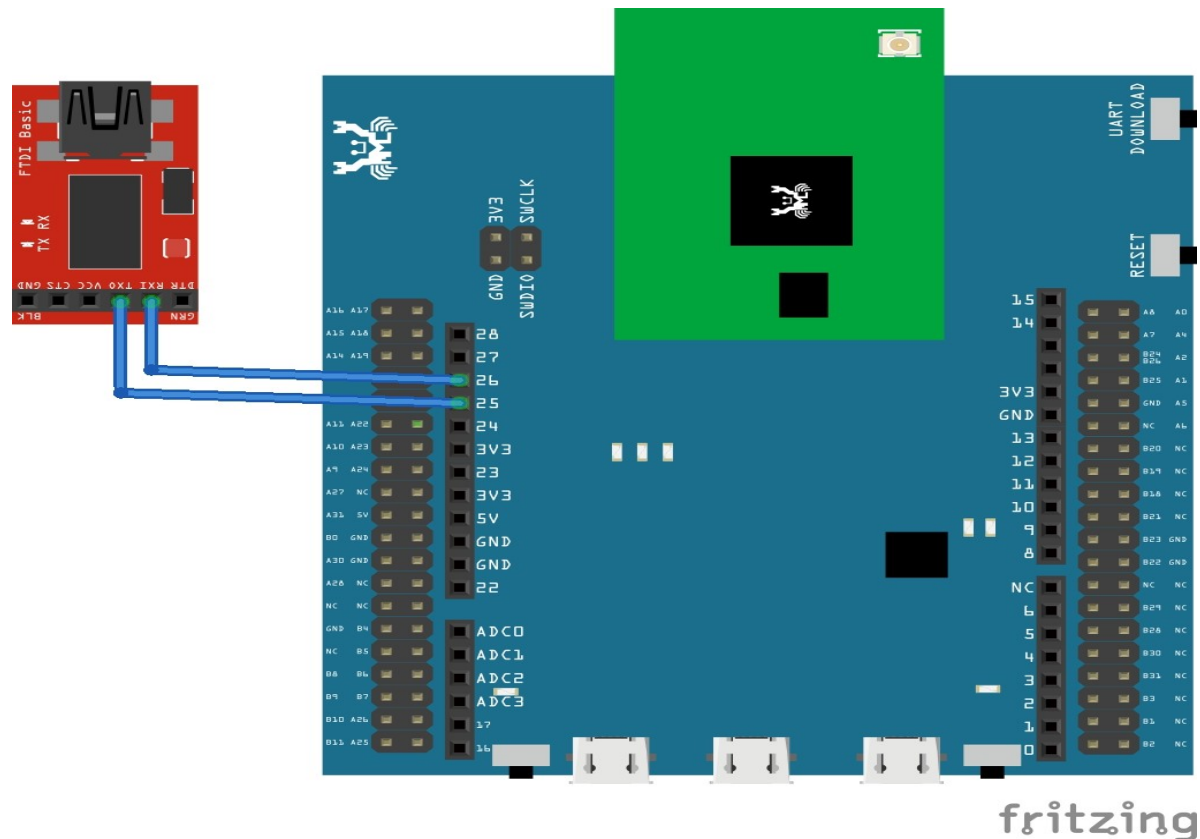
Materials

- Ameba x 1, TTL USB to Serial module x 1

Steps

UART is a very versatile communication protocol and almost an essential part of a microcontroller. A TTL USB to Serial module is an IC that helps to translate UART signal to USB signal so that we can see uart log printed on our PC. This module is often found on many development boards, including ameba. However, the module on Ameba is reserved for LOG UART and Firmware uploading, that is why we need a separate module to communicate between ameba and PC.

There are currently 2 sets of UART available to MicroPython users and they are,



Then, copy and paste the following code line by line into REPL to see its effect.

```

1 from machine import UART
2 uart = UART(tx="PA_21", rx= "PA_22")
3 uart.init()
4 uart.write('hello')
5 uart.read(5) # read up to 5 bytes

```

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] WiFi - WiFi Connect

Materials

- Ameba x 1

Steps

Ameba can connect to WiFi access point with open security or WPA2 security type, which is the most common security type used in household wireless routers. Here we are going to connect to a WiFi access point using code below, copy and paste the following code line by line into REPL to see their effects.

```

1 from wireless import WLAN
2 wifi = WLAN(mode = WLAN.STA)
3 wifi.connect(ssid = "YourWiFiName", pswd = "YourWiFiPassword")

```

[RTL8722CSM] [RTL8722DM] WiFi - WiFi Scan

Materials

- Ameba x 1

Steps

WiFi Scan function can help us quickly discover what WiFi networks are available in our surrounding. This example does not require any additional hardware, thus simply copy, and paste the following code into REPL to see its effect.

```
1 from wireless import WLAN
2 wifi = WLAN(mode = WLAN.STA)
3 wifi.scan()
```

Peripheral_SDFS_file_manipulation

Examples

- SDFS File Manipulation

Materials:

- Ameba x 1
- MicroSD Card x 1

Steps:

SD File System is supported on MicroPython RTL8722 port through importing the ``sdfs`` module. This module is a simplified file system with the aim to highlight SD card manipulation, thus it does not support virtual file system as well as virtual file object.

Copy and paste the following code line by line into REPL to see its effect.

Note: No file open or close is needed, the API does that automatically for you.

2.4 Board HDK

Layout

Schematic

2.5 API Documents

2.5.1 Online API Documents

ADC

Constructors

`ADC(unit[required])`

Create an ADC object associated with the given unit ID. This allows you to then read analog values on the pin assigned to the unit ID.

- **unit:** unit number is tied to a specific pin. Refer to table below for more information,

Unit	Pin
0	PB_4
1	PB_5
2	PB_6
3	PB_7
4	PB_1
5	PB_2
6	PB_3

Methods

ADC.read()

Read the value on the analog pin and return it.

I2C

Constructors

I2C(*unit_id*[optional], *sda_pin*[required], *scl_pin*[required], *frequency*[optional])

Create a I2C object associated with the given pin name and configure it using other parameters. This allows you to then read/write data on the I2C bus.

- **unit_id**: The unit ID of the hardware I2C, assume default value if left blank
- **“sda_pin”**: The pin name of SDA
- **“scl_pin”**: The pin name of SCL
- **frequency**: The frequency at which I2C operates at, assume default value if left blank.

Note: All optional parameters have default values as follows,

Parameter	Default
Unit_id	0
Frequency	100000 (Hz)

Methods

I2C.reset()

This method de-initializes the I2C device.

I2C.scan()

This method scans and return the available I2C addresses.

I2C.readinto(*buf*[required], *flag*[optional])

This method reads the data received at I2C buffer into a user-declared buffer

- **buf**: a buffer of string / array /byte array type
- **flag**: a Boolean flag, if True then send a NACK at the end, vice versa

I2C.write(*buf*[required])

This method sends data stored in the buffer.

- **buf**: a buffer of string / array /byte array type

I2C.readfrom(*addr*[required], *len*[required], *stop*[optional])

This method reads *len* bytes of data from given address, if *stop* is True, then send a STOP bit at the end of the transmission.

- **addr**: the address to read from
- **len**: the number of bytes to expect
- **stop**: a Boolean flag whether or not to send a STOP bit at the end of transmission

I2C.readfrom_into(*addr*[required], *buf*[required], *stop*[optional])

This method reads data from given address into the user-declared buffer provided, if *stop* is True, then send a STOP bit at the end of the transmission.

- **addr**: the address to read from
- **buf**: a data buffer of string / array/ byte array type
- **stop**: a Boolean flag, if True then send a STOP bit at the end of transmission, vice versa

I2C.writeto(*addr*[required], *value*[required], *stop*[optional])

This method sends an integer value to the given address, if *stop* is True, then send a STOP bit at the end of the transmission.

- **addr**: the address to write to
- **value**: an integer value to be sent over
- **stop**: a Boolean flag, if True then send a STOP bit at the end of transmission, vice versa

Pin

Constructors

Pin("pin_name"[required], *direction*[required], *pull_mode*[optional], *value*[optional])

Create a Pin object associated with the given gpio pin name and configure it using other parameters. This allows you to then read/write digital values on the pin.

- **"pin_name"**: The name of the pin, must be in string format, use `help(Pin.board)` to check all pin names
- **direction**:
 - Pin.IN – for input
 - Pin.OUT - for output
- **pull_mode**:
 - Pin.PULL_NONE – no pull-up or down resistor
 - Pin.PULL_UP – enable pull-up resistor
 - Pin.PULL_DOWN – enable pull-down resistor
 - default value – Pin.PULL_NONE
- **value**: Initial value, only applicable to OUTPUT, for example value = 1. Default value 0.

Methods

Pin.id()

This method will return the associated GPIO pin name after declaring a Pin object.

Pin.init("pin_name"[required], *direction*[required], *pull_mode*[optional], *value*[optional])

Identical function as the Constructor, it creates and initializes a Pin object using parameter typed in.

Pin.value(*number*[optional])

This method can be used in 2 ways,

1. Output *number* keyed in

number can only be either 0 or 1 , indicating logic 0 or logic 1

2. Check the status of the pin

When left blank, this method will check the status (logic 0 /1) of the Pin, regardless of which direction this Pin is configured as.

Pin.on()

This method sends a logic 1 signal to the associated pin

Pin.off()

This method sends a logic 0 signal to the associated pin

Pin.toggle()

This method toggles the logic signal of the associated pin

PWM

Constructors

PWM(*unit*[optional], "*pin_name*"[required])

Create a PWM object associated with the given pin name. This allows you to then write PWM signal on the pin.

- **unit**: unit ID of the hardware PWM, will use default unit 0 if leave blank
- **"pin_name"**: The name of the pin, must be in string format. See below for PWM supported pins.

Note:

PWM is currently only supported on the following pins,

PA_23, PA_24, PA_25, PA_26

Methods

PWM.write(*dutycycle_float*[required])

This method will output a PWM signal with given duty cycle on the associated GPIO pin.

- **dutycycle_float**: a floating point duty cycle value, can be from 0.0 (0%) to 1.0 (100%)

RTC

Constructors

RTC()

Create a RTC object.

Methods

RTC.datetime(*array_8*[optional])

This method works in 2 ways

- Return the local date and time if NOT passing any argument into it. The returned format is as follows,

(year, month, date, hour, minute, second, weekday[0-6 for Mon to Sun], yearday[1-366])

- Update the local date and time if passing an eight-elements array into it, the array format is same as above

SPI

Constructors

SPI(*unit_id*[required], *baudrate*[optional], *polarity*[optional], *phase*[optional], *databits*[optional], *firstbit*[optional], *miso*[optional], *mosi*[optional], *sck*[optional], *mode*[optional])

Create a SPI object and configure it using other parameters. This allows you to then read/write data on the SPI bus.

- **unit_id**: The unit ID of the hardware SPI, assume default value if left blank
- **baudrate**: The speed of SPI
- **polarity**: one of factor determining SPI mode. (deprecated)
- **phase**: one of factor determining SPI mode. (deprecated)
- **databits**: number of data bits
- **Firstbit**: this determine whether first bit is MSB or LSB
- **miso**: miso pin. (deprecated)
- **mosi**: mosi pin. (deprecated)
- **sck**: clock pin. (deprecated)
- **mode**: either MASTER mode or SLAVE mode

Note: All optional parameters have default values as follows,

Parameter	Default
Baudrate	2000000 Hz
Polarity	Inactive_low
Phase	Toggle_middle
Databits	8
Firstbit	MSB
Miso	N.A.
Mosi	N.A.
Sck	N.A.
Mode	MASTER

There is currently 2 set of SPI, they are,

unit	MOSI	MISO	SCK	CS
0	PB_18	PB_19	PB_20	PB_21
1	PB_4	PB_5	PB_6	PB_7

Note: both unit support master mode, but only **unit 0** supports slave mode.

Methods

SPI.read()

This method waits and read data received in SPI buffer, then return the data received. Works in both master and slave mode.

SPI.write(*value*[required])

This method writes an integer value to SPI bus. Works in both master and slave mode.

- **value:** an integer value to be sent on SPI bus

time**Constructors**

N.A.

Methods**time.sleep(*seconds*[required])**

This method will stop the microcontroller from what it is doing and delay for the given time.

- **seconds:** number of seconds, must be an integer

time.sleep_ms(*milliseconds*[required])

This method will stop the microcontroller from what it is doing and delay for the given time.

- **milliseconds:** number of milliseconds, must be an integer

time.sleep_us(*microseconds*[required])

This method will stop the microcontroller from what it is doing and delay for the given time.

- **microseconds:** number of microseconds, must be an integer

time.time()

This method will return the total number of seconds elapsed since Epoch (1970-01-01).

time.localtime()

This method will return RTC's local time in the following format,

(year, month, date, hour, minute, second, weekday[0-6 for Mon to Sun], yearday[1-366])

time.mktime(*tuple*[required])

This is inverse function of localtime. Its argument is a full 8-tuple which expresses a time as per localtime. It returns an integer which is the number of seconds since Jan 1, 2000.

- **tuple:** an 8-element tuple

time.ticks_ms()

This method returns an increasing millisecond counter with an arbitrary reference point. Normally used together with ticks_add() and ticks_diff()

time.ticks_add(*starting_ticks*[required], *ticks_added*[required])

This method add given number of ticks to the starting_ticks.

- **starting_ticks:** millisecond counter obtained from ticks_ms()
- **ticks_added:** number of ticks to add

time.ticks_diff(*end_ticks*[required], *starting_ticks*[required])

This method perform subtraction on parameters given and return the difference of end_ticks minus starting_ticks.

- **end_ticks:** millisecond counter obtained from ticks_ms()
- **starting_ticks:** millisecond counter obtained from ticks_ms()

Timer

Constructors

Timer(*unit*[optional])

Create a timer object with given unit ID.

- **unit**: can be 1 / 2 / 3 for timer 1 / 2 / 3

Methods

Timer.start(*microseconds*[required], *type*[required])

This method will start a given type of timer, either one-shot or periodical, at duration of given microseconds.

- **microseconds**: number of microseconds interval, must be an integer
- **type**: either Timer. PERIODICAL or Timer.ONESHOT

Timer.deinit()

This method will de-initialize the Timer object created and stop the timer.

Timer.stop()

This method will stop the timer and its timer interrupt handler.

Timer.us ()

This method will return the current timer tick in microsecond.

Timer.tick ()

This method will return the current timer tick in Gtimer clock(0~32768).

Timer.reload (*duration_us*[required])

This method will reload the timer with given duration in microsecond.

- **duration_us**: duration in microsecond

UART

Constructors

UART(*unit*[optional], *baudrate*[optional], *databits*[optional], *stopbit*[optional], *paritybit*[optional], *timeout*[optional], *tx_pin*[required], *rx_pin*[required])

Create a UART object associated with the given tx and rx pins and configure it using other parameters. This allows you to then read/write uart signal on the pins.

- **unit**: The unit ID, either 0 or 3
- **baudrate**: 115200 is the recommended baudrate on ameba
- **databits**: the number of bits for data bits, usually 7 or 8 bits
- **stopbits**: the number of stop bits, usually 1 or 1.5 or 2 bits
- **paritybit**: for parity check, usually none, odd or even
- **timeout**: how long uart wait before its timeout (in milliseconds)
- **tx_pin**: the transmitter pin, connect the rx pin of the receiver
- **rx_pin**: the receiver pin, connect to tx pin of the transmitter

Note: Not all parameters are required, thus MicroPython will assume its default value once left blank, here are the default values for each optional parameter,

Parameter	Default Value
Unit	0
Baudrate	115200
Databits	8
Stopbits	1
Paritybit	0
Timeout	10 (ms)

Methods

UART.init()

This method initializes and configures the UART.

UART.read(*length*[optional])

This method reads the data received in UART buffer.

- **length:** the length of the data to receive

UART.readline()

This method is similar to read(), but read a line ending with a newline character.

UART.write(*buffer*[require])

This method sends the buffer of bytes to the bus and returns the number of bytes written.

- **buffer:** data buffer that can be a string, an integer or other data types

UART.irq_enable(*bool*[optional])

This method works in 2 way:

- Check the status of uart irq when NOT passing any argument, and it will return True if irq is enabled, False if disabled
- Enable/disable uart irq handler by passing True or False as bool

UART.irq_handler(*function*[required])

Passing the python handler to uart irq so that it will be triggered when an UART event occurs.

- **function:** a function defined in python or a lambda function

WiFi

Constructors

WLAN(*mode*[required])

Create a WLAN object and configure it to the given mode. This then allows you to control WiFi and check its status.

- **mode:** use WLAN.STA for station mode

Methods

WLAN.scan()

This method scan and list out all available WiFi network in the surroundings.

WLAN.connect(ssid[required], pswd[optional], security[optional])

This method attempts to establish a connection to a WiFi access point.

- **ssid:** The name of your WiFi network
- **pswd:** The password of your WiFi network
- **security:** The security type of your WiFi network

Leaving optional parameters blank will assume taking default values which are

Parameter	Default value
pswd	NULL
security	WPA2_AES_PSK

Note: Connecting to an **OPEN** network is also supported, just omit 'pswd' parameter and type in "security = WLAN.OPEN" followed by ssid.

WLAN.get_ip()

This method returns the IP address of the current WLAN interface. Only works after successful connection to an AP.

WLAN.disconnect()

This method disconnect ameba from current WiFi AP, but still keep WiFi module on.

WLAN.on()

This method turns on the WiFi device.

WLAN.off()

This method shut down WiFi device and suspend all connections.

WLAN.wifi_is_running()

This method returns the WiFi status. True when WiFi is on, and False when off.

WLAN.is_connect_to_ap()

This method returns the connection status. True if ameba is connected to an AP, False if ameba is not connected to anything.

Socket

Constructors

socket.SOCK(domain[optional], type[optional])

Create a SOCK object and configure it with the given parameters. SOCK class is under socket class and is the main class we use for all socket level communications.

- **domain:** domain address family type. Default is AF_INET
 - **AF_INET:** IPv4, classic IP address with dot-notation that is slowly being replaced by IPv6 due to shortage.
 - **AF_INET6:** IPv6, IP address with colon-notation
- **type:** socket type, default is SOCK_STREAM
 - **SOCK_STREAM:** TCP type
 - **SOCK_DGRAM:** UDP type

Methods

socket.SOCK.connect(*host*[required], *port*[required])

This method connects to a remote server as client.

- **host:** a website address in string
- **port:** port number in integer

socket.SOCK.bind(*port*[required])

This method creates a server socket and binds it to the given port number.

- **port:** port number in integer

socket.SOCK.listen()

This method set the server to listening state, waiting for client connection at the given port.

socket.SOCK.accept()

This method accepts a client connection and return a new socket object for subsequent communication and client's address.

socket.SOCK.recv(*length*[required])

This method receive data with given length

- **length:** the length of data expected to receive

socket.SOCK.send(*buffer*[required])

This method sends data stored in the buffer

- **buffer:** a data buffer in format of array/bytearray/string

socket.SOCK.settimeout(*seconds*[required])

This method set socket's timeout to the given value

- **seconds:** new timeout in seconds

socket.SOCK.close()

This method close the socket.

class sdfs – SD File System

Constructors

sdfs

Create a sdfs object and configure it to the given mode. This then allows you to navigate through the SD card and read/write files as you see.

Methods

sdfs.listdir()

This method listing the files and folders under current path.

sdfs.mkdir("folder name[required]")

This method attempts to create a folder under current path.

sdfs.chdir("folder name[required]")

This method change directory to a folder.

sdfs.pwd()

This method is to print out present working directory (current path).

sdfs.chdir("/")

This method is to change directory path to root directory.

sdfs.rm("folder name[required]")

This method is to delete a folder.

sdfs.create("file name[required]")

This method is to create a file.

sdfs.write("file name[required]")

This method is to write a string to a file.

sdfs.read("file name[required]")

This method is to read the content from a file.

sdfs.rm("file name[required]")

This method is to delete the file.

2.6 Resources

2.6.1 Links

[Ameba MicroPython SDK](#)

[MicroPython Official Website](#)

2.7 Support

2.7.1 FAQ

What is MicroPython and how to use it?

Please refer to MicroPython official website for more information.

Can I use all Python libraries available online?

No, MicroPython only support a small section of the classic Python standard library. However, this can be done by porting the classic python library to MicroPython.

Are all pins on RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM usable?

No, those marked "NC" are not connected to any pin and thus unusable.

Does RTL8722CSM support 5G WiFi?

No. Only RTL8722DM supports dual band 2.4G + 5G WiFi. RTL8722CSM only supports single band 2.4G WiFi.

How to enter the download mode?

Press and hold the UART DOWNLOAD button. Then Press the RESET button and release both UART DOWNLOAD and RESET buttons.

2.7.2 Trouble shooting

Compilation of MicroPython firmware failed

During the building process, some user may encounter error that suspend the process, this is due to missing system environment setup and can be fixed as follows,

1. Error related to python By default, MicroPython use python3 to run building scripts for the MicroPython kernels, if you encounter error related to python, it may be because the path of the Python3 executable is not added to system environment variable.

However, if environment variable is already added but the build could not be completed, you may try,

1) Re-start your PC

2) type “python” on your terminal, if the python shown is python3, then please add PYTHON = python to the second line of the “Makefile” under “port/rtl8722” folder

2. Error related to MPY-CROSS If building process stop when mpy-cross shown as error, there is a step to be done as follows,

1) navigate to “MicroPython_RTL8722/mpy-cross” folder

2) Open your Cygwin/Linux terminal and just type make Wait for make finish building the MicroPython Cross Compiler, then this should fix the error

My code is not behaving as I expected

Try to debug your program using print() function and learn more about each API used through the API page.

Why am I constantly getting “syntax error” from REPL?

Please note that MicroPython only support Python 3 syntax.

How to upload my python script into Ameba?

There are 3 ways of uploading your python code into Ameba,

1. via REPL normal mode In the normal REPL mode, you can paste your into REPL code line by line and have them executed sequentially, but note that syntax will be automatically indented when using condition checking or loop, like “if” or “while”, incorrect indenting will crash your input script

2. via REPL paste mode When in normal REPL mode, press “Ctrl”+ “e” will enter paste mode, paste mode only allow pasting a large chunk of a complete code, incomplete code or editing after pasting will mess up your syntax and cause error

3. via mp_frozenmodules By placing your python script into the “mp_frozenmodules” folder under “rtl8722” folder, your code will be embedded into the MicroPython firmware and uploaded to Ameba, after that you can use it by simply importing the name of your python script. If you get syntax error using this method, you better check your python code syntax again.

Why is there no output on my serial terminal after connecting to RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM UART?

RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM is by default configured at 115200 baudrate, please check if your serial terminal is configured to 115200.

My program is not being downloaded into RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM?

Please follow the procedure for the correct downloading.

1. Enter the download mode. The on-board Green LED will blink when entered download mode.

2. When downloading the image into board the on-board Red LED will blink

3. After a successful download, you will see log like this “All images sent successfully”.

Sometimes WiFi signal is weak?

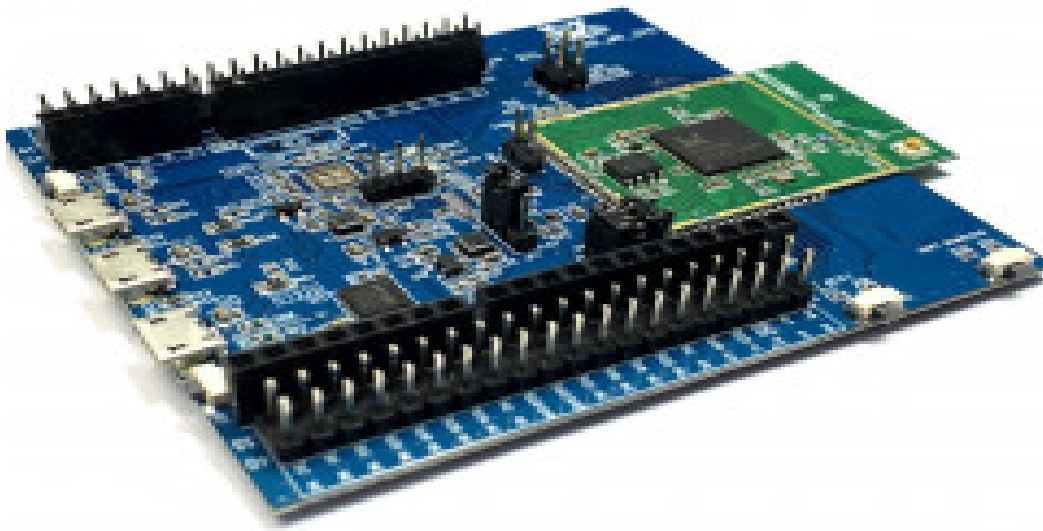
The default antenna for RTL8722CSM/RTL8722DM uses the I-Pex Connector. Please change/connect the I-Pex Connector antenna.

Why is my board not powering up?

Please make sure the connector J38 beside resistor R43 is connected. The connector is used to link the power to IC.

STANDARD SDK

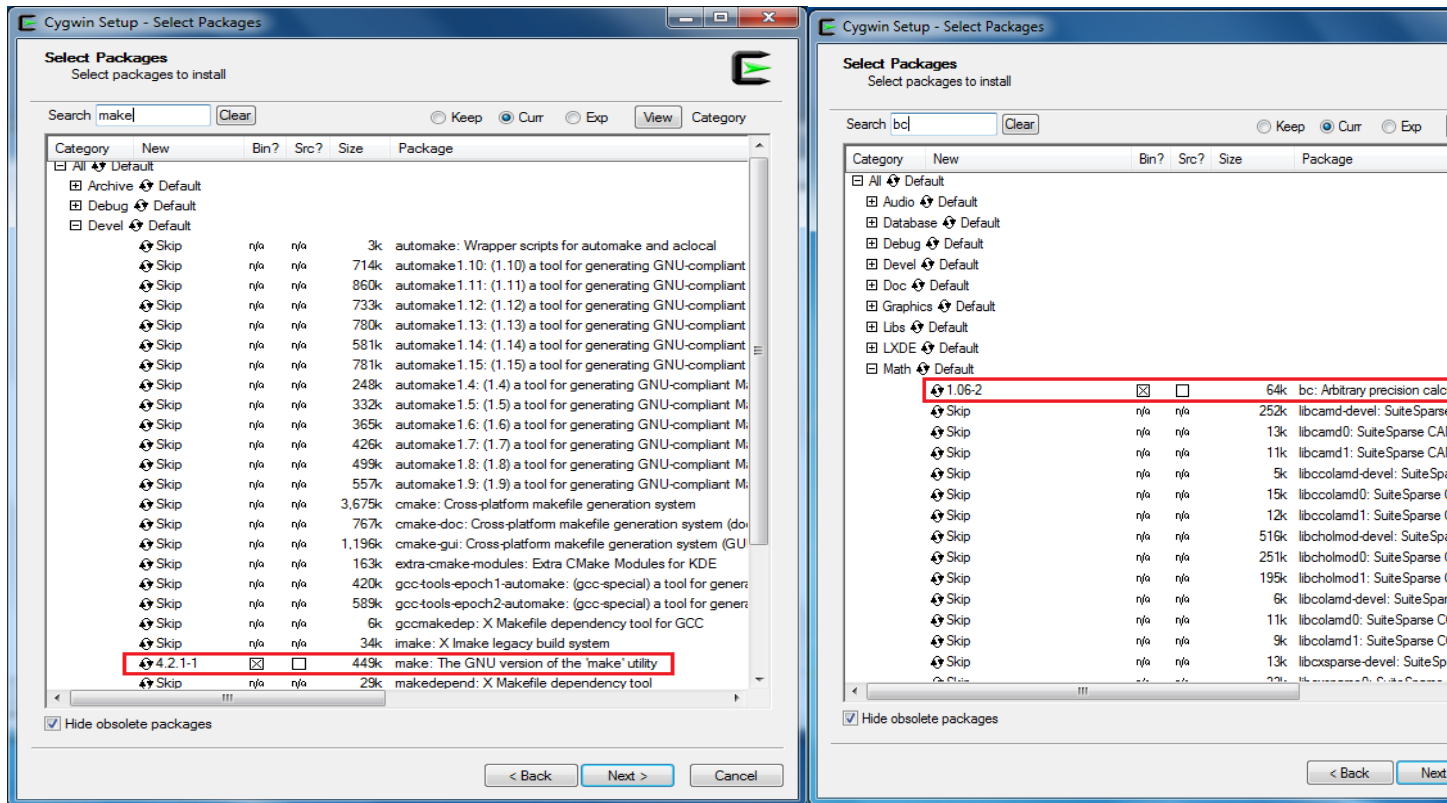
This is the Ameba Standard SDK online documentation
Ameba RTL8722DM (AMB 21)



3.1 Getting Started

Setup of the GCC Development Environment

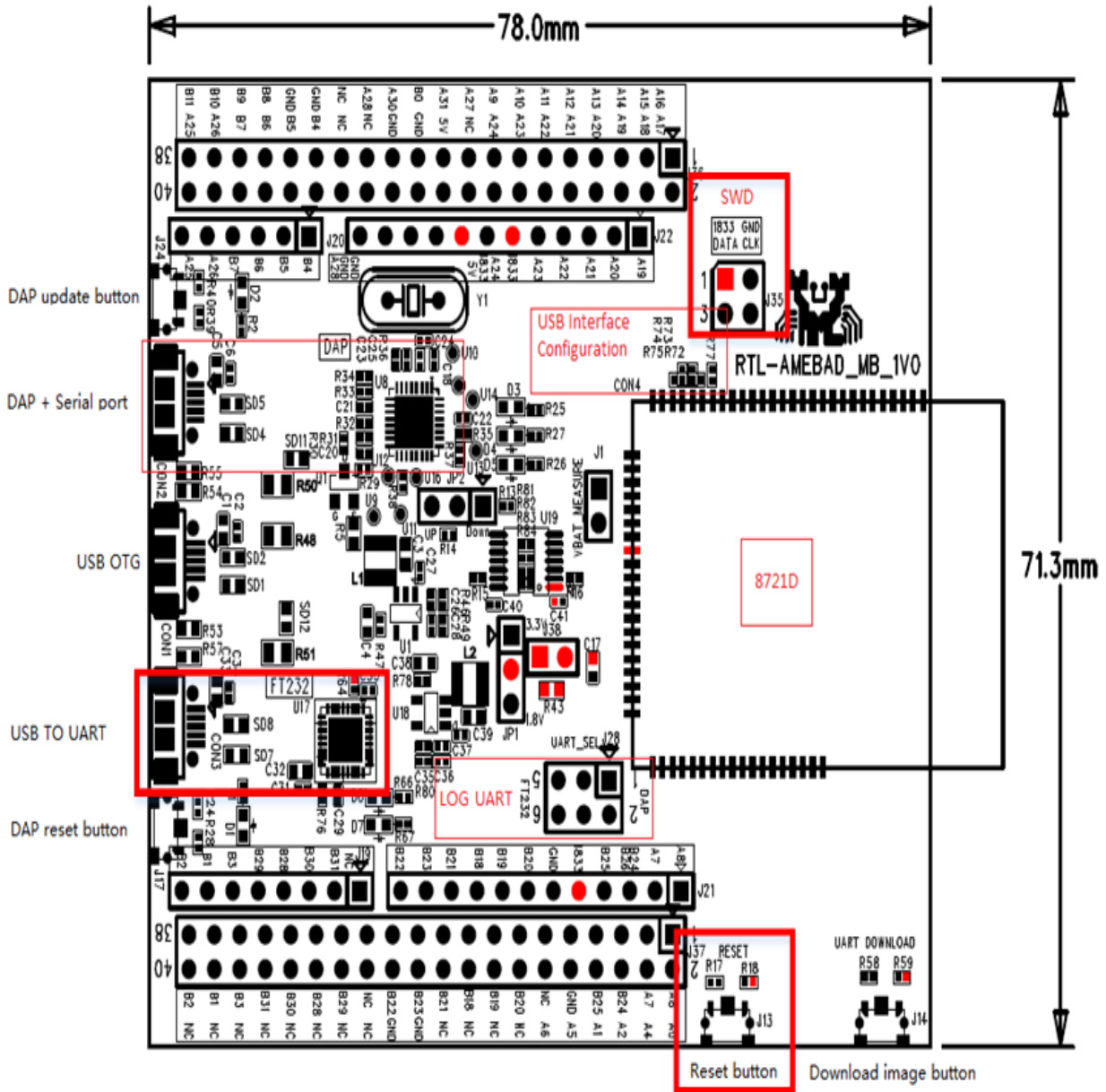
On Windows, you can use Cygwin as the GCC development environment. Cygwin is a large collection of GNU and open source tools which provide functionality similar to a Linux distribution on Windows. Click <http://cygwin.com/> and download the Cygwin package [setup-x86.exe](#) for your Windows platform. 1. 32-bit Cygwin is supported both for 32-bit Windows and 64-bit Windows. 2. During the installation of Cygwin package, include 'Devel -> make' and 'Math -> bc' utilities on the Select Packages page, as below shows.

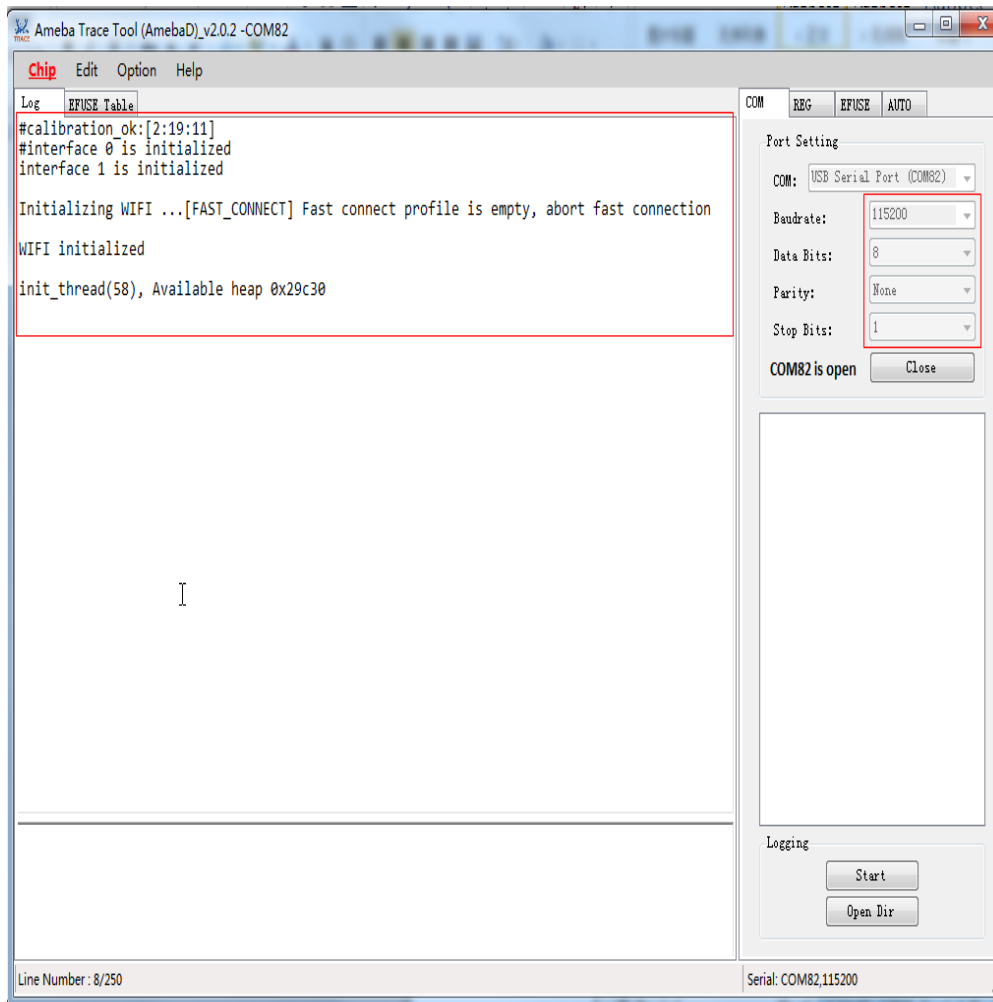


For Linux, refer to AN0400 Ameba-D [Application Note v12.pdf](#) to build the GCC development environment.

Knowledge about Ameba-D Demo Board

For Ameba-D, there are many types of chipsets available, such as RTL8720CS, RTL8721CSM, RTL8722CSM, RTL8720DN, RTL8720DM, RTL8721DM, and RTL8722DM. In addition, the chipsets can be embedded on Ameba-D DEV demo board, which is extended to various I/O interfaces. The corresponding HDK (Hardware Development Kit) documents are available, please contact RTK for further details. The hardware block diagram of Ameba-D demo board is shown below. USB TO UART: power supply and log print. The baud rate is 115200bps SWD: SWD interface, used to download images and debug with IAR. Reset button: reset Ameba-D to run firmware after IAR completes download.





Building the First GCC Project on Ameba-D

The following steps are for first-time developer to build GCC project, under existing RTK SDK. **Building Code** This section illustrates how to build SDK. First, you need to switch to GCC project directory. For Windows, open Cygwin terminal and use `$ cd` command to change directory to KM0 or KM4 project directory of Ameba-D SDK. Note: You need to replace the `{path}` to your own SDK location, and add “cygdrive” prefix in front of the SDK location, so that Cygwin can access your file system.

```
` $ cd ` /cygdrive/{path}/project/realtek_amebaD_va0_example/GCC-RELEASE/project_lp
` $ cd ` /cygdrive/{path}/project/realtek_amebaD_va0_example/GCC-RELEASE/project_hpFor Linux, open its
own terminal and use $ cd command to change directory to KM0 or KM4 project directory of Ameba-D SDK.
` $ cd /{path}/project/realtek_amebaD_va0_example/GCC-RELEASE/project_lp `
` $ cd `
```

/{path}/project/realtek_amebaD_va0_example/GCC-RELEASE/project_hpTo build SDK for normal image, simply use `$ make all` command under the corresponding project directories on Cygwin (Windows) or terminal (Linux). KM0 project For KM0 project, if the terminal contains “km0_image2_all.bin” and “Image manipulating end” output message, it means that the image has been built successfully, as below shows.

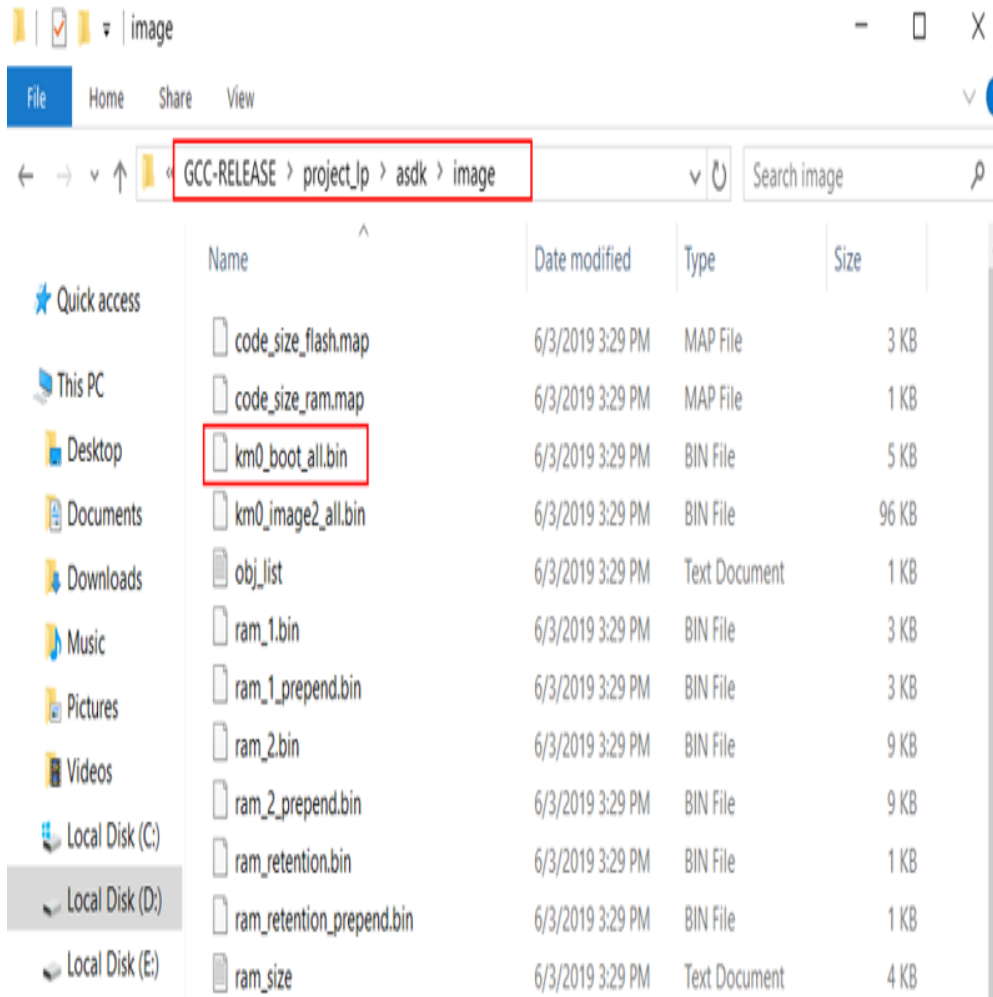
```

/cygdrive/d/sdk-amebad-beta_v6.0/project/realtek_amebaD_va0_example/GCC-RELEASE/project_lp
.0/project/realtek_amebaD_va0_example/GCC-RELEASE/project_lp/asdk/image/xip_im
age2.bin __flash_text_start__ /cygdrive/d/sdk-amebad-beta_v6.0/project/realt
ek_amebaD_va0_example/GCC-RELEASE/project_lp/asdk/image/target_img2.map
/cygdrive/d/sdk-amebad-beta_v6.0/project/realtek_amebaD_va0_example/GCC-RELEAS
E/project_lp/asdk/gnu_utility/prepend_header.sh /cygdrive/d/sdk-amebad-beta_v6
.0/project/realtek_amebaD_va0_example/GCC-RELEASE/project_lp/asdk/image/ram_re
tention.bin __retention_entry_func__ /cygdrive/d/sdk-amebad-beta_v6.0/projec
t/realtek_amebaD_va0_example/GCC-RELEASE/project_lp/asdk/image/target_img2.map
cat /cygdrive/d/sdk-amebad-beta_v6.0/project/realtek_amebaD_va0_example/GCC-RE
LEASE/project_lp/asdk/image/xip_image2_prepend.bin /cygdrive/d/sdk-amebad-beta
_v6.0/project/realtek_amebaD_va0_example/GCC-RELEASE/project_lp/asdk/image/ram
_2_prepend.bin > /cygdrive/d/sdk-amebad-beta_v6.0/project/realtek_amebaD_va0_e
xample/GCC-RELEASE/project_lp/asdk/image/km0_image2_all.bin
/cygdrive/d/sdk-amebad-beta_v6.0/project/realtek_amebaD_va0_example/GCC-RELEAS
E/project_lp/asdk/gnu_utility/pad.sh /cygdrive/d/sdk-amebad-beta_v6.0/project/
realtek_amebaD_va0_example/GCC-RELEASE/project_lp/asdk/image/km0_image2_all.bi
n
===== Image manipulating end =====
make[1]: Leaving directory '/cygdrive/d/sdk-amebad-beta_v6.0/project/realtek_a
mebaD_va0_example/GCC-RELEASE/project_lp/asdk'

/cygdrive/d/sdk-amebad-beta_v6.0/project/realtek_amebaD_va0_
example/GCC-RELEASE/project_lp
$

```

If somehow it is built failed, type \$ make clean to clean and then redo the make procedure. After successfully built, the image file is located in project/realtek_amebaD_va0_example/GCC-RELEASE/project_lp/asdk/image, as below shows.



KM4 project For KM4 project, if the terminal contains “km4_image2_all.bin” and “Image manipulating end” output message, it means that the image has been built successfully, as below shows.


```

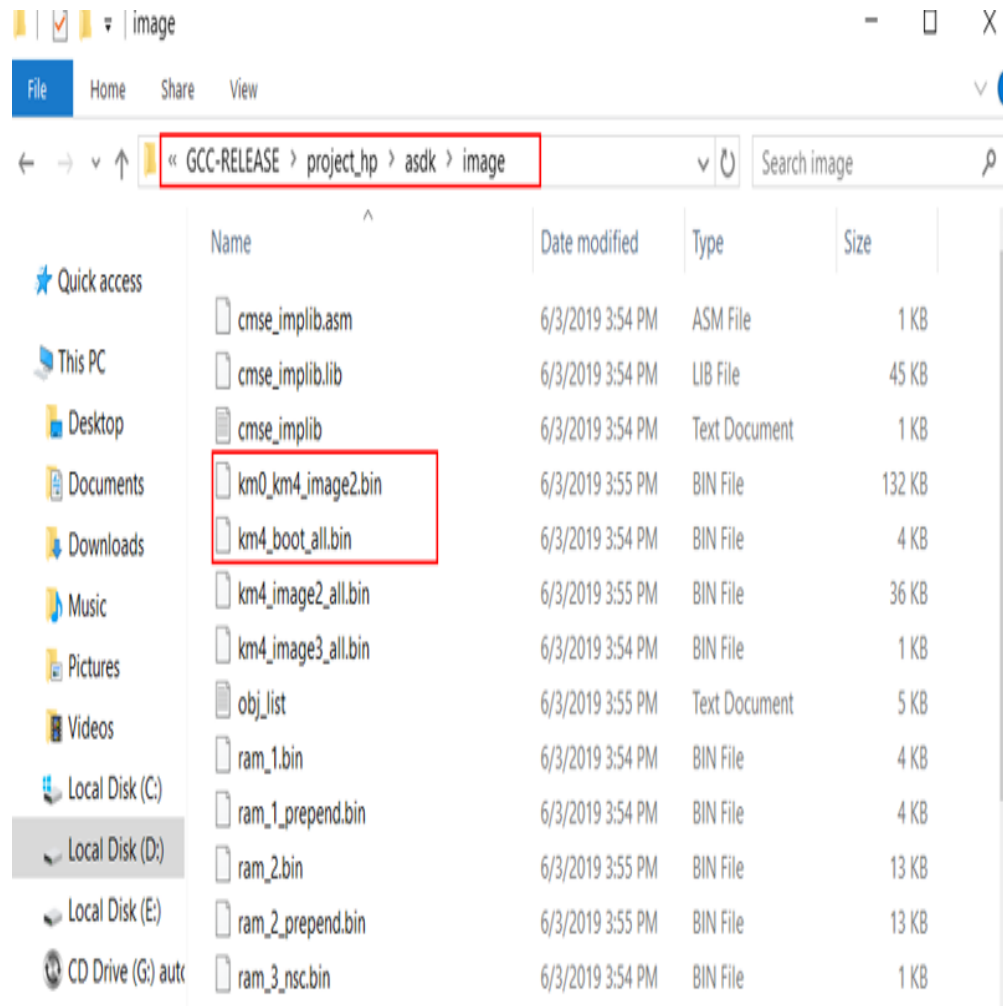
/cygdrive/d/sdk-amebad-beta_v6.0/project/realtek_amebaD_va0_example/GCC-RELEASE/project_hp
.ARM.attributes          54          0
.debug_frame            10024        0
.stabstr                 117          0
Total                   847521

/cygdrive/d/sdk-amebad-beta_v6.0/project/realtek_amebaD_va0_example/GCC-RELEASE/project_hp/asdk/./toolchain/cygwin/as
dk-6.4.1/cygwin/newlib/bin/arm-none-eabi-size -t --radix=10 /cygdrive/d/sdk-amebad-beta_v6.0/project/realtek_amebaD_va
0_example/GCC-RELEASE/project_hp/asdk/image/target_img2.axf
   text    data    bss    dec    hex filename
  32592  262416   1936  296944  487f0 /cygdrive/d/sdk-amebad-beta_v6.0/project/realtek_amebaD_va0_example/GCC-RELEAS
E/project_hp/asdk/image/target_img2.axf
  32592  262416   1936  296944  487f0 (TOTALS)
===== Image Info DEC =====
rm -f ./build/ram/*.o
===== linker img2_ns end =====
===== Image manipulating start =====
/cygdrive/d/sdk-amebad-beta_v6.0/project/realtek_amebaD_va0_example/GCC-RELEASE/project_hp/asdk/gnu_utility/prepend_he
ader.sh /cygdrive/d/sdk-amebad-beta_v6.0/project/realtek_amebaD_va0_example/GCC-RELEASE/project_hp/asdk/image/ram_2.bi
n __ram_image2_text_start__ /cygdrive/d/sdk-amebad-beta_v6.0/project/realtek_amebaD_va0_example/GCC-RELEASE/project_
hp/asdk/image/target_img2.map
/cygdrive/d/sdk-amebad-beta_v6.0/project/realtek_amebaD_va0_example/GCC-RELEASE/project_hp/asdk/gnu_utility/prepend_he
ader.sh /cygdrive/d/sdk-amebad-beta_v6.0/project/realtek_amebaD_va0_example/GCC-RELEASE/project_hp/asdk/image/xip_imag
e2.bin __flash_text_start__ /cygdrive/d/sdk-amebad-beta_v6.0/project/realtek_amebaD_va0_example/GCC-RELEASE/project_
hp/asdk/image/target_img2.map
cat /cygdrive/d/sdk-amebad-beta_v6.0/project/realtek_amebaD_va0_example/GCC-RELEASE/project_hp/asdk/image/xip_image2.p
repend.bin /cygdrive/d/sdk-amebad-beta_v6.0/project/realtek_amebaD_va0_example/GCC-RELEASE/project_hp/asdk/image/ram_2
_prepend.bin > /cygdrive/d/sdk-amebad-beta_v6.0/project/realtek_amebaD_va0_example/GCC-RELEASE/project_hp/asdk/image/k
m4_image2_all.bin
/cygdrive/d/sdk-amebad-beta_v6.0/project/realtek_amebaD_va0_example/GCC-RELEASE/project_hp/asdk/gnu_utility/pad.sh /cy
gdrive/d/sdk-amebad-beta_v6.0/project/realtek_amebaD_va0_example/GCC-RELEASE/project_hp/asdk/image/km4_image2_all.bin
===== Image manipulating end =====
make[1]: Leaving directory '/cygdrive/d/sdk-amebad-beta_v6.0/project/realtek_amebaD_va0_example/GCC-RELEASE/project_hp
/asdk'

/cygdrive/d/sdk-amebad-beta_v6.0/project/realtek_amebaD_va0_example/GCC-RELEASE/project_hp
$

```














If somehow it built failed, type `$ make clean` to clean and then redo the make procedure. After built successfully, the image file is located in `project/realtek_amebaD_va0_example/GCC-RELEASE/project_hp/asdk/image`, as below shows.



Downloading Images to Ameba-D Realtek provides an image tool to download images on windows.

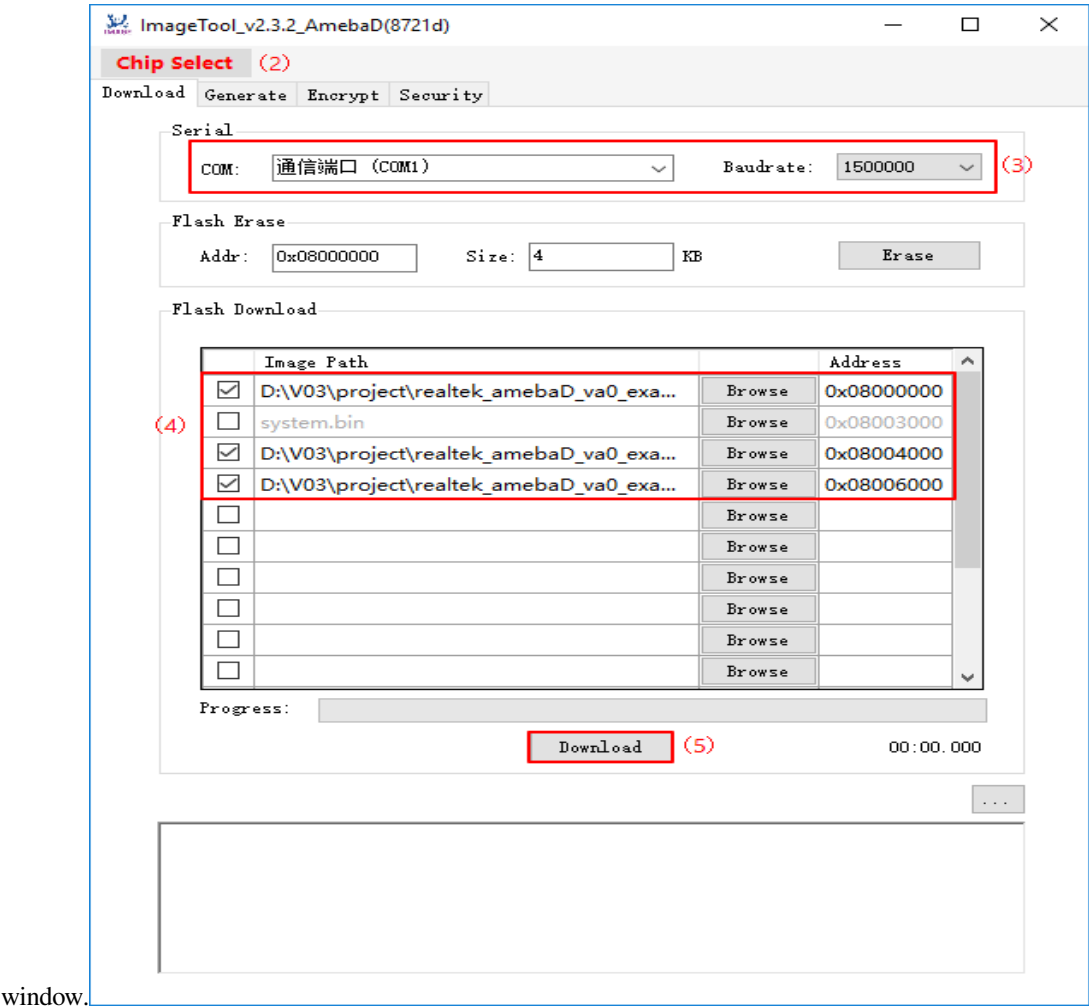
Environment Requirements: EX. WinXP, Win 7 Above, Microsoft .NET Framework 3.5

ImageTool.exe Location: SDKtoolsAmebaDImage_ToolImageTool.exe

Name	Date modified	Type	Size
 ChangeLog.txt	7/29/2019 11:52 AM	Text Document	4 KB
 Download.ini	11/4/2019 5:44 PM	Configuration sett...	2 KB
 Encrypt.ini	11/4/2019 5:44 PM	Configuration sett...	1 KB
 ImageTool.exe	7/29/2019 11:52 AM	Application	282 KB
 ImageTool.pdb	7/29/2019 11:52 AM	VisualStudio.pdb....	178 KB
 ImageTool.vshost.exe	8/20/2018 1:41 PM	Application	14 KB
 ImageTool.vshost.exe.manifest	8/20/2018 1:41 PM	MANIFEST File	1 KB
 imgtool_flashloader_amebad.bin	6/6/2019 3:15 PM	BIN File	5 KB
 imgtool_flashloader_amebaz.bin	6/6/2019 3:15 PM	BIN File	6 KB
 SB.exe	8/20/2018 1:41 PM	Application	189 KB
 system.bin	8/6/2019 9:53 AM	BIN File	4 KB
 TestListView.dll	8/20/2018 1:41 PM	Application extens...	5 KB
 TestListView.pdb	8/20/2018 1:41 PM	VisualStudio.pdb....	14 KB

Assuming that the ImageTool on PC is a server, it sends images files to Ameba (client) through UART. To download image from server to client, the client must enter uart download first. 1) Enter into UART_DOWNLOAD mode.

- Push the UART DOWNLOAD button and keep it pressed.
- Re-power on the board or press the Reset button.
- Release the UART DOWNLOAD button. Now, Ameba board gets into UART_DOWNLOAD mode and is ready to receive data. 2) Click Chip Select (in red) on UI and select chip (AmebaD or AmebaZ). 3) Select the corresponding serial port and transmission baud rate. The default baud rate is 1.5Mbps (recommended). 4) Click the Browse button to select the images (km0_boot_all.bin/km4_boot_all.bin/km0_km4_image2.bin) to be programmed and input addresses.
- The image path is located in {path}projectrealtek_amebaD_va0_exampleGCC-RELEASEproject_hpasdkimage and {path}projectrealtek_amebaD_va0_exampleGCC-RELEASEproject_hpasdkimage, where {path} is the location of the project on your own computer.
- The default target address is the SDK default image address, you can use it directly. 5) Click Download button to start. The progress bar will show the transmit progress of each image. You can also get the message of operation successfully or errors from the log



3.2 Download

[Datasheet](#)

[User Manual](#)

[GitHub](#)

3.3 Board HDK

[Layout](#)

[Schematic](#)

3.4 Support

3.4.1 FAQ

Where to buy Ameba RTL8722DM Board?

Refer to Purchase link.

SEARCH

- search